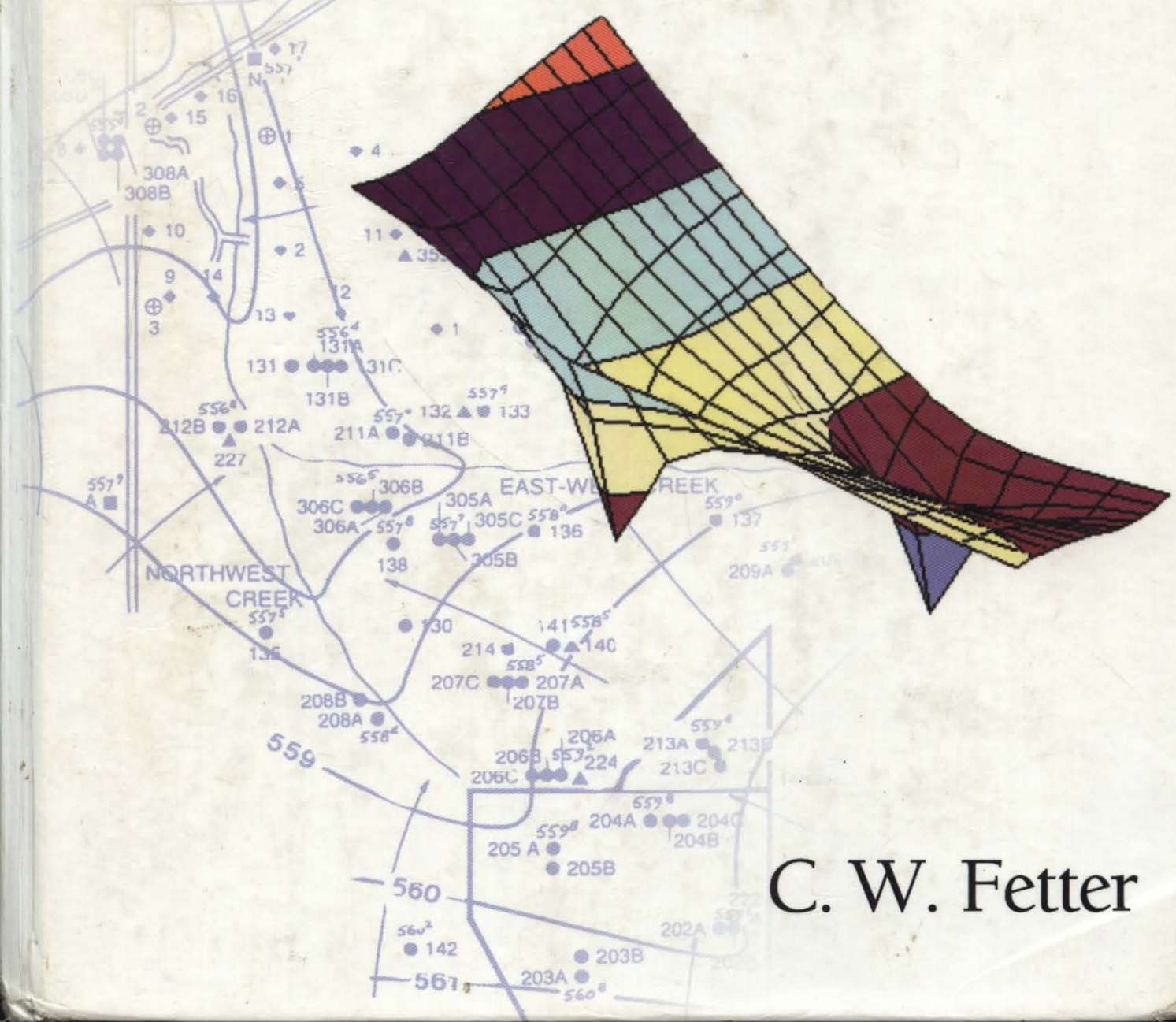
Applied Hydrogeology

Fourth Edition

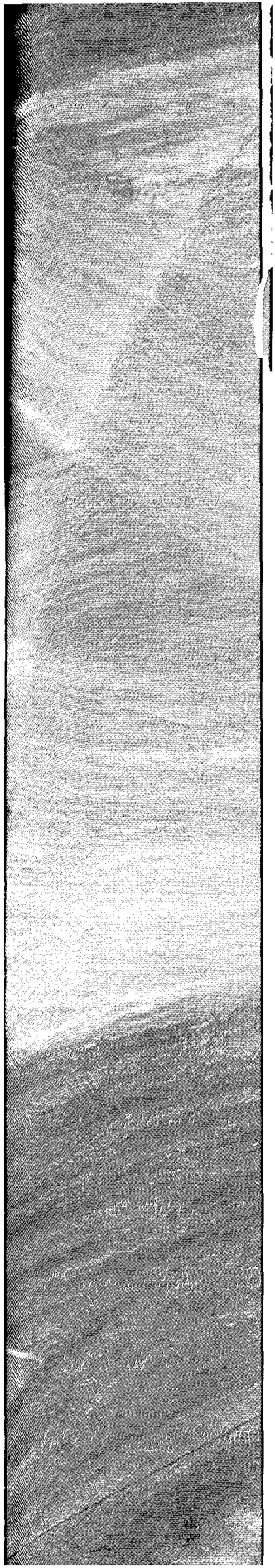


C. W. Fetter

Table for flow conversion

Unit	m^3/sec	m^3/day	ℓ/sec	ft^3/sec	ft^3/day	ac-ft/day	gal/min	gal/day	mgd
1 cubic meter/ second	1	8.64×10^4	10^3	35.31	3.051×10^6	70.05	1.58×10^4	2.282×10^7	22.824
1 cubic meter/ day	1.157×10^{-5}	1	0.0116	4.09×10^{-4}	35.31	8.1×10^{-4}	0.1835	264.17	2.64×10^{-4}
1 liter/ second	0.001	86.4	1	0.0353	3051.2	0.070	15.85	2.28×10^4	2.28×10^{-2}
1 cu. foot/ second	0.0283	2446.6	28.32	1	8.64×10^4	1.984	448.8	6.46×10^5	0.646
1 cu. foot/ day	3.28×10^{-7}	0.02832	3.28×10^{-4}	1.16×10^{-5}	1	2.3×10^{-5}	5.19×10^{-3}	7.48	7.48×10^{-6}
1 acre-foot/ day	0.0143	1233.5	14.276	0.5042	43,560	1	226.28	3.259×10^5	0.3258
1 gallon/ minute	6.3×10^{-5}	5.451	0.0631	2.23×10^{-3}	192.5	4.42×10^{-3}	1	1440	1.44×10^{-3}
1 gallon/ day	4.3×10^{-8}	3.79×10^{-3}	4.382×10^{-5}	1.55×10^{-6}	0.1337	3.07×10^{-6}	6.94×10^{-4}	1	10^{-6}
1 million gallons/ day	4.38×10^{-2}	3785	43.82	1.55	1.337×10^5	3.07	694	10^6	1

Abdulaziz Mohamed Amabdul@mines.uteb.edu
e-mail Abdulaziz mohd 2001@yahoo.com



C. W. FETTER

UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN-OSHKOSH

Applied Hydrogeology

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Fetter, C. W. (Charles Willard)
Applied hydrogeology / C.W. Fetter.--4th ed.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references.
ISBN 0–13–088239–9
1. Hydrogeology. 2. Water supply. I. Title.

GB1003.2 .F47 2001
551.49--dc21 00-48329

Senior editor: *Patrick Lynch*
Editorial assistant: *Sean Hale*
Assistant managing editor: *Beth Sturla*
Art director: *Jayne Conte*
Cover design: *Kiwi Design*
Marketing manager: *Christine Henry*
Manufacturing buyer: *Michael Bell*
Manufacturing manager: *Trudy Pisciotti*
Assistant managing editor, media: *Alison Lorber*
Assistant editor: *Amanda Griffith*
Associate media editor: *Michael Banino*
Composition: *Carlisle Communications*



© 2001, 1994 by Prentice-Hall, Inc.
Upper Saddle River, New Jersey 07458

Earlier editions copyright © 1988, 1980
by Merrill Publishing Company.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be
reproduced, in any form or by any means,
without the permission in writing from the publisher.

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

ISBN 0-13-088239-9

Prentice-Hall International (UK) Limited, *London*
Prentice-Hall of Australia Pty. Limited, *Sydney*
Prentice-Hall Canada Inc., *Toronto*
Prentice-Hall Hispanoamericana, S.A., *Mexico*
Prentice-Hall of India Private Limited, *New Delhi*
Prentice-Hall of Japan, Inc., *Tokyo*
Pearson Education Asia Pte. Ltd.
Editora Prentice-Hall do Brasil, Ltda., *Rio de Janeiro*

CONTENTS

Preface xvi
About the Author xviii

CHAPTER 1
Water

1.1 Water 1
1.2 Hydrology and Hydrogeology 3
1.3 The Hydrologic Cycle 4
1.4 Energy Transformations 5
1.5 The Hydrologic Equation 8
Case Study: Mono Lake 9
1.6 Hydrogeologists 11
1.7 Applied Hydrogeology 11
1.8 The Business of Hydrogeology (What Do Hydrogeologists Do All Day?) 12
1.8.1 Application of Hydrogeology to Human Concerns 12
1.8.2 Business Aspects of Hydrogeology 14
1.8.3 Ethical Aspects of Hydrogeology 15
1.9 Sources of Hydrogeological Information 16
1.10 American Society of Testing and Materials Standards 18
1.11 Working the Problems 18
1.12 Solving Problems Using Spreadsheets 20

Notation 22 • Analysis 22 • Problems 22

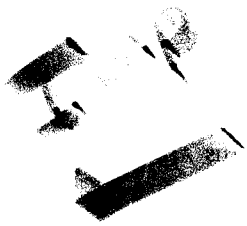
CHAPTER 2
Elements of the Hydrologic Cycle

2.1 Evaporation 24
2.2 Transpiration 27
2.3 Evapotranspiration 28
2.4 Condensation 32
Formation of Precipitation 32
2.6 Measurement of Precipitation and Snow 32
2.7 Effective Depth of Precipitation 33
2.8 Events During Precipitation 37
2.9 Stream Hydrographs 42
2.9.1 Baseflow Recessions 42
2.9.2 Storm Hydrograph 44
2.9.3 Gaining and Losing Streams 46
2.10 Rainfall-Runoff Relationships 48
2.11 Duration Curves 50

2.12 Determining Ground-Water Recharge from Baseflow 51
2.12.1 Seasonal Recession Method (Meyboom Method) 51
2.12.2 Recession Curve Displacement Method (Rorabaugh Method) 53
2.13 Measurement of Streamflow 55
2.13.1 Stream Gauging 55
2.13.2 Weirs 57
2.14 Manning Equation 58
Notation 60 • Analysis 61 • Problems 61

CHAPTER 3

Properties of Aquifers



3.1 Matter and Energy (A Brief Review of Physics) 66
3.2 Porosity of Earth Materials 69
3.2.1 Definition of Porosity 69
3.2.2 Porosity and Classification of Sediments 70
3.2.3 Porosity of Sedimentary Rocks 75
3.2.4 Porosity of Plutonic and Metamorphic Rocks 77
3.2.5 Porosity of Volcanic Rocks 78
3.3 Specific Yield 78
3.4 Hydraulic Conductivity of Earth Materials 81
3.4.1 Darcy's Experiment 81
3.4.2 Hydraulic Conductivity 82
3.4.3 Permeability of Sediments 84
Case Study: Hydraulic Conductivity Estimates in Glacial Outwash 88
3.4.4 Permeability of Rocks 89
3.5 Permeameters 90
3.6 Water Table 93
3.7 Aquifers 95
3.8 Water-Table and Potentiometric Surface Maps 98
3.9 Aquifer Characteristics 100
3.10 Compressibility and Effective Stress 102
3.11 Homogeneity and Isotropy 104
3.12 Gradient of the Potentiometric Surface 107
Notation 109 • Analysis 109 • Problems 109

CHAPTER 4

Principles of Ground-Water Flow



4.1 Introduction 113
4.2 Mechanical Energy 114
4.3 Hydraulic Head 115
4.4 Head in Water of Variable Density 118
4.5 Force Potential and Hydraulic Head 121
4.6 Darcy's Law 122

4.6.1 Darcy's Law in Terms of Head and Potential 122
4.6.2 The Applicability of Darcy's Law 123
4.6.3 Specific Discharge and Average Linear Velocity 124
4.7 Equations of Ground-Water Flow 125
4.7.1 Confined Aquifers 125
4.7.2 Unconfined Aquifers 129
4.8 Solution of Flow Equations 129
4.9 Gradient of Hydraulic Head 129
4.10 Relationship of Ground-Water-Flow Direction to Grad h 131
4.11 Flow Lines and Flow Nets 132
4.12 Refraction of Flow Lines 136
4.13 Steady Flow in a Confined Aquifer 138
4.14 Steady Flow in an Unconfined Aquifer 140
Notation 146 • Analysis 147 • Problems 148

CHAPTER 5

Ground-Water Flow to Wells

5.1 Introduction 150
5.2 Basic Assumptions 151
5.3 Radial Flow 151
5.4 Computing Drawdown Caused by a Pumping Well 153
5.4.1 Flow in a Completely Confined Aquifer 153
5.4.2 Flow in a Leaky, Confined Aquifer 156
5.4.3 Flow in an Unconfined Aquifer 164
5.5 Determining Aquifer Parameters from Time-Drawdown Data 166
5.5.1 Introduction 166
5.5.2 Steady-State Conditions 166
5.5.3 Nonequilibrium Flow Conditions 169
5.5.4 Nonequilibrium Radial Flow in a Leaky Aquifer with Storage in the Aquitard 183
5.5.5 Nonequilibrium Radial Flow in an Unconfined Aquifer 184
5.5.6 Effect of Partial Penetration of Wells 188
5.6 Slug Tests 190
5.6.1 Determination of Aquifer Parameters with Slug Tests 190
5.6.2 Overdamped Response Slug Tests 190
5.6.3 Underdamped Response Slug Test 200
5.6.4 General Observations on Slug-Test Analysis 204
5.7 Estimating Aquifer Transmissivity from Specific Capacity Data 205
5.8 Intersecting Pumping Cones and Well Interference 207
5.9 Effect of Hydrogeologic Boundaries 208
5.10 Aquifer-Test Design 210
5.10.1 Single-Well Aquifer Tests 210
5.10.2 Aquifer Tests with Observation Wells 212
Notation 214 • Computer Notes 214 • Analysis 215 • Problems 215

CHAPTER 6

Soil Moisture and Ground-Water Recharge

6.1 Introduction 219
6.2 Porosity and Water Content of Soil 220
6.3 Capillarity and the Capillary Fringe 223
6.4 Pore-Water Tension in the Vadose Zone 225
6.5 Soil Water 225
6.6 Theory of Unsaturated Flow 228
6.7 Water-Table Recharge 231

Notation 234 • Analysis 235 • Problems 235

CHAPTER 7

Regional Ground-Water Flow

7.1 Introduction 236
7.2 Steady Regional Ground-Water Flow in Unconfined Aquifers 237
7.2.1 Recharge and Discharge Areas 237
7.2.2 Ground-Water Flow Patterns in Homogeneous Aquifers 237
7.2.3 Effect of Buried Lenses 243
7.2.4 Nonhomogeneous and Anisotropic Aquifers 244
7.3 Transient Flow in Regional Ground-Water Systems 247
7.4 Noncyclical Ground Water 248
7.5 Springs 248
7.6 Geology of Regional Flow Systems 250
Case Study: Regional Flow Systems in the Great Basin 250
Case Study: Regional Flow Systems in the Coastal Zone of the Southeastern United States 255
Case Study: Regional Flow System of the High Plains Aquifer 263
Case Study: The Dakota Aquifer 268
7.7 Interactions of Ground Water and Lakes or Wetlands and Streams 272

Computer Notes 279 • Notation 280 • Analysis 280 • Problems 280

CHAPTER 8

Geology of Ground-Water Occurrence

8.1 Introduction 283
8.2 Unconsolidated Aquifers 284
8.2.1 Glaciated Terrane 285
Case Study: Hydrogeology of a Buried Valley Aquifer at Dayton, Ohio 289

8.2.2 Alluvial Valleys 289
8.2.3 Alluvium in Tectonic Valleys 291
Case Study: Tectonic Valleys—San Bernardino Area 294
8.3 Lithified Sedimentary Rocks 297
Case Study: Sandstone Aquifer of Northeastern Illinois–Southeastern Wisconsin 297
8.3.1 Complex Stratigraphy 300
8.3.2 Folds and Faults 302
Case Study: Faults as Aquifer Boundaries 303
8.3.3 Clastic Sedimentary Rocks 307
Case Study: Newark Basin Hydrogeology 309
8.3.4 Carbonate Rocks 310
8.3.5 Coal and Lignite 319
8.4 Igneous and Metamorphic Rocks 319
8.4.1 Intrusive Igneous and Metamorphic Rocks 319
8.4.2 Volcanic Rocks 321
Case Study: Volcanic Plateaus—Columbia River Basalts 321
Case Study: Volcanic Domes—Hawaiian Islands 322
8.5 Ground Water in Permafrost Regions 323
Case Study: Alluvial Aquifers—Fairbanks, Alaska 326
8.6 Ground Water in Desert Areas 326
Case Study: Desert Hydrology—Azraq Basin, Jordan 327
8.7 Coastal-Plain Aquifers 327
8.8 Fresh-Water–Saline-Water Relations 331
8.8.1 Coastal Aquifers 331
8.8.2 Oceanic Islands 335
8.9 Tidal Effects 337
8.10 Ground-Water Regions of the United States 338
8.10.1 Western Mountain Ranges 338
8.10.2 Alluvial Basins 340
8.10.3 Columbia Lava Plateau 341
8.10.4 Colorado Plateau and Wyoming Basin 341
8.10.5 High Plains 341
8.10.6 Nonglaciated Central Region 342
8.10.7 Glaciated Central Region 342
8.10.8 Piedmont—Blue Ridge Region 343
8.10.9 Northeast and Superior Uplands 343
8.10.10 Atlantic and Gulf Coastal Plain 343
8.10.11 Southeast Coastal Plain 344
8.10.12 Alluvial Valleys 344
8.10.13 Hawaiian Islands 344
8.10.14 Alaska 344
8.10.15 Puerto Rico 344

Notation 345 • Problems 345

CHAPTER 9

Water Chemistry

9.1 Introduction 346
9.2 Units of Measurement 347
9.3 Types of Chemical Reactions in Water 348
9.4 Law of Mass Action 348
9.5 Common-Ion Effect 350
9.6 Chemical Activities 350
9.7 Ionization Constant of Water and Weak Acids 353
9.8 Carbonate Equilibrium 355
9.8.1 Carbonate Reactions 356
9.8.2 Carbonate Equilibrium in Water with Fixed Partial Pressure of CO_2 358
9.8.3 Carbonate Equilibrium with External pH Control 359
9.9 Thermodynamic Relationships 361
9.10 Oxidation Potential 362
9.11 Ion Exchange 366
9.12 Isotope Hydrology 368
9.12.1 Stable Isotopes 368
9.12.2 Radioactive Isotopes Used in Age Dating 371
9.13 Major Ion Chemistry 373
9.14 Presentation of Results of Chemical Analyses 374
9.14.1 Piper Diagram 374
9.14.2 Stiff Pattern 376
9.14.3 Schoeller Semilogarithmic Diagram 377
Case Study: Chemical Geohydrology of the Floridan Aquifer System 377

Notation 381 • Analysis 382 • Problems 383

CHAPTER 10

Water Quality and Ground-Water Contamination

10.1 Introduction 385
10.2 Water-Quality Standards 388
10.3 Collection of Water Samples 389
10.4 Ground-Water Monitoring 391
10.4.1 Planning a Ground-Water Monitoring Program 391
10.4.2 Installing Ground-Water Monitoring Wells 391
10.4.3 Withdrawing Water Samples from Monitoring Wells 396
10.5 Vadose-Zone Monitoring 397
10.6 Mass Transport of Solutes 400
10.6.1 Introduction 400
10.6.2 Diffusion 400
10.6.3 Advection 401
10.6.4 Mechanical Dispersion 401
10.6.5 Hydrodynamic Dispersion 402

10.6.6 Retardation 407
10.6.7 Degradation of Organic Compounds 415
10.7 Ground-Water Contamination 415
10.7.1 Introduction 415
10.7.2 Septic Tanks and Cesspools 416
10.7.3 Landfills 418
10.7.4 Chemical Spills and Leaking Underground Tanks 420
10.7.5 Mining 423
Case Study: Contamination from Uranium Tailings Ponds 424
10.7.6 Other Sources of Ground-Water Contamination 425
10.8 Ground-Water Restoration 426
10.8.1 Risk-Based Corrective Action 426
10.8.2 Source-Control Measures 426
10.8.3 Plume Treatment 427
10.8.4 Natural and Enhanced Bioremediation 428
10.9 Case History: Ground-Water Contamination at a Superfund Site 428
10.9.1 Background 428
10.9.2 Geology 430
10.9.3 Hydrogeology 431
10.9.4 Ground-Water Contamination 432
10.9.5 Site Remediation 434
10.10 Capture-Zone Analysis 436

Notation 439 • Analysis 440 • Problems 440

CHAPTER 11

Ground-Water Development and Management

11.1 Introduction 441
11.2 Dynamic Equilibrium in Natural Aquifers 442
Case Study: Deep Sandstone Aquifer of Northeastern Illinois 443
11.3 Ground-Water Budgets 443
11.4 Management Potential of Aquifers 445
11.5 Paradox of Safe Yield 447
11.6 Water Law 449
11.6.1 Legal Concepts 449
11.6.2 Laws Regulating Quantity of Surface Water 449
11.6.3 Laws Regulating Quantity of Ground Water 452
Case Study: Arizona's Ground-Water Code 454
11.6.4 Laws Regulating the Quality of Water 455
Case Study: Wisconsin's Ground-Water Protection Law 458
11.7 Artificial Recharge 459
11.8 Protection of Water Quality in Aquifers 460
11.9 Ground-Water Mining and Cyclic Storage 463
11.10 Conjunctive Use of Ground and Surface Water 464
11.11 Global Water Issues 465

Analysis 467

CHAPTER 12

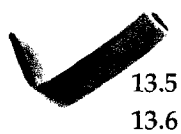
Field Methods

12.1 Introduction 468
12.2 Fracture-Trace Analysis 469
12.3 Surficial Methods of Geophysical Investigations 474
12.3.1 Direct-Current Electrical Resistivity 474
12.3.2 Electromagnetic Conductivity 479
12.3.3 Seismic Methods 483
12.3.4 Ground-Penetrating Radar and Magnetometer Surveys 490
12.3.5 Gravity and Aeromagnetic Methods 491
12.4 Geophysical Well Logging 492
12.4.1 Caliper Logs 495
12.4.2 Temperature Logs 495
12.4.3 Single-Point Resistance 495
12.4.4 Resistivity 498
12.4.5 Spontaneous Potential 498
12.4.6 Nuclear Logging 499
Case Study: Use of Multiple Geophysical Methods to Determine the Extent and Thickness of a Critical Confining Layer 502
12.5 Hydrogeologic Site Evaluations 505
12.6 Responsibilities of the Field Hydrogeologist 508
12.7 Project Reports 510
Notation 512 • Problems 512

CHAPTER 13

Ground-Water Models

13.1 Introduction 514
13.2 Applications of Ground-Water Models 516
13.3 Data Requirements for Models 517
13.4 Finite-Difference Models 519
13.4.1 Finite-Difference Grids 519
13.4.2 Finite-Difference Notation 519
13.4.3 Boundary Conditions 520
13.4.4 Methods of Solution for Steady-State Case for Square Grid Spacing 521
13.4.5 Methods of Solution for the Transient Case 523
13.5 Finite-Element Models 524
13.6 Use of Published Models 525
13.7 MODFLOW Basics 528
13.8 Visual MODFLOW 530
13.9 Geographical Information Systems 530
Analysis 531



Appendices 534
1. Values of the function $W(u)$ for various values of u 535
2. Values of the function $F(\eta,\mu)$ for various values of η and μ 536
3. Values of the functions $W(\mu, r/B)$ for various values of μ 537
4. Values of the function $H(\mu, \beta)$ 538
5. Values of the functions $K_0(x)$ and $\exp(x)K_0(x)$ 539
6. Values of the functions $W(u_A,\Gamma)$, and $W(u_B, \Gamma)$ for water-table aquifers 540
7. Table for length conversion 542
8. Table for area conversion 542
9. Table for volume conversion 543
10. Table for time conversion 543
11. Solubility products for selected minerals and compounds 544
12. Atomic weights and numbers of naturally occurring elements 545
13. Table of values of erf (x) and erfc (x) 547
14. Absolute density and absolute viscosity of water 548
15. Loading and running computer programs 549

Glossary 552
Answers 562
References 567
Index 588

PREFACE

Hydrogeology is now considered to be a core course in the curriculum of undergraduate geology programs as well as many fields of engineering. There is ongoing demand for persons with training in hydrogeology by consulting organizations, state and federal regulatory agencies, and industrial firms. Most of the employment in hydrogeology is in the environmental area. This is a book that will help prepare students for either a career in hydrogeology or in other areas of environmental science and engineering where a strong background in hydrogeology is needed.

Applied Hydrogeology is intended as a textbook for an introductory course in hydrogeology taught either at the advanced undergraduate level, or as a dual-level undergraduate/graduate course. It is also useful in helping individuals who are preparing to take state examinations for professional registration as a hydrologist or hydrogeologist. It can be found as a reference book in the personal library of many working professionals.

The reader is expected to have a working knowledge of college algebra, and calculus is helpful, but not necessary, for practical understanding of the material. A background in college chemistry is necessary to understand the chapter on water chemistry. The book stresses the application of mathematics to problem-solving rather than the derivation of theory. To this end you will find many example problems with step-by-step solutions. Case studies in many chapters enhance understanding of the occurrence and movement of ground water in a variety of geological settings. A glossary of hydrogeological terms makes this book a valuable reference.

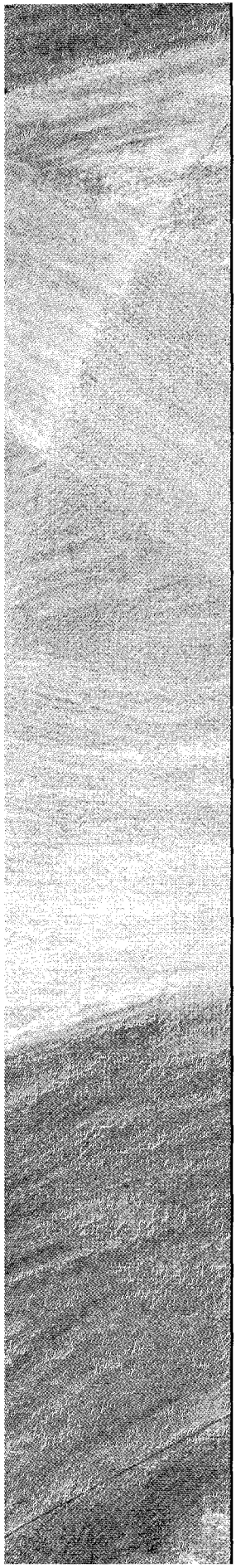
The fourth edition contains new case studies and end-of-chapter problems. In most cases the problems are paired. An odd-numbered problem will have the answer given in a section in the back of the book, followed by an even-numbered problem without the answer. Step-by-step solutions to the odd-numbered problems can also be found at the *Applied Hydrogeology* web page: http://www.appliedhydrogeology.com. Many chapters in the fourth edition also contain a section called Analysis, with non-numerical questions. The use of spreadsheet programs, such as Microsoft® Excel, in hydrogeology is introduced here.

Included with the text are working student versions of three computer programs that are used by ground-water professionals. They have been furnished free of charge by the software publishers. No technical support is furnished for these programs, either by the author or the software publisher. However, they are easy to use and come with tutorials and documentation on the CD-ROM.

The following reviewers provided helpful suggestions for the fourth edition: Gary S. Johnson, University of Idaho; Larry Murdoch, Clemson University; Claude Epstein, Richard Stockton College of New Jersey; David L. Brown, California State University at Chico; F. Edwin Harvey, University of Nebraska at Lincoln; Edward L. Shuster, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute; Willis D. Weight, Montana Tech. of the University of Montana; Larry D. McKay, University of Tennessee at Knoxville; Laura L. Sanders, Northwestern Illinois University; Jean Hoff, St. Cloud State University; and Jim Butler, Kansas Geological Survey.

I am grateful to Larry Murdoch and Rex Hodges of Clemson University for introducing me to the use of spreadsheet ground-water flow models. I would especially like to thank Glenn Duffield of Hydrosolve, Inc. for furnishing the student version of AQTESOLV, Pat Delaney of Waterloo Hydrogeologic Inc. for furnishing the student version of Visual MODFLOW, and Kirk Hemker for the use of FLOWNETLT. Todd Rayne of Hamilton College has prepared the solution manual for the problems, which course instructors can request from their Prentice Hall sales representative. Patrick Lynch, Senior Editor for Geology at Prentice Hall, has been very supportive through the course of my preparation of this revision.

C. W. Fetter
C. W. Fetter, Jr. Associates and
Emeritus Professor of Hydrogeology
University of Wisconsin Oshkosh



C. W. FETTER

UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN-OSHKOSH

Applied Hydrogeology

Fourth Edition

Prentice Hall

Upper Saddle River, New Jersey 07458

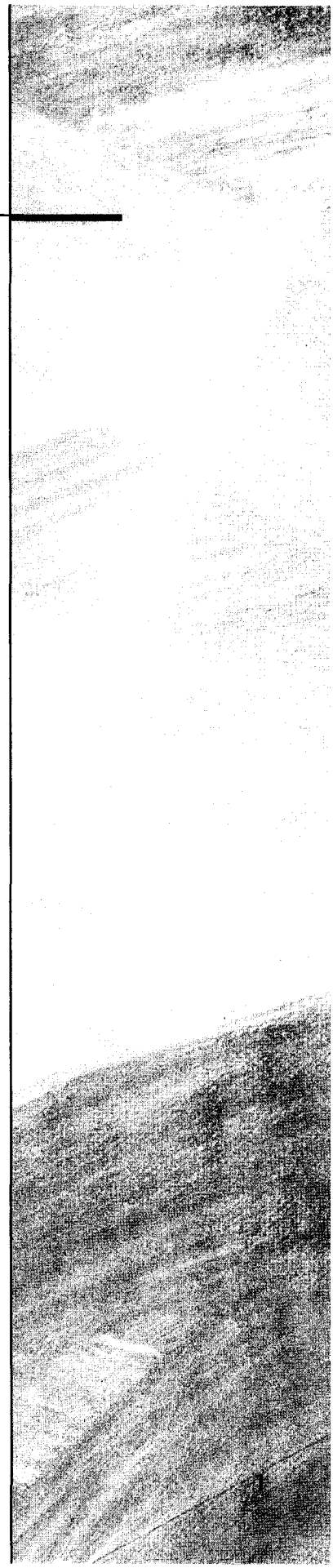
CHAPTER 1

Water

In the winter of wet years the streams ran full-freshet, and they swelled the river until it sometimes raged and boiled bank full, and then it was a destroyer. The river tore the edges of the farm lands and washed whole acres down; it toppled barns and houses into itself, to go floating and bobbing away. It trapped cows and pigs and sheep and drowned them in its muddy brown water and carried them to the sea. Then when the late spring came the river drew in from its edges and the sand banks appeared. And in the summer the river didn't at all run above ground.

There were dry years too . . . The water came in a thirty-year cycle. There would be five or six wet and wonderful years when there might be nineteen to twenty-five inches of rain, and the land would shout with grass. Then would come six or seven pretty good years of twelve to sixteen inches of rain. And then the dry years would come, and sometimes there would be only seven or eight inches of rain. The land dried up . . . And it never failed that during the dry years the people forgot the rich years, and during the wet years they lost all memory of the dry years. It was always that way.

East of Eden, John Steinbeck, 1952



1.1 Water

John Steinbeck wrote the above words 50 years ago to describe the hydrology of the Salinas Valley in northern California. In doing so he revealed an attitude toward water that was held by many in the early part of the twentieth century. Water was always assumed to be available and no one worried about its longevity until it seemed threatened. We perhaps have a more realistic attitude today and know that we must preserve and protect our precious and limited natural resources, including water.

Although our intentions toward preserving the environment may be good, we sometimes act without full consideration of all possible

outcomes. In 1990, Congress passed the Clean Air Act. To reduce the mass of smog-creating chemicals released by vehicles, gasoline sold in certain urban areas was required to be reformulated, starting in 1992, so that it contained at least 2% oxygen. At the time there were only two chemicals considered practical to add to gasoline, ethanol and methyl tertiary butyl ether (MTBE). At that time, no one knew if MTBE posed any potential health risks if ingested, but its high solubility in water was known. In addition, it was well known that many gasoline retailers had leaking underground storage tanks.

By 1996, about 100 million barrels of MTBE were used to formulate gasoline in the United States (Andrews 1998). Reformulated gasoline contains 10% MTBE. While air quality has improved in urban areas where MTBE is used in reformulated gasoline, not surprisingly we now find that ground water in some areas has been contaminated with it Most chemicals found in gasoline degrade rather quickly in the earth, but not MTBE; it is persistent as it resists biodegradation.

As of 2000 there are still no federal drinking-water standards for MTBE; the toxicity is still being evaluated. Yet, legislation was passed a decade ago that could reasonably have been expected to result in the release of MTBE into ground water. In the spring of 2000 the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) decided to phase out the use of MTBE in gasoline due to ground-water contamination. The lesson to be learned here is even the best of intentions can have unanticipated and extremely undesirable consequences on our limited water resources.

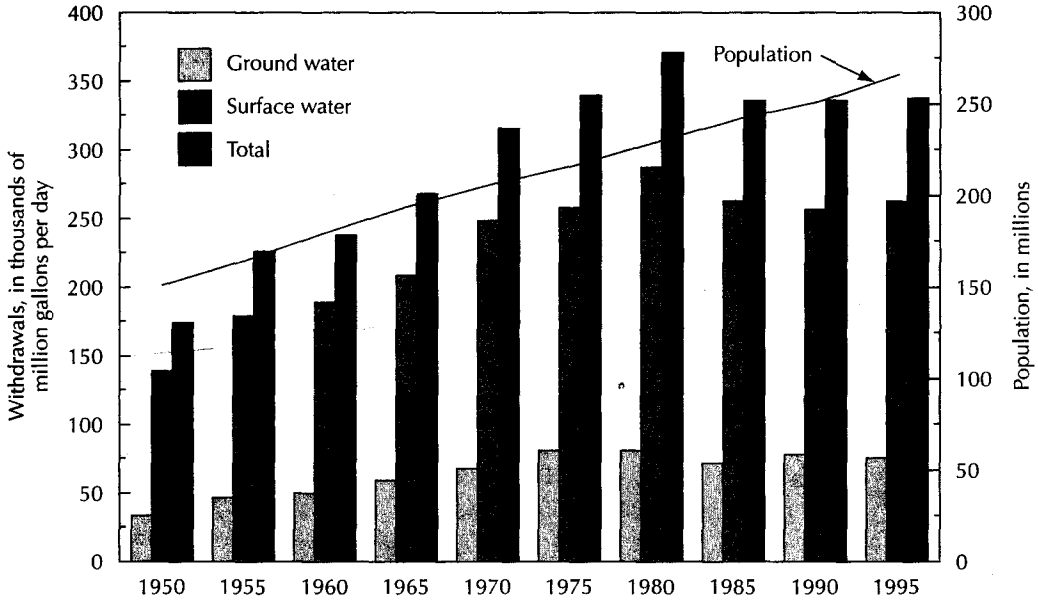
Water is the elixir of life; without it life is not possible. Although many environmental factors determine the density and distribution of vegetation, one of the most important is the amount of precipitation. Agriculture can flourish in some deserts, but only with water either pumped from the ground or imported from other areas.

Civilizations have flourished with the development of reliable water supplies—and then collapsed as their water supplies failed. This book is about the occurrence of water both at the surface and in the ground. A person requires about 3 quarts (qt) or liters (L) of potable water per day to maintain the essential fluids of the body. Primitive people in arid lands existed with little more than this amount as their total daily consumption. A single cycle of an older flush toilet may use 5 gallons (gal) (19 L) of water. In New York City the per capita water usage exceeds 260 gal (1000 L) daily; much of this is used for industrial, municipal, and commercial purposes. For personal purposes, the typical American uses 50 to 80 gal (200 to 300 L) per day. Even greater quantities of water are required for energy and food production.

In 1995, the total off-stream water use in the United States was estimated to be 40 billion gallons (1520 billion liters) per day of fresh and saline water. This does not include water used for hydroelectric power generation and other in-stream uses, but does include water used for thermoelectric power plant cooling. Fresh-water use in 1995 included 77.5 billion gallons (290 billion liters) per day of ground water and 263 billion gallons (995 billion liters) per day of surface water (Figure 1.1). Per capita fresh-water use was 1280 gal (4850 L) per day. Consumptive use of water, that is, water evaporated during use, was about 81 billion gallons (300 billion liters) per day (Solley, Pierce, and Perlman 1998).

Total water use in the United States peaked in 1980 and has declined since then. The estimated total water use in 1995 was 2% less than in 1990 and 10% less than in 1980. Water use for public water supply has shown a continual increase since 1950 due to increasing population. Public water supply (40.2 billion gallons in 1995) accounts for 10% of the total water use in the United States. The largest uses of water are for cooling of electric power generation facilities and for irrigation.

Although it had generally been assumed that economic growth results in increased water use, from 1975 to 1995 per capita water use in the United States actually declined by



▲ FIGURE 1.1
Trends in fresh ground- and surface-water withdrawals and population in the United States.
Source: Solley, Pierce, and Perlman, 1998.

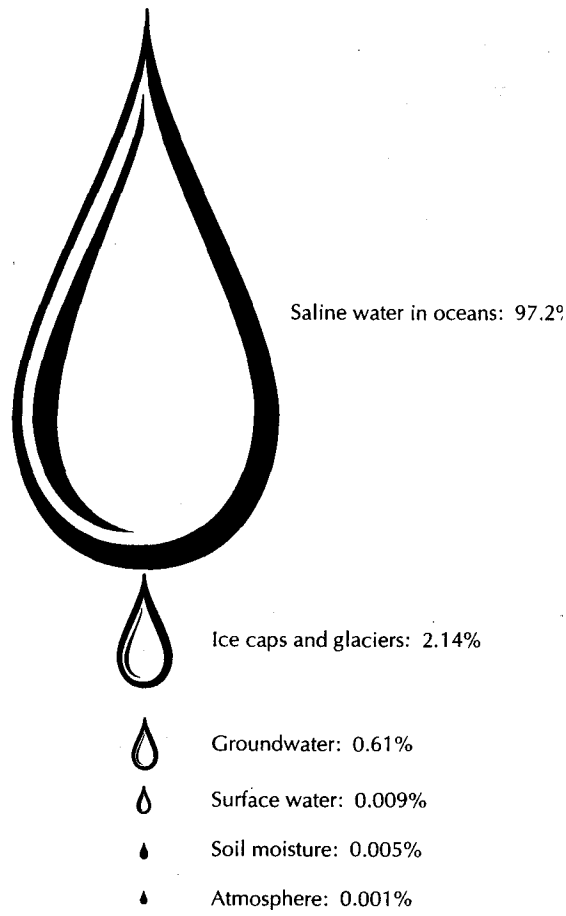
25%. This can be attributed to increased conservation of water (Wood 1999). As an example, toilets now sold in the United States can use no more than 1.5 gal. (6 L) per flush.

1.2 Hydrology and Hydrogeology

As viewed from a spacecraft, the earth appears to have a blue-green cast owing to the vast quantities of water covering the globe. The oceans may be obscured by billowing swirls of clouds. These vast quantities of water distinguish Earth from the other planets in the solar system. **Hydrology** is the study of water. In the broadest sense, hydrology addresses the occurrence, distribution, movement, and chemistry of all waters of the earth. **Hydrogeology** encompasses the interrelationships of geologic materials and processes with water. (A similar term, **geohydrology,** is sometimes used as a synonym for hydrogeology, although it more properly describes an engineering field dealing with subsurface fluid hydrology.) The physiography, surficial geology, and topography of a drainage basin, and the vegetation, influence the relationship between precipitation over the basin and water draining from it. The creation and distribution of precipitation is heavily influenced by the presence of mountain ranges and other topographic features. Running water and ground water are geologic agents that help shape the land. The movement and chemistry of ground water is heavily dependent upon geology.

Hydrogeology is both a descriptive and an analytic science. Both the development and management of water resources are important parts of hydrogeology as well. An account of the water supply of the world would reveal that saline water in the oceans accounts for 97.2% of the total. Land areas hold 2.8% of the total. Ice caps and glaciers hold 2.14%; ground water to a depth of 13,000 feet (ft) [4000 meters (m)] accounts for 0.61% of the total; soil moisture, 0.005%; fresh-water lakes, 0.009; rivers, 0.0001%; and saline lakes, 0.008% (Feth 1973). More than 75% of the water in land areas is locked in glacial ice or is saline (Figure 1.2).

► FIGURE 1.2
Distribution of the world water supply



1.3 The Hydrologic Cycle

Only a small percentage of the world's total water supply is available to humans as fres water. More than 98% of the available fresh water is ground water, which far exceeds th volume of surface water. At any given time, only 0.001% of the total water supply is in th atmosphere. However, atmospheric water circulates very rapidly, so that each ye enough water falls to cover the conterminous United States to a depth of 30 inches (in.) [7 centimeters (cm)]. Of this amount, 22 in. (55 cm) are returned to the atmosphere throug evaporation and transpiration by growing plants, whereas 8 in. (20 cm) flow into th oceans as rivers (Federal Council for Science and Technology 1962). Although the previou sentence implies that the **hydrologic cycle** begins with water from the oceans, the cycle a tually has no beginning and no end. As most of the water is in the oceans, it is convenie to describe the hydrologic cycle as starting with the oceans. Water evaporates from the su face of the oceans. The amount of evaporated water varies, being greatest near the equat where solar radiation is more intense. Evaporated water is pure, because when it is carri into the atmosphere the salts of the sea are left behind. Water vapor moves through the a mosphere as an integral part of the phenomenon we term "the weather." When atmo pheric conditions are suitable, water vapor condenses and forms droplets. These drople may fall to the sea or onto land or may revaporize while still aloft.

Precipitation that falls on the land surface enters various pathways of the hydrolog cycle. Some water may be temporarily stored on the land surface as ice and snow

water in puddles, which is known as **depression storage.** Some of the rain or melting snow will drain across the land to a stream channel. This is termed **overland flow.** If the surface soil is porous, some rain or melting snow will seep into the ground by a process called **infiltration.**

Below the land surface the soil pores contain both air and water. The region is known as the **vadose zone,** or **zone of aeration.** Water stored in the vadose zone is called **vadose water.** At the top of the vadose zone is the belt of soil water. This is the zone where the roots of plants can reach. The soil water contained in the belt of soil water can be drawn into the rootlets of growing plants. As the plant uses the water, it is **transpired** as vapor to the atmosphere. Under some conditions water can flow laterally in the vadose zone, a process known as **interflow.** Water vapor in the vadose zone can also migrate back to the land surface to **evaporate.** Excess vadose water is pulled downward by gravity, a process known as **gravity drainage.** It passes through the intermediate belt to the **capillary fringe.** In the capillary fringe, the pores are filled with capillary water so that the saturation approaches 100%; however, the water is held in place by capillary forces.

At some depth, the pores of the soil or rock are saturated with water. The top of the **zone of saturation** is called the **water table.** Water stored in the zone of saturation is known as **ground water.** It then moves as **ground-water flow** through the rock and soil layers of the earth until it discharges as a spring or as seepage into a pond, lake, stream, river, or ocean (Figure 1.3).

Water flowing in a stream can come from overland flow or from ground water that has seeped into the streambed. The ground-water contribution to a stream is termed **baseflow,** while the total flow in a stream is **runoff.** Water stored in ponds, lakes, rivers, and streams is called **surface water.**

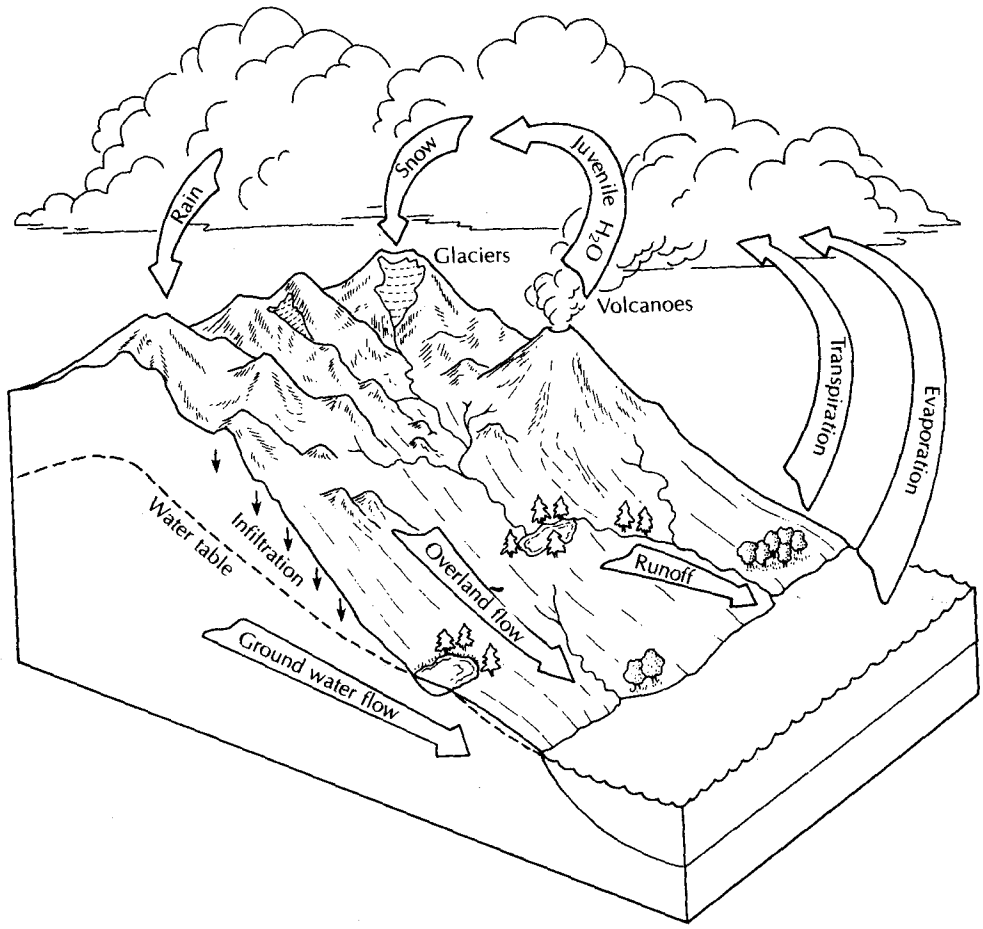
Evaporation is not restricted to open water bodies, such as the ocean, lakes, streams, and reservoirs. Precipitation intercepted by leaves and other vegetative surfaces can also evaporate, as can water detained in land-surface depressions or soil moisture in the upper layers of the soil. Direct evaporation of ground water can take place when the saturated zone is at or near the land surface. Transpiration by plants and evaporation from land surfaces are lumped together as **evapotranspiration.**

Magmatic water is contained within magmas deep in the crust. If the magma reaches the surface of the earth or the ocean floor, the magmatic water is added to the water in the hydrologic cycle. Steam seen in some volcanic eruptions is ground water that comes into contact with the rising magma and is not magmatic water. Some of the water in the ocean sediments is subducted with the sediments and is withdrawn from the hydrologic cycle. This water may eventually become part of a magma.

Figure 1.4 is a schematic drawing of the hydrologic cycle showing the major reservoirs where water is stored and the pathways by which water can move from one reservoir to others. Figure 1.5 illustrates the classification system for underground water.

1.4 Energy Transformations

The hydrologic cycle is an open system in which solar radiation serves as a source of constant energy. This is most evident in the evaporation and atmospheric circulation of water. The energy of a flowing river is due to the work done by solar energy, evaporating water from the ocean surface and lifting it to higher elevations, where it falls to earth. When water changes from one state to another (liquid, vapor, or solid), an accompanying change occurs in the heat energy of the water. The heat energy is the amount of thermal energy contained by a substance. A *calorie* (cal) of heat is defined as the energy necessary to raise the temperature of 1 gram (g) of pure water from 14.5°C to 15.5°C. At other temperatures it takes approximately 1 cal to change the temperature of 1 g of water 1°C. The evaporation of water requires an



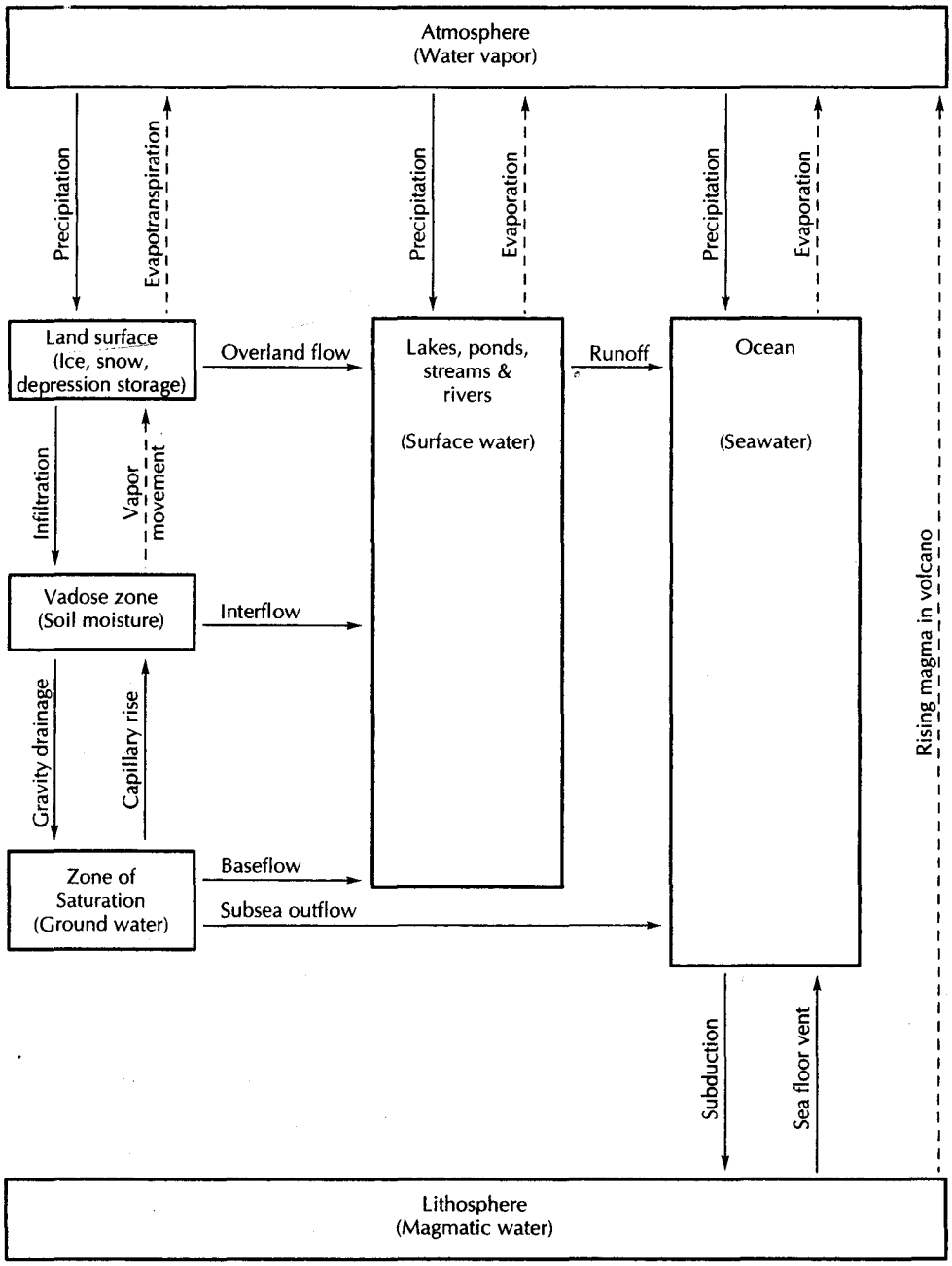
▲ FIGURE 1.3
The hydrologic cycle.

input of energy, called the *latent heat of vaporization.* At environmental temperatures (0°C 40°C), the latent heat of vaporization H_v, in calories per gram of water, can be found by

$$H_v = 597.3 - 0.564T \quad (1$$

where T is the temperature in degrees Celsius.

When water vapor condenses to a liquid form, an equivalent heat amount called t *latent heat of condensation* is released. This factor can also be obtained from Equation 1.1. melt 1 g of ice at 0°C, 79.7 cal of heat must be added, to create the *latent heat of fusion.* T resulting water also has a temperature of 0°C, although the gram of water holds more h energy than the gram of ice. Water can also pass directly from a solid state to a vapor st by a process called *sublimation.* The energy necessary to accomplish this is the sum of latent heat of vaporization and the latent heat of fusion. At 0°C, this is 677 cal/g. Freez of water releases 79.7 cal/g, and the formation of frost at 0°C releases 677 cal/g. The tra portation of water through the hydrologic cycle and the accompanying heat transfers vital to the heat balance of the earth. At the equator, the amount of solar radiation is fa constant through the year, whereas at the poles it varies from near zero during the p winter to significant amounts during the polar summer. During polar winters, the lan in shadow so the sun does not strike the ground; during the summers, the sun shines c



▲ FIGURE 1.4
Schematic drawing of the hydrologic cycle. Movement of liquid water is shown by a solid line and movement of water vapor is shown by a dashed line.

tinuously. Over the year, the Northern Hemisphere northward of 38° latitude has a net heat loss, as the outgoing terrestrial radiation to space exceeds the incoming solar radiation that is absorbed. Between the equator and 38° N, there is more solar radiation absorbed than terrestrial radiation lost to space. To balance these anomalies, heat is transferred by currents in the oceans and through the atmosphere as movement of air masses and water vapor, thus creating climatic conditions and changing weather patterns that profoundly affect the hydrologic cycle.

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Vadose zone (zone of aeration)

Water table</td><td rowspan="3">Vadose water</td><td>Soil water</td><td>Belt of soil water</td></tr>
<tr><td>Intermediate vadose water</td><td>Intermediate belt</td></tr>
<tr><td>Capillary water</td><td>Capillary fringe</td></tr>
<tr><td>Zone of saturation (phreatic zone)</td><td colspan="3">Ground water</td></tr>
</table>

▲ FIGURE 1.5
Classification of water beneath the land surface.

1.5 The Hydrologic Equation

The hydrologic cycle is a useful concept but is quantitatively rather vague. The **hydrolo ic equation** provides a quantitative means of evaluating the hydrologic cycle. This fund mental equation is a simple statement of the *law of mass conservation.* It may be expressed

$$\text{Inflow} = \text{outflow} \pm \text{changes in storage}$$

If we consider any hydrologic system—for instance, a lake—it has a certain volume water at a given time. Several inflows add to this water volume: precipitation that falls on t lake surface, streams that flow into the lake, ground water that seeps into the lake, and ov land flow from nearby land surfaces. Water also leaves the lake through evaporation, tra spiration by emergent aquatic vegetation, outlet streams, and ground-water seepage fr the lake bottom. If, over a given time period, the total inflows are greater than the total o flows, the lake level will rise as more water accumulates. If the outflows exceed the inflo over a time period, the volume of water in the lake will decrease. Any differences betwe rates of inflow and outflow in a hydrologic system will result in a change in the volume water stored in the system. The hydrologic equation can be applied to systems of any size is as useful for a small reservoir as it is for an entire continent. The equation is time depe ent. The elements of inflow must be measured over the same time periods as the outflow

The basic unit of surface-water hydrology is the **drainage basin,** or **catchment,** wh consists of all the land area sloping toward a particular discharge point. It is outlined surface-water boundaries, or **topographic divides.** In ground-water hydrology, we util

the concept of a **ground-water basin,** which is the subsurface volume through which ground water flows toward a specific discharge zone. **Ground-water divides** surround it. The boundaries of a surface-water basin and the underlying ground-water basin do not necessarily coincide, although the water budget of the area must account for both ground and surface water. Many times hydrologic budgets are made for areas surrounded by political boundaries and not hydrologic boundaries; however, one still must know the location of the hydrologic boundaries, both surface and subsurface, to perform a water-budget analysis. Water will flow from the hydrologic boundary toward the point of discharge and hence may flow into the study area if the boundary of the study area does not coincide with the hydrologic boundary. The hydrologic inputs to an area may include (1) precipitation; (2) surface-water inflow into the area, including runoff and overland flow; (3) ground-water inflow from outside the area; and (4) artificial import of water into the area through pipes and canals. The hydrologic outputs from an area may include (1) evapotranspiration from land areas; (2) evaporation of surface water; (3) surface water runoff; (4) ground-water outflow; and (5) artificial export of water through pipes and canals. The changes in storage necessary to balance the hydrologic equation include changes in the volume of (1) surface water in streams, rivers, lakes, and ponds; (2) soil moisture in the vadose zone; (3) ice and snow at the surface; (4) temporary depression storage; (5) intercepted water on plant surfaces; and (6) ground water below the water table. The application of the hydrologic equation to a watershed is illustrated in the following case study.

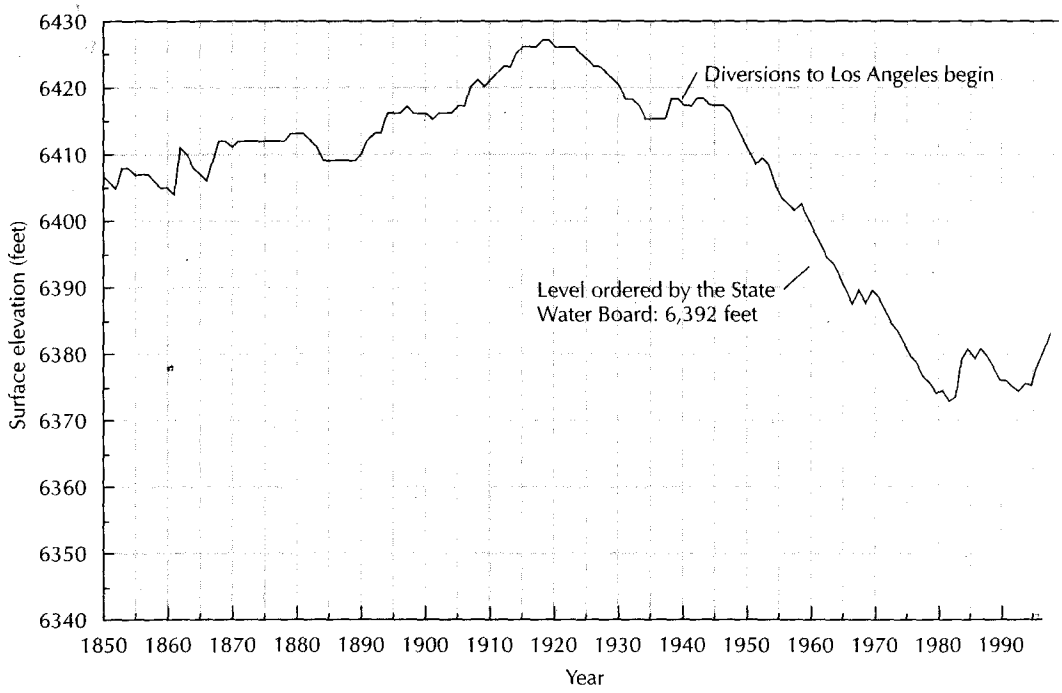
Case Study: Mono Lake

Half a dozen little mountain brooks flow into Mono Lake, but not a stream of any kind flows out of it. What it does with its surplus water is a dark and bloody mystery.

Mark Twain

Mono Lake lies on the eastern slope of the Sierra Nevada near the east entrance to Yosemite National Park. Mono Lake is a terminal lake, which means that although water enters the lake by precipitation and by streams and ground water flowing into it, water can leave only by evaporation. The lake level fluctuates with climatic changes. The volume of water that leaves the lake by evaporation is the product of the surface area times the depth of evaporation. If the volume that leaves by evaporation is exactly balanced by the inflow, the lake level will not change. If the inflow exceeds evaporation, the water level will rise. If the inflow is less than evaporation, the lake level will fall. The Mono Lake basin has an area of 695 square miles (mi²) [180,000 hectares (ha)]. Inputs to the lake under natural conditions are direct precipitation with an estimated annual average of 8 in. (0.2 m); runoff from the land areas via gauged streams, which is estimated to average 150,000 acre-feet (ac-ft)* per year [1.85×10^8 cubic meters (m³)] and ungauged runoff and ground-water inflow, which is estimated to average [illegible] ac-ft per year (4.56×10^7 m³). The average annual rate of lake evaporation is about [illegible] in. ([illegible] m) (Vorster 1985). When it was first surveyed in 1856, the elevation of Mono Lake was [illegible] ft ([illegible] m) above sea level. Climatic effects of moister and drier periods caused the lake level to rise to as much as 6428 ft (1959 m) in 1919 and then to fall to 6410 ft ([illegible] m) by 1941. In that year, water was first diverted from four of the five major streams feeding Mono Lake into the Los Angeles Aqueduct and then into southern California.

*An acre-foot is a measure of the volume of water that is commonly used in the western United States. It is the amount of water that will cover an acre of land to a depth of 1 ft (43,560 ft³).



▲ FIGURE 1.6
Changes in the surface elevation of Lake Mono from the year 1850 to 2000. *Source:* Mono Lake Committee (*http://www.monolake.org*). *Used with permission.*

Since the beginning of diversions in 1941, the surface elevation of Mono Lake has declined substantially (Figure 1.6). Diversions amounted to as much as 100,000 ac-ft (1.23×10^8 m^3) per year. The historic low was reached in December 1981, when the lake elevation was 6372.0 ft (1942.2 m). The decline was arrested and the level rose to 6381 ft (1945 m) during a very wet period from 1982 through 1984. A return to more normal precipitation conditions meant that the lake level began to fall again. In 1989, the diversions were halted under a temporary court restraining order that prohibited any such diversions that would result in a lake level of less than 6377 ft (1944 m). However, even without any diversions the level of Mono Lake still declined due to very dry conditions in the eastern Sierra Nevada, so that by the end of 1992 it was 6373.5 ft (1942.6 m).

In 1994 the California State Water Resources Control Board issued Decision 1631, which established permanent stream-flow values for the tributary streams to Mono Lake in order to protect fish in the streams. In addition, a permanent lake elevation of 6,392 ft (1949 m) was set for Mono Lake. No diversions of influent water are permitted when the lake level is below that set by the decision.

In 1941, the year that diversions began, the surface area of Mono Lake was 53,500 ac (21,670 ha). When the lake elevation declined by 38 ft (12 m) from 1941 to 1981, the surface area shrank to about 40,000 ac (16,200 ha). The annual diversion of 100,000 ac-ft (1.23×10^8 m^3) would cover the 40,000-ac (16,200-ha) lake to a depth of 2.5 ft (0.76 m). The water level fell because the amount of the diversion plus the natural evaporation from the lake was far in excess of the amount of precipitation onto the lake surface plus the remaining surface inflow and the ground-water inflow.

Since 1992, sufficient precipitation has fallen over the Mono Lake drainage basin for lake levels to rise inasmuch as no diversions were permitted. As of January 2000 the lake

level stood at 6384.3 ft (1947.2 m). It will take several more years before the lake level reaches the minimum elevation of 6392 ft (1949 m) set in Decision 1631.

One consequence of the volume reduction of Mono Lake was an increase in the salinity of the lake. In its original, natural condition with a surface elevation of 6410 ft (1954 m), the salinity of Mono Lake was 5.4%. At an elevation of 6377 ft (1944 m), the salinity rose to 9.8%. The increase in salt concentration resulted in a reduction of the brine shrimp population of the lake. There is a commercial fishery in Mono Lake for brine shrimp, and the shrimp also serve as an important food source for nesting and migratory birds. Brine flies also inhabit the shallow waters of the lake edge and provide a second food source for the many species of birds that migrate through the area and the nesting colonies of California gulls and snowy plovers. With the elimination of diversions from the lake, and the subsequent rise in water levels, the salinity has been reduced to 8.1%.

1.6 Hydrogeologists

The professional hydrogeologist has a wide variety of occupations from which to choose. Employment may be found with federal agencies, United Nations groups, state agencies, and local governments. Energy and mining companies may call upon the services of hydrogeologists to help provide water where it is needed or perhaps remove it where it is unwanted. Private consulting organizations also employ many individuals trained in hydrogeology. Water resource management districts and planning agencies often include hydrogeologists on their staffs. Hydrogeology is an interdisciplinary field. The hydrogeologist usually has training in geology, hydrology, chemistry, mathematics, and physics. Hydrogeologists are also being trained in such areas of engineering as fluid mechanics and flow through porous media, as well as in computer science. Such training is necessary, as hydrogeologists must be able to communicate effectively with engineers, planners, ecologists, resource managers, and other professionals. By the same token, an understanding of the basic principles of hydrogeology is useful to soil scientists, engineers, planners, foresters, and others in similar fields. For example, modeling of hydrologic systems is an area requiring knowledge of numerous disciplines.

1.7 Applied Hydrogeology

Many topics fall within the general rubric of hydrogeology. These include such diverse topics as the role of fluids in the folding of a faulting of rocks, hydrothermal fluids and mineral formation, land subsidence, geothermal energy, cave and karst formation, and water as a resource.

In this text we consider the topic of water as a resource. Classical studies in hydrogeology focused either on the mathematical treatment of flow through porous media or on a general geologic description of the distribution of rock formations in which ground water occurs. One occasionally even finds a paper describing the theoretical flow of fluids through an idealized porous medium that probably does not occur in nature. Likewise, many reports on the ground-water geology of an area made no attempt to evaluate how much water is available for use. Neither type of study has much practical value. Applied hydrogeology integrates the geological occurrence of water with the mathematical description of its movement and its chemical state. Typical outcomes of applied hydrogeological investigations might include plans for development of a ground-water supply, determination of the capture zone for a well field to protect it from contamination, evaluation of the impact of a mine dewatering plan on overlying surface-water bodies, or the delineation of a plume of contaminated ground water.

Hydrogeologists are problem solvers and decision makers. They identify a problem, define the data needs, design a field program for collection of data, propose alternative solutions to the problem, and implement the preferred solution.

1.8 The Business of Hydrogeology (What Do Hydrogeologists Do All Day?)

1.8.1 Application of Hydrogeology to Human Concerns

The work done by applied hydrogeologists can be divided into three realms: researc solving problems involving ground-water supply and control, and solving problems i volving ground-water contamination.

Research

In the first realm, research, the basic principles of hydrogeology, such as the equatio governing fluid flow and movement of contaminants through porous media, have be determined. Professors and graduate students at universities and hydrogeologists e ployed by nonprofit organizations such as the United States Geological Survey condu basic research. Basic research involves the search for first principles, which may or m not have either an immediate or an apparent practical application. Applied research performed to solve a specific problem. The applied researcher utilizes the same resea techniques as are appropriate for basic research. However, the planned result of the search program is the development of knowledge that can be applied immediately to t solution of known problems. Applied research may be conducted at universities and nonprofit organizations, but applied researchers can also be found working for pro making organizations. The profit-making organization may be trying to develop a m ketable product such as a computer program or a new device to withdraw a water sam from a well. These organizations may also have been contracted to solve some hydrog logical problem that a second party is experiencing, for example, the development c new method of detecting soil contamination under particular geologic conditions. The sults of both basic and applied research may be published in journals and formal repc of nonprofit agencies. Presentations of research results may also be given at professio meetings.

Solving Problems Involving Ground-Water Supply and Control

The second realm is the application of principles of hydrogeology to realize some econ ic benefit. These are sometimes called "clean-water" projects; they deal with ground-w supply and control. As an example, a community or an industry may hire a hydroge gist to locate and develop a source of ground water. The project is driven by econom The hydrogeologist will identify a source of ground water, determine if there is eno water of acceptable quality available, and work with an engineer to develop cost e mates. If there are several potential sources of water, the hydrogeologist and engineer try to determine the best alternative from a standpoint of availability, quality, and cost

Another project of this type is ground-water control. For some construction proj and most mining projects, excavations must take place below the water table. Dewate wells can be placed around a project to lower the water level to provide a dry working vironment. The cost of the dewatering project must be considered in determining if project is economically viable. The hydrogeologist will determine how many wells needed, where they are to be placed, how much water must be pumped, and if the de tering well will have an undesirable effect on nearby users of ground water, such as t wells going dry.

Hydrogeologists are also involved with issues of aquifer protection and water cor vation. Clearly it is far better to prevent the initial contamination of an aquifer than t mediate a contaminated one. Many communities are adopting zoning for the rech areas of important aquifers to prohibit activities that pose a threat to ground-water qu

If a municipality or private company has numerous projects requiring hydrogeological work, it may employ hydrogeologists as permanent staff; however, this usually is not the case. Instead, the municipality or private company owner will hire a firm of consulting hydrogeologists or engineers. Employees of the consulting company then perform the actual work. The consulting company will do the hydrogeological work using its own employees, but it may subcontract with a well-drilling company to install both test wells and permanent wells. If a well is for a public water supply, a hydrogeologist working for a state agency will most likely review the preliminary siting studies and final design to determine if the project meets state standards.

To illustrate the type of work performed by a hydrogeologist, we will look in some detail at what might be involved with the search for a new water-supply well. For such a project, a hydrogeologist first gathers all available information about the area's hydrogeology, such as well logs and published geological and water supply reports from various sources. Geological mapping and examination of air photos may supplement the review of available data. The data are then evaluated to give an initial idea of where to locate a test well. The hydrogeologist works with the project owners to locate available land for a potential well site, and then prepares the plans and specifications that are used to obtain bids from drilling contractors for constructing a test boring and well. The hydrogeologist spends time in the field overseeing the drilling of a test boring to obtain geologic samples, and then describes these samples and performs subsequent laboratory tests to evaluate them in order to identify a promising aquifer. A test well is then designed based on the geologic samples and is installed under the field supervision of the hydrogeologist. An aquifer test is then conducted using the test well and (perhaps) nearby observation wells. The data from the aquifer test are analyzed and the hydraulic properties of the aquifer are determined. The hydrogeologist may then make a computer model of the aquifer to determine if a permanent well or well field could yield the desired amount of water on a sustained basis, and prepares a written report for the project owners to inform them of the results of the work to date and the recommendations for a permanent well. The report is probably also submitted to the proper state agency for approval. If the state approves, then the owners must decide whether to go ahead with a permanent well. If the decision is affirmative, the hydrogeologist prepares the plans and specifications for the new well, and works with the engineer who is selecting the pump, determining the layout of the above-ground piping for the well, and designing the building to house the well head. Approval of the design by a hydrogeologist or engineer working for a state agency might be necessary. The final steps involve overseeing the construction of the well to ensure that the contractor follows the plans and specifications and to conduct a performance test of the completed well.

Solving Problems Involving Ground-Water Contamination

The third and newest realm of the hydrogeologist is the application of hydrogeology to satisfy some regulatory or legal requirement. These projects are usually "dirty-water" projects; that is, they deal with contaminated sites. A host of recent federal and state laws and regulations require studies to be conducted by hydrogeologists and reports to be prepared for submittal to state agencies or the federal government. For example, the Federal Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) requires owners or operators of facilities that treat, store, or dispose of hazardous waste to have a ground-water-monitoring plan in place. Ground-water samples must be collected quarterly, and an annual report must be filed with either the EPA or a state agency that has been designated to act for the EPA. The collection of the ground-water samples and the preparation of the reports are frequently done by hydrogeologists. If ground-water monitoring shows that a release of hazardous waste or hazardous waste constituents to ground water has occurred, the site owner or operator must submit a plan for a ground-water-quality assessment program

that has been certified by a qualified geologist or geotechnical engineer. The plan must be approved by a hydrogeologist or engineer working for the regulatory agency and then carried out by hydrogeologists working for a consulting company that has been contracted by the site owner or operator.

RCRA is only one of many state and federal regulations that require work to be performed by hydrogeologists. This type of work requires that the hydrogeologist become thoroughly familiar with the specific requirements of existing regulations. Work must be scientifically correct, and it must also conform to the exact letter of the regulatory code. These regulations cover activities such as treatment, storage, and disposal of hazardous and radioactive waste and tailings from the mining and milling of radioactive minerals; the disposal of municipal waste; the injection of liquid waste into deep injection wells; the investigation and remediation of contaminated soil at abandoned hazardous waste sites; and the removal of underground storage tanks.

Hydrogeologists working for owners or consulting firms conduct the field studies, analyze the field and laboratory data, and write the necessary final reports. Hydrogeologists working for regulatory agencies conduct field inspections of regulated facilities and review and approve the submitted reports. Work is often done under the cloak of a legal document such as a consent decree. Such a document specifies the scope of the work, the procedures to be utilized, and the schedule that must be followed. Failure to comply with the document may result in the assessment of fines and penalties against the site owner. This creates an incentive for the hydrogeologist to work in an effective and efficient manner. Litigation may arise from cases involving contamination of soil and ground water. The litigation may be initiated by the federal government or a state to compel the cleanup of a contaminated site. A private party can also file a lawsuit to recover damages due to the release of a toxic or hazardous substance to soil or ground water. The damages may be to property or to the health of the plaintiff. In all such lawsuits, both sides will generally rely upon the expert testimony of hydrogeologists.

1.8.2 Business Aspects of Hydrogeology

Hydrogeologists who perform any of the interesting work just described also expect to be compensated for their time. There must be a source of funds to pay their wages. The salary of a hydrogeologist working for a project owner is paid by the owner out of the revenue that is generated by the business. A hydrogeologist working for a consulting company is paid by the company with funds that come from fees charged to the project owner for the work that is contracted. The salary of a hydrogeologist working for a state review agency is paid with either tax revenue or a combination of tax revenue, fees charged to project owners who submit plans to the agency for review, and costs recovered from polluters by means of lawsuits filed by the state or federal government.

A hydrogeologist working for a consulting firm is required to keep track of the amount of time spent working directly on each assigned project and record it daily on a time sheet that is turned in every one to two weeks. Consulting work can be contracted in several ways. One method is a lump-sum cost for an entire project. Alternatively, the fee may be based on total hours spent plus direct expenses, such as travel costs and drilling subcontracts. For lump-sum projects, the consulting company management needs to know the total number of hours employees spend on a project to determine if the project made or lost money. For hourly rate projects, the management needs to know how many hours were spent on a project to determine the fee. The hourly rate charged is usually several times the actual hourly wage paid to the employee, because it must also cover employee benefits, such as insurance, social security, paid holidays and vacations; fixed overhead, such as rent, insurance, and utilities; office overhead, such as office furniture, computers, field equipment, copiers, and secretarial help; administrative overhead for

salaries of management; sales overhead for the time the staff spends preparing proposals for new work and calling on prospective clients; training costs, including both salaries and expenses for employees to receive both safety training and advanced education; and, finally, some profit for the firm's owners.

Many of the hours that a firm's employees spend, including general company management as opposed to project management, new business development, and training, cannot be billed to a client. However, if a consulting firm is to succeed, the employees must be able to bill a certain number of hours a year. To remain profitable, a firm must bring in enough business at a fair price, and the employees must work hard and efficiently to complete the work within the budget. If the firm fails to bring in enough new business, there might not be enough billable work available, thus leading to losses for the firm's owners and layoffs of employees.

If employees do not perform up to expectations, too many projects might result in financial loss, and the firm might not be able to remain in business. Employees also must be thorough and careful in their work. If sloppy work occurs, a firm can be sued for malpractice. The legal costs of defending a firm against a malpractice suit can be great, and the damage awards if a firm loses a suit can jeopardize the economic viability of the business. Many firms carry errors and omissions insurance to protect themselves from malpractice lawsuits. This type of insurance is expensive and difficult to obtain. The policy has a deductible amount (the minimum sum the firm must pay if the lawsuit is lost) and a maximum amount (the greatest amount the insurance company must pay, no matter how high the award to the plaintiff). If a firm has a history of being sued for malpractice and losing, then such insurance might be impossible to obtain.

1.8.3 Ethical Aspects of Hydrogeology

Hydrogeologists have ethical responsibilities to their employers, clients, and the general public. As an employee, a hydrogeologist has a responsibility to perform the best work at all times, to be diligent in personal work habits, and to be honest in financial matters with the employer. Hydrogeologists who work for consulting firms must treat the firm's clients fairly in financial matters and do work that is as precise and correct as is possible. Only that work necessary to fulfill the contractual obligations should be conducted, even if the project still has money available in the budget. If the contracted work cannot be completed within the budget because of unforeseen or changed circumstances, the client can be approached for a modification of the terms of the contract.

Ethical problems can potentially arise for employees if a firm has obtained a fixed-price contract or a contract that calls for an hourly rate plus expenses with a maximum billable amount. If all project funds are expended before the work is completed and the employees working on the project keep charging hours to that project, it will become a money loser. This does not look good for the employees since the objective of a consulting business is to make money, not lose it. There might be a temptation to keep working on a losing project but to charge one's time to a project that still has some funds available; however, this practice is not only unethical, but could also be construed as fraud. The manager of one consulting project where the client was the federal government was convicted of falsifying time cards in such a case and was sentenced to a federal penitentiary.

If a hydrogeologist determines that a particular situation may adversely affect the client, such as contamination at a site that was thought to be clean, the client should be advised promptly. This information is confidential and should not be disclosed to others unless it is required by law. Once advised by the hydrogeologist, the property owner may have the legal requirement to report the contamination to the appropriate regulatory agency.

The hydrogeologist must also be aware of and avoid any conflicts of interest. For example, an employee of a state regulatory agency should not accept any private consulting

work on projects within the state, nor accept any consulting work from firms that are regulated within the state, even if the work is on an out-of-state project. A consulting firm that works for a client who has a contamination plume extending offsite to an adjacent property should not work for the owner of the adjacent property unless both parties agree to be bound by the findings of a single study covering both properties. If a hydrogeologist becomes aware of any decision or action of a client or the employer that violates any law or regulation, then the hydrogeologist should advise against that action or decision. If the violation continues and appears materially to affect the public health, safety, or welfare, the hydrogeologist should promptly advise the proper authorities. (As a practical matter, although illegal, such action may result in the hydrogeologist being fired. Being ethical sometimes comes with a price.) If a report for submission to a regulatory agency is being prepared, it should honestly report all findings of a study, even if parts may be adverse to the client's position. Many times a client is given a draft of a report to review prior to submittal. In this case, the hydrogeologist must resist suggestions to delete or change data or conclusions that should be contained in an honest report, because she or he has an ethical responsibility to the general public to protect human health, safety, and welfare—as well as the environment.

Hydrogeologists who work for review agencies have an ethical responsibility to base their reviews only on scientific considerations. Such agencies can be politicized, and pressure may be put on a reviewer to base a decision on political rather than scientific grounds. Just as the hydrogeologist working for the client must be honest in preparing a report, the reviewer who reads it has an ethical responsibility to be equally honest. Hydrogeologists working for review agencies also usually keep time sheets. Certain enforcement actions allow the regulatory agencies to recover their costs from the polluters, including the wages and benefits of employees. The regulatory hydrogeologist has an ethical responsibility to be as accurate as possible in assigning time to specific enforcement actions for which cost recovery is anticipated.

1.9 Sources of Hydrogeologic Information

Hydrogeologic information is available from a wide range of sources. In terms of sheer volume, the Water Resources Division of the United States Geological Survey (USGS) is the leading source in the United States. This agency collects basic data on streamflow surface-water quality, ground-water levels, and ground-water quality. The USGS also conducts water resources investigations and basic research. USGS publications are available in libraries that are designated depositories of federal documents; these publications are also available from the U.S. Government Printing Office.

The USGS maintains a large volume of data on both ground and surface water. Most of these data are available through the internet. The URL for the USGS home page is *http://www.usgs.gov.* Streamflow data are available at *http://waterdata.usgs.gov.* At that address one can select a specific state and then search for specific streamflow gauging stations by county or drainage basin. Both current and historical data are available. One can either obtain a table of values or a graph of daily or peak flows.

Links are available to home pages for state offices of the USGS. These pages include lists of publications for each district office. A link is also available for each watershed to EPA databases. Lists of EPA-regulated sites can be generated for the watershed.

The URL for the EPA home page is *http://epa.gov.* A wealth of information is available for various EPA program offices. You might be especially interested in the EPA's Office of Ground Water and Drinking Water at *http://www.epa.gov/OGWDW/.*

The National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) is the parent organization of the National Weather Service. The *Climatic Record of the United States* is published for each state and contains precipitation, temperature, evaporation, and other climati

data. Climatic data are available from the NOAA. The URL for its home page is *http://noaa.gov.* Climatic data from land-surface stations (e.g., temperature and precipitation) are available at *http://www.ncdc.noaa.gov/ol/climate/climatedata.html.*

The National Ground Water Association (NGWA) maintains Ground Water On-Line, a computerized database of bibliographic information. As of 2000 there were more than 80,000 documents indexed by more than 700 hydrogeological descriptors. A bibliographic search can be conducted by computer that will seek out all indexed documents that correspond to the selected descriptors. This service is available at no cost to members of the NGWA (including student members).* To access this service go to *http://www.ngwa.org.* Locate the button on their home page marked GWOL and click on it to start a search. An interlibrary loan and photocopying service is also available to obtain copies of the articles that the database search found.

Other U.S. federal agencies that may conduct studies related to hydrogeology include the Corps of Engineers, Bureau of Land Management, Bureau of Reclamation, Soil Conservation Service, Environmental Protection Agency, Nuclear Regulatory Agency, and Department of Energy. In most states, one or more agencies are responsible for water-oriented research and other activities. The functions, responsibilities, and organizational formats of state agencies in water resources activities vary from state to state. Typical state agency designations include departments of water resources or water survey, geological surveys, departments of conservation or natural resources or environmental protection, and departments or boards of health. In many states, various responsibilities are allocated among several agencies. In addition, Congress has established provisions for a water resources research center or institute in each state and in Puerto Rico. These are associated with a major university in each state. Reports of current research and recent developments in hydrogeology and ground water are included in the following journals:

- *Bulletin,* International Association of Scientific Hydrology
- *Environmental Science and Technology*
- *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta*
- *Ground Water*
- *Ground Water Monitoring and Remediation*
- *Journal of the American Water Works Association*
- *Journal of Applied Hydrogeology*
- *Journal of Contaminant Hydrology*
- *Journal of Hydrology*
- *Memoirs,* International Association of Hydrogeologists
- *Transactions,* American Society of Civil Engineers
- *Water Resources Bulletin*
- *Water Resources Research*

Several professional organizations sponsor symposia and meetings where technical sessions on hydrogeology or ground water are held. These include the following:

- American Geophysical Union
- American Institute of Hydrology

---

*The National Ground Water Association can be contacted for membership information at 1-800-332-2104 or by e-mail at *ngwa@ngwa.org* or by snail mail at NGWA, 601 Dempsey Road, Westerville, OH 43081-8987.

- American Society of Civil Engineers
- American Water Resources Association
- Geological Society of America
- Geological Society of Canada
- International Association of Hydrogeologists
- International Association of Scientific Hydrology
- International Water Resources Association
- National Ground Water Association

1.10 American Society of Testing and Materials Standards

The American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM) is a voluntary organization tha publishes consensus standards and guides for a wide variety of engineering and techno logical applications ranging from construction and materials testing to environmental as sessment. A committee of volunteers drawn from industry, academia, manufacturing consulting, and government writes each standard or guide. Anyone from the technica community can volunteer to be on one of the subcommittees.

The ASTM standards are voluntary in the sense that the organization has no authorit to require their use. In fact, many states have specific requirements for such practices as de sign and installation of ground-water monitoring wells that are also covered by ASTM standards. The state requirements do not necessarily conform to those published by ASTM

At the present time there are in excess of 750 ASTM standard practices and guides tha are applicable to the ground-water industry. The proliferation of these standards ha caused some concern among hydrogeologists that "cookie cutter" procedures are replacin professional judgment. They are also in competition with guides and practices publishe by the EPA, USGS, and various state agencies. Conversely, standardization of test metho leads to more uniform results so that studies by different organizations can be more easil compared. Likewise, in the absence of specific state requirements, consultants may fin some protection against malpractice lawsuits if work is performed in rigorous compliance with the corresponding voluntary ASTM standard. Hydrogeologists can also use ASTM standards in the preparation of contract specifications for subcontract work such as tha which is done by drillers and laboratories. By specifying an ASTM standard, the hydrog ologist can communicate to the driller exactly what procedures are to be used in the field.

At various points in this textbook the author will refer via footnotes to specific ASTM standards. As the standards are updated annually, this will not be a complete listing an the reader should only consider it to be an indication of the type of activities for whic ASTM has published standards. ASTM* should be contacted directly for current informa tion on its standards.

1.11 Working the Problems

Most chapters throughout this text have end-of-chapter problems for students to wor The answers to most odd-numbered problems are given in the back of the book. Step-by step solutions to the odd-numbered problems can be found on the author's web pag *www.appliedhydrogeology.com*. These problems are designed so that students can work the using only calculators, graph paper, and tables found in the appendices. Many solved e

*ASTM, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959, *http://www.astm.org.*

ample problems will be found throughout the book. By working the problems, students will gain a much deeper understanding of the material.

In working the problems, students should pay attention to the number of significant digits (significant figures) used. Significant digits arise when using measured values. Although we can count objects exactly, a measurement is always an approximation. The last digit in the measurement shows the degree of approximation. For example, a measurement of 17.63 cm is only an estimate. All we know for sure is that the object measured is actually somewhere between 17.625 and 17.635 cm long. The measurement 17.63 cm has four significant digits. If someone else measures the same objects and says that it is 18 cm long, the actual length is between 17.5 and 18.5 cm, and the measurement has been made to two significant digits. When two or more numbers are multiplied (or divided), their product (or quotient) should have the same number of significant digits as the multiplier (or divisor) with the least number. For example, if we measure the sides of a rectangle as 17.63 cm and 14.2356 cm, the area of the rectangle is 251.0 cm^2, not 250.97363 cm^2. We use the number of significant digits of the least precise measurement, in this case four. We report the number as 251.0, not 251, to show the number of significant digits. When measurements are added (or subtracted), the sum (or difference) should not have any significant digits to the right of the last significant digit of any of the addends (or subtrahends). For example, if we add 17 + 2.35 + 1.346 + 0.072, the sum is 21, not 20.768. Since 17 has only two significant digits, the sum can only have two significant digits. Notice that we have rounded the number that is obtained from the calculator to the appropriate number of significant digits. However, if the measurements were 17.0, 2.35, 1.346, and 0.072, the sum would be 20.8, not 21, because 17.0 has three significant digits. Be aware that the numbers 17, 17.0, 17.00, and 17.000 differ in the number of significant digits. When zeros occur to the left of the decimal, it is harder to determine the number of significant digits. For example, 100.0 has four significant digits, and 100. has three significant digits, but does 100 have one, two, or three significant digits? Unless an uncertainty range is specified, this question is unanswered. For example, 100 ± 1 has three significant digits and 100 ± 10 has two significant digits. For purposes of working problems in the text, for a number such as 100 (or 2500 or 10,000), assume that it is exact and determine the number of significant digits from other numbers in the problem.

In solving the problems in the text we frequently employ the concept of dimensional analysis. In dimensional analysis the units of measurement are used as a guide in the calculations to obtain the desired units for the answer. A simple example of dimensional analysis is in calculating the number of inches in a measured distance of 1.7 mi. We know that there are exactly 12 in. in 1 ft and exactly 5280 ft in 1 mi. The problem can be set up as follows:

$$1.7 \text{ mi} \times 5280 \text{ ft}/1 \text{ mi} \times 12 \text{ in.}/1 \text{ ft} = 107{,}212 \text{ in.}$$

Some of the units cancel each other, since they appear in both the numerator and the denominator. In this example, miles and feet cancel, leaving inches as the unit.

The answer of 107,712 in. then must be adjusted to the proper number of significant digits.

PROBLEM

How many significant digits are in 107,712 in.?

The mileage measurement of 1.7 has only two significant digits, so we round the answer to 110,000 in., a number with two significant digits.

In working the problems, you will also need to use conversion factors. These are shortcuts to dimensional analysis when converting units from one system of measurement to

another. Conversion factors for length, area, volume, and time are found in the appei dices; those of flow are inside the front cover.

PROBLEM

Use a conversion factor to find the number of inches in 1.7 mi.

In Appendix 7 we see that 1 mi is equal to 63,360 in. Therefore, 1.7 mi × 63,360 in. = 107,710 i Since there are only two significant figures in 1.7 mi, the correct answer is 110,000 in.

One needs to be careful in making unit conversions between measuring systems. W know by definition that a mile is exactly 63,360 in. long. However, when converting fro the English system to the International System of Units (SI), the conversion factors may b rounded: 1 ft is 0.3048 m to four significant digits; 1 ft is also 0.305 m to three significant di its and 0.30 m to two significant digits. When converting units between systems, either th measured value or the unit conversion factor could control the number of significant digit

The units with which you will work in this book have all been derived from three bas factors, mass (M), time (T), and length (L). Areas are in units of length times length (L^2) ar volumes are in units of length cubed (L^3). For example, velocity is length divided by tim (L/T) and is expressed in such units as feet per day (ft/d) or meters per second (m/s). Co centration is mass of solute per unit volume of solution (M/L^3) and is expressed in uni such as milligrams per liter (mg/L). Density is the mass of an object per unit volume (M/L and is expressed in units such as kilograms per cubic meter (kg/m^3). As a check on dime sional analysis using units, it is often helpful to conduct dimensional analysis using M, and T.

The United States is now the only county in the world that has not completely adop ed the SI system for units of measurement. Instead of the logical and simple system of m limeters, centimeters, meters, and kilometers, we have inches, feet, yards, and mile ounces and pounds instead of grams and kilograms; and gallons and cubic feet instead liters and cubic meters. In this edition we continue to use both the English and the SI sy tems of units in the example problems. In professional practice, hydrogeologists can u the system that is in widest use in their home country, but all should have at least a pas ing knowledge of both systems.

1.12 Solving Problems Using Spreadsheets

Many of the end-of-chapter problems can be solved using a spreadsheet program, such Microsoft Excel. Excel is a powerful program with many features—too many for us to co sider in this book. There are a host of books published on how to use Excel and the progra itself has an excellent help section. What you will find here is a very brief introduction Excel and a demonstration of how algebraic equations can be written and solved.

The spreadsheet is a matrix of cells set up in rows and columns. The columns are l beled with a letter along the top and the rows with a number on the right side. Each c has an address, which lists the column and a row in which it appears. The cell in the upp left corner is A1. A cell can hold text, a value, or a formula. The formulas can refer to oth cells in which the values to be acted upon are stored.

The basic numeric operators in Excel are as follows:

+	addition
–	subtraction
*	multiplication
/	division
^	exponentiation

Other functions include:

ACOS	Returns the arccosine of a number
ASIN	Returns the arcsin of a number
ATAN	Returns the arctangent of a number
AVERAGE	Returns the average value of a group of numbers
COS	Returns the cosine of a number
EXP	Returns e raised to the power of a given number
LN	Returns a natural log of a given number
LOG10	Returns the base 10 log of a number
SIN	Returns the sine of a number
SQRT	Returns the square root of a number
SUM	Returns the sum of a group of numbers
TAN	Returns the tangent of a number

Numbers in Excel include positive and negative real numbers. Numbers that are very large or very small are often written in scientific notation. One million can be written as 1.0×10^6. In Excel we would write this number as 1.0E6. Likewise, the value 7.56×10^{-7} is written as 7.56E−7.

When a formula is entered into a cell, one always starts with the = sign to indicate that a formula is being entered. The direction keys are used to move the cursor to a cell. The active cell is indicated in the "name box," which is near the top left side of the screen. As the formula is typed, it will appear in both the cell and a bar above the matrix called the formula bar. After the formula has been entered, and the return key pushed, the formula in the cell is replaced by the value that it returns. If the cursor is placed over a cell that contains a formula, the formula will appear in the formula bar, and the returned value in the cell.

Excel will perform the numeric operations in the following order: first exponentiation, then multiplication and division, and then addition and subtraction. Parentheses can be used to not only control the order of execution of the numeric operations, but also to clarify the equation.

An Excel formula for the area of a circle, where the value of the radius is stored in cell B1, can be written as follows:

```
=3.1416*B1^2
```

The value of B1 is first raised to the power of 2 and then multiplied by pi. If we have the value of the diameter of the circle stored in cell B3, then we could write the formula as

```
=3.1416*(B3/2)^2
```

Here the parentheses indicate that the value in B3 must first be divided by 2 and then that value squared before being multiplied by pi.

Excel can perform statistical operations on an array of values. For example, a column of numbers can be summed with the SUM function. If the column of numbers appears in column B from cell B3 to cell B10, one can put the following formula in any cell but B3 through B10.

```
=SUM(B3:B10)
```

The : indicates that all numbers between B3 and B10 are to be summed. If we wanted to sum B3 + B4 + B5 + B6 + B10, we could write

```
=SUM(B3:B6,B10)
```

It is a good practice to identify the contents of a cell that contain a value or a formula by entering text in a cell to the left or the right.

Notation

H_v	Heat of vaporization	T	Temperature

Analysis

a. In Decision 1631 on the Amendments of the City of Los Angeles' Water Right Licenses for Diversion of Water from Streams Tributary to Mono Lake, the State of California Water Resources Control Board took a middle road and allowed some diversions if and when the level of Mono Lake rises above an elevation of 6392 ft. The full text of the decision can be found at *http://www.monolake.org*, and on the *Applied Hydrogeology* home page.

Assume that you are a lawyer for either of the two sides in the case. The decision has been appealed and you are to prepare a brief to support one of the following two extreme positions.

1. All water in the tributary streams should be reserved to support the fish and aquatic life in the tributary streams as well as the unique ecology of Mono Lake. Therefore, no diversions should be permitted regardless of the water level of Mono Lake.
2. It is more important to supply water to the thriving communities of southern California than to worry about brine shrimp. Moreover, the City of Los Angeles has had a long-standing legal permit for the diversions and has invested a lot of money in the aqueduct to transport water from the diversion to the city.

b. Make a spreadsheet program to convert measurements in feet to inches, yards, miles, millimeters, centimeters, meters, and kilometers. The conversion factors can be found in Appendix 7.

Problems

Note that the answers to odd-numbered problems are at the end of the book and step-by-step solutions to the odd-numbered problems can be found on the *Applied Hydrogeology* home page: *http://www.appliedhydrogeology.com.*

1. A vertical water tank is 15 ft in diameter and 60 ft high. What is the volume of the tank in cubic feet?
2. What is the volume of the above tank in cubic meters?
3. If the above tank were measured and found to have an inside diameter of exactly 15.00 ft and a height of 60.00 ft, what would be the volume in cubic feet?
4. What would be the above tank's volume in cubic meters?
5. If a well pumps at a rate of 8.4 gal per minute, how long would it take to fill the tank described above?
6. The only swimming pool at the El Cheapo Motel is outdoors. It is 5.0 m wide and 12.0 m long. If the weekly evaporation is 2.35 in., how many gallons of water must be added to the pool if it does not rain?
7. If during the next week the pool still loses 2.35 in. of water to evaporation, even with 29 mm of rainfall, how many liters of water must be added?
8. A ground-water basin has a surface area of 125 km^2. The following long-term annual averages have been measured:

   Precipitation 60.6 cm
   Evapotranspiration 46.3 cm
   Overland flow 3.4 cm
   Baseflow 10.6 cm

   There is no streamflow into the basin and no ground-water flow either into or out of the basin.
   (A) Prepare an annual water budget for the basin as a whole, listing inputs in one column and outputs in another. Make sure that the two columns balance as these are long-term values and we assume no change in the volume of water stored in the basin.
   (B) Prepare an annual water budget for the streams.
   (C) Prepare an annual water budget for the ground-water basin.
   (D) What is the annual runoff from the basin expressed in centimeters?
   (E) What is the annual runoff from the basin expressed as an average rate in cubic meters per second?
9. The parking lot of the Spendmore Megamall has an area of 128 ac. It is partially landscaped to provide some areas of grass. Assume that an average 63% of the water that falls on the parking lot will flow into a

nearby drainage ditch, and the rest either evaporates or soaks into unpaved areas. If a summer thunderstorm drops 3.23 cm of rain, how many cubic feet of water will flow into the drainage ditch?

10. What mass of water at 15°C can be cooled 1°C by heat necessary to melt 185 g of ice at 0°C?

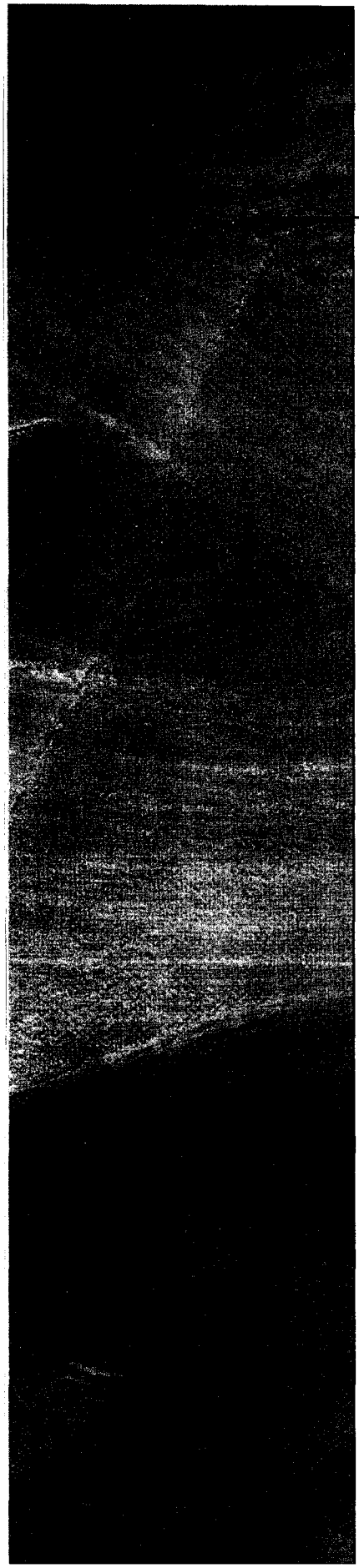
11. What mass of water at 15°C can be cooled 1°C by the amount of heat needed to sublime (go from a solid to a vapor state) 18 g of ice at 0°C?

12. A 500-milliliter (mL) bottle of spring water, which is at room temperature of 25°C, is poured over 120 g of ice that is at –8°C. What will be the final temperature of the water when all of the ice has melted, assuming that it is in an insulated container that does not change temperature?

13. At a water elevation of 6391 ft, Mono Lake has a volume of 2,939,000 ac-ft, and a surface area of 48,100 ac. Annual inputs to the lake include 8 in. of direct precipitation, runoff from gauged streams of 150,000 ac-ft per year, and ungauged runoff and ground-water inflow of 37,000 ac-ft per year. Evaporation is 45 in. per year.
    (A) Make a water budget showing inputs, in ac-ft per year and outputs in ac-ft per year. Does the input balance the output?
    (B) Will the average lake level rise or fall from the 6391-ft elevation over the long term?
    (C) What would be the lake surface area when the inputs balance the outputs? (Assume that the volume of gauged and ungauged runoff and ground-water inflows remain constant with a change in lake surface area.)
    (D) What is the residence time* for water in Mono Lake when the water surface is at 6391 ft?

14. Assume that Mono Lake stood at an elevation of 6391 ft, as described in problem 13, and a total annual diversion of 85,000 ac-ft of water were allowed from the Mono Lake basin.
    (A) Would the average lake level rise or fall?
    (B) What would the final lake surface area be after a new equilibrium is established? (Assume that the volume of gauged and ungauged runoff and ground-water inflows remain constant with a change in lake surface area.)

*The residence time of a body of water is the average time that it would take for the volume of water to be exchanged once.



CHAPTER 2

Elements of the Hydrologic Cycle

Rivers depend for their existence on the rains and on the waters within the earth, as the earth is hollow, and has water in its cavities.

Anaxagoras of Clazomenae, 500–428 B.C.

2.1 Evaporation

Water molecules are continually being exchanged between liquid and at mospheric water vapor. If the number passing to the vapor state exceeds the number joining the liquid, the result is **evaporation.** When water passes from the liquid to the vapor state, it will absorb about 590 cal of hea from the evaporative surface for every gram of water evaporated. The vapor pressure of the liquid is directly proportional to the temperature Evaporation will proceed until the air becomes saturated with moisture The **absolute humidity** of a given air mass is the number of grams of wate per cubic meter of air.

At any given temperature, air can hold a maximum amount of mois ture, called the **saturation humidity,** which is directly proportional to the temperature of the air. Table 2.1 gives the saturation humidity for severa environmental temperatures. The **relative humidity** for an air mass is the percent ratio of the absolute humidity to the saturation humidity for the temperature of the air mass. As the relative humidity approaches 100% evaporation ceases.

When an air mass is cooled and the saturation humidity value drops **condensation** occurs as the air mass can no longer hold all of its humidity If the absolute humidity remains constant, the relative humidity will rise When it reaches 100%, any further cooling will result in condensation. The **dew point** for an air mass is the temperature at which condensation wil begin. As condensation is the reverse of evaporation, the process of con densation releases about 590 cal of heat to the surroundings per gram o water, termed the latent heat of condensation. Evaporation of water take

Table 2.1 Saturation humidity of air (grams per cubic meter)

Temperature (°C)	Humidity (gm/m^3)
−25	0.705
−20	1.074
−15	1.605
−10	2.358
−5	3.407
0	4.874
5	6.797
10	9.399
15	12.83
20	17.30
25	23.05
30	30.38

Source: Handbook of Chemistry and Physics *(Cleveland, Ohio: CRC Publishing Company, 1976).*

place from free-water surfaces—lakes, reservoirs, puddles, dew droplets, for example. The rate depends on factors such as the water temperature and the temperature and absolute humidity of the layer of air just above the free-water surface. Solar radiation is the driving energy force behind evaporation, as it warms both the water and the air. The rate of evaporation is also related to the wind, especially over land. The wind carries vapor away from the free-water surface and keeps absolute humidity low. By disturbing the water surface, the wind may also increase the rate of molecular diffusion from it.

Evaporation from lakes and reservoirs is an important consideration in water-budget studies. It can be computed for a lake or reservoir if all inflows (precipitation over the surface, surface-water inflow, and ground-water inflow), outflows (ground-water outseepage, spillway discharge, and pumpage), and change in storage are known. The hydrologic equation (inflow = outflow ± changes in storage) is used. These factors, with the exception of the ground-water flux, can be measured with an error of perhaps± 10%. In a carefully prepared water-budget study for Lake Hefner, Oklahoma, daily evaporation was computed to an accuracy of 5% to 10% (Harbeck & Kennon 1954). For many reservoirs, monthly or annual evaporation can be computed easily. The most difficult factor to determine is the ground-water flux.

Free-water evaporation is measured quite simply by using shallow pans. The most commonly used is the **land pan.** The U.S. National Weather Service maintains about 450 evaporation stations using Class A land pans. Similar pans are used in Canada. They are 4 ft (122 cm) in diameter and 10 in. (25.4 cm) deep, made of unpainted galvanized metal. Land pans are placed on supports so that air can circulate all around. Water depths from 7 to 8 in. (18 to 20 cm) are maintained. Records are kept of the daily depth of water, the volume of water added to replace evaporated water, and the daily precipitation into the pan. Using the hydrologic budget, the daily evaporation can be computed. Errors may result from splash caused by heavy rainfall and drinking by birds. The wind movement is also measured and expressed in units of miles per day (mi/d). (A steady wind blowing at a velocity of 10 miles per hour (mi/h) would have a 24-h wind movement of 240 mi/d.)

Research has shown that the manner in which precipitation is measured can affect the amount of evaporation that is calculated at an evaporation station. Precipitation can be determined with a **rain gauge** placed next to the evaporation pan. There are two basic

Table 2.2 Class A land pan coefficients for midwestern United States

January	0.62	August	0.75
February	0.72	September	0.73
March	0.77	October	0.69
April	0.77	November	0.63
May	0.78	December	0.58
June	0.77		
July	0.76		
	Annual 0.75		

Source: W. J. Roberts & J. B. Stall, Illinois State Water Survey Report of Investigation *(1967): 57.*

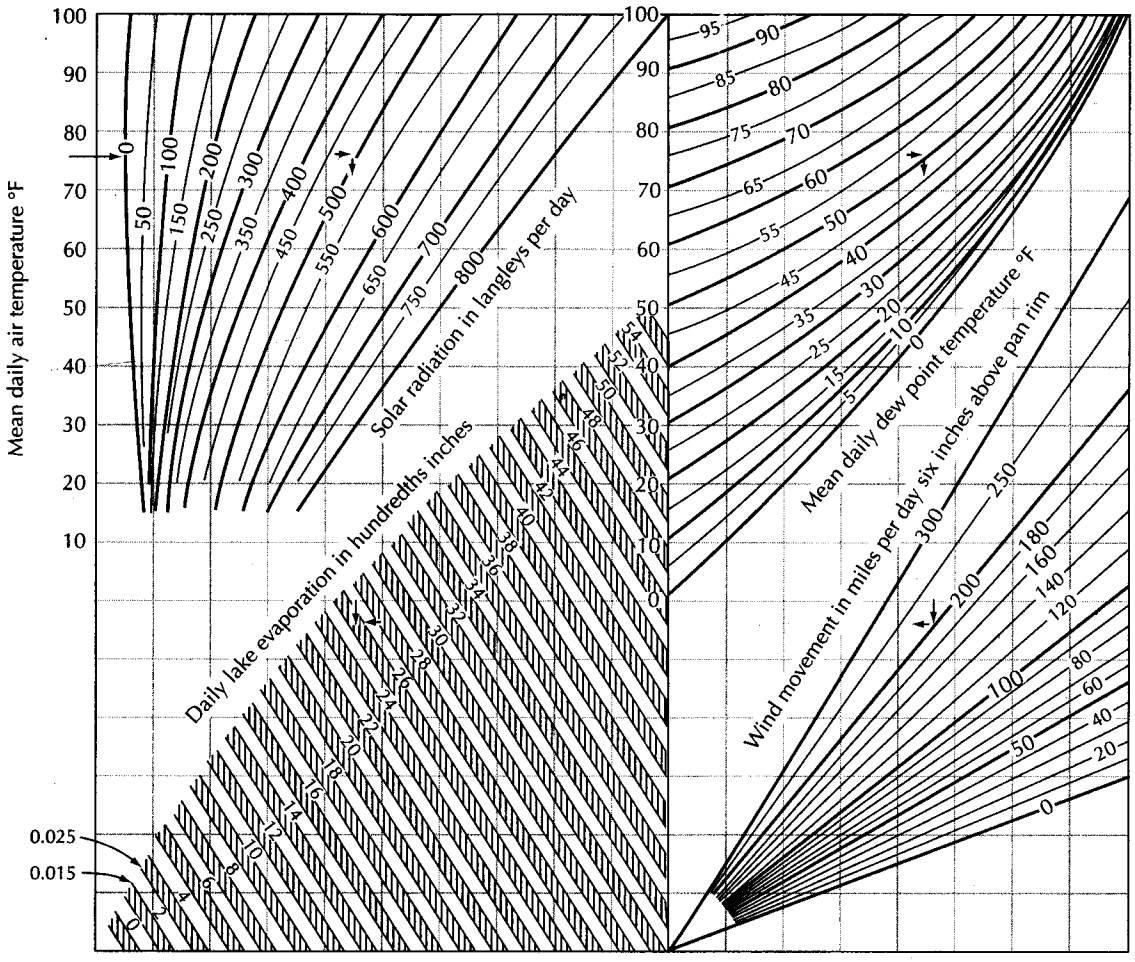
varieties of rain gauges. A nonrecording rain gauge is simply a container in which water accumulates and then the volume of water is measured periodically, typically once a day. The depth of precipitation is found by dividing the volume of water by the cross-sectional area of the collector. A recording rain gauge is designed so that it will indicate the time of day when the precipitation occurs. The volume of water that collects in a rain gauge can be affected by the exposure of the gauge to wind.

Daily measurements of water level in the pan and precipitation as measured by the rain gauge are made. An alternative method is to use a sensitive water-level recorder and continuously record the water level in the evaporation pan. Net evaporation is determined by summing all measured declines in the water level. In this instance, the evaporation pan is acting as the rain gauge. In a study of evaporation in the Florida Everglades, during rain-free periods both types of evaporation stations yielded similar results; however, during rainy periods, measured evaporation at the stations that utilized rain gauges was significantly greater than the station with a level recorder. The conclusion of the study was that the rain gauge caught more rain than the pan. As a result, the calculated evaporation was higher at the stations using rain gauges, as the input to the hydrologic equation was greater (Gunderson 1989).

The water in a Class A land pan will be warmed much more readily by solar radiation than the surface waters of a lake or reservoir. The chief reason is the difference between the water depth in the pan and the depth of the surface layer of reservoir water. The pan may also gain or lose heat through the sides and bottom, a process that does not occur in reservoirs. For these reasons, observed pan evaporation is multiplied by a factor with a value less than 1.0, the pan coefficient, to estimate reservoir evaporation during the period of observation. Detailed studies in the United States Midwest have yielded monthly pan coefficients ranging from 0.58 in December to 0.78 in May, with an annual value of 0.75 (Roberts & Stall 1967) (see Table 2.2). The National Weather Service has developed a lake evaporation nomograph (Kohler, Nordenson, & Fox 1955). From this diagram, daily lake evaporation can be determined using mean daily temperature, solar radiation in langleys* per day, mean daily dew-point temperature, and wind movement in miles per day.

Begin reading the graph in Figure 2.1 from the left side at the mean daily air temperature, for example, 76°F. Note the horizontal line drawn across the chart along the 76°F axis. Perpendicular lines are dropped at the intersections of the values of solar radiation and

*A langley is a measure of solar radiation equal to 1 cal per square centimeter of surface. In the SI system (International System of Units, based on the meter, kilogram, second, and ampere), the unit is the joule per square meter, which is equal to 4.194×10^4 langleys.



▲ FIGURE 2.1
Nomograph used to determine the value of daily lake evaporation for shallow lakes if solar radiation, mean daily air temperature, mean daily dew-point temperature, and wind movement are known. *Source: Roberts & Stall,* Illinois State Water Survey Report of Investigation *(1967): 57.*

mean daily dew-point temperature. In the example, these are 500 langleys per day and 50°F. The right perpendicular line extends from the mean daily dew-point temperature to the total daily wind movement. The example value is 200 mi/d. From this intersection, a horizontal line extends toward the left. This horizontal line and the left perpendicular line will intersect in a field indicating the mean daily lake evaporation. For the example in Figure 2.1, this is 0.25 in./d.

In some instances, it may be necessary to estimate evaporation without the availability of evaporation pan data. Such estimates are possible via methods based on heat budgets (Hornberger et al. 1998). The energy budget for a reservoir may be used to find the amount of energy used for evaporation, which in turn can yield the amount of evaporation.

2.2 Transpiration

Free-water evaporation is only part of the mechanism for mass transfer of water to the atmosphere. Growing plants are continuously pumping water from the ground into the atmosphere through a process called **transpiration.** Water is drawn into a plant rootlet from

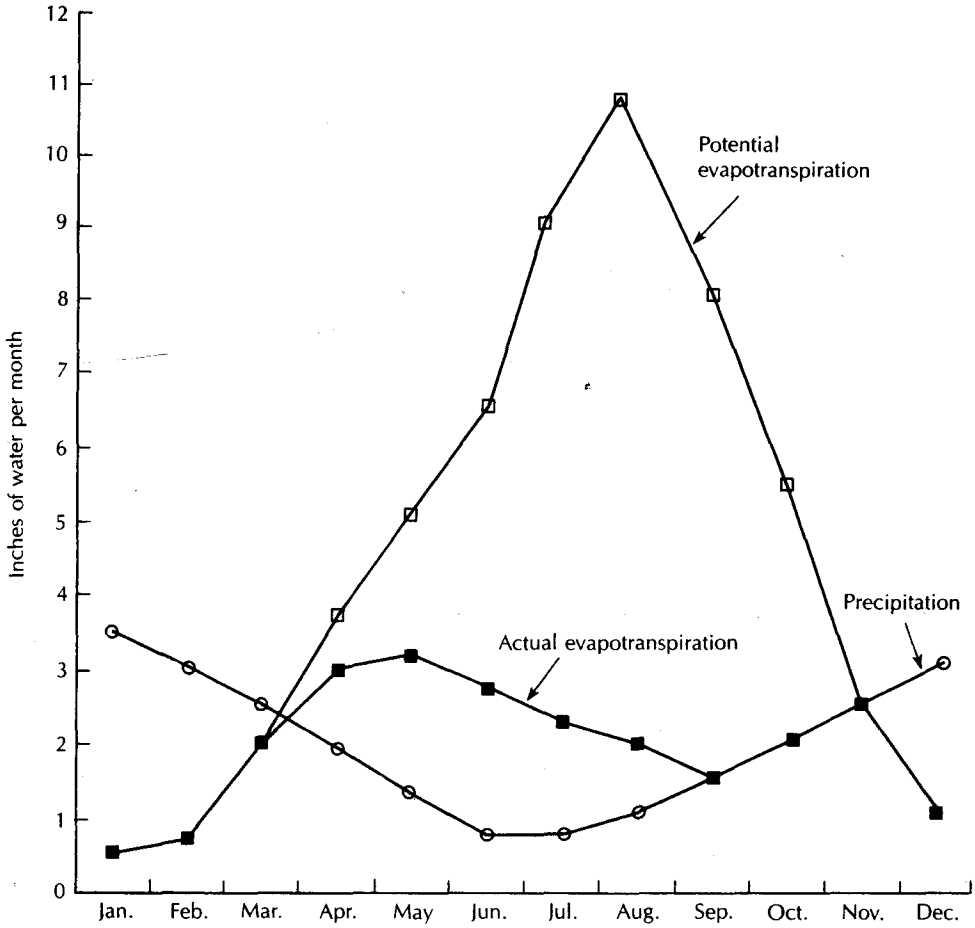
the soil moisture owing to osmotic pressure, whereupon it moves through the plant to th leaves. The turgidity of nonwoody vascular plants is caused by the cellular pressures o the contained water. The water is passed as vapor through openings in the surface of th leaves known as stomata. Air also passes through these openings. A small portion (les than 1%) of the water is used to manufacture plant tissue, but most is transpired to the at mosphere. The process of transpiration accounts for most of the vapor losses from a land dominated drainage basin. The amount of transpiration is a function of the density an size of the vegetation. As an example, transpiration from a cornfield in May, when th plants are a few centimeters high, is much less than in August, when they may exceed 7 f (2 m) in height. Transpiration is obviously important only during the growing season about 95% takes place during the daylight hours, when photosynthesis is occurring. Tran spiration is also limited by available **soil water.** When the soil-water content becomes s low that the surface tension of the soil-water interface exceeds the osmotic pressure of th roots, water will no longer enter the roots. This is termed the **wilting point** of the soil When available water becomes limited, deep-rooted plants are more resistant to drough wilting than shallow-rooted plants, as the former can draw moisture from deeper layers Also, some plants have fewer stomata and can close them through the use of special cell to reduce water loss during drought periods. Such drought-resistant species can transpir less water during periods of stress.

Phreatophytes are plants with a taproot system extending to the water table. They ca transpire at a high rate even in the desert, so long as the water table does not drop belov the taproot. In areas of low precipitation, the native vegetation is adapted to that which i existing with minimal water. These desert plants are called **xerophytes.** They have a shal low root system that spreads out away from the plant. Aquatic plants, or **hydrophytes,** ar a special case. They exist with their root systems submerged, and the special cells som plants have to close the stomata are lacking. As long as adequate water is available, tran spiration proceeds at a high rate. The rate of transpiration is controlled by the amount o solar energy and the heat content of the water. The water loss from a pond is about th same, regardless if emergent aquatic vegetation is present.

Measurement of transpiration can be performed under carefully controlled laborator conditions. A phytometer is a sealed container partially filled with soil. Transpiration b plants rooted in the soil causes an increase in the humidity, which can be measured in th air space around the plant. However, such laboratory studies reveal little about the behav ior of plants in natural or agricultural conditions.

2.3 Evapotranspiration

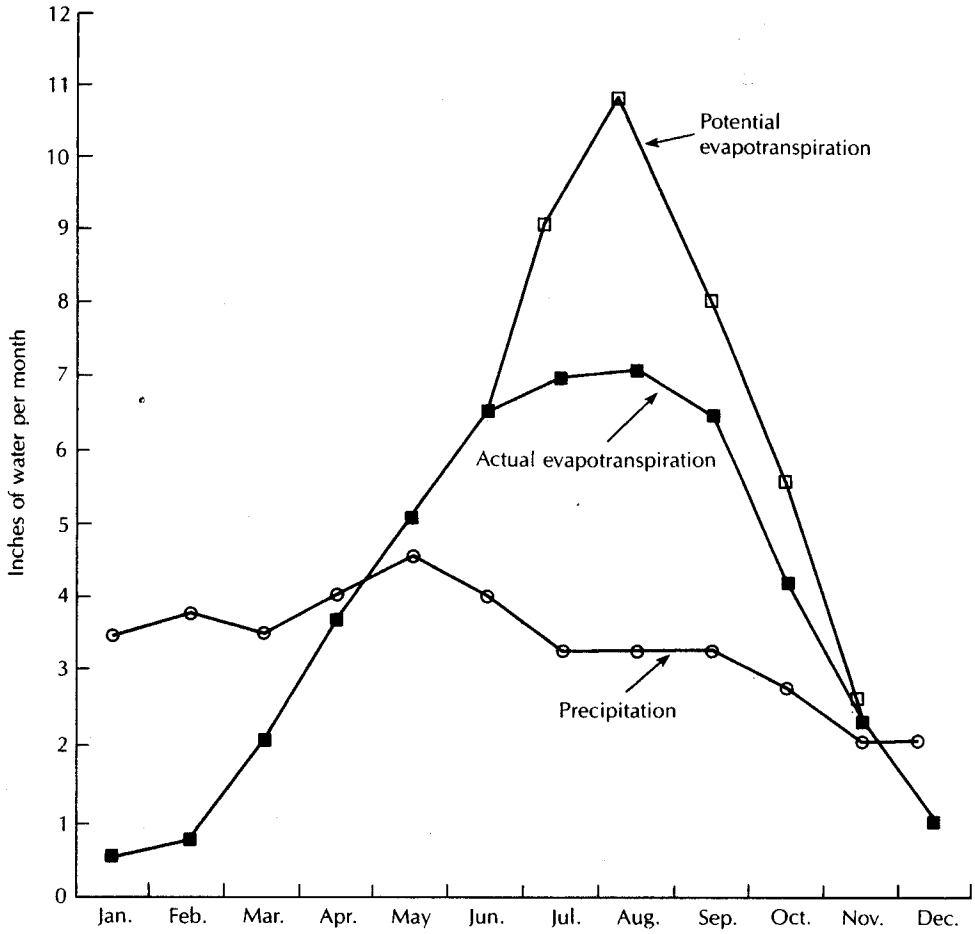
Under field conditions it is not possible to separate evaporation from transpiration totall Indeed, we are generally concerned with the total water loss, or **evapotranspiration,** fron a basin. Whether the loss is due to free-water evaporation, plant transpiration, or soil moisture evaporation is of little importance. The term **potential evapotranspiration** wa introduced by Thornthwaite (1944) as equal to "the water loss, which will occur if at n time there is a deficiency of water in the soil for the use of vegetation." Thornthwaite rec ognized an upper limit to the amount of water an ecosystem will lose by evapotranspira tion. The majority of the water loss due to evapotranspiration takes place during th summer months, with little or no loss during the winter. Because there is often not suffi cient water available from soil water, the term **actual evapotranspiration** is used to de scribe the amount of evapotranspiration that occurs under field conditions. Figure 2. shows potential evapotranspiration and actual evapotranspiration for a region with warm, dry summer and a cool, moist fall, winter, and spring.



▲ FIGURE 2.2
Diagram of potential and actual evapotranspiration in an area that has coarse soil with limited soil-moisture storage; warm, dry summers; and cool, moist winters.

Under these conditions the actual evapotranspiration is much less than the potential, especially if the soil-water storage capacity is limited. In months when the potential evapotranspiration is less than the rainfall, some of the demand will be met by drawing upon moisture stored in the soil. When available soil water is depleted, the actual evapotranspiration will be limited to the monthly precipitation. Figure 2.3 shows potential and actual evapotranspiration in an area where the precipitation is more or less evenly distributed through the year. This circumstance results in the actual evapotranspiration being closer to the potential value.

Thornthwaite's (1944) method is based upon the assumption that potential evapotranspiration was dependent only upon meteorological conditions and ignored the effect of vegetative density and maturity. While this assumption is incorrect, the method devised by Thornthwaite to compute potential evapotranspiration is still useful. The only necessary factors to input are mean monthly air temperature, latitude, and month (Thornthwaite & Mather 1955, 1957). The last two factors yield average monthly sunlight. The Thornthwaite method is reasonably accurate in determining annual values, especially in humid areas. As no factor for vegetative growth is included, values computed for spring



▲ FIGURE 2.3
Diagram of potential and actual evapotranspiration in an area with fine soils with ample soil-moisture storage, warm summers, cool winters, and little seasonal change in precipitation.

and early summer are too high, as the crop is just emerging; midsummer values may b too low.

Evapotranspiration can also be calculated by the energy balance method (Hornberge et al. 1998). To use this method, one needs to know the following parameters: net solar ra diation input, energy output through conduction to the ground, net output of sensible hea to the atmosphere, change in heat energy stored in the ground per unit surface area, an the latent heat of vaporization at the given temperature. Not all parameters are easy t measure or estimate and the method can be difficult to utilize.

Evapotranspiration can be measured directly using a lysimeter—a large containe holding soil and plants. The lysimeter is set outdoors, and the initial soil-water content i determined. Precipitation into the lysimeter and any irrigation water added are measured Changes in soil-moisture storage reveal how much of the added water is lost to evapo transpiration. It is necessary to design the lysimeter so that any moisture in excess of tha

specifically retained by the soil is collected. The following equation can be used with the lysimeter:

$$E_T = S_i + P_R + I_R - S_f - D_E \tag{2.1}$$

where

E_T is the evapotranspiration for a period

S_i is the volume of initial soil water

S_f is the volume of final soil water

P_R is the precipitation into the lysimeter

I_R is the irrigation water added to the lysimeter

D_E is the excess moisture drained from the soil

Lysimeters should be designed so that they accurately reproduce the soil type and profile, moisture content, and type and size of vegetation of the surrounding area. They should be buried so that the soil surface is at the same level inside and outside the container. Soil-water changes can be determined by sampling the soil, by means of moisture meters, or by weighing the entire mass of soil, water, and plants. Regardless of the method employed, operation of a lysimeter is both time consuming and expensive. If water is applied to the lysimeter at a rate sufficient to keep the soil at, or nearly at, the amount of water it can hold against gravity by surface tension, the lysimeter will measure potential evapotranspiration. When the soil water drops below that amount, lack of available water may limit evapotranspiration to some value less than the potential evapotranspiration. If the soil water drops below the wilting point, the plants may wither and die.

Evapotranspiration is the major use of water in all but extremely humid, cool climates. If evapotranspiration were reduced, then runoff or ground-water infiltration or both could increase, as would the available water supply. Studies have shown that basin runoff from a forested watershed has increased following the timbering of the forest (Hibbert 1967). The increase is greatest during the first year, when there is little reforestation. As the forest regrows, the runoff again decreases. Cutting of forests to increase runoff may also result in increased erosion from the uplands and concurrent sedimentation in the lowlands. Conversion of one plant cover to another can also affect the evapotranspiration rate. In Arizona, the conversion of a plot of land formerly covered with chaparral to grasses resulted in streamflow increases of several hundred percent. This was due in part to lower evapotranspiration, as the grass was not as deep rooted as the chaparral (Hibbert 1971). However, in Colorado, the conversion of sagebrush to bunchgrass had no appreciable effect on the amount of watershed runoff, although an increase in cattle forage did result (Shown, Lusby, & Branson 1972).

In some areas of the humid eastern United States, which were originally wooded, marginal farms have been abandoned. The old fields are gradually reverting to forest. There has been a concomitant decrease in streamflow from these watersheds. The replacement of deciduous forests with conifers results in an increase in evapotranspiration (Urie 1967).

In an urbanized watershed, one would naturally expect that the flood flows would increase as previous soil is replaced by impervious pavement. A surprising effect of urbanization is that in dry periods total runoff appears to be reduced (Ferguson & Suckling

1990). Thus, urbanization has actually increased evapotranspiration, even as the vegetative cover has decreased, perhaps due to the pattern of vegetation surrounded by pavement. Heat from the pavement areas causes overlying air to warm and rise, which can increase the evapotranspiration from the vegetated areas.

2.4 Condensation

When an air mass with a relative humidity lower than 100% is cooled without losing moisture, the relative humidity will approach 100% as the air approaches the dew-point temperature. When the air mass is saturated, condensation may start to occur. Condensation generally requires a surface or nucleus on which to form. The morning dew or frost is the result of condensation taking place on plants or other surfaces. Rain or ice crystals need nuclei in the atmosphere in order to form. Particles serving as nuclei include clay minerals, salt, and combustion products. In the absence of sufficient nuclei, the air mass may become supersaturated without the formation of raindrops or ice crystals. Once droplets or ice crystals have formed, they initially grow by attraction (diffusion) of water vapor and additional condensation. Rising air masses or upward movements of clouds tend to keep newly formed fog and cloud elements aloft. These elements range from 10 to 50 micrometers (μm) in size. As cloud elements collide and coalesce, raindrops begin to form. When the raindrops start to fall, further collisions occur, so that some raindrops may grow as large as 6 millimeters (mm) in diameter. Rain that falls through an unsaturated air mass may evaporate before it reaches the ground. Falling ice crystals grow by diffusion and collision to form snowflakes. The largest snowflakes form when temperatures are close to freezing.

2.5 Formation of Precipitation

For precipitation to occur, several conditions must be met: (1) a humid air mass must be cooled to the dew-point temperature, (2) condensation or freezing nuclei must be present, (3) droplets must coalesce to form raindrops, and (4) the raindrops must be of sufficient size when they leave the clouds to ensure that they will not totally evaporate before they reach the ground. Air masses are cooled by a process known as **adiabatic expansion,** which occurs when the air mass rises in the atmosphere. Since the atmosphere becomes less dense with altitude, a rising air mass must expand owing to the lower pressure. If no exchange of heat occurs between the air mass and its surroundings, the laws of thermodynamics dictate that the temperature will fall. When the air mass reaches the dew-point temperature, further lifting and cooling will cause condensation and the latent heat of vaporization is released.

2.6 Measurement of Precipitation and Snow

Any open container can be used to catch and measure rainfall. Experiments have shown that the size of the opening has little effect on the catch, except for very small (less than 3 cm in diameter) gauges (Huff 1955). The U.S. standard rain gauge has an opening 8 in. (20.3 cm) in diameter, whereas the Canadian standard gauge is 9 cm (3.57 in.) in diameter. These are manually read gauges; the water is emptied and the gauges are read once a day.

The catch of precipitation gauges is affected by high winds. Such gauges generally catch less than the true amount of rainfall because of updrafts around the gauge opening. The location of the gauge is also critical. In one study, two identical 8-in. gauges were placed 10 ft (3 m) apart on a ridge. One gauge consistently caught 50% more rainfall than the other (Court 1960). Gauges should be placed as close to the ground as pos-

sible to avoid wind. They should be in the open, away from trees and buildings. Low bushes and shrubs can provide a windbreak. Level ground is best, with the top of the gauge horizontal. On steep slopes, it may be desirable to have the orifice opening parallel to the slope. The effect of wind is greatest for light rain or snow. Some rain gauges are equipped with a shield, or wind deflector, around the opening to overcome wind problems. This will improve the catch of snow, but it will still be less than 100% effective in substantial winds.

Several available types of recording rain gauges can automatically measure or weigh the precipitation. The temporal distribution of precipitation through a day can thus be obtained. Such data are necessary for any studies of precipitation intensity. For remote areas, recording rain gauges can be used to record daily precipitation for long time periods. In such circumstances, manual gauges could provide only a total rainfall for the period between readings.

In the United States there are approximately 13,500 precipitation stations, for the most part operated by trained volunteers. Daily records from these weather stations are published monthly on a state-by-state basis in *Climatological Data;* data from recording stations are published in *Hourly Precipitation Data.* Both of these are publications of the U.S. Environmental Data Service. Data are also available at the National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administrations website. Canada has about 2000 precipitation stations, the data from which are published by the Canadian Atmospheric Environment Service in the *Monthly Record of Observations.*

Radar can be used to measure the intensity of precipitation over a wide area. In the United States, the NEXRAD radar system is being implemented. It offers a better detailed view of the spatial distribution of rainfall than the traditional point measurements of gauging stations. In one study of a basin with a fairly dense network of precipitation stations, NEXRAD detected numerous storms with a precipitation intensity of 50 mm/h that were completely missed by the network of gauges (Smith et al. 1996).

The measurement of snowfall in standard rain gauges is subject to error due to turbulence around the gauge. The snow that is caught is melted and the water equivalent reported. If only an approximation is required, a water content of 10% of the snow depth can be assumed. However, as anyone who regularly shovels snow knows, the density of newly fallen snow can vary considerably.

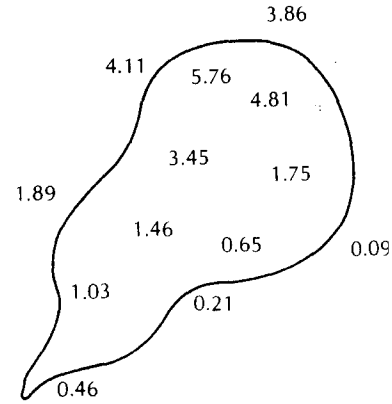
In northern and mountainous climates, the accumulation of snow on the ground is an important hydrologic parameter. In some areas, the runoff of melting snow in the spring is a predominant source of water for reservoirs used for water supply, irrigation, and power generation. A thick accumulation of snow can also mean a high flood potential when snowmelt occurs in the spring. Melting snow also recharges soil moisture and the water table. Snow surveys are made periodically through the winter to measure the thickness and water content of the snow in some areas.

2.7 Effective Depth of Precipitation

In water-budget studies, it is necessary to know the average depth of precipitation over a drainage basin. This may be determined for time periods ranging from the duration of part of a single storm to a year. The data are generally measurements of precipitation and/or equivalent snowfall at a number of points throughout the drainage basin.

Data that are missing at one or more stations as a result of equipment malfunction or operator absence creates a problem. To solve the problem, three close precipitation stations with full records that are evenly spaced around the station with a missing record are used. The following equation yields an estimate of the missing data at station Z. The mean annual precipitation (N) at station Z and the three index stations, A, B, and C, and the actual

► FIGURE 2.4
Rain gauge network over a drainage basin. Precipitation amounts are given in centimeters. Station locations are at decimal places.



precipitation (P) at the index stations for the time period over which data are missing, ar needed:

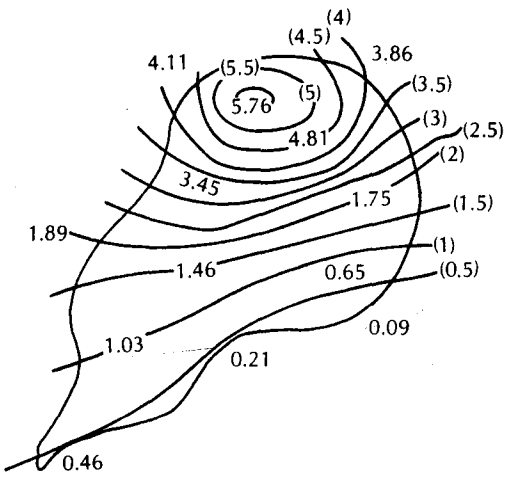
$$P_Z = \frac{1}{3}\left[\frac{N_Z}{N_A}P_A + \frac{N_Z}{N_B}P_B + \frac{N_Z}{N_C}P_C\right] \quad (2.$$

If the rain gauge network is of uniform density, then a simple arithmetic average of th point-rainfall data for each station is sufficient to determine the **effective uniform dept (EUD) of precipitation** over the drainage basin (Figure 2.4).

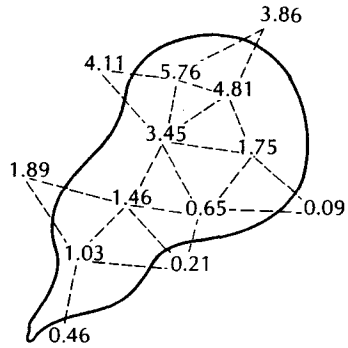
If the rain gauge network is not uniform, then some adjustment is necessary. The mo accurate method, excluding use of radar data, is to draw a precipitation contour map wit lines of equal rainfall (**isohyetal lines**). In drawing the isohyets, such factors as known in fluence of topography on precipitation can be taken into account. Simple linear interpol tion between precipitation stations can also be used. The area bounded by adjace isohyets is measured with a planimeter, and the average depth of precipitation over th area is the mean of the bounding isohyets. The effective uniform depth of precipitation the weighted average based on the relative size of each isohyetal area (Figure 2.5). Th drawback of the isohyetal method is that the isohyets must be redrawn and the areas r measured for each analysis.

The Thiessen method to adjust for nonuniform gauge distribution uses a weighi factor for each rain gauge. The factor is based on the size of the area within the draina basin that is closest to a given rain gauge. These areas are irregular polygons. The meth of constructing them can be described rather easily; however, it takes a bit of practice master the technique. The rain gauge network is drawn on a map of the drainage bas Adjacent stations are connected by a network of lines (Figure 2.6A). Should there be dou as to which stations to connect, lines should be between the closest stations. A perpen cular line is then drawn at the midpoint of each line connecting two stations (Figure 2.6 and extensions of the perpendicular bisectors are used to draw polygons around each s tion (Figure 2.6C). It is best to start with a centrally located station and then expand t polygonal network outward. The area of each polygon is measured, and a weighted av age for each station's precipitation is used to find the EUD.

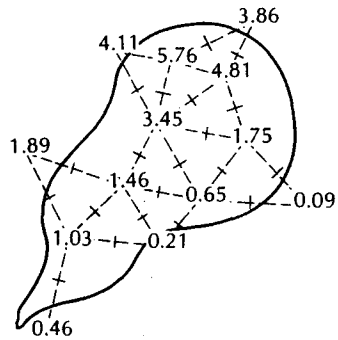
In mountainous areas, orographic effects can create vastly different microclima over small distances. Significant precipitation can fall on one side of a ridge but little the other. In such regions the Thiessen method and contouring by linear interpolation c yield erroneous results. Detailed study of the vegetation can identify wet and dry slop This information, in conjunction with topographic maps, can be used to make interpre contour maps with isohyetal lines reflecting the presence of wet and dry slopes.



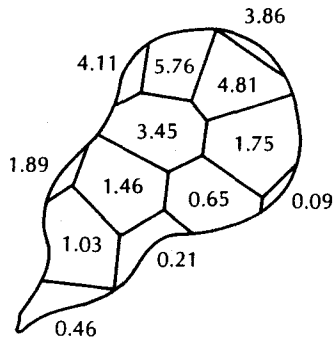
◀ FIGURE 2.5
Isohyetal lines for the rain gauge network of Figure 2.4. The isohyets show contours of equal rainfall depth, with a contour interval of 0.5 cm. The contours are based on simple linear interpolation.



A



B



C

▲ FIGURE 2.6
Construction of Thiessen polygons based on the rain gauge network of Figure 2.4. **A.** The stations are connected with lines. **B.** The perpendicular bisector of each line is found. **C.** The bisectors are extended to form the polygons around each station.

PROBLEM

Determine the effective uniform depth of precipitation using the arithmetic mean, isohyetal, an Thiessen methods.

Arithmetic Mean Method

Figure 2.4 shows a drainage basin with seven stations in its boundaries. An additional six station are located outside the drainage divide. In the arithmetic mean method, only the gauges insid the drainage basin boundary are considered.

$$\text{Mean} = \frac{1.03 + 0.65 + 1.46 + 1.75 + 4.81 + 3.45 + 5.76}{7} = 2.70 \text{ cm}$$

Isohyetal Method

The first step is to draw lines of equal precipitation (isohyets) on the drainage basin map. Isohyet are usually whole numbers or decimals (every 0.1 in., every 0.5 in., every 1 mm, etc.). The follow ing rules apply:

1. Isohyets never cross.
2. Isohyets never split.
3. Isohyets never meet.
4. A station that does not fall on an isohyet will be between two isohyets. The isohyets will both be equal (either larger or smaller than the station value) or one will be larger and one smaller
5. Adjacent isohyets must be equal or only one contour interval difference in value.
6. Isohyets should be scaled between stations using linear interpolation.

Figure 2.5 shows the isohyetal map of the problem area. The area between adjacent isohyets is determined by use of a planimeter. The equivalent uniform depth of precipitation betwee isohyets is usually assumed to be equal to the median value of the two isohyets. For example, the EUD between a 1-cm isohyet and a 2-cm isohyet is 1.5 cm. Areas enclosed by a single isohyet require judgment when estimating the equivalent uniform depth. The weighted average precipitation is based on the equivalent uniform depth of precipitation between adjacent isohyets and their areas.

A Isohyet (cm)	B Estimated EUD	C Net Area (km^2)	D Percent of Total Area	E Weighted Precipitation (cm) (B × D)
5.5+	5.6	1.1	0.8	0.045
5.0–5.5	5.25	7.6	5.3	0.278
4.5–5.0	4.75	10.6	7.4	0.352
4.0–4.5	4.25	9.5	6.7	0.285
3.5–4.0	3.75	8.6	6.0	0.225
3.0–3.5	3.25	8.3	5.8	0.189
2.5–3.0	2.75	10.7	7.5	0.206
2.0–2.5	2.25	12.3	8.6	0.194
1.5–2.0	1.75	15.1	10.6	0.186
1.0–1.5	1.25	23.8	16.7	0.209
0.5–1.0	0.75	31.2	21.8	0.164
<0.5	0.3	4.0	2.8	0.008
Total		142.8 km^2		2.34 cm Net EUD

Thiessen Method

The Thiessen method provides for the nonuniform distribution of gauges by determining a weighting factor for each gauge. A weighted mean of the precipitation values can then be computed. Thiessen polygons for the example problem are shown on Figure 2.6C. The area of each polygon is determined by a planimeter.

A Station Precipitation (cm)	B Net area (km^2)	C Percent of Total Area	D Weighted Precipitation (cm) (A × C)
5.76	16.9	11.9	0.686
4.81	16.1	11.4	0.546
4.11	3.4	2.4	0.099
3.86	1.6	1.1	0.044
3.45	19.3	13.6	0.470
1.89	2.5	1.8	0.033
1.75	12.0	8.5	0.148
1.46	19.8	14.0	0.204
1.03	18.0	12.7	0.131
0.65	17.0	12.0	0.078
0.46	6.0	4.2	0.019
0.21	7.2	5.1	0.011
0.09	2.0	1.4	0.001
Total	141.8 km^2		2.47 cm Net EUD

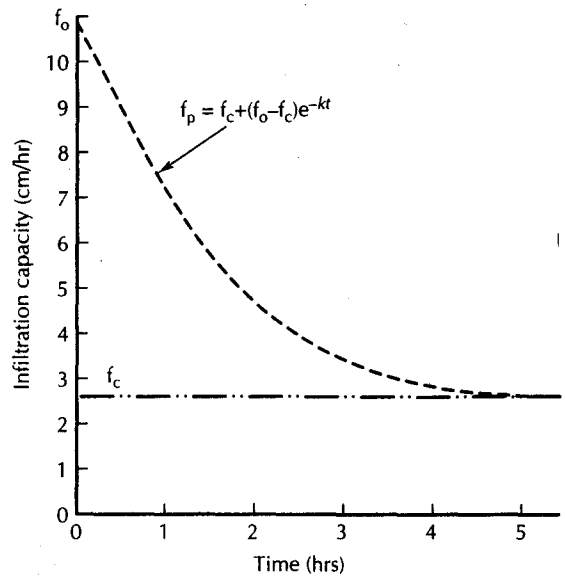
2.8 Events During Precipitation

During a precipitation event, some rainfall is **intercepted** by vegetation before it reaches the ground. This may later fall to the ground or evaporate. In a heavily forested area, most of the precipitation is caught by leaves and twigs. Initially, during a summer thunderstorm, no raindrops reach the forest floor, although drops can be heard striking the leaves overhead. When the storage capacity of the leaf surfaces is exhausted, water will run down tree trunks and drip downward (**stem flow**). The amount of water intercepted by dense forests ranges from 8% to 35% of total annual precipitation (Dunne & Leopold 1978). In a mixed hardwood forest in the northeastern United States, intercepted rainfall averaged 20% in the summer and winter seasons (Trimble & Weitzman 1954). Although evaporation of intercepted water reduces the net transpiration by the plants, in some cases most of the evaporated water is simply lost. One study concluded that only about 10% of the intercepted water actually reduced evapotranspiration (Thorud 1967).

The rate of interception is greatest at the beginning of a precipitation event and declines exponentially with time. If the rain is short lived and light, a large percentage of the precipitation may be intercepted. If it is heavy and long lived, only a small percentage may be intercepted.

Rainfall reaching the land surface can **infiltrate** into pervious soil, which has a finite and variable capacity to absorb water. The **infiltration capacity** varies not only from soil to soil, but also is different for dry versus moist conditions in the same soil. If a soil is initially dry, the infiltration capacity is high. Surface effects between the soil particles and the water exert a tension that draws the moisture downward into the soil through

► FIGURE 2.7
Decreasing infiltration capacity of an initially dry soil as the soil-water content of the surface layer increases.



labyrinthine capillary passages. As the capillary forces diminish with increased soil-moisture content, the infiltration capacity drops (Figure 2.7). In addition, colloidal particles in the soil swell as the moisture content increases. Eventually, the infiltration capacity reaches a more or less constant, or equilibrium, value.

The infiltration capacity curve can be described by Equation 2.3 (Horton 1933, 1940):

$$f_p = f_c + (f_o - f_c)e^{-kt} \tag{2.3}$$

where

f_p is the infiltration capacity (L/T; ft/s or m/s) at time t (T; s)

f_c is the equilibrium infiltration capacity (L/T; ft/s or m/s)

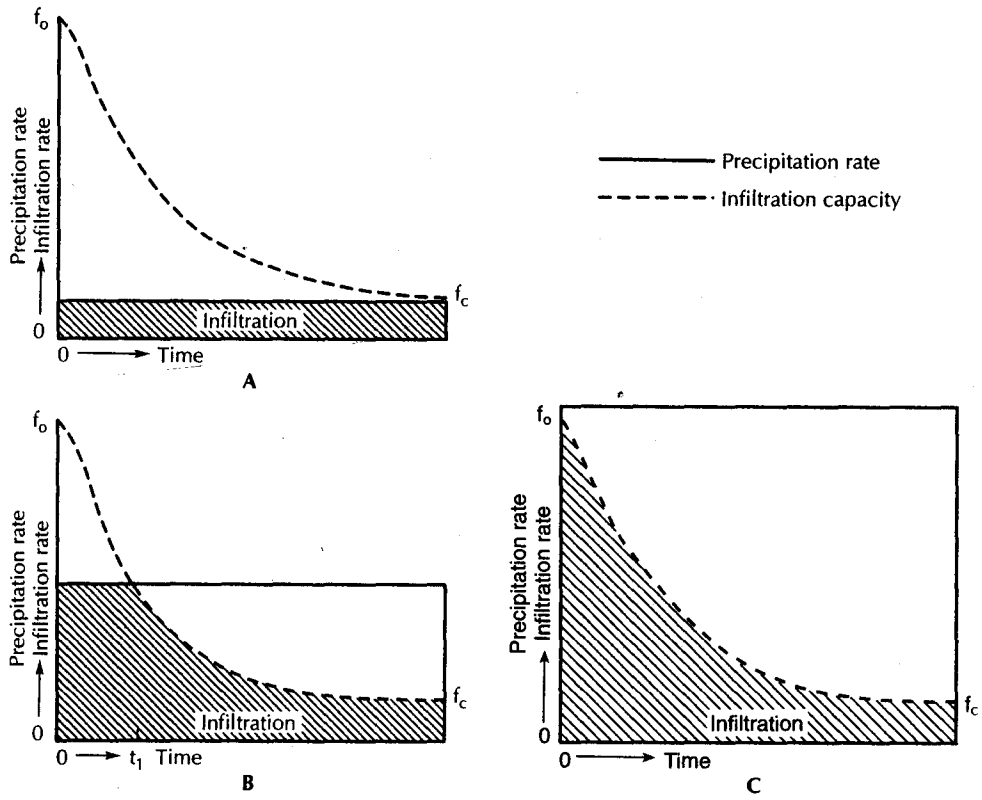
f_o is the initial infiltration capacity (L/T; ft/s or m/s)

k is a constant representing the rate of decreased infiltration capacity ($1/T$; 1/s)

t is the time since the start of the infiltration (T; s)

If the precipitation rate is lower than the equilibrium infiltration capacity, then all precipitation reaching the land surface will infiltrate (Figure 2.8A). If the precipitation rate is greater than the equilibrium infiltration capacity but less than the initial infiltration capacity, at the beginning all the precipitation will infiltrate, but when the infiltration rate drops below the precipitation rate, some of the precipitation will remain on the ground surface (Figure 2.8B). Finally, if the precipitation rate is greater than the initial infiltration capacity some water will immediately remain on the land surface (Figure 2.8C).

Conditions that encourage a high infiltration rate include coarse soils, well-vegetated land, low soil moisture, and a topsoil layer made porous by insects and other burrowing animals, in addition to land-use practices that avoid soil compaction. Once the final infiltration rate is reached, the depth of ponded water also promotes high infiltration. The water reaching the ground can infiltrate into the soil, form puddles, or flow as a thin sheet of water across the land surface. Hydrologists refer to the water trapped in puddles as **depression storage.** It ultimately evaporates or infiltrates. The overland flow process, sometimes called **Horton overland flow** after Robert Horton (Horton 1933, 1940), occurs only



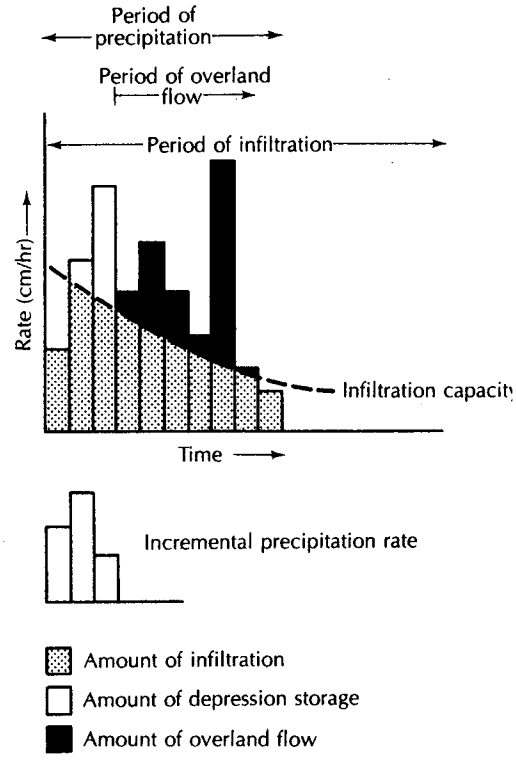
▲ FIGURE 2.8
Relationship of infiltration capacity and precipitation rate. **A.** Precipitation rate less than equilibrium infiltration capacity. **B.** Precipitation rate greater than equilibrium infiltration capacity but less than initial infiltration capacity. **C.** Precipitation rate greater than initial infiltration capacity.

when the precipitation rate exceeds the infiltration capacity. In areas where soils have a high infiltration capacity, this process may occur only during intense storms or when the soil is saturated or frozen. For overland flow to occur, the infiltration capacity of the soil must first be exceeded; then the depression storage must be filled (Figure 2.9).

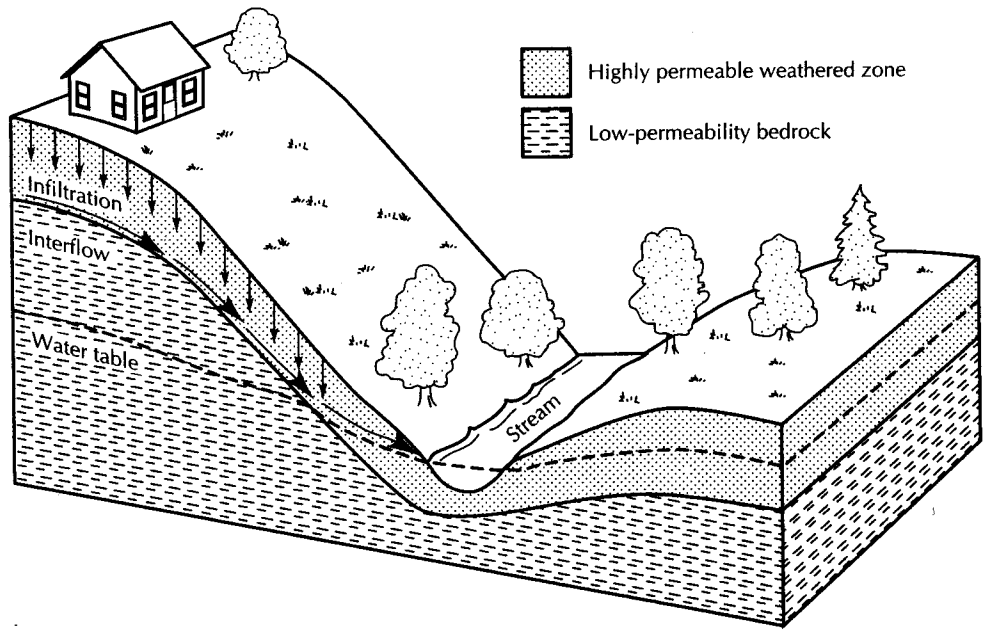
If the unsaturated zone is uniformly permeable, most of the infiltrated water percolates more or less vertically. Should layers of soil with a lower vertical hydraulic conductivity occur beneath the surface, then infiltrated water may move horizontally in the unsaturated zone. This **interflow** may be substantial in some drainage basins and contribute significantly to total runoff. Thin, permeable soil overlying fractured bedrock of low permeability would provide a geologic condition contributing to significant interflow (Figure 2.10).

Water will fall directly onto the surfaces of lakes and reservoirs during a period of precipitation. This amount may be insignificant for streams, but for lakes and reservoirs it could be considerable. Lake Michigan and its associated water bodies have a surface area of 22,300 mi^2. The land area of the surrounding drainage basin is 45,000 mi^2 (International Great Lakes Levels Board 1973). Assuming equal distribution of precipitation over the entire Lake Michigan basin, about one-third falls as **direct precipitation** on a water body.

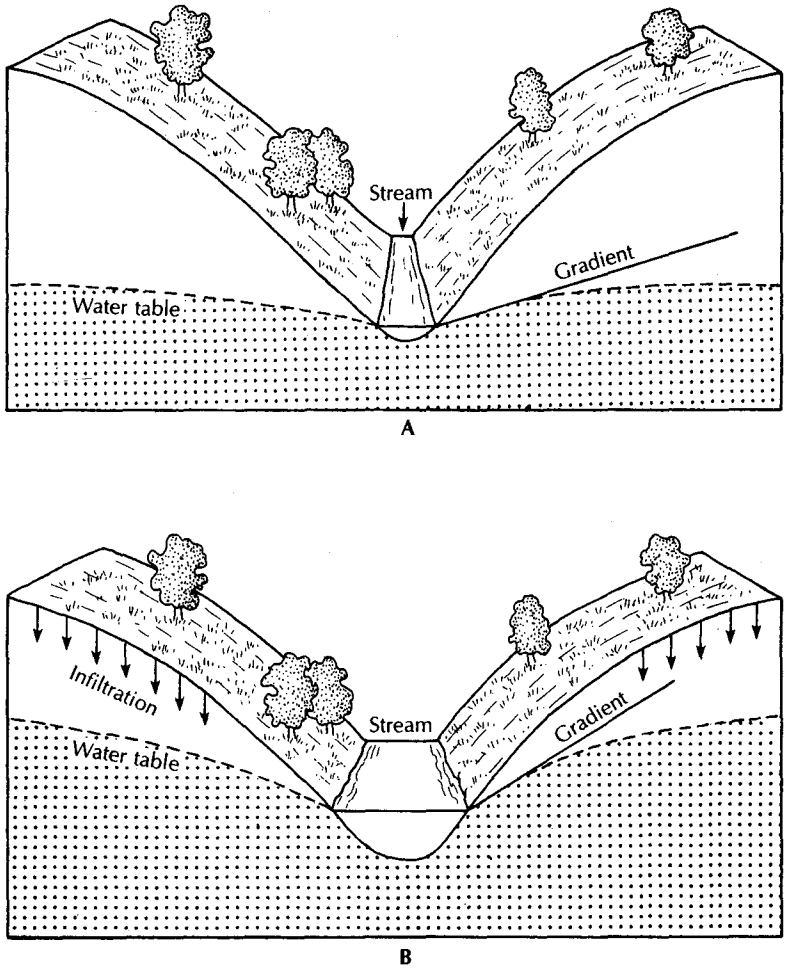
Infiltrated water that reaches the water table becomes stored in the ground-water reservoir. This storage is not static, as ground water is in constant movement. While freshly infiltrated precipitation is entering the ground-water reservoir, other ground water, known as **baseflow,** is discharging into a stream. If infiltration causes the water table to rise, ground-water discharge into nearby streams will also increase. For baseflow streams,



▶ FIGURE 2.9
Incremental precipitation rates and their dissociation into amounts of infiltration, depression storage, and overland flow. Infiltration begins along with precipitation. Overland flow does not begin until the depression storage is exhausted. Overland flow continues past the termination of precipitation. Infiltration will continue as long as any water remains in depression storage—usually past the period of overland flow.



▲ FIGURE 2.10
Interflow developing where a highly permeable but thin layer of weathered rock overlies a bedrock unit of lower permeability.



▲ FIGURE 2.11
Influence of the water-table gradient on baseflow. The stream in part A is being fed by ground water with a low hydraulic gradient. A gentle rain does not produce overland flow, but infiltration raises the water table. The increased hydraulic gradient of part B causes more baseflow to the stream, which is now deeper and has a greater discharge.

the amount of ground-water discharge is directly proportional to the hydraulic gradient toward the stream (Figure 2.11).

Horton overland flow is rarely observed in the field outside of urban and suburban areas, except after very heavy precipitation events, especially if the ground is covered with vegetation or humus such as leaf litter (Kirkby & Chorley 1967). Horton overland flow appears to be more common in arid regions or areas where the soil has been compacted by vehicles or animals, for example (Dunne 1978). Overland flow can also occur when precipitation falls on soils that are saturated. Water that infiltrates into the soil on a slope can move downslope as lateral unsaturated flow in the soil zone, called **throughflow** (Kirkby & Chorley 1967). The difference between throughflow and interflow is that throughflow emerges as seepage at the foot of the slope rather than entering a stream, as interflow does. Thus, the throughflow appears as overland flow before entering a stream channel. This type of overland flow is called **return flow** (Dunne & Black 1970) to distinguish it from Horton overland flow.

Dunne (1978) proposed a comprehensive concept of the runoff cycle. In arid to subhumid climates where vegetation is thin, Horton overland flow is the main contributor to the storm peak and comprises most of the runoff. In humid climates, Horton overland flow is not significant, but interflow, return flow, and direct precipitation on the channel are important. When the land consists of thin soils and gentle, concave slopes, direct precipitation and return flow are more important than interflow. On steep, straight slopes, interflow becomes much more important, although return flow and direct precipitation still cause the peaks.

In suburban and urban areas, Horton overland flow becomes a significant contributor to the runoff cycle. Streets, sidewalks, parking lots, and buildings occupy the land surface. These impervious areas restrict or prevent the infiltration of precipitation. Storm sewers and curbside gutters direct the precipitation that accumulates on the impervious surfaces directly to stream channels.

2.9 Stream Hydrographs

A stream **hydrograph** shows the discharge of a river at a single location as a function of time. While the total runoff shown on the hydrograph gives no indication of its origin, it is possible to break down the hydrograph into its components of overland flow, baseflow, interflow, and direct precipitation.

2.9.1 Baseflow Recessions

The hydrograph of a stream during a period with no excess precipitation will decay, following an exponential curve. The discharge is composed entirely of ground-water contributions. As the stream drains water from the ground-water reservoir, the water table falls, leaving less and less ground water to feed the stream. If there were no replenishment of the ground-water reservoir, baseflow to the stream would become zero. Figure 2.12 shows a **baseflow recession hydrograph** for a stream in a climate with a dry summer season.

The **baseflow recession** for a drainage basin is a hydromorphic characteristic. It is a function of the overall topography, drainage pattern, soils, and geology of the watershed. Figure 2.13 illustrates this by showing the annual summer recession of a river for six consecutive years. The start of the baseflow recession was considered to be the day when the annual discharge dropped below 3500 ft^3/s. The recession is similar from year to year. The baseflow of the stream decreases during a dry period because as ground water drains into the stream, the water table falls. A lower water table means that the rate at which ground water seeps into the stream declines. Imagine a bucket with a hole near the bottom. As the water drains from the bucket, the water level (water table) falls and the stream of water draining from the bucket (baseflow to streams) declines in volume. The stream of water draining (baseflow) will not increase until the water in the bucket is replenished (recharged) and the water level (water table) rises.

The baseflow recession equation is

$$Q = Q_0 e^{-at} \tag{2.}$$

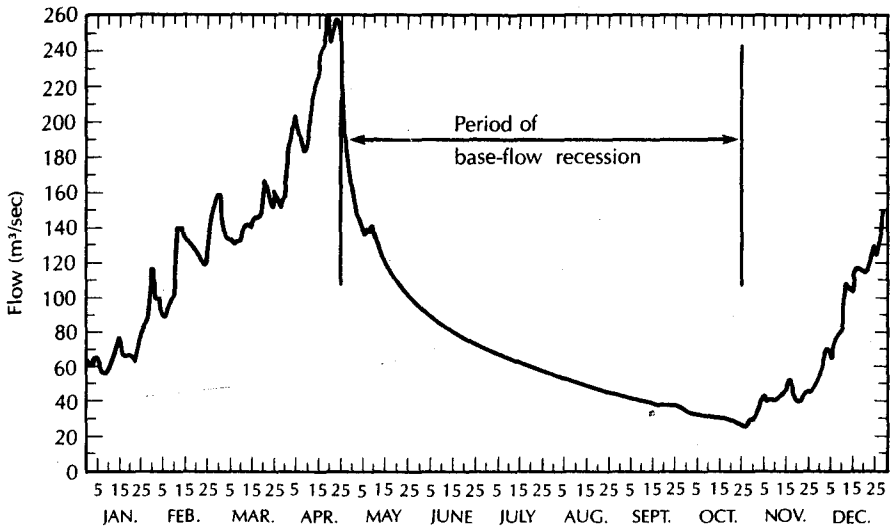
where

Q is the flow at some time t after the recession started (L^3/T; ft^3/s or m^3/s)

Q_0 is the flow at the start of the recession (L^3/T; ft^3/s or m^3/s)

a is a recession constant for the basin ($1/T$; d^{-1})

t is the time since the start of the recession (T; d)



▲ FIGURE 2.12
Typical annual hydrograph for a river with a long, dry summer season: Lualaba River, Central Africa. *Source: C. O. Wisler & E. F. Brater, eds.,* Hydrology, *2nd ed. (New York: John Wiley, 1959). Used with permission.*

PROBLEM

Part A: Find the recession constant for the basin of Figure 2.13.

If

$$Q = Q_0 e^{-at}$$

then

$$e^{-at} = Q/Q_0$$

$$-at = \ln Q/Q_0$$

$$a = -(1/t \ln Q/Q_0)$$

From Figure 2.13, $Q_0 = 3500\ \text{ft}^3/\text{s}$. After 100 d, $Q = 1500\ \text{ft}^3/\text{s}$.

$$a = -1/t \ln Q/Q_0$$

$$= -\frac{1}{100\text{d}} \ln \frac{1500\ \text{ft}^3/\text{s}}{3500\ \text{ft}^3/\text{s}}$$

$$= -0.01\text{d}^{-1} \ln 0.4286$$

$$= -0.01\text{d}^{-1} \times (-0.847)$$

$$= 8.47 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{d}^{-1}$$

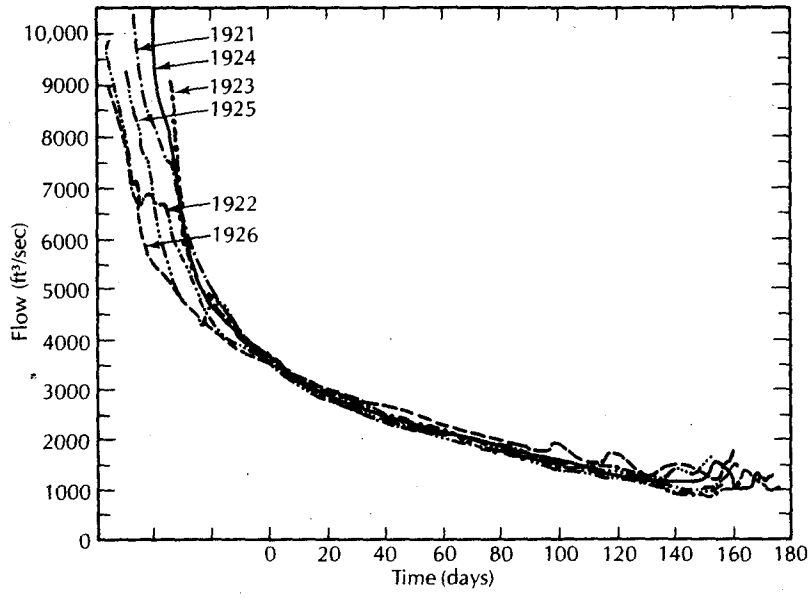
Part B: What would be the baseflow after 40 d of recession?

$$Q = Q_0 e^{-at}$$

$$= 3500\ \text{ft}^3/\text{s} \exp(-8.47 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{d}^{-1} \times 40\ \text{d})$$

$$= 3500\ \text{ft}^3/\text{s} \times 0.713$$

$$= 2500\ \text{ft}^3/\text{s}$$



▲ FIGURE 2.13
Annual baseflow recessions for six consecutive years for the Lualaba River, Central Africa. *Source: C. E Wisler & E. F. Brater, eds.,* Hydrology, *2nd ed. (New York: John Wiley, 1959). Used with permission.*

2.9.2 Storm Hydrograph

Although the baseflow component of a stream is somewhat constant, the total discharg the stream may fluctuate greatly through the year. The difference is due to the episodic nat of precipitation events that contribute overland flow, interflow, and direct precipitation. most drainage basins, direct precipitation adds only a modest amount of water to the stre Interflow is a factor that can be highly variable, depending on the geology of the drain basin: A deep, sandy soil may not induce any interflow, whereas a lava landscape covere loose rubble may have no overland flow but great amounts of interflow at the base of the ble where it overlies a hard, low-permeability lava flow. Steeply sloping land also prom interflow. The most consistent factor in the storm hydrograph is overland flow. Figure shows a hypothetical storm hydrograph broken down into overland flow, interflow, d precipitation, and baseflow recession. The baseflow component indicates that the stream tinues to receive ground-water discharge through the duration of the overland-flow peal

One task in analyzing a storm hydrograph is to separate the overland-flow compo from the baseflow. Generally, it is first assumed that both the direct precipitation and th terflow components are inconsequential; however, the hydrogeologist should be awa the general geology and surface slope of the drainage area before making this assump The overland flow is assumed to end some fixed time after the storm peak. As a ru thumb, this can be approximated by the following formula (Linsley, Kohler, & Paulhus 1

$$D = A^{0.2}$$

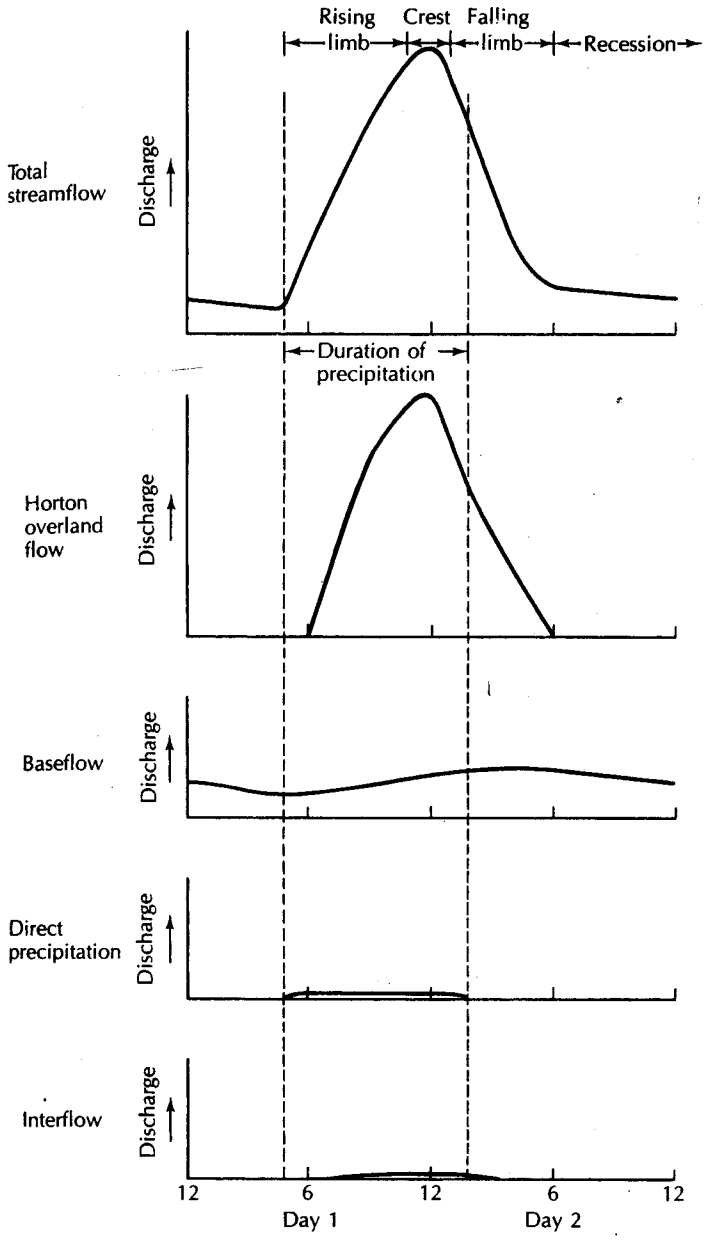
where

D is the number of days between the storm peak and the end of overland flow

A is the drainage basin area in square miles

or

$$D = 0.827A^{0.2}$$



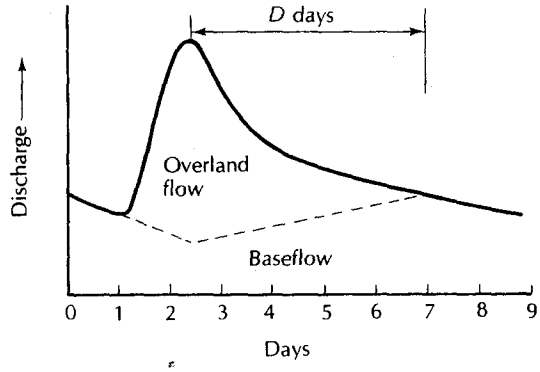
◀ FIGURE 2.14
Hypothetical storm hydrograph for a period of evenly distributed precipitation, separated into Horton overland flow, baseflow, direct precipitation, and interflow.

where

A is the drainage basin area in square kilometers

Note that Equations 2.5 and 2.6 are empirical relationships and are not dimensionally correct. The exponential constant of 0.2 has been verified in several studies (e.g., Szilagyi & Parlange 1998).

The baseflow recession that existed prior to the storm peak is extended until it is approximately under the storm peak. It is then drawn so as to rise to meet the stream hydrograph at a point D days after the peak. In Figure 2.15, a storm hydrograph for a drainage basin of 2100 mi^2 has been separated. For the given basin, D is equal to 4.6 d.



◀ FIGURE 2.15
Hydrograph separation into overland-flow component and baseflow component for a stream receiving Horton overland flow.

2.9.3 Gaining and Losing Streams

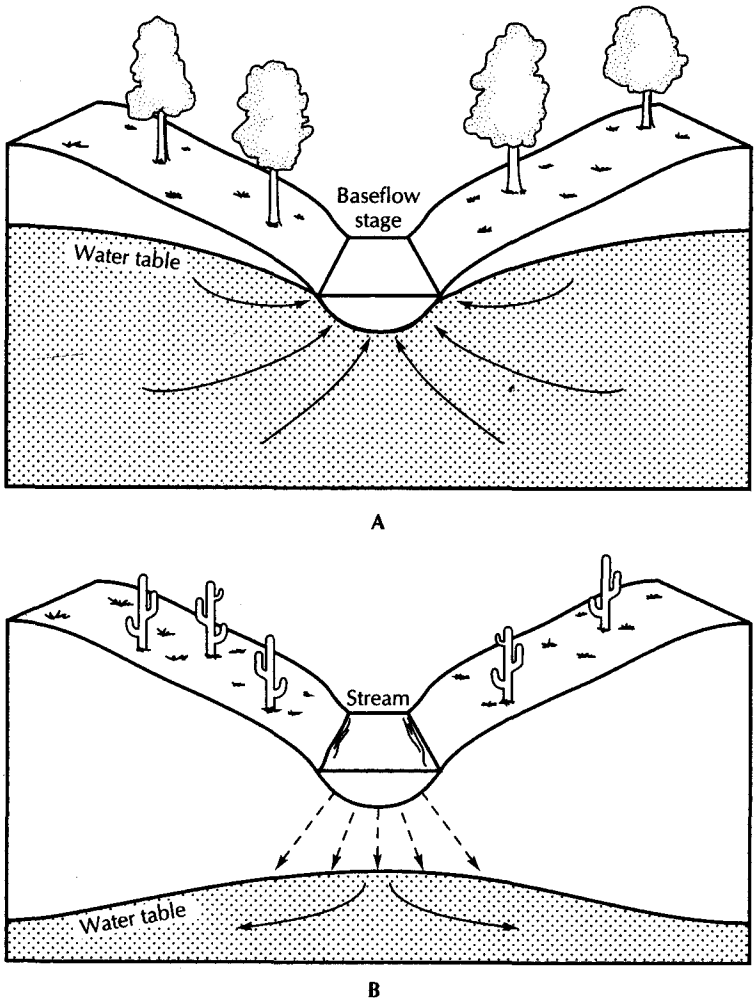
The typical stream of a humid region receives ground-water discharge; therefore, as one goes downstream the baseflow increases, even if no tributaries enter. This stream is **gaining,** or **effluent.** The water table slopes toward the stream, so that the hydraulic gradient of the aquifer is toward the stream. Figure 2.16A shows a cross section through a gaining reach of a stream.

In arid regions, many rivers are fed by overland flow, interflow, and baseflow at high altitudes. As they wind their way to a lower elevation, the local precipitation amounts decrease; consequently, there is less infiltration and a lower water table. There also may be a dramatic change in the depth to ground water when a stream draining a high-altitude basin of lower-permeability material flows out onto coarse alluvial materials. For whatever reason, if the bottom of the stream channel is higher than the local water table, water may drain from the stream into the ground (Figure 2.16B). As one goes downstream, less and less water will be found in the channel. The stream is **losing,** or **influent.** The rate of water loss is a function of the depth of water and the hydraulic conductivity of the underlying alluvium. Fine-grained deposits on the channel bottom will retard the rate of loss to the ground water.

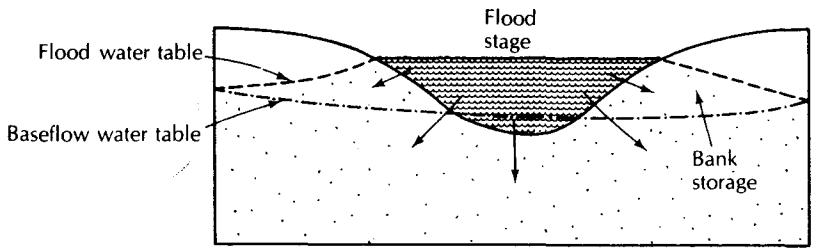
A stream that is normally a gaining stream during baseflow recessions may temporarily become a losing stream during floods. If the flood-crest depth in the channel is greater than the local water-table elevation, the hydraulic gradient in the aquifer next to the stream is reversed. Water flows from the stream into the ground (Figure 2.17). The result is a temporary storage of floodwater in the aquifer next to the stream. When the flood crest passes, the hydraulic gradient again reverses, and the stream is once again gaining (Figure 2.18).

Tabidian, Pederson, and Tabidian (1992) studied the impact on ground-water levels of a 75- to 100-year flood event of the Big Blue River in Nebraska. The river is connected to an aquifer consisting of alluvium and glacial deposits, which vary from gravel to clay in nature. The river is normally gaining, but during the flood the gradient became reversed and water drained from the river into the aquifer. In some areas ground-water levels rose more than 10 ft in less than a week, and rises in ground-water level were recorded as much as mi from the river. Due to the heterogeneous nature of the aquifer, water-level rises were neither uniform nor symmetrical along the river.

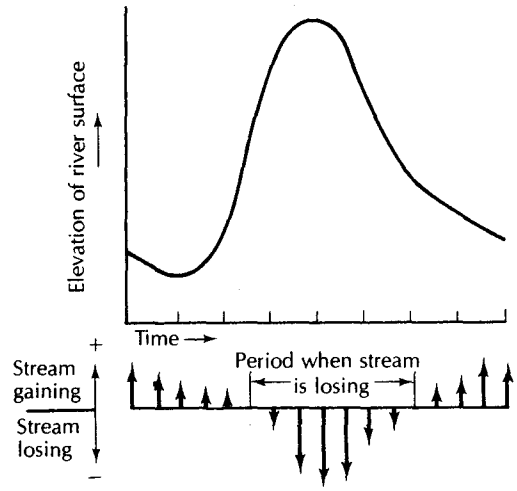
Heavy ground-water pumping near a stream can lower the water table to an elevation below the level of the stream bottom. The reach of the stream affected by the lowered water table will become a losing stream, while upstream and downstream reaches can still be gaining. Figure 2.19 is an idealization of this phenomenon, based on the behavior of the well field along the Fenton River at the University of Connecticut at Storrs. Legal issues have arisen when ground-water pumping has depleted streamflow in states where the stream water has been appropriated to other uses.



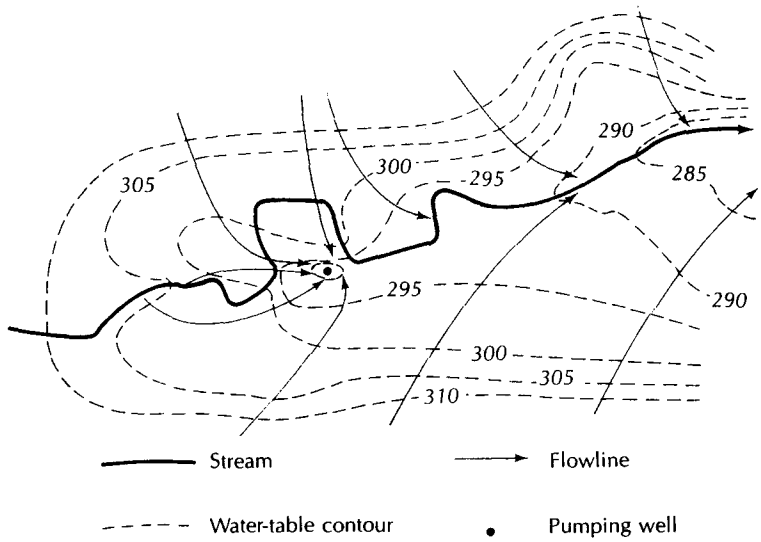
▲ FIGURE 2.16
A. Cross section of a gaining stream, which is typical of humid regions, where ground water recharges streams. **B.** Cross section of a losing stream, which is typical of arid regions, where streams can recharge ground water.



▲ FIGURE 2.17
A stream that is gaining during low-flow periods can temporarily become a losing stream during flood stage.



◀ FIGURE 2.18
Effect of flood state on the ground-water regime adjacent to the river. As the flood pea passes, the normal direction of ground-water flow into the stream is reversed.



▲ FIGURE 2.19
Induced streambed infiltration caused by a pumping well. *Source: P. Rahn,* Ground Water *6, no. 3 (1968): 21–32. Used with permission © 1968, Ground Water Publishing Company.*

2.10 Rainfall-Runoff Relationships

One basic problem of hydrology is predicting the amount of runoff that will occur fror given storm. Structures that carry runoff water are designed on the basis of the peak run rate. A maximum expected rainfall rate is determined based on climatic records. Structu such as storm sewers and highway culverts are then designed to carry this expec runoff. Several equations have been developed to make this prediction. The most simpl the **rational equation,** which states that if it rains long enough, the peak discharge fr the drainage basin will be the average rate of rainfall times the drainage basin area, duced by a factor to account for infiltration. The **time of concentration** is the length of ti necessary for water to flow from the most distant part of the watershed to the point of charge. If the period of precipitation exceeds the time of concentration, then the ratio equation will apply. The time of concentration is the length of the stream channel divi by the water velocity, plus the estimated time for overland flow to reach the channel. rational equation assumes that both the rainfall rate and the rate of infiltration are c

Table 2.3 Runoff Factor for Rational Equation

Description of Area	C
Business	
Downtown	0.70–0.95
Neighborhood	0.50–0.70
Residential	
Single-family	0.30–0.50
Multiunits, detached	0.40–0.60
Multiunits, attached	0.60–0.75
Residential suburban	0.25–0.40
Apartment	0.50–0.70
Industrial	
Light	0.50–0.80
Heavy	0.60–0.90
Parks, cemeteries	0.10–0.25
Playgrounds	0.20–0.35
Railroad yard	0.20–0.35
Unimproved	0.10–0.30
Character of surface	
Pavement	
Asphalt and concrete	0.70–0.95
Brick	0.70–0.85
Roofs	0.75–0.95
Lawns, sandy soil	
Flat, up to 2% grade	0.05–0.10
Average, 2%–7% grade	0.10–0.15
Steep, over 7%	0.15–0.20
Lawns, heavy soil	
Flat, up to 2% grade	0.13–0.17
Average, 2%–7% grade	0.18–0.22
Steep, over 7%	0.25–0.35

Source: American Society of Civil Engineers, "Design and Construction of Sanitary and Storm Sewers," Manuals and Reports of Engineering Practice No. 37, *1970.*

stant. The rational method is of greatest validity when used in analysis of small drainage basins of 200 ac (100 ha) or less. The rational equation is

$$Q = CIA \tag{2.7}$$

where

Q is the peak runoff rate (L^3/T; ft^3/s or m^3/s)

I is the average rainfall intensity (L/T; ft/s or m/s)

A is the drainage area (L^2; ft^2 or m^2)

C is a runoff coefficient from Table 2.1 (dimensionless)

Table 2.3 lists values of C for many different land uses to account for differing rates of infiltration. The more urbanized the land use, the greater the percentage of the impervious surface and the greater the percentage of runoff. For each land use, a range of the value of C is given. The lower number is used for storms of low intensity; storms of greater intensity will have proportionally more runoff, justifying the use of a higher C factor.

2.11 Duration Curves

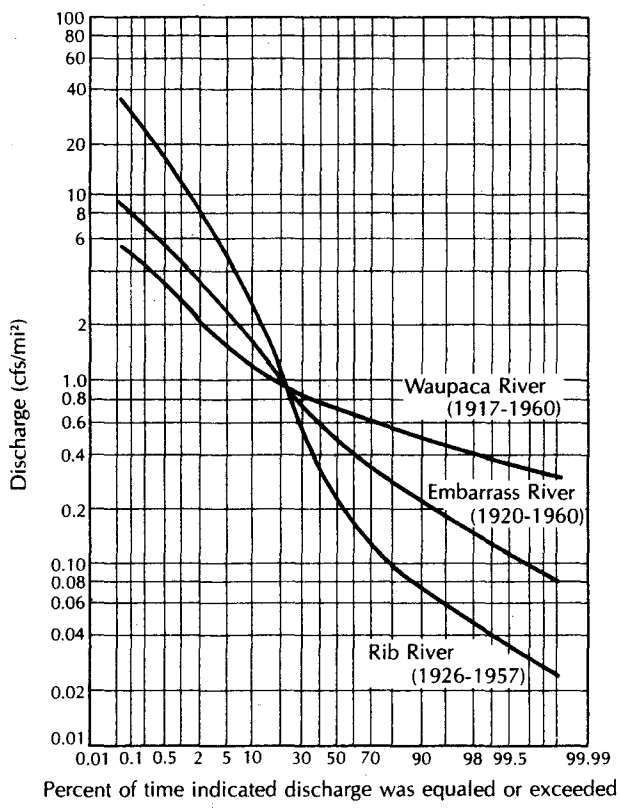
For design or regulatory purposes, it may be necessary to know how often the discharge a stream may be less than or greater than a given value. As an example, if a river is co sidered for a water-supply source, it is necessary to know how much water can be o tained. The average flow is not a particularly useful value, in that possibly 50% of the tin the river would carry less than the average discharge. Depending on the available stora and other sources of supply, some flow duration is selected as the reliable flow. For exar ple, 90% duration is the flow that will be equaled or exceeded 90% of the time.

Duration curves are generally constructed for either daily flow or annual flow, a though other time periods could also be considered. Data are ranked from greatest to lea flow values. They are then assigned a serial rank, m, starting with 1 for the greatest flo and going to n, the number of data values. If two or more data values are equal, ea should receive a different serial rank. The probability, P, as a percentage, that a given flo will be equaled or exceeded may be found by the equation

$$P = 100\frac{m}{n+1} \qquad (2.$$

A plot of P as a function of flow will yield a duration curve showing the percentage time a given flow is equaled or exceeded. The curve can be plotted on a type of gra paper known as probability paper. This paper is constructed with a special abscissa a ordinates that may be either arithmetic or logarithmic.

Figure 2.20 shows duration curves of daily flow for three rivers, computed as cul feet per second per square mile ($ft^3/s/mi^2$) of drainage basin. This makes the flow inc pendent of the size of the drainage basin. The three streams are all in central Wisconsin a



◀ FIGURE 2.20
Daily duration curves for three streams having different runoff characteristics owing to the differin geology of the drainage basins. *Source: U.S. Geological Survey.*

their total annual runoff (precipitation less evaporation) is about 11 in. (28 cm) per year. Examination of Figure 2.20 reveals a great variability in the distribution of this annual runoff.

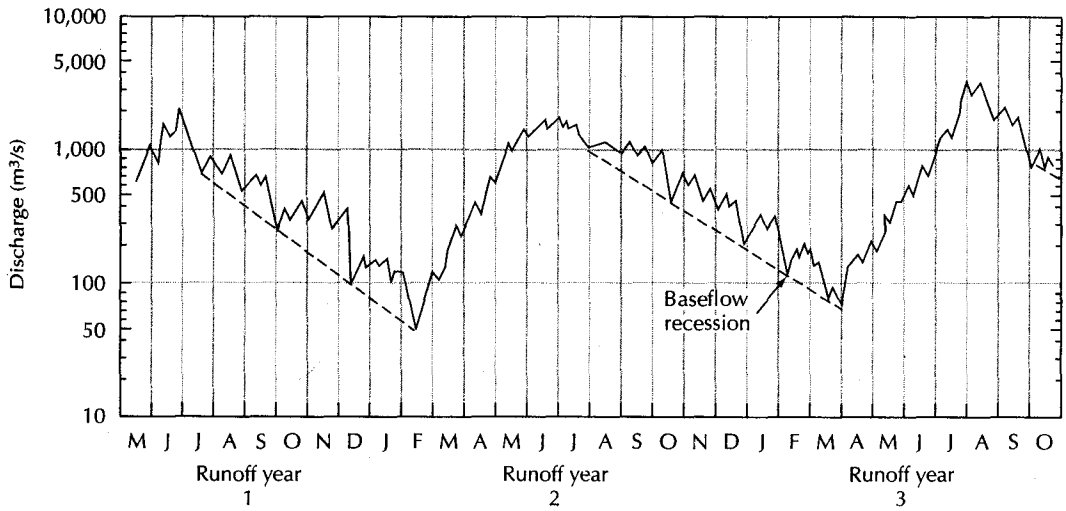
The Rib River has high flood values: 1% of the time flow equals or exceeds 12 $ft^3/s/mi^2$. Conversely, the 1% value for the Waupaca River is 2.7 $ft^3/s/mi^2$, with the Embarrass River intermediate. Coincidentally all three rivers have the same 20% flow value: 0.9 $ft^3/s/mi^2$. Whereas the Rib River had the greatest flood flows, it has the smallest low flows: 1% of the time the discharge is less than 0.04 $ft^3/s/mi^2$. (The graph shows this as 99% of the time the flow equals or exceeds 0.04 $ft^3/s/mi^2$.) The low flow of the Waupaca River is an entire magnitude greater than that of the Rib, being less than 0.39 $ft^3/s/mi^2$ for 1% of the time. Again, the Embarrass River falls about evenly between the two.

This distribution of runoff is caused by the geology of the drainage basins. The Rib River is located in an area of crystalline bedrock, which has a very low hydraulic conductivity. Part of the drainage basin is in the driftless area of Wisconsin, where superficial glacial deposits are lacking. As a consequence, overland flow and return flow are high, and baseflow is scant. The soils are thin, with little water-retaining capacity. The drainage basin of the Waupaca River has thick deposits of unconsolidated sand. The sand absorbs most of the potential overland flow; hence, there are small flood peaks. This water can drain slowly and provide high baseflows. The Embarrass River has thick deposits of glacial drift, but it is till and lake clay, so the hydraulic response of the watershed is intermediate.

2.12 Determining Ground-Water Recharge from Baseflow

2.12.1 Seasonal Recession Method (Meyboom Method)

The Meyboom method is a simple method of estimating ground-water recharge in a basin. The underlying assumptions of this method are that the catchment area has no dams or other method of streamflow regulation and that snowmelt contribution to the runoff is negligible. It utilizes stream hydrographs from two or more consecutive years. The baseflow recession equation (Equation 2.4) indicates that Q varies logarithmically with time, t. A plot of a stream hydrograph with time on an arithmetic scale and discharge on a logarithmic scale will therefore yield a straight line for the baseflow recession. Figure 2.21 shows a hypothetical stream hydrograph. The baseflow recessions are shown as dashed lines; they were considered to start when the summer stream level dropped below the adjacent water table and to end when the first spring flood occurred. The total potential ground-water discharge is



▲ FIGURE 2.21
Semilogarithmic stream hydrograph showing baseflow recessions.

the volume of water that would be discharged during a complete ground-water recessio (Meyboom 1961). Its value can be found from

$$V_{tp} = \frac{Q_0 t_1}{2.3026} \qquad (2.$$

where

V_{tp} is volume of the total potential ground-water discharge (L^3; ft^3 or m^3)

Q_0 is the baseflow at the start of the recession (L^3/T; ft^3/s or m^3/s)

t_1 is the time that it takes the baseflow to go from Q_0 to 0.1 Q_0 (T; s)

If one determines the remaining potential ground-water discharge at the end of a r cession and then the total potential ground-water discharge at the beginning of the next r cession, the difference between the two is the ground-water recharge that has taken pla between recessions. The amount of potential baseflow, V_t(L^3; ft^3 or m^3), remaining sor time, t (T; s), after the start of a baseflow recession is given by

$$V_t = \frac{V_{tp}}{10^{(t/t_1)}} \qquad (2.$$

This analysis assumes that there are no consumptive uses of ground water in the ba so that all ground-water discharge is by means of baseflow to streams. If there are su uses as pumpage or evapotranspiration of ground water by phreatophytes, this use m be added to the amount determined by the baseflow recession method to get total recha to the ground-water reservoir.

PROBLEM

Refer to Figure 2.21. Determine the amount of ground-water recharge that takes place from the of the baseflow recession of runoff year 1 to the start of the baseflow recession of runoff year 2.

The value of Q_0 for the first recession is 760 m^3/s and it takes 6.3 months (mo) for the re sion to reach 0.1 Q_0:

$$V_{tp} = \frac{Q_0 t_1}{2.3026}$$

$$= \frac{760\ m^3 s \times 6.3\ mo \times 30\ d/mo \times 1440\ min/d \times 60\ s/min}{2.3026}$$

$$= 5.4 \times 10^9\ m^3$$

The value of V_t at the end of the recession, which lasts 7.5 mo, is

$$V_t = \frac{V_{tp}}{10^{(t/t_1)}} = \frac{5.4 \times 10^9\ m^3}{10^{(7.5/6.3)}} = \frac{5.4 \times 10^9\ m^3}{15.5} = 3.5 \times 10^8\ m^3$$

For the next year's recession, the value of Q_0 is 1000 m^3, and t_1 is again 6.3 mo. Therefor

$$V_{tp} = \frac{1000\ m^3/s \times 6.3\ mo \times 30\ d/mo \times 1440\ min/d \times 60\ s/min}{2.3026}$$

$$= 7.1 \times 10^9\ m^3$$

The amount of recharge is equal to the total potential baseflow remaining at the end c first baseflow recession subtracted from V_{tp} for the beginning of the next recession.

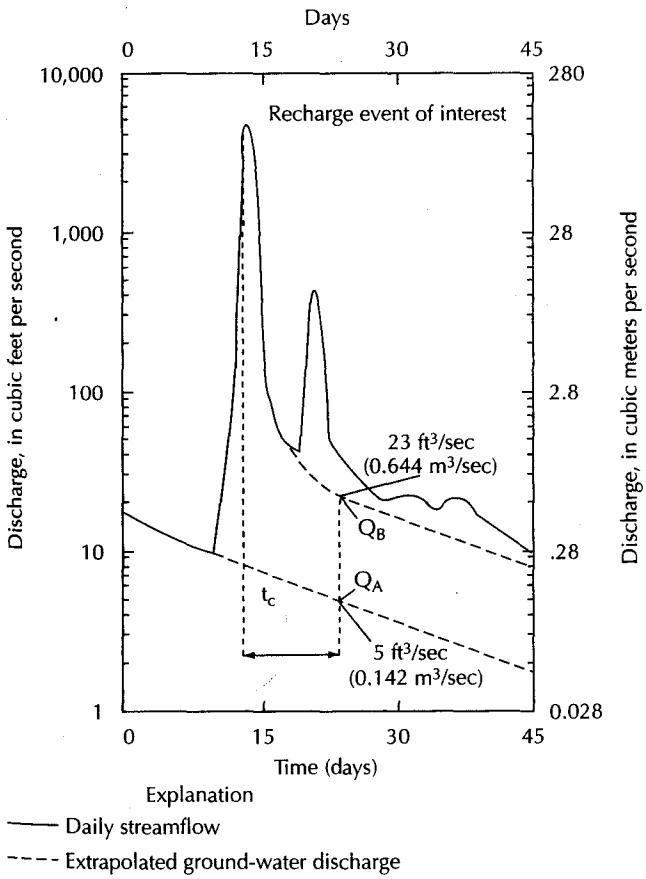
$$\text{Recharge} = 7.1 \times 10^9\ m^3 - 3.5 \times 10^8\ m^3 = 6.8 \times 10^9\ m^3$$

2.12.2 Recession Curve Displacement Method (Rorabaugh Method)

The seasonal baseflow recession method has the disadvantage of requiring a long-term record runoff of at least two seasons. It also is most useful for a drainage basin where there is a seasonal recharge event and then a long baseflow recession with little intervening ground-water recharge.

The recession curve displacement (Rorabaugh) method can be used in situations when a series of ground-water recharge events occur during one runoff season. The recession curve is shifted upward by the recharge event. The amount of ground-water recharge can be determined by the size of the upward shift (Rorabaugh 1964; Rorabaugh & Simons 1966). This method is applicable to drainage basins where the ground-water recharge is more or less evenly distributed through the basin and where all ground-water discharges from the basin via seepage into the stream or springs that feed the stream, and ground-water recharge, can be assumed to be instantaneous.

Figure 2.22 shows the upward shift of a recession curve after a precipitation event. The hydrograph peak is caused by overland flow, direct precipitation, and possibly interflow as well as increased baseflow from ground-water recharge. As we are only interested in the ground-water component, we use Equation 2.5 or 2.6 to determine the time period when an overland flow component exists. After D days have elapsed, the streamflow can be considered as entirely baseflow, although the volume of discharge in the stream has increased, as has the total potential baseflow, V_{tp}.



◀ FIGURE 2.22
Determining ground-water recharge from baseflow from the incremental recharge method of Rorabaugh. *Source: Modified from Mau & Winter,* Ground Water *35, no. 2: 291–304. Used with permission © 1997, Ground Water Publishing Company.*

Rorabaugh (1964) defined a critical time, t_c, which can be shown to be equal to 0.214 (Rutledge & Daniel 1994). At the critical time past the hydrograph peak, the total potenti ground-water discharge is equal to approximately one-half of the water that recharged t ground-water system. Figure 2.22 shows baseflow recession A, then a hydrograph pe caused by a precipitation event, followed by baseflow recession B. Q_A is the baseflow of r cession A at the critical time, t_c, after the hydrograph peak; and Q_B is the baseflow of r cession B, also at the critical time. The increase in the total potential baseflow, ΔV_{tp} at from recession A to recession B, is:

$$\Delta V_{tp} = \frac{Q_B t_1}{2.3026} - \frac{Q_A t_1}{2.3026} \tag{2.1}$$

Since the total volume of recharge at the critical time is twice the increase in the to potential baseflow, then G, the volume of water that recharged the aquifer as a result of t precipitation event that caused the flood peak, is equal to $2 \times \Delta V_{tp}$ or

$$G = \frac{2(Q_B - Q_A)t_1}{2.3026} \tag{2.1}$$

The steps in finding the volume of water recharging the ground-water system are follows:

1. Find t_1, the number of days it takes for the baseflow recession to decline by one lo cycle of time (days/log cycle), by inspection of the recession curves.
2. Compute the critical time, t_c, which is 0.2144 t_1.
3. Locate the time that is t_c days past the peak.
4. Extrapolate recession A to find Q_A at t_c.
5. Extrapolate recession B to find Q_B at t_c.
6. Find total recharge by Equation 2.12.

This procedure can be done manually. Rutledge and Daniel (1994) have developed method to perform the calculation automatically from streamflow records. Mau and W ter (1997) used the recession curve displacement method to study the ground-wa recharge in a small watershed at Mirror Lake, New Hampshire. They found that both t manual and automated methods gave the same results. Perez (1997) applied the method a spring draining on a karst* terrain in a Mediterranean climate.

PROBLEM

Part A: Find the recharge that caused the displacement in the baseflow recession curve in Fig 2.22. The stream drains a catchment area that is 235 mi^2 in size.

1. Use Equation 2.5 to find the time when the runoff is all from baseflow.

$$D = A^{0.2}$$
$$= 235^{0.2}$$
$$= 2.98 \text{ d}$$

*Karst is a geologic term to describe a landscape underlain by limestone with little or no surface drainage. Subterranean drainage will eventually exit via a spring.

2. Find the time that it takes for baseflow discharge to go from Q to 0.1 Q. This value should be the same for both recession curves, and should be longer than D calculated in step 1.

$$t_1 = 45 \text{ d}$$

3. Compute the critical time.

$$t_c = 0.2144 \times t_1 = 0.2144 \times 45 \text{ d} = 9.65 \text{ d}$$

4. Find Q_A and Q_B at t_c days past the peak by inspection of the hydrographs.

$$Q_A = 5 \text{ ft}^3/\text{s}$$

$$Q_B = 23 \text{ ft}^3/\text{s}$$

5. Find G from Equation 2.12.
   a. Convert t_1 in days to seconds.

$$45 \text{ d} \times 86{,}400 \text{ s/d} = 3.888 \times 10^6 \text{ s}$$

   b. Substitute variables into the equation

$$G = \frac{2(Q_B - Q_A)t_1}{2.3026}$$

$$= \frac{2 \times (23 - 5)\text{ft}^3/\text{s} \times 3.888 \times 10^6 \text{ s}}{2.3026}$$

$$= 6.08 \times 10^7 \text{ ft}^3$$

Part B: Determine the average depth of recharge over the drainage basin.

1. Convert the drainage basin area to square feet.

$$A = 235 \text{ mi}^2 \times (5280 \text{ ft/mi})^2 = 6.55 \times 10^9 \text{ ft}^2$$

2. Divide the volume of recharge by the area to find the depth of recharge.

$$6.08 \times 10^7 \text{ ft}^3/6.55 \times 10^9 \text{ ft}^2 = 0.00928 \text{ ft}$$

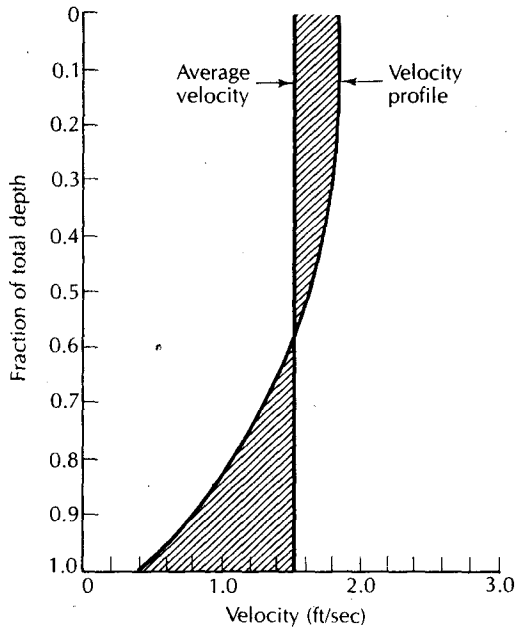
2.13 Measurement of Streamflow

2.13.1 Stream Gauging

Water flowing in a stream is subject to friction as it comes in contact with the stream bottom and sides. As a result, the fastest current is at the surface in the center of the channel. From a series of careful measurements of flow velocity from the surface downward, a parabolic profile will emerge (Figure 2.23). Field studies have shown that the velocity at a depth equal to 0.6 times the total depth is close to the average velocity for the entire section. The average of measurements made at 0.2 times depth and 0.8 times depth is also used to represent the average velocity of the entire profile. The **discharge,** Q (L^3/T; ft^3/s or m^3/s), in a stream with a cross-sectional area, A (L^2; ft^2 or m^2), and average velocity, V (L/T, ft/s or m/s), can be found from the equation

$$Q = VA \tag{2.13}$$

The velocity of flow can be measured by using a current meter. The USGS has standard specifications for two types of meters. Each has a horizontal wheel with sets of small, cone-shaped cups attached. The wheel turns in the current and a cam attached to the spindle of the wheel makes an electrical contact once every revolution. The meter



◀ FIGURE 2.23
Typical parabolic velocity profile for a natural stream.

wheel is wired either to a set of headphones and a battery or to a direct readout me The operator with a headphone meter counts the clicks over a measured time per (usually 30 to 60 seconds), and uses a calibration curve furnished by the manufacture find the velocity.

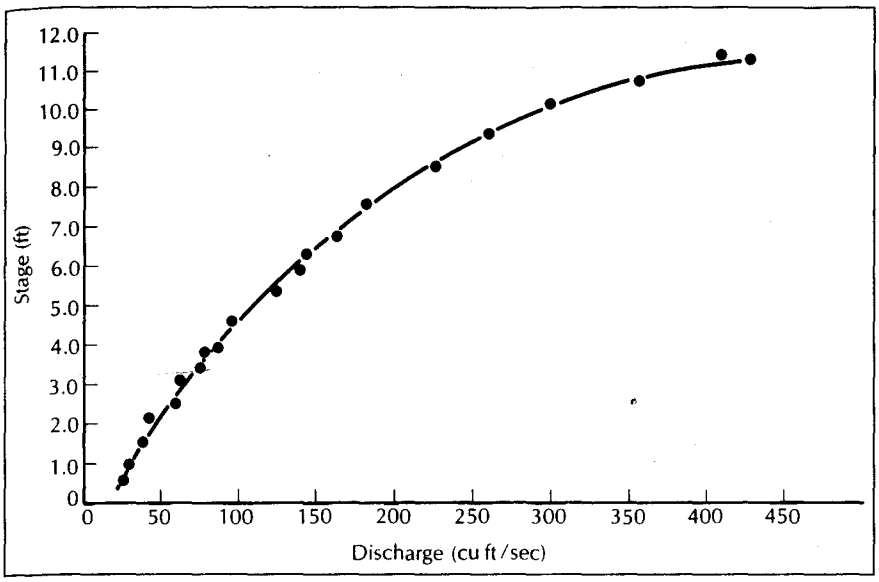
The Price-type meter has a wheel about 5 in. (13 cm) in diameter; it is equipped wit vane to orient the meter perpendicular to the flow. The Price-type meter is usually s pended on a cable and lowered into a river, with a streamlined weight to pull it dowr pygmy-Price meter is smaller and is usually mounted on a graduated wading rod. The erator takes to the river with rubber boots and places the rod on the bottom of a strean make the measurements.

In a typical stream, velocity will vary from bank to bank, necessitating several m urements. A straight reach of stream with a smooth shoreline, no brush hanging in water, and no weeds or large rocks should be chosen. Places with back-eddies shoul avoided; they will overestimate the total discharge, as the current meter will not dis guish the direction of flow. If a wading rod is to be used, the water must not be too dee too swift for a person to wade, especially when measuring peak flows. A tape is stretc perpendicularly across the stream or along the bridge. The channel is subdivided int to 30 segments. At the midpoint of each segment, the depth, d_i, is measured and recor The meter is then raised to 0.6 times the depth, and the average velocity, v_i, for that ment is measured. If the water is deep, the average velocity at 0.8 and 0.2 depths shoul used. The discharge, q_i, for a segment of width, w_i, is given by

$$q_i = v_i d_i w_i \qquad (2$$

The process is repeated for each segment of the cross section. The total discharg for the river is the sum of the discharge for each segment. For a measurement wi segments,

$$Q = \sum_{i+1}^{m} q_i \qquad (2$$



▲ FIGURE 2.24
Typical stage–discharge rating curve.

If measurements are made from a bridge using a cable-suspended meter, a swift current may draw the meter downstream. The amount of line let out to measure the depth is thus too great. A correction must be made based on the angle of the cable from the vertical.

Current measurements may be made through ice. A series of holes are cut in the ice across the river and the current measured by the preceding method. Because of friction between the ice and the underlying water, the velocity should be measured at 0.2, 0.6, and 0.8 depths and the results averaged.

It is possible to develop an empirical relationship between stream **stage** (elevation of the water surface above a datum) and discharge. As discharge measurements are slow and costly to make, knowledge of the preceding relationship is useful. A rating curve for a stream is made by simultaneously measuring the discharge of a stream and its stage and then repeating the measurements for several different stage heights. Stage versus discharge is then plotted as coordinates on graph paper to produce the rating curve (Figure 2.24).

If the stream channel does not scour during flooding, and if the stage is not affected by such factors as tributary flow, a simple rating curve is sufficient. Otherwise, a rating curve must include a factor for water-surface slope (Mitchell 1954). Automated stream-gauging stations employ a float device that measures the stage of a river by means of a stilling well connected to the stream. The stage data are transformed into discharge data by using either the rating curve or a rating table based on the curve. In the United States, most stream-stage measurements are recorded in digital form for automatic data processing.

2.13.2 Weirs

The discharge of small streams can be conveniently measured by use of a **weir.** This device is a small dam with a spillway opening of specified shape. There are several standard shapes for sharp-crested weirs, the most common being a 90° V-notch or a rectangular cutout. A small earthen or concrete dam is built and the weir set into it. The dam will

impound a small amount of water that should free fall over the weir crest, or lowest point of the spillway. The elevation of the backwater above the weir crest, H, is measured. The discharge over the weir can be found from the following formulas.

Rectangular weir

$$Q = 3\frac{1}{3}(L - 0.2H)H^{3/2} \tag{2.16A}$$

90° V-notch weir

$$Q = 2.5H^{5/2} \tag{2.17A}$$

where

Q is the discharge (ft^3/s)

L is the length of the weir crest (ft)

H is the head of the backwater above the weir crest (ft)

or

Rectangular weir

$$Q = 1.84(L - 0.2H)H^{2/3} \tag{2.16B}$$

90° V-notch weir

$$Q = 1.379\,H^{5/2} \tag{2.17B}$$

where

Q is discharge (m^3/s)

L is length of weir crest (m)

H is the height of the backwater above weir crest (m)

Note that Equations 2.16A, 2.16B, 2.17A, and 2.17B are empirical and not subject to dimensional analysis.

2.14 Manning Equation

In open-channel hydraulics, the average velocity of flow may be found from the Manning equation:

$$V = \frac{1.49R^{2/3}S^{1/2}}{n} \tag{2.18A}$$

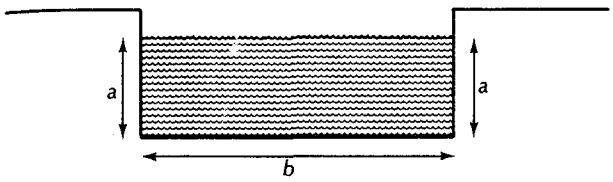
where

V is the average velocity (ft/s)

R is the hydraulic radius, or the ratio of the cross-sectional area of flow in square feet to the wetted perimeter (ft) (see Figure 2.25)

S is the energy gradient, which is the slope of the water surface

n is the Manning roughness coefficient



◀ FIGURE 2.25
Determination of the factors in an open channel that are needed to compute the hydraulic radius, *R*. The cross-sectional area is a x b; the wetted perimeter is a + b + a.

or

$$V = \frac{1}{n} R^{2/3} S^{1/2} \qquad \textbf{(2.18B)}$$

where

V is the average velocity (m/s)

R is the hydraulic radius, or the ratio of the cross-sectional area (m^2) divided by the wetted perimeter (m)

S is the energy gradient, which is the slope of the water surface

n is the Manning roughness coefficient

Note that Equations 2.18A and 2.18B are empirical and not subject to dimensional analysis.

The velocity of flow is dependent on the amount of friction between the water and the stream channel. Smoother channels will have less friction and, hence, faster flow. Channel roughness contributes to turbulence, which dissipates energy and reduces flow velocity. The following values for n are typical:

Mountain streams with rocky beds:	0.04–0.05
Winding natural streams with weeds:	0.035
Natural streams with little vegetation:	0.025
Straight, unlined earth canals:	0.020
Smoothed concrete:	0.012

The USGS published a series of photographs of rivers for which the value of the Manning roughness coefficient was computed (Barns 1967). Field measurements of velocity, slope, area, and wetted perimeter were made and the value of n computed from Equation 2.18A. Careful study of the photographs can provide an estimate for the value of n for a given river under study.

The Manning equation can be used to determine flow in situations that preclude direct measurements. For example, if the current were changing rapidly (e.g., during a rising or falling flood peak), conventional streamflow measurements would take too long. It might take the better part of an hour to make a discharge measurement, and flow velocity and discharge could change substantially during the period of measurement. Under these conditions, an instant approximation can be made using river cross sections and a measured slope.

PROBLEM

A drainage channel for storm water is lined with smooth concrete and has vertical sides with a flat bottom that is 3.50 ft wide. The bottom of the channel drops 1.50 ft over a distance of 500 ft. If the channel contains 1.50 ft of water, what is its discharge?

The wetted perimeter is the sum of the bottom width and the depth of water on either side.

$$\text{Wetted perimeter} = 3.50 \text{ ft} + 1.50 \text{ ft} + 1.50 \text{ ft} = 6.50 \text{ ft}$$

The cross-sectional area is the product of the bottom width and the depth.

$$\text{Cross-sectional area} = 3.50 \text{ ft} \times 1.50 \text{ ft} = 5.25 \text{ ft}^2$$

The hydraulic radius is the ratio of the cross-sectional area to the wetted perimeter.

$$R = 5.25 \text{ ft}^2/6.50 \text{ ft} = 0.808$$

The slope is the drop in elevation over the length of measurement.

$$S = 1.50 \text{ ft}/500 \text{ ft} = 0.0030$$

For smooth concrete, the roughness factor is 0.012. The velocity of flow from Equation 2.18A is

$$V = \frac{1.49R^{2/3}S^{1/2}}{n}$$

$$= \frac{1.49 \times (0.808)^{2/3} \times (0.0030)^{1/2}}{0.012}$$

$$= 5.90 \text{ ft/s}$$

The discharge from Equation 2.13 is the velocity of flow times the cross-sectional area, as follows:

$$Q = V \times A = 5.90 \text{ ft/s} \times 5.25 \text{ ft}^2 = 31.0 \text{ ft}^3/\text{s}$$

Notation

a	Baseflow recession constant
A	Area
C	Runoff coefficient
d	Stream depth
D	Number of days
D_E	Excess moisture
E_T	Evapotranspiration
f_c	Equilibrium infiltration capacity
f_0	Initial infiltration capacity
f_p	Infiltration capacity
G	Volume of recharge
H	Head of backwater over a weir crest
I_R	Irrigation water
I	Rainfall intensity
k	Infiltration constant
L	Length of a weir crest
n	Manning roughness coefficient
P	Probability
P_R	Precipitation
q	Open-channel discharge in a section of a channel
Q	Total discharge of a stream
Q_0	Stream discharge at the start of a recession
Q_A	Stream discharge at critical time for recession A
Q_B	Stream discharge at critical time for recession B
R	Hydraulic radius of a stream
S	Slope of a stream
S_f	Volume of final soil water
S_i	Volume of initial soil water
t	Time
t_1	Time that it takes for baseflow to decline by 90%
t_c	Critical time
v	Velocity of flow in a section of an open channel
V	Average velocity of flow in an open channel
V_t	Volume of remaining potential ground-water discharge
V_{tp}	Volume of total potential ground-water discharge
w	Stream width

Analysis

a. What is wrong with the reasoning behind this water-balance calculation?

Problem Statement: A ground-water basin and a surface drainage basin coincide in location and size. The drainage basin area is 325 mi^2. Mean annual rainfall is 30.0 in. Mean total evapotranspiration is 21.0 in. Direct runoff averages 3.00 in. A stream gauge at the exit from the drainage basin indicates that the long-term mean annual streamflow is 215 ft^3/s. What is the total amount of water available from both surface water and ground water within the basin?

Proposed Solution: Recharge to the ground-water reservoir can be obtained by subtracting the sum of evapotranspiration plus direct runoff from the precipitation. The result is 6.00 in. [30.0–(21.0 + 3.00)] per year of ground-water recharge distributed over the entire drainage basin.

To have ground-water recharge and streamflow in the same units, we convert the recharge from inches per year to cubic feet per second. The area of the drainage basin is 325 mi^2 times 2.788 × 10^7 ft^2/mi^2 or 9.06 × 10^9 ft^2. The 6 in. or 0.500 ft of ground-water recharge amounts to 4.53 × 10^9 ft^3/y of water over the entire drainage basin. Since this is an annual value, we must convert it to cubic feet per second by dividing by the number of seconds in a year (365 d/y × 1440 min/d × 60 s/min). The result is 144 ft^3/s.

The total amount of water available from both surface-water and ground-water sources is thus the sum of the 215 ft^3/s of streamflow plus the 144 ft^3/s of ground-water recharge or 359 ft^3/s.

b. The National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration maintains a website at *http://www.drought.noaa.gov.* Go to this site and determine which areas, if any, in the United States are currently in a drought condition. Write a page to describe the drought areas and how the current droughts could affect such things as crops, livestock, municipal water supply, lake levels, and navigation.

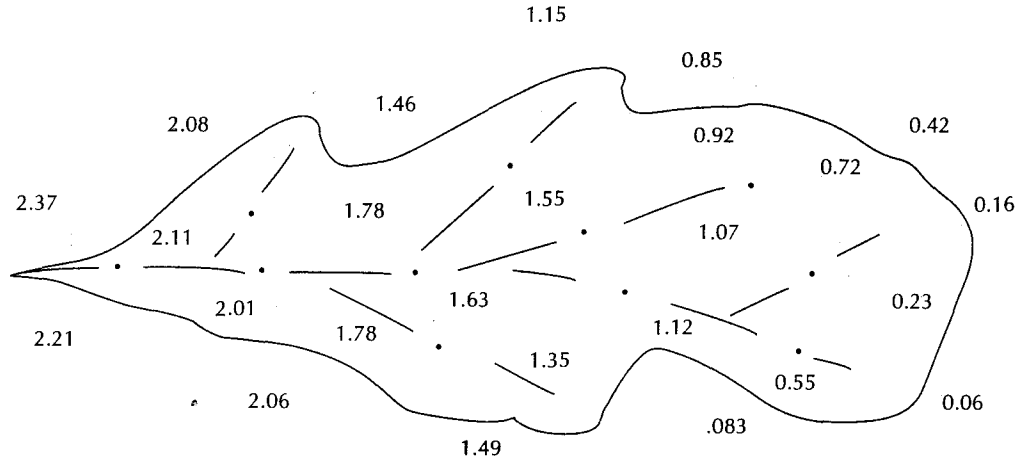
c. Go to the home page of the USGS, *http://www.usgs.gov.* Find the river system that drains your hometown. Where is the nearest stream-gauging station? What is the mean annual flow at that station?

d. Write a paragraph to describe how you would determine whether the reach of a river is gaining or losing.

e. The Woburn, Massachusetts, toxic trial was made famous by the book and movie, *A Civil Action.* In the actual trial, the expert hydrogeology witness for the plaintiffs disagreed with the expert hydrogeology witness for the defendants on several important issues. The contaminated wells were located next to a river. One issue of disagreement was how much of the river water, if any, was being drawn into the wells when they were pumping. Write a page to describe how you would perform a field test to answer this question. Assume that the wells can be pumped at the previous active rate, and that all water withdrawn from the wells could be transported out of the river basin.

Problems

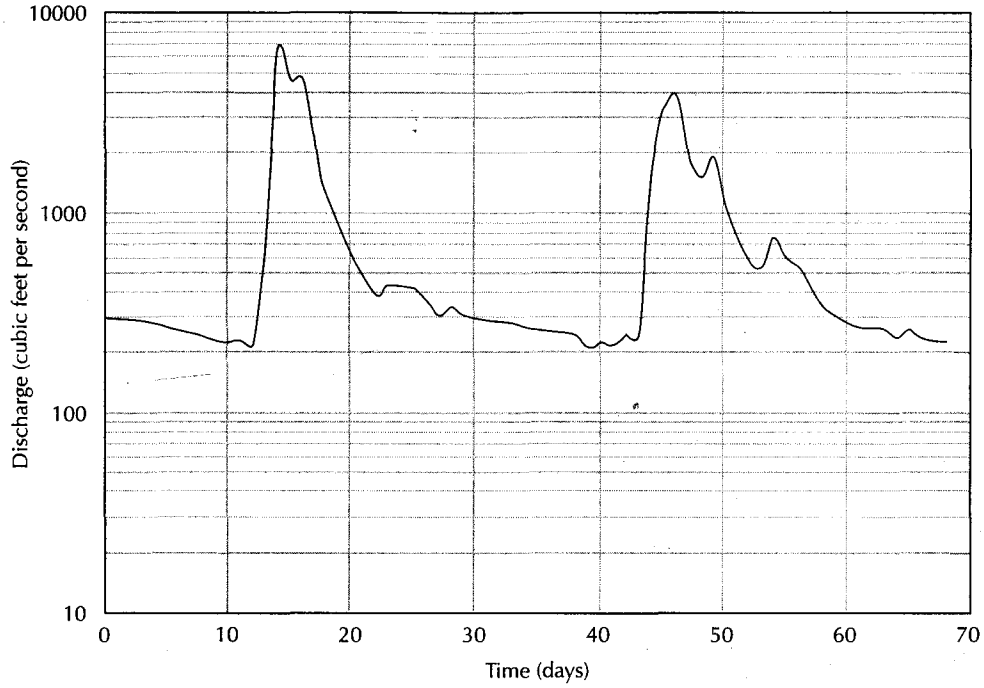
1. The standard U.S. Class A evaporation land pan has an inside diameter of 47.5 in. and a depth of 10.0 in.
   (A) Calculate the surface area of water in the pan in square meters.
   (B) Calculate the volume of the pan in cubic meters.
   (C) If the initial volume of water in the pan is 11.5 U.S. gallons, what is the depth of the water in millimeters?
   (D) If after a 24-h period with no precipitation the volume of water in the pan is measured and found to be 10.2 U.S. gallons, what is the evaporation rate in millimeters/day?
   (E) What would be the depth of water in millimeters?
   (F) During the succeeding day there was a 3-h period of precipitation at a constant rate of 5 mm/h. Assuming that the 24-h evaporation rate calculated in step D also occurs during this 24-h period, what would be the depth of water in the pan?
   (G) If there is no further rain, and no water is added to the pan, how long would it take for the water in the pan to totally evaporate, assuming the constant 24-h evaporation rate of step D?
2. During the period of time that the water in step G above is evaporation, how many calories of heat are being absorbed? Assume that the density of water is 1000 kg/m^3.
3. Figure 2.26 is a map of a drainage basin and the rainfall amounts during a storm at a number of precipitation stations both within and outside the drainage basin. Make a Thiessen network drawing for



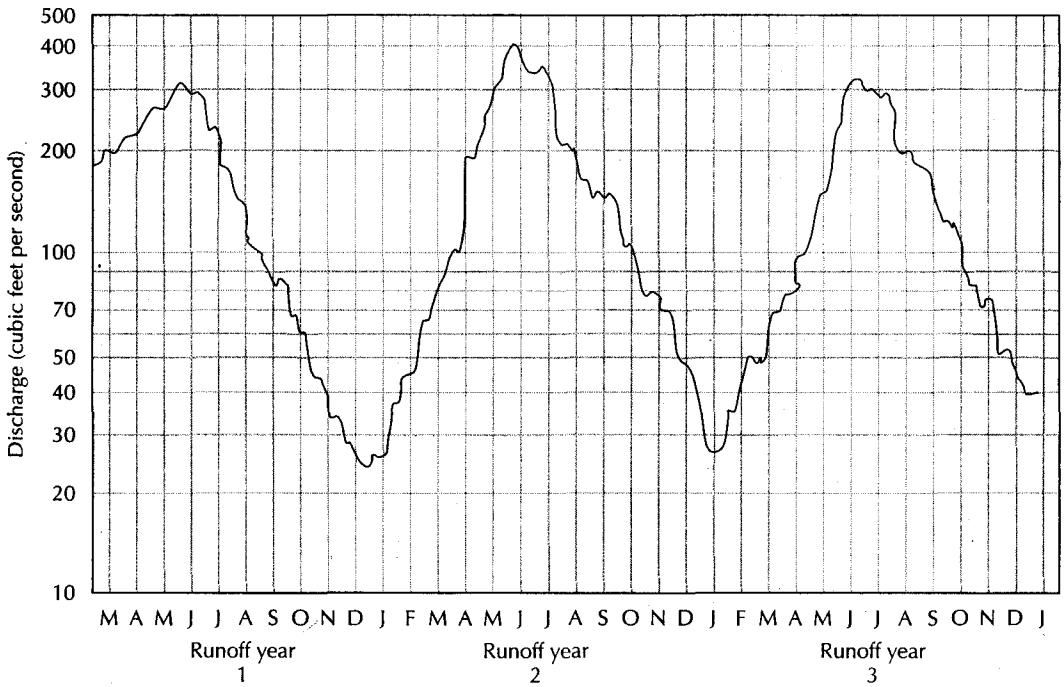
▲ FIGURE 2.26
Base map for Problems 2.3 and 2.4.

the drainage basin. The exact station location is the decimal point in the rainfall amount. The relative size of the area associated with each Thiessen polygon can be measured with a planimeter or estimated by tracing the Thiessen network on cross-section paper and counting the number of squares in each polygon. Estimate the effective uniform depth of precipitation over the drainage basin.

4. Make a copy of the drainage basin in Figure 2.26. Contour the precipitation data to create isohyetal lines and determine the effective uniform depth of precipitation.
5. A pond has a surface area of 35 ac. If the mean daily air temperature is 66°F, the mean daily dew-point temperature is 55°F, the solar radiation is 480 langleys, and the daily wind movement is 115 mi, what is the daily lake evaporation in acre-feet?
6. Make a cross-sectional plot of saturation humidity as a function of temperature using the data in Table 2.1. Label the areas of the graph that are undersaturated and supersaturated.
7. Consider an air mass that has an absolute humidity of 10 g/m^3 at a temperature of 22°C. Using the graph that you created for Problem 2.6, find (a) the dew point, and (b) the relative humidity.
8. Analysis of baseflow recession curves from a drainage basin has yielded a recession constant of $1.55 \times 10^{-2}\ d^{-1}$ when discharge is in cubic feet per second and time is in days.
   (A) If a recession begins with a discharge of 328 ft^3/s and t is in days, what will be the flow after 35 d and 70 d?
   (B) If the recession begins with a discharge of 2356 ft^3/s, what would be the flow in 5 d?
9. The flow of a river at the start of a baseflow recession was 712 m^3/s; after 60 d the flow declined to 523 m^3/s.
   (A) What is the recession constant?
   (B) What would be the flow after 112 d?
10. Assume that the hydrograph in Figure 2.15 has a drainage basin area of 722 mi^2. How long will overland flow continue after the flood peak passes?
11. A V-notch weir is placed in a road culvert to measure the flow of a stream passing through the culvert. The value of H is 2.72 ft. Compute the discharge of the stream.
12. A rectangular weir is placed in a small stream to measure flow. The value of L is 1.5 ft and H is 0.22 ft. Compute the discharge of the stream.
13. An industrial park with flat-roofed buildings, large parking lots, and little open area has a drainage basin area of 398 ac. The 25-year rainfall event (the amount that would on an average occur once in 25 years) has a precipitation intensity of 2.382 in./h. If the C factor is 0.75, what is the maximum rate that overland flow will drain from the industrial park?
14. Figure 2.27 shows the hydrograph of a stream, which is partially fed by baseflow, with several precipitation events. Compute the ground-water recharge that occurs between the first and second precipitation events.
15. Figure 2.28 is the hydrograph of a river with a long summer baseflow recession. Compute the volume of annual recharge that occurs between runoff year 1 and runoff year 2.



▲ FIGURE 2.27
Hydrograph for Problem 2.14.

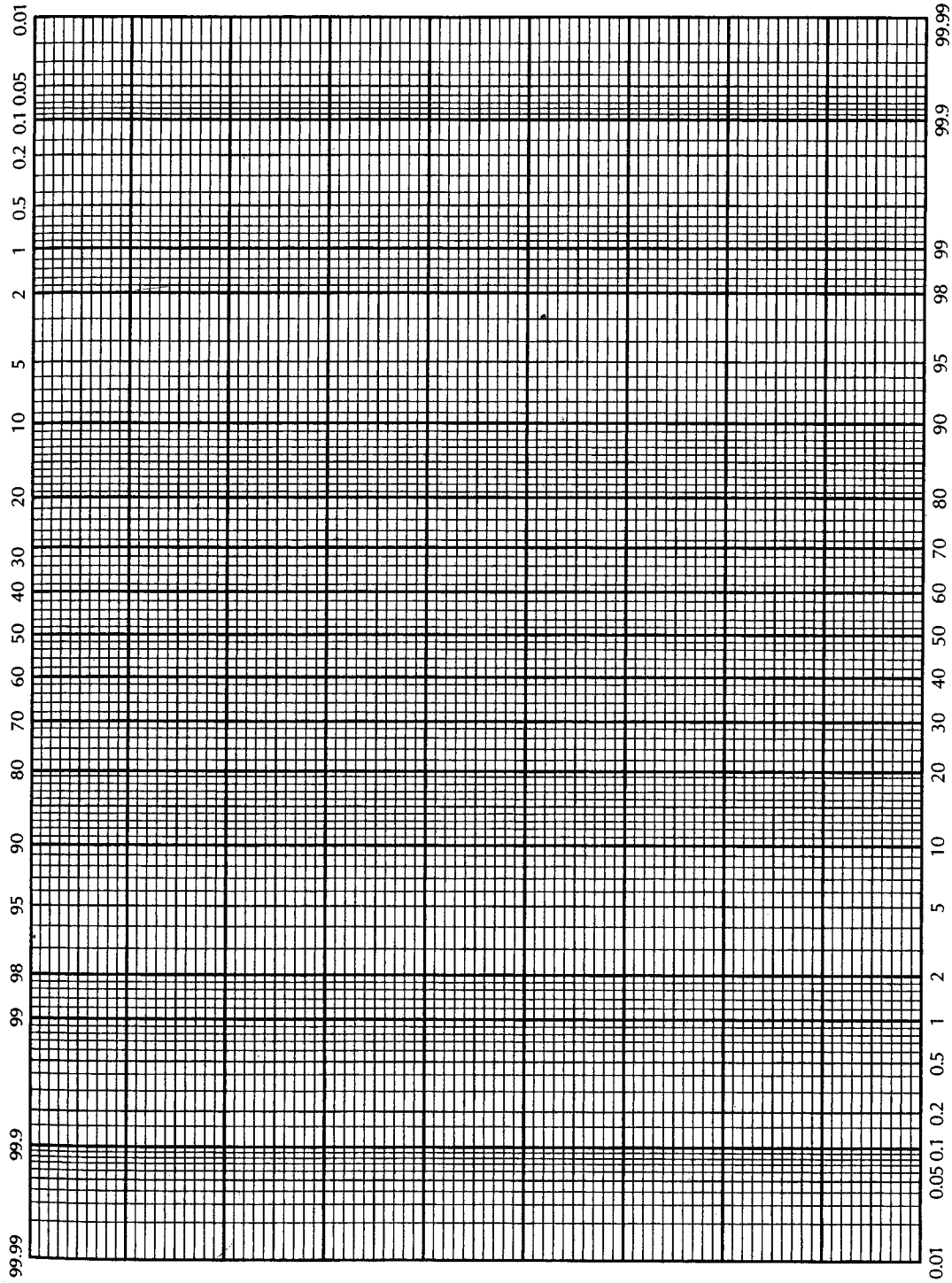


▲ FIGURE 2.28
Hydrograph for Problem 2.15.

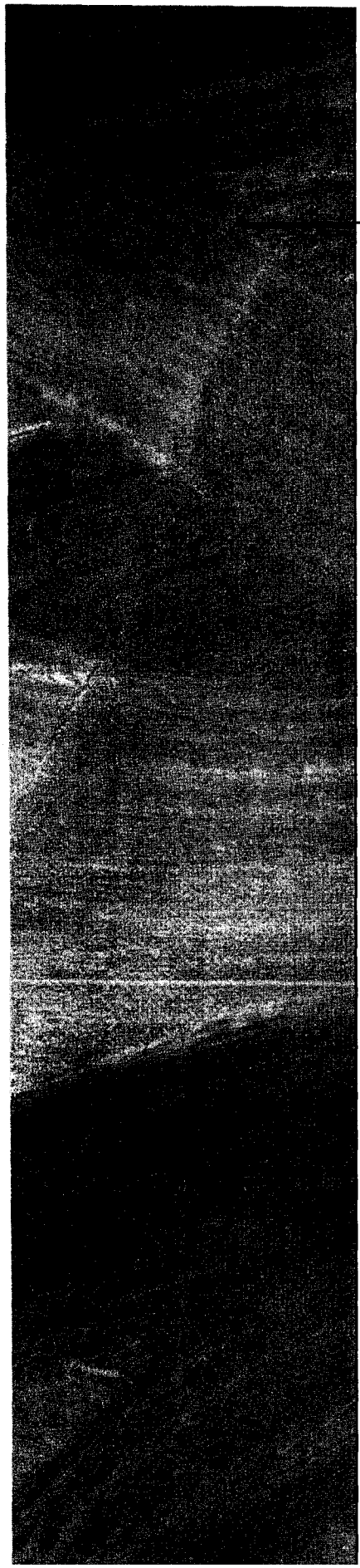
16. The annual flow of the Colorado River at Lees Ferry for the period from 1896 to 1956 is given in Table 2.4.
    (A) Construct a table of probability values.
    (B) Plot a duration curve showing the percent of the time an indicated discharge was equaled or exceeded using standard probability paper (Figure 2.29).
17. An aqueduct has smooth earthen sides and bottom. The slope of the water surface is 1.7 ft/mi. The channel is trapezoidal in shape with a 45° angle to the sides of the trapezoid and a bottom segment that 8.5 ft wide. The water in the aqueduct is 3.6 ft dee the center.
    (A) What is the average velocity of water in the aqueduct?
    (B) What is the volume of flow in the aqueduct?
18. A winding natural stream with weeds has an ave depth of 0.86 m and is 7.25 m across. The stream channel drops 0.34 m/km. What is the stream's average velocity of flow?

Table 2.4 Annual flow of the Colorado River at Lees Ferry (in millions of acre-feet)

Year	Flow	Year	Flow	Year	Flow
1896	10.089	1917	24.037	1938	17.545
1897	18.009	1918	15.364	1939	11.075
1898	13.815	1919	12.462	1940	8.601
1899	15.874	1920	21.951	1941	18.148
1900	13.228	1921	23.015	1942	19.125
1901	13.582	1922	18.305	1943	13.103
1902	9.393	1923	18.269	1944	15.154
1903	14.807	1924	14.201	1945	13.410
1904	15.645	1925	13.033	1946	10.426
1905	16.027	1926	15.853	1947	15.473
1906	19.124	1927	18.616	1948	15.613
1907	23.402	1928	17.279	1949	16.376
1908	12.856	1929	21.428	1950	12.894
1909	23.275	1930	14.888	1951	11.647
1910	14.248	1931	7.769	1952	20.290
1911	16.028	1932	17.243	1953	10.670
1912	20.520	1933	11.356	1954	7.900
1913	14.473	1934	5.640	1955	9.150
1914	21.222	1935	11.549	1956	10.720
1915	14.027	1936	13.800		
1916	19.201	1937	13.740		



▲ FIGURE 2.29
Probability paper for Problem 2.16.



CHAPTER 3

Properties of Aquifers

Some of the vapour that is formed by day does not rise high because the ratio of the fire that is raising it to the water that is being raised is small. When this cools and descends at night, it is called dew and hoar-frost. When the vapour is frozen before it has condensed to water again it is hoar-frost. . . . It is dew when the vapour has condensed into water and the heat is not so great as to dry up the moisture that has been raised, nor the cold sufficient (owing to the warmth of the climate or season) for the vapour itself to freeze.

Meteorologica, Aristotle (384–322 B.C.)

3.1 Matter and Energy (A Brief Review of Physics)

In this discussion of some fundamental principles and definitions fro physics, we include both English and SI units. English units are in widesprea use in the United States, but the remainder of the world uses the SI system.

Energy is the capacity to do work, which implies that some resistanc to change in movement must be overcome. *Work* is done when a force applied to a fluid while the fluid is moving. Work is equal to the product the net force exerted and the distance through which the force moves:

$$W = FD \qquad (3.$$

where

W is work (ML^2/T^2)

F is force (ML/T^2)

D is distance (L)

The *force* acting on a body is equal to the product of mass of the boc and its acceleration (Newton's second law of motion):

$$F = ma \qquad (3.$$

where

F is force (ML/T^2)

m is mass (M)

a is acceleration (L/T^2)

In the SI system the unit of *mass* is the kilogram (kg), the unit of *length* is the meter (m), and the unit of *time* is the second (s). In the English system the unit of mass is the slug, the unit of length is the foot (ft), and the unit of time is the second.

The unit of force in the SI system is the *newton* (N). Acceleration is expressed in meters per second per second (m/s^2) and a newton is 1 kg·m/s^2. In the English system the unit of force is a *pound* (lb), which is one slug-ft/s^2, since acceleration is expressed in feet per second per second.

The *weight* of a body is the gravitational force exerted on it by the earth. The gravitational acceleration, g, varies from place to place but is approximately 9.8 m/s^2 (32 ft/s^2). The weight of a body is given by

$$w = mg \tag{3.3}$$

where

w is weight (ML/T^2)

g is acceleration of gravity (L/T^2)

m is mass (M)

Weight has the same units as force. The mass of a body, the weight of which is 1 N, at a place where $g = 9.80\ m/s^2$, is

$$m = \frac{w}{g} = \frac{1\ \text{N}}{9.80\ \text{m/s}^2} = 0.102\ \text{kg}$$

In the English system the unit of weight is a pound. Confusion can arise because the pound—a unit of weight—is sometimes compared with the kilogram—a unit of mass. Balances and scales are even calibrated in both pounds and kilograms. If we say that a sample weighs 0.13 kg, we mean that the sample has a mass of 0.13 kg in the earth's gravitational field. The weight is 1.27 N (0.29 lb). A kilogram is equal to 1000 g.

The density of a fluid or a solid is its mass per unit volume. The units are kg/m^3 or $slugs/ft^3$.

$$\rho = m/V \tag{3.4}$$

where

ρ is density (M/L^3)

m is mass (M)

V is volume (L^3)

The specific weight of a substance is its weight per unit volume. The units are N/m^3 or lb/ft^3.

$$\gamma = w/V \tag{3.5}$$

where

γ is specific weight (M/L^2T^2)

w is weight (ML/T^2)

V is volume (L^3)

By combining Equations 3.3, 3.4, and 3.5 we can arrive at an alternative definition of specific weight:

$$\gamma = \rho g \tag{3.6}$$

Although it is not an official SI unit, density is frequently expressed in terms of grams per cubic centimeter (g/cm^3). If a substance has a density of 1 g/cm^3, the density is 1000 kg/m^3 in SI units.

PROBLEM

A fluid has a density of 1.085 g/cm^3. If the acceleration of gravity is 9.81 m/s^2, what is the specific weight of the fluid?

$\gamma = w/V \quad w = mg \quad \rho = m/V$

$\gamma = \rho g$

$\rho = 1.085\ g/cm^3 \times 1/1000\ kg/g \times 10^6\ cm^3/m^3$

$= 1.085 \times 10^3\ kg/m^3$

$\gamma = 1.085 \times 10^3\ kg/m^3 \times 9.81\ m/s^2$

$= 1.06 \times 10^4\ N/m^3$

Pressure is the force applied to a unit area perpendicular to the direction of the force. In the English system the units are pounds per square foot. In the SI system, the units are newtons per square meter, which are also called *pascals* (Pa).

$$P = F/A \tag{3.7}$$

where

P is pressure (M/LT^2)

F is force (ML/T^2)

A is cross-sectional area (L^2)

In hydrogeology, pressure is measured relative to atmospheric pressure, which varies with changing weather patterns. Standard atmospheric pressure is 1.013×10^5 Pa, or 2116 lb/ft^2.

VIP → Water is a newtonian fluid, which means that its resistance to relative motion is proportional to a fluid property known as the **dynamic viscosity,** μ. Standard units of dynamic viscosity are $N{\cdot}s/m^2$ or $lb{\cdot}s/ft^2$; the $g/(s{\cdot}cm)$ is also a convenient unit called the poise (P).

Water is a compressible fluid. If pressure is applied, the same mass of fluid will be contained within a smaller volume; in other words, the density increases. The change in density is proportional to the change in pressure, and the proportionality constant for compressibility is known as the *bulk modulus.* Water is elastic, so if the pressure is released the volume will expand and the density will decrease proportional to the pressure change. Units of bulk modulus are N/m^2 or lb/ft^2.

Table 3.1 English and SI Units

Parameter	English Unit	SI Unit	Conversion Factor	Dimensional Formula
Force	pound (lb)	newton (N)	1 lb = 4.448 N	ML/T^2
Mass	slug	kilogram (kg)	1 slug = 14.594 kg	M
Length	foot (ft)	meter (m)	1 ft = 0.3048 m	L
Time	second (s)	second	1 s = 1 s	T
Density	slug/ft^3	kg/m^3	1 slug/ft^3 = 515.4 kg/m^3	M/L^3
Specific weight	lb/ft^3	N/m^3	1 lb/ft^3 = 157.1 N/m^3	M/L^2T^2
Pressure	lb/ft^2	N/m^2	1 lb/ft^2 = 47.88 N/m^2	M/LT^2
Dynamic viscosity	lb-s/ft^2	N·s/m^2	1 lb-s/ft^2 = 47.88 N·s/m^2	M/LT
Bulk modulus	lb/ft^2	N/m^2	1 lb/ft^2 = 47.88 N/m^2	M/LT^2

Table 3.1 gives the conversion factors between English and SI units for these factors. Appendix 14 gives the density and dynamic viscosity of water at different temperatures.

3.2 Porosity of Earth Materials

At the time they are formed, some rocks contain void spaces while others are solid. Those rocks occurring near the surface of the earth are not totally solid. The physical and chemical weathering processes there continually decompose and disaggregate rock, thus creating voids. Slight movements of rock masses near the surface can cause rocks to crack or fracture. This also results in openings between rocks.

Sediments are assemblages of individual grains that were deposited by water, wind, ice, or gravity. There are openings called **pore spaces** between the sediment grains, so that sediments are not solid.

The cracks, voids, and pore spaces in earth materials are of great importance to the study of hydrogeology. Ground water and soil moisture occur in the voids in otherwise solid earth materials.

3.2.1 Definition of Porosity

The **porosity** of earth materials is the percentage of the rock or soil that is void of material. It is defined mathematically by the equation

$$n = \frac{100V_v}{V} \tag{3.8}$$

where

n is the porosity (percentage)

V_v is the volume of void space in a unit volume of earth material (L^3; cm^3 or m^3)

V is the unit volume of earth material, including both voids and solids (L^3; cm^3 or m^3)

Laboratory porosity is determined by taking a sample of known volume (V). The sample is dried in an oven at 105°C until it reaches a constant weight. This expels moisture clinging to surfaces in the sample, but not water that is hydrated as a part of certain minerals. The dried sample is then submerged in a known volume of water and allowed to remain in a sealed chamber until it is saturated. The volume of the voids (V_v) is equal to the original water volume less the volume in the chamber after the saturated sample is removed.

This laboratory procedure yields a value of the effective porosity because it excludes pores that are not large enough to contain water molecules and those that are not interconnected. **Effective porosity,** n_e, is the porosity available for fluid flow. Peyton et al. (1986) studied the effective porosity of fine-grained sediments. One conclusion of that study was that the effective porosity of a sediment is a function of the size of the molecules that are being transported relative to the size of the passageways that connect the pores. These passageways, or pore throats, are typically smaller than the pores. If the molecule being transported has a greater diameter than some of the pore throats, this would limit the effective porosity with respect to that molecule. Peyton et al. (1986) found that even in a lacustrine clay, water molecules could pass through all the pore throats, so that the effective porosity was the same as the porosity. This suggests that at least in sediments all the pores are connected and we need not be concerned with effective porosity with respect to flow of water.

The total porosity can be computed from the relationship

$$n = 100\,[1 - (\rho_b/\rho_d)] \tag{3.9}$$

where

n is the total porosity as a percentage

ρ_b is the bulk density of the aquifer material (M/L^3; g/cm^3 or kg/m^3)

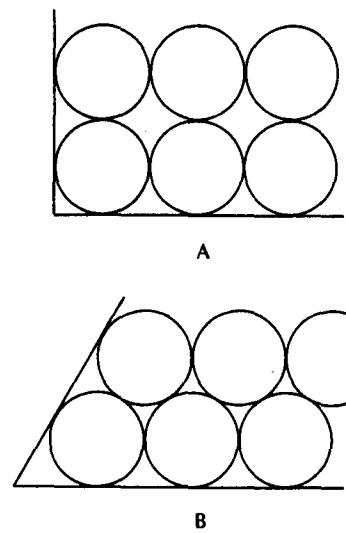
ρ_d is the particle density of the aquifer material (M/L^3; g/cm^3 or kg/m^3)

The bulk density of the aquifer material is the mass of the sample after oven drying divided by the original sample volume (the sample can change volume upon oven drying). The particle density is the oven-dried mass divided by the volume of the mineral matter in the sample as determined by a water displacement test. For most rock and soil the particle density is about 2.65 g/cm^3 (2650 kg/m^3), which is the density of quartz.

3.2.2 Porosity and Classification of Sediments

The porosity of sediments consists of the void spaces between solid fragments. If the fragments are solid spheres of equal diameters, they can be put together in such a manner that each sphere sits directly on the crest of the underlying sphere (Figure 3.1). This is called

▶ FIGURE 3.1
A. Cubic packing of spheres with a porosity of 47.65%
B. Rhombohedral packing of spheres with a porosity of 25.95%.



cubic packing, with an associated porosity of 47.65% (Meinzer 1923a). If the spheres lie in the hollows formed by four adjacent spheres of the underlying layer, the result is *rhombohedral packing*, with a porosity of 25.95% (Meinzer 1923a).

These two configurations represent the extremes of porosity for arrangements of equidimensional spheres with each sphere touching all neighboring spheres. The diameter of the sphere does not influence the porosity. Thus, a room full of bowling balls in cubic packing would have the same porosity as a room full of 1-mm ball bearings. The volume of an individual pore would be much larger for the bowling balls. The porosity of well-rounded sediments, which have been sorted so that they are all about the same size, is independent of the particle size and falls in the range of about 26% to 48%, depending on the packing.

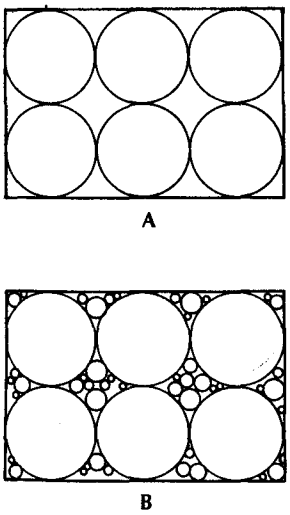
If a sediment contains a mixture of grain sizes, the porosity will be lowered. The smaller particles can fill the void spaces between the larger ones. The wider the range of grain sizes, the lower the resulting porosity (Figure 3.2). Geologic agents can sort sediments into layers of similar sizes. Wind, running water, and wave action tend to create well-sorted sediments. Other processes, such as glacial action and landslides, result in sediments with a wide range of grain sizes. These poorly sorted sediments have low porosities.

In addition to grain-size sorting, the porosity of sediments is affected by the shape of the grains. Well-rounded grains may be almost perfect spheres, but many grains are very irregular. They can be shaped like rods, disks, or books. Sphere-shaped grains will pack more tightly and have less porosity than particles of other shapes. The fabric or orientation of the particles, if they are not spheres, also influences porosity.

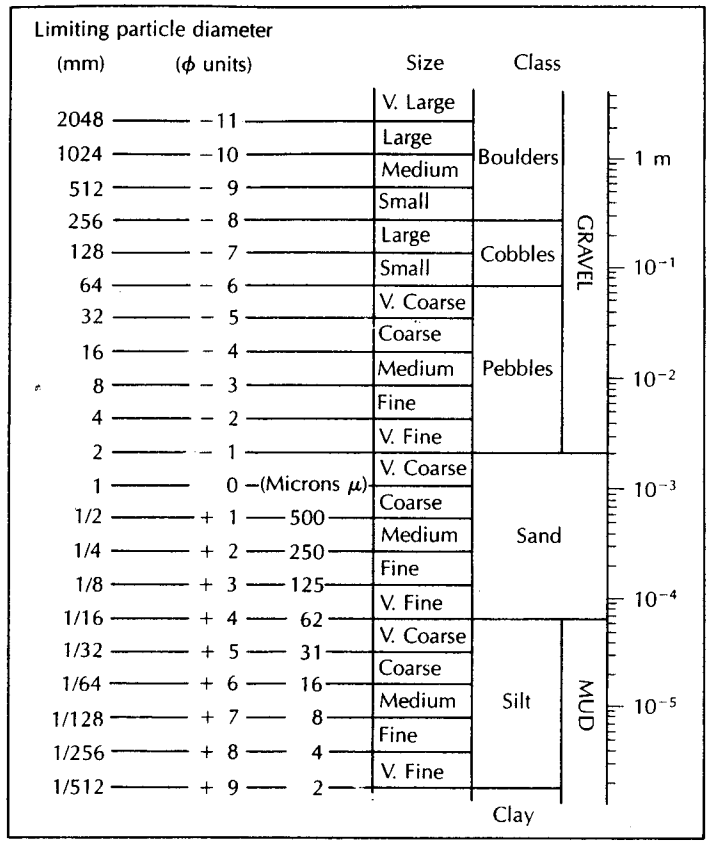
Sediments are classified on the basis of the size (diameter) of the individual grains. There are many classification systems in use. Figure 3.3 shows a common system frequently used by sedimentologists.

The engineering classification of sediments is somewhat different than the geological classification. The American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM) defines sediments on the basis of the grain-size distribution shown in Table 3.2.

ASTM Standard D2488—Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual Manual Procedure)—is in common use by civil and geotechnical engineers. It may be required for soil descriptions in state or provincial regulations. It will primarily be used when



◀ FIGURE 3.2
A. Cubic packing of spheres of equal diameter with a porosity of 47.65 percent. **B.** Cubic packing of spheres with void spaces occupied by grains of smaller diameter, resulting in a much lower overall porosity.



▲ FIGURE 3.3
Standard sizes of sediments with limiting particle diameters and the ϕ scale of sediment size, in which ϕ is equal to $\log_2 s$ (the particle diameter). *Source: G. M. Friedman and J. E. Sanders, Principles of Sedimentology (New York: John Wiley, 1978). Used with permission.*

Table 3.2 Engineering Grain-Size Classification

Name	Size range (mm)	Example
Boulder	>305	Basketball
Cobbles	76–305	Grapefruit
Coarse gravel	19–76	Lemon
Fine gravel	4.75–19	Pea
Coarse sand	2–4.75	Water softener salt
Medium sand	0.42–2	Table salt
Fine sand	0.075–0.42	Powdered sugar
Fines	<0.075	Talcum powder

a soil boring is installed. It is a shorthand method for describing the grain size and grain size distribution of both cohesive and noncohesive sediments. Table 3.3 contains an abbreviated version of the method. For a complete explanation, refer to the full standard.

The grain-size distribution of a sediment may be conveniently plotted on semilogarithmic paper. The cumulative percent finer by weight is plotted on the arithmetic scale and the grain size is plotted on the logarithmic scale. The grain size of the sand fraction

Table 3.3 Elements of ASTM Standard D2488 for Description of Sediments

Cohesive Sediments

Size Fraction	Dry Strength	Toughness	Group Symbol
Clay	medium to high	medium	CL
Clay	high to very high	high	CH
Silt	none to low	none to low	ML
Silt	low to medium	low to medium	MH
Organic silt or clay			OL/OH

Coarse-Grained Sediments with fines ≤5%

Size Fraction	Grain-Size Sorting	Group Symbol
Gravel	well sorted	GP
Gravel	poorly sorted	GW
Sand	well sorted	SP
Sand	poorly sorted	SW

Coarse-Grained Sediments with fines between 5% and 15%

Size Fraction	Grain-Size Sorting	Type of Fines	Group Symbol
Gravel	well sorted	ML or MH	GP-GM
Gravel	well sorted	CL or CH	GP-GC
Gravel	poorly sorted	ML or MH	GW-GM
Gravel	poorly sorted	CL or CH	GW-GC
Sand	well sorted	ML or MH	SP-SM
Sand	well sorted	CL or CH	SP-SC
Sand	poorly sorted	ML or MH	SW-SM
Sand	poorly sorted	CL or CH	SW-SC

Coarse-Grained Sediments with fines ≥15%

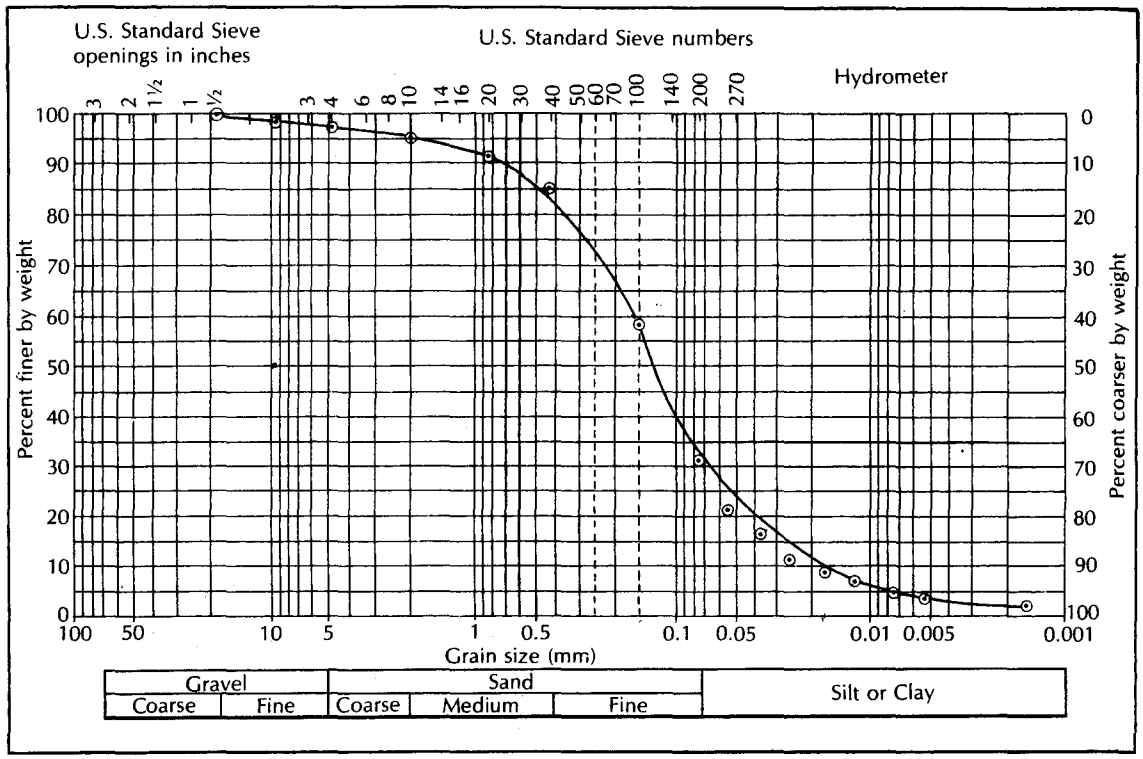
Size Fraction	Type of Fines	
Gravel	ML or MH	GM
Gravel	CL or CH	GC
Sand	ML or MH	SM
Sand	CL or CH	SC

Notes:

1. Dry strength is tested on a dried ball of cohesive sediment about 1 cm in diameter that is squeezed between the thumb and forefinger. If it crumbles when dry, is has no dry strength. Ratings of low medium and high depend up the effort needed to break the dried ball into pieces.

2. Toughness is tested by taking a moist sample of cohesive sediment and rolling it between the palms of one's hands to make a thread of sediment about 3 mm thick. Needing very little pressure to make the thread indicates low toughness. Medium toughness is indicated by needing medium pressure and high toughness by needing a lot of pressure.

3. Classify noncohesive sediment and sand or gravel on the basis of which size fraction is greater on a weight percent basis.



▲ FIGURE 3.4
Grain-size distribution curve of a silty fine to medium sand.

determined by shaking the sand through a series of sieves with decreasing mesh openings. The 200-mesh screen, with an opening of 0.075 mm, separates the sand fraction from the fines in the engineering classification system. The gradation of the fines is determined by a hydrometer test, which is based on the rate that the sediment settles in water. Figure 3.4 is a grain-size distribution curve for a silty fine to coarse sand. This sample is somewhat poorly sorted as there is a wide range of grain sizes present. Figure 3.5 is the grain-size distribution curve for a well-sorted fine sand. Less than 5% of the sample consisted of fines that pass the 200-mesh sieve. A hydro-meter test was not performed on this sample because of the lack of fines.

ASTM Standard D422-63—Standard Test Method for Particle-Size Analysis—describes how to determine the grain-size distribution for particles using standard sieves and hydrometers.

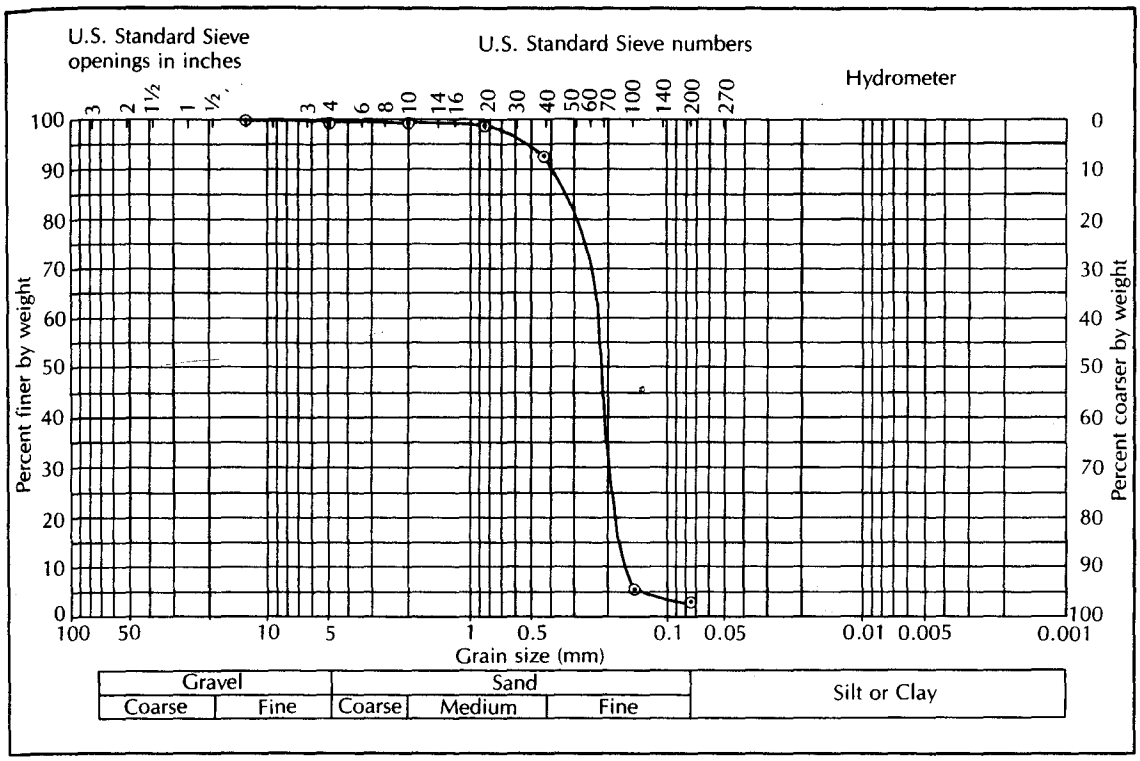
The **uniformity coefficient** of a sediment is a measure of how well or poorly sorted it is. The uniformity coefficient, C_u, is the ratio of the grain size that is 60% finer by weight, d_{60}, to the grain size that is 10% finer by weight, d_{10}:

$$C_u = d_{60}/d_{10} \tag{3.10}$$

A sample with a C_u less than 4 is well sorted; if the C_u is more than 6 it is poorly sorted. The poorly sorted silty sand in Figure 3.4 has a C_u of 8.3, whereas the well-sorted sand of Figure 3.5 has a C_u of 1.4.

The **effective grain size,** d_{10}, is the size corresponding to the 10% line on the grain-size curve.

Clays and some clay-rich or organic soils can have very high porosities. Organic materials do not pack closely because of their irregular shapes. The dispersive effect of the electrostatic charge present on the surfaces of certain book-shaped clay minerals causes clay particles to be repelled by each other. The result is a relatively large proportion of void space.



▲ FIGURE 3.5
Grain-size distribution curve of a fine sand.

Table 3.4 Porosity Ranges for Sediments

Well-sorted sand or gravel	25–50%
Sand and gravel, mixed	20–35%
Glacial till	10–20%
Silt	35–50%
Clay	33–60%

Based on Meinzer (1923a); Davis (1969); Cohen (1965); and MacCary and Lambert (1962).

The general range of porosity that can be expected for some typical sediments is listed in Table 3.4.

3.2.3 Porosity of Sedimentary Rocks

Sedimentary rocks are formed from sediments through a process known as **diagenesis.** A sediment, which may be either a product of weathering or a chemically precipitated material, is buried. The weight of overlying materials and physicochemical reactions with fluids in the pore spaces induce changes in the sediment. This includes compaction, removal of material, addition of material, and transformation of minerals by replacement or change in mineral phase. Compaction reduces pore volume by rearranging the grains and reshaping them. The deposition of cementing materials such as calcite, dolomite, or silica

will reduce porosity, although the dissolution of material that is dissolved by the por fluid will increase porosity. The primary structures of the sediment may be preserved i the sedimentary rock. The porosity of a sandstone, for instance, will be influenced by th grain size, size sorting, grain shape, and fabric of the original sediment. Diagenesis is complex process, but in general the primary porosity of a sedimentary rock will be les than that of the original sediment. This is especially true of fine-grained sediments (silt and clays) (Figure 3.6).

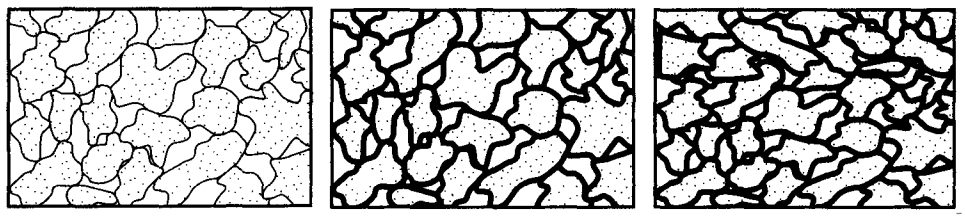
Rocks at the earth's surface are usually fractured to some degree. The fracturing ma be mild, resulting in widely spaced joints. At the other extreme, violent fracturing ma completely shatter the rock, resulting in fault breccias. Fractures create secondary porosit in the rock. Ground water can be found in fractured sedimentary rocks in the pores be tween grains **(primary porosity)** as well as in fractures **(secondary porosity).** Groun water flowing through fractures may enlarge them by solution of material. Bedding plane in the sedimentary rocks may have primary porosity formed during deposition of the sed iments and secondary porosity if the rock has moved along a bedding plane.

Some cohesive sediments (those rich in silt and/or clay) are also subject to fracturin In some cases, this is merely from shrinkage cracks that develop when the sediment drie however, slumping, loading, or tectonic activity can also cause fracturing in nonplastic co hesive sediments. This fracturing can be a significant source of secondary porosity in such deposits.

Limestones and dolomites are well-known and widespread examples of sedimenta ry rocks of chemical or biochemical origin. They are formed of calcium carbonate and calcium-magnesium carbonate, respectively. Gypsum, a calcium sulfate, and halite or rock salt (sodium chloride) are also widely distributed, common examples of chemica precipitates.

The materials that formed these rocks were originally part of an aqueous solution Inasmuch as the precipitation process is reversible, the rock can be redissolved. Where these rock types are in a zone of circulating ground water, the rock may be removed by so lution. Ground water moves initially through pore spaces, as well as along fracture joints, and bedding planes. As more water moves through the bedding planes, they are preferentially dissolved and enlarged, causing the rock to become very porous. Some lime stone formations have openings large enough to permit thousands of tourists a day to pas through them. The caverns at Carlsbad, New Mexico, and Ljubljana, Slovania, exemplify such massive porosity. Gypsum and salt may also be cavernous (Meinzer 1923a).

The percent porosity of sedimentary rocks is highly variable. In clastic rocks, it can range from 3% to 30%. Reported values for limestones and dolomites range from less than 1% to 30%.



▲ FIGURE 3.6
A. A clastic sediment with intergranular porosity. **B.** Reduction of porosity in the clastic sediment due to deposition of cementing material in the pore spaces. **C.** Further reduction in porosity due to compaction and cementation.

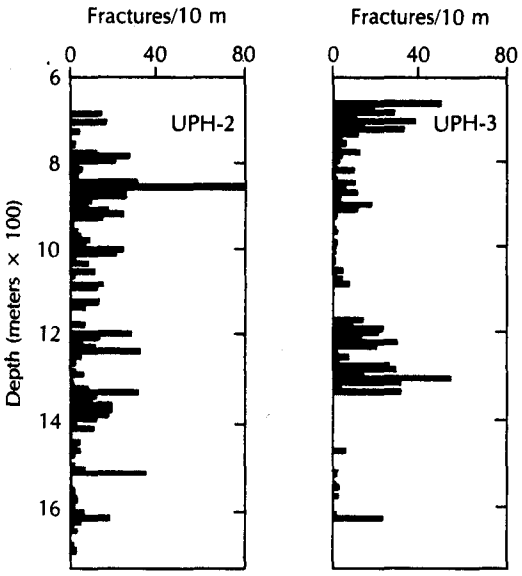
3.2.4 Porosity of Plutonic and Metamorphic Rocks

Plutonic rocks (those formed by intrusive igneous processes) and **metamorphic rocks** (those formed by applying heat and pressure to preexisting rocks) are typically thought to have a very low porosity as they are formed of interlocking crystals (Davis 1969). However, in a deep granite test hole in northern Illinois, porosity was measured at 1.42% at a depth of 5248 ft (1600 m). At this depth there were few fractures in the rock so some of the porosity was possibly primary. In the same borehole the porosity was as great as 2.15% where fractures were present (Daniels, Olhoeft, & Scott 1983).

Two geologic processes, weathering and fracturing, increase overall rock porosity. Rock at depth is under pressure due to the weight of overlying materials. This rock may be fractured by expansion as the overlying weight is removed by erosion. Tectonic stresses in the earth can cause folding and faulting. Rock in a fault shear zone may be extensively fractured. Expansion cracks can form at the crest of a fold. Joint sets in crystalline rock are usually found in three mutually perpendicular directions (Krynine & Judd 1957). Fracturing increases porosity of crystalline rocks by about 2% to 5% (Davis 1969; Brace, Paulding, & Scholz 1966). Weathering due to chemical decomposition and physical disintegration operates with greater efficacy with increasing rock porosity. Weathered plutonic and metamorphic rocks can have porosities in the range of 30% to 60% (Stewart 1964). Owing to the sheetlike structure of some weathering minerals, such as the micas, porosities can exceed that of loosely packed spheres.

Porosity due to fracturing is concentrated in the rock along the sets of joints and is a function of the width of the openings in the joints. Weathered rock has the pore spaces distributed throughout the rock, although weathering may be more intense along joint or weathering planes.

Figure 3.7 contains histograms of the number of fractures as a function of depth in two deep core holes drilled into 1.47-billion-year-old biotite granite in northern Illinois. The Precambrian/Cambrian unconformity is at a depth of about 1970 ft (600 m), which is shown at the top of the histograms. Fractures can be seen to be concentrated near the top of the Precambrian basement rock, indicating that weathering occurred when the basement rock was at the surface. However, fracturing was also detected near the bottom of the



◀ FIGURE 3.7
Histograms showing number of fractures as a function of depth at two deep core holes into Precambrian-age granite in northern Illinois. *Source: B. C. Haimson & T. W. Doe, "State of Stress, Permeability, and Fractures in the Precambrian Granite of Northern Illinois,"* Journal of Geophysical Research *88, B9 (1983): 7355–71.*

test hole at a depth of 5248 ft (1600 m) (Haimson & Doe 1983). This indicates that unloading can create fractures to significant depths in some instances.

3.2.5 Porosity of Volcanic Rocks

Volcanic rocks (those formed by extrusive igneous activity) are similar in chemical composition to plutonic rocks because both are formed by the cooling of molten rock (magma). However, extrusive rocks cool and solidify quickly because they are formed in a surface environment; this gives them radically different porosity characteristics. Volcanic rocks include lava flows; deposits of ash and cinders, which can occur in loose, unconsolidated piles; and such rocks as welded tuff.

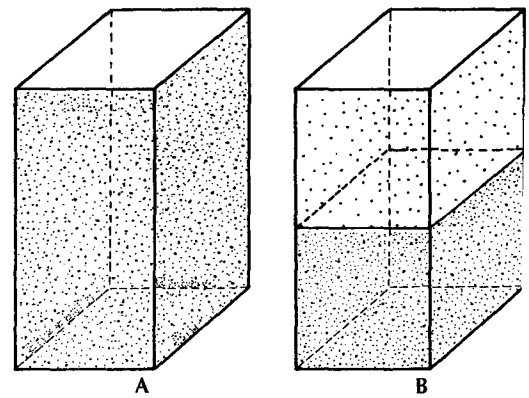
Lava cooling rapidly at the surface will trap degassing products, resulting in holes in the rock (vesicular texture). The holes create porosity, although they may not be interconnected. Shrinkage cracks that develop in the lava as it cools create joints. Flowing lava can form a crust, which then breaks apart to form a rubbly structure. The broken surface of buried lava flows, the remains of natural lava tubes and tunnels through which molten lava once poured, and stream gravels trapped between lava flows all produce a high porosity in some extrusive rocks. Porosity of basalt, a crystalline extrusive rock that is formed from magma with a low gas content, generally ranges from 1% to 12% (Schoeller 1962). Pumice, a glassy rock that is formed from a magma with a very high gas content, can have a porosity of as high as 87% (Davis 1969), although the vesicles are not well interconnected.

Pyroclastic deposits, which are formed by volcanic material thrown into the air when molten, can have high porosities. Values of porosity of tuff ranging from 14% to 40% have been reported (Keller 1960). Recent volcanic ash may have a porosity of 50%. Weathering of volcanic deposits can increase the porosity to values in excess of 60% (Davis 1969).

3.3 Specific Yield

Specific yield (S_y) is the ratio of the volume of water that drains from a saturated rock owing to the attraction of gravity to the total volume of the rock (Meinzer 1923b) (Figure 3.8).

Water molecules cling to surfaces because of surface tension of the water (Figure 3.9). If gravity exerts a stress on a film of water surrounding a mineral grain, some of the film will pull away and drip downward. The remaining film will be thinner, with a greater surface tension so that, eventually, the stress of gravity will be exactly balanced by the surface tension. **Pendular water** is the moisture clinging to the soil particles because of surface tension. At the moisture content of the specific yield, gravity drainage will cease.



► FIGURE 3.8
A. A volume of rock saturated with water. **B.** After gravity drainage, 1 unit volume of the rock has been dewatered with a corresponding lowering of the level of saturation. Specific yield is the ratio of the volume of water that drained from the rock, owing to gravity, to the total rock volume.

If two samples are equivalent with regard to porosity, but the average grain size of one is much smaller than the other, the surface area of the finer sample will be larger. In addition, water will be primarily retained in the smaller pores. As a result, more water can be held as pendular moisture by the finer grains.

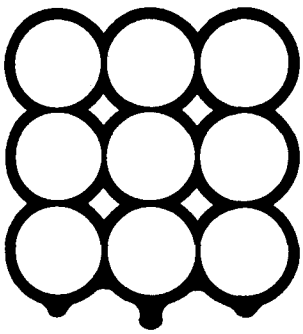
The **specific retention** (S_r) of a rock or soil is the ratio of the volume of water a rock can retain against gravity drainage to the total volume of the rock (Meinzer 1923b). Since the specific yield represents the volume of water that a rock will yield by gravity drainage, with specific retention the remainder, the sum of the two is equal to porosity:

$$n = S_y + S_r \tag{3.11}$$

The specific retention increases with decreasing grain size, so that a clay may have a porosity of 50% with a specific retention of 48%.

Table 3.5 lists the specific yield, in percent, for a number of sediment textures. The data for this table were compiled from a large number of samples in various geographic locations. Maximum specific yield occurs in sediments in the medium-to-coarse sand-size range (0.5 to 1.0 mm). This is shown graphically in Figure 3.10, which plots specific yield as a function of grain size for several hundred samples from the Humboldt River Valley of Nevada.

Both soil formed by weathering processes at the surface and sediments that are depositional generally contain a mixture of clay, silt, and sand. Figure 3.11 is a soil classification triangle showing lines of equal specific yield. It is apparent that the specific yield increases rapidly as the percentage of sand increases and as the percentages of silt, and especially clay, decrease.



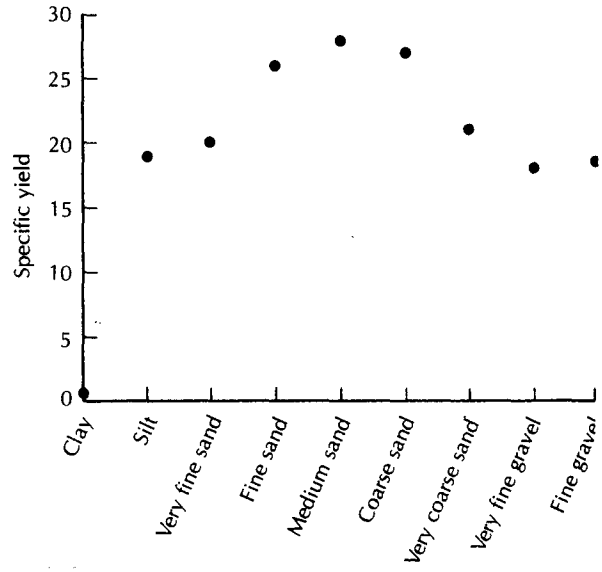
◀ FIGURE 3.9
Pendular water clinging to spheres owing to surface tension. Gravity attraction is pulling the water downward.

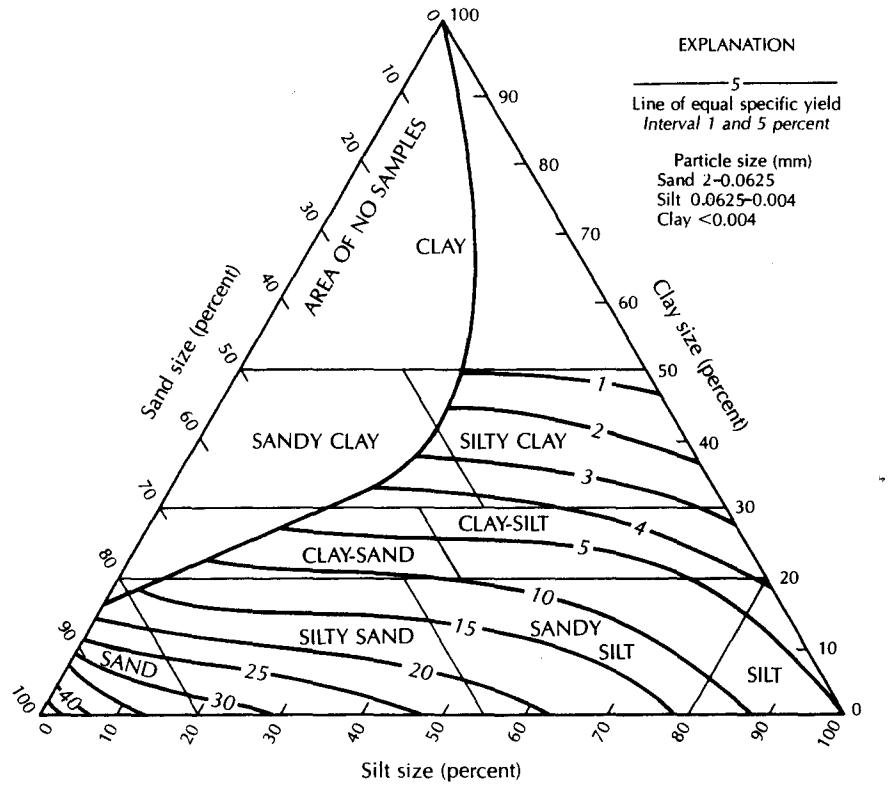
Table 3.5 Specific Yields in Percent

Material	Specific Yield		
	Maximum	Minimum	Average
Clay	5	0	2
Sandy clay	12	3	7
Silt	19	3	18
Fine sand	28	10	21
Medium sand	32	15	26
Coarse sand	35	20	27
Gravelly sand	35	20	25
Fine gravel	35	21	25
Medium gravel	26	13	23
Coarse gravel	26	12	22

Source: Johnson (1967).

► FIGURE 3.10
Specific yield of sediments from the Humboldt River Valley of Nevada as a function of the median grain size. *Source: Data from P. Cohen,* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper *1975, 1965.*





▲ FIGURE 3.11
Textural classification triangle for unconsolidated materials showing the relation between particle size and specific yield. *Source: A. I. Johnson,* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper *1662–D, 1967.*

Specific yield may be determined by laboratory methods. A sample of sediment of known volume is fully saturated. This is usually done in a soil column that is flooded slowly from the bottom, allowing air to escape upward. Water is then allowed to drain from the column. Care must be taken to avoid evaporation losses; even for sand-sized grains, columns must be allowed to drain for months before equilibrium is reached (Prill, Johnson, & Morris 1965). The ratio of the volume of water drained to the volume of the soil column is the specific yield (multiplied by 100 to express the value as a percentage).

The specific yield of sediment and rock can also be determined in the field. Water wells are pumped, and the rate at which the water level falls in nearby wells is measured. Chapter 6 includes a discussion of such pumping-test methods.

3.4 Hydraulic Conductivity of Earth Materials

We have seen that earth materials near the surface generally contain some void space and thus exhibit porosity. Moreover, in most cases, these voids are interconnected to some degree. Water contained in the voids is capable of moving from one void to another, thus circulating through the soil, sediment, and rock. It is the ability of a rock to transmit water that, together with its ability to hold water, constitute the most significant hydrologic properties. There are some rocks that exhibit porosity but lack interconnected voids (e.g., vesicular basalt). These rocks cannot convey water from one void to another. Some sediments and rocks have porosity, but the pores are so small that water flows through the rock with difficulty. Clay and shale are examples.

3.4.1 Darcy's Experiment

In the mid-1800s, a French engineer, Henry Darcy,* made the first systematic study of the movement of water through a porous medium (Darcy 1856). He studied the movement of water through beds of sand used for water filtration. Darcy found that the rate of water flow through a bed of a "given nature" is proportional to the difference in the height of the water between the two ends of the filter beds and inversely proportional to the length of the flow path. He determined also that the quantity of flow is proportional to a coefficient, K, which is dependent upon the nature of the porous medium.

Figure 3.12 illustrates a horizontal pipe filled with sand. Water is applied under pressure through end A. The pressure can be measured and observed by means of a thin vertical pipe open in the sand at point A. Water flows through the pipe and discharges at point B. Another vertical pipe or piezometer is present to measure the pressure at B.

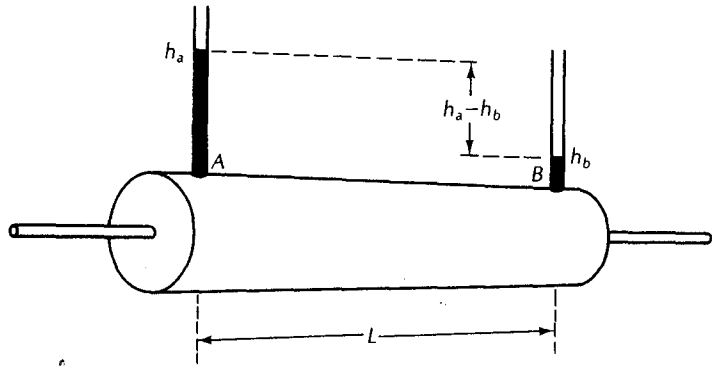
Darcy found experimentally that the discharge, Q, is proportional to the difference in the height of the water, h (hydraulic head), between the ends and inversely proportional to the flow length, L:

$$Q \propto h_A - h_B \text{ and } Q \propto -1/L$$

The flow is also obviously proportional to the cross-sectional area of the pipe, A. When combined with the proportionality constant, K, the result is the expression known as **Darcy's law:**

$$Q = -KA\left(\frac{h_A - h_B}{L}\right) \tag{3.12}$$

*An interesting account of the career of Henry Darcy can be found in an article by Allan Freeze, "Henry Darcy and the Fountains of Dijon," *Ground Water* 32, no. 1 (1994): 23–30.



▲ FIGURE 3.12
Horizontal pipe filled with sand to demonstrate Darcy's experiment. (Darcy's original equipment was actually vertically oriented.)

This may be expressed in more general terms as

$$Q = -KA\left(\frac{dh}{dl}\right) \tag{3.13}$$

where dh/dl is known as the **hydraulic gradient.** The quantity dh represents the change in head between two points that are very close together, and dl is the small distance between these points. The negative sign indicates that flow is in the direction of decreasing hydraulic head. The use of the negative sign necessitates careful determination of the sign of the gradient. If the value of h_2 at point X_2 is greater than h_1 at point X_1, then flow is from point X_2 to X_1. If $h_1 > h_2$, then flow is from X_1 to X_2.

3.4.2 Hydraulic Conductivity

We can rewrite Equation 3.13 as

$$q = -K\frac{dh}{dl} \tag{3.14}$$

where $q = Q/A$. The factor q is called the **specific discharge** and has the dimensions of length/time (L/T). It is also sometimes called the **Darcian velocity.** It is not a true velocity as the cross-sectional area, A, is partially blocked with soil material.

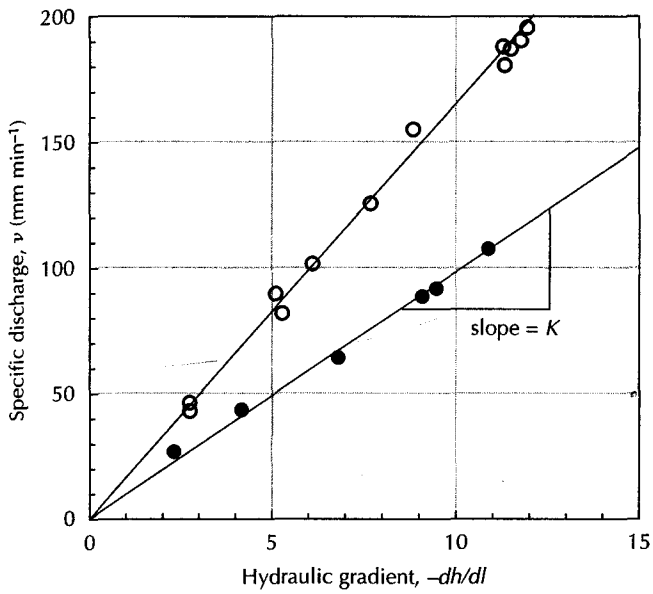
Figure 3.13 shows some of Darcy's original data with specific discharge plotted against hydraulic gradient for two different sands. Note that the data fall on straight lines indicating proportionality; K is the slope of the straight line with dimensions of L/T.

We can also rearrange Equation 3.13 to demonstrate that the coefficient K has the dimensions of L/T. This coefficient has been termed the **hydraulic conductivity.** In other works, it may be referred to as the coefficient of permeability:

$$K = \frac{-Q}{A(dh/dL)} \tag{3.15}$$

Discharge has the dimensions volume/time (L^3/T), area (L^2), and gradient (L/L). Substituting these dimensions into Equation 3.15, the dimensions of K are determined:

$$K = \frac{-(L^3/T)}{(L^2)(L/L)} = (L/T)$$



◀ FIGURE 3.13
Original data from Darcy's 1856 experiments that show a linear relationship between specific discharge and hydraulic gradient for two different sands. *Source: Hornberger, Raffensperger, Wiberg and Eshleman,* Elements of Physical Hydrology. © *1998. The Johns Hopkins University Press. Used with Permission.*

Hubbert (1956) pointed out that Darcy's proportionality constant, K, is a function of properties of both the porous medium and the fluid passing through it. It is intuitively obvious that a viscous fluid (one that is thick), such as crude oil, will move at a slower rate than water, which is thinner and has a lower viscosity. The discharge is directly proportional to the **specific weight,** γ, of the fluid. The specific weight is the force exerted by gravity on a unit volume of the fluid. This represents the driving force of the fluid. Discharge is also inversely proportional to the *dynamic viscosity* of the fluid, μ, which is a measure of the resistance of the fluid to the shearing that is necessary for fluid flow.

If experiments are performed with glass spheres of uniform diameter, the discharge is also proportional to the square of the diameter of the glass beads, d.

These proportionality relationships can be expressed as

$$Q \propto d^2$$

$$Q \propto \gamma$$

$$Q \propto \frac{1}{\mu}$$

Darcy's law can also be expressed as

$$Q = -\frac{Cd^2\gamma A}{\mu}\frac{dh}{dl} \tag{3.16}$$

The new proportionality constant, C, is called the *shape factor.* Both C and d^2 are properties of the porous media, whereas γ and μ are properties of the fluid. We can introduce a new constant, K_i, which is representative of the properties of the porous medium alone. It is termed the **intrinsic permeability.** This is basically a function of the size of the openings through which the fluid moves. The larger the square of the mean pore diameter, d, the lower the flow resistance. The cross-sectional area of a pore is also a function of the shape of the opening. A constant can be used to describe the overall effect of the shape of the pore spaces. Using this dimensionless constant, C, the intrinsic permeability is given by the expression

$$K_i = Cd^2 \tag{3.17}$$

The dimensions of K_i are (L^2), or area. The relationship between hydraulic conductivity and intrinsic permeability is

$$K = K_i\left(\frac{\gamma}{\mu}\right) \tag{3.18}$$

or

$$K = K_i\left(\frac{\rho g}{\mu}\right) \tag{3.19}$$

where g is the acceleration of gravity and ρ is the density.

Units for K_i can be in square feet, square meters, or square centimeters. In the petroleum industry, the *darcy* is used as a unit of intrinsic permeability. (The petroleum engineer is similarly concerned with the occurrence and movement of fluids through porous media.) The darcy is defined as

$$1 \text{ darcy} = \frac{\dfrac{1 \text{ cP} \times 1 \text{ cm}^3/\text{s}}{1 \text{ cm}^2}}{1 \text{ atm}/1 \text{ cm}}$$

where

cP is centipoise (a unit of viscosity)

atm is atmosphere (a unit of pressure)

This expression can be converted to square centimeters, since

$$1 \text{ cP} = 0.01 \text{ dyn·s/cm}^2$$

and

$$1 \text{ atm} = 1.0132 \times 10^6 \text{ dyn/cm}^2$$

Substituting into the definition of the darcy, it may be seen that

$$1 \text{ darcy} = 9.87 \times 10^{-9} \text{ cm}^2 \approx 10^{-8} \text{ cm}^2$$

Both the viscosity and the density of a fluid are functions of its own temperature. The colder the fluid, the more viscous it is. There is also a more complex relationship between temperature and density, as the density of water increases with temperature to 4°C, at which temperature it is at a maximum. The hydraulic conductivity of a rock or sediment will vary with the temperature of the water. As solutions become saline, this may also affect the values of specific gravity and viscosity, which will also cause the hydraulic conductivity to vary. The laboratory, or standard, value of hydraulic conductivity is defined for pure water at a temperature of 15.6°C. The units are defined in terms of length/time (Table 3.6). In the United States the unit feet per day is used in hydrogeological practice, and centimeters per second is used in soils engineering practice. In the SI system of units hydraulic conductivity is in meters per day. A derived unit of gallons per day per square foot was used in the past. It can be converted to feet per day by dividing by 7.48. The term permeability is often used in place of hydraulic conductivity which can lead to confusion.

3.4.3 Permeability of Sediments

Unconsolidated coarse-grained sediments represent some of the most prolific producers of ground water. Likewise, clays are often used for engineering purposes, such as lining solid-waste disposal sites, because of their extremely low intrinsic permeability. There i

Table 3.6 Conversion Values for Hydraulic Conductivity

1 gal/day/ft^2	=	0.0408 m/day
1 gal/day/ft^2	=	0.134 ft/day
1 gal/day/ft^2	=	4.72×10^{-5} cm/s
1 ft/day	=	0.305 m/day
1 ft/day	=	7.48 gal/day/ft^2
1 ft/day	=	3.53×10^{-4} cm/s
1 cm/s	=	864 m/day
1 cm/s	=	2835 ft/day
1 cm/s	=	21,200 gal/day/ft^2
1 m/day	=	24.5 gal/day/ft^2
1 m/day	=	3.28 ft/day
1 m/day	=	0.00116 cm/s

Table 3.7 Ranges of Intrinsic Permeabilities and Hydraulic Conductivities for Unconsolidated Sediments

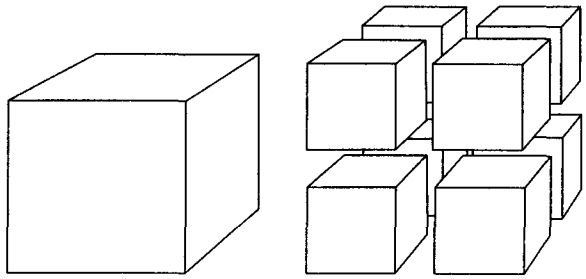
Material	Intrinsic Permeability (darcys)	Hydraulic Conductivity (cm/s)
Clay	$10^{-6} - 10^{-3}$	$10^{-9} - 10^{-6}$
Silt, sandy silts, clayey sands, till	$10^{-3} - 10^{-1}$	$10^{-6} - 10^{-4}$
Silty sands, fine sands	$10^{-2} - 1$	$10^{-5} - 10^{-3}$
Well-sorted sands, glacial outwash	$1 - 10^{2}$	$10^{-3} - 10^{-1}$
Well-sorted gravel	$10 - 10^{3}$	$10^{-2} - 1$

obviously a wide-ranging continuum of permeability values for unconsolidated sediments (Table 3.7).

The intrinsic permeability is a function of the size of the pore opening. The smaller the size of the sediment grains, the larger the surface area the water contacts (Figure 3.14). This increases the frictional resistance to flow, which reduces the intrinsic permeability. For well-sorted sediments, the intrinsic permeability is proportional to the grain size of the sediment (Norris & Fidler 1965).

For sand-sized alluvial deposits, several factors relating intrinsic permeability to grain size have been noted (Masch & Denny 1966). These observations would hold true for all sedimentary deposits, regardless of origin of deposition.

1. As the median grain size increases, so does permeability, due to larger pore openings.
2. Permeability will decrease for a given median diameter as the standard deviation of particle size increases. The increase in standard deviation indicates a more poorly sorted sample, so that the finer material can fill the voids between larger fragments. (Figure 3.2B)



◀ FIGURE 3.14
Relationship of sediment grain size to th surface area of pore space. **A.** A cube of sediment with a surface area of 6 squar units. **B.** The cube has been broken intc 8 pieces, each with a diameter of one-half of the cube in part A. The surface area has increased to 12 square units—a increase of 100%.

3. Coarser samples show a greater decrease in permeability with an increase in standard deviation than do fine samples.
4. Unimodal (one dominant size) samples have a greater permeability than bimodal (two dominant sizes) samples. This is again a result of poorer sorting of the sediment sizes, as the bimodal distribution indicates.

The hydraulic conductivity of sandy sediments can be estimated from the grain-siz distribution curve by the **Hazen method** (Hazen 1911). The method is applicable to sanc where the effective grain size (d_{10}) is between approximately 0.1 and 3.0 mm. The Haze approximation is

$$K = C(d_{10})^2 \tag{3.2c}$$

where

K is hydraulic conductivity (cm/s)

d_{10} is the effective grain size (cm)

C is a coefficient based on the following table:

Very fine sand, poorly sorted	40–80
Fine sand with appreciable fines	40–80
Medium sand, well sorted	80–120
Coarse sand, poorly sorted	80–120
Coarse sand, well sorted, clean	120–150

The work of Hazen (1911) demonstrated that hydraulic conductivity could be relate to the square of a characteristic dimension of a sediment. Shepherd (1989) analyzed da from 18 published studies where hydraulic conductivity had been related to grain size. H found that all studies could be related to the general formula

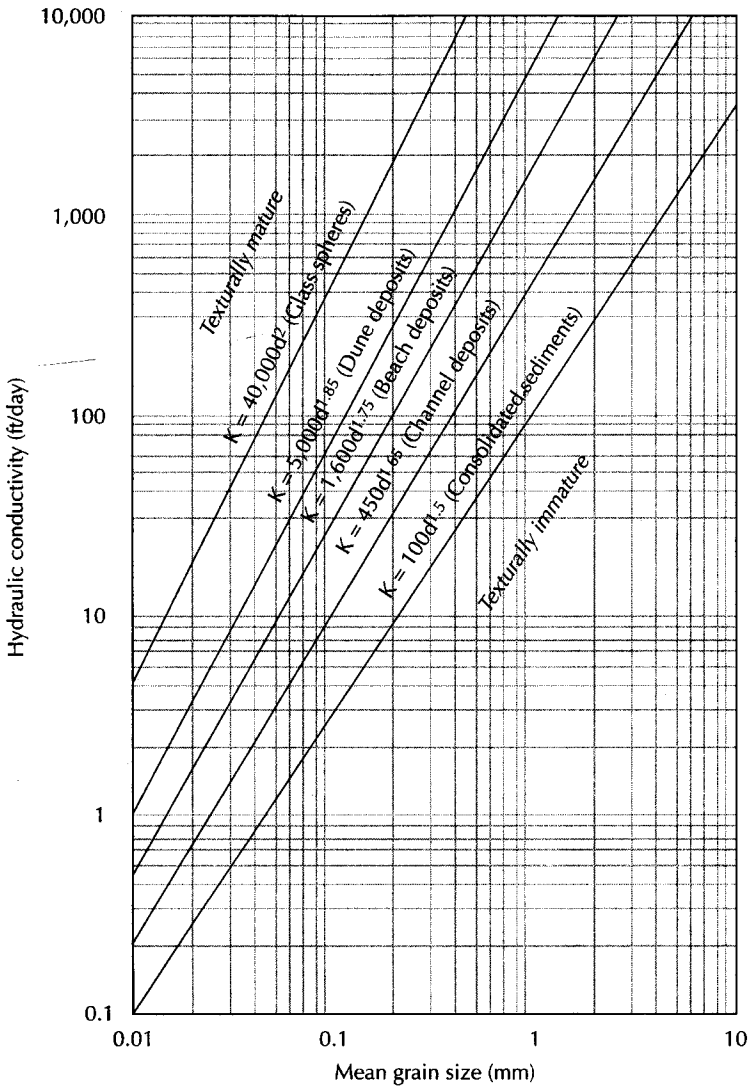
$$K = Cd^j_{50} \tag{3.2d}$$

where

C is a shape factor

d_{50} is the mean grain size (mm)

j is an exponent



▲ FIGURE 3.15
Graph showing the relationship of hydraulic conductivity to mean grain diameter for sediments of different textural maturity. *Modified from R. G. Shepherd,* Ground Water *27, no. 5 (1989): 633–638. Copyright © 1989 Ground Water Publishing Co.*

The shape factor, *C*, and the exponent, *j*, were greatest for sediments that were texturally mature, as evidenced by well-sorted samples with uniformly sized particles that had high roundness and sphericity. Both the shape factor and the exponent declined for sediments that were less texturally mature and were least for consolidated sediments.

Shepherd (1989) used the data sets to produce an idealized graph that relates hydraulic conductivity to the mean grain diameter for different sediment types (Figure 3.15). The *C* values on the graph are those that give the hydraulic conductivity in units of feet per day. An upper bound is presented for glass spheres, where the exponent (j) is 2.0. Texturally

mature sediments have an exponent of 1.75 or greater, whereas texturally immature sediments can have an exponent as low as 1.5.

Case Study: Hydraulic Conductivity Estimates in Glacial Outwash

A hazardous-waste-processing site was located on a level glacial outwash plain at Seymour in southern Indiana. There were two aquifers present in the unconsolidated glacial deposits. The upper aquifer consisted of a well-sorted fine to medium sand. There were 27 ground-water monitoring wells installed in this aquifer. The lower aquifer was a poorly sorted fine to coarse sand. There were 9 monitoring wells installed in this aquifer. The grain-size analyses of the sand samples from the screen zones of the wells in each aquifer are summarized in the following table:

	Upper Aquifer		Lower Aquifer	
	Mean	**Range**	**Mean**	**Range**
d_{10}	0.14 mm	0.08–0.20 mm	0.16 mm	0.09–0.26 mm
d_{60}	0.31 mm	0.19–0.45 mm	2.04 mm	0.35–6.70 mm
C_u	2.29	1.50–3.89	11.01	3.89–33.50

The hydraulic conductivities of the sediments at each monitoring well were estimated by the Hazen method, using a coefficient of 100. The hydraulic conductivities of the sediments at each monitoring well were measured by means of a Hvorslev slug test performed on the well (see Section 5.6.2.2). The following table compares the results in centimeters per second.

	Geometric Mean (cm/s)	Range (cm/s)
	Upper Aquifer	
Hazen method	1.9×10^{-2}	$4.0 \times 10^{-2} - 6.4 \times 10^{-3}$
Hvorslev test	1.9×10^{-2}	$8.9 \times 10^{-2} - 4.2 \times 10^{-3}$
	Lower Aquifer	
Hazen method	1.2×10^{-2}	$2.6 \times 10^{-2} - 8.1 \times 10^{-3}$
Hvorslev test	1.4×10^{-2}	$1.7 \times 10^{-1} - 2.6 \times 10^{-3}$

The geometric means of the data sets were used to compare the Hvorslev test results with the Hazen method results in this chapter's case study. Hydraulic conductivity values frequently vary by more than two orders of magnitude within the same hydrogeologic unit. An arithmetic mean of such a sample population tends to give more weight to the more permeable values. Some hydrogeologists believe that a more representative description of the average hydraulic conductivity of a hydrologic unit is the *geometric mean.* This is determined by taking the natural log of each value, finding the mean of the natural logs, and then obtaining the exponential (e^x) of that value to arrive at the geometric mean.

PROBLEM

Find the geometric mean of the following set of hydraulic conductivity values and compare it with the arithmetic mean:

Hydraulic conductivity (K)	ln (K)
2.17×10^{-2} cm/s	−3.83
2.58×10^{-2} cm/s	−3.66
2.55×10^{-3} cm/s	−5.97
1.67×10^{-1} cm/s	−1.79
9.50×10^{-4} cm/s	−6.96
Sum: 2.18×10^{-1} cm/s	−22.21

Geometric mean: mean ln(K): $-22.21/5 = -4.44$

exp [mean ln(K)]: $e^{-4.44} = 1.18 \times 10^{-2}$ cm/s

Arithmetic mean: $(2.18 \times 10^{-1})/5 = 4.36 \times 10^{-2}$ cm/s

Field studies of hydraulic permeability based on grain-size analysis of sediments from test borings and slug tests in monitoring wells yield information on the distribution of hydraulic conductivity across the site. Aquifer pumping tests, discussed in Chapter 5, are another way to determine the hydraulic conductivity of rock and soil in the field. Aquifer tests integrate the distributed permeability and give an average permeability over a large area.

3.4.4 Permeability of Rocks

The intrinsic permeability of rocks is due to primary openings formed with the rock and secondary openings created after the rock was formed. The size of openings, the degree of interconnection, and the amount of open space are all significant.

Clastic sedimentary rocks have primary permeability characteristics similar to those of unconsolidated sediments. However, diagenesis can reduce the size of the throats that connect adjacent pores through cementation and compaction. This could reduce permeability substantially without a large impact on primary porosity. Primary permeability may also be due to sedimentary structures, such as bedding planes.

Crystalline rocks, whether of igneous, metamorphic, or chemical origin, typically have a low primary permeability, in addition to a low porosity. The intergrown crystal structure contains very few openings, so fluids cannot pass through as readily. The exceptions to this are volcanic rocks, which can have a high primary porosity. If the openings are large and well connected, then high permeability may also be present.

Secondary permeability can develop in rocks through fracturing. The increase in permeability is initially due to the number and size of the fracture openings. As water moves through the fractures, minerals may be dissolved from the rock and the fracture enlarged. This increases the permeability. Chemically precipitated rocks (limestone, dolomite, gypsum, halite) are most susceptible to solution enlargement, although even igneous rocks may be so affected. Bedding-plane openings of sedimentary rocks may also be enlarged by solution.

Weathering is another process that can result in an increase in permeability. As the rock is decomposed or disintegrated, the number and size of pore spaces, cracks, and joints can increase.

PROBLEM

The intrinsic permeability of a consolidated rock is 2.7×10^{-3} darcy. What is the hydraulic conductivity for water at 15°C?

At 15° C for water, from Appendix 14:

$$\rho = 0.999099 \text{ g/cm}^3$$

$$\mu = 0.011404 \frac{\text{g}}{\text{s·cm}}$$

The acceleration of gravity is given as

$$g = 980 \text{ cm/s}^2$$

As 1 darcy = 9.87×10^{-9} cm^2, the intrinsic permeability is 2.66×10^{-11} cm^2:

$$K = K_i\left(\frac{\rho g}{\mu}\right) = 2.66 \times 10^{-11} \text{ cm}^2 \times \frac{0.999099 \text{ g/cm}^3 \times 980 \text{ cm/s}^2}{0.011404 \text{ g/s·cm}}$$

$$K = 2.28 \times 10^{-6} \frac{\text{g/cm}^3 \times \text{cm/s}^2 \times \text{cm}^2}{\text{g/s} \cdot \text{cm}}$$

$$= 2.3 \times 10^{-6} \text{ cm/s}$$

3.5 Permeameters

The value of the hydraulic conductivity of earth materials can be measured in the laboratory. Not surprisingly, the devices used to do this are called **permeameters.**

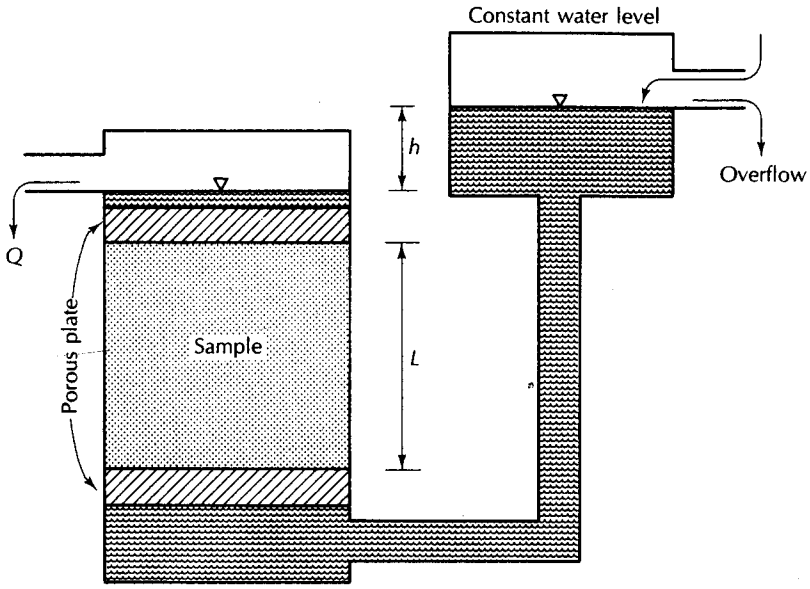
Permeameters have some type of chamber to hold a sample of rock or sediment. Rock permeameters hold a core of solid rock, usually cylindrical. Unconsolidated samples may be remolded into the permeameter chamber. It is also possible to make permeability analyses of "undisturbed" samples of unconsolidated materials if they are left in the field sampling tubes, which become the permeameter sample chambers. If sediments are repacked into the permeameter, they will yield values of hydraulic conductivity that only approximate the value of K for undisturbed material. Recompacted hydraulic conductivities depend on the density to which the sample is compacted.

The *constant-head permeameter* is used for noncohesive sediments, such as sand. A chamber with an overflow provides a supply of water at a constant head. Water moves through the sample at a steady rate. The hydraulic conductivity is determined from a variation of Darcy's law, which gives the flux of fluid per unit time, called the discharge, Q. If we collect the fluid draining from a permeameter over some time, t, the total volume, V, is the product of the discharge and time. If we multiply both sides of Equation 3.12 by time t, and rearrange, we obtain

$$Qt = -\frac{KAt(h_A - h_B)}{L} \tag{3.22}$$

If we substitute V for Qt and use h for $-(h_A - h_B)$, Equation 3.22 can be rearranged to form

$$\boxed{K = \frac{VL}{Ath}} \tag{3.23}$$



▲ FIGURE 3.16
Constant-head permeameter apparatus. This is similar to Darcy's original test apparatus.

where

V is the volume of water discharging in time t (L^3; cm^3, and T; s)

L is the length of the sample (L; cm)

A is the cross-sectional area of the sample (L^2; cm^2)

h is the hydraulic head (L; cm)

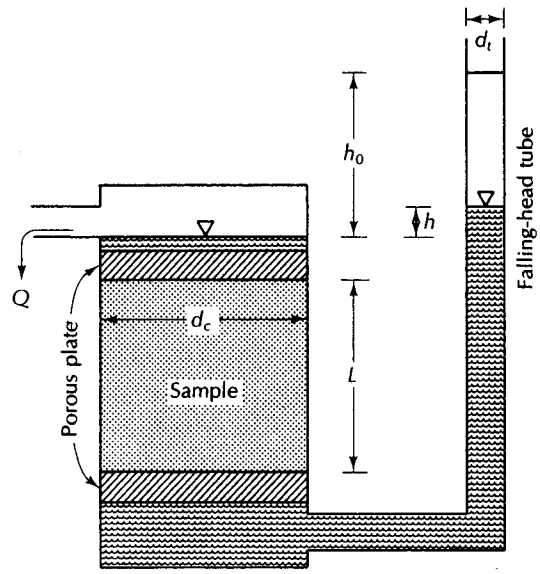
K is the hydraulic conductivity (L/T; cm/s)

A constant-head permeameter is illustrated in Figure 3.16. It is critical in such permeameters to have hydraulic gradients approaching those in the field. The head should never be more than about one-half of the sample length. Some commercial permeameters permit heads of up to 10 times the sample length. Under such conditions, the Reynolds number may become so high that Darcy's law is invalidated. If the permeameter is designed for upward flow, too great an upward-flow velocity may result in quicksand conditions in the permeameter.*

For cohesive sediments with low conductivities, a *falling-head permeameter* is used (Figure 3.17). A much smaller volume of water moves through the sample. A falling-head tube is attached to the permeameter. The initial water level above the outlet in the falling-head tube, h_0, is noted. After some time period, t (generally several hours), the water level, h, is again measured. The inside diameter of the falling-head tube, d_t, the length of the sample, L, and the diameter of the sample, d_c, must also be known.

*The applicable ASTM Standard is D2434-68—Standard Test Method for Permeability of Granular Soils (Constant Head).

▶ FIGURE 3.17
Falling-head permeameter apparatus.



The rate at which water will drain from the falling-head tube into the sample chamber is the change in head with time multiplied by the cross-sectional area, A_t, of the falling-head tube.

$$q_{in} = -A_t \frac{dh}{dt} \tag{3.24}$$

If A_c is the cross-sectional area of the sample chamber, we can determine the volume of water draining from the sample chamber from Equation 3.12:

$$q_{out} = \frac{KA_c h}{L} \tag{3.25}$$

Under the principle of continuity, the volume of water entering the sample chamber must equal the volume draining from it (i.e., $q_{in} = q_{out}$).

$$-A_t \frac{dh}{dt} = \frac{KA_c h}{L} \tag{3.26}$$

Equation 3.26 can be rearranged to yield:

$$\frac{dh}{h} = -K \frac{A_c}{A_t} \frac{l}{L} dt \tag{3.27}$$

The boundry conditions on this problem are that $h = h_0$ at $t = 0$. If we integrate dh/h on the left side of Equation 3.27 from h_o to h and dt the right side from 0 to t, we can obtain:

$$\ln h - \ln h_o = -K \frac{A_c}{A_t} \frac{1}{L} t \tag{3.28}$$

Equation 3.28 can be rearranged to isolate the hydraulic conductivity, K, on the left side and to eleminate the minus signs. In addition the cross-sectional areas are proportional to the square of the diameters of the falling head tube, d_t, and the samble chamber, d_c. The resulting simplified equation is:

$$\boxed{K = \frac{d_t^2 L}{d_c^2 t} \ln\left(\frac{h_0}{h}\right)} \tag{3.29}$$

where

K is hydraulic conductivity (L/T; cm/s)

L is sample length (L; cm)

h_0 is initial head in the falling tube (L; cm)

h is final head in the falling tube (L; cm)

t is the time that it takes for the head to go from h_0 to h (T; s)

d_t is the inside diameter of the falling-head tube (L; cm)

d_c is the inside diameter of the sample chamber (L; cm)

In using any permeameter, it is critical that the sample be completely saturated. Air bubbles in the sample will reduce the cross-sectional flow area, resulting in lowered measurements of conductivity. The sample must also be tightly pressed against the sidewall of the chamber. If not, water may move along the sidewall, avoiding the porous medium. In this case, measurements of conductivity may be too high.

PROBLEM

A constant-head permeameter has a sample of medium-grained sand 15 cm in length and 25 cm^2 in cross-sectional area. With a head of 5.0 cm, a total of 100 mL of water is collected in 12 min. Find the hydraulic conductivity.

$$K = \frac{VL}{Ath}$$

$$= \frac{100\ \text{cm}^3 \times 15\ \text{cm}}{25\ \text{cm}^2 \times 12\ \text{min} \times 60\ \text{s/min} \times 5\ \text{cm}}$$

$$= 1.7 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{cm/s or } 14\ \text{m/d}$$

PROBLEM

A falling-head permeameter containing a silty, fine sand has a falling-head tube diameter of 2.0 cm, a sample diameter of 10.0 cm, and a flow length of 15 cm. The initial head is 5.0 cm. It falls to 0.50 cm over a period of 528 min. Find the hydraulic conductivity.

$$K = \frac{d_t^2 L}{d_c^2 t} \ln\left(\frac{h_0}{h}\right)$$

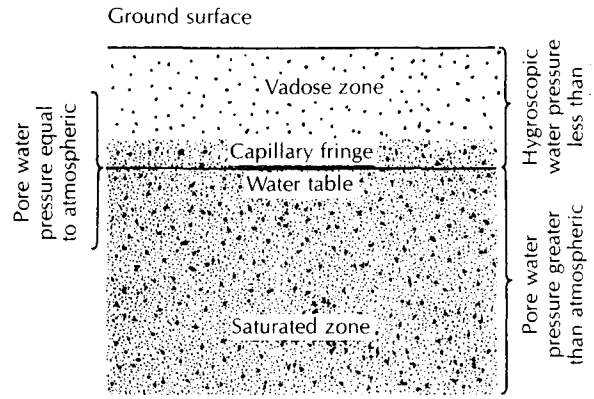
$$= \frac{2.0^2\ \text{cm}^2}{10^2\ \text{cm}^2} \times \frac{15\ \text{cm}}{528\ \text{min} \times 60\ \text{s/min}} \times \ln \frac{5.0\ \text{cm}}{0.50\ \text{cm}}$$

$$= 4.4 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{cm/s or } 3.8 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m/d}$$

3.6 Water Table

Water may be present beneath the earth's surface as a liquid, solid, or vapor. Other gases may also be present, either in vapor phase or dissolved in water. In the lower zone of porosity, generally all that is present is mineral matter and liquid water. The rock is saturated with water, and the water may also contain dissolved gas. The fluid pressure is greater than atmospheric pressure owing to the weight of overlying water. As the surface

► FIGURE 3.18
Distribution of fluid pressures in the ground with respect to the water table.



is approached, the fluid pressure decreases as the thickness of fluid above it decreases. some depth, which varies from place to place, the pressure of the fluid in the pores is equ to atmospheric pressure. The undulating surface at which pore water pressure is equal t atmospheric pressure is called the *water table* (Figure 3.18).

Water in a shallow well screened across the water table will rise to the elevation of th water table at that location. The position of the water table often follows the general shap of the topography, although the water-table relief is not as great as the topographic relief At all depths below the water table, the rock is generally saturated with water so long a has interconnected voids.*

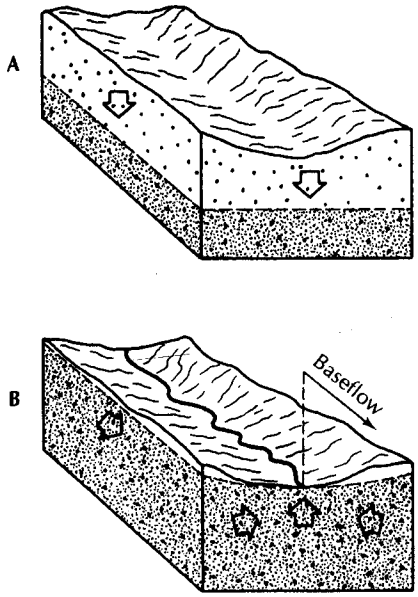
A hypothetical experiment can serve to illustrate the formation of the water table. A box made of clear plastic is filled with sand. A notch is cut in one side of the plastic, and the surface of the sand is smoothed to model a valley draining toward the notch. A fin mist of water is then spread evenly over the surface of the sand, simulating rainfall. The precipitation rate is sufficiently low to preclude any overland flow. The water will mov downward through the sand, so that, eventually, a zone of saturation will develop at the bottom. As shown in Figure 3.19A, this zone will have a level surface. As more rainfal simulated, the water table will rise, continuing to be perfectly flat. It will follow this pa tern until the water table reaches the lowest point in the valley.

Continuing rainfall will cause further increases in the height of the water table. In the valley, the water level will be above the surface, so that water will now flow through the notch. Elsewhere, the water table will be higher than the elevation of the notch, a ground water will begin to flow laterally because of the hydraulic gradient. Now, wate will flow through the saturated zone toward the point of discharge (Figure 3.19B).

We can make the following observations, of which items 4 and 5 pertain primarily t humid regions.

1. In the absence of ground-water flow, the water table will be flat.
2. A sloping water table indicates the ground water is flowing.
3. Ground-water discharge zones are in topographical low spots.
4. The water table has the same general shape as the surface topography.
5. Ground water generally flows away from topographical high spots and toward topographic lows.

*There are exceptions. The rocks may contain trapped liquid and gaseous hydrocarbons, for example. Or there may be isolated voids, which are not open.



◀ FIGURE 3.19
A. Diagram of a flat-lying water table in an aquifer where there is downward movement of water through the unsaturated zone but no lateral ground-water movement. **B.** Diagram of the water table in a region where water is moving downward through the unsaturated zone to the water table and moving as ground-water flow through the zone of saturation toward a discharge zone along the stream. Net discharge from the aquifer is occurring as baseflow from the stream.

3.7 Aquifers

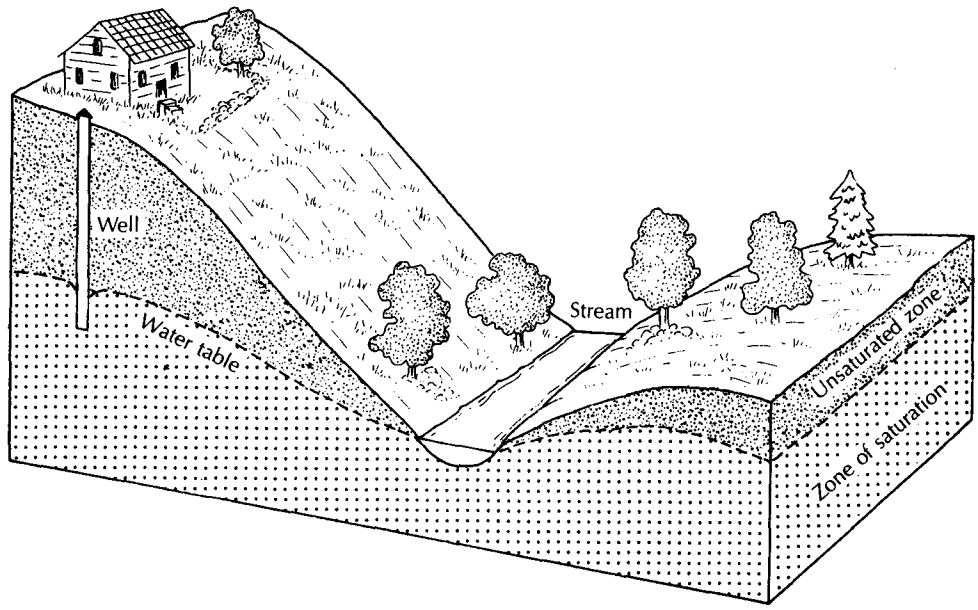
Natural earth materials have a very wide range of hydraulic conductivities. Near the earth's surface are very few, if any, geologic formations that are absolutely impermeable. Weathering, fracturing, and solution have affected most rocks to some degree. However, the rate of ground-water movement can be exceedingly slow in units of low hydraulic conductivity.

An **aquifer** is a geologic unit that can store and transmit water at rates fast enough to supply reasonable amounts to wells. The intrinsic permeability of aquifers would range from about 10^{-2} darcy upward. Unconsolidated sands and gravels, sandstones, limestones and dolomites, basalt flows, and fractured plutonic and metamorphic rocks are examples of rock units known to be aquifers.

A **confining layer** is a geologic unit having little or no intrinsic permeability—less than about 10^{-2} darcy. This somewhat arbitrary limit depends upon local conditions. In areas of clay, with intrinsic permeabilities of 10^{-4} darcy, a silt of 10^{-2} darcy might be used to supply water to a small well. On the other hand, the same silt might be considered a confining layer if it were found in an area of coarse gravels with intrinsic permeabilities of 100 darcys. Ground water moves through most confining layers, although the rate of movement is quite slow.

Confining layers are sometimes subdivided into aquitards, aquicludes, and aquifuges. An **aquifuge** is an absolutely impermeable unit that will not transmit any water. An **aquitard** is a layer of low permeability that can store ground water and also transmit it slowly from one aquifer to another. The term **leaky confining layer** is also applied to such a unit. Most authors now use the terms *confining layer* and *leaky confining layer.*

Confining layers can be important elements of regional flow systems, and leaky confining layers can transmit significant amounts of water if the cross-sectional area is large. On Long Island, New York, there is a deep aquifer, the Lloyd Sand Member of the Raritan Formation. The recharge to this aquifer passes downward across a confining layer 200 to 300 ft (60 to 100 m) thick, the Clay Member of the Raritan Formation. Over an areal extent measured in hundreds of square miles, a very low rate of vertical seepage provides recharge to the underlying aquifer. Some of the recharge to the principal artesian aquifer of the southeastern United States takes place by downward leakage



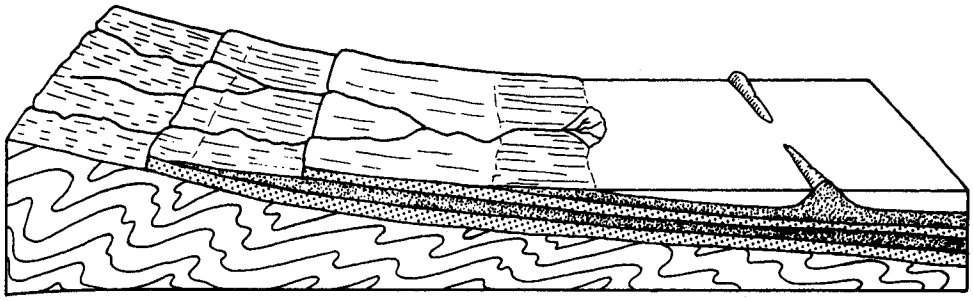
▲ FIGURE 3.20
Unconfined, or water-table, aquifer.

through overlying confining layers, although much of the recharge is carried throug sinkholes.

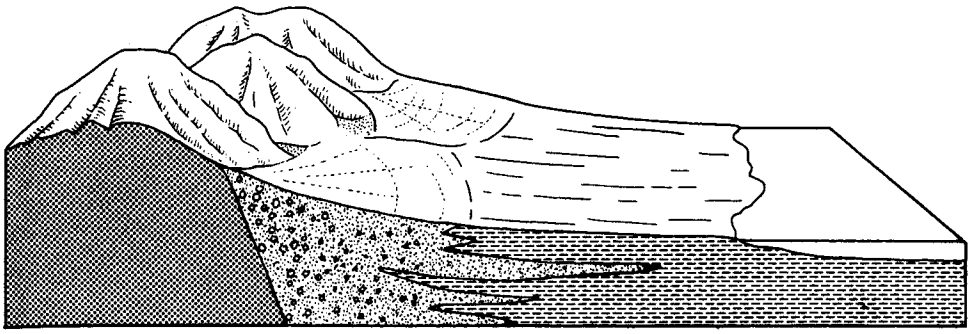
Aquifers can be close to the land surface, with continuous layers of materials of hig intrinsic permeability extending from the land surface to the base of the aquifer. Such a aquifer is termed a *water-table aquifer* or **unconfined aquifer.** Recharge to the aquifer ca be from downward seepage through the unsaturated zone (Figure 3.20). Recharge can als occur through lateral ground-water flow or upward seepage from underlying strata.

Some aquifers, called **confined,** or *artesian,* **aquifers,** are overlain by a confinin layer. Recharge to them can occur either in a recharge area where the aquifer crops ou or by slow downward leakage through a leaky confining layer (Figure 3.21). If a tightl cased well is placed through the confining layer, water from the aquifer may rise consid erable distances above the top of the aquifer (Figure 3.22). This indicates that the wate in the aquifer is under pressure. The **potentiometric surface** for a confined aquifer is th surface representative of the level to which water will rise in a well cased to the aquifer (The term *piezometric* was used in the past, but it has now been replaced by *potentiomet ric.*) If the potentiometric surface of an aquifer is above the land surface, a flowing arte sian well may occur. Water will flow from the well casing without need for a pump. O course, if a pump were installed, the amount of water obtained from the well could b increased.

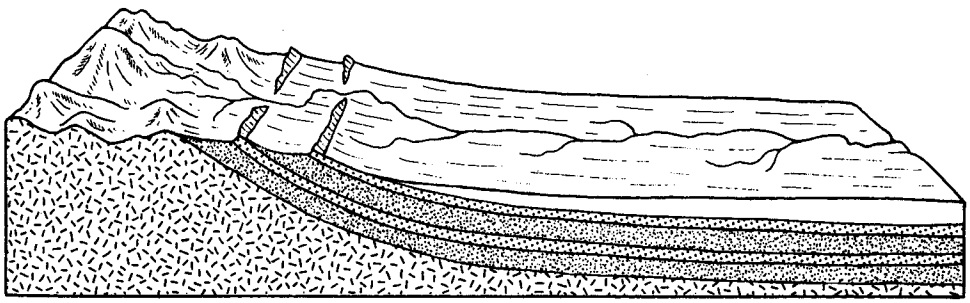
In some cases, a layer of low-permeability material will be found as a lens in mor permeable materials. Water moving downward through the unsaturated zone will be in tercepted by this layer and will accumulate on top of the lens. A layer of saturated soil wil form above the main water table, termed a **perched aquifer** (Figure 3.23). Water move laterally above the low-permeability layer up to the edge and then seeps downward to ward the main water table or forms a spring. Perched aquifers are common in glacial out wash, where lenses of clay formed in small glacial ponds are present. They are also ofter



Confined aquifers created by alternating aquifers and confining units deposited on a regional dip.



Confined aquifers created by deposition of alternating layers of permeable sand and gravel and impermeable silts and clays deposited in intermontane basins.



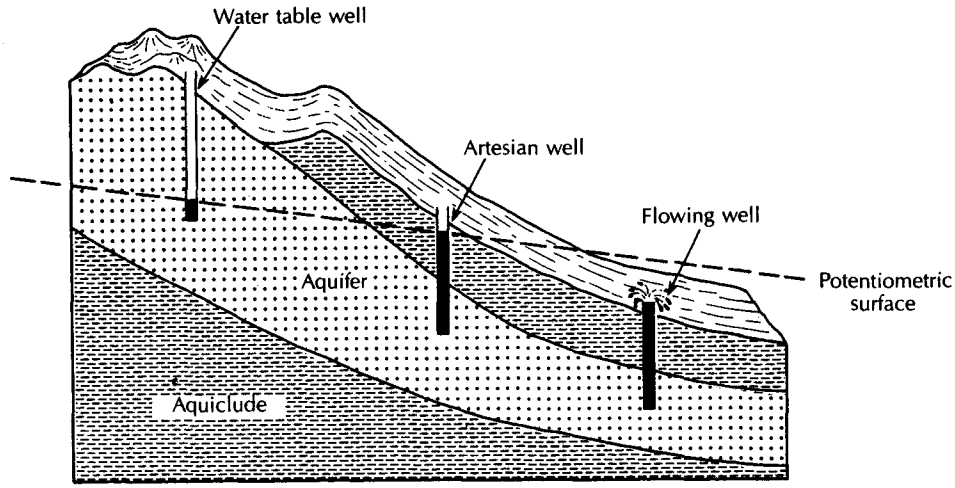
Confined aquifer created by upwarping of beds by intrusions.

▲ FIGURE 3.21
Confined aquifers created when aquifers are overlain by confining beds.

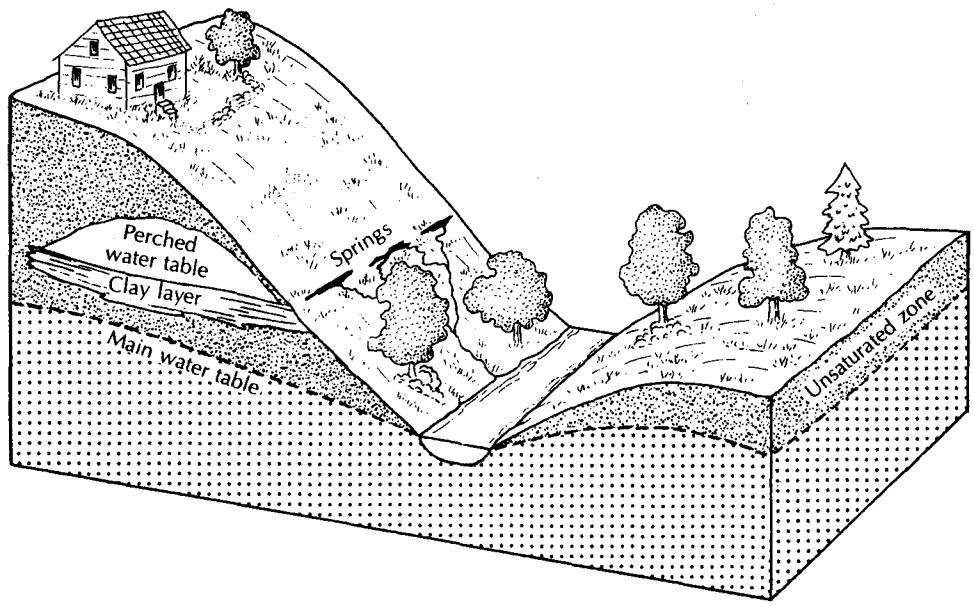
present in volcanic terranes, where weathered ash zones of low permeability can occur sandwiched between high-permeability basalt layers.

Perched aquifers are usually not large; most would supply only enough water for household use. Some lakes are perched on low-permeability sediments. Such ponds are especially vulnerable to widely fluctuating lake-stage levels with changes in the amount of rainfall.

Confined ground water is found in a confined aquifer, **unconfined ground water** is found in a water-table aquifer, and **perched ground water** is found in a perched aquifer.



▲ FIGURE 3.22
Artesian and flowing well in confined aquifer.



▲ FIGURE 3.23
Perched aquifer formed above the main water table on a low-permeability layer in the unsaturated zone.

3.8 Water-Table and Potentiometric Surface Maps

Maps of the water table for an unconfined aquifer and of the potentiometric surface of confined aquifer are basic tools of hydrogeologic interpretation. These maps are two dimensional representations of three-dimensional surfaces. Such maps can be shown a contour maps with lines of equal elevation. They can also be shown as perspective drawings representing a three-dimensional view of the surface.

The data used to construct water-table and potentiometric-surface maps are water level elevations as measured in wells. However, not every well is useful for this purpose

Some water-supply wells are open borings in rocks that include both aquifers and confining beds. Other water-supply wells may have more than one well screen, each opposite a different aquifer. Since the water level in such wells is a reflection of the heads in several different units and not one specific unit, they are not useful in making water-level maps.

To make a ground-water-level map, one needs water-level readings made in a number of wells, each of which is open only in the aquifer of interest. Since ground-water levels can change with time, all readings should be made within a short period of time. Some measuring point on each well needs to be surveyed to a common datum so that the water levels can be referenced to a height above the datum; mean sea level is a common datum for this purpose.

If water levels are to be measured in a well that is normally used for water supply, one must ensure that the pump has been shut off long enough for the water level to recover to what is termed the static, or nonpumping, level. Depth to water measurements can be made every few minutes until the water level stops rising.

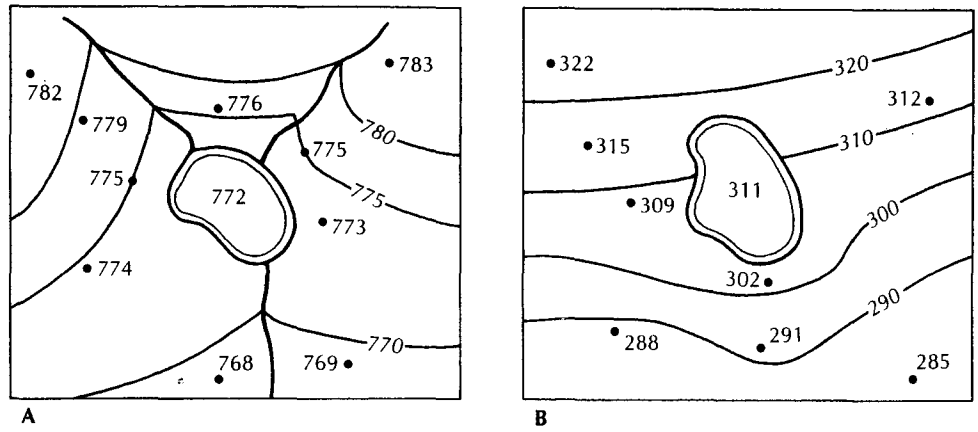
When making a water-table map, it is ideal if all the wells have an open borehole or a well screen at the depth of the water table. However, wells that are cased or screened below the water table can be used if they do not extend too far below the water table. For wells used to make a potentiometric-surface map, all aquifers above the aquifer of interest should be cased off.

Surface-water features such as springs, ponds, lakes, streams, and rivers can interact with the water table. In addition, the water table is often a subdued reflection of the surface topography. All this must be taken into account when preparing a water-table map. A base map showing the surface topography and the locations of surface-water features should be prepared. The elevations of lakes and ponds can be helpful information. The locations of the wells are then plotted on the base map, and the water-level elevations are noted. The datum for the water level in wells should be the same as the datum for the surface topography. Contours of equal ground-water elevations are then drawn, following the rules of contouring discussed for isohyets in Section 2.7. Interpolation of contours between data points is strongly influenced by the surface topography and surface-water features. For example, ground-water contours cannot be higher than the surface topography. The depth to ground water will typically be greater beneath hills than beneath valleys. If a lake is present, the lake surface is flat as is the water table beneath it. Hence, ground-water contours must go around it. The only exception to this rule is when the lake is perched on low-permeability sediments and has a surface elevation above the main water table. Ground-water contours form a V, pointing upstream when they cross a gaining stream. Ground-water contours bend downstream when they cross a losing stream.

Figure 3.24A is a water-table map of a gaining stream and a lake that is hydraulically connected with the water table. Figure 3.24B is a water-table map where there is a perched lake. Water is seeping from the perched lake, so the water-table contours bend downgradient away from the lake.

In general, the potentiometric surface of a confined aquifer is not influenced by the surface topography and surface-water features. Because there is no direct hydraulic connection between a river and a confined aquifer beneath it, potentiometric-surface contours are not influenced by the presence of the river. Potentiometric-surface contours can even be above the land surface. This indicates that if a well were to be drilled at that location, it would flow.

In areas where the water table or potentiometric surface has a shallow gradient, the ground-water contours will be spaced well apart. If the gradient is steep, the ground-water contours will be closer together. Ground water will flow in the general direction that the water table or potentiometric surface is sloping.



▲ FIGURE 3.24
Maps showing construction of water-table maps in areas with surface-water bodies. **A.** A water-table lake with two gaining streams draining into it and one gaining stream draining from it. **B.** A perched lake that, through outseepage, is recharging the water table.

3.9 Aquifer Characteristics

We have thus far considered the intrinsic permeability of earth materials and their hydraulic conductivity when transmitting water. A useful concept in many studies is aquifer **transmissivity,** which is a measure of the amount of water that can be transmitted horizontally through a unit width by the full saturated thickness of the aquifer under a hydraulic gradient of 1.

The transmissivity is the product of the hydraulic conductivity and the saturated thickness of the aquifer:

$$T = bK \tag{3.30}$$

where

T is transmissivity (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

b is saturated thickness of the aquifer (L; ft or m)

K is hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

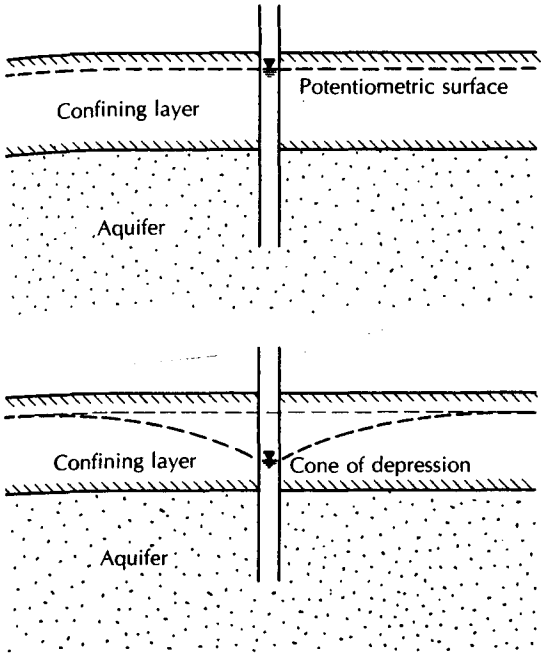
For a multilayer aquifer, the total transmissivity is the sum of the transmissivity of each of the layers:

$$T = \sum_{i=1}^{n} T_i \tag{3.31}$$

Aquifer transmissivity is a concept that assumes flow through the aquifer to be horizontal. In some cases, this assumption is valid; in others, it is not.

When the head in a saturated aquifer or confining unit changes, water will be either stored or expelled. The *storage coefficient,* or **storativity** (S), is the volume of water that a permeable unit will absorb or expel from storage per unit surface area per unit change in head. It is a dimensionless quantity.

In the saturated zone, the head creates pressure, affecting the arrangement of mineral grains and the density of the water in the voids. If the pressure increases, the mineral skeleton will expand; if it drops, the mineral skeleton will contract. This is known as *elasticity.* Likewise, water will contract with an increase in pressure and expand if the pressure



◀ FIGURE 3.25
Diagram showing lowering of the potentiometric surface in a confined aquifer with the resultant water level still above the aquifer materials. In this circumstance, the aquifer remains saturated.

drops. When the head in an aquifer or confining bed declines, the aquifer skeleton compresses, which reduces the effective porosity and expels water. Additional water is released as the pore water expands due to lower pressure.

The **specific storage** (S_s) is the amount of water per unit volume of a saturated formation that is stored or expelled from storage owing to compressibility of the mineral skeleton and the pore water per unit change in head. This is also called the *elastic storage coefficient*. The concept can be applied to both aquifers and confining units.

The specific storage is given by the following expression (Jacob 1940, 1950; Cooper 1966).

$$S_s = \rho_w g(\alpha + n\beta) \tag{3.32}$$

where

ρ_w is the density of the water (M/L^3; slug/ft^3 or kg/m^3)

g is the acceleration of gravity (L/T^2; ft/s^2 or m/s^2)

α is the compressibility of the aquifer skeleton [$1/(M/LT^2)$; $1/(\text{lb/ft}^2)$ or $1/(\text{N/m}^2)$]

n is the porosity (L^3/L^3)

β is the compressibility of the water* ($1/(M/LT^2)$; $1/(\text{lb/ft}^2)$ or $1/(\text{N/m}^2)$)

Specific storage has dimensions of $1/L$. The value of specific storage is very small, generally 0.0001 ft^{-1} or less.

In a confined aquifer, the head may decline—yet the potentiometric surface remains above the unit (Figure 3.25). Although water is released from storage, the aquifer remains saturated. The storativity (S) of a confined aquifer is the product of the specific storage (S_s) and the aquifer thickness (b):

$$S = bS_s \tag{3.33}$$

*The compressibility of water at environmental temperatures is 4.4×10^{-10} m^2/N @ 15.5°C to 4.8×10^{-10} m^2/N @ 25.5°C.

Since specific storage has dimensions of $1/L$ and the aquifer thickness has dimensions of L, storativity is dimensionless.

All the water released is accounted for by the compressibility of the mineral skeleton and the pore water. The water comes from the entire thickness of the aquifer. The value of the storativity of confined aquifers is on the order of 0.005 or less.

In an unconfined unit, the level of saturation rises or falls with changes in the amount of water in storage. As the water level falls, water drains from the pore spaces. This storage or release is due to the *specific yield* (S_y) of the unit. Water is also stored or expelled depending on the specific storage of the unit. For an unconfined unit, the storativity is found by the formula

$$S = S_y + bS_s \tag{3.34}$$

where b is the saturated thickness of the aquifer.

The value of S_y is several orders of magnitude greater than bS_s for an unconfined aquifer, and the storativity is usually taken to be equal to the specific yield. For a fine-grained unit, the specific yield may be very small, approaching the same order of magnitude as bS_s. Storativity of unconfined aquifers ranges from 0.02 to 0.30.

The volume of water drained from an aquifer as the head is lowered may be found from the formula

$$V_w = SA\,\Delta h \tag{3.35}$$

where

V_w is the volume of water drained (L^3; ft^3 or m^3)

S is the storativity (dimensionless)

A is the surface area overlying the drained aquifer (L^2; ft^2 or m^2)

Δh is the average decline in head (L; ft or m)

PROBLEM

An unconfined aquifer with a storativity of 0.13 has an area of 123 mi^2. The water table drops 5.23 ft during a drought. How much water was lost from storage?

$$\begin{aligned} V_w &= SA\,\Delta h \\ &= 0.13 \times 123\ mi^2 \times 2.7878 \times 10^7\ ft^2/mi^2 \times 5.23\ ft \\ &= 2.3 \times 10^9\ ft^3 \end{aligned}$$

If the same aquifer had been confined with a storativity of 0.0005, what change in the amount of water in storage would have resulted?

$$\begin{aligned} V_w &= 0.0005 \times 123\ mi^2 \times 2.7878 \times 10^7\ ft^2/mi^2 \times 5.23\ ft \\ &= 9.0 \times 10^6\ ft^3 \end{aligned}$$

3.10 Compressibility and Effective Stress

At a given plane in a saturated aquifer, a downward stress is placed on the aquifer skeleton by the weight of the overlying rock and water. This is called the *total stress*. There is an upward stress on the plane caused by the fluid pressure. The upward stress will, in part, counteract the total stress, so the resulting stress that is actually borne by the aquifer skeleton, called the *effective stress*, is less than the total stress:

$$\sigma_T = \sigma_e + P \tag{3.36}$$

where

σ_T is total stress

P is pressure

σ_e is effective stress

If there is a change in total stress, the pressure and effective stress will also change.

$$d\sigma_T = d\sigma_e + dP \tag{3.37}$$

In confined aquifers, there can be significant changes in pressure with very little change in the actual thickness of the saturated water column. Under these conditions, the total stress remains essentially constant, and any change in pressure will result in a change in effective stress that is of equal magnitude but opposite in sign.

$$dP = -d\sigma_e \tag{3.38}$$

If pumping reduces the pressure head in a confined aquifer, the effective stress that acts on the aquifer skeleton will increase. The aquifer skeleton may consolidate or compact due to this increased stress. The consolidation occurs due to shifting of the mineral grains, which reduces the porosity.

Aquifer compressibility is defined as

$$\alpha = \frac{-\,db/b}{d\sigma_e} \tag{3.39}$$

where

α is aquifer compressibility [$1/(M/L^2)$; ft^2/lb or m^2/N]

db is change in aquifer thickness (L; ft or m)

b is original aquifer thickness (L; ft or m)

$d\sigma_e$ is change in effective stress (M/LT^2; lb/ft^2 or N/m^2)

The negative sign indicates that the aquifer gets smaller with an increase in effective stress.

Since $dP = -d\sigma_e$, Equation 3.39 can also be written as

$$+\alpha = \frac{db/b}{dP} \tag{3.40}$$

PROBLEM

A confined aquifer with an initial thickness of 45 m consolidates (compacts) 0.20 m when the head is lowered by 25 m.

Part A: What is the vertical compressibility of the aquifer?

The given parameter values are $dP = 25$ m, $b = 45$ m, and $db = 0.20$ m. A pressure head of 25 m of water can be converted to a fluid pressure by multiplying the pressure head by the density of water times the gravitational constant.

$$dP = 25\text{ m} \times 1000\text{ kg/m}^3 \times 9.8\text{ m/s}^2 = 245{,}000\text{ N/m}^2$$

From Equation 3.40,

$$\alpha = \frac{(0.20\text{ m})/(45\text{ m})}{245{,}000\text{ N/m}^2}$$

$$= 1.8 \times 10^{-8}\text{ m}^2/\text{N}$$

Part B: If the porosity of the aquifer is 12% after compaction, calculate the storativity of the aquifer.

Aquifer storativity is found from Equations 3.32 and 3.33:

$$S = b[\rho_w g(\alpha + n\beta)]$$

The given parameter values are $b = 44.8$ m, $n = 0.12$, $\rho_w = 1000$ kg/m^3, $g = 9.8$ m/s^2, $\alpha = 1.$ $\times 10^{-8}$ m^2/N, and $\beta = 4.6 \times 10^{-10}$ m^2/N.

$$\begin{aligned} S &= (44.8\text{ m})[1000\text{ kg/m}^3 \times 9.8\text{ m/s}^2(1.8 \times 10^{-8}\text{ m}^2\text{/N} + 0.12 \times 4.6 \times 10^{-10}\text{ m}^2\text{/N})] \\ &= (44.8\text{ m})(9800\text{ N/m}^3)(1.806 \times 10^{-8}\text{ m}^2\text{/N}) \\ &= 7.9 \times 10^{-3} \end{aligned}$$

3.11 Homogeneity and Isotropy

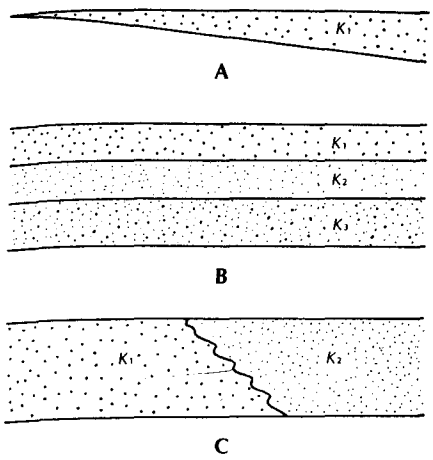
Hydrogeologists are interested in two key properties of geologic formations: hydraulic conductivity and specific storage or specific yield. A third property, the thickness, is also important, since the overall hydrogeologic response of a unit is a function of the product of the hydraulic parameters and the thickness.

A **homogeneous** unit is one that has the same properties at all locations. For a sandstone, this would indicate that the grain-size distribution, porosity, degree of cementation and thickness are variable only within small limits. The values of the transmissivity and storativity of the unit would be about the same wherever present. A plutonic or metamorphic rock would have the same amount of fracturing everywhere, including the strike and dip of the joint sets. A limestone would have the same amount of jointing and solution openings at all locations.

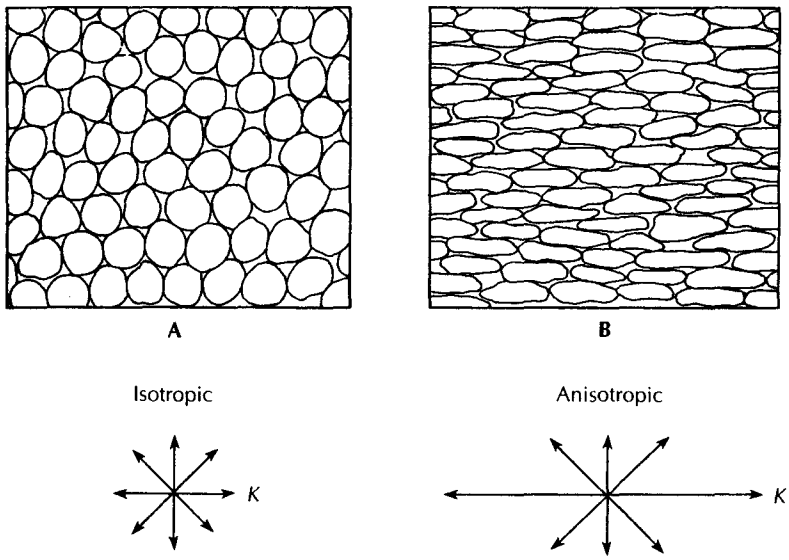
In **heterogeneous** formations, hydraulic properties change spatially. One example would be a change in thickness. A sandstone that thickens as a wedge is nonhomogeneous even if porosity, hydraulic conductivity, and specific storage remain constant. The change in thickness results in a change in the hydraulic properties of the unit. Layered units may also be nonhomogeneous. Most sedimentary units were deposited as successive layers of sediments with intervals of nondeposition. These layers are known to vary in thickness from microscopic layers to those measured in meters. If the hydraulic properties of the layers are different, the entire unit is heterogeneous. The individual beds may be homogeneous. The third type of heterogeneity in a sedimentary unit occurs when a facies change in the unit involves a transformation of hydraulic characteristics and lithologic features. Figure 3.26 illustrates these examples of heterogeneity in clastic sedimentary units.

Carbonate units may be heterogeneous (1) if a change in thickness occurs or (2) if the degree of solution openings of fractures varies. The formation of solution passageways by moving ground water is typically concentrated along preferred fractures or bedding planes; thus, limestone formations are often heterogeneous. Plutonic rocks may have uneven fracturing or sporadic shear zones that render them heterogeneous. Basalt flows are virtually always heterogeneous by the very nature of the way they are formed. As might be expected, it is a very unusual geologic formation that is perfectly homogeneous. Geologic processes operate at varying rates and over uneven terrain, resulting in heterogeneity.

In a porous medium made of spheres of the same diameter packed uniformly, the geometry of the voids is the same in all directions. Thus, the intrinsic permeability of the unit is the same in all directions, and the unit is said to be **isotropic.** Conversely, if the geometry of the voids is not uniform, there may be a direction in which the intrinsic permeability is greater. The medium is thus **anisotropic.** For example, a porous medium composed of book-shaped grains arranged in a subparallel manner would have a greater permeability parallel to the grains than crossing the grain orientation (Figure 3.27).



◀ FIGURE 3.26
A. Heterogeneous formation consisting of a sediment that thickens in a wedge. **B.** Heterogeneous formation consisting of three layers of sediments of differing hydraulic conductivity. **C.** Heterogeneous formation consisting of sediments with different hydraulic conductivities lying next to each other.



▲ FIGURE 3.27
Grain shape and orientation can affect the isotropy or anisotropy of a sediment.

In fractured rock units, the direction of ground-water flow is completely constrained by the direction of the fractures. There may be zero intrinsic permeability in directions not parallel to a set of fractures (Figure 3.28). Basalt flows are highly anisotropic, as flow parallels the dip of the flow as it moves in the interflow zones. Shrinkage cracks in the basalt are vertical, yielding some vertical permeability.

In sedimentary units, there may be several layers, each of which is homogeneous. The equivalent vertical and horizontal hydraulic conductivity can be easily computed. Figure 3.29 shows a three-layered unit, each unit having a different horizontal and vertical hydraulic conductivity (K_h and K_v).

The average horizontal conductivity (parallel to layering) is found from the summation

$$K_h \text{ avg} = \sum_{m=1}^{n} \frac{K_{hm} b_m}{b} \tag{3.41}$$

where

K_h avg is the average horizontal hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

K_{hm} is the horizontal hydraulic conductivity of the mth layer (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

b_m is the thickness of the mth layer (L; ft or m)

b is the total aquifer thickness (L; ft or m)

The overall vertical hydraulic conductivity (perpendicular to layering) is given by

$$K_v \text{ avg} = \frac{b}{\sum_{m=1}^{n} \frac{b_m}{K_{vm}}} \tag{3.42}$$

where

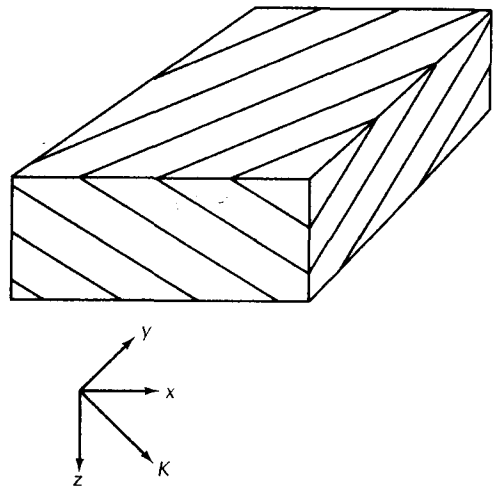
K_v avg is the average vertical hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

K_{vm} is the vertical hydraulic conductivity of the mth layer (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

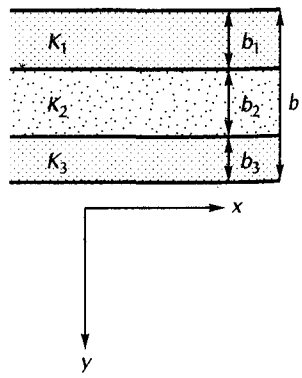
b_m is the thickness of the mth layer (L; ft or m)

b is the total aquifer thickness (L; ft or m)

► FIGURE 3.28
Anisotropy of fractured rock units due to directional nature of fracturing.



► FIGURE 3.29
Heterogeneous formation consisting of three layers of differing hydraulic conductivity.

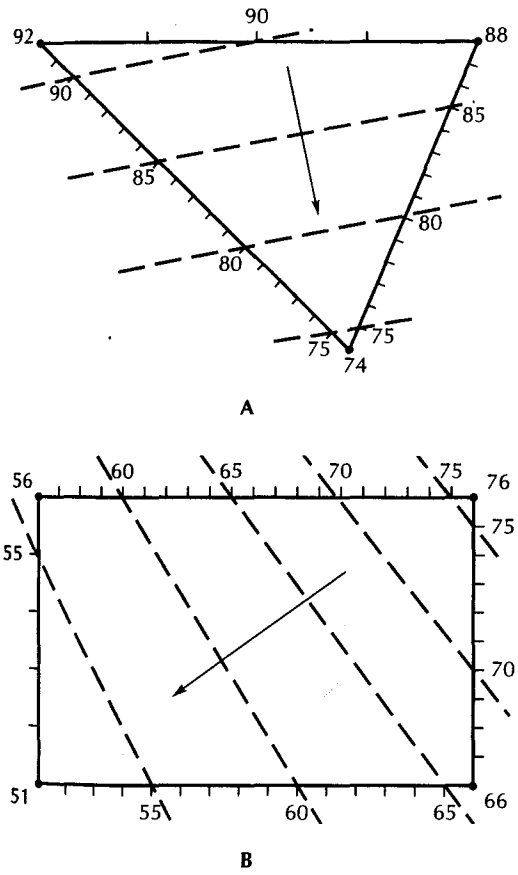


3.12 Gradient of the Potentiometric Surface

On some occasions there may be too few wells in an area to make a full map of the water table or the potentiometric surface. For example, a waste-disposal site may have only three or four monitoring wells surrounding it. There are graphical methods available to determine the direction that the water table or potentiometric surface is sloping and the gradient within the area outlined by the wells. Vacher (1989) has presented an analytical solution to the three-point problem with a computer code for convenient solution.

Figure 3.30 illustrates the graphical method for three- and four-well situations. The first step is to make a sketch to scale showing the positions of the wells. This information can usually be traced from a base map of the site. Then follow these steps:

1. Draw a line that connects each well of the three-well setup (Figure 3.30A) or the corner wells for the four-well setup (Figure 3.30B).
2. Note the water elevation in each well.
3. Measure the map distance between a well pair.
4. Find the difference in elevation between a well pair.
5. Find map distance for each unit change in head for a well pair by dividing the map distance between the well pairs by the head difference.
6. Mark even increments along the line between the well pair. Select the increment length so that each increment is a convenient length (e.g., 0.5 ft, 1 ft, 5 ft, and 10 ft or 0.5 m, 1 m, 5 m, and 10 m).



◀ FIGURE 3.30
Graphical method for determining the slope of a potentiometric surface from **A.** three wells and **B.** four wells.

7. Repeat steps 3 to 6 for all well pairs.
8. Create contour lines by joining all lines of equal head.
9. The gradient of the surface is in the direction of increasing head and perpendicular to the contour lines. It is opposite in direction to the slope shown on the figure.

If three wells form a right triangle, then the direction of the gradient can be conveniently determined mathematically (Fetter 1981b). Assume that the triangle formed by the wells has two legs, OX and OY, which form a 90° angle at a well O.

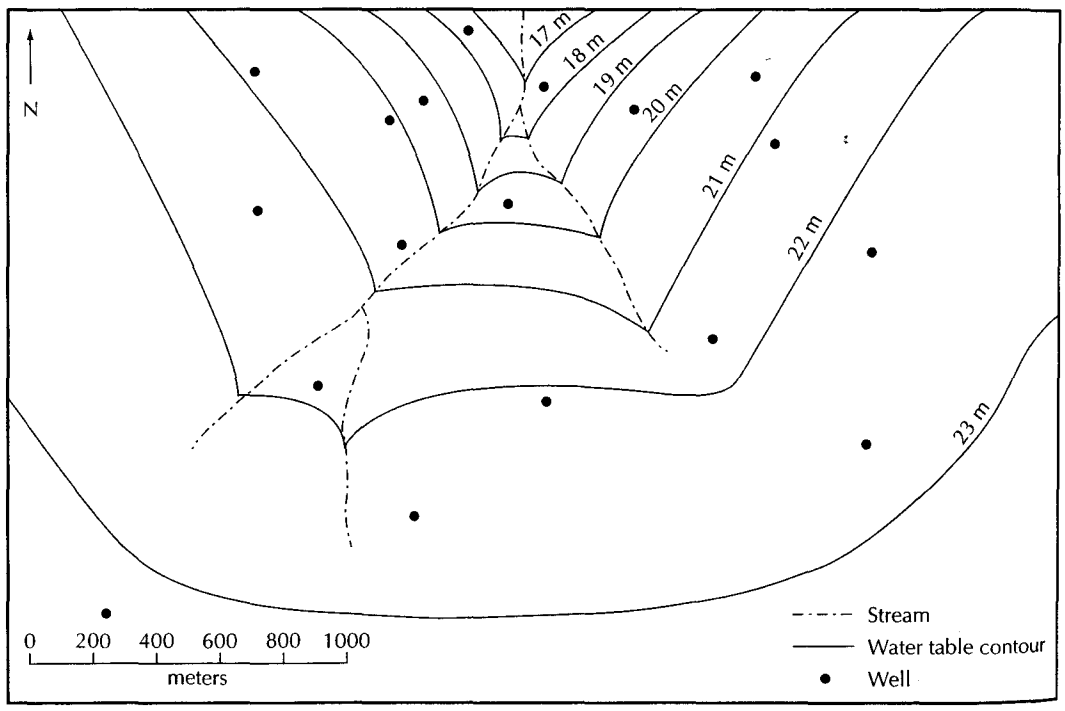
Let dh/dx be the gradient measured from well O to well X. The gradient is the head difference in the two wells divided by the distance separating them. Let dh/dy be the gradient measured from well O to well Y. The gradient of head perpendicular to the equipotential lines is found from

$$\text{grad } h = \sqrt{(dh/dx)^2 + (dh/dy)^2} \tag{3.43}$$

The angle θ that the direction of the gradient makes with line OX is

$$\theta = \arctan \frac{(dh/dy)}{(dh/dx)} \tag{3.44}$$

Only a single gradient can be calculated from three or four wells. This is not to imply that ground water has a constant gradient. Indeed, it is highly unusual to find a constant hydraulic gradient. Figure 3.31 is a water-table map with the hydraulic gradient changing across the site. Where the contour lines are close together, the gradient is steeper than where they are farther apart.



▲ FIGURE 3.31
Water-table map with the hydraulic gradient changing across the site. Where the contour lines are close together, the gradient is steeper than where they are farther apart. Note that the contour lines form the shape of a V where they cross a stream.

Notation

a	Acceleration
A	Area
A_t	Cross-sectional area of a falling-head tube
A_c	Cross-sectional area of a permeameter sample chamber
b	Aquifer thickness
C	Shape factor
C_u	Uniformity coefficient
d	Grain size
D	Distance
d_t	Inside diameter of falling-head tube
d_c	Inside diameter of a permeameter sample chamber
F	Force
g	Gravitational constant
h	Head
j	An exponent
K	Hydraulic conductivity
K_h	Horizontal hydraulic conductivity
K_i	Intrinsic permeability
K_v	Vertical hydraulic conductivity
L	Length
m	Mass
n	Porosity
P	Pressure
q	Flux, Specific discharge
Q	Discharge (rate)
S	Storativity
S_s	Specific storage
S_r	Specific retention
S_y	Specific yield
T	Transmissivity
V	Volume
V_v	Volume of voids
V_w	Volume of water
W	Work
w	Weight
α	Compressibility of aquifer skeleton
β	Compressibility of water
γ	Specific weight
Δh	Decline in head
ρ	Density
ρ_b	Bulk density
ρ_d	Mineral particle density
ρ_w	Density of water
μ	Dynamic viscosity

Analysis

a. The black dots on Figure 3.31 represent the location of water-table wells. Based on the location of the ground-water contour lines, estimate the elevation of the water table in each of the wells to 0.1 m. Calculate the greatest and least values of the hydraulic gradient found in Figure 3.31.

b. Figure 3.32 is a map showing the ground-water elevations in wells screened in an unconfined aquifer in Milwaukee, Wisconsin. The aquifer is in good hydraulic connection with Lake Michigan, which has a surface elevation of 580 ft above sea level. Lakes and streams are also shown on the map.

1. Make a water-table map with a contour interval of 50 ft, starting at 550 ft.
2. Why do you suppose that ground-water levels are below the Lake Michigan surface elevation in part of the area?

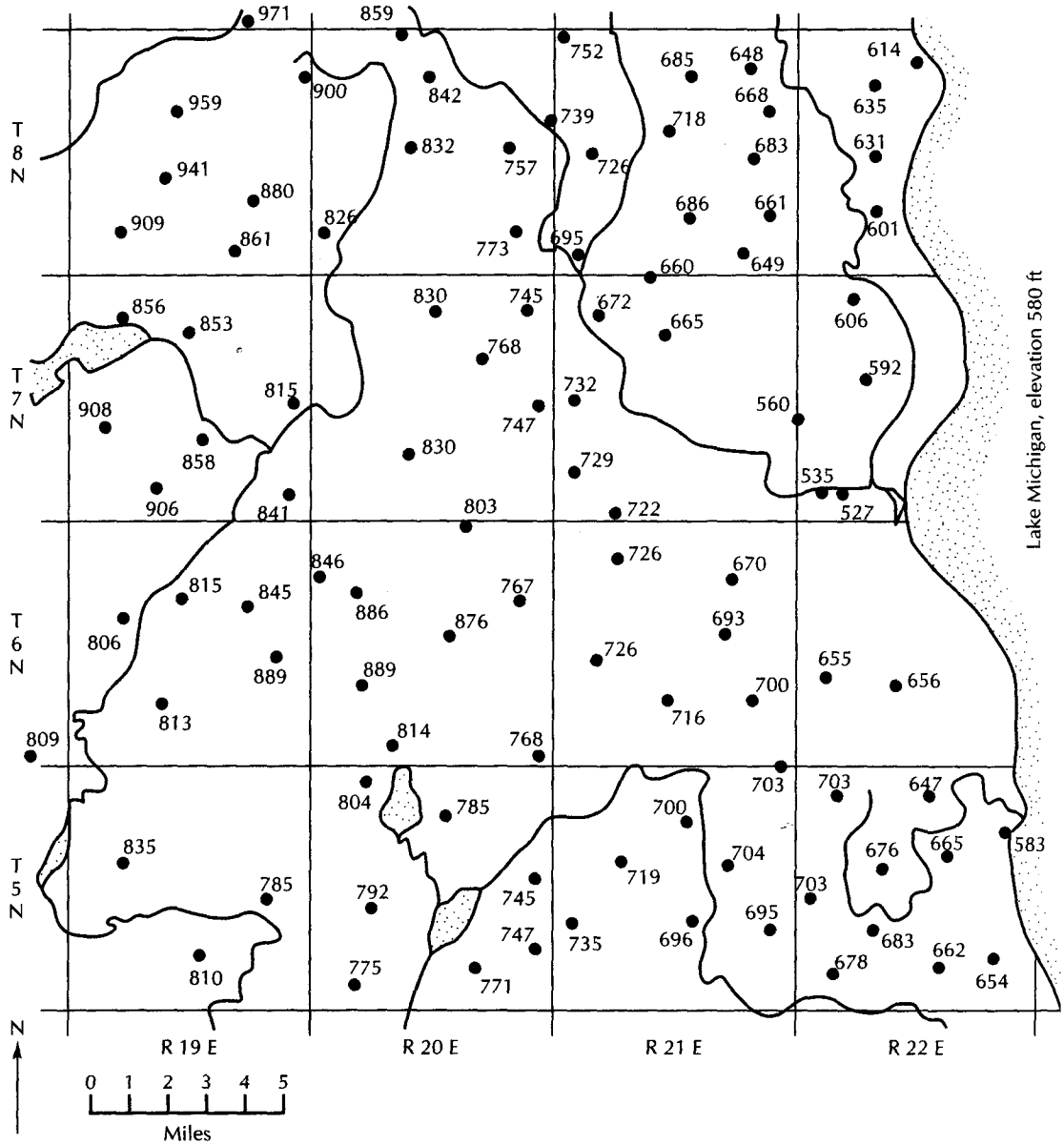
c. In many places it has been observed that porosity decreases with depth for both sediments and rock. Explain why this phenomenon occurs.

d. Write an Excel formula for Equation 3.29.

Problems

Answers to odd-numbered problems appear at the end of the book.

1. What is the weight in Newtons of an object with a mass of 14.5 kg?
2. What is the weight in pounds of an object with a mass of 123 slugs?
3. An object has a mass of 78.5 kg and a volume of 0.45 m^3.
   (A) What is its density?
   (B) What is its specific weight?
   (C) Is the object more or less dense than water?



▲ FIGURE 3.32
Base map for Analysis B.

4. An object has a mass of 823 kg and a volume of 0.62 m^3.
   (A) What is its density?
   (B) What is its specific weight?
   (C) Is it more or less dense than water?

5. The hydraulic conductivity of a silty sand was measured in a laboratory permeameter and found to be 3.75×10^{-5} cm/s at 25°C. What is the intrinsic permeability in cm^2? Refer to Appendix 14 for values of density and viscosity.

6. The hydraulic conductivity of a coarse sand was measured in a laboratory permeameter and found to be 1.03×10^{-2} cm/s at 25°C. What is the intrinsic permeability? Refer to Appendix 14 to obtain values for density and viscosity.

7. A constant-head permeameter has a cross-sectional area of 78.5 cm^2. The sample is 23 cm long. At a heac of 3.4 cm, the permeameter discharges 50 cm^3 in 38 s
   (A) What is the hydraulic conductivity in centimeters per second and feet per day?
   (B) What is the intrinsic permeability if the hydraulic conductivity was measured at 15°C?
   (C) From the hydraulic conductivity value, name t type of soil.

8. A constant-head permeameter has a cross-sectional area of 127 cm^2. The sample is 34 cm long. At a head of 15 cm, the permeameter discharges 50 cm^3 in 334 s.
   (A) What is the hydraulic conductivity in centimeters per second and feet per day?
   (B) What is the intrinsic permeability if the hydraulic conductivity was measured at 20°C?
   (C) From the hydraulic conductivity value, name the type of soil.

9. An aquifer has a specific yield of 0.19. During a drought period, the following average declines in the water table were noted:

Area	Size (km^2)	Decline (m)
A	15	2.34
B	7.5	1.22
C	18.3	0.76
D	22.5	3.44
E	9.44	1.89
F	22.7	0.35

What was the total volume of water represented by the decline in the water table?

10. An aquifer has a specific yield of 0.24. During a drought period, the following average declines in the water table were noted:

Area	Size (mi^2)	Decline (ft)
A	12.5	1.33
B	19.8	0.88
C	23.8	3.98
D	9.56	2.34
E	12.3	4.44
F	7.22	0.34

What was the total volume of water represented by the decline in the water table?

11. A confined aquifer has a specific storage of 1.022×10^{-6} ft^{-1} and a thickness of 23 ft. How much water would it yield if the water declined an average of 1.75 ft over a circular area with a radius of 418 ft?

12. A confined aquifer has a specific storage of 7.239×10^{-3} m^{-1} and a thickness of 28 m. How much water would it yield if the water declined an average of 3.4 m over a circular area with a radius of 238 m?

13. A confined aquifer has a specific storage of 4.033×10^{-3} m^{-1} and a porosity of 0.274. The compressibility of water is 4.6×10^{-10} m^2/N. What is the compressibility of the aquifer skeleton?

14. A confined aquifer has a specific storage of 8.8×10^{-6} m^{-1} and a porosity of 0.33. The compressibility of water is 4.6×10^{-10} m^2/N. What is the compressibility of the aquifer skeleton?

15. An aquifer has three different formations. Formation A has a thickness of 22 ft and a hydraulic conductivity of 17.0 ft/d. Formation B has a thickness of 3.5 ft and a conductivity of 99 ft/d. Formation C has a thickness of 26 ft and a conductivity of 22 ft/d. Assume that each formation is isotropic and homogeneous. Compute both the overall horizontal and vertical conductivities.

16. An aquifer has three different formations. Formation A has a thickness of 8.4 m and a hydraulic conductivity of 22.3 m/d. Formation B has a thickness of 2.8 m and a conductivity of 144 m/d. Formation C has a thickness of 33 m and a conductivity of 35 m/d. Assume that each formation is isotropic and homogeneous. Compute both the overall horizontal and vertical conductivities.

17. Use the Hazen method to estimate the hydraulic conductivity of the sediments graphed in Figure 3.33.

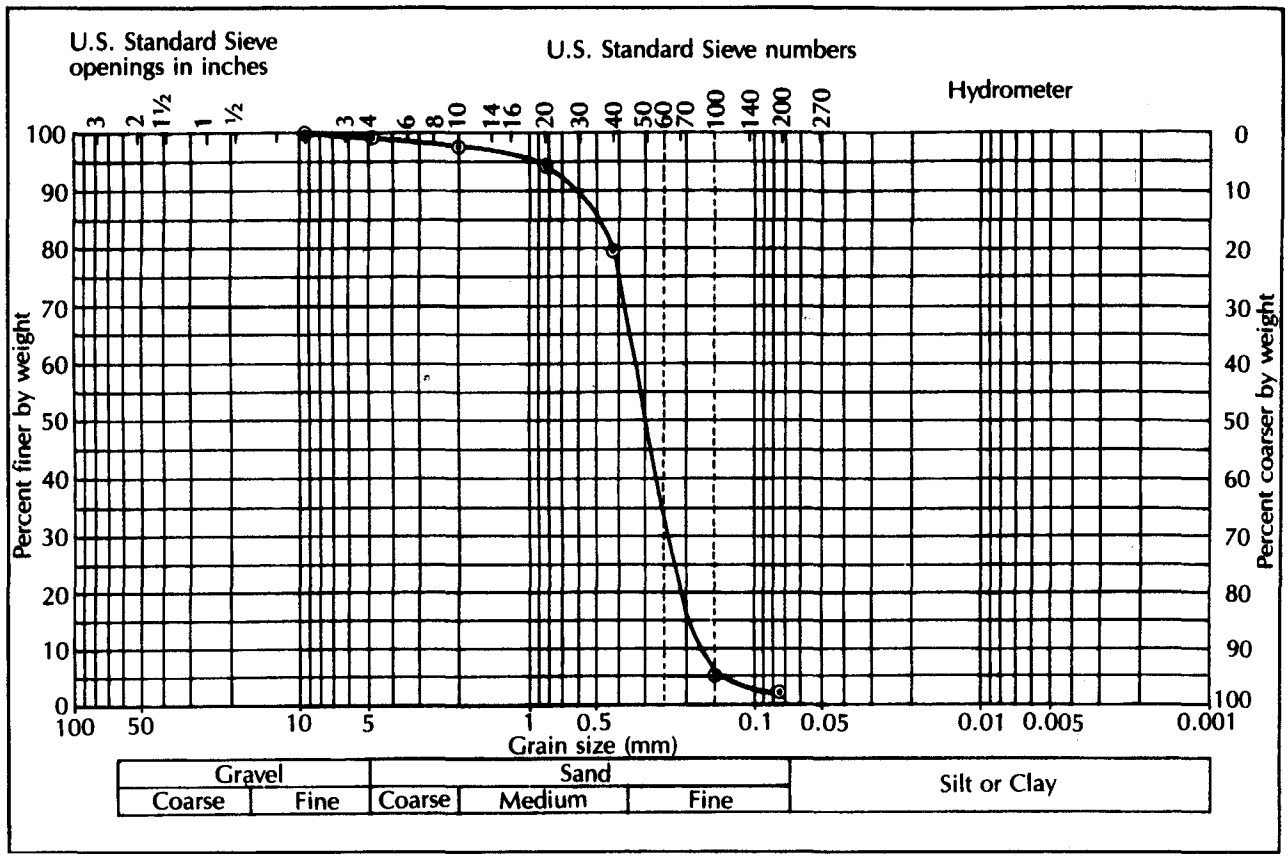
18. Determine the effective grain size and uniformity coefficient of the sediments graphed in Figure 3.33.

19. Given the following set of data representing the hydraulic conductivity of core samples from the same formation, perform the following:

Sample #	K (m/s)
1	4.3×10^{-4}
2	6.1×10^{-3}
3	2.5×10^{-5}
4	1.2×10^{-4}
5	1.0×10^{-6}
6	7.1×10^{-3}
7	9.1×10^{-6}
8	2.2×10^{-3}
9	4.2×10^{-5}
10	8.7×10^{-4}
11	3.5×10^{-5}

   (A) Find the arithmetic mean of the data set.
   (B) Find the geometric mean of the data set.
   (C) Make a histogram of the data set.
   (D) Make a histogram of the log transformed data.

20. Repeat Problem 19 using Excel functions and graphing.



▲ FIGURE 3.33
Grain-size distribution curve for Problems 17 and 18.

CHAPTER 4

Principles of Ground-Water Flow



Just as above the earth, small drops form and these join others, till finally water descends in a body as rain, so too we must suppose that in the earth the water at first trickles together little by little and that the sources of rivers drip, as it were, out of the earth and then unite.

Meteorologica, Aristotle (384–322 B.C.)

4.1 Introduction

Ground water possesses energy in mechanical, thermal, and chemical forms. Becuase the amounts of energy vary spatially, ground water is forced to move from one region to another in nature's attempt to eliminate these energy differentials. The flow of ground water is thus controlled by the laws of physics and thermodynamics. To enable a separate examination of mechanical energy, we will make the simplifying assumption that the water is of nearly constant temperature. Thermal energy must be considered, however, in such applications as geothermal flow systems and burial of radioactive heat sources.

There are three outside forces acting on ground water. The most obvious of these is *gravity*, which pulls water downward. The second force is *external pressure*. Above the zone of saturation, atmospheric pressure is acting. The combination of atmospheric pressure and the weight of overlying water creates pressures in the zone of saturation. The third force is *molecular attraction*, which causes water to adhere to solid surfaces. It also creates surface tension in water when the water is exposed to air. The combination of these two processes is responsible for the phenomenon of capillarity.

When water in the ground is flowing through a porous medium, there are forces resisting the fluid movement. These consist of the *shear stresses* acting tangentially to the surface of the solid and *normal stresses* acting perpendicularly to the surface. We can think of these forces collectively as "friction." The internal molecular attraction of the fluid itself resists the movement of fluid molecules past each other. This shearing resistance is known as the *viscosity* of the fluid.

4.2 Mechanical Energy

There are a number of different types of mechanical energy recognized in classical physics Of these, we will consider kinetic energy, gravitational potential energy, and energy o fluid pressures.

A moving body or fluid tends to remain in motion, according to Newtonian physics because it possesses energy due to its motion called *kinetic energy.* This energy is equal t one-half the product of its mass and the square of the magnitude of the velocity:

$$E_k = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 \tag{4.1}$$

where

E_k is the kinetic energy (ML^2/T^2; slug-ft^2/s^2 or kg·m^2/s^2)

v is the velocity (L/T; ft/s or m/s)

m is the mass (M; slug or kg)

If m is in kilograms and v is in meters per second, then E_k has the units of kg·m^2/s^{2d} o newton-meters. The unit of energy is the joule, which is one newton-meter. The joule i also the unit of work.

Imagine that a weightless container filled with water of mass m is moved vertically upward a distance, z, from some reference surface (a datum). Work is done in moving th mass of water upward. This work is equal to

$$W = Fz = (mg)z \tag{4.2}$$

where

W is work (ML^2/T^2; slug-ft^2/s^2 or kg·m^2/s^2)

z is the elevation of the center of gravity of the fluid above the reference elevation (L; ft or m)

m is the mass (M; slugs or kg)

g is the acceleration of gravity (L/T^2; ft/s^2 or m/s^2)

F is a force (ML/T^2; slug-ft/s^2 or kg·m/s^2)

The mass of water has now acquired energy equal to the work done in lifting the mass This is a potential energy, due to the position of the fluid mass with respect to the datum E_g is *gravitational potential energy:*

$$W = E_g = mgz \tag{4.3}$$

A fluid mass has another source of potential energy owing to the **pressure** of the sur rounding fluid acting upon it. Pressure is the force per unit area acting on a body:

$$P = F/A \tag{4.4}$$

where

P is the pressure [M/LT^2; slug-ft/s^2 or (kg·m/s^2)/m^2]

A is the cross-sectional area perpendicular to the direction of the force (L^2; ft^2 or m^2)

The units of pressure are pascals (Pa), or N/m^2. A N/m^2 is equal to a N·m/m^3, or J/m^3 Pressure may thus be thought of as potential energy per unit volume of fluid.

For a unit volume of fluid, the mass, m, is numerically equal to the density, ρ, sinc density is defined as mass per unit volume. The total energy of the unit volume of fluid i the sum of the three components—kinetic, gravitational, and fluid-pressure energy:

$$E_{tv} = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v^2 + \rho gz + P \tag{4.5}$$

where E_{tv} is the total energy per unit volume.

If Equation 4.5 is divided by ρ, the result is total energy per unit mass, E_{tm}:

$$E_{tm} = \frac{v^2}{2} + gz + \frac{P}{\rho} \tag{4.6}$$

which is known as the *Bernoulli equation.* The derivation of the Bernoulli equation may be found in textbooks on fluid mechanics (Hornberger, Raffensperger, Wilberg, and Eshleman, 1998).

For steady flow of a frictionless, incompressible fluid along a smooth line of flow, the sum of the three components is a constant. Each term of Equation 4.6 has the units of $(L/T)^2$:

$$\frac{v^2}{2} + gz + \frac{P}{\rho} = \text{constant} \tag{4.7}$$

Steady flow indicates that the conditions do not change with time. The density of an incompressible fluid would not change with changes in pressure. A frictionless fluid would not require energy to overcome resistance to flow. An ideal fluid would have both of these characteristics; real fluids have neither one. Real fluids are compressible and do suffer frictional flow losses; however, Equation 4.7 is useful for purposes of comparing the components of mechanical energy.

If each term of Equation 4.7 is divided by g, the following expression results:

$$\frac{v^2}{2g} + z + \frac{P}{\rho g} = \text{constant} \tag{4.8}$$

This equation expresses all terms in units of energy per unit weight. These are J/N, or m. Thus, Equation 4.8 has the advantage of having all units in length dimensions (L). The first term of $v^2/2g$ is $(m/s)^2/(m/s^2)$, or m; the second term, z, is already in m; and the third term, $P/\rho g$, is $Pa/(kg/m^3)(m/s^2)$, or $(N/m^2)/(kg/m^3)(m/s^2)$, which reduces to m. The sum of these three factors is the total mechanical energy per unit weight, known as the **hydraulic head,** h. This is usually measured in the field or laboratory in units of length.

4.3 Hydraulic Head

A **piezometer*** is used to measure the total energy of the fluid flowing through a pipe packed with sand, as shown in Figure 4.1. The piezometer is open at the top and bottom, and water rises in it in direct proportion to the total fluid energy at the point at which the bottom of the piezometer is open in the sand. At point A, which is at an elevation, z, above a datum, there is a fluid pressure, P. The fluid is flowing at a velocity, v. The total energy per unit mass can be found from Equation 4.6.

PROBLEM

At a place where $g = 9.80\ m/s^2$ the fluid pressure is $1500\ N/m^2$; the distance above a reference elevation is 0.75 m; and the fluid density is $1.02 \times 10^3\ kg/m^3$. The fluid is moving at a velocity of 1.0×10^{-6} m/s. Find E_{tm}.

$$E_{tm} = gz + \frac{P}{\rho} + \frac{v^2}{2}$$

$$= 9.80\ m/s^2 \times 0.75\ m + \frac{1500\ N/m^2}{1.02 \times 10^3\ kg/m^3} + \frac{(10^{-6})^2\ m^2}{2\ s^2}$$

$$= 7.35\ m^2/s^2 + 1.47\ m^2/s^2 + 5.0 \times 10^{-13}\ m^2/s^2$$

$$= 8.8\ m^2/s^2$$

*A piezometer is a small-diameter well with a very short well screen or section of slotted pipe at the end. It is used to measure the hydraulic head at a point in the aquifer.

The total energy per unit mass of 8.8 m^2/s^2 is almost exclusively in the pressure and gravitational potential energy terms, which are 13 orders of magnitude greater than the value of kinetic energy.

The preceding problem shows that the amount of energy developed as kinetic energ by flowing ground water is small. The velocity of ground water flowing in porous medi under natural hydraulic gradients is very low. The example velocity of 10^{-6} m/s results i a movement of 30 m/y, which is typical for ground water.

Velocity components of energy may be safely ignored in ground-water flow becaus they are so much smaller than the other two terms. By dropping $v^2/2g$ from Equation 4.8 the total hydraulic head, h, is given by the formula

$$h = z + \frac{P}{\rho g} \tag{4.9}$$

Figure 4.2 shows the components of head. The head is the total mechanical energy pe unit weight of water. For a fluid at rest, the pressure at a point is equal to the weight of th overlying water per unit cross-sectional area:

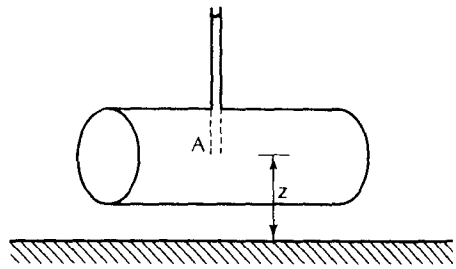
$$P = \rho g h_p \tag{4.10}$$

where h_p is the height of the water column that provides a *pressure head.* Substituting intc Equation 4.9, we see that

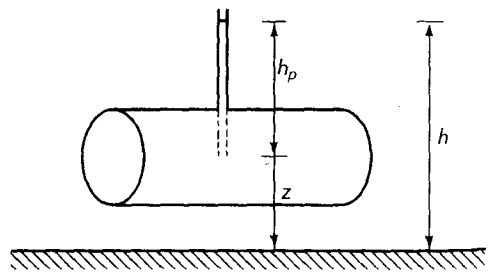
$$h = z + h_p \tag{4.11}$$

The total hydraulic head is equal to the sum of the elevation head and the pressure head. The elevation and pressure heads, when used in the form of Equation 4.11, correlate with energy per unit weight of water with dimensions L.

▶ FIGURE 4.1
Piezometer measuring fluid pressure and the elevation of water.



▶ FIGURE 4.2
Total head, h, elevation head, z, and pressure head, h_p.



PROBLEM

Two points in the same confined aquifer are located on a vertical line. Point 1 is 100 m below mean sea level and point 2 is 50 m below mean sea level. The fluid pressure at point 1 is 9.0×10^5 N/m^2 and at point 2, it is 6.1×10^5 N/m^2.

Part A: Calculate the pressure and total heads at each point.

Assume that the deeper point is at zero datum. Therefore, the elevation head at point 1 is zero and at point 2 is 50 m.

By rearranging Equation 4.10 we can get an equation for the pressure head:

$$P = \rho g h_p$$

Therefore,

$$h_p = P/\rho g$$

Assume that $g = 9.80$ m/s^2 and $\rho = 1000$ kg/m^3. At point 1,

$$h_p = \frac{9.0 \times 10^5 \text{ (kg·m/s}^2\text{)/(m}^2\text{)}}{1000 \text{ kg/m}^3 \times 9.80 \text{ m/s}^2}$$

$$= 92 \text{ m}$$

Since total head is the sum of the elevation head and the pressure head, at point 1

$$h = h_p + z = 92 \text{ m} + 0 \text{ m} = 92 \text{ m}$$

At point 2,

$$h_p = \frac{6.1 \times 10^5 \text{(kg·m/s}^2\text{)/(m}^2\text{)}}{1000 \text{ kg/m}^3 \times 9.80 \text{ m/s}^2}$$

$$= 62 \text{ m}$$

$$h = 62 \text{ m} + 50 \text{ m} = 112 \text{ m}$$

Part B: Does flow in the aquifer have an upward or downward component?

Flow is downward, because the total head at 50 m below sea level is greater than the total head at 100 m below sea level, even though the pressure head at 100 m is greater.

PROBLEM

The following data were collected at a nest of piezometers [several piezometers of different depths located within a few feet (1 to 2 m) of each other]:

	A	B	C
Elevation at surface (m a.s.l.)	225	225	225
Depth of piezometer (m)	150	100	75
Depth to water (m below surface)	80	77	60

Part A: What is the hydraulic head at A, B, and C?

Hydraulic head is elevation of the water in the piezometer. It is found by subtracting the depth to water from the surface elevation.

A: 145 m B: 148 m C: 165 m

Part B: What is the pressure head at A, B, and C?

Pressure head is the height of the water in the well above the depth of the piezometer. It i found by subtracting the depth to water from the depth of the piezometer from the surface.

A: 70 m B: 23 m C: 15 m

Part C: What is the elevation head in each well?

Elevation head is the height of the measuring point above the datum. In this case the datur is mean sea level and the elevation head is found by subtracting the depth of the piezometer fror the surface elevation.

A: 75 m B: 125 m C: 150 m

Notice that the total head found in part A is the sum of the pressure head found in part B an the elevation head found in part C.

Part D: What is the vertical hydraulic gradient between the piezometers?

The hydraulic gradient is the difference in total head divided by the vertical distance be tween the two piezometers.

From piezometer A to piezometer B the difference in the total head is 148 m–145 m and th vertical distance is 50 m. The hydraulic gradient is (3 m)/(50 m), or 0.06, and the direction i downward as the head in B, the shallower piezometer, is greater.

From piezometer B to piezometer C the difference in total head is 165 m–148 m and the ver tical distance is 25 m. The hydraulic gradient is (17 m)/(25 m), or 0.68. This gradient is also downward.

4.4 Head in Water of Variable Density

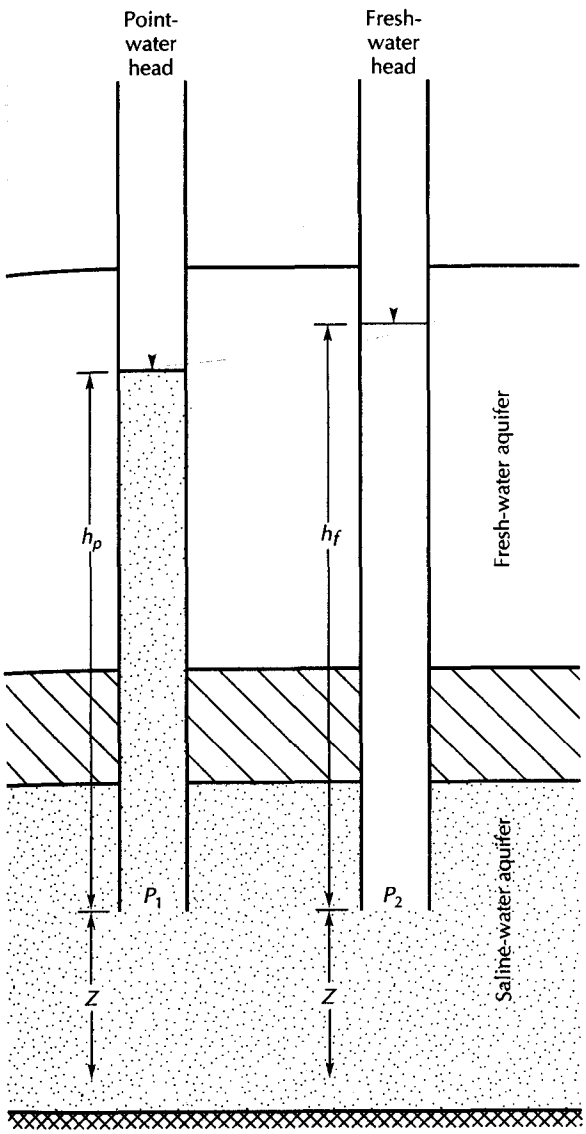
If the salinity of ground water varies over an area or with depth, density corrections mus be made to the head that is measured in a well. Recall from Equation 4.10 that the pressur at the tip of a piezometer is the height of water standing in the piezometer multiplied b the density of the water in the piezometer and the gravitational constant.

Lusczynski (1961) introduced the concept of point-water head, which is the water leve in a well filled with water coming from a point in an aquifer and which is just enough t balance the pressure in the aquifer at that point. He also introduced a fresh-water head which is the height of a column of fresh water in a well that is just sufficient to balance th pressure in the aquifer at that point. Figure 4.3 shows the head relationships in water o variable density for point-water head and fresh-water head in a confined, saline-wate aquifer overlain by a fresh-water aquifer. We know that the total head is the sum of the ele vation head and the pressure head. Elevation head is not dependent upon fluid densit Therefore point-water head is the sum of the elevation head, z, and the point-water pres sure head, h_p, and fresh-water head is the sum of elevation head, z, and fresh-water pres sure head, h_f.

If we are in a fresh-water aquifer, all point-water heads are also fresh-water heads However, if the density of the aquifer varies across a site, then point-water heads meas ured in the field must be converted to fresh-water heads before water-level maps and gra dients are computed.

Consider piezometer 1 of Figure 4.3, which is filled with point water of density ρ_p. Th point-water pressure head is the height of the point water in the piezometer, h_p. The pres sure at P_1 may be found from

$$P_1 = \rho_p g h_p \tag{4.12}$$



◀ FIGURE 4.3
Definition of point-water head and fresh-water head.

Now consider piezometer 2 of Figure 4.3, which ends in the saline aquifer but is filled with fresh water of density ρ_f; the fresh-water pressure head is h_f. The pressure at P_2 may be found from

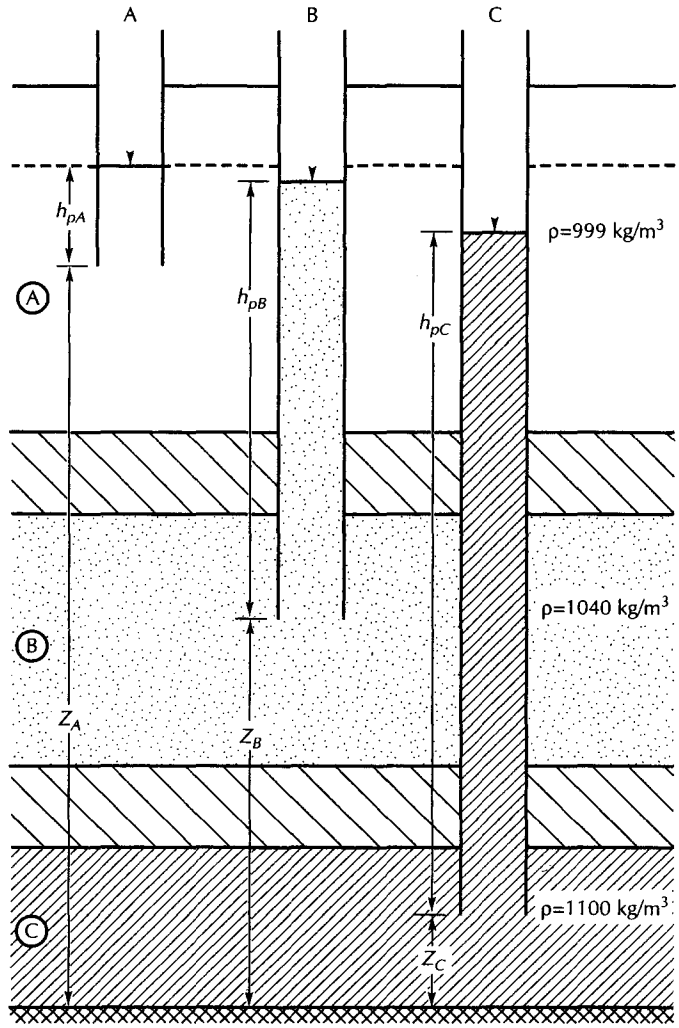
$$P_2 = \rho_f g h_f \tag{4.13}$$

If the two piezometers both end in the same point in the aquifer, then $P_1 = P_2$, and we can find the relationship between fresh-water pressure head and point-water pressure head:

$$\rho_p g h_p = \rho_f g h_f \tag{4.14}$$

$$h_f = (\rho_p / \rho_f) h_p \tag{4.15}$$

If the density of water in aquifers varies vertically, all point-water pressure heads should be converted to fresh-water pressure heads. Fresh-water heads can then be calculated and used for the determination of hydraulic gradients and flow directions. For



▲ FIGURE 4.4
Point-water heads for a system of three aquifers, each containing water with a different density.

theoretical reasons, equivalent fresh-water heads cannot be used to determine the h draulic gradient in aquifers where there is a lateral variation in density, because the den ty gradient is a factor in determining lateral flow and the hydraulic gradient (Hubb 1956; Hickey 1989; Oberlander 1989).

PROBLEM

Figure 4.4 shows three aquifers—a fresh-water-table aquifer and two confined saline-wa aquifers, with properties as given in the following table. What are the head relationships betwe aquifers?

Aquifer	Water Density	Elevation Head	Point-Water Head
A	999 kg/m^3	50.00 m	55.00 m
B	1040 kg/m^3	31.34 m	54.67 m
C	1100 kg/m^3	7.95 m	51.88 m

Field measurements of water levels in the wells give the point-water heads. The point-water pressure heads are determined by subtracting the elevation head from the point-water head. The fresh-water pressure head is then found by multiplying the point-water pressure head by the ratio of the point-water density to the fresh-water density. Finally, the fresh-water pressure head is added to the elevation head to obtain fresh-water heads as given in the following table.

Aquifer	Point-Water Pressure Head	ρ_p/ρ_f	Fresh-Water Pressure Head	Fresh-Water Head
A	5.00 m	1.00	5.00 m	55.00 m
B	23.33 m	1.04	24.3 m	55.5 m
C	43.93 m	1.10	48.3 m	56.3 m

Note that the point-water heads indicate that the hydraulic gradient is vertically downward. However, after the point-water heads are corrected to fresh-water heads, the true hydraulic gradient is seen to be upward.

4.5 Force Potential and Hydraulic Head

In Equation 4.6 we showed the total mechanical energy per unit mass to be equal to the sum of the kinetic energy, elevation energy, and pressure. This total potential energy has been termed the **force potential** and is indicated by the capital Greek letter phi, Φ (Hubbert 1940):

$$\Phi = gz + \frac{P}{\rho} = gz + \frac{\rho g h_p}{\rho} = g(z + h_p) \tag{4.16}$$

Since $z + h_p = h$, the hydraulic head.

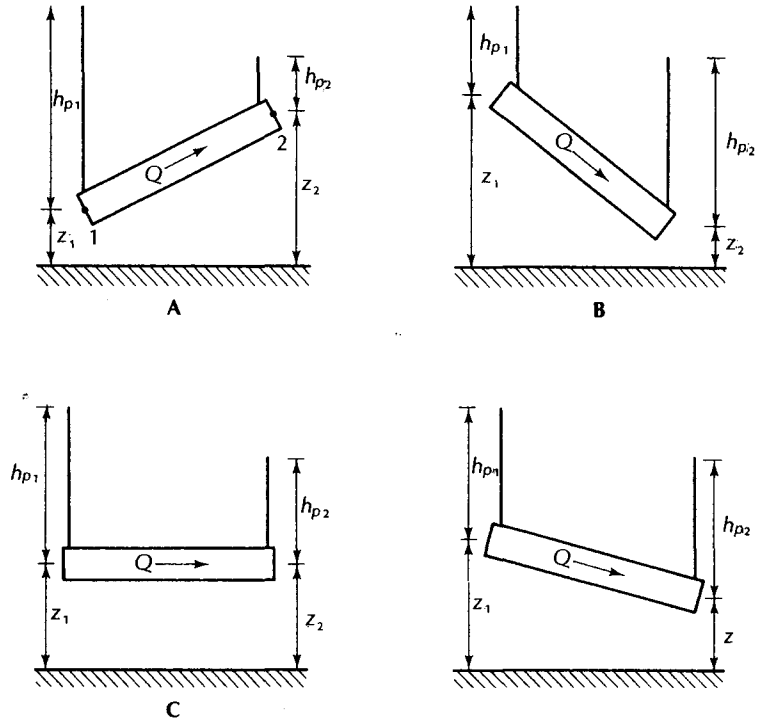
$$\Phi = gh \tag{4.17}$$

From a theoretical standpoint, the force potential is the driving impetus behind ground-water flow, and is equal to the product of hydraulic head and the acceleration of gravity. As a practical matter, the acceleration of gravity can be considered a constant everywhere on earth, so that it is not necessary to use force potentials. Hydraulic head is a convenient potential to use as the dimensions of energy per unit weight reduce to units of length, which can be easily measured.

We can demonstrate with a simple illustration that the total head controls the movement of ground water. Figure 4.5 shows a pipe filled with sand and water flowing through it from left to right. The pipe can be rotated to any inclination, with the discharge of water remaining constant. In part A of the figure, the water flows from point 1 (of elevation z_1) to point 2 (of elevation z_2), z_2 being somewhat greater than z_1. In part B, the slope has been reversed: Rather than flowing uphill, the water now flows downhill. However, the fluid pressure head at point 2 (h_{p2}) is greater than at point 1 (h_{p1}). The fluid is thus moving from a region of low pressure to one of higher pressure. Clearly, neither elevation head nor pressure head alone controls ground-water motion. Part C of Figure 4.5 shows equal elevation heads, with pressure head declining in the direction of flow. Part D has equal pressure heads, but elevation head declines in the direction of flow.

In this example the total hydraulic head showed the same decrease in the direction of flow. This would be true no matter what the inclination of the pipe, so long as other factors remained constant. Since the total head is the controlling force in ground-water flow, this demonstrates that the proportion of pressure and elevation head is not a factor.

From Figure 3.4, we see that the hydraulic head decreases in the direction of flow. As ground water moves, it encounters frictional resistance between the fluid and the porous



▲ FIGURE 4.5
Apparatus to demonstrate how changing the slope of a pipe packed with sand will change the components of elevation, z, and pressure, h_p, heads. The direction of flow, Q, is indicated by the arrow.

media. The smaller the openings through which the fluid moves, the greater the friction. In overcoming the frictional resistance, some of the head is lost. It is transformed into heat (a lower form of energy). Thus, ground water is warmed slightly as it flows, and mechanical energy is converted to thermal energy. Under most circumstances, the resulting change in temperature is not measurable.

4.6 Darcy's Law

4.6.1 Darcy's Law in Terms of Head and Potential

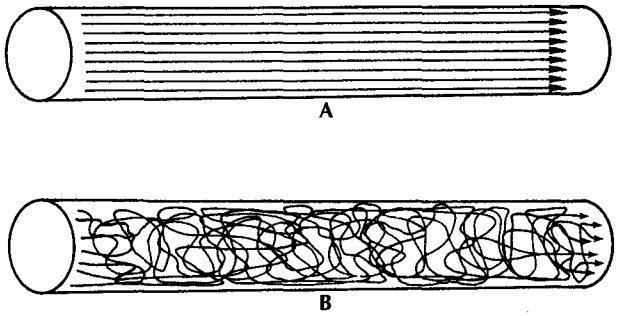
In Section 3.5 it was shown that flow through a pipe filled with sand is proportional to the decrease in hydraulic head divided by the length of the pipe. This ratio is called the *hydraulic gradient.* It should now be apparent that the hydraulic head is the sum of the pressure head and the elevation head. Expressed in terms of hydraulic head, Darcy's law is

$$Q = -KA\frac{dh}{dl} \tag{4.18}$$

Since the fluid potential, Φ, is equal to gh, Darcy's law can also be expressed in terms of potential as (Hubbert 1940)

$$Q = -\frac{KA}{g}\frac{d\Phi}{dl} \tag{4.19}$$

As expressed here, Darcy's law is in a one-dimensional form, as water flows through the pipe in only one direction. In later sections, we will examine various forms of Darcy's law for two and three directions.



▲ FIGURE 4.6
A. Flow paths of molecules of water in laminar flow. **B.** Flow paths of molecules of water in turbulent flow.

4.6.2 The Applicability of Darcy's Law

When a fluid at rest starts to move, it must overcome resistance to flow due to the viscosity of the fluid. Slowly moving fluids are dominated by viscous forces. There is a low energy level and the resulting fluid flow is laminar. In **laminar flow,** molecules of water follow smooth lines, called *streamlines* (Figure 4.6A).

As the velocity of flow increases, the moving fluid gains kinetic energy. Eventually, the inertial forces due to movement are more influential than the viscous forces, and the fluid particles begin to rush past each other in an erratic fashion. The result is **turbulent flow,** in which the water molecules no longer move along parallel streamlines (Figure 4.6B).

The **Reynolds number** relates the four factors that determine whether the flow will be laminar or turbulent (Hornberger, Raffensperger, Wilberg, and Eshleman, 1998):

$$R = \frac{\rho q d}{\mu} \tag{4.20}$$

where

R is the Reynolds number, dimensionless

ρ is the fluid density (M/L^3; kg/m^3)

q is the discharge velocity (L/T; m/s)

d is the diameter of the passageway through which the fluid moves (L; m)

μ is the viscosity ($M/T{\cdot}L$; kg/s·m)

For open-channel or pipe flow, d is simply the hydraulic radius of the channel or the pipe diameter. In such cases, the transition from laminar to turbulent fluid flow occurs when the average velocity is such that R exceeds a value of 2000 (Hornberger, Raffensperger, Wilberg, and Eshleman, 1998). For a porous medium, however, it is not easy to determine the value of d. Rather than an average or characteristic pore diameter, the average grain diameter is often used.

Turbulence in ground-water flow is difficult to detect. The inception of fluid turbulent flow in ground water has been reported at a Reynolds number ranging from 60 (Schneebeli 1955) to 600 (Hubbert 1956). However, experimentation has shown that Darcy's law is valid only when conditions are such that the resistive forces of viscosity predominate. These conditions prevail when the Reynolds number is less than 1 to 10 (Lindquist 1933; Rose 1945a, 1945b). Thus, Darcy's law applies only to very slowly moving ground waters. It is possible to have turbulent ground-water flow, but only under conditions such that the Reynolds number

is so great as to invalidate Darcy's law. Under most natural ground-water conditions, the velocity is sufficiently low for Darcy's law to be valid. Exceptions might be areas of rock with large openings, such as solution openings and basalt flows. Likewise, areas of steep hydraulic gradients, such as the vicinity of a pumping well, might result in high velocities with a correspondingly high Reynolds number.

PROBLEM

A sand aquifer has a median grain diameter of 0.050 cm. For pure water at 15°C, what is the greatest velocity for which Darcy's law is valid?

From Appendix 14,

$$\rho = 0.999 \times 10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3$$

$$\mu = 1.14 \times 10^{-2} \text{ g/s·cm}$$

Convert units to kilograms, meters, and seconds:

$$d = 0.050 \text{ cm} \times 0.01 \text{ m/cm} = 0.0005 \text{ m}$$

$$\mu = 1.14 \times 10^{-2} \text{ g/s·cm} \times 0.001 \text{ kg/g} \times 100 \text{ cm/m}$$

$$= 1.14 \times 10^{-3} \text{ kg/s·m}$$

By rearranging Equation 4.16, we can obtain a formula for velocity:

$$R = \frac{\rho q d}{\mu}$$

Therefore,

$$q = \frac{R\mu}{\rho d}$$

If R cannot exceed 1, the maximum velocity is

$$q = \frac{1 \times 1.14 \times 10^{-3} \text{ kg/s·m}}{0.999 \times 10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3 \times 0.0005 \text{ m}}$$

$$= 0.0023 \text{ m/s}$$

Darcy's law will be valid for discharge velocities equal to or less than 0.0023 m/s.

4.6.3 Specific Discharge and Average Linear Velocity

When water flows through an open channel or a pipe, the discharge, Q, is equal to the product of the velocity, v, and the cross-sectional area of flow, A:

$$Q = vA \tag{4.21}$$

Rearrangement of Equation 4.21 yields an expression for velocity,

$$v = Q/A \tag{4.22}$$

One can apply the same reasoning to Equation 4.18, Darcy's law, for flow through a porous medium:

$$v = \frac{Q}{A} = -K\frac{dh}{dl} \tag{4.23}$$

A moment's reflection will reveal that this velocity is not quite the same as the velocity of water flowing through an open pipe. The discharge is measured as water coming from the

pipe. In an open pipe, the cross-sectional area of flow inside the pipe is equivalent to the area of the end of the pipe. However, if the pipe is filled with sand, the open area through which water may flow is much smaller than the cross-sectional area of the pipe. The velocity of flow determined by Equation 4.23 is termed the **specific discharge,** or Darcy flux.* It is an apparent velocity, representing the velocity at which water would move through an aquifer if the aquifer were an open conduit.

The cross-sectional area of flow for a porous medium is actually much smaller than the dimensions of the aquifer. It is equal to the product of the effective porosity of the aquifer material and the physical dimensions. Water can move only through the pore spaces. Moreover, part of the pore space is occupied by stagnant water, which clings to the rock material. The effective porosity is that portion of the pore space through which saturated flow occurs.

To find the velocity at which water is actually moving, the specific discharge is divided by the effective porosity to account for the actual open space available for the flow. The result is the **seepage velocity,** or **average linear velocity**—a velocity representing the average rate at which the water moves between two points:

$$v_x = \frac{Q}{n_e A} = -\frac{Kdh}{n_e dl} \tag{4.24}$$

where

v_x is the average linear velocity (L/T; cm/s, ft/s, m/s)

n_e is the effective porosity (dimensionless)

Equation 4.24 does not take into account the factors that account for **dispersion** in flowing ground water. Dispersion is the phenomenon that results because ground water flows through different pores at different rates and various flow paths differ in length. Dispersion is discussed in detail in Section 10.6.5.

Because Equation 4.24 does not include a dispersion factor, it cannot be used to predict the average linear rate of movement of a solute front that is moving at the same rate as the flowing ground water. This is especially true for fine-grained materials, where the process of diffusion may be important in the movement of solute from an area of greater to lesser concentration. Diffusion is discussed in Section 10.6.2.

4.7 Equations of Ground-Water Flow**

4.7.1 · Confined Aquifers

The flow of fluids through porous media is governed by the laws of physics. As such, it can be described by differential equations. Since the flow is a function of several variables, it is usually described by partial differential equations in which the spatial coordinates, x, y, and z, and time, t, are the independent variables.

In deriving the equations, the laws of conservation for mass and energy are employed. The *law of mass conservation,* or *continuity principle,* states that there can be no net change in the mass of a fluid contained in a small volume of an aquifer. Any change in mass flowing into the small volume of the aquifer must be balanced by a corresponding change in mass flux out of the volume, or a change in the mass stored in the volume, or both. The *law of conservation of energy* is also known as the *first law of thermodynamics.* It states that within any closed system there is a constant amount of energy, which can be

*The terms *discharge velocity* and *Darcian velocity* are synonyms for *specific discharge.* It would be best to avoid these as their use implies that ground water is moving at this velocity.

**The main equation of ground-water flow is derived in this section following a method used by Jacob (1940, 1950) and modified by Domenico (1972).

neither lost nor increased. It can, however, change form. The *second law of thermodynamics* implies that when energy changes forms, it tends to go from a more useful form, such as mechanical energy, to a less useful form, such as heat. Based upon these principles and Darcy's law, the main equations of ground-water flow have been derived (Jacob 1940, 1950; Domenico 1972; Cooper 1966).

We will consider a very small part of the aquifer, called a *control volume.* The three sides are of lengths dx, dy, and dz, respectively. The area of the faces normal to the x-axis is $dydz$; the area of the faces normal to the z-axis is $dxdy$ (Figure 4.7).

Assume the aquifer is homogeneous and isotropic. The fluid moves in only one direction through the control volume. However, the actual fluid motion can be subdivided on the basis of the components of flow parallel to the three principal axes. If q is flow per unit cross-sectional area, $\rho_w q_x$ is the portion parallel to the x-axis, etc., where ρ_w is the fluid density.

The mass flux into the control volume is $\rho_w q_x\, dydz$ along the x-axis. The mass flux[†] out of the control volume is $\rho_w q_x\, dydz + \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\rho_w q_x)\, dx\, dydz$. The net accumulation in the control volume due to movement parallel to the x-axis is equal to the inflow less the outflow, or $-\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\rho_w q_x)\, dx\, dydz$. Since there are flow components along all three axes, similar terms can be determined for the other two directions: $-\frac{\partial}{\partial y}(\rho_w q_y)\, dy\, dxdz$ and $-\frac{\partial}{\partial z}(\rho_w q_z)\, dz\, dxdy$. Combining these three terms yields the net total accumulation of mass in the control volume:

$$-\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\rho_w q_x + \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\rho_w q_y + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\rho_w q_z\right)dxdydz \tag{4.25}$$

The volume of water in the control volume is equal to $n\, dx\, dydz$, where n is the porosity. The initial mass of the water is thus $\rho_w n\, dx\, dydz$. The volume of solid material is $(1 - n)$ $dx\, dydz$. Any change in the mass of water, M, with respect to time (t) is given by

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\rho_w n\, dxdydz) \tag{4.26}$$

As the pressure in the control volume changes, the fluid density will change, as will the porosity of the aquifer. The compressibility of water, β, is defined as the rate of change in density with a change in pressure, P:

$$\beta dP = \frac{d\rho_w}{\rho_w} \tag{4.27}$$

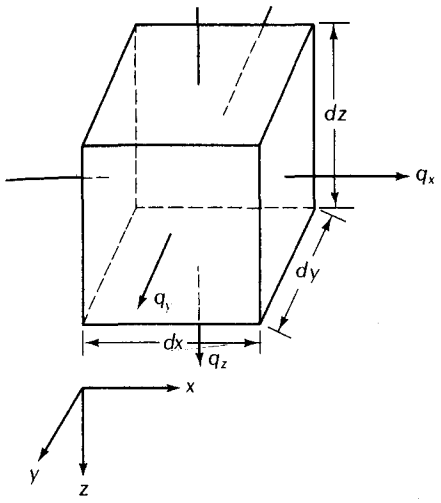
The aquifer also changes in volume with a change in pressure. We will assume the only change is vertical. The aquifer compressibility, α, is given by

$$\alpha dP = \frac{d(dz)}{dz} \tag{4.28}$$

As the aquifer compresses or expands, n will change, but the volume of solids, V_s, will be constant. Likewise, if the only deformation is in the z-direction, $d(dx)$ and $d(dy)$ will equal zero:

$$dV_s = 0 = d[(1 - n)\, dx\, dydz] \tag{4.29}$$

[†]Flux is a rate of flow.



◀ FIGURE 4.7
Control volume for flow through a confined aquifer.

Differentiation of Equation 4.29 yields

$$dz\,dn = (1 - n)d(dz) \tag{4.30}$$

and

$$dn = \frac{(1 - n)d(dz)}{dz} \tag{4.31}$$

The pressure, P, at a point in the aquifer is equal to $P_0 + \rho_w g h$, where P_0 is atmospheric pressure, a constant, and h is the height of a column of water above the point. Therefore, $dP = \rho_w g\,dh$, and Equations 4.27 and 4.28, become

$$d\rho_w = \rho_w \beta(\rho_w g\,dh) \tag{4.32}$$

and

$$d(dz) = dz\alpha(\rho_w g\,dh) \tag{4.33}$$

Equation 4.31 can be rearranged if $d(dz)$ is replaced by Equation 4.33.

$$dn = (1 - n)\alpha\rho_w g\,dh \tag{4.34}$$

If dx and dy are constant, the equation for change of mass with time in the control volume, Equation 4.26, can be expressed as

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial t} = \left[\rho_w n \frac{\partial(dz)}{\partial t} + \rho_w\,dz \frac{\partial n}{\partial t} + n\,dz \frac{\partial \rho_w}{\partial t}\right] dxdy \tag{4.35}$$

Substitution of Equations 4.32, 4.33, and 4.34 into Equation 4.35 yields, after minor manipulation,

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial t} = (\alpha\rho_w g + n\beta\rho_w g)\rho_w\,dx\,dydz \frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{4.36}$$

The net accumulation of material expressed as Equation 4.25 is equal to Equation 4.36, the change in mass with time:

$$-\left[\frac{\partial(q_x)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(q_y)}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(q_z)}{\partial z}\right] \rho_w\,dx\,dydz = (\alpha\rho_w g + n\beta\rho_w g)\rho_w\,dx\,dydz \frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{4.37}$$

From Darcy's law,

$$q_x = -K\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \qquad (4\text{-}38)$$

$$q_y = -K\frac{\partial h}{\partial y} \qquad (4\text{-}39)$$

and

$$q_z = -K\frac{\partial h}{\partial z} \qquad (4\text{-}40)$$

Substituting these into Equation 4.37 yields the main equation of flow for a confi aquifer:

$$K\left(\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2}\right) = (\alpha\rho_w g + n\beta\rho_w g)\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \qquad (4\text{-}41)$$

which is a general equation for flow in three dimensions for an isotropic, homoge porous medium. For two-dimensional flow with no vertical components, the equatio be rearranged and terms introduced from Equations 3–32 and 3–33 for the storativity $b(\alpha\rho_w g + n\beta\rho_w g)]$, and from Equation 3.30 for the transmissivity, ($T = Kb$), where b aquifer thickness:

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2} = \frac{S}{T}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \qquad (4\text{-}42)$$

In steady-state flow, there is no change in head with time, for example, in cases there is no change in the position or slope of the water table. Under such conditions, is not an independent variable, and steady flow is described by the three-dimensiona tial differential equation known as the **Laplace equation:**

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} = 0 \qquad (4\text{-}43)$$

The preceding equations are based on the assumption that all flow comes water stored in the aquifer. Significant flow may be generated from leakage int aquifer through overlying or underlying confining layers. We will consider the lea to appear in the control volume as horizontal flow. This assumption is justified o grounds that the conductivity of the aquifer is usually orders of magnitude greater that of the confining layer. The law of refraction indicates that, for these condi flow in the confining layer will be nearly vertical if flow in the aquifer is horizonta

The leakage rate, or rate of accumulation, is designated as e. The general equati flow (in two dimensions, since horizontal flow was assumed) is given by

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2} + \frac{e}{T} = \frac{S}{T}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \qquad (4\text{-}44)$$

The leakage rate can be determined from Darcy's law. If the head at the top c aquitard is h_0 and the head in the aquifer just below the aquitard is h, the aquitard thickness b' and a conductivity (vertical) of K':

$$e = K'\frac{(h_0 - h)}{b'} \qquad (4\text{-}45)$$

4.7.2 Unconfined Aquifers

Water is derived from storage in water-table aquifers by vertical drainage of water in the pores. This drainage results in a decline in the position of the water table near a pumping well as time progresses. In the case of a confined aquifer, although the potentiometric surface declines, the saturated thickness of the aquifer remains constant. In the case of an unconfined aquifer, the saturated thickness can change with time. Under such conditions, the ability of the aquifer to transmit water—the transmissivity—changes, as it is the product of the conductivity, K, and the saturated thickness, h (assuming that h is measured from the horizontal base of the aquifer).

The general flow equation for two-dimensional unconfined flow is known as the **Boussinesq equation** (Boussinesq 1904):

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(h\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(h\frac{\partial ht}{\partial y}\right) = \frac{S_y}{K}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{4.46}$$

where S_y is specific yield. This equation is a type of differential equation that cannot be solved using calculus, except in some very specific cases. In mathematical terms, it is nonlinear.

If the drawdown in the aquifer is very small compared with the saturated thickness, the variable thickness, h, can be replaced with an average thickness, b, that is assumed to be constant over the aquifer. The Boussinesq equation can thus be linearized by this approximation to the form

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2} = \frac{S_y}{Kb}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{4.47}$$

which has the same form as Equation 4.42.

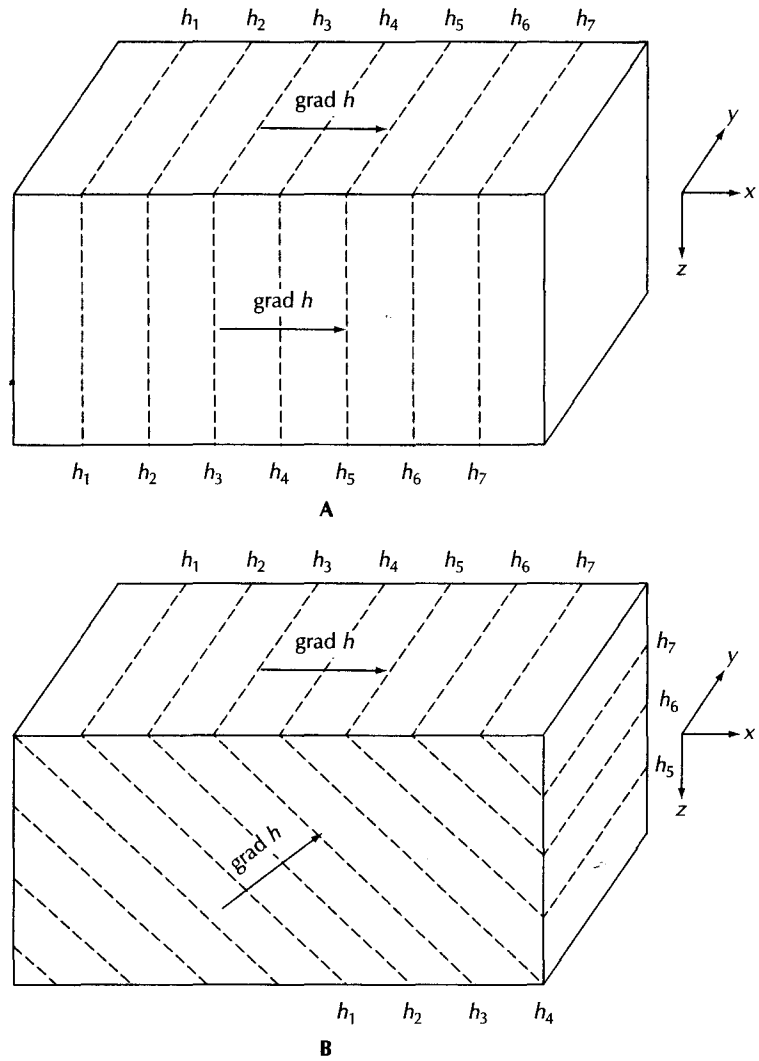
4.8 Solution of Flow Equations

The flow of water in an aquifer can be mathematically described by Equations 4.41, 4.42, 4.43, 4.44, or 4.47. These are all partial differential equations in which the head, h, is described in terms of the variables x, y, z, and t. They are solved by means of a mathematical model consisting of the applicable governing flow equation, equations describing the hydraulic head at each of the boundaries of the aquifer, and equations describing the initial conditions of head in the aquifer.

If the aquifer is homogeneous and isotropic, and the boundary conditions can be described with algebraic equations, then the mathematical model can be solved by use of an analytical solution based on integral calculus. However, if the aquifer does not correspond to those conditions (e.g., a layered aquifer), then a numerical solution to the mathematical model is needed. Numerical solutions are based on the concept that the partial differential equation can be replaced by a similar equation that can be solved using arithmetic. Likewise, the equations governing initial and boundary conditions are replaced by numerical statements of these conditions. Numerical solutions are typically solved on digital computers. The use of digital computer models is treated in Chapter 13.

4.9 Gradient of Hydraulic Head

The physical quantity that we measure in the field, which represents hydraulic head, is the depth to water in a piezometer. We need to know the elevation of the measuring point, such as the top of the piezometer casing. The depth to water is then subtracted from the measuring point elevation to get the total head of water in the well.



▲ FIGURE 4.8
A. Grad h in a homogeneous, isotropic aquifer with a uniform horizontal flow field. **B.** Grad h in a homogeneous, isotopic aquifer with a uniform flow field with a downward component.

The head in an area is measured in a number of piezometers which all end in same aquifer. To determine the three-dimensional distribution of head, piezometers ei ing at different depths in the aquifer are needed. The head in the shallowest piezomet can be used to define the water table, which is the top of the zone of saturation. Th head values are then contoured with lines of equal values of head (equipotential lines) create a water-table map. Such a map is similar to a topographic map of the land-surf elevation.

Since aquifers are three dimensional, the head distribution is represented by equi tential surfaces. These are based on the head values in the deeper piezometers combir with the water-table map.

Figure 4.8 shows the three-dimensional distribution of head in an aquifer. For si plicity, the head distribution is uniform; that is, the equipotential surfaces are all spac at equal distance. In Figure 4.8A, the flow is horizontal so that the equipotential surfa are vertical. In Figure 4.8B there is a downward component of flow so that the equipot

tial surfaces are sloped. The equipotential lines on the top of the diagram represent the water table.

Vectors representing the gradient of h (grad h) are also shown in Figure 4.8. A vector is a directed line segment, so that grad h has both a magnitude and a direction. It is the slope of the potential field at a specific point in the field. Grad h can be expressed as

$$\text{grad } h = \frac{dh}{ds} \tag{4.48}$$

where s is the distance measured parallel to grad h. Grad h has a direction perpendicular to the equipotential surfaces that is by definition from the lower values of head toward the higher values of head.

In Figure 4.8A, the equipotential surfaces are perpendicular, indicating that flow will be horizontal (i.e., two dimensional). The equipotential lines at the top of the aquifer represent the intersection of the equipotential surfaces with the water table. Grad h based on the water table is the same as grad h based on the equipotential surfaces. (Because of the drawing perspective, grad h on the top of the diagram does not appear to be crossing the equipotential lines at a right angle, although it is.) Figure 4.8B shows sloping equipotential surfaces, indicating that the ground-water flow is three dimensional. Grad h based on the equipotential lines of the water table is not the same as the three-dimensional grad h based on the equipotential surfaces shown on the side of the diagram. It does not indicate the three-dimensional nature of the potential field.

The direction of ground-water flow is parallel to grad h, but in the opposite direction. Ground water moves from regions of higher head to lower head, while the direction of grad h is from lower head to higher head.

If the potential is the same everywhere, it will be manifest in a condition such as a flat water table. In this case, grad h equals zero, since there is no slope to h. There will be no ground-water flow, since grad h must have a nonzero value before ground water will move.

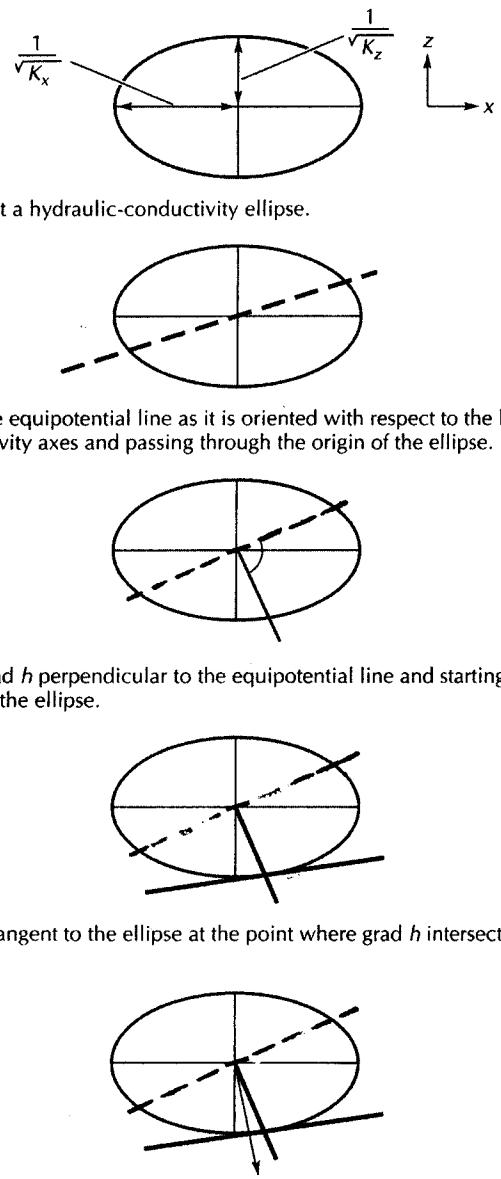
4.10 Relationship of Ground-Water-Flow Direction to Grad h

The direction in which ground water flows is a function of the potential field and the degree of anisotropy of the hydraulic conductivity and the orientation of the axes of permeability with respect to grad h.

For isotropic aquifers, the value of K is the same in all directions. In such aquifers, the direction of fluid flow will be parallel to grad h, which means that it will also be perpendicular to the equipotential lines.

Liakopoulos (1965) presented a method for determining the direction of ground-water flow in an anisotropic aquifer. The method assumes that there is one plane in the ground where the hydraulic conductivity does not vary with direction and that the axes of anisotropy are mutually perpendicular as well as being perpendicular to the isotropic plane. For example, in many sedimentary aquifers the hydraulic conductivity in a horizontal plane is the same in all directions, but the horizontal hydraulic conductivity is much greater than the vertical hydraulic conductivity.

The first step is to prepare a hydraulic-conductivity tensor ellipse. The semiaxes of the ellipse are equal to the inverse square roots of the principal hydraulic-conductivity values. Figure 4.9 shows the construction of a hydraulic-conductivity tensor ellipse. Once the ellipse is constructed, the steps necessary to find the direction of flow vis-à-vis grad h are also illustrated in Figure 4.9. In general, for anisotropic media the direction of ground-water flow will not be parallel to grad h and thus will not cross the

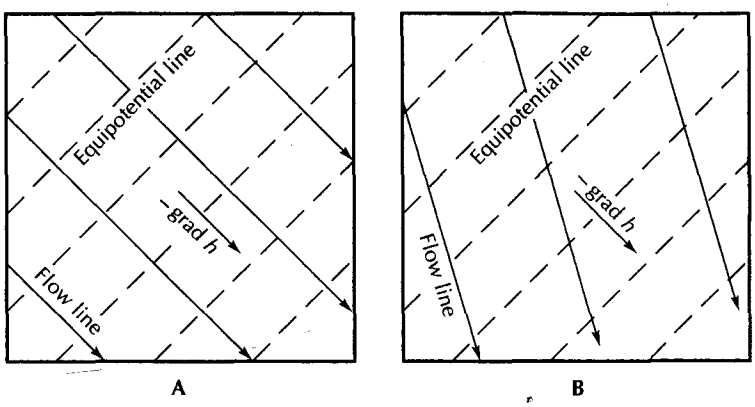


▶ FIGURE 4.9
Steps in the determination of the direction of ground-water flow in an anisotropic medium using the hydraulic conductivity ellipse. *Source: C. W. Fetter,* Ground Water Monitoring Review, *1, 1 (1981): 28–31. Copyright © 1981 Ground Water Publishing Co.*

equipotential lines at a right angle. However, if one of the principal axes of hydraulic conductivity is parallel to grad *h*, then the ground-water flow direction will also be parallel to grad *h*.

4.11 Flow Lines and Flow Nets

A *flow line* is an imaginary line that traces the path that a particle of ground water would follow as it flows through an aquifer. Flow lines are helpful for visualizing the movement of ground water. In an isotropic aquifer, flow lines will cross equipotential lines at right angles. If there is anisotropy in the plane of flow, then the flow lines will cross the equipotential lines at an angle dictated by the degree of anisotropy and the



▲ FIGURE 4.10
Relationship of flow lines to equipotential field and grad h. **A.** Isotropic aquifer. **B.** Anisotropic aquifer.

orientation of grad h to the hydraulic conductivity tensor ellipsoid. Figure 4.10A shows equipotential lines and flow lines in an isotropic medium and Figure 4.10B shows equipotential lines and flow lines in an anisotropic medium. It may be seen that in the isotropic medium the flow lines are parallel to grad h, and in the anisotropic medium they are not.

The two-dimensional Laplace equation (4.43) for steady-flow conditions may be solved by graphical construction of a **flow net,** which is a network of equipotential lines and associated flow lines (Forchheimer 1914; Casagrande 1940). A flow net is especially useful in isotropic media; however, with certain transformations it can be used with anisotropic aquifers. Cedergren (1989) presents a complete discussion of the construction of flow nets, including those in anisotropic media.

The method of flow-net construction presented here is based on the following assumptions.

1. The aquifer is homogeneous.
2. The aquifer is fully saturated.
3. The aquifer is isotropic.
4. There is no change in the potential field with time.
5. The soil and water are incompressible.
6. Flow is laminar, and Darcy's law is valid.
7. All boundary conditions are known.

There are three types of boundary conditions possible. Ground water cannot pass a *no-flow boundary.* Adjacent flow lines will be parallel to a no-flow boundary, and equipotential lines will intersect it at right angles. Since the head is the same everywhere on a *constant-head boundary,* such a boundary represents an equipotential line. Flow lines will intersect a constant-head boundary at right angles and the adjacent equipotential line will be parallel. For unconfined aquifers, there is also a *water-table boundary.* The water table is neither a flow line nor an equipotential line; rather it is a line where head is known. If there is recharge or discharge across the water table, flow lines will be at an oblique angle to the water table. If there is no recharge across the water table, flow lines can be parallel to it.

A flow net is a family of equipotential lines with sufficient orthogonal flow lines drawn so that a pattern of "square" figures results. Except in cases of simple geometry,

the figures will not truly be squares. The following steps are necessary in the constructio of a flow net.

1. Identify the boundary conditions.
2. Sketch the boundaries to scale with the two axes of the drawing having the same scale.
3. Identify the position of known equipotential and flow-line conditions.
4. Draw a trial set of flow lines. The outer flow lines will be parallel to no-flow boundaries. Flow nets do not need a finite boundary on all sides; it is possible to have a region of flow that extends beyond the outer edge of the flow net. A flow ne can have a partial streamtube along one edge. The flow lines do not need to be spaced an equal distance apart.
5. Draw a trial set of equipotential lines. Start at one end of the flow field and work toward the other. The equipotential lines should be perpendicular to flow lines. They will be parallel to constant-head boundaries and at right angles to no-flow boundaries. If there is a water-table boundary, the position of the equipotential line at the water table is based on the elevation of the water table. The equipotential lines should be spaced so that they form four-sided shapes that have approximatel equal central dimensions; that is, lines passing through the center of each shape should be of approximately the same length.
6. Erase and redraw the trial flow lines and equipotential lines until the desired flow net of orthogonal equipotential lines and flow lines is obtained.

Figure 4.11 illustrates the construction of a simple flow net, in which the pattern wi form exact squares because the flow field is rectangular and flow is one-dimensional. Mo beginners at the art of flow-net construction will find an ample supply of paper, pencil and erasers essential. As a check on the quality of the flow net, the diagonals of the shape can be drawn. These should form smooth curves that intersect each other at right angle This should, of course, not be done on a copy of the final product.

In addition to presenting a graphic display of the ground-water flow directions an potential distribution, the completed flow net can be used to determine the quantity water flowing by the following formula:

$$q' = \frac{Kph}{f} \qquad (4.4$$

where

q' is the total volume discharge per unit width of aquifer (L^3/T; ft^3/d or m^3/d)

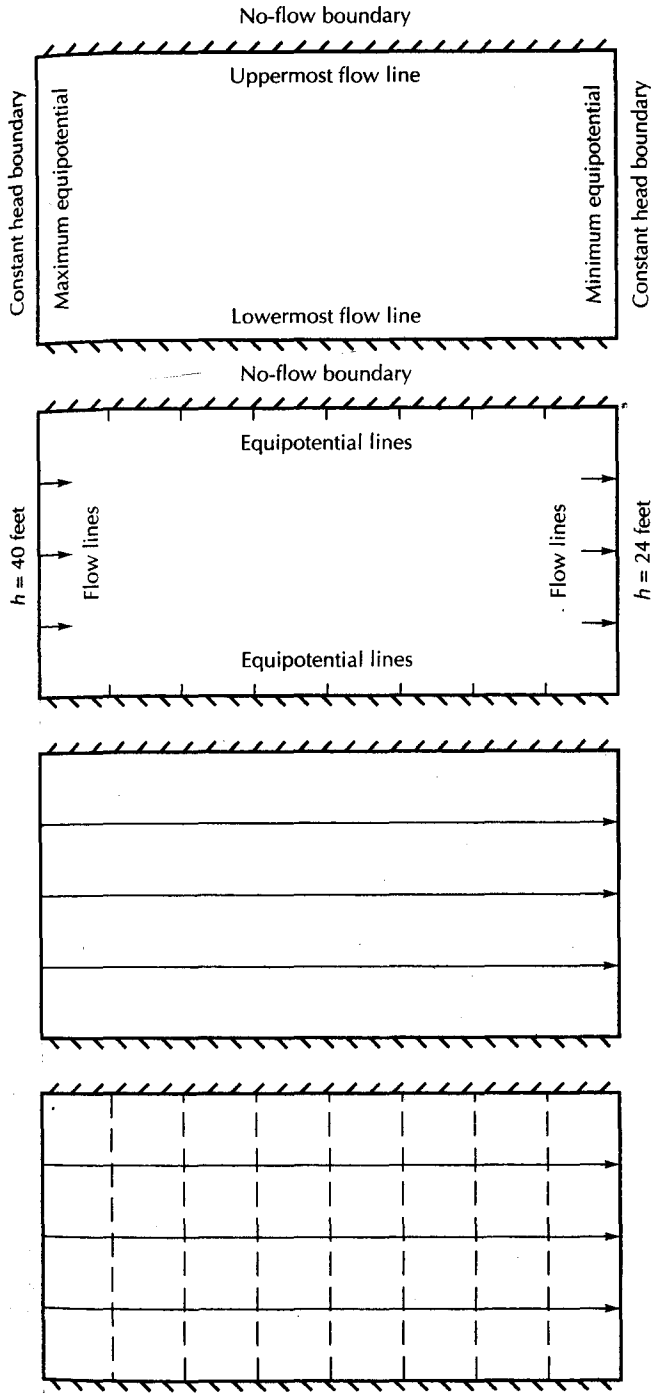
K is the hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

p is the number of flowtubes bounded by adjacent pairs of flow lines

h is the total head loss over the length of the flow lines (L; ft or m)

f is the number of squares bounded by any two adjacent flow lines and covering the entire length of flow.

Equation 4.49 can be used for simple flow systems with one recharge boundary an one discharge boundary. For complex systems, it is possible to find the discharge for eac streamtube where $q' = (Kh)/f$. The total flow can be found by summing the flow in ind vidual streamtubes.



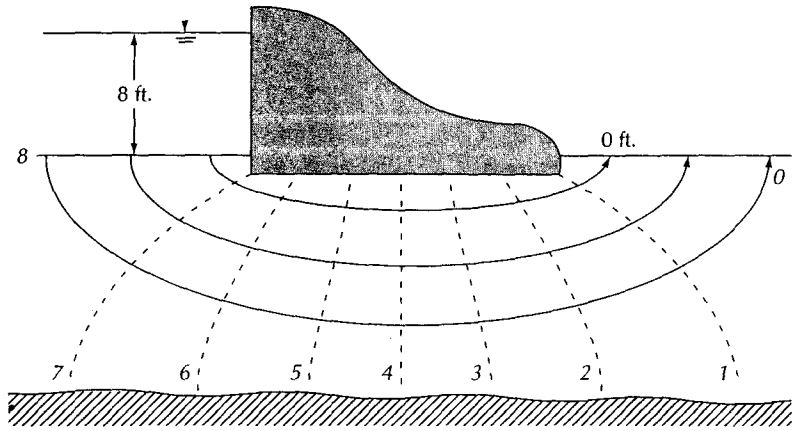
Step 1–Sketch the flow system and identify prefixed flow lines and equipotential lines.

Step 2–Identify prefixed end positions of flow lines and equipotential lines.

Step 3–Draw trial set of flow lines.

Step 4–Draw trial set of equipotential lines orthogonal to flow lines.

▲ FIGURE 4.11
Steps in making a flow net.



▲ FIGURE 4.12 Flow net in an aquifer beneath an impervious dam.

PROBLEM

If hydraulic conductivity is 23 ft/day, what is the discharge per unit width of the flow system Figure 4.11?

The number of streamtubes is 4; therefore, $p = 4$. The number of equipotential drops is 8; the fore, $f = 8$. The total head loss is 40 ft − 24 ft = 16 ft. Substituting these values into Equation 4.49

$$q' = \frac{Kph}{f}$$

$$= \frac{23 \text{ ft/d} \times 4 \times 16 \text{ ft}}{8} \times 1 \text{ ft unit width}$$

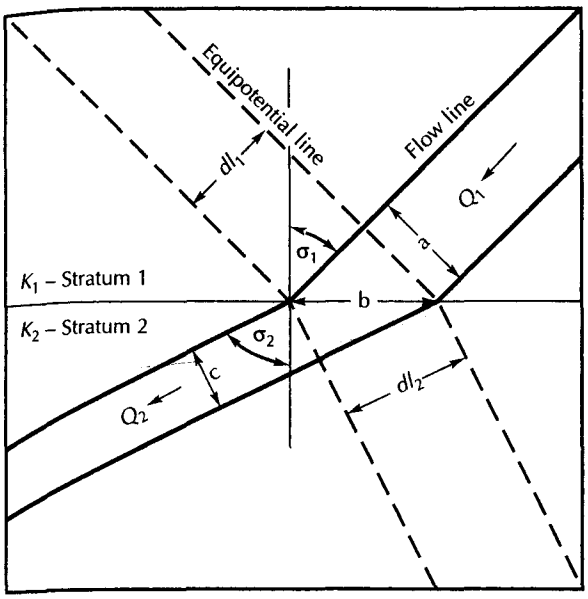
$$= 180 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}$$

The preceding problem illustrates one pitfall of two-dimensional problem solutions. must be recognized that two-dimensional problems imply a third dimension, with an a of symmetry perpendicular to the two-dimensional representation. The width of total flo perpendicular to this axis must be included to determine the total volume of flow. An a ternative method is to state flow in terms of discharge per unit width. For an aquifer, flo might be stated in cubic meters per day per kilometer width of the aquifer (measured c thogonal to the direction of flow).

Figure 4.12 shows a flow net for flow beneath a dam. The flow lines are drawn su that four flowtubes are constructed. It is possible to have a partial flowtube, which ma help in the drafting. This drawing shows that the "squares" are not really squares. The tend to get larger toward the ends of the flow lines and are also more distorted there.

4.12 Refraction of Flow Lines

When water passes from one stratum to another stratum with a different hydraulic co ductivity, the direction of the flow path will change (Hubbert 1940). Figure 4.13 shows flowtube bounded by two flow lines. The flowtube passes from stratum 1, with a hy draulic conductivity of K_1, to stratum 2, with a hydraulic conductivity of K_2. The volum of water flowing in the streamtube in stratum 1 is Q_1, and in stratum 2 it is Q_2. Th width of the flowtube in stratum 1 is a, and the width of the flowtube in stratum 2 is



◀ FIGURE 4.13
Streamtube crossing a hydraulic conductivity boundary.

The length between adjacent equipotential lines is dl_1 in stratum 1 and dl_2 in stratum 2. There is a head loss between adjacent equipotential lines. In stratum 1, it is dh_1; in stratum 2, it is dh_2.

Notice in Figure 4.13 that at the boundary between the two strata are two triangles that have a common leg, b. The triangle in stratum 1 is bounded by a, b, and dl_1. The triangle in stratum 2 is bounded by c, b, and dl_2.

The flow through each streamtube is found from Darcy's law:

$$Q_1 = K_1 a \frac{dh_1}{dl_1} \quad \text{and} \quad Q_2 = K_2 c \frac{dh_2}{dl_2} \tag{4.50}$$

From the principle of continuity, Q_1 must be equal to Q_2; therefore,

$$K_1 a \frac{dh_1}{dl_1} = K_2 c \frac{dh_2}{dl_2} \tag{4.51}$$

Since the head loss between the two equipotential lines is the same in both strata, $dh_1 = dh_2$ and we can divide both sides of Equation 4.51 by dh_1:

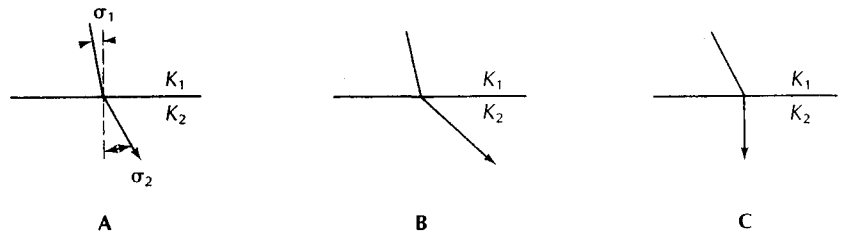
$$K_1 \frac{a}{dl_1} = K_2 \frac{c}{dl_2} \tag{4.52}$$

From the geometry of the triangles, $a = b \cos \sigma_1$ and $c = b \cos \sigma_2$. Furthermore, $b/dl_1 = 1/\sin \sigma_1$ and $b/dl_2 = 1/\sin \sigma_2$. Substituting these into Equation 4.52, we obtain

$$K_1 \frac{\cos \sigma_1}{\sin \sigma_1} = K_2 \frac{\cos \sigma_2}{\sin \sigma_2} \tag{4.53}$$

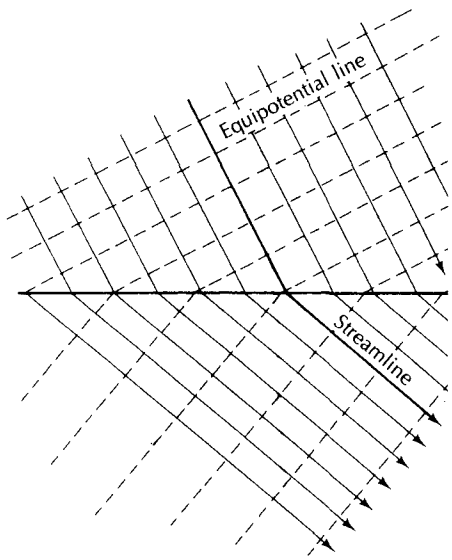
Since $\tan \sigma = (\sin \sigma)/(\cos \sigma)$, Equation 4.53 can be rewritten as the tangent law of refraction.

$$\boxed{\frac{K_1}{K_2} = \frac{\tan \sigma_1}{\tan \sigma_2}} \tag{4.54}$$



▲ FIGURE 4.14
A. Refraction of a flowline crossing a conductivity boundary. **B.** Refracted flowline going from a reg of low to high conductivity. **C.** Refracted flowline going from a region of high to low conductivity.

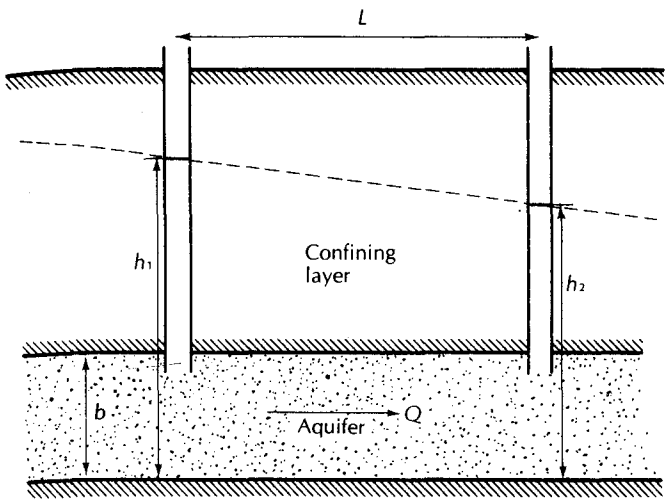
▶ FIGURE 4.15
A flow net with flow crossing a conductivity boundary showing refraction of flowlines and equipotential lines. The hydraulic conductivity above the boundary is less than that below the boundary.



As a consequence, the direction of refraction for flow going from a region of low ductivity to one of high conductivity will be different from that for flow going f high to low conductivity (Figure 4.14). Likewise, if the streamlines are refracted, they are perpendicular to the equipotential lines, then the equipotential lines r also be refracted. Figure 4.15 shows a portion of a flow net crossing a conducti boundary.

4.13 Steady Flow in a Confined Aquifer

If there is the steady movement of ground water in a confined aquifer, there will be a dient or slope to the potentiometric surface of the aquifer. Likewise, we know tha water will be moving in the opposite direction of grad h. For flow of this type, Darcy's may be used directly. In Figure 4.16, a portion of a confined aquifer of uniform thickne shown. The potentiometric surface has a linear gradient; that is, its two-directional pr tion is a straight line. There are two observation wells where the hydraulic head ca measured.



◀ FIGURE 4.16
Steady flow through a confined aquifer of uniform thickness.

The quantity of flow per unit width, q', may be determined from Darcy's law:

$$q' = Kb\frac{dh}{dl} \tag{4.55}$$

where

q' is the flow per unit width (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

K is the hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

b is the aquifer thickness (L; ft or m)

$\frac{dh}{dl}$ is the slope of potentiometric surface (dimensionless)

One may wish to know the head, h (L; ft or m), at some intermediate distance, x (L; ft or m), between h_1 and h_2. This may be found from the equation

$$h = h_1 - \frac{q'}{Kb}x \tag{4.56}$$

where x is the distance from h_1.

PROBLEM

A confined aquifer is 33 m thick and 7 km wide. Two observation wells are located 1.2 km apart in the direction of flow. The head in well 1 is 97.5 m and in well 2 it is 89.0 m. The hydraulic conductivity is 1.2 m/d. What is the total daily flow of water through the aquifer?

$$Q = -Kb\frac{dh}{dl} \times \text{width}$$

$$= 1.2\ \text{m/day} \times 33\ \text{m} \times \frac{97.5\ \text{m} - 89.0\ \text{m}}{1200\ \text{m}} \times 7000\ \text{m}$$

$$= 2000\ \text{m}^3/\text{day} \qquad \text{(to two significant digits)}$$

What is the elevation of the potentiometric surface at a point located 0.3 km from well and 0.9 km from well h_2? Discharge per unit width is (2000 m^3/d)/(7000 m) = 0.29 m^2/da

$$h = h_1 - \frac{q'}{Kb}x$$

$$= 97.5\text{ m} - \frac{0.29\text{ m}^2/\text{day}}{1.2\text{ m/d} \times 33\text{ m}} \times 300\text{ m}$$

$$= 97.5\text{ m} - 2.2\text{ m}$$

$$= 95.3\text{ m}$$

4.14 Steady Flow in an Unconfined Aquifer*

In an unconfined aquifer, the fact that the water table is also the upper boundary of the region of flow complicates flow determinations. Figure 4.17 illustrates the problem. On the left side of the figure, the saturated flow region is h_1 feet thick. On the right side, it is h_2 thick, which is $h_1 - h_2$ feet thinner than the left side. If there is no recharge or evaporation the flow traverses the region, the quantity of water flowing through the left side is equal to that flowing through the right side. From Darcy's law, it is obvious that since the cross sectional area is smaller on the right side, the hydraulic gradient must be greater. Thus the gradient of the water table in unconfined flow is not constant; it increases in the direction of flow.

This problem was solved by Dupuit (1863), and his assumptions are known as **Dupuit assumptions.** The assumptions are that (1) the hydraulic gradient is equal to the slope of the water table and (2) for small water-table gradients, the streamlines are horizontal and the equipotential lines are vertical. Solutions based on these assumptions had proved to be useful in many practical problems. However, the Dupuit assumptions do allow for a seepage face above the outflow side.

From Darcy's law,

$$q' = -Kh\frac{dh}{dx} \qquad (4.57)$$

where h is the saturated thickness of the aquifer. At $x = 0$, $h = h_1$; at $x = L$, $h = h_2$.

Equation 4.57 may be set up for integration with the boundary conditions:

$$\int_0^L q'dx = -K\int_{h_1}^{h_2} hdh$$

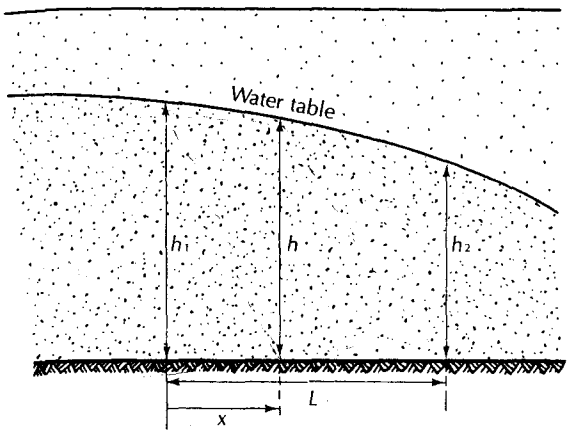
Integration of the preceding yields

$$q'x\Big|_0^L = -K\frac{h^2}{2}\Big|_{h_1}^{h_2}$$

Substitution of the boundary conditions for x and h yields

$$q'L = -K\left(\frac{h_2^2}{2} - \frac{h_1^2}{2}\right) \qquad (4.58)$$

*The equations in this section are derived following methods used by Polubarinova-Kochina (1962) and Harr (1962).



◀ FIGURE 4.17
Steady flow through an unconfined aquifer resting on a horizontal impervious surface.

Rearrangement of Equation 4.58 yields the **Dupuit equation:**

$$\boxed{q' = \frac{1}{2}K\left(\frac{h_1^2 - h_2^2}{L}\right)} \tag{4.59}$$

where

q' is the flow per unit width (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

K is the hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

h_1 is the head at the origin (L; ft or m)

h_2 is the head at L (L; ft or m)

L is the flow length (L; ft or m)

If we consider a small prism of the unconfined aquifer, it will have the shape of Figure 4.18. On one side it is h units high and slopes in the x-direction. Given the Dupuit assumptions, there is no flow in the z-direction. The flow in the x-direction, per unit width, is q'_x. From Darcy's law, the total flow in the x-direction through the left face of the prism is

$$q'_x dy = -K\left(h\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)_x dy \tag{4.60}$$

where dy is the width of the face of the prism. The discharge through the right face, q'_{x+dx} is

$$q'_{x+dx} dy = -K\left(h\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)_{x+dx} dy \tag{4.61}$$

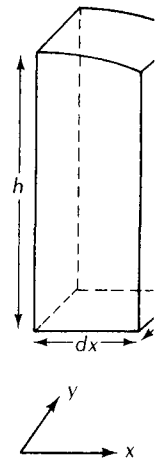
Note that $\left(h\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)$ has different values at each face. The change in flow rate in the x-direction between the two faces is given by

$$(q'_{x+dx} - q'_x)dy = -K\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(h\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)dx\,dy \tag{4.62}$$

Through a similar process, it can be shown that the change in the flow rate in the y-direction is

$$(q'_{y+dy} - q'_y)dx = -K\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(h\frac{\partial h}{\partial y}\right)dy\,dx \tag{4.63}$$

▲ FIGURE 4.18
Control volume for flow through a prism of an unconfined aquifer with the bottom resting on a horizontal impervious surface and the top coinciding with the water table.



For steady flow, any change in flow through the prism must be equal to a gain or l of water across the water table. This could be infiltration or evapotranspiration. The addition or loss is at a rate of w, and the volume change within the initial volume is $w\,dx$ where $dx\,dy$ is the area of the surface. If w represents evapotranspiration, it will have a n ative value. As the change in flow is equal to the new addition,

$$-K\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(h\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}\right)dx\,dy - K\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(h\frac{\partial h}{\partial y}\right)dy\,dx = w\,dx\,dy \qquad (4.$$

We can simplify Equation 4.64 by dropping out $dx\,dy$ and combining the differentials:

$$-K\left(\frac{\partial^2 h^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h^2}{\partial y^2}\right) = 2w \qquad (4.$$

If $w = 0$, then Equation 4.65 reduces to a form of the Laplace equation:

$$\frac{\partial^2 h^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h^2}{\partial y^2} = 0 \qquad (4.$$

If flow is in only one direction and we align the x-axis parallel to the flow, then ther no flow in the y-direction, and Equation 4.65 becomes

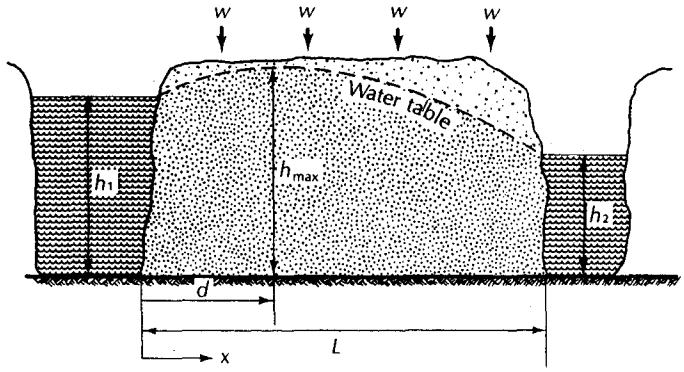
$$\frac{d^2(h^2)}{dx^2} = -\frac{2w}{K} \qquad (4.$$

Integration of this equation yields the expression

$$h^2 = -\frac{wx^2}{K} + c_1 x + c_2 \qquad (4.$$

where c_1 and c_2 are constants of integration.

The following boundary conditions can be applied: at $x = 0$, $h = h_1$; at $x = L$, $h =$ (Figure 4.19). By substituting these into Equation 4.68, the constants of integration can evaluated with the following result:



▲ FIGURE 4.19
Unconfined flow, which is subject to infiltration or evaporation.

$$h^2 = h_1^2 - \frac{(h_1^2 - h_2^2)x}{L} + \frac{w}{K}(L - x)x \tag{4.69}$$

or

$$\boxed{h = \sqrt{h_1^2 - \frac{(h_1^2 - h_2^2)x}{L} + \frac{w}{K}(L - x)x}} \tag{4.70}$$

where

h is the head at x (L; ft or m)

x is the distance from the origin (L; ft or m)

h_1 is the head at the origin (L; ft or m)

h_2 is the head at L (L; ft or m)

L is the distance from the origin at the point h_2 is measured (L; ft or m)

K is the hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

w is the recharge rate (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

This equation can be used to find the elevation of the water table anywhere between two points located L distance apart if the saturated thickness of the aquifer is known at the two end points.

For the case in which there is no infiltration or evaporation, $w = 0$ and Equation 4.70 reduces to

$$\boxed{h = \sqrt{h_1^2 - \frac{(h_1^2 - h_2^2)x}{L}}} \tag{4.71}$$

By differentiating Equation 4.69, and because $q'_x = -Kh(dh/dx)$, it may be shown that the discharge per unit width, q'_x, at any section x distance from the origin is given by

$$\boxed{q'_x = \frac{K(h_1^2 - h_2^2)}{2L} - w\left(\frac{L}{2} - x\right)} \tag{4.72}$$

where

q'_x is the flow per unit width at x (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

x is the distance from the origin (L; ft or m)

K is the hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

h_1 is the head at the origin (L; ft or m)

h_2 is the head at L (L; ft or m)

L is the distance from the origin at the point where h_2 is measured (L; ft or m)

w is the recharge rate (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

If the water table is subject to infiltration, there may be a water divide with a crest the water table. In this case, q'_x will be zero at the water divide. If d is the distance from t origin to a water divide, then substituting $q'_x = 0$ and $x = d$ into Equation 4.72 yields

$$d = \frac{L}{2} - \frac{K}{w}\frac{(h_1^2 - h_2^2)}{2L} \tag{4.7}$$

where

d is the distance from origin to water divide (L; ft or m)

h_1 is the head at the origin (L; ft or m)

h_2 is the head at L (L; ft or m)

L is the distance from the origin where h_2 is measured (L; ft or m)

K is the hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

w is the recharge rate (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

Once the distance from the origin to the water divide has been found, then the elevati of the water table at the divide may be determined by substituting d for x in Equation 4.7(

$$h_{max} = \sqrt{h_1^2 - \frac{(h_1^2 - h_2^2)d}{L} + \frac{w}{K}(L - d)d} \tag{4.7}$$

Where h_{max} is the maximum elevation, which is the elevation at the water table divide.

In arid and semiarid regions the amount of ground-water recharge relative to the h draulic conductivity may be too small for a ground-water divide to form. If the ratio K/w Equation 4.73 is too great, then the value of d will be negative. This indicates that a groun water divide will not form and the water table will slope continuously from h_1 to h_2.

PROBLEM

An unconfined aquifer has a hydraulic conductivity of 0.0020 cm/s and an effective porosity 0.27. The aquifer is in a bed of sand with a uniform thickness of 31 m, as measured from the la surface. At well 1, the water table is 21 m below the land surface. At well 2, located some 175 away, the water table is 23.5 m from the surface. What are (A) the discharge per unit wid (B) the average linear velocity at well 1, and (C) the water-table elevation midway between t two wells?

Part A: From Equation 4.59,

$$q' = K\frac{(h_1^2 - h_2^2)}{2L}$$

$$h_1 = 31\text{ m} - 21\text{ m} = 10\text{ m}$$

$$h_2 = 31\text{ m} - 23.5\text{ m} = 7.5\text{ m}$$

$$L = 175\text{ m}$$

$$q' = 1.7\text{ m/d} \times \frac{10^2\text{ m}^2 - 7.5^2\text{ m}^2}{2 \times 175\text{ m}}$$

$$= 0.21\text{ m}^2\text{/d per unit width}$$

Part B: From Equation 4.24,

$$v_x = \frac{Q}{n_e A}$$

As $Q = q' \times$ unit width and $A = h_1 \times$ unit width,

$$v_x = \frac{q'}{n_e h_1}$$

$$= \frac{0.21\text{ m}^2\text{/d}}{0.27 \times 10\text{ m}} = 0.078\text{ m/day}$$

Part C: From Equation 4.71,

$$h = \sqrt{h_1^2 - (h_1^2 - h_2^2)\frac{x}{L}}$$

$$= \sqrt{(10\text{ m})^2 - [(10\text{ m})^2 - (7.5\text{ m})^2]\left(\frac{87.5\text{ m}}{175\text{ m}}\right)}$$

$$= 8.8\text{ m}$$

PROBLEM

A canal was constructed running parallel to a river 1500 ft away. Both fully penetrate a sand aquifer with a hydraulic conductivity of 1.2 ft/d. The area is subject to rainfall of 1.8 ft/y and evaporation of 1.3 ft/y. The elevation of the water above the base of the aquifer in the river is 31 ft and in the canal it is 27 ft. Determine (A) the water divide, (B) the maximum water-table elevation, (C) the daily discharge per 1000 ft into the river, and (D) the daily discharge per 1000 ft into the canal.

Part A: From Equation 4.73,

$$d = \frac{L}{2} - \frac{K}{w}\frac{(h_1^2 - h_2^2)}{2L}$$

$$h_1 = 31\text{ ft}$$

$$h_2 = 27\text{ ft}$$

$$L = 1500\text{ ft}$$

$K = 1.2$ ft/d

$w = 1.8$ ft/y infiltration $- 1.3$ ft/y evaporation

$= 0.50$ ft/y accretion

$= 0.0014$ ft/day

$$d = \frac{1500 \text{ ft}}{2} - \frac{1.2 \text{ ft/d}}{0.0014 \text{ ft/d}} \left(\frac{(31 \text{ ft})^2 - (27 \text{ ft})^2}{2 \times 1500 \text{ ft}} \right)$$

$= 680$ ft from the river

Part B: From Equation 4.74,

$$h_{\max} = \sqrt{h_1^2 - \frac{(h_1^2 - h_2^2)d}{L} + \frac{w}{K}(L - d)d}$$

$$= \sqrt{(31 \text{ ft})^2 - \frac{[(31 \text{ ft})^2 - (27 \text{ ft})^2]\,680 \text{ ft}}{1500 \text{ ft}} + \frac{0.0014 \text{ ft/d}}{1.2 \text{ ft/d}} (1500 \text{ ft} - 680 \text{ ft})\,680 \text{ ft}}$$

$= 39$ ft

Part C: From Equation 4.72, for $x = 0$:

$$q_x = \left[\frac{K(h_1^2 - h_2^2)}{2L} - w\left(\frac{L}{2} - x \right) \right] \times \text{width}$$

$$= \left[\frac{(1.2 \text{ ft/day})[(31 \text{ ft})^2 - (27 \text{ ft})^2]}{2 \times 1500 \text{ ft}} - (0.0014 \text{ ft/d}) \left(\frac{1500 \text{ ft}}{2} - 0 \right) \right] \times 1000 \text{ ft}$$

$= -960 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}$

The negative sign indicates that flow is in the opposite direction of x, or into the river.

Part D: From Equation 4.72,

$x = L$

$$q_x = \left[\frac{K(h_1^2 - h_2^2)}{2L} - w\left(\frac{L}{2} - x \right) \right] \times \text{width}$$

$$= \left[\frac{(1.2 \text{ ft/day})[(31 \text{ ft})^2 - (27 \text{ ft})^2]}{2 \times 1500 \text{ ft}} - (0.0014 \text{ ft/d}) \left(\frac{1500 \text{ ft}}{2} - 1500 \text{ ft} \right) \right] \times 1000 \text{ ft}$$

$= 1100 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}$

Flow is in the direction of x, or into the canal.

Notation

A	Area
a	Width of a flowtube in the derivation of the tangent law
b	Aquifer thickness
b′	Aquitard thickness
c	Width of a flowtube in the derivation of the tangent law
d	Pore diameter
dh/dl	Hydraulic gradient
dh/ds	Grad *h*
dx	Length of one side of a control volume
dy	Length of one side of a control volume
dz	Length of one side of a control volume
e	Rate of vertical movement across an aquitard

E_g	Gravitational potential energy
E_k	Kinetic energy
E_{tm}	Total energy per unit mass
E_{tv}	Total energy per unit volume
f	Number of squares along a flowtube in a flow net
F	Force
g	Acceleration of gravity
grad *h*	Vector representing the gradient of head
h	Head
h_f	Fresh-water pressure head
h_{max}	Head at a ground water divide
h_p	Point-water pressure head (height of point fluid in piezometer)
K	Hydraulic conductivity
K′	Vertical hydraulic conductivity of an aquitard
L	Distance between h_1 and h_2 in the Dupuit equations
m	Mass
M	Mass of water in the derivation of the ground-water-flow equation
n	Porosity
n_e	Effective porosity
p	Number of flowtubes in a flow net
P	Pressure
P_0	Atmospheric pressure
Q	Volumetric discharge
q′	Discharge per unit width
q'_x	Discharge per unit width at location x
q_x	Discharge in the x-direction
q_y	Discharge in the y-direction
q_z	Discharge in the z-direction
R	Reynolds number
S	Storage coefficient
S_y	Specific yield
T	Transmissivity
v	Velocity
v_x	Average linear velocity
V_s	Volume of solids
w	Recharge rate to an unconfined aquifer
W	Work
x	Distance
z	Elevation; elevation head
α	Compressibility of aquifer
β	Compressibility of water
Φ	Force potential
ρ	Fluid density
ρ_f	Density of fresh water
ρ_p	Density of point water
ρ_w	Density of water
μ	Viscosity
σ	Angle of refraction

Analysis

a. If two aquifers have the same hydraulic conductivity and the same hydraulic gradient, but one has an effective porosity that is twice that of the other, will their average linear ground-water velocities be the same or different? If they are different, which aquifer will have the higher average linear velocity, the one with the greater or lesser porosity?

b. The vertical component of the hydraulic gradient is determined in the field by measuring the depth to water in two adjacent piezometers that are open at different depths and dividing the depth to water difference by the vertical distance between the two piezometer points. The accuracy with which one can make the measurements of elevation and depth to water is limited. Top of casing elevations can be measured to ±0.01 ft and depth to water is ±0.04 ft.[1]

If the shallow well has a greater head than the deeper well, then there is a downward component of flow. If the deeper well has the greater head, then there is an upward flow component. If there is no obvious upward or downward gradient, then the flow is horizontal.

Given the following pairs of piezometers, which have a definite upward flow component, which have a downward flow component, and which are undefined, and thus considered to be horizontal.

Well Pair	Depth	Depth to Ground Water
A	35.55 ft	23.67 ft
B	72.14 ft	23.60 ft
C	45.33 ft	34.55 ft
D	82.33 ft	34.67 ft
E	108.54 ft	18.70 ft
F	123.44 ft	18.73 ft
G	12.33 ft	7.88 ft
H	15.77 ft	7.84 ft

[1] J.T. Thornhill. 1989. Accuracy to depth of water measurements. EPA Superfund Ground Waste Issue. EPA/540/4-89/002, Robert S. Kerr Laboratory, Ada, Oklahoma

c. Write an Excel formula for Equation 4.74.
d. In the discussion of hydraulic head in Section 4.3, the pressure, P, was defined as zero at the water table. This is a convenient, but not quite correct, concept. There is a pressure at the water table, P_0, which is the atmospheric pressure. Write Equations 4.9 and 4.10 in a form that includes P_0. Define all factors in each equation.

Problems

Answers to odd-numbered problems appear at the end of the book. Assume $g = 9.81\ m/s^2$. Step-by-step problem solutions to the odd-numbered problems are found on the Applied Hydrogeology web page. Values of density and viscosity of water at differing temperatures are found in Appendix 14.

1. A fluid in an aquifer is 6.5 m above a reference datum, the fluid pressure is 1800 N/m^2, and the flow velocity is 3.4×10^{-5} m/s. The fluid density is 1.01×10^3 kg/m^3.
   (A) What is the total energy per unit mass?
   (B) What is the total energy per unit weight?
2. A fluid in an aquifer is 23.6 m above a reference datum, the fluid pressure is 4390 N/m^2, and the flow velocity is 7.22×10^{-4} m/s. The fluid density is 0.999×10^3 kg/m^3.
   (A) What is the total energy per unit mass?
   (B) What is the total energy per unit weight?
3. A piezometer is screened 723.4 m above mean sea level. The point-water pressure head in the piezometer is 17.9 m and the water in the aquifer is fresh at a temperature of 20°C.
   (A) What is the total head in the aquifer at the point where the piezometer is screened?
   (B) What is the fluid pressure in the aquifer at the point where the piezometer is screened?
4. A piezometer point is 34.7 m above mean sea level. The fluid pressure in the aquifer at that point is 7.87×10^5 N/m^2. The aquifer has fresh water at a temperature of 10°C.
   (A) What is the point-water pressure head?
   (B) What is the total head?
5. A piezometer in a saline water aquifer has a point-water pressure head of 18.73 m. If the water has a density of 1022 kg/m^3 and is at a field temperature of 18°C, what is the equivalent fresh-water pressure head?
6. The fluid pressure in the screen of a piezometer in a saline aquifer is 7.688×10^5 N/m^2. The fluid density is 1055 kg/m^3 and the temperature is 14°C. The elevation of the piezometer screen is 45.9 m above sea level.
   (A) Compute the point-water pressure head.
   (B) Compute the fresh-water pressure head.
   (C) Find the total fresh-water head.
7. A sand aquifer has a median pore diameter of 0.232 mm. The fluid density is 1.003×10^3 kg/m^3 and the fluid viscosity is 1.15×10^{-3} $N \cdot s/m^2$. If the flow rate is 0.0067 m/s, is Darcy's law valid? What is the reason for your answer?
8. An aquifer has a hydraulic conductivity of 12 ft/d and an effective porosity of 17% and is under a hydraulic gradient of 0.0055.
   (A) Compute the specific discharge.
   (B) Compute the average linear velocity.
   (C) The water temperature is 14°C and the mean pore diameter is 0.33 mm. Is it permissible to use Darcy's law under these circumstances? What is the reason for your answer?
9. A confined aquifer is 8 ft thick. The potentiometric surface drops 1.33 ft between two wells that are 685 ft apart. The hydraulic conductivity is 251 ft/d and the effective porosity is 0.27.
   (A) How many cubic feet per day are moving through a strip of the aquifer that is 10 ft wide?
   (B) What is the average linear velocity?
10. A confined aquifer is 18.5 m thick. The potentiometric surface drops 1.99 m between two wells that are 823 m apart. If the hydraulic conductivity of the aquifer is 4.35 m/d, how many cubic meters of flow are moving through the aquifer per unit width?
11. An unconfined aquifer has a hydraulic conductivity of 8.7×10^{-2} cm/s. There are two observation wells 597 ft apart. Both penetrate the aquifer to the bottom. In one observation well the water stands 28.9 ft above the bottom, and in the other it is 26.2 ft above the bottom.
   (A) What is the discharge per 100-ft-wide strip of the aquifer in cubic feet per day?
   (B) What is the water-table elevation at a point midway between the two observation wells?
12. An unconfined aquifer has a hydraulic conductivity of 3.3×10^{-4} m/d. There are two observation wells 348 m

apart. Both penetrate the aquifer to the bottom. In one observation well the water stands 9.88 m above the bottom, and in the other it is 8.12 m above the bottom.

(A) What is the discharge per 100-m-wide strip of the aquifer in cubic feet per day?

(B) What is the water-table elevation at a point midway between the two observation wells?

13. Refer to Figure 4.19. The hydraulic conductivity of the aquifer is 14.5 m/d. The value of h_1 is 17.6 m and the value of h_2 is 15.3 m. The distance from h_1 to h_2 is 525 m. There is an average rate of recharge of 0.007 m/d.

(A) What is the average discharge per unit width at $x = 0$?

(B) What is the average discharge per unit width at $x = 525$ m?

(C) Is there a water-table divide? If so, where is it located?

(D) What is the maximum height of the water table?

14. Refer to Figure 4.19. The hydraulic conductivity of the aquifer is 86 ft/d. The value of h_1 is 22.36 ft and the value of h_2 is 20.77 ft. The distance from h_1 to h_2 is 1980 ft. There is an average rate of recharge of 0.004 ft/d.

(A) What is the average discharge per unit width at $x = 0$?

(B) What is the average discharge per unit width at $x = 1980$ ft?

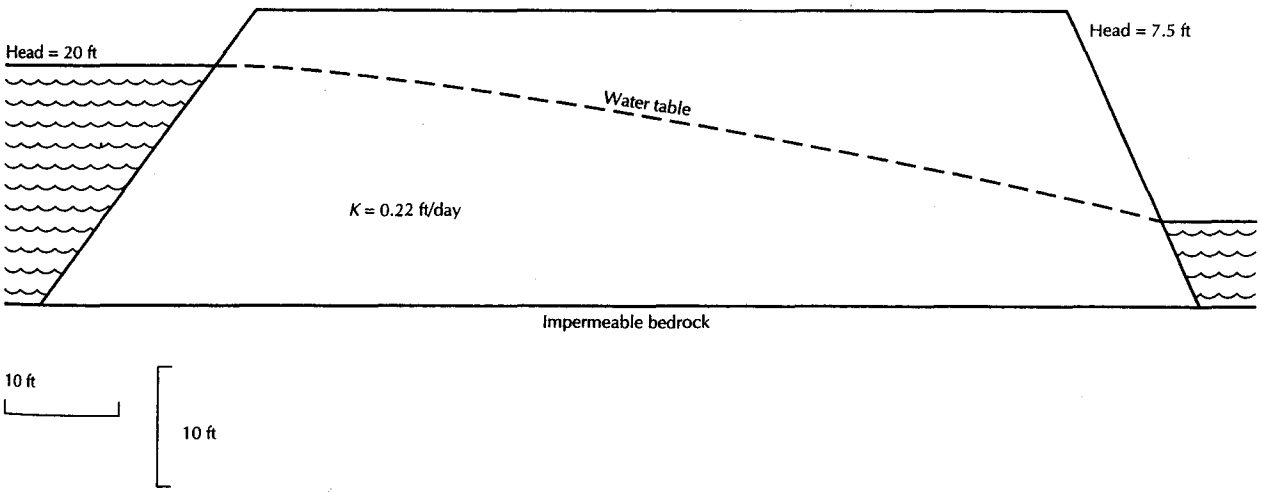
(C) Is there a water-table divide? If so, where is it located?

(D) What is the maximum height of the water table?

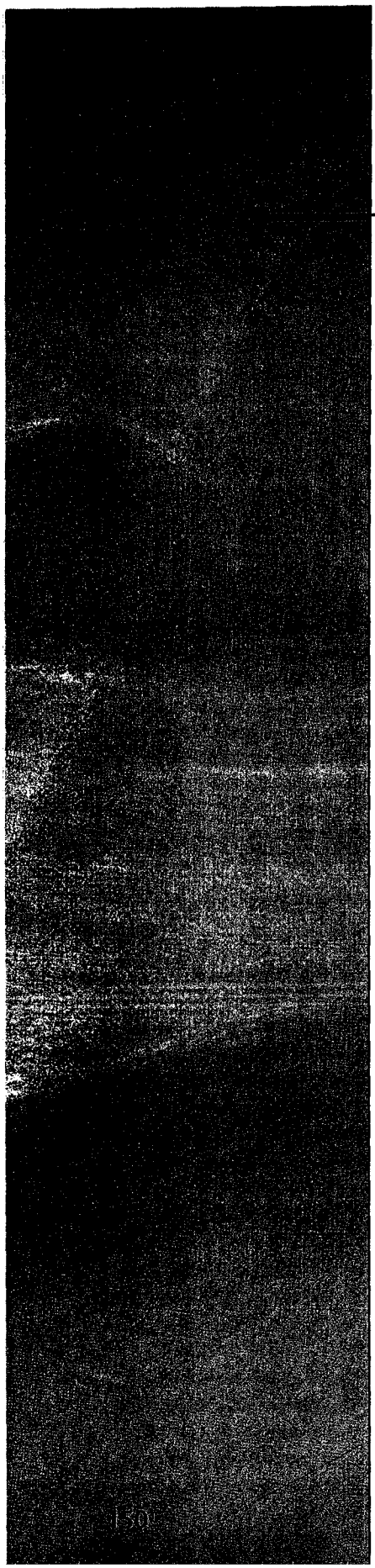
15. An earthen dam is constructed on an impermeable bedrock layer. It is 550 ft across (i.e., the distance from the water in the reservoir to the tailwaters below the dam is 550 ft). The average hydraulic conductivity of the material used in the dam construction is 0.77 ft/d. The water in the reservoir behind the dam is 35 ft deep and the tailwaters below the dam are 20 ft deep. Compute the volume of water that seeps from the reservoir, through the dam, and into the tailwaters per 100-ft-wide strip of the dam in cubic feet per day.

16. An earthen dam is constructed on an impermeable bedrock layer. It is 123 m across (i.e., the distance from the water in the reservoir to the tailwaters below the dam is 123 m). The average hydraulic conductivity of the material used in the dam construction is 1.33 m/d. The water in the reservoir behind the dam is 18.5 m deep and the tailwaters below the dam are 4.6 m deep. Compute the volume of water that seeps from the reservoir, through the dam, and into the tailwaters per 100-m-wide strip of the dam in cubic meters per day.

17. Draw a flow net for seepage through the earthen dam shown in Figure 4.20. If the hydraulic conductivity of the material used in the dam is 0.22 ft/d, what is the seepage per unit width per day?



▲ FIGURE 4.20
Earthen dam for Problem 17, construction of a flow net.



CHAPTER 5

Ground-Water Flow to Wells

One must, however, note that the flow does not always remain the same. Thus when there are rains the flow is increased, for the water on the hills being in excess is more violently squeezed out. But in times of dryness the flow subsides because no additional supply of water comes into the spring. In the case of the best springs, however, the amount of flow does not contract very much. . . . It is also necessary to find the speed of the flow, for the swifter the flow the more water the spring delivers, and the slower it is, the less.

Dioptra, Hero of Alexandria, ca. A.D. 65

5.1 Introduction

Wells are one of the most important aspects of applied hydrogeology. Water wells are used for the extraction of ground water to fill domestic, municipal, industrial, and irrigation needs. Wells have also been used to control salt-water intrusion, remove contaminated water from an aquifer, lower the water table for construction projects, relieve pressures under dams, and drain farmland. Wells also function to inject fluids into the ground. On Long Island, New York, all ground water pumped for cooling purposes must be returned to the same aquifer by an injection well. Still another function of wells is to dispose of wastewater into isolated aquifers. Finally, as a means of ground-water management, wells are sometimes used to artificially recharge aquifers at rates greater than natural recharge.

The same theoretical considerations apply to wells that either extract water or inject water. During well pumpage, drawdown of the head in the aquifer around the well occurs; during injection there is an increase in the head in the aquifer. From a mathematical standpoint, injection is handled by using a negative value for the pumping rate.

A pumping cone, or **cone of depression,** will form in the aquifer around a pumping well as the water level declines. In this chapter we examine the flow to wells in two ways. We first examine how to compute the

decline in the water level, or drawdown, around a pumping well if we know the hydraulic properties of the aquifer. We then learn how to determine the hydraulic properties of an aquifer by performing an aquifer test in which a well is pumped at a constant rate and either the stabilized drawdown or the change in drawdown over time is measured.

In steady-state flow, the head is constant with time. Flow in which the head changes with time is termed unsteady flow. Vast amounts of literature exist on the topic of flow to wells.

In this chapter we deal only with wells that fully penetrate aquifers that are homogeneous and isotropic. Moreover, we will assume radial symmetry; that is, the values of the aquifer transmissivity and storativity do not depend on the direction of flow in the aquifer. These are the most basic situations. Dawson and Istok (1991), Kruseman and de Ridder (1991), and Butler (1997) present exhaustive treatments of aquifer testing that include the analysis of aquifer-test and slug-test data from more complex situations, such as partially penetrating wells and anisotropic aquifers.

5.2 Basic Assumptions

In this chapter we need to make assumptions about the hydraulic conditions in the aquifer and about the pumping and observation wells. In this section we list the basic assumptions that apply to all situations described in the chapter. Each situation will also have additional assumptions.

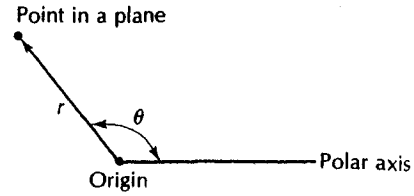
1. The aquifer is bounded on the bottom by a confining layer.
2. All geologic formations are horizontal and have infinite horizontal extent.
3. The potentiometric surface of the aquifer is horizontal prior to the start of the pumping.
4. The potentiometric surface of the aquifer is not changing with time prior to the start of the pumping.
5. All changes in the position of the potentiometric surface are due to the effect of the pumping well alone.
6. The aquifer is homogeneous and isotropic.
7. All flow is radial toward the well.
8. Ground-water flow is horizontal.
9. Darcy's law is valid.
10. Ground water has a constant density and viscosity.
11. The pumping well and the observation wells are fully penetrating; that is, they are screened over the entire thickness of the aquifer.
12. The pumping well has an infinitesimal diameter and is 100% efficient.

5.3 Radial Flow

For purposes of analysis, the aquifers that we consider are assumed to be isotropic and homogeneous. We will show that solutions can be found for cases in which the value of the horizontal conductivity is different from that of the vertical conductivity; however, we will assume that the aquifer has **radial symmetry.**

Flow toward a well has been termed **radial flow.** It moves as if along the spokes of a wagon wheel toward the hub. We can deal with radial flow by use of a coordinate system called **polar coordinates.** The position of a point in a plane is specified according to its distance and direction from a fixed point or pole. The distance is measured directly from the pole to the point in the plane. The direction is determined by the angle between the line from the pole to the point and a fixed reference line—the polar axis. The polar axis is usually drawn horizontally and to the right of the pole, and the angle is measured by a

► FIGURE 5.1
The use of polar coordinates to describe the position of a point in a plane. It lies a distance r from the origin, and the angle between the polar axis and a line connecting the point and the origin is θ.



counterclockwise rotation from the polar axis (Figure 5.1). Only the value of the angle (θ) and the radial distance (r) need be specified. If the aquifer is isotropic in a horizontal plane, then flow will have radial symmetry, and θ is irrelevent.

Two-dimensional flow in a confined aquifer has previously been derived as Equation 4.42, which is

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2} = \frac{S}{T}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t}$$

This equation is expressed in Cartesian coordinates, which are based on an x-y grid. In an isotropic and homogeneous aquifer with radial symmetry, we can transform Equation 4.42 with the following relationship which comes from the Pythagorean theorem:

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \tag{5.1}$$

The result is Equation 4.42 in radial coordinates

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial h}{\partial r} = \frac{S}{T}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{5.2}$$

where

h is hydraulic head (L; m or ft)

S is storativity (dimensionless)

T is transmissivity (L^2/T; m^2/d or ft^2/d)

t is time [1](T; d)

r is radial distance from the pumping well (L; m or ft)

The two-dimensional equation for confined flow, if there is recharge to the aquifer, is given by Equation 4.44, which is:

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2} + \frac{w}{T} = \frac{S}{T}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t}$$

Equation 4.44 can likewise be transformed into radial coordinates becoming

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial h}{\partial r} + \frac{w}{T} = \frac{S}{T}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{5.3}$$

where w is the rate of vertical leakage (L/T; m/d or ft/d)

Solution of the flow equations for radial flow to wells for a variety of boundary values has yielded some extremely useful equations. The mathematics behind the basic solutions involves some rather esoteric mathematical functions. These include Laplace transforms, finite Fourier transforms, Bessel functions, and error functions.* The solutions can be used

*For a review of these functions as they apply to well hydraulics, see M. S. Hantush, "Hydraulics of Wells," in *Advances in Hydroscience*, vol. 1, ed. V. T. Chow (New York: Academic Press, 1964).

[1]In this chapter I have specified time in days. In fact, the time can be in any unit so long as it is consistent with the time units of the pumping rate and the hydraulic conductivity.

to determine the drawdown of the potentiometric surface or water table near a pumping well, if the formation characteristics are known. Conversely, if the formation characteristics of an aquifer are unknown, an aquifer test (pumping test) can be made. The well is pumped at a known rate, and the response of the potentiometric surface is measured.

Small-diameter monitoring wells used primarily for sampling ground-water quality or measuring hydraulic head can also be used to determine the hydraulic conductivity of the formation in which the well is screened. A small volume of water is instantaneously added or withdrawn from the well to create an instantaneous head change. The recovery of the water level with time is then recorded. The equations presented in this chapter can then be applied to evaluate the field data and determine the unknown aquifer characteristics.

5.4 Computing Drawdown Caused by a Pumping Well

5.4.1 Flow in a Completely Confined Aquifer

When a well is pumped in a completely confined aquifer, the water is obtained from the elastic or specific storage of the aquifer. You will recall that the elastic storage is water that is released from storage by the expansion of the water as pressure in the aquifer is reduced and by expulsion as the pore space is reduced as the aquifer compacts. The product of the specific storage, S_s, and the aquifer thickness, the aquifer parameter called transmissivity. For a confined aquifer, it is generally small (0.005 or less), and pumpage affects a relatively large area of the aquifer. Further, if no recharge occurs, the area of drawdown of the potentiometric surface will expand indefinitely as the pumpage continues.

The first mathematical analysis of transient drawdown effects in a confined aquifer was published by C. V. Theis (1935). Theis made the following assumptions in addition to the basic assumptions of Section 5.2.

1. The aquifer is confined top and bottom.
2. There is no source of recharge to the aquifer.
3. The aquifer is compressible and water is released instantaneously from the aquifer as the head is lowered.
4. The well is pumped at a constant rate. Figure 5.2 illustrates the aquifer conditions.

From Darcy's law, the flow of water through any circular section of the aquifer toward the well is the area of the circular section times the hydraulic conductivity, K, times the hydraulic gradient. The hydraulic gradient is expressed as the change in head with radial distance from the well, dh/dr. The area of a circular section is the circumference of the circular section, $2\pi r$, where r is the radius of the circle, times the thickness of the aquifer, b. Therefore, the area is $2\pi rb$. Flow through the circular section can be expressed as

$$Q = (2\pi rb)K\left(\frac{dh}{dr}\right) \tag{5.4}$$

where

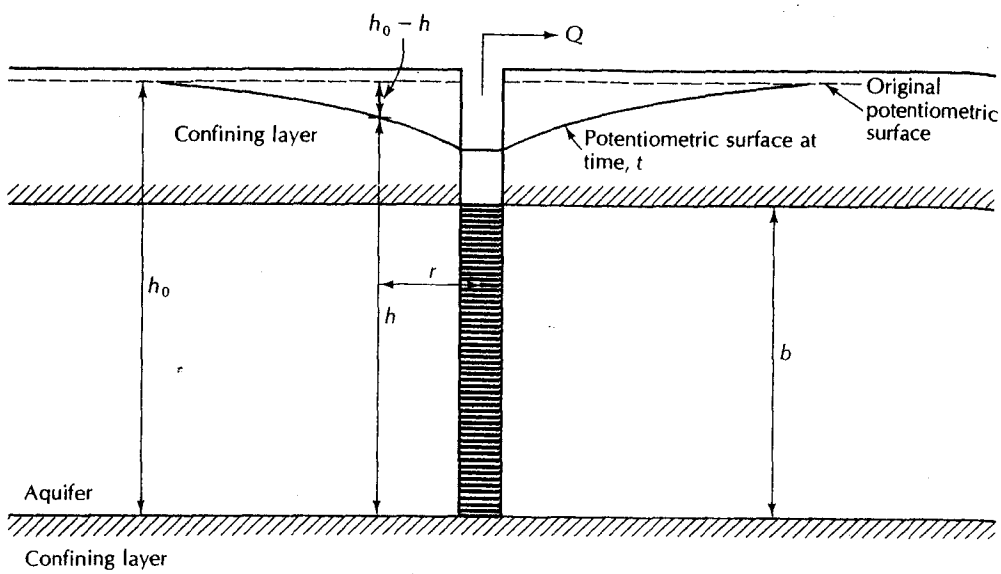
Q is the pumping rate (L^3/T)

r is the radial distance from the circular section to the well (L)

b is the aquifer thickness (L)

K is the hydraulic conductivity (L/T)

dh/dr is the hydraulic gradient (dimensionless)



▲ FIGURE 5.2
Fully penetrating well pumping from a confined aquifer.

Since transmissivity (T) is the product of the aquifer thickness and the hydraulic conductivity, Equation 5.4 can also be expressed as

$$Q = 2\pi rT\left(\frac{dh}{dr}\right) \tag{5.5}$$

Equation 5.5 can be rearranged as follows:

$$r\frac{\partial h}{\partial r} = \frac{Q}{2\pi T} \tag{5.6}$$

The basic assumptions can be expressed mathematically as initial and boundary conditions. The initial condition of a horizontal potentiometric surface is

$$h(r,0) = h_0 \text{ for all } r \tag{5.7}$$

The boundary condition signifying an infinite horizontal extent with no drawdown at any time is

$$h(\infty, t) = h_0 \text{ for all } t \tag{5.8}$$

The constant pumping rate, Q, is given by Equation 5.6.

The solution that Theis arrived at for Equation 5.2 under the initial and boundary conditions of Equations 5.6, 5.7, and 5.8 is known as the **Theis** or **nonequilibrium equation:***

$$h_0 - h = \frac{Q}{4\pi T}\int_u^\infty \frac{e^{-a}}{a}da \tag{5.9}$$

*The Theis equation was actually derived by a mathematician friend of Theis, C. I. Lubin. Reportedly, Lubin declined coauthorship of the paper because he regarded his contribution as mathematically trivial.

where the argument u is given by

$$u = \frac{r^2 S}{4Tt} \tag{5.10}$$

where

Q is the constant pumping rate (L^3/T; m^3/d or ft^3/d)

h is the hydraulic head (L; m or ft)

h_0 is the initial hydraulic head (L; m or ft)

h_0–h is the drawdown (L; m or ft)

T is the aquifer transmissivity (L^2/T; m^2/d or ft^2/d)

t is the time since pumping began (T; d)

r is the radial distance from the pumping well (L; m or ft)

S is the aquifer storativity (dimensionless)

It should be noted that Q is a pumping rate in cubic meter or cubic feet per day. Even if the well is pumped for less than 24 hs, the rate of Q must still be expressed in terms of the volume that would be pumped in a day.

The integral in Equation 5.9 is called the exponential integral. It can be approximated by an infinite series so that the Theis equation becomes

$$h_0 - h = \frac{Q}{4\pi T}\left[- 0.5772 - \ln u + u - \frac{u^2}{2 \cdot 2!} + \frac{u^3}{3 \cdot 3!} - \frac{u^4}{4 \cdot 4!} + \ldots \right] \tag{5.11}$$

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

If a well is pumped at a constant rate for 750 min and a total of 13,500 ft^3 are removed, what is the pumping rate in cubic feet per day?

$$Q = \frac{13{,}500 \text{ ft}^3}{750 \text{ min}} \times \frac{1440 \text{ min}}{\text{d}} = 25{,}900 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}$$

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A well is pumped at a rate of 125 gal/min for 1845 min. What is the pumping rate in cubic feet per day?

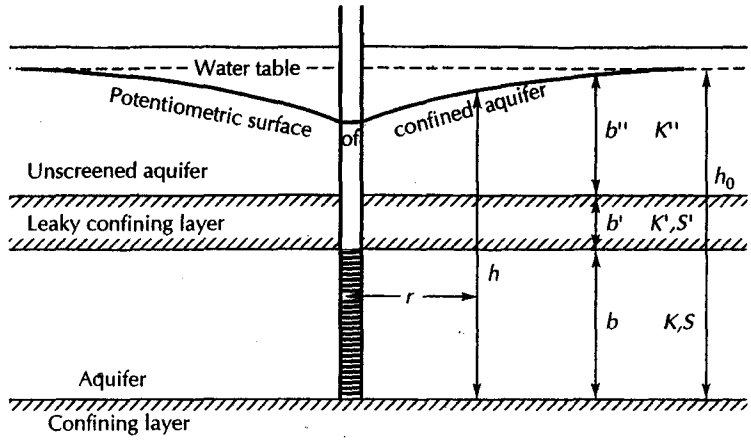
$$Q = \frac{125 \text{ gal}}{\text{min}} \times \frac{1 \text{ ft}^3}{7.48 \text{ gal}} \times \frac{1440 \text{ min}}{\text{d}} = 24{,}100 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}$$

The infinite series term of Equation 5.11 has been called the well function and is generally designated as $W(u)$. Although the series is easy to evaluate mathematically, it has been conveniently tabulated (Wenzel 1942), and Appendix 1 contains a table of $W(u)$ for various values of u.

Using well function notation, the Theis equation is also expressed as

$$h_0 - h = \frac{Q}{4\pi T} W(u) \tag{5.12}$$

Theis equation



▲ FIGURE 5.3
Fully penetrating well in an aquifer overlain by a semipermeable confining layer.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A well is located in an aquifer with a conductivity of 14.9 m/d and a storativity of 0.0051. The aquifer is 20.1 m thick and is pumped at a rate of 2725 m^3/d. What is the drawdown at a distance of 7.0 m from the well after 1 day of pumping?

$$T = Kb = 14.9 \text{ m/d} \times 20.1 \text{ m} = 299 \text{ m}^2/\text{d}$$

$$u = \frac{r^2 S}{4Tt} = \frac{(7.0 \text{ m})^2 \times 0.0051}{4 \times 299 \text{ m}^2/\text{d} \times 1 \text{ d}} = 0.00021$$

From the table of $W(u)$ and u, if $u = 2.0 \times 10^{-4}$, $W(u) = 7.94$:

$$h_0 - h = \frac{Q}{4\pi T} W(u) = \frac{2725 \text{ m}^3/\text{d} \times 7.94}{4 \times \pi \times 299 \text{ m}^2/\text{d}} = 5.7 \text{ m}$$

5.4.2 Flow in a Leaky, Confined Aquifer

5.4.2.1 Flow Equation

Most confined aquifers are not totally isolated from sources of vertical recharge. Aquitards, either above or below the aquifer, can leak water into the aquifer if the direction of the hydraulic gradient is favorable (Figure 5.3).

Equation 5.3 is the two-dimensional flow equation if there is vertical leakage into the aquifer. The leakage rate, w, can be found from Darcy's law. The vertical hydraulic conductivity of the leaky confining layer is K'. The hydraulic gradient is the head across the leaky confining layer, which is the drawdown, $h_0 - h$, divided by the thickness of the confining layer, b'. The leakage rate is therefore

$$w = K' \frac{h_0 - h}{b'} \tag{5.13}$$

By substituting Equation 5.13 into Equation 5.3 we obtain

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial h}{\partial r} - \frac{(h_0 - h)K'}{Tb'} = \frac{S}{T}\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{5.14}$$

where

K' is the vertical hydraulic conductivity of the leaky layer (L/T)

b' is the thickness of the leaky layer (L)

h is the head (L)

r is the radial distance from the pumping well (L)

t is the time (T)

S is the storativity (dimensionless)

T is the transmissivity (L^2/T)

$h_0 - h$ is the drawdown (L)

5.4.2.2 Solution for the Case When No Water Drains from the Confining Layer

The first solution to this problem was published by M. S. Hantush (1956). In this case he assumed that all the water flowing to the pumping well came from either elastic storage in the confined aquifer or leakage across the confining layer. No water is derived from elastic storage in the confining layer. To solve Equation 5.14 Hantush made the following assumptions in addition to the basic assumptions of Section 5.2.

1. The aquifer is bounded on the top by an aquitard.
2. The aquitard is overlain by an unconfined aquifer, known as the *source bed.*
3. The water table in the source bed is initially horizontal.
4. The water table in the source bed does not fall during pumping of the aquifer.
5. Ground-water flow in the aquitard is vertical.
6. The aquifer is compressible, and water drains instantaneously with a decline in head.
7. The aquitard is incompressible, so that no water is released from storage in the aquitard when the aquifer is pumped.

Assumption 4, that the water table does not decline during pumping, is difficult to attain unless there is continuous recharge to the water-table aquifer. However, it can be considered to be valid when either of the following conditions is true (Neuman & Witherspoon 1969):

$$t < \frac{S'(b')^2}{10bK'} \tag{5.15A}$$

or

$$b''K'' > 100bK \tag{5.15B}$$

where

t is time since pumping began (T; d)

S' is storativity of aquitard (dimensionless)

b' is thickness of aquitard (L; ft or m)

b is thickness of confined aquifer (L; ft or m)

b'' is saturated thickness of water-table aquifer (L; ft or m)

K' is vertical hydraulic conductivity of aquitard (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

K'' is hydraulic conductivity of water-table aquifer (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

K is hydraulic conductivity of confined aquifer (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

Assumption 7, that no water is released from the aquitard, is valid under either of two conditions. Hantush (1960b) showed that the effects of water released from the aquitard are negligible if

$$t > 0.036b'S'/K' \tag{5.16}$$

Neuman and Witherspoon (1969) also showed that the assumption is valid when

$$r < 0.04b[(KS_s/K'S'_s)]^{1/2} \tag{5.17}$$

where

S_s is the specific storage of the confined aquifer ($1/L$; 1/ft or 1/m)

S'_s is the specific storage of the aquitard ($1/L$; 1/ft or 1/m)

Although the basic assumptions of Section 5.2 include an infinitesimal well diameter, the following solution is valid for any well diameter, provided that

$$t > (30r_w^2S/T)\,[1 - (10r_w/b)^2] \tag{5.18}$$

and

$$r_w/(Tb'/K')^{1/2} < 0.1 \tag{5.19}$$

where

r_w is the radius of the pumping well (L; ft or m)

S is storativity of the confined aquifer (dimensionless)

T is transmissivity of the confined aquifer (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

The solution to Equation 5.14 as given by Hantush (1956, 1960b) and Hantush and Jacob (1954) is known as the **Hantush-Jacob formula** and is

$$h_0 - h = \frac{Q}{4\pi T} W(u, r/B) \tag{5.20}$$

Hantush - Jacob formula

$$u = \frac{r^2S}{4Tt} \tag{5.21}$$

$$B = (Tb'/K')^{1/2} \tag{5.22}$$

where

Q is the pumping rate (L^3/T; ft^3/d or m^3/d)

$h_0 - h$ is the drawdown in the confined aquifer (L; ft or m)

T is the transmissivity of the confined aquifer (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

$W(u, r/B)$ is the leaky artesian well function (Values of this function are tabulated in Appendix 3.)

r is the distance from the pumping well to the observation well (L; ft or m)

S is the storativity of the confined aquifer (dimensionless)

t is time since pumping began (T; d)

B is leakage factor (L; ft or m)

b' is thickness of the aquitard (L; ft or m)

K' is hydraulic conductivity of the aquitard (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

The rate that water is being drawn from elastic storage in the confined aquifer, q_s (L^3/T; ft^3/d or m^3/d), at the specific time, t (T; d), since pumping began may be determined from

$$q_s = Q \exp(-Tt/SB^2) \tag{5.23}$$

If the total discharge at time t is Q and the water drawn from storage at that time is q_s, then the rate that water is coming from leakage across the aquitard at that time, q_L, is found from

$$q_L = Q - q_s \tag{5.24}$$

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A confined aquifer is underlain by an aquiclude and overlain by an aquitard and a water-table aquifer. The following aquifer characteristics are given.

Confined aquifer: $b = 5.2$ m, $K = 0.73$ m/d, $S = 0.0035$, $T = 3.8$ m^2/d

Aquitard: $b' = 1.1$ m, $K' = 5.5 \times 10^{-5}$ m/d, $S' = 0.00061$

Water-table aquifer: $b'' = 25$ m, $K'' = 35$ m/d

A well that fully penetrates the aquifer has a radius of 0.15 m. If it is pumped at a rate of 28 m^3/d, what is the drawdown after 1 d of pumping at the following distance from the well: 1.5 m, 5.5 m, 10 m, 25 m, 75 m, 150 m?

First, test to see if the assumptions for a leaky, confined aquifer with negligible storage in the aquitard are valid. To test to see if there will be negligible decline in the water level in the water-table aquifer, use Equation 5.15B.

$$b''K'' > 100bK$$

$$25 \text{ m/d} \times 35 \text{ m} > 100 \times 5.2 \text{ m} \times 0.73 \text{ m/d}$$

$$875 \text{ m}^2\text{/d} > 380 \text{ m}^2\text{/d}$$

Therefore, the assumption is valid.

To test if the assumption that the contribution from storage in the aquitard is negligible, use Equation 5.16.

$$t > 0.036b'S'/K'$$

$$1 \text{ d} > (0.036 \times 1.1 \text{ m} \times 0.00061)/(5.5 \times 10^{-5} \text{ m/d})$$

$$1 \text{ d} > 0.44 \text{ d}$$

Therefore, the assumption is valid.

To test if the radius of the well can be considered negligible, use Equations 5.18 and 5.19.

$$t > (30r_w^2S/T)[1 - (10r_w/b)^2]$$

$$1 \text{ d} > [30 \times (0.15 \text{ m})^2 \times (0.0035/3.8 \text{ m}^2\text{/d})][1 - (10 \times 0.15 \text{ m}/5.2 \text{ m})^2]$$

$$1 \text{ d} > (6.2 \times 10^{-4} \text{ d})(1 - 0.08)$$

$$1 \text{ d} > 5.7 \times 10^{-4} \text{ d}$$

and

$$r_w/(Tb'/K')^{1/2} < 0.1$$

$$0.15\text{ m}/[(3.8\text{ m}^2/\text{d} \times 1.1\text{ m})/(5.5 \times 10^{-5}\text{ m/d})]^{1/2} < 0.1$$

$$(0.15\text{ m})/(275\text{ m}) < 0.1$$

$$5.5 \times 10^{-4} < 0.1$$

Both the preceding conditions are met, so this assumption is also true and the Hantush-Jacob equations can be used.

To find $W(u, r/B)$, we must first find u and r/B. As we wish to know these parameters for several values of r, we will first find them with respect to r. From Equation 5.21,

$$\begin{aligned} u &= (r^2S)/(4Tt) \\ &= [(r^2\text{m}^2) \times 0.0035]/(4 \times 3.8\text{ m}^2/\text{d} \times 1\text{ d}) \\ &= (2.3 \times 10^{-4})r^2 \\ r/B &= r/(Tb'/K')^{1/2} \\ &= r\text{m}/[(3.8\text{ m}^2/\text{d} \times 1.1\text{ m})/(5.5 \times 10^{-5}\text{ m/d})]^{1/2} \\ &= r/275 \end{aligned}$$

Once values of u and r/B are determined for each value of r, then the value of $W(u, r/B)$ is found in Appendix 3. The drawdown is then found from Equation 5.20.

$$\begin{aligned} h_0 - h &= \frac{Q}{4\pi T} W(u, r/B) \\ &= 28\text{ m}^3/\text{d}/(4\pi \times 3.8\text{ m}^2/\text{d})W(u, r/B) \\ &= 0.59W(u, r/B)\text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

r	u	r/B	$W(u, r/B)$	$h_0 - h$
1.5 m	5.17×10^{-4}	5.45×10^{-3}	7.0	4.1 m
5.5 m	6.96×10^{-3}	2.00×10^{-2}	4.4	2.6 m
10 m	2.30×10^{-2}	3.64×10^{-2}	3.2	1.9 m
25 m	1.44×10^{-1}	9.09×10^{-2}	1.5	0.89 m
75 m	1.29	2.73×10^{-1}	0.17	0.10 m
150 m	5.18	5.45×10^{-1}	0.0017	0.0010 m

If the well is pumped long enough, all the water will be coming from leakage across the confining layer and none from elastic storage in the confined aquifer (Hantush & Jacob 1954). This occurs when

$$t > \frac{8b'S}{K'} \tag{5.25}$$

In this case the drawdown can be found from (Hantush & Jacob 1954:):

$$h_0 - h = \frac{Q}{2\pi T} K_0(r/B) \tag{5.26}$$

where K_0 is the zero-order modified Bessel function of the second kind. A partial listing of Bessel functions is found in Appendix 5.

5.4.2.3 Solution for the Case Where Some Water Comes from Elastic Storage in the Aquitard

Examination of Equation 5.16 suggests that the contribution of water from elastic storage in the aquitard is directly proportional to the aquitard thickness and storativity and inversely proportional to the aquitard hydraulic conductivity. If the conditions of Equation 5.16 are not met, then the solution for a confined aquifer with a contribution of water from elastic storage in the aquitard must be used (Hantush 1960b; Neuman & Witherspoon 1969).

This solution is based on the assumptions of Section 5.2, and all of the assumptions used in Section 5.4.2.2, except the assumption that the flow contribution from the aquitard can be neglected.

This case has two solutions. During the early part of pumping, when the following condition is met, all the water will come from elastic storage in the aquifer and the aquitard. The early-time condition is

$$t < b'S'/10K' \tag{5.27}$$

The solution to Equation 5.14 is

$$h_0 - h = \frac{Q}{4\pi T} H(u, \beta) \tag{5.28}$$

where $H(u, \beta)$ is a function with values tabulated in Appendix 4 and

$$\beta = \frac{r}{4B}(S'/S)^{1/2} \tag{5.29}$$

$$B = \left(\frac{Tb'}{K'}\right)^{1/2} \tag{5.30}$$

$$u = \frac{r^2 S}{4Tt} \tag{5.31}$$

The rate of flow from storage in the main aquifer, q_s, is given by

$$q_s = Q \exp(\nu t)\operatorname{erfc}(\sqrt{\nu t}) \tag{5.32}$$

where

$$\nu = (K'/b')(S'/S^2)\ (1/T; 1/\mathrm{d}) \tag{5.33}$$

and erfc is the complementary error function. The error function erf(x) is a function with tabulated values. The complementary error function erfc(x) is defined as $1 - \operatorname{erf}(x)$. A table of the error function is given in Appendix 13.

If sufficient time elapses, the aquifer will reach equilibrium and all of the water will be coming from drainage from the overlying source bed. The time to reach this equilibrium is

$$t > \frac{8[S + (S'/3) + S'']}{[(K'/b') + (K''/b'')]^{1/2}} \tag{5.34}$$

If the value of r_w/B is less than 0.01, then the solution is

$$h_0 - h = \frac{Q}{2\pi T} K_0(r/B) \tag{5.35}$$

This is the same solution as that for equilibrium conditions in the case where no water comes from elastic storage in the aquitard, since all the water comes from the source bed.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A confined aquifer is overlain by an aquitard and a water-table aquifer. The layers have the following characteristics.

Confined aquifer: $b = 4.3$ m, $K = 1.1$ m/d, $S = 0.00053$, $T = 4.7$ m^2/d
Aquitard: $b' = 7.2$ m, $K' = 5.5 \times 10^{-6}$ m/d, $S' = 0.00012$
Source bed: $b'' = 17$ m, $K'' = 87$ m/d, $S'' = 0.055$

If a well is pumped at a rate of 15 m^3/d for 1.76 d, what would the drawdown be at a distance of 22 m?

First we need to test if the assumption that the head in the source bed will remain constant is valid. This is done with Equation 5.15B:

$$b''K'' > 100bK$$

$$17 \text{ m} \times 87 \text{ m/d} > 100 \times 4.3 \text{ m} \times 1.1 \text{ m/d}$$

$$1497 \text{ m}^2\text{/d} > 473 \text{ m}^2\text{/d}$$

Therefore, this assumption is true.

We then use Equation 5.16 to see if the contribution of water from elastic storage in the aquifer needs to be considered.

$$t > 0.036b'S'/K'$$

$$1.76 \text{ d} > (0.036 \times 7.2 \text{ m} \times 0.00012)/(5.5 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m/d})$$

$$1.76 \text{ d} \not> 5.66 \text{ d}$$

The conditional statement is not true; therefore we must consider the effects of storage in the aquitard. We need to know if we should use the early-time equation, where water is coming from the elastic storage in the aquitard, or the equilibrium equation for confined aquifers. We will start with the early-time test, Equation 5.27.

$$t < b'S'/10K'$$

$$1.76 \text{ d} < 7.2 \text{ m} \times 0.00012 \,/\, 10 \times 5.5 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m/d}$$

$$1.76 \text{ d} < 15.7 \text{ d}$$

The conditional statement is true; therefore we must use the early-time equation, 5.28.

$$h_0 - h = \frac{Q}{4\pi T} H(u, \beta)$$

The first step is to find the value of $H(u, \beta)$:

$$u = \frac{r^2 S}{4Tt}$$

$$= [(22 \text{ m})^2 \times 0.00053]/[4 \times 4.7 \text{ m}^2\text{/d} \times 1.76 \text{ d}]$$

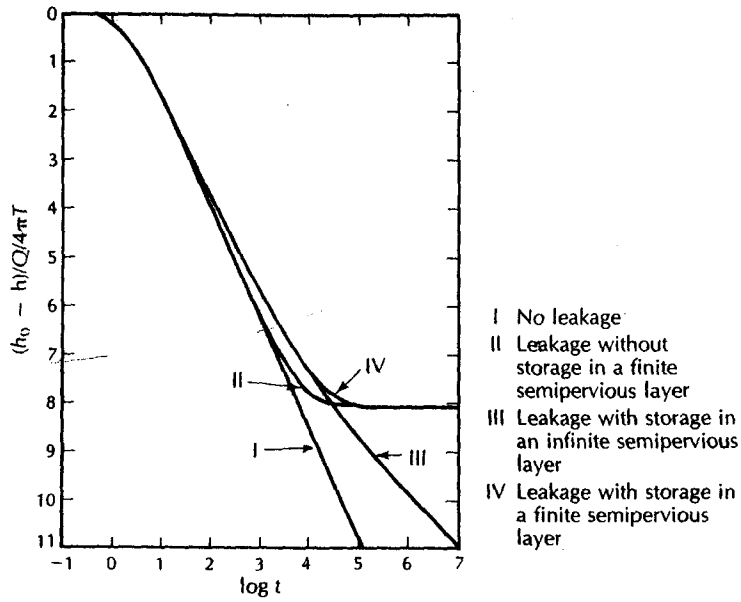
$$= 7.75 \times 10^{-3}$$

$$\beta = \frac{r}{4B}(S'/S)^{1/2}$$

$$B = \left(\frac{Tb'}{K'}\right)^{1/2}$$

$$= [4.7 \text{ m}^2\text{/d} \times 7.2 \text{ m} \,/\, 5.5 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m/d}]^{1/2}$$

$$= 2.5 \times 10^3$$



▲ FIGURE 5.4
Plots of log of dimensionless drawdown as a function of log time for an aquifer with various types of overlying confining layer. *Source: M. S. Hantush,* Journal of Geophysical Research *65 (1960): 3713–25. Used with permission.*

$$\beta = \frac{r}{4B}(S'/S)^{1/2}$$

$$\beta = (22\text{ m} / 4 \times 2.48 \times 10^3) \times (0.00012/0.00053)^{1/2}$$

$$= 2.22 \times 10^{-3} \times 0.476$$

$$= 1.1 \times 10^{-3}$$

With the values of u and β as calculated, the value of $H(u, \beta)$ found from Appendix 4 is 4.3. This is substituted into Equation 5.28.

$$h_0 - h = \frac{Q}{4\pi T}H(u, \beta)$$

$$= [15.3\text{ m}^3/\text{d}/(4 \times 3.1416 \times 4.7\text{ m}^3/\text{d})] \times 4.3$$

$$= 1.1\text{ m}$$

5.4.2.4 Comparison of Drawdown in Different Confined Aquifers

A plot of drawdown as a function of time for several types of confined aquifers is given in Figure 5.4. Other than at very early times, the nonleaky aquifer will decline on a straight line. As there is no recharge, drawdown per log cycle of time will remain constant.

In a leaky aquifer, the drawdown curve will initially follow the nonleaky curve. However, after a finite time interval, the lowered hydraulic head in the aquifer will induce leakage from the confining layer. As part of the well discharge is now coming through the impervious layer, the rate of decline of head will decrease. If there is storage in the confining layer, the rate of drawdown will be lower than if there were no storage. Eventually, the drawdown cone will be large enough so that the pumped water will be coming entirely from leakage through the confining layer and there will be no further drawdown with time. As water is no longer coming from storage in the leaky layer, the two curves coincide.

5.4.3 Flow in an Unconfined Aquifer

The flow of water in an unconfined aquifer toward a pumping well is described by the following equation (Neuman & Witherspoon 1969):

$$K_r \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial r^2} + \frac{K_r \partial h}{r \partial r} + K_v \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z^2} = S_s \frac{\partial h}{\partial t} \tag{5.36}$$

where

h is the saturated thickness of the aquifer (L; ft or m)

r is radial distance from the pumping well (L; ft or m)

z is elevation above the base of the aquifer (L; ft or m)

S_s is specific storage ($1/L$; 1/ft or 1/m)

K_r is radial hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

K_v is vertical hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/day or m/d)

t is time (T; d)

A well pumping from a water-table aquifer extracts water by two mechanisms. As with confined aquifers, the decline in pressure in the aquifer yields water because of the elastic storage of the aquifer storativity (S_s). The declining water table also yields water as it drains under gravity from the sediments. This is termed specific yield (S_y). The flow equation has been solved for radial flow in compressible, unconfined aquifers under a number of different conditions and by use of a variety of mathematical gambits (Boulton & Streltsova 1975; Boulton 1954, 1955, 1963, 1973; Boulton & Pontin 1971; Streltsova 1972, 1973; Dagan 1967; Moench 1995; Neuman 1972, 1974, 1975; Gambolati 1976). The many and various equations in these solutions can lead to confusion; however, a qualitative description of the response of a water-table well to pumping may be helpful.

There are three distinct phases of time-drawdown relations in water-table wells. We will examine the response of any typical annular region of the aquifer located a constant distance from the pumping well. Some time after pumping has begun, the pressure in the annular region will drop. As the pressure first drops, the aquifer responds by contributing a small volume of water as a result of the expansion of water and compression of the aquifer. During this time, the aquifer behaves as an artesian aquifer, and the time-drawdown data follow the Theis nonequilibrium curve for S equal to the elastic storativity of the aquifer. Flow is horizontal during this period, as the water is being derived from the entire aquifer thickness.

Following this initial phase, the water table begins to decline. Water is now being derived primarily from the gravity drainage of the aquifer, and there are both horizontal and vertical flow components. The time-drawdown relationship is a function of the ratio of horizontal-to-vertical conductivities of the aquifer, the distance to the pumping well, and the thickness of the aquifer.

As time progresses, the rate of drawdown decreases and the contribution of the particular annular region to the overall well discharge diminishes. Flow is again essentially horizontal, and the time-drawdown data again follow a Theis type curve. The Theis curve now corresponds to one with a storativity equal to the specific yield of the aquifer. The importance of the vertical flow component as it affects the average drawdown is directly related to the magnitude of the ratio of the specific yield to the elastic storage coefficient (S_y/S_s). As the value of S_s approaches zero, the time duration of the first stage of draw-

down also approaches zero. As S_y approaches zero, the length of the first stage increases, so that if $S_y = 0$, the aquifer behaves as an artesian aquifer of storativity S_s (Gambolati 1976).

Neuman (1972, 1974, 1975, 1987) has published a solution to Equation 5.36. There are two parts to the solution, one for the time just after pumping has begun and the water is coming from specific storage and one for much later, when the water is coming from gravity drainage with the storativity equal to the specific yield.

Neuman's solution assumes the following, in addition to or instead of the basic assumptions of Section 5.2.

1. The aquifer is unconfined.
2. The vadose zone has no influence on the drawdown.
3. Water initially pumped comes from the instantaneous release of water from elastic storage.
4. Eventually water comes from storage due to gravity drainage of interconnected pores.
5. The drawdown is negligible compared with the saturated aquifer thickness.
6. The specific yield is at least 10 times the elastic storativity.
7. The aquifer may be—but does not have to be—anisotropic with the radial hydraulic conductivity different than the vertical hydraulic conductivity.

With these assumptions Neuman's solution is

$$h_0 - h = \frac{Q}{4\pi T} W(u_A, u_B, \Gamma) \tag{5.37}$$

where $(W(u_A, u_B, \Gamma)$ is the well function for the water-table aquifer, as tabulated in Appendix 6.

$$u_A = \frac{r^2 S}{4Tt} \text{ (for early drawdown data)} \tag{5.38}$$

$$u_B = \frac{r^2 S_y}{4Tt} \text{ (for later drawdown data)} \tag{5.39}$$

$$\Gamma = \frac{r^2 K_v}{b^2 K_h} \tag{5.40}$$

where

h_0–h is the drawdown (L; ft or m)

Q is the pumping rate (L^3/T; ft^3/d or m^3/d)

T is the transmissivity (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

r is the radial distance from the pumping well (L; ft or m)

S is the storativity (dimensionless)

S_y is the specific yield (dimensionless)

t is the time (T; d)

K_h is the horizontal hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

K_v is the vertical hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

b is the initial saturated thickness of the aquifer (L; ft or m)

5.5 Determining Aquifer Parameters from Time-Drawdown Data

5.5.1 Introduction

In Section 5.4 we saw how to calculate the drawdown in an aquifer if we know the hydraulic parameters of the aquifer. These hydraulic parameters are usually determined by means of an **aquifer test.** In an aquifer test, a well is pumped and the rate of decline of the water level in nearby observation wells is noted. The time-drawdown data are then interpreted to yield the hydraulic parameters of the aquifer.

In conducting an aquifer test, there must obviously be a pumping well, and usually one or more observation wells. In the discussion of aquifer tests presented here, the following conditions are assumed.

1. The pumping well is screened only in the aquifer being tested.
2. All observation wells are screened only in the aquifer being tested.
3. The pumping well and the observation wells are screened throughout the entire thickness of the aquifer.

The general assumptions of Section 5.2 and the specific assumptions for each type of aquifer in Section 5.4 are also necessary.

5.5.2 Steady-State Conditions

If a well pumps long enough, the water level may reach a state of equilibrium; that is, there is no further drawdown with time. The region around the pumping well where the head has been lowered is known as the *cone of depression.* When equilibrium has been achieved, the cone of depression stops growing because it has reached a source and the recharge rate equals pumpage. These are also known as *steady-state conditions.*

The hydraulic gradient of the cone of depression causes water to flow at a constant rate from the recharge boundary to the well. The assumption of radial symmetry means that the recharge boundary has an unlikely circular geometry entered about the pumping well.

5.5.2.1 Steady Radial Flow in a Confined Aquifer

In the case of steady radial flow in a confined aquifer, the following additional assumptions are necessary.

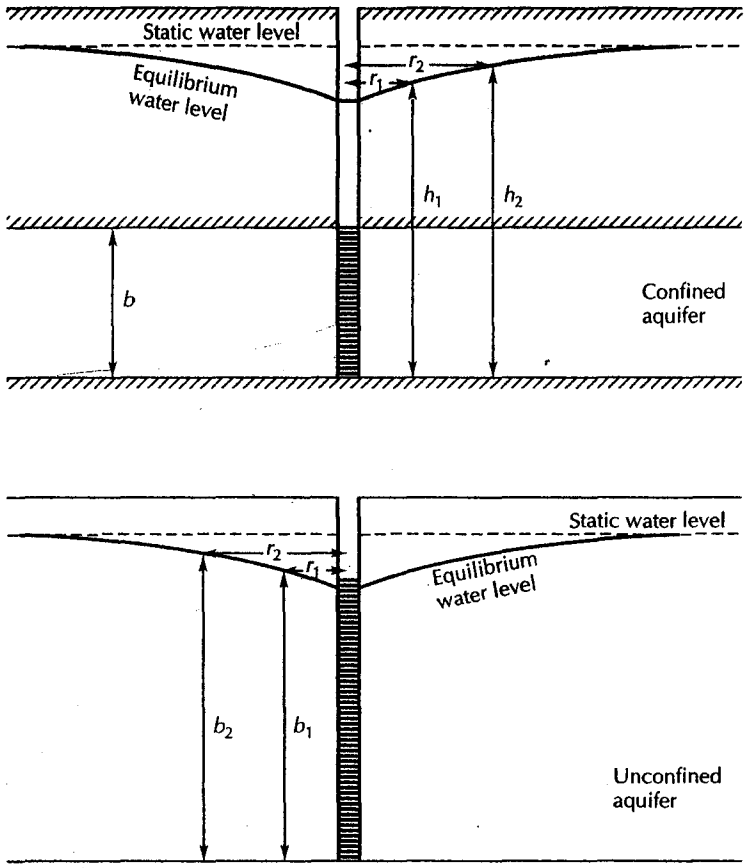
1. The aquifer is confined top and bottom.
2. The well is pumped at a constant rate.
3. Equilibrium has been reached; that is, there is no further change in drawdown with time.

Figure 5.5 shows a well that is penetrating a confined aquifer. Under steady-state conditions, the rate that water is pumped from the well is equal to the rate that the aquifer transmits water to the well. This problem was first solved by G. Thiem (Thiem 1906).

We have previously derived Equation 5.5, which uses Darcy's law to yield the discharge of a well in a situation with horizontal, confined flow. Equation 5.5 can be rearranged to provide the following

$$dh = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\frac{dr}{r} \tag{5.41}$$

If there are two observation wells, the head is h_1 at a distance r_1 from the pumping well; it is h_2 at a distance r_2. We can integrate both sides of Equation 5.41 with these boundary conditions:



▲ FIGURE 5.5
Equilibrium drawdown: A. confined aquifer; B. unconfined aquifer.

$$\int_{h_1}^{h_2} dh = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\int_{r_1}^{r_2}\frac{dr}{r} \tag{5.42}$$

This can be solved to yield

$$h_2 - h_1 = \frac{Q}{2\pi T}\ln\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right) \tag{5.43}$$

Equation 5.43 can be rearranged to yield the Thiem equation for confined aquifers:

$$\boxed{T = \frac{Q}{2\pi(h_2 - h_1)}\ln\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right)} \tag{5.44}$$

← Transmissivity for confined aquifer.

where

T is aquifer transmissivity (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

Q is pumping rate (L^3/T; ft^3/d or m^3/d)

h_1 is head at distance r_1 from the pumping well (L; ft or m)

h_2 is head at distance r_2 from the pumping well (L; ft or m)

If pumping has progressed to a point where the drawdown has stabilized, the head is determined in two observation wells, located different distances from the pumping well. The pumping rate, the heads, and the radial distances are entered into Equation 5.44, and

the aquifer transmissivity is determined. Notice that there is no provision for the aquifer storativity in Equation 5.44. Under steady-state conditions there is no change in head with time and water is not coming from storage. Hence, the Thiem equation cannot be used to determine aquifer storativity.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A well in a confined aquifer is pumped at a rate of 220 gal/min. Measurement of drawdown in two observation wells shows that after 1270 min of pumping, no further drawdown is occurring. Well 1 is 26 ft from the pumping well and has a head of 29.34 ft above the top of the aquifer. Well 2 is 73 ft from the pumping well and has a head of 32.56 ft above the top of the aquifer. Use the Thiem equation to find the aquifer transmissivity.

We must first convert the pumping rate of 220 gal/min to an equivalent rate in cubic feet per day. We make this conversion, even though steady-state conditions were reached, before a full day (1440 min) of pumping occurred.

$$220\,\frac{\text{gal}}{\text{min}} \times \frac{1\ \text{ft}^3}{7.48\ \text{gal}} \times 1440\,\frac{\text{min}}{\text{d}} = 42{,}400\ \text{ft}^3/\text{d}$$

Now we substitute the given values into Equation 5.44.

$$T = \frac{Q}{2\pi(h_2 - h_1)} \ln\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right)$$

$$= \frac{42{,}400\ \text{ft}^3/\text{d}}{2\pi(32.56\ \text{ft} - 29.34\ \text{ft})} \ln\left(\frac{73\ \text{ft}}{26\ \text{ft}}\right)$$

$$= \frac{42{,}400}{20.2} \ln(2.81)\ \text{ft}^2/\text{d}$$

$$= 2170\ \text{ft}^2/\text{d}$$

5.5.2.2 Steady Radial Flow in an Unconfined Aquifer

Thiem also derived an equation for steady radial flow in an unconfined aquifer. In this instance the following assumptions are needed in addition to the general assumptions of Section 5.2.

1. The aquifer is unconfined and underlain by a horizontal aquiclude.
2. The well is pumped at a constant rate.
3. Equilibrium has been reached; that is, there is no further change in drawdown with time.

Radial flow in the unconfined aquifer is described by

$$Q = (2\pi rb)K\left(\frac{db}{dr}\right) \tag{5.45}$$

where

Q is the pumping rate (L^3/T)

r is the radial distance from the circular section to the well (L)

b is the saturated thickness of the aquifer (L)

K is the hydraulic conductivity (L/T)

db/dr is the hydraulic gradient (dimensionless)

Equation 5.45 can be rearranged as follows:

$$b\,db = \frac{Q}{2\pi K}\frac{dr}{r} \tag{5.46}$$

If there are two observation wells, the head is h_1 at a distance r_1 from the pumping well and it is h_2 at a distance r_2. We can integrate both sides of Equation 5.46 with these boundary conditions:

$$\int_{b_1}^{b_2} b\,db = \frac{Q}{2\pi K}\int_{r_1}^{r_2}\frac{dr}{r} \tag{5.47}$$

This can be solved to yield

$$b_2^2 - b_1^2 = \frac{Q}{\pi K}\ln\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right) \tag{5.48}$$

Equation 5.48 can be rearranged to yield the Thiem equation for an unconfined aquifer:

$$K = \frac{Q}{\pi(b_2^2 - b_1^2)}\ln\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right) \tag{5.49}$$

where

K is hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

Q is pumping rate (L^3/T; ft^3/d or m^3/d)

b_1 is saturated thickness at distance r_1 from the pumping well (L; ft or m)

b_2 is saturated thickness at distance r_2 from the pumping well (L; ft or m)

5.5.3 Nonequilibrium Flow Conditions

Many aquifer tests will never reach equilibrium; that is, the cone of depression will continue to grow with time. These are known as *nonequilibrium*, or *transient*, flow conditions. Analysis of the transient time-drawdown data from an observation well can be used to determine both the transmissivity and the storativity of an aquifer. If there is no observation well, the time-drawdown data from the pumping well can be used to determine aquifer transmissivity but not storativity.

5.5.3.1 Nonequilibrium Radial Flow in a Confined Aquifer—Theis Method

All assumptions are as before for radial flow in a confined aquifer. First we will recast the Theis equations to a different form.

Equation 5.12 can be rearranged as follows:

$$T = \frac{Q}{4\pi(h_0 - h)}W(u) \tag{5.50}$$

where

T is the aquifer transmissivity (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

Q is the steady pumping rate (L^3/T; ft^3/d or m^3/d)

h_0–h is the drawdown (L; ft or m)

$W(u)$ is the well function of u (dimensionless)

Also, Equation 5.10 can be rearranged as:

$$S = \frac{4Tut}{r^2} \tag{5.51}$$

where

T is aquifer transmissivity (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

S is aquifer storativity (dimensionless)

t is time since pumping began (T; d)

r is radial distance from the pumping well (L; ft or m)

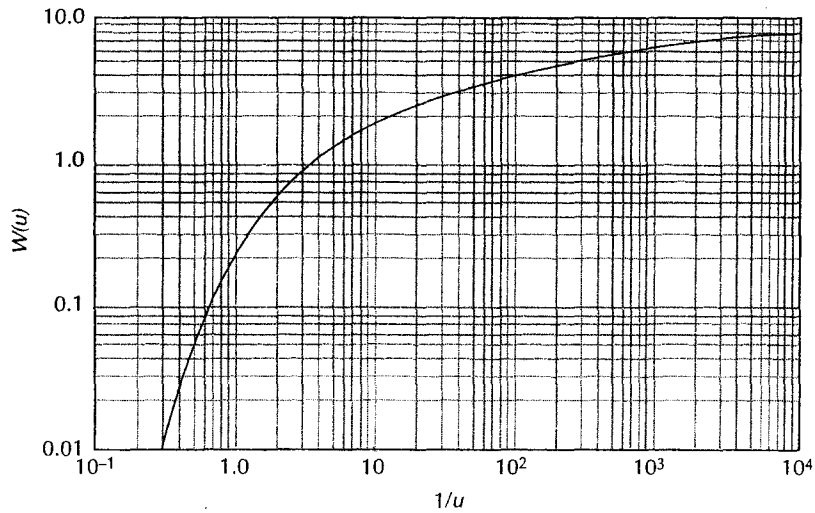
u is a dimensionless constant

An aquifer test consists of pumping a well at a constant rate for a period of time. The drawdown is measured as a function of time in one or more observation wells and, perhaps, the pumping well. The procedures for conducting aquifer tests are discussed in Section 5.10. The result of an aquifer test is a set of data with the drawdown given at various times after the start of pumping.

Theis developed a graphical means of solution to the Theis equations. The first step is to make a plot of $W(u)$ as a function of $1/u$ on full logarithmic paper. The type curve can be plotted by hand using the data in Appendix 1. If one has the proper graphing software, these data can also be plotted using a computer program. This graph has the shape of the cone of depression near the pumping well and is known as the **Theis type curve**, or the **reverse type curve**, or the **nonequilibrium type curve** (Figure 5.6).

Field data for drawdown, $(h_0–h)$, as a function of time, t, at an observation well are then plotted on logarithmic paper of the same scale as the type curve (Figure 5.7). The data points are not connected. Although the Theis equations call for time in days, it is usually more convenient to plot time in minutes, as it is often recorded in the field. A conversion to days can be made later.

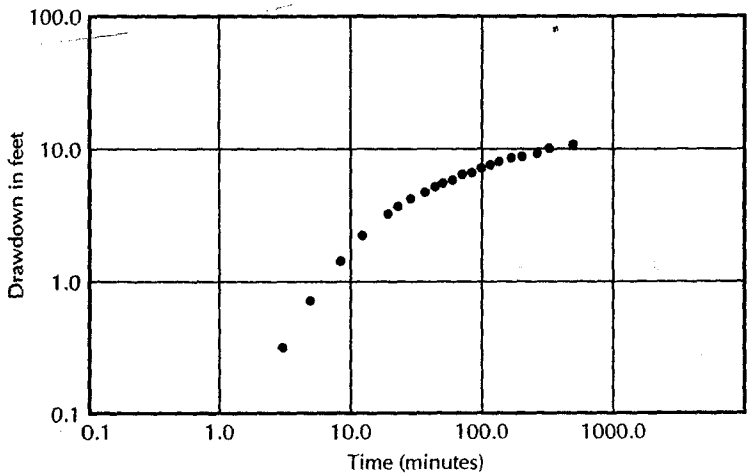
The graph paper with the type curve is taped to a light table. The graph paper with the field data is laid over the type curve, keeping the sets of axes parallel. The position of the



▲ FIGURE 5.6
The reverse nonequilibrium type curve (Theis curve) for a fully confined aquifer.

ld-data graph is adjusted until the data points overlie the type curve, with the axes of th graph sheets parallel (Figure 5.8).

A *match point* must then be selected. Any arbitrary point may be used; it does not have be on the type curve. In fact, the intersection of the line $W(u) = 1$ and the line $1/u = 1$ is particularly convenient match point. We need to find the value of (h_0-h) and the value of hat is on the graph paper immediately above the match point. These values do not need correspond to one of the field data points. A pin may be pushed through the two pieces f graph paper to find the exact match point.



▲ FIGURE 5.7
Field-data plot on logarithmic paper for Theis curve-matching technique.

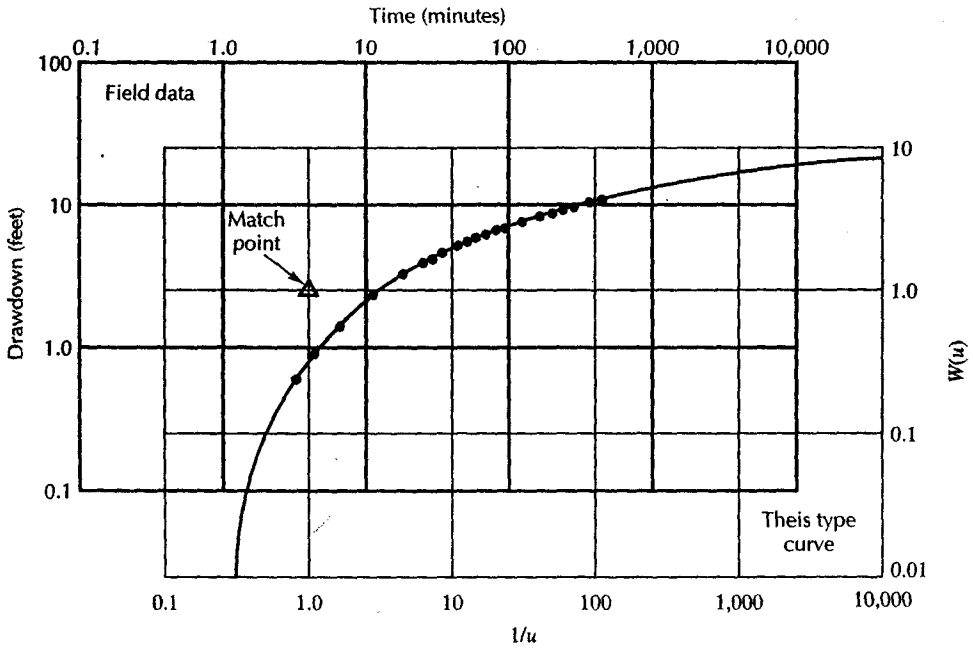


FIGURE 5.8
Match of field-data plot to Theis type curve.

From the match point we obtain a set of values for $W(u)$, $1/u$, (h_0-h), and t. The reciprocal of $1/u$ is u. The value of time determined from the match point is in minutes. This must now be converted to days by dividing by 1440 min/d. The pumping rate is known, as is the radial distance from the pumping well to the observation well.

The final step in solving the Theis equations is to substitute the values of Q, (h_0-h), and $W(u)$ from the match point into Equation 5.50 to find the transmissivity of the aquifer. Once T is known, its value along with r and t and u from the match point can be substituted into Equation 5.51 to find aquifer storativity.

If there are several observation wells, individual graphs of drawdown as a function of time can be made and each can be analyzed separately. The values for T and S determined for each observation well, and the value of T determined for the pumping well, can reveal how homogeneous the aquifer is.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A well in a confined aquifer was pumped at a rate of 220 gal/min for 500 min. The aquifer is 48 ft thick. Time-drawdown data from an observation well located 824 ft away are given in Table 5.1. Find T, K, and S.

The field data are plotted on logarithmic paper (Figure 5.7). The field-data graph is then placed upon the type curve graph (Figure 5.8). The following match point is obtained:

$$W(u) = 1$$
$$1/u = 1$$
$$h_0 - h = 2.4 \text{ ft}$$
$$t = 4.1 \text{ min}$$

Table 5.1

Time after pumping started (min)	Drawdown (ft)
3	0.3
5	0.7
8	1.3
12	2.1
20	3.2
24	3.6
30	4.1
38	4.7
47	5.1
50	5.3
60	5.7
70	6.1
80	6.3
90	6.7
100	7.0
130	7.5
160	8.3
200	8.5
260	9.2
320	9.7
380	10.2
500	10.9

First, time must be converted to days.

$$t = 4.1 \text{ min} \times 1/1440 \text{ d/min} = 2.9 \times 10^{-3} \text{ d}$$

Next the pumping rate of 220 gal/min must be converted to ft^3/d.

$$220 \text{ gal/min} \times 1/7.48 \text{ ft}^3/\text{gal} \times 1440 \text{ min/d} = 42{,}400 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}$$

Transmissivity is found from Equation 5.50.

$$T = \frac{Q}{4\pi(h_0 - h)} W(u)$$

$$= \frac{42{,}400 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}}{4 \times \pi \times 2.4 \text{ ft}}$$

$$= 1400 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d}$$

Hydraulic conductivity is transmissivity divided by aquifer thickness.

$$K = \frac{T}{b}$$

$$= \frac{1400 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d}}{48 \text{ ft}}$$

$$= 29 \text{ ft/d}$$

Storativity is found from Equation 5.51.

$$S = \frac{4Tut}{r^2}$$

$$= \frac{4 \times 1400 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d} \times 1 \times 2.9 \times 10^{-3} \text{ d}}{824 \text{ ft} \times 824 \text{ ft}}$$

$$= 2.4 \times 10^{-5}$$

5.5.3.2 Nonequilibrium Radial Flow in a Confined Aquifer—Cooper-Jacob Straight-Line Time-Drawdown Method

C. E. Jacob and H. H. Cooper (Cooper & Jacob 1946; Jacob 1950) observed that after the pumping well has been running for some time, u becomes small and the higher-power terms of the infinite series of Equation 5.11 become negligible. If u, $[(r^2S)/(4Tt)] < 0.05$, we can ignore all higher powers of u, and Equation 5.11 can be written as:

$$T = \frac{Q}{4\pi(h_0 - h)} \left[-0.5772 - \ln\left(\frac{r^2S}{4Tt}\right) \right] \tag{5.52}$$

$$T = \frac{Q}{4\pi(h_0 - h)} \left[-\ln(1.78) - \ln\left(\frac{r^2S}{4Tt}\right) \right] \tag{5.53}$$

Combining natural logs we obtain

$$T = \frac{Q}{4\pi(h_0 - h)} \ln\left(\frac{4Tt}{1.78r^2S}\right) \tag{5.54}$$

We can convert this to base 10 logs and simplify:

$$T = \frac{2.3Q}{4\pi(h_0 - h)} \log\left(\frac{2.25Tt}{r^2S}\right) \tag{5.55}$$

The logarithmic Equation 5.55 will plot as a straight line on semilogarithmic paper if the limiting condition is met. This may be true for large values of t or small values of r. Thus, straight-line plots of drawdown versus time can occur after sufficient time has elapsed. In pumping tests with multiple observation wells, the closer wells will meet the conditions before the more distant ones.

In the **Cooper-Jacob straight-line method,** a straight line is drawn through the field-data points and extended backward to the zero drawdown axis. It should intercept this axis at some positive value of time. This value is designated t_0. The value of the drawdown per log cycle $\Delta(h_0-h)$ is obtained from the slope of the graph. The values of transmissivity and storativity may be found from the equations

$$T = \frac{2.3Q}{4\pi\Delta(h_0 - h)} \tag{5.56}$$

and

$$S = \frac{2.25Tt_0}{r^2} \tag{5.57}$$

where

T is the transmissivity (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

Q is the pumping rate (L^3/T; ft^3/d or m^3/d)

$\Delta(h_0-h)$ is the drawdown per log cycle of time (L; ft or m)

S is storativity (dimensionless)

r is the radial distance to the well (L; ft or m)

t_0 is the time, where the straight line intersects the zero-drawdown axis (T; d)

Again, note that it is usually more convenient to plot drawdown as a function of time in minutes. The value of t_0 in minutes must be converted to days before it is used in Equation 5.57.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Evaluate the pumping test data of Table 5.1 by the Cooper-Jacob method.

The field data are plotted on semilogarithmic paper (Figure 5.9). A straight line is fit to the later time data and extended back to the zero-drawdown axis. The value of t_0 is 5.2 min, and the drawdown per log cycle of time is 5.5 ft.

First, t_0 must be converted to d.

$$5.2 \text{ min} \times 1/1440 \text{ d/min} = 3.6 \times 10^{-3} \text{ d}$$

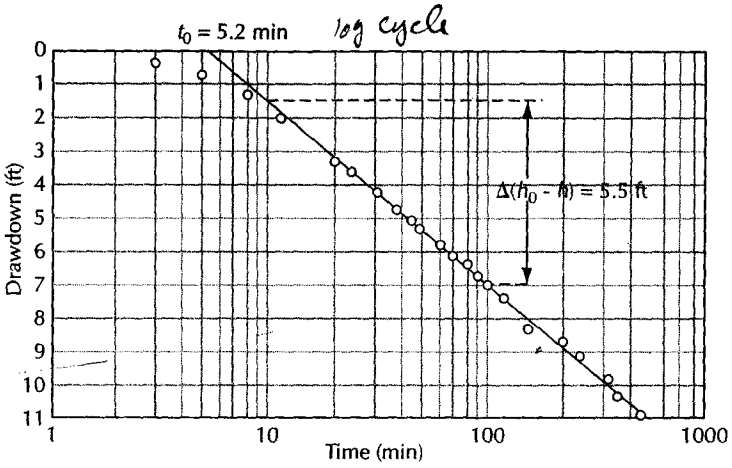
The pumping rate has already been determined to be 42,400 ft^3/day. Substituting into Equation 5.56 gives

$$T = \frac{2.3Q}{4\pi\Delta(h_0 - h)}$$

$$= \frac{2.3 \times 42{,}400 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}}{4 \times \pi \times 5.5 \text{ ft}}$$

$$= 1400 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d}$$

The value of T can be substituted into Equation 5.57 to find S:



▲ FIGURE 5.9
Cooper-Jacob method of solution of pumping-test data for a fully confined aquifer. Drawdown is plotted as a function of time on semilogarithmic paper.

$$S = \frac{2.25Tt_0}{r^2}$$

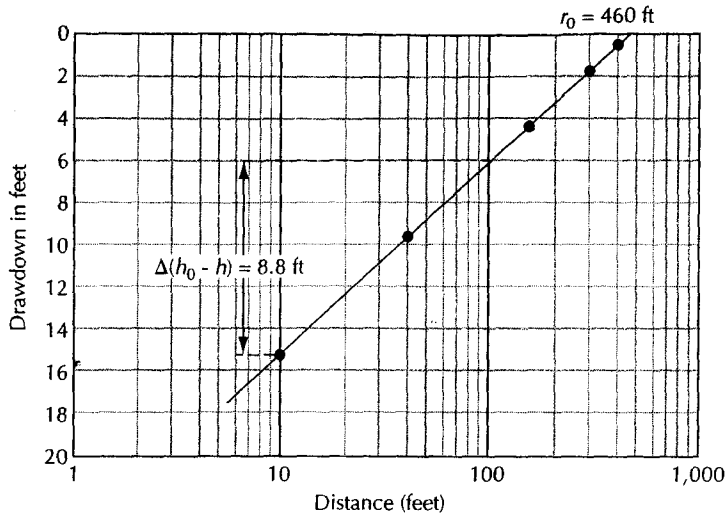
$$= \frac{2.25 \times 1400 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d} \times 3.6 \times 10^{-3} \text{ d}}{824 \text{ ft} \times 824 \text{ ft}}$$

$$= 1.7 \times 10^{-5}$$

In comparing the Cooper-Jacob solution with the Theis solution in the preceding prob-ems, we can see that the resulting answers are almost the same. As these are graphical nethods of solution, there will often be a slight variation in the answers, depending upon he accuracy of the graph construction and subjective judgments in matching field data to ype curves.

An aquifer test may be made even if no observation wells exist. In this case, drawdown ıust be measured in the pumping well. Energy losses occur as the water rushes into the ell, so that the head in the aquifer is higher than the water level in the pumping well. For ıis reason, aquifer storativity cannot be determined; however, a plot of drawdown versus me for the pumping well can be used to determine aquifer transmissivity. The Cooper-ıcob method is preferred for this analysis as it will remove the influence of factors that de-iate from the ideal, such as turbulent flow, well skins, and partial penetration (Butler 990). It is important that the well be pumped at a constant rate, as any slight fluctuations ill immediately affect the water level in the well. Likewise, drawdown data for the start of ımping are affected by the volume of water stored in the well casing. At the start of ımping, the water comes from storage within the well casing rather than from the aquifer, pecially if the well diameter is large with respect to the rate of pumping. The measured awdown data should be adjusted to compensate for this factor (Schafer 1978).

If, because of turbulent well losses as the water enters the well, the drawdown inside e well is significantly greater than the drawdown in the formation just outside the well, e of time-drawdown data from a single well pump test will understate the formation nsmissivity. This can be overcome by measuring the **recovery** of the water level in the ll after the pump has been shut down. Time-recovery data can then be plotted and the uifer transmissivity determined.



▲ FIGURE 5.10
Variation of the Jacob method of solution of pumping-test data for a fully confined aquifer. Drawdown is plotted as a function of distance to observation well on semilogarithmic paper.

Some methods of determining the aquifer parameters by methods other than curve matching have been developed. A discussion of these methods is found in Srivastava and Guzman-Guzman (1994).

5.5.3.3 Nonequilibrium Radial Flow in a Confined Aquifer—Jacob Straight-Line Distance-Drawdown Method

If simultaneous observations are made of the drawdown in three or more observation wells, a modification of the Jacob straight-line method may be used. If drawdown is measured at the same time in several wells, it is found to vary with the distance from the pumping well in accordance with the Theis equation. Drawdown is plotted on the arithmetic scale as a function of the distance from the pumping well on the logarithmic scale. The drawdown in the wells closest to the pumping well should fall on a straight line.

A line is drawn through the data points for the closest wells. It is extended until it intercepts the zero-drawdown line. This is the distance at which the well is not affecting the water level and is designated r_0. The drawdown per log cycle is $\Delta(h_0-h)$, as before (Figure 5.10).

Notice in Figure 5.10 the distance-drawdown data slope upward from left to right, whereas in Figure 5.9, the time-drawdown data slope downward from left to right. The greatest drawdown is close to the well, so in Figure 5.10 the drawdown becomes smaller as one goes away from the well, which is left to right on the graph. There is no drawdown before pumping starts; however, as time progresses, the drawdown and time increase, which occurs from left to right in Figure 5.9.

The distance drawdown formulas are:

$$T = \frac{2.3Q}{2\pi\Delta(h_0 - h)} \tag{5.58}$$

$$S = \frac{2.25Tt}{r_0^2} \tag{5.59}$$

here

T is transmissivity (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

Q is pumping rate (L^3/T; ft^3/d or m^3/d)

$\Delta(h_0-h)$ is drawdown per log cycle of distance (L; ft or m)

S is storativity (dimensionless)

t is time (T; d)

r_0 is the distance at which the straight line intercepts the zero-drawdown axis (L; ft or m)

XAMPLE PROBLEM

A well pumping at 77,000 ft^3/d has observation wells located 10, 40, 150, 300, and 400 ft away. After 0.14 day of pumping, the following drawdowns were observed:

Distance (ft)	Drawdown (ft)
10	15.1
40	9.4
150	4.4
300	1.7
400	0.25

The data are plotted in Figure 5.10. The drawdown per log cycle is 8.8 ft and r_0 is 460 ft. Find the values of T and S.

$$T = \frac{2.3Q}{2\pi\Delta(h_0 - h)}$$

$$= \frac{2.3 \times 77{,}000 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}}{2 \times \pi \times 8.8 \text{ ft}}$$

$$= 3200 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d}$$

$$S = \frac{2.25Tt}{r_0^2}$$

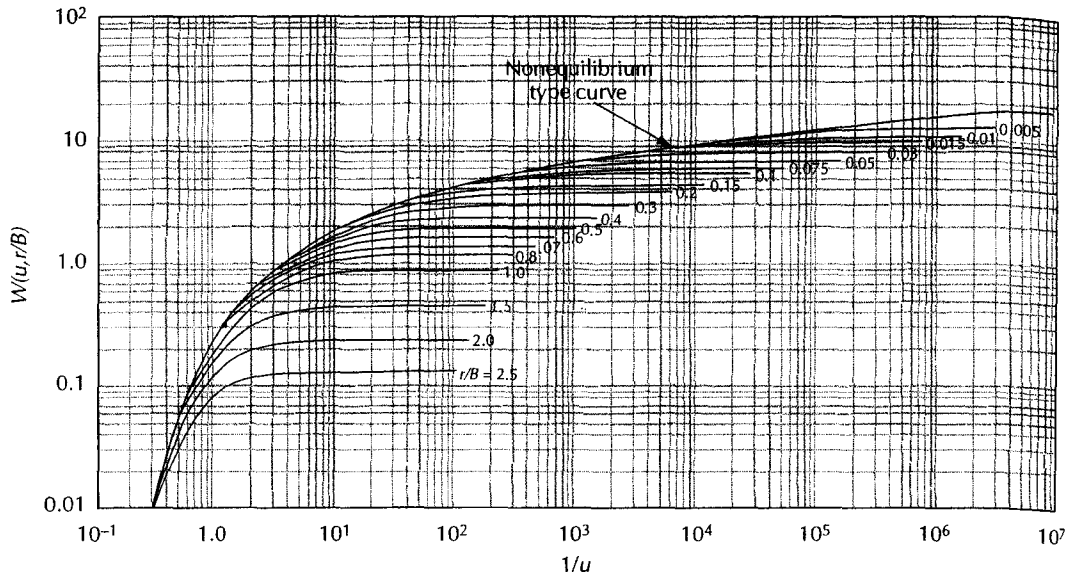
$$= \frac{2.25 \times 3200 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d} \times 0.14 \text{ d}}{460 \text{ ft} \times 460 \text{ ft}}$$

$$= 0.0048$$

3.4 Nonequilibrium Radial Flow in a Leaky, Confined Aquifer with No Storage in the Aquitard—Walton Graphical Method

ping tests may be used to determine the formation constants for both an aquifer and verlying or underlying semipervious layer of finite thickness. Leaky artesian aquifers lso known as **semiconfined aquifers.**

N. C. Walton (1960,1962) devised a graphical method based on type curves for r/B). The type curves are plots on logarithmic paper of $W(u, r/B)$ as a function of $1/u$ for



▲ FIGURE 5.11
Type curves of leaky artesian aquifer in which no water is released from storage in the confining layer. *Source: W. C. Walton,* Illinois State Water Survey Bulletin *49, 1962.*

various values of $1/u$ and r/B (Figure 5.11). The type curve for $r/B = 0$ is identical to the Theis nonequilibrium reverse type curve. Appendix 3 contains tabulated values for these curves.

Field data are plotted as drawdown versus time. The data curve is placed over the type curve with the axes parallel. The data curve should match one of the type curves for r/B; it may have to be matched to an imaginary line interpolated between two r/B lines.

The early drawdown data will tend to fall on the nonequilibrium portion of the type curve. As leakage starts to contribute to flow from the well, the drawdown will follow an r/B type curve.

A match point is picked on the graph. The coordinates on both the data plot and the type curve yield the values of $W(u, r/B)$, $1/u$, t, and h_0–h. In addition, the matched type curve yields a value for r/B. These values are substituted into the Hantush-Jacob equations to find formation constants for both the aquifer and the aquitard.

$$T = \frac{Q}{4\pi(h_0 - h)} W(u, r/B) \tag{5.60}$$

$$S = \frac{4Tut}{r^2} \tag{5.61}$$

$$r/B = r/(Tb'/K')^{1/2} \tag{5.62}$$

$$K' = [Tb'(r/B)^2]/r^2 \tag{5.63}$$

where

Q is the pumping rate (L^3/T; ft^3/d or m^3/d)

T is the transmissivity of the confined aquifer (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

t is the time since pumping began (T; d)

h_0–h is the drawdown (L; ft or m)

S is the storativity of the confined aquifer (dimensionless)

r is the distance from the pumping well to the observation well (L; ft or m)

K' is the vertical hydraulic conductivity of the aquitard (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

b' is the thickness of the aquitard (L; ft or m)

B is the leakage factor, $(Tb'/K')^{1/2}$ (L; ft or m)

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Walton (1960) gave time-drawdown data for an aquifer test in a well confined by a stratum of silty fine sand that was 14 ft thick (Table 5.2). Drawdown was measured in an observation well 96 ft from the pumping well, which was pumped at 25 gal/min. Using Walton's graphical method for the Hantush-Jacob formulas, find the values of T, S, and K'.

First a plot of drawdown as a function of time must be made. This is shown in Figure 5.12. The time-drawdown data are matched to an r/B curve. The match-point values are:

$$W(u, r/B) = 1.0$$
$$1/u = 10, \qquad u = 0.10$$
$$h_0 - h = 1.9 \text{ ft}$$
$$t = 33 \text{ min}$$
$$r/B = 0.22$$

Next we must convert gallons per minute to cubic feet per day and time in minutes to time in days.

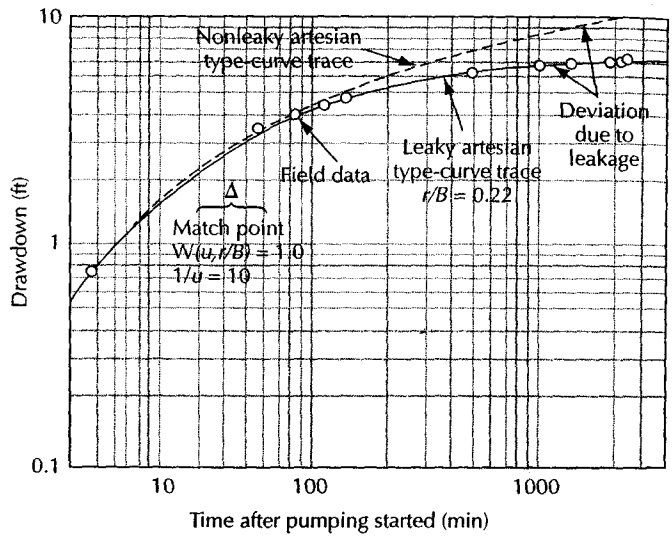
$$Q = 25 \text{ gal/min} \times 1/7.48 \text{ ft}^3/\text{gal} \times 1440 \text{ min/d} = 4800 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}$$
$$t = 33 \text{ min} \times 1/1440 \text{ d/min} = 0.023 \text{ d}$$

The match-point values, Q and r, are substituted into Equations 5.60, 5.61, and 5.63.

$$T = \frac{Q}{4\pi(h_0 - h)} W(u, r/B)$$
$$= \frac{4800 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}}{4 \times \pi \times 1.9 \text{ ft}} \times 1$$
$$= 200 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d}$$
$$S = \frac{4Tut}{r^2}$$
$$= \frac{4 \times 200 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d} \times 0.10 \times 0.023 \text{ d}}{96 \text{ ft} \times 96 \text{ ft}}$$
$$= 0.00020$$
$$K' = \frac{Tb'(r/B)^2}{r^2}$$
$$= \frac{200 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d} \times 14 \text{ ft} \times 0.22^2}{96 \text{ ft} \times 96 \text{ ft}}$$
$$= 0.015 \text{ ft/d}$$

Table 5.2

Time (min)	Drawdown (ft)
5	0.76
28	3.30
41	3.59
60	4.08
75	4.39
244	5.47
493	5.96
669	6.11
958	6.27
1129	6.40
1185	6.42

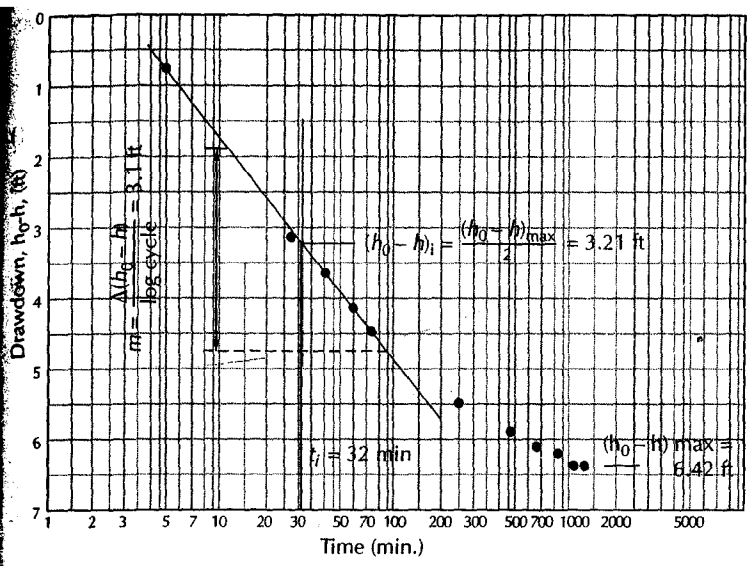


► FIGURE 5.12
Field-data plot of drawdown as a function of time for a leaky, confined aquifer. *Source: W. C. Walton,* Illinois State Water Survey Bulletin *49, 1962.*

5.5.3.5 Nonequilibrium Radial Flow in a Leaky, Confined Aquifer with No Storage in the Aquitard—Hantush Inflection-Point Method

M. S. Hantush (1956) developed an alternative method that does not require the plotting and use of type curves. As can be seen from Figure 5.13, a plot of drawdown versus time on semilogarithmic paper has the shape of an elongated reverse S. At some point, the curve has an inflection. In the *Hantush inflection-point method,* the solution is based on finding this inflection point. For a pumping test with one observation well, the following procedure is used:

1. Plot the drawdown on the arithmetic scale as a function of time since pumping began on the logarithmic scale. If the test has reached equilibrium, then determine the maximum drawdown, $(h_0–h)_{max}$. If drawdown is still occurring, extrapolate the curve to find $(h_0–h)_{max}$.
2. The drawdown at the inflection point, $(h_0–h)_i$, is defined as being equal to one-half the maximum drawdown.



▲ FIGURE 5.13
Plot of drawdown in a confined aquifer as a function of time on semilogarithmic paper for use in the Hantush inflection-point method of analysis.

3. From the graph, determine the time, t_i, when $(h_0–h)_i$ occurs; also graphically find the slope of the drawdown curve at the inflection point (m_i). This is generally equal to the slope of the straight portion of the drawdown curve. The slope is expressed as drawdown per log cycle.

The following relations hold true for the inflection point:

$$u_i = \frac{r^2 S}{4 t_i T} = \frac{r}{2B} \tag{5.64}$$

$$m_i = \left(\frac{2.3Q}{4\pi T}\right)\exp\left(\frac{-r}{B}\right) \tag{5.65}$$

$$(h_0 - h)_i = 0.5\,(h_0 - h)_{\max} = \frac{Q}{4\pi T} K_0\,(r/B) \tag{5.66}$$

$$B = \left(\frac{T}{K'/b'}\right)^{1/2} \tag{5.67}$$

$$f\left(\frac{r}{B}\right) = \frac{2.3(h_0 - h)_i}{m_i} = \exp\left(\frac{r}{B}\right) K_0\left(\frac{r}{B}\right) \tag{5.68}$$

where K_0 is a function with values tabulated in Appendix 5 as $K_0(x)$ and $\exp(x)K_0(x)$.

From the drawdown and slope at the inflection point, the value of $f(r/B)$ may be found:

$$f(r/B) = 2.3(h_0 - h)_i / m_i \tag{5.69}$$

Knowing the value of $f(r/B)$, the function tables may be used to find the value of r/B, nce $f(x) = \exp(x)K_0(x)$. Since r is known, the value of B may easily be found.

The transmissivity may be found from the relation

$$T = \frac{QK_0(r/B)}{2\pi(h_0 - h)_{\max}} \tag{5.70}$$

where K_0 is a Bessel function, known as a zero-order modified Bessel function of the second kind (see Appendix 5).

The value of the storativity is found from

$$S = 4t_i T/2rB \tag{5.71}$$

The conductivity of the semipervious layer may be determined if its thickness, b', is known:

$$K' = \frac{Tb'}{B^2} \tag{5.72}$$

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Check the graphical solution for the time-drawdown data found in Table 5.2 by using the Hantush inflection-point method. The pumping rate is 4800 ft^3/day, and the radial distance is 96 ft. Table 5.2 data are plotted on semilogarithmic paper (Figure 5.13). The following values are obtained from the graph:

$$(h_0 - h)_{max} = 6.42 \text{ ft}$$
$$(h_0 - h)_i = 3.21 \text{ ft}$$
$$t_i = 32 \text{ min}$$
$$m_i = 3.10 \text{ ft}$$

First convert t_i in minutes to t_i in days.

$$t_i = 32 \text{ min} \times 1/1440 \text{ d/min} = 0.022 \text{ d}$$

From Equation 5.69, $f(r/B) = 2.3(h_0 - h)_i/m_i$:

$$f(r/B) = (2.3 \times 3.21 \text{ ft})/(3.10 \text{ ft})$$
$$= 2.38$$

From Equation 5.68, we know that $f(r/B) = \exp(r/B)K_0(r/B)$; therefore, $\exp(r/B)K_0(r/B) = 2.38$. Values of this function are tabulated in Appendix 5, a portion of which is reproduced here. The value of $\exp(x)K_0(x)$, which is 2.38, falls between 2.36 and 2.68.

x	$K_0(x)$	$\exp(x)K_0(x)$
0.10	2.43	2.68
0.15	2.03	2.36

If we interpolate between these two lines, we obtain these values:

x	$K_0(x)$	$\exp(x)K_0(x)$
0.147	2.055	2.38

This gives us a value for $K_0(r/B)$ of 2.055 and for r/B of 0.147. If $r/B = 0.147$ and $r = 96$ ft, then $B = (96 \text{ ft})/(0.147) = 653$ ft.

Substituting these values into Equations 5.70, 5.71, and 5.72, we obtain the hydraulic parameters of the aquifer and aquitard.

$$T = \frac{Q}{2\pi(h_0 - h)_{max}} K_0(r/B)$$

$$= \frac{4800 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}}{2 \times \pi \times 6.42 \text{ ft}} \times 2.055$$

$$= 240 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d}$$

$$S = \frac{4t_i T}{2rB}$$

$$= \frac{4 \times 0.022 \text{ d} \times 240 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d}}{2 \times 96 \text{ ft} \times 653 \text{ ft}}$$

$$= 0.00017$$

$$K' = \frac{Tb'}{B^2}$$

$$= \frac{240 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d} \times 14 \text{ ft}}{653 \text{ ft} \times 653 \text{ ft}}$$

$$= 0.0079 \text{ ft/d}$$

We can compare the parameters obtained by the two methods:

	T	S	K'
Walton graphical	200 ft²/d	0.00020	0.015 ft/d
Hantush inflection point	240 ft²/d	0.00017	0.0079 ft/d

The values for T and S are reasonably close, being within 20%; however, the value of K' is off by nearly 50%.

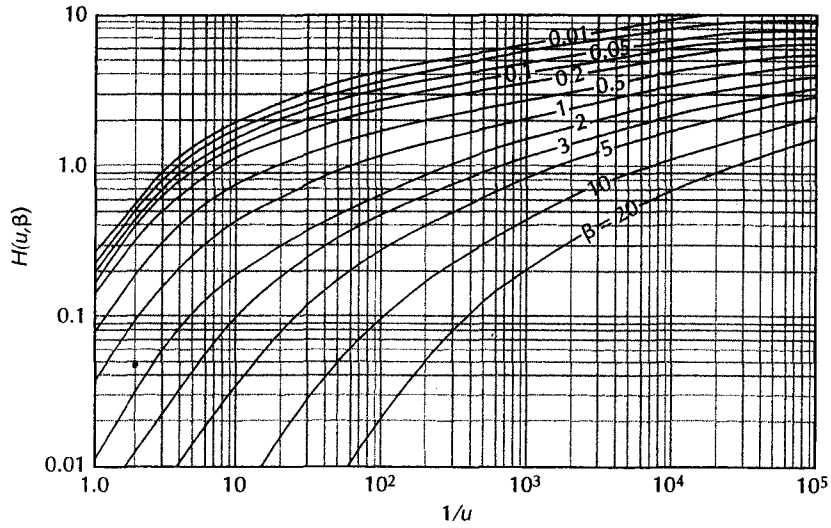
5.4 Nonequilibrium Radial Flow in a Leaky Aquifer with Storage in the Aquitard

ype curve method can also be used for the leaky, confined aquifer with storage in the ifining layer. A set of type curves on logarithmic paper are prepared from the tabulated ues of $H(u, \beta)$ (Figure 5.14). On logarithmic paper of similar scale, drawdown is plotted inst time. The field-data sheet is overlain on the type curves with the $H(u, \beta)$-axis paral- o the drawdown axis, and it is matched to a β-curve. A match point is selected and val- of $H(u, \beta)$, $1/u$, drawdown, and time are obtained. The value of the curve is also noted. From the match-point value of $H(u, \beta)$ and h_0–h, the value of T is found from:

$$T = \frac{Q}{4\pi(h_0 - h)} H(u, \beta) \tag{5.73}$$

S may be found from the match-point values of t, $1/u$, the measured value of r, and the puted value of T:

$$S = \frac{4Tut}{r^2} \tag{5.74}$$



▲ FIGURE 5.14
Type curves for a well in an aquifer confined by a leaky layer that releases water from storage. *Source: Data from M. S. Hantush,* Journal of Geophysical Research *65 (1960): 3713–25; type curves from W. C. Walton,* Groundwater Resource Evaluation *(New York: McGraw-Hill, 1970).*

The value of β can be used to compute the product $K'S'$:

$$\beta^2 = \frac{r^2 S'}{16B^2 S} \tag{5.75}$$

$$B^2 = T/(K'/b') \tag{5.76}$$

Combining Equations 5.75 and 5.76,

$$K'S' = \frac{16\beta^2 T b' S}{r^2} \tag{5.77}$$

If one of the values, either K' or S', is known, the value of the other can be found.

5.5.5 Nonequilibrium Radial Flow in an Unconfined Aquifer

A graphical method for analysis of an aquifer test in an unconfined aquifer has also been developed (Neuman 1975; Streltsova 1976a; Walton 1979). This analysis is based upon the general assumptions of Section 5.2 and the specific assumptions of Section 5.4.3.

The flow equation for unconfined aquifers is

$$T = \frac{Q}{4\pi(h_0 - h)} W(u_A, u_B, \Gamma)] \tag{5.78}$$

where $W(u_A, u_B, \Gamma)$ is the well function for the water-table aquifer and

$$S = \frac{4Tu_A t}{r^2} \text{ (for early drawdown data)} \tag{5.79}$$

$$S_y = \frac{4Tu_B t}{r^2} \text{(for later drawdown data)} \tag{5.80}$$

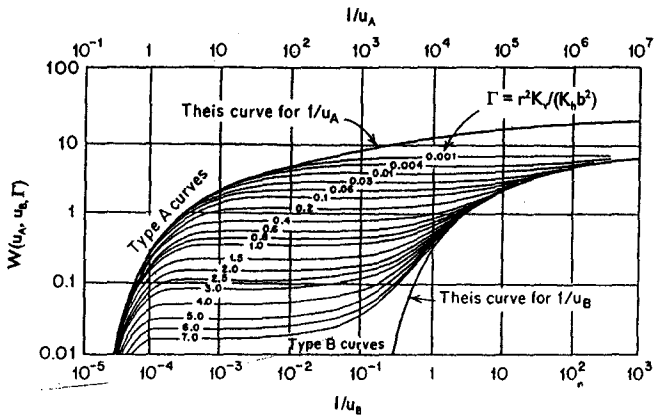


FIGURE 5.15
e curves for drawdown data from fully penetrating wells in an unconfined aquifer.
rce: S. P. Neuman, Water Resources Research *11 (1975):329–42. Used with permission.*

$$\Gamma = \frac{r^2 K_v}{b^2 K_h} \tag{5.81}$$

ere

h_0–h is the drawdown (L; ft or m)

Q is the pumping rate (L^3/T; ft^3/d or m^3/d)

T is the transmissivity (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

r is the radial distance from the pumping well (L; ft or m)

S is the storativity (dimensionless)

S_y is the specific yield (dimensionless)

t is the time (T; d)

K_h is the horizontal hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

K_v is the vertical hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d or m/d)

b is the initial saturated thickness of the aquifer (L; ft or m)

Two sets of type curves are used. Type-A curves are good for early drawdown data, en instantaneous release of water from storage is occurring. As time elapses, the effects gravity drainage and vertical flow cause deviations from the nonequilibrium type ve, which is accounted for in the family of Type-A curves. The Type-B curves are used late drawdown data, when effects of gravity drainage are becoming smaller. The Type-B ves end on a Theis curve. Figure 5.15 shows the two sets of type curves for fully pene- ing wells. Values of $W(u_A, \Gamma)$ and $W(u_B, \Gamma)$ are found in Appendix 6.

The type curves are then used to evaluate the field data for time and drawdown, ch are plotted on logarithmic paper of the same scale as the type curve. The following :edure can be used (Gambolati 1976):

. Superimpose the early time-drawdown data on the Type-A curves. The axes of the graph papers should be parallel and the data matched to the curve with the best fit. At any match point, the values of $W(u_A, \Gamma)$, $1/u_A$, t, and h_0–h are determined. The

value of Γ comes from the type curve. The value of T is found using these values and Equation 5.78. The storativity is found from Equation 5.79.

2. The latest drawdown data are then superposed on the Type-B curve for the Γ value of the previously matched Type-A curve. A new set of match points is determined. The value of T calculated from Equation 5.78 should be approximately equal to that computed from the Type-A curve. Equation 5.80 can be used to compute the specific yield.
3. The value of the horizontal hydraulic conductivity can be determined from

$$K_h = T/b \tag{5.82}$$

4. The value of the vertical hydraulic conductivity can also be computed using the Γ value of the matched type curve. Rearrangement of Equation 5.81 yields the following formula:

$$K_v = \frac{\Gamma b^2 K_h}{r^2} \tag{5.83}$$

The preceding analysis is based on a very low value of drawdown compared with the saturated thickness of the aquifer. If the drawdown is substantial, some authorities (Neuman 1974) suggest that the drawdown data be corrected. The corrected drawdown $(h_0-h)'$ is found from the following relation (Hantush 1956)

$$(h_0 - h)' = (h_0 - h) - [(h_0 - h)^2/2b] \tag{5.84}$$

This is normally necessary only for the later time-drawdown data; if h_0-h is small compared with b, correction will not be needed.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A well pumping at 1000 gal/min fully penetrates an unconfined aquifer with an initial saturated thickness of 100 ft. Time-drawdown data for a well located 200 ft away are plotted on log paper (Figure 5.16). Find T, S_y, S, K_h, and K_v.

The value of the pumping rate is

$$Q = 1000 \text{ gal/min} \times 1/7.48 \text{ ft}^3/\text{gal} \times 1440 \text{ min/d} = 1.9 \times 10^5 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d}$$

The early-time drawdown data fit best on the Type-A curve for $\Gamma = 0.1$. The selected match point is $W(u_A, \Gamma) = 0.1$, $1/u_A = 1.0$, $h_0-h = 0.041$ ft, and $t = 0.9$ min. The value of u_A is 1.0 and $t = 6.25 \times 10^{-4}$ d. From Equation 5.78,

$$T = \frac{Q}{4\pi(h_0 - h)} W(u_A, \Gamma)$$

$$= \frac{1.9 \times 10^5 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d} \times 0.1}{4 \times \pi \times 0.041 \text{ ft}}$$

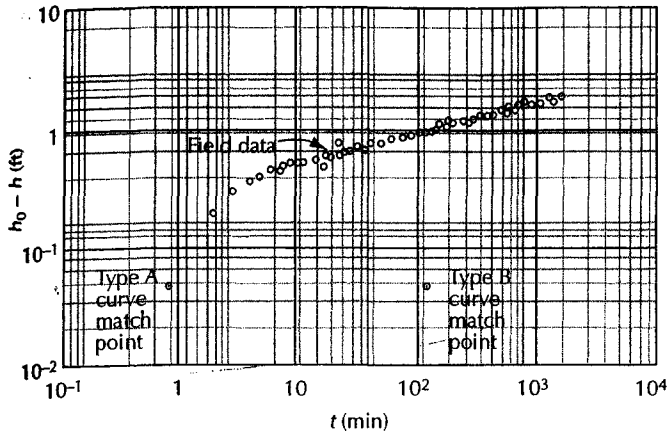
$$= 3.7 \times 10^4 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d}$$

The storativity value is found from Equation 5.79.

$$S = \frac{4Tu_A t}{r^2}$$

$$= \frac{4 \times 3.7 \times 10^4 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d} \times 6.25 \times 10^{-4} \text{ d} \times 1.0}{(200 \text{ ft})^2}$$

$$= 0.0023$$



◀ FIGURE 5.16
Field data for Example Problem of analysis of aquifer test for an unconfined aquifer.

The later-time-drawdown data are now matched to the Type-B curve for $\Gamma = 0.1$. With the axes of the two sheets of graph paper parallel, the selected match point has values of $W(u_B, \Gamma) = 0.1$, $1/u_B = 10$, $h_0 - h = 0.043$ ft, and $t = 128$ min. The value of u_B is 0.1 and $t = 0.089$ d. From Equation 5.78,

$$T = \frac{Q}{4\pi(h_0 - h)} W(u_B, \Gamma)$$

$$= \frac{1.9 \times 10^5 \text{ ft}^3/\text{d} \times 0.1}{4 \times \pi \times 0.043 \text{ ft}}$$

$$= 3.5 \times 10^4 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d}$$

The value of the specific yield can be determined from Equation 5.80:

$$S_y = \frac{4Tu_B t}{r^2}$$

$$= \frac{4 \times 3.5 \times 10^4 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d} \times 0.089 \text{ d} \times 0.1}{(200 \text{ ft})^2}$$

$$= 0.031$$

The value of the horizontal hydraulic conductivity can be found from Equation 5.82. The average of T is 3.6×10^4 ft^2 per d:

$$K_h = T/b$$

$$= (3.6 \times 10^4 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d})/100 \text{ ft}$$

$$= 360 \text{ ft/d}$$

and the value of K_v is determined using Equation 5.83:

$$K_v = \frac{\Gamma b^2 K_h}{r^2}$$

$$= \frac{0.1 \times (100 \text{ ft})^2 \times 360 \text{ ft/d}}{(200 \text{ ft})^2}$$

$$= 9.0 \text{ ft/d}$$

The type curve analysis of pumping test data from unconfined aquifers has on occasion resulted in specific yield data that appear to be too low. The Neuman method of analysis has the assumption that as the water table is lowered, the water drains instantaneously.

Moench (1994) analyzed three sets of aquifer test data from aquifers with widely varying hydraulic conductivity. His conclusion was that the type curve method gave reasonable specific yield values if the following conditions were met.

1. The analysis was done properly.
2. Drawdown data for all observations wells are plotted on one composite time-drawdown graph to find a single match point.
3. Effects of partial penetration of the observation wells are included.

Moench (1994) points out that an aquifer test will in general result in a specific yield that is less than a laboratory-derived value since the lab test can be run long enough for the sample to fully drain, while an aquifer test is of necessity time-limited.

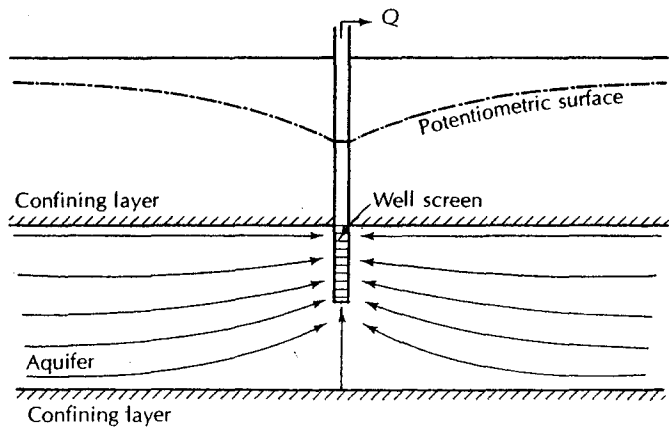
5.5.6 Effect of Partial Penetration of Wells

In many cases, the open hole or well screen of a pumping well does not extend from the top to the bottom of an aquifer. In all cases considered thus far, we assumed the well to penetrate the entire thickness of the aquifer. This caused flow in the aquifer to be essentially horizontal. However, the flow toward a partially penetrating well will be three-dimensional owing to the vertical flow components (Figure 5.17). In addition, if the aquifer is anisotropic, the value of the vertical conductivity, K_v, and the horizontal conductivity, K_h, are important. This will affect both the amount of water pumped from the well and the potential field caused by drawdown.

If an observation well completely penetrates an aquifer, or if a partially penetrating well is located more than $1.5b\sqrt{K_h/K_v}$ distance units from the pumped well, the effect of a partial-penetrating pumping well is negligible (Hantush 1964). The drawdown is described by either the Hantush-Jacob formula for leaky aquifers or the Theis formula for nonleaky aquifers.

If, however, the pumping well is partially penetrating, and the observation wells are also partially penetrating and located closer to the pumping well than $1.5b\sqrt{K_h/K_v}$ distance units, then the drawdown formula is different and quite complex. Hantush (1964) makes the following observations about the drawdown in observation wells in such cases.

1. If two observation wells equidistant from the pumping well are screened in different parts of the aquifer, the time-drawdown curves may be different.



▲ FIGURE 5.17
Flow lines toward a partially penetrating well in a confined aquifer.

2. Depending upon the length and relative position of observation-well screens, it is possible for a more distant well to have a greater drawdown than a closer well.
3. The effects of partial penetration produce a time-drawdown curve similar in shape to one produced when there is a downward leakage from storage through a thick, semipervious layer.
4. Partial-penetration effects may produce a time-drawdown curve that resembles the effect of a recharge boundary, a fully penetrating well in either a sloping water-table aquifer or an aquifer of nonuniform thickness.

The preceding observations suggest that the hydrogeologist must always use extreme care in collecting and interpreting pumping-test data. Test drilling should be used to delineate the aquifer system before the pumping test. If a pumping test is to be made on a partially penetrating well, fully penetrating observation wells or wells located at a distance of more than $1.5b\sqrt{K_h/K_v}$ would be desirable. The analysis of partial-penetrating effects is beyond the scope of this book. The hydrogeologist who must deal with this problem can use the *Hantush partial-penetration method* (Hantush 1961). Using partially penetrating wells, it is also possible to run pumping tests that determine the value of both horizontal and vertical conductivity of the confining layer and the storativity of both the aquifer and the confining layer (Hantush 1960a, 1966; Weeks 1969; Boulton & Streltsova 1975).

The pumping-test solutions given in the preceding sections are all based on some simplifying assumptions that may not be valid in certain circumstances. For leaky artesian aquifer flow, the assumption that the storage in the confining bed is negligible may be erroneous (Hantush 1960b; Neuman & Witherspoon 1969). The effect of storage in the confining layer occurs early in the pumping test, as leakage water is being furnished from storage in the confining layer. With increasing time, more of the leakage is being contributed by the aquifer above the leaky, confining layer, and the amount of water from storage diminishes. If analysis of pumping-test data for a leaky artesian aquifer does not follow an r/B-curve for early drawdown data, significant flow from storage should be suspected and an alternative analysis made (Hantush 1960b; Neuman & Witherspoon 1969; Boulton & Streltsova 1975; Streltsova 1976b; Gambolati 1977).

The Theis solution may overestimate the value of the storativity of shallow elastic aquifers. If the ratio of the average depth of a confined aquifer to its thickness is less than 0.5, the overestimation can be as great as 40% owing to three-dimensional consolidation of the aquifer (Neuman & Witherspoon 1969). If the average depth-to-thickness ratio is 1.0 or more, then the Theis solution is valid even for deforming aquifers.

Neuman (1974) points out that the effects of partial penetration of a well pumping from a water-table aquifer can be minimized if the observation well fully penetrates the saturated thickness of the aquifer. Under these conditions the time-drawdown curve for observation wells located at distances greater than $r = b/(K_v/K_h)^{1/2}$ and for times greater than $t = S_y/r^2T$ will follow the late-time Theis curve. The time-drawdown curve for observation wells located at distances less than $r = 0.03b/(K_v/K_r)^{1/2}$ and for times less than $t = Sr^2/T$ will follow the early-time Theis curve. Thus, wells located some distance from the partially penetrating pumping well can be utilized with late-time-drawdown data to find T and S_y, and close wells can be utilized with early-time-drawdown data to find T and S. Intermediate-distance wells are of no use in the analysis of an aquifer test performed on a partially penetrating well in an unconfined aquifer.

ASTM Standard D 5473-93 gives a complete explanation of how one analyzes the effects of partial penetration of the pumping well in a nonleaky confined aquifer. Standard D 5850-95 is a method used to determine the transmissivity, storage coefficient, and anisotropy ratio for a network of at least four partial-penetrating observation wells around a partial-penetrating pumping well. Schafer (1998) also has developed a method

of determining the vertical anisotropy ratio for a leaky confined aquifer. The Neuman method for anisotropic unconfined aquifers with partial penetration of both pumping and observation wells is described in ASTM Standard D 5920-96. Other ASTM standards cover some of the basic aquifer analysis methods presented in this text.

5.6 Slug Tests

5.6.1 Determination of Aquifer Parameters with Slug Tests

Aquifer tests are expensive to conduct, both in terms of the cost of installation of the pumping well and observation well(s) and also in terms of the personnel time needed. Moreover, if the water in the aquifer is contaminated, it may be necessary to treat it prior to disposal. This may not be feasible.

In some field investigations the practicing hydrogeologist may need to know the hydraulic conductivity of low-permeability materials. This is especially likely in site studies for areas of potential waste storage or disposal. The earth materials in these areas may have a hydraulic conductivity that is too low to conduct a pumping test.

As an alternative to an aquifer test, a **slug** or **bail-down test** can be performed in a small-diameter monitoring well. This type of test can be used to determine the hydraulic conductivity of the formation in the immediate vicinity of a monitoring well. A known volume of water is quickly drawn from or added to the monitoring well. The rate at which the water level falls or rises is measured. These data are then analyzed by an appropriate method.

When the water level in a small-diameter well is disturbed, there are several possible responses. The water level may recover to the initial static level in a smooth manner that is approximately exponential. This response is termed *overdamped.* A second response is for the water level to oscillate about the static-water level with the magnitude of oscillation decreasing with time until the oscillations cease. This response is termed *underdamped.* It is most likely to occur in wells that have a long water column and wells that are screened in a highly transmissive aquifer. In selecting the proper method of analysis, the response of the water level to the initial change in head must be considered.

5.6.2 Overdamped Response Slug Tests

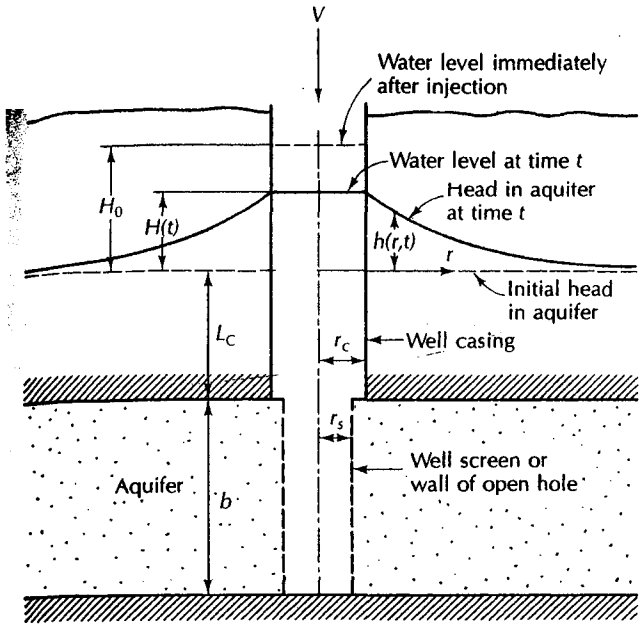
5.6.2.1 Cooper-Bredehoeft-Papadopulos Method for a Confined Aquifer

In the Cooper-Bredehoeft-Papadopulos (1967) method, a confined aquifer is completely penetrated by an open borehole or a well screen. A known volume of water is poured into the well in a time frame of a few seconds. This causes the water to rise to a maximum height, H_0 (L; ft, m, or cm), above the initial head. The excess head will then decay as the water drains from the well into the formation. As the water level falls, the height of the water level above the original elevation, H(L; ft, m, or cm), is measured with respect to time, t (T; s). See Figure 5.18.

We do not need to pour water into the well. The water in the well can be displaced by rapidly lowering a solid piece of pipe, or slug, on a line into the well. The volume of the slug will displace an equal volume of water, which must flow into the formation. Also, the well can be bailed to remove a volume of water, in which case the water level will rise rather than fall.

A plot of the ratio of the measured head to the head after injection (H/H_0) is made as a function of time. The ratio H/H_0 is on the arithmetic scale, and time is on the logarithmic scale of semilogarithmic paper. The ratio H/H_0 is equal to a defined function:

$$H/H_0 = F(\eta, \mu) \tag{5.85}$$



◀ FIGURE 5.18
Well into which a volume, *V*, of water is suddenly injected for a slug test of a confined aquifer. *Source: H. H. Cooper, Jr., J. D. Bredehoeft, & I. S. Papadopulos,* Water Resources Research *3 (1967): 263–9. Used with permission.*

where

$$\eta = Tt/r_c^2 \tag{5.86}$$

and

$$\mu = r_s^2 S/r_c^2 \tag{5.87}$$

If time is measured in seconds and all dimensions are in centimeters, then the value of T will be in cm^2/s. If time is in seconds and all dimensions are in feet, then T will be in ft^2/s.

$F(\eta, \mu)$ is a function, the values of which are given in tabulated form in Appendix 2 (Papadopulos, Bredehoeft, & Cooper 1973). The tabulated values are plotted as a series of type curves in Figure 5.19. The field data should be plotted on the same-scale semilogarithmic paper as the type curves.

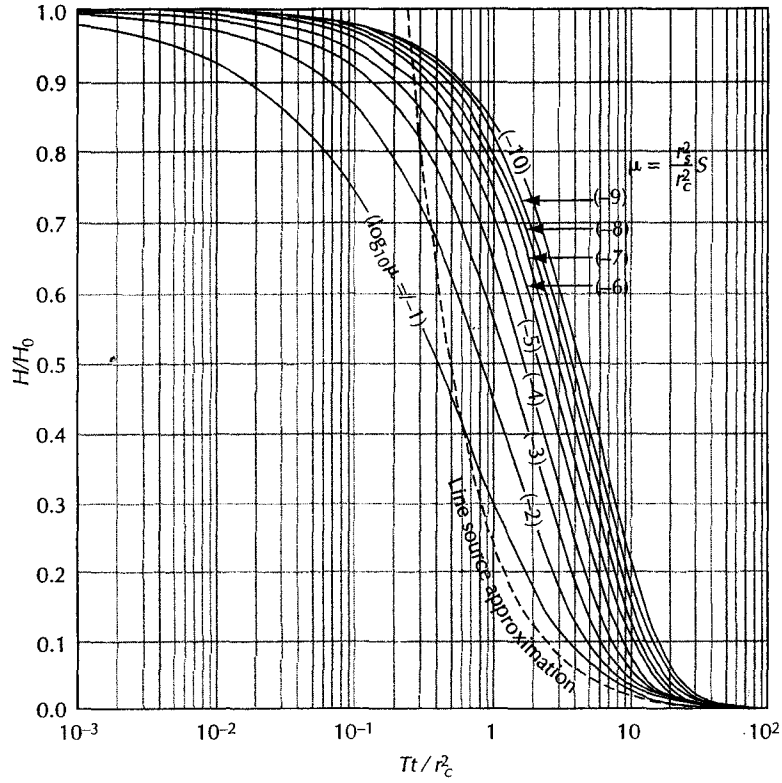
The field-data curve is placed over the type curves with the arithmetic axis coincident. That is, the value of $H/H_0 = 1$ for the field data lies on the horizontal axis of 1.0 on the type curve. The data are matched to the type curve (μ), which has the same curvature. The vertical time-axis, t_1, which overlays the vertical axis for $Tt/r_c^2 = 1.0$, is selected. The transmissivity is found from

$$T = \frac{1.0 r_c^2}{t_1} \tag{5.88}$$

The value of storativity can be found from the value of the μ-curve for the field data. Since $\mu = (r_s^2/r_c^2)S$,

$$S = (r_c^2 \mu)/r_s^2 \tag{5.89}$$

For small values of μ, however, the curves are often very similar; therefore, in matching the field data, the question of which μ value to use is often encountered. The use of this method to estimate storativity should be approached with caution. Likewise, the value of T that is determined is representative of the formation only in the immediate vicinity of the test hole.



▲ FIGURE 5.19
Type curves for slug test in a well of finite diameter. *Source: S. S. Papadopulos, J. D. Bredehoeft, and H. H. Cooper, Jr.,* Water Resources Research *9 (1973): 1087–89. Used with permission.*

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A casing with a radius of 7.6 cm is installed through a confining layer. A screen with a radius of 5.1 cm is installed in a formation with a thickness of 5 m. A slug of water is injected, raising the water level 0.42 m. The decline of the head is given in Table 5.3. Find the values of T, K, and S.

A plot of H/H_0 as a function of t is made on semilogarithmic paper (Figure 5.20). It is overlain on the type curve (Figure 5.19). At the axis for $Tt/r^2 = 1.0$, the value t_1 is 13 s.

$$T = \frac{1.0 r_c^2}{t_1}$$

$$= \frac{1.0 \times (7.6\ \text{cm})^2}{13\ \text{s}}$$

$$= 4.4\ \text{cm}^2/\text{s}$$

$$K = T/b$$

$$= 4.4\ \text{cm}^2/\text{s}/500\ \text{cm}$$

$$= 8.8 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{cm/s}$$

The μ-curve is 10^{-3}. With $r_c = 7.6$ cm and $r_s = 5.1$ cm, we find

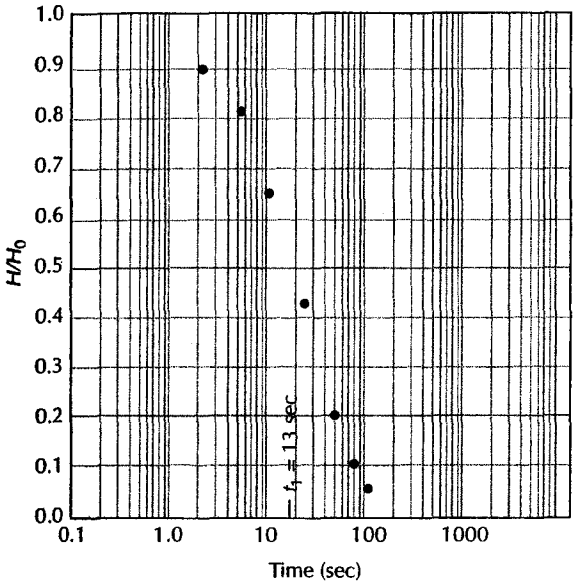
$$S = (\mu r_c^2)/r_s^2$$

$$= 10^{-3} \times (7.6\ \text{cm})^2/(5.1\ \text{cm})^2$$

$$= 2.2 \times 10^{-3}$$

Table 5.3

Time (s)	H (m)	H/H_0
2	0.37	0.88
5	0.34	0.81
10	0.27	0.64
21	0.18	0.43
46	0.09	0.21
70	0.05	0.12
100	0.02	0.05



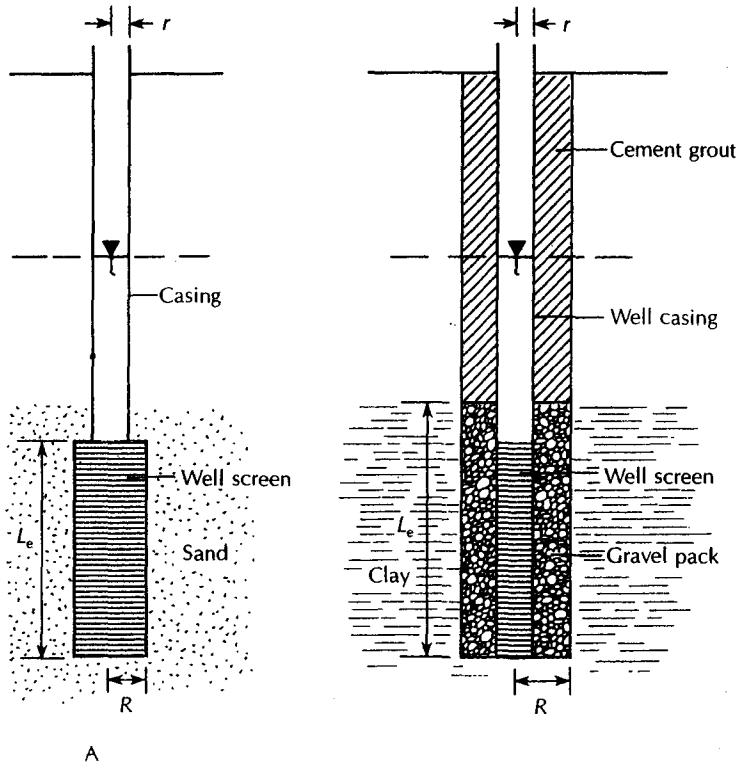
◀ FIGURE 5.20
Field-data plot of H/H_0 as a function of time for a slug-test analysis.

5.6.2.2 Hvorslev Slug-Test Method

In many cases piezometers, or auger holes, are installed that do not fully penetrate an aquifer. They are generally installed at a specific depth to monitor head and sample ground-water quality. A convenient method exists to use these piezometers to determine the hydraulic conductivity of the formation in which the screen is installed, called the **Hvorslev method** (Hvorslev 1951).

Figure 5.21 shows the geometry of a piezometer installed in an aquifer. In the case of a piezometer installed into a low-permeability unit, special attention must be paid to the method of construction. In many such cases, a hole is augered into a clay unit, the well and well screen are lowered into the open borehole, and gravel is used to fill the open annulus between the well screen and the wall of the open hole. Under such conditions the radius of the well screen, R, is the radius of the bored hole, and the length of the well screen, L, is the length of the gravel pack. (The gravel pack would typically be extended one to several feet above the well screen and the remainder of the open hole backfilled with some type of grout.)

Naturally the Hvorslev method can be applied only below the water table. Water is either added to the well casing or withdrawn by bailing out the casing with a special tool



▲ FIGURE 5.21
Piezometer geometry for Hvorslev method. Note that for a piezometer installed in a low-permeability unit the value R is the radius of the highest permeable zone that includes the gravel pack zone and L is the length of the gravel pack zone.

called a bailer. It is possible to induce the water column in the well casing to rise by rapidly lowering a solid piece of metal, called a slug, into the well and submerging it below the original water surface, or static-water level. This is equivalent to adding a volume of water to the well equal to the volume of the slug. The water level in the well is measured prior to the time that the slug is lowered. Immediately after the slug is lowered, the water level in the well is again measured. The water levels are measured at timed intervals as the water level falls back toward the static water level. The height to which the water level rises above the static water level immediately upon lowering the slug is h_0. The height of the water level above the static water level some time, t, after the slug is lowered is h. The data are plotted by computing the ratio h/h_0 and plotting that versus time on semilogarithmic paper, as shown in Figure 5.22. The time-drawdown data should plot on a straight line.

If the length of the piezometer is more than 8 times the radius of the well screen ($L_e/R > 8$), the following formula applies:

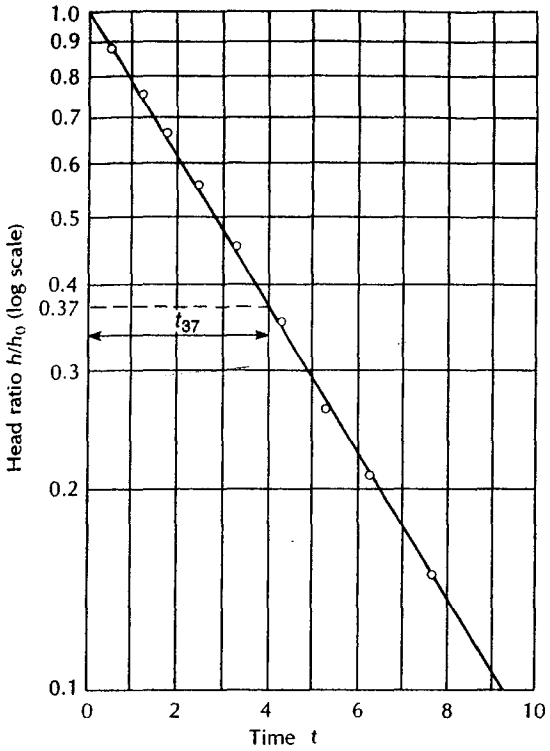
$$K = \frac{r^2 \ln(L_e/R)}{2L_e t_{37}} \tag{5.90}$$

where

K is hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d, m/d, or cm/s)

r is the radius of the well casing (L; ft, m, or cm)

R is the radius of the well screen (L; ft, m, or cm)



◀ FIGURE 5.22
Plot of head ratio versus time used for Hvorslev method.

L_e is the length of the well screen (L; ft, m, or cm)

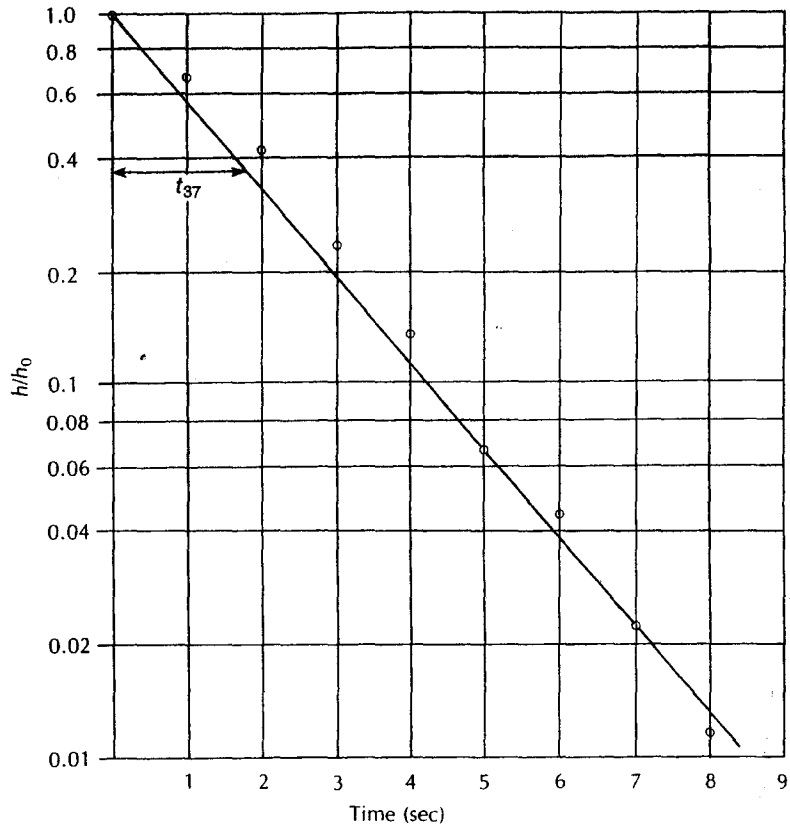
t_{37} is the time it takes for the water level to rise or fall to 37% of the initial change (Figure 5.22) (T; d or s)

Equation 5.90 is but one of many formulas presented by Hvorslev (1951) for differing piezometer geometry and aquifer conditions. However, it is one that is quite useful and could be applied to unconfined conditions for most piezometer designs where the length can be significantly greater than the radius of the well screen. For other conditions, the original paper should be consulted.

Piezometers in highly permeable material may recover to the original water level in 30 s or less. In such cases, it is necessary to use a pressure transducer to record pressure changes in the well as the water level changes along with automatic electronic signal recording equipment. Commercial equipment of this type can measure the water level every second and automatically record it. Piezometers in low-permeability clays may take hours to days to months to recover. In these instances the water levels may be easily measured with a steel tape.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A slug test is performed by lowering a metal slug into a piezometer that is screened in a coarse sand. The inside diameter of both the well screen and the well casing is 2 in. The well screen is 10 ft in length. A pressure transducer was used to record the water level every second for the first 10 s and less frequently thereafter. The following data were obtained when the slug was rapidly pulled from the piezometer.



▲ FIGURE 5.23
Plot of h/h_0 versus t for Example Problem of Hvorslev method.

Elapsed Time (s)	Depth to Water (ft)	Change in Water Level h (ft)	h/h_0
Static Level	13.99		
0	14.87	0.88 (h_0)	1.000
1	14.59	0.60	0.682
2	14.37	0.38	0.432
3	14.20	0.21	0.239
4	14.11	0.12	0.136
5	14.05	0.06	0.068
6	14.03	0.04	0.045
7	14.01	0.02	0.023
8	14.00	0.01	0.011
9	13.99	0.00	0.000

Figure 5.23 contains a plot of the data. The time for the head to rise to 37% of the initial change is 1.8 s (t_{37}). The following values are obtained from the geometry of the piezometer:

$$r = 0.083 \text{ ft}$$

$$R = 0.083 \text{ ft}$$

$$L_e = 10 \text{ ft}$$

The ratio L_e/R is 120, which is more than 8, so Equation 5.90 can be used:

$$K = \frac{r^2 \ln(L_e/R)}{2Lt_{37}}$$

$$= \frac{(0.083\ \text{ft})^2 \times \ln(10\ \text{ft}/0.083\ \text{ft})}{2 \times 10\ \text{ft} \times 1.8\ \text{s}}$$

$$= 9.17 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{ft/s} \times 8.64 \times 10^4\ \text{s/d}$$

$$= 79\ \text{ft/d}$$

.6.2.3 Bouwer and Rice Slug-Test Method

A very useful slug-test method was developed by H. Bouwer (Bouwer & Rice 1976; Bouwer 989). This test can be performed on open boreholes or screened wells. The wells can be fully r partially penetrating. Although the test was originally developed for unconfined aquifers, can be used in confined aquifers if the top of the well screen is some distance below the ottom of the confining layer.

The geometry of the borehole for the Bouwer and Rice slug test is shown in Figure 5.24. n this diagram the parameter r_c is the radius of the well casing in which the water level is sing and R is the radius of the gravel pack or developed area around the well screen.

The Bouwer and Rice equation is:

$$K = \frac{r_c^2 \ln(R_e/R)}{2L_e} \frac{1}{t} \ln\left(\frac{H_0}{H_t}\right) \tag{5.91}$$

here

K is hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/d, m/d, or cm/s)

r_c is the radius of the well casing (L; ft, m, or cm)

R is the radius of the gravel envelope (L; ft, m, or cm)

R_e is the effective radial distance over which head is dissipated (L; ft, m, or cm)

L_e is the length of the screen or open section of the well through which water can enter (L; ft, m, or cm)

H_0 is the drawdown at time $t = 0$ (L; ft, m, or cm)

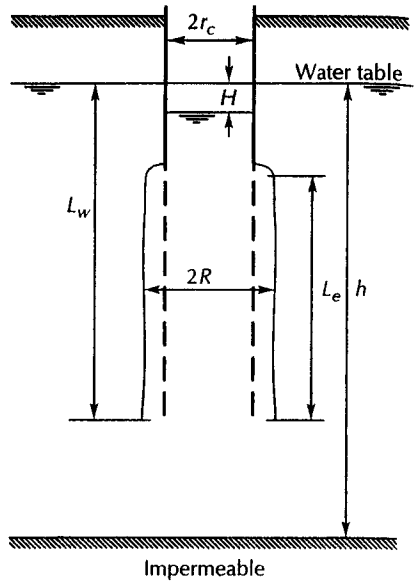
H_t is the drawdown at time $t = t$ (L; ft, m, or cm)

t is the time since $H = H_0$ (T; d or s)

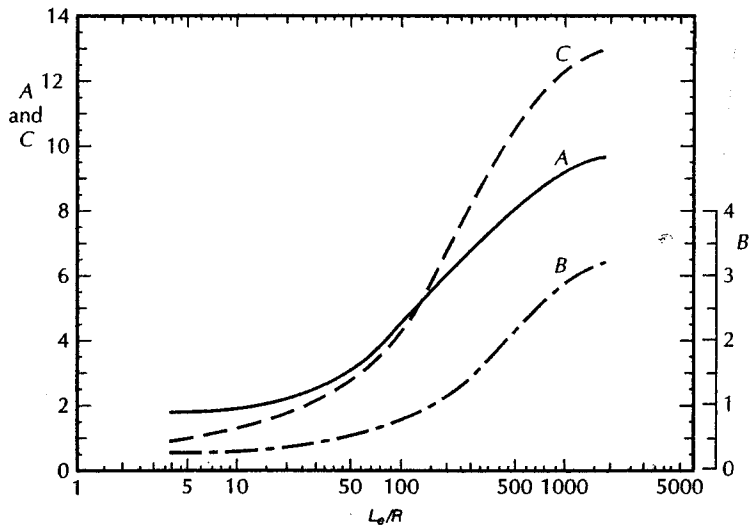
The effective distance over which the induced head is dissipated, R_e, is also the characteristic distance away from the well that the average value of K is being measured. However, there is no way to know what the value of R_e is for a given well. Bouwer (Bouwer & ice 1976; Bouwer 1989) has presented a method of estimating the dimensionless ratio (R_e/R) found in Equation 5.91.

If L_w, the distance from the water table to the bottom of the bore hole or well screen, is ss than h, the saturated thickness of the aquifer, then

$$\ln\frac{R_e}{R} = \left[\frac{1.1}{\ln(L_w/R)} + \frac{A + B \ln[(h - L_w)/R]}{L_e/R}\right]^{-1} \tag{5.92}$$



▶ FIGURE 5.24
Geometry and symbols for a slug test on a partially penetrating screened well in an unconfined aquifer with a gravel pack around the screen. *Source: Herman Bouwer, Ground Water 27 (1989): 304–309. Used with permission. © 1989, Ground Water Publishing Company.*



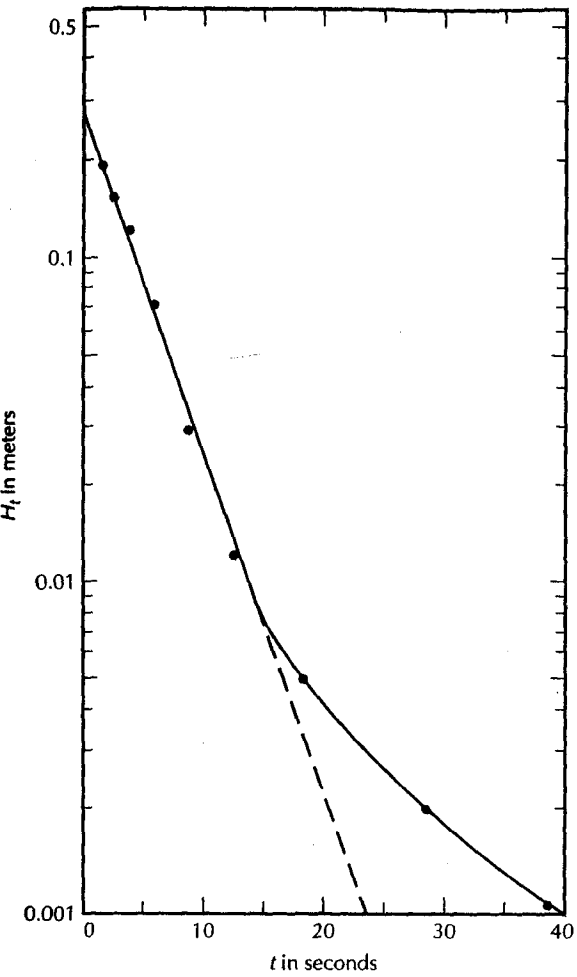
▲ FIGURE 5.25
Dimensionless parameters *A*, *B*, and *C* plotted as a function of L_e/R. These parameters are used in the determination of $\ln(R_e/R)$ in Equations 5–92 and 5–93. *Source: Herman Bouwer, Ground Water 27 (1989): 304–309. Used with permission. © 1989, Ground Water Publishing Company.*

If L_w is equal to h, then

$$\ln\frac{R_e}{R} = \left[\frac{1.1}{\ln(L_w/R)} + \frac{C}{L_e/R}\right]^{-1} \tag{5.93}$$

where A, B, and C are dimensionless numbers that can be found from Figure 5.25, where they are plotted as a function of L_e/R.

The value of H_t as a function of t is plotted on semilogarithmic paper, with H_t on the logarithmic axis. The data pairs will fall on a straight line from small values of time and



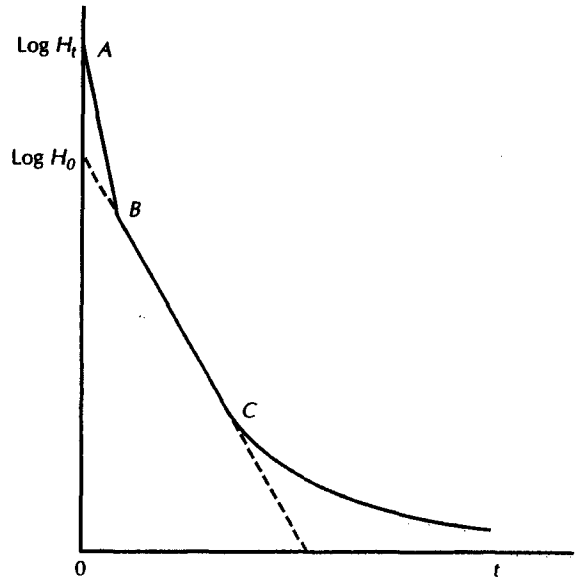
◀ FIGURE 5.26
Head in a borehole as a function of time. Note that the data form on a straight line during the early part of the test but eventually deviate from the straight line. *Source: Herman Bouwer, Ground Water 27 (1989): 304–309. Used with permission. © 1989, Ground Water Publishing Company.*

urge values of head. As the head dissipates and the time increases, the points may not fol-ow the straight line. A plot of H_t versus time is shown in Figure 5.26.

The value of $(1/t)\ln(H_0/H_t)$ may be obtained from a figure such as 5.26. Two points are icked on the straight-line portion of the graph. Although Equation 5.91 calls for H_0 and $_t$, we can use any two points on the graph. At one point we have values H_1 and t_1 and at ie other point we have H_2 and t_2. Under these conditions $(1/t)\ln(H_0/H_t) = [1/(t_2 -)]\ln(H_1/H_2)$.

In some cases the plot of head versus time will yield a curve with two straight-line seg-ents. This case is illustrated in Figure 5.27. Such a situation occurs when the water in the avel pack drains rapidly into the well. Once the water level in the gravel pack equals the ater level in the well, then the second straight-line segment forms. This reflects the hy-aulic conductivity of the undisturbed aquifer. If a double straight line forms, the second gment should be used to find $(1/t)\ln(H_0/H_t)$. If the water level in the well is not lowered to e level of the gravel pack or if the gravel pack is so permeable that it will drain at the same te that the water level is lowered, then the double straight-line effect should not develop.

The Bouwer and Rice slug test was developed as a bail-down test; that is, the water rel is lowered by bailing or pumping so that water flows from the aquifer into the well. e method can also be used when water is added to the well and heads in the casing fall, ovided that the static-water level is above the well screen or open borehole. If not, then



▶ **FIGURE 5.27**
Head in a borehole as a function of time where two straight-line segments are formed during the early part of the test but eventually deviate from the straight line. *Source: Herman Bouwer,* Ground Water *27 (1989): 304–309. Used with permission. © 1989, Ground Water Publishing Company.*

water would drain from the well into the vadose zone and the saturated aquifer, resulting in an overestimate of the permeability of the saturated aquifer.

5.6.3 Underdamped Response Slug Test

5.6.3.1 Van der Kamp Method

The Van der Kamp (1976) method is for a confined aquifer with a fully penetrating well as shown in Figure 5.18. The response of the water level with time is an exponentially decaying sinusoidal function. When the change in water level is plotted as a function of time, it has the shape of Figure 5.28.

Van der Kamp (1976) derived the following solution to this case. The decay function can be described as

$$H(t) = H_0 e^{-\gamma t} \cos \omega t \tag{5.94}$$

where

$H(t)$ is hydraulic head (L) at time t (T)

H_0 is the instantaneous change in the hydraulic head (L)

γ is a damping constant (T^{-1})

ω is an angular frequency (T^{-1})

The transmissivity is given by the expression

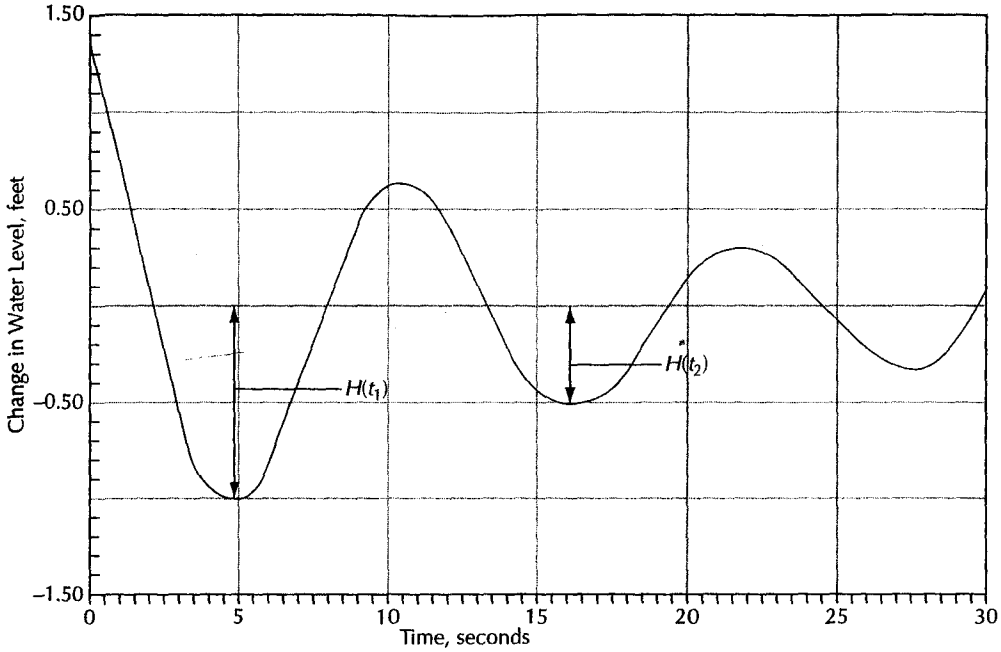
$$T = c + a \ln T \tag{5.95}$$

and

$$c = -a \ln[0.79 r_s^2 S (g/L)^{1/2}] \tag{5.96}$$

$$a = \frac{r_c^2 (g/L)^{1/2}}{8d} \tag{5.97}$$

$$d = \frac{\gamma}{(g/L)^{1/2}} \tag{5.98}$$



▲ FIGURE 5.28
Underdamped response of water level to a sudden change in head.

$$L = \frac{g}{\omega^2 + \gamma^2} \tag{5.99}$$

where

T is the aquifer transmissivity (L^2/T)

r_c is the radius of the well casing (L)

r_s is the radius of the well screen or filter pack (L)

S is the storage coefficient (dimensionless)

L is the effective length of the water column

g is the gravitational constant (L/T^2)

Notice that T appears on both sides of Equation 5.95. This means that an iterative approach is needed, whereby an initial guess of T is made. Use the following procedure (Wylie & Magnuson 1995):

1. Calculate the angular frequency, ω

$$\omega = \frac{2\pi}{\tau} \tag{5.100}$$

$$\tau = t_2 - t_1 \tag{5.101}$$

where t_1 and t_2 are the times of successive maxima or minima on the wave and τ is the wavelength of the oscillation (T).

2. Calculate the damping factor, γ

$$\gamma = \frac{\ln[H(t_1)/H(t_2)]}{t_2 - t_1} \tag{5.102}$$

3. Find the value of T from Equations 5.95 through 5.99. First assume a reasonable value for S. The solution is not too sensitive to the value of S that is chosen. Then make an initial guess of the value of T. This can be set to the value of c as determined from Equations 5.96 through 5.99.

   The first iteration is therefore

$$T_1 = c + a \ln c$$

   The next iteration is

$$T_2 = c + a \ln T_1$$

The iterative procedure is continued until the desired convergence is obtained. Wylie and Magnuson (1995) present a spreadsheet method of solution of the Van der Kamp method.

As a check on the result, the value of L as computed from Equation 5.99 should be within 20% of the value of L as computed by Equation 5.103.

$$L = L_c + \left(\frac{r_c^2}{r_s^2}\right)\left(\frac{b}{2}\right) \tag{5.103}$$

where

L_c is the length of the water column within the well casing above the top of the screen (L)

b is the aquifer thickness (L)

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Consider the underdamped slug-test response of Figure 5.28. Assume the following parameters for the monitoring well and aquifer.

r_c = 0.167 ft
r_s = 0.50 ft
L_c = 108 ft
b = 21 feet

From Figure 5.28,

t_1 = 4.9 s
t_2 = 16.9 s
$H(t_1)$ = –1.0 ft
$H(t_2)$ = –0.5 ft

1. Calculate the wavelength, τ, from Equation 5.101:

$$\tau = t_2 - t_1 = 16.9\text{ s} - 4.9\text{ s} = 12\text{ s}$$

2. Calculate the angular frequency, ω, from Equation 5.100:

$$\omega = 2\pi / \tau$$
$$= 2\pi / 12\text{ s} = 0.5236\text{ s}^{-1}$$

3. Calculate the damping factor, γ, from Equation 5.102:

$$\gamma = \frac{\ln [H(t_1)/H(t_2)]}{t_2 - t_1}$$
$$= \ln[(-1.0/-0.5)]/12\text{ s} = 0.05776\text{ s}^{-1}$$

4. Find $(g/L)^{1/2}$ from Equation 5.99:

$$L = \frac{g}{\omega^2 + \gamma^2}$$

This can be rearranged as

$$\begin{aligned}(g/L)^{1/2} &= (\omega^2 + \gamma^2)^{1/2} \\ &= (0.5236^2 + 0.05776^2)^{1/2} \\ &= 0.5268\end{aligned}$$

5. Find d from Equation 5.98:

$$\begin{aligned}d &= \frac{\gamma}{(g/L)^{1/2}} \\ &= 0.05776 / 0.5268 = 0.1096\end{aligned}$$

6. Find a from Equation 5.97:

$$\begin{aligned}a &= \frac{r_c^2(g/L)^{1/2}}{8d} \\ &= (0.1667^2 \times 0.5628) / 8 \times 0.1096 = 0.01784 \text{ ft}^2/\text{s}\end{aligned}$$

7. Find c from Equation 5.96:

$$c = -a \ln[0.79 r_s^2 S(g/L)^{1/2}]$$

Assume a value for S of 3.0×10^{-5}:

$$c = -(0.01784) \ln[(0.79)(0.50)^2(3.0 \times 10^{-5})(0.5268)] = 0.2262 \text{ ft}^2/\text{s}$$

8. Make a first estimate of the value of T:

$$\begin{aligned}T_1 &= c + a \ln c \\ &= 0.2262 + 0.01784 \ln 0.2262 \\ &= 0.1997 \text{ ft}^2/\text{s}\end{aligned}$$

9. Make a second estimate of the value of T:

$$\begin{aligned}T_2 &= c + a \ln T_1 \\ &= 0.2262 + 0.01784 \ln 0.1997 \\ &= 0.1975 \text{ ft}^2/\text{s}\end{aligned}$$

10. Make a third estimate of T:

$$\begin{aligned}T_3 &= c + a \ln T_2 \\ &= 0.2262 + 0.01784 \ln 0.1975 \\ &= 0.1973 \text{ ft}^2/\text{s}\end{aligned}$$

11. Accept the value of T_3 as being converged and convert T from ft^2/s to ft^2/d:

$$T = 0.1973 \text{ ft}^2/\text{s} \times 86{,}400 \text{ s/d} = 17{,}000 \text{ ft}^2/\text{d}$$

12. Check the solution:

a. Find L from Equation 5.103:

$$\begin{aligned}L &= L_c + \left(\frac{r_c^2}{r_s^2}\right)\left(\frac{b}{2}\right) \\ &= 108 + [(0.167)^2 / (0.500)^2](21/2) = 109.3 \text{ ft}\end{aligned}$$

b. Find L from Equation 5.99:

$$L = \frac{g}{\omega^2 + \gamma^2}$$

$$= 32 / (0.5236^2 + 0.05776^2) = 32 / (0.274 + 0.0033) = 115.3 \text{ ft}$$

c. The two values agree to within 20%.

5.6.3.2 Other Methods

Kipp (1985) devised a method of analyzing underdamped oscillatory slug-test data that takes into account inertial effects and well bore storage. Weight and Wittman (1999) present an excellent discussion of the application of the Kipp method. They present an Excel spreadsheet that generates the Kipp type curves. They also analyzed the results of a comparison between the Kipp method and the van der Kamp method for a number of monitoring wells in Montana and concluded that the two methods gave comparable results.

Both the Van der Kamp and the Kipp methods are for slug tests in fully penetrating wells in confined aquifers. However, most monitoring wells only partially penetrate the geologic unit being assessed. Butler (1997) describes extensions of the Hvorslev and Bouwer and Rice methods that have been developed for analysis of underdamped slug tests in partially penetrating wells. Butler (1997) also discusses a number of practical issues that need to be considered when performing slug tests in formations of very high hydraulic conductivity.

5.6.4 General Observations on Slug-Test Analysis

5.6.4.1 Skin Effect

It has been said that if one enjoys eating sausage, one should never visit a sausage factory to observe it being made. The same thing could be said about a slug test. The nice clean sketches and equations presented here ignore the fact that a monitoring well, just like a sausage, can be surrounded by a skin.

During the installation of a monitoring well, a boring is often installed with an auger. The rotation of the auger bit and flights can smear a layer of clay and silt on the borehole wall. This layer is termed the *skin* or *borehole skin*. If it has a lower hydraulic conductivity than the surrounding aquifer, then the slug test will be controlled by the positive skin effect and not reflect the actual hydraulic conductivity of the aquifer (Yang & Gates 1997).

Following the installation of the monitoring well, it is critical to perform a procedure called *well development*. This is usually done by pumping water from the well until it is clear. The water in the well can be surged up and down so that it goes back and forth in the well screen to loosen and remove the sediment making up the borehole skin. The surging is alternated with pumping to remove the fine sediment.

If the development process is too vigorous, it may remove fine material beyond the edge of the borehole. This creates a zone with hydraulic conductivity that is higher than that of the formation, and is thus termed a *negative skin* (Yang & Gates 1997).

If the positive skin is not removed by development, the slug test will yield too low hydraulic conductivity. If the monitoring well is regularly sampled, over time the development may improve and the skin effect will become less and less important with the well responding more rapidly (Butler & Healey 1998).

5.6.4.2 Kansas Geological Survey Guidelines

To improve the reliability of slug tests for the determination of aquifer parameters, the Kansas Geological Survey has conducted research on slug-test methodologies. Its findings have resulted in a series of recommendations on ways to conduct slug tests. The methods go to the heart of the matter: To have a good result, one must have reliable field data. Butler, McElwee, and Liu (1996) present the following recommendations.

1. *Three or more slug tests should be performed at a given well.* If the well has not been properly developed prior to slug testing, the slug test itself might cause additional development. This can be detected by a shift in the calculated transmissivity during the repeated slug tests. Also the slug test can mobilize fine material, which can result in a decrease in formation transmissivity.
2. *Two or more different initial displacements should be used during testing of a given well.* A series of tests with initial head displacement, H_0, which varies by a factor of at least 2, should be employed; however, the first and last tests should have the same H_0 so that a dynamic skin effect can be detected.
3. *The slug should be introduced in a near-instantaneous fashion and a good estimate of the initial displacement should be obtained.* This is a basic assumption of the slug-test methodology. While it is easy to accomplish in a low permeability system, it can be difficult to do in a system that has a very rapid response.
4. *Appropriate data-acquisition equipment should be used.* Manual methods of measurement might be satisfactory for a well in a low permeability sediment that responds over a period of many minutes to hours. For more permeable formations where the total period of response can be less than one minute, a data logger with a pressure transducer is mandatory. The pressure transducer should have the proper sensitivity for the planned head displacement, and data collection frequency.
5. *An observation well should be employed for estimation of the storage parameter.* A single well is fairly insensitive to the value of the storage parameter for several reasons (McElwee, Bohling, & Butler 1995). If possible, a nearby monitoring well screened across the same interval should be used to determine the storage coefficient (Butler 1997).
6. *Method chosen for data analysis should be appropriate for site conditions.* Ensure that the chosen method is correct: confined or unconfined aquifer, fully penetrating or partially penetrating well, overdamped or underdamped response.
7. *Use of pre- and postanalysis plots should be an integral component of the analysis.* Even though care was taken to select the proper method of analysis based on the field conditions (point 6), it is still possible that either the method which was selected, or some assumption that went into the analysis, is wrong. Careful examination of the data plot versus the theoretical model of the test data should be made. While this seems to be an obvious point, in many cases the field data are analyzed with an automated curve-fitting program. A human should still review the final plot.
8. *Appropriate well construction parameters should be employed.* The effective screen length and screen diameter are critical parameters. If the well is gravel packed, the length and diameter of the gravel pack should be used if the gravel pack is significantly more permeable than the formation. However, if well development is incomplete, the screen length may be more appropriate than the length of the gravel pack (Butler 1997).

5.7 Estimating Aquifer Transmissivity From Specific Capacity Data

large body of data exists on the specific capacity of water wells. Aquifer tests are usually not performed when production wells are installed. However, the well is normally test umped for at least a few hours and the yield and maximum drawdown are recorded. The eld of the well divided by the drawdown is called the **specific capacity**. Typical units are /day/ft of drawdown or m^3/day/m of drawdown.

Theis (1963) proposed a way of estimating the transmissivity of an aquifer from the ecific capacity of a well. For a confined aquifer, one can rearrange Equation 5.55 to yield:

$$T = \frac{Q}{(h_0 - h)} \frac{2.3}{4\pi} \log \frac{2.25Tt}{r^2S} \tag{5.104}$$

where

$Q/(h_0–h)$ is the specific capacity of the well (L^2/T; $ft^2/d/ft$ or $m^2/d/m$)

t is the period of pumping (T; d)

r is the radius of the pumping well (L; ft or m)

T is aquifer transmissivity (L^2/T; ft^2/d or m^2/d)

S is aquifer storativity (dimensionless)

Notice that T appears in both the arithmetic and the logarithmic portions of Equation 5.104. To solve this equation for T when $Q/(h_0–h)$ is known, we must make an initial guess of the value of T, substitute it into the equation, and solve for $Q/(h_0–h)$. The value of T is then adjusted until the calculated value of $Q/(h_0–h)$ is reasonably close to the measured value.

This procedure has two flaws. First, we must estimate a value for S. This means that the estimate of T is based on an estimate of S—a somewhat dubious situation. Second, the assumption is made that the well is 100% efficient. In the real world in which the specific capacity is measured, the well will not be 100% efficient; that is, drawdown within the well will be greater than the drawdown in the aquifer just outside the well. This is due to turbulent friction losses as the water passes into the well.

Bradbury and Rothschild (1985) developed a computer program to estimate T from specific-capacity data. They utilized a method of correcting the observed specific capacity for well losses and introduced a partial penetration correction factor to Equation 5.104. They found a reasonable agreement between T determined by aquifer tests and T estimated from specific-capacity data using this method on 5 wells in fractured dolomite and 11 wells in sandy outwash.

Razack and Huntley (1991) utilized a different approach in studying the relationship between T and specific capacity in an alluvial ground-water basin in Morocco. They analyzed 215 data pairs where transmissivity and specific capacity were known for a well. Application of Equation 5.104 generally underpredicted the actual specific capacity due to the turbulent well losses. They were able to find an empirical relationship between the two parameters, which had a correlation coefficient of 0.63. This relationship can be expressed as

$$T = 15.3 \left(\frac{Q}{h_0 - h}\right)^{0.67} \tag{5.105A}$$

where

T is transmissivity (m^2/d)

Q is pumping rate (m^3/d)

$h_0–h$ is drawdown (m)

or

$$T = 33.6 \left(\frac{Q}{h_0 - h}\right)^{0.67} \tag{5.105B}$$

where

T is transmissivity (ft^2/d)

Q is pumping rate (ft^3/d)

$h_0–h$ is drawdown (ft)

Mace (1997) employed a similar approach to the analysis of specific-capacity data with transmissivity data from 71 wells in the karstic Edwards Aquifer of Texas. He found the following relationship with a correlation coefficient of 0.891:

$$T = 0.76\left(\frac{Q}{h_0 - h}\right)^{1.08} \tag{5.106}$$

where

T is transmissivity (m^2/d)

Q is pumping rate (m^3/d)

h_0–h is drawdown (m)

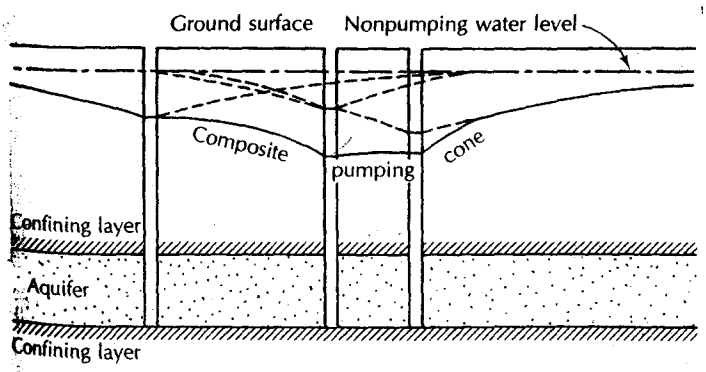
The better correlation coefficient for the study by Mace (1997) as opposed to the study by Razack and Huntley (1991) might possibly be explained by the fact that the former study employed only a single aquifer; however, Mace (1997) also found that Equation 5.106 could be applied with some confidence to other karstic aquifers.

Well efficiency can be estimated for wells where an aquifer test has been performed so that values of T and S are known. The theoretical drawdown at a distance equal to the radius of the pumping well would be the water level in a well that is 100% efficient. This value can be compared with the drawdown that is measured inside the well to find the well efficiency.

5.8 Intersecting Pumping Cones and Well Interference

The cases we have considered thus far have involved only one well pumping from an aquifer; however, several wells are often tapping the same aquifer, which results in intersecting pumping cones. At any given point in a confined aquifer, the total drawdown is the sum of the individual drawdowns for each well. Because the Laplace equation is linear, the superposition of drawdown effects is found by simple addition. In Figure 5.29, the well interference for a multiple-aquifer well field is presented graphically. Linear superposition is valid only for confined aquifers, in which the value of the transmissivity does not change with drawdown. In water-table aquifers, if the drawdown is significant in relation to the total saturated thickness, the use of linear superposition will result in a predicted composite drawdown that is less than the actual composite drawdown. As a decrease in saturated thickness reduces the transmissivity, the multiple-well system will result in a composite hydraulic gradient greater than that of an equivalent confined system in order to compensate for a reduced value of aquifer transmissivity.

In designing well-field layouts, it is necessary to take into account well interference. The level of the water in the well during pumping determines the length of pipe necessary to carry water to the surface. The characteristics of the well pump and the horsepower requirements of the motor also depend upon the depth to the pumping level. If wells are



◀ FIGURE 5.29
Composite pumping cone for three wells tapping the same aquifer. Each well is pumping at a different rate; thus the pumping level of each is different.

spaced too closely together, the amount of well interference could be excessive. Aligning wells parallel to a line source of recharge, such as a river, would result in less well interference than would a perpendicular configuration.

5.9 Effect of Hydrogeologic Boundaries

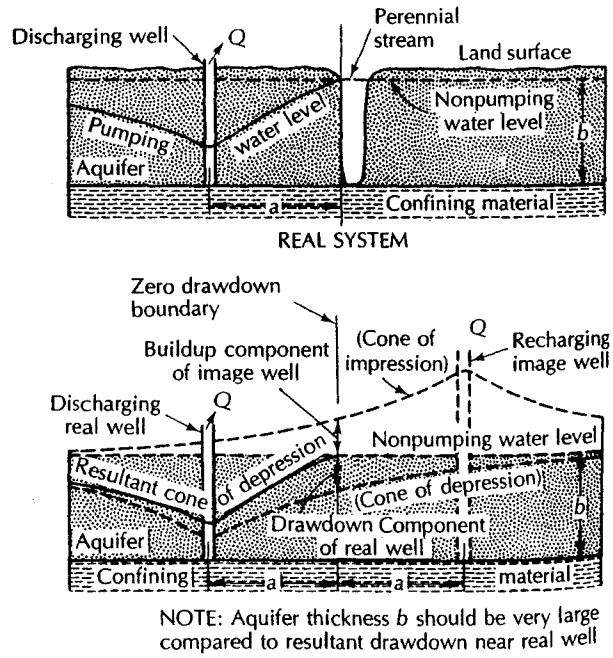
If a well is not located in an aquifer of infinite areal extent, as is the case with all real wells in real aquifers, the drawdown cone will extend until either the well is supplied by vertical recharge or a hydrogeologic boundary is reached. A hydrogeologic boundary could be the edge of the aquifer, a region of recharge to a fully confined artesian aquifer, or a source of recharge such as a stream or lake.

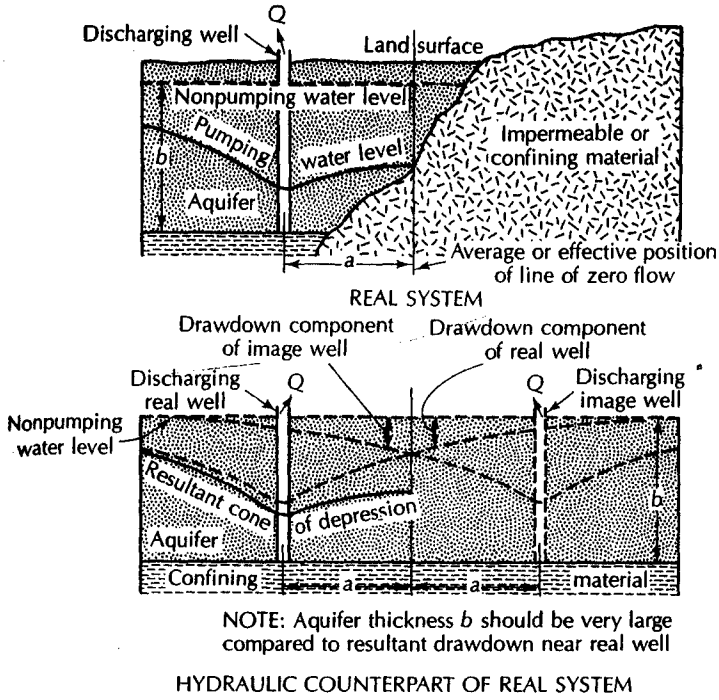
Boundaries are considered to be either recharge or barrier boundaries. A **recharge boundary** is a region in which the aquifer is replenished. A **barrier boundary** is an edge of the aquifer, where it terminates, either by thinning or abutting a low-permeability formation, or has been eroded away.

Figure 5.30 shows a well bounded by a recharge boundary. The recharge boundary can be simulated by a recharging **image well** located an equivalent distance away from the recharge boundary but on the opposite side. Figure 5.31 indicates the presence of a barrier boundary. The barrier boundary is simulated by a discharging image well located an equivalent distance away from the boundary but on the opposite side. Boundaries have the most dramatic impact on the drawdown of a pumped well for the aquifer with no source of vertical recharge. As the well withdraws water only from storage in the aquifer, drawdown proceeds as a function of the logarithm of time.

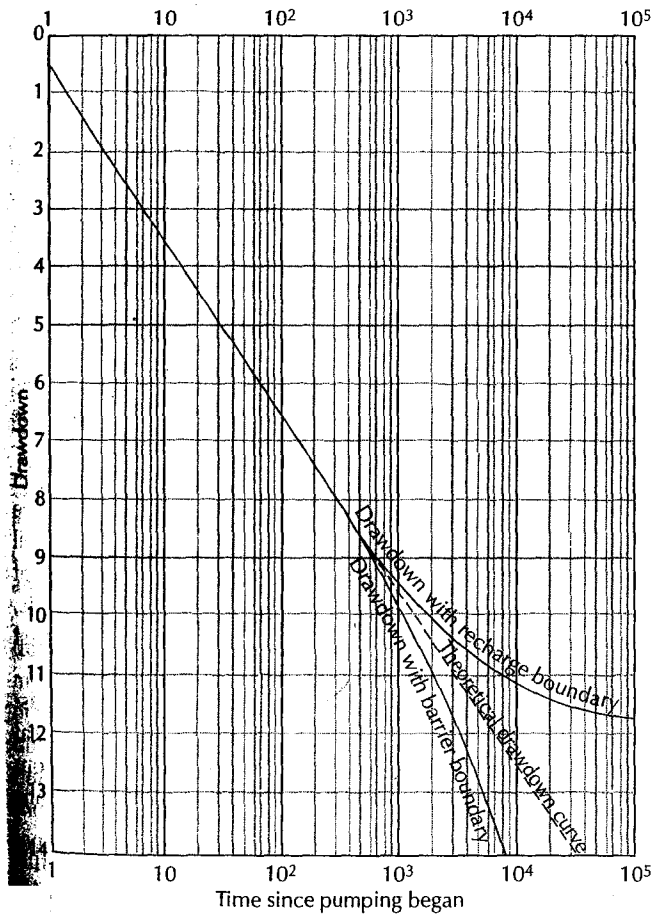
Figure 5.32 shows a theoretical straight-line plot of drawdown as a function of time on semilogarithmic paper. The effect of a recharge boundary is to retard the rate of drawdown. Change in drawdown can become zero if the well comes to be supplied entirely with recharged water. The effect of a barrier to flow in some region of the aquifer is to accelerate the drawdown rate. The water level declines faster than the theoretical straight line.

► FIGURE 5.30
Idealized cross section of a well in an aquifer bounded on one side by a stream. *Source: J. G. Ferris et al.,* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1536-E, *1962.*





◀ FIGURE 5.31
Idealized cross section of a well in an aquifer bounded on one side by an impermeable boundary. *Source: J. G. Ferris et al.,* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1536-E, *1962.*



◀ FIGURE 5.32
Impact of recharge and barrier boundaries on semilogarithmic drawdown-time curves.

5.10 Aquifer-Test Design

Adequate design and execution of an aquifer test involves considerable planning and attention to detail. An understanding of fundamental well hydraulics is necessary, not only for the interpretation of data, but also for the experimental design by which valid and usable data are obtained. The purpose of the pumping test must be established first. Determining the yield of a new well involves simply pumping the well. This type of test, as it is generally conducted, yields only the scantiest information about the aquifer itself. With careful planning, the pumping-well test can yield data to compute the aquifer transmissivity. It can also indicate the general type of aquifer.

If a test well has been drilled prior to the installation of a production well, a reasonable conjecture can be made as to the probability the well will be unconfined, semiconfined, or confined. However, the presence or absence of recharge or barrier boundaries may not be known. Indeed, this is one of the reasons to perform a long-term pumping test. If one makes a semilogarithmic plot of drawdown versus time (e.g., Figure 5.32), one can inspect it, to see if the pumping level of the well stabilizes. If this occurs, then there is a source of recharge, either vertically by leakage across a semiconfining layer or horizontally from a recharge boundary. If the water level falls faster than the theoretical drawdown curve, then the presence of a barrier boundary must be considered.

The amount of information gained from an aquifer test expands greatly if one or more observation wells are involved in addition to the pumping well. Both transmissivity and storativity of the aquifer can be determined, as can the vertical hydraulic conductivity of any overlying semipervious layers. More eloquent tests can be used to determine the value of the vertical anisotropy of the formation. Radial anisotropy and recharge or barrier boundaries can also be detected.

5.10.1 Single-Well Aquifer Tests

The basics of a single-well aquifer test are also applicable to aquifer tests involving multiple wells. The first step is to determine the location of the well to be drilled. This is best done on the basis of detailed exploration using geological, geophysical, and perhaps aerial photo techniques. However, the location of the well is often dictated by economic or engineering factors. If economic or engineering factors predominate, the hydrogeologist should determine if there is a reasonable chance of success based on the known hydrogeology of the site.

A test well may be bored as the first step, or the production well may be drilled immediately. The geologist should make a log of the geologic formations encountered. The water level in the drilled hole should be recorded as a function of the depth of the hole; however, this might not be possible if certain drilling techniques such as rotary and reverse rotary are used. Based on the test hole and selected borehole geophysical studies, the hydrogeologist can determine the depth and thickness of potential aquifer zones. An aquifer is selected, and a test or permanent well is installed. If at all feasible, the well should be open throughout the entire thickness of the aquifer. The physical dimensions of the well should be recorded, along with the depth, thickness, and type of aquifer. A description of the aquifer material should be included. An inventory of nearby wells should be made, and it should be determined whether any other wells will be running when an aquifer test is planned. Intersecting cones of depression during an aquifer test should be avoided.

A pump is installed in the completed well. The pump, engine, wiring, piping, and assorted equipment must be reliable. If a pumping test is terminated owing to mechanical failure prior to the planned time, the data may not be sufficient. The discharge pipe from the pump must be equipped with a valve to control the volume of flow and with a means of measuring the flow.

Small pumping rates may be measured by means of a water meter in the line or by filling a container of known volume in a measured time. These methods are generally useful

for flows of 100 gal/min (6 L/s) or less. For larger flows, a common method is to use a circular-orifice weir on the discharge pipe (ASTM Standard D 5716-95). Generally, the well-drilling contractor furnishes the equipment and makes the discharge measurements. The hydrogeologist should always check the apparatus and measurements.

There must be a means of conveying the pumped water away from the test site. This is especially true for shallow, unconfined aquifers, where the water could recharge the aquifer and render any pumping-test results useless. If a pumping test runs for several days, the quantity of pumped water that must be conveyed from the site can be considerable.

A means to measure the water level in the well before and during pumping must be available. A steel tape, air line, or electrical tape can serve this function (ASTM Standard D 4750-87).

The aquifer tests we have studied have been based on a constant discharge rate. In reality, the water level in the well falls with pumping, the pumping lift increases, and the discharge of the pump tends to decline. To avoid this, the valve on the discharge pipe should be partially closed to restrict the initial discharge. During the course of the test, the valve can be opened as necessary to keep the pumping rate constant. There should be no more than a 10% variation in rate during the test, with a smaller pumping-rate variation if possible. After construction, a new well is usually developed by on-and-off pumping, which causes the water to surge back and forth through the well screen or open hole. This increases the yield of the well by washing out fine particles and mud used for drilling. The well should be fully developed before pumping tests are made.

It is necessary to select a measuring point on the well to serve as a fixed reference for water-level measurements. The measuring point should be marked, and its elevation measured and recorded. Prior to the pumping test, the water level should be measured. Other production wells that may be nearby should either be shut down for the duration of the test or pumped at a constant rate. It is difficult to correct pumping-test data for the effect of wells starting and stopping. For the most accurate results, the nonpumping water elevation should be measured several times before pumping begins. Ground-water levels may have a long-term trend of rising or falling. They may also be affected by tides or changes in the barometric pressure. If the static level is found to fluctuate, then detailed pretest measurements must be made for at least twice the expected length of the pumping test. If a long-term linear trend is observed, the drawdown observed during the pumping test must be corrected. The corrected drawdown is the difference between the measured depth to water and the projected static level based on the long-term trend. Tidal fluctuations and fluctuations due to barometric pressure require measurements of the water level in the well and either the tide or air pressure prior to pumping, in order to establish a relationship between them. Measurements of tides or air pressure must then be made during the pumping test to find a corrected static level at the time of each drawdown measurement.

Prior to the test, the discharge of the well should be measured and a planned pumping rate selected. The valve should be preset for this rate. When the pump is started for the test, the valve is adjusted to yield the desired pumping rate. Periodic measurements of discharge and corrections using the valve should be made about every half hour. The time and measurement of pumping rate should be recorded in the field notes.

Water-level readings in the well commence after 1 min of pumping. The usual procedure is to record the depth of water below the measuring point and the time of measurement. Computation of drawdown is made later. Approximately 10 readings per log cycle of time are made. The first reading could be at 1 min, then at 1 1/2 min, and then at every minute up to 10 min. Between 10 and 20 min, readings are taken every 2 min; then every 5 min between 20 min and 1 h; and every 10 min between 1 and 2 h. After 2 h have elapsed, the recommended 10 readings per log cycle of time are made. The most work occurs during the first minutes of the pumping test.

There must be some advance planning for the length of time the test is to proceed. For artesian or leaky artesian aquifer, the test may last 24 h or less. This is often sufficient to

delineate values for the formation constants and to determine whether there are any recharge or barrier boundaries. Water-table wells must be pumped for a sufficient duration to preclude any significant effects of vertical flow near the well. The time period is a function of the distance from the pumping well, the conductivity of the formation, and the degree of anisotropy. The time is naturally greater the farther the distance from the pumping well, the lower the horizontal conductivity, and the greater the anisotropy. Pumping tests of unconfined aquifers normally run for several days to several weeks.

Periodically during the pumping test, a sample of the water is collected for chemical analysis. A series of samples will reveal any trend in chemical or bacteriological quality with continued pumping. It is possible to predict final well quality fairly accurately, even on the basis of chemical analysis of water from temporary test wells (Fetter 1975).

Following the collection of time and drawdown data in the pumped well, an analysis is made using the appropriate type curves. It should be remembered that with only one well, the valve of T, but not of S, can be determined. In another computation usually made at the end of the pumping test, the well yield is divided by the maximum drawdown to obtain the specific capacity, which is widely used as an index of the capacity of the well.

5.10.2 Aquifer Tests with Observation Wells

If it is feasible, drawdown should be measured in one or more nonpumping wells situated close to the pumping well. These observation wells are often constructed especially for the pumping tests. However, domestic-supply wells, abandoned wells, other wells in a well field, or other wells under construction are sometimes used. The use of one or more observation wells can enable the hydrogeologist to compute the storativity or specific yield of the aquifer. Under some circumstances, the anisotropy of the pumping well and the leakage factor for leaky, confined aquifers may be determined. In most cases, the hydrogeologist will be able to employ only one observation well—especially if the aquifer is deep and the area is undeveloped, with no existing wells available.

The selection of the location of the single observation well is critical. It should be located at a radial distance such that the time-drawdown data collected during the planned pumping period will fall on a type curve of unique curvature. If the curvature is too flat, selection of the proper type curve is difficult. After a test boring is made, the hydrogeologist should know the type of aquifer system to be confronted. The formation characteristics are then estimated, and using the correct formula with the planned pumping rate, time-drawdown curves for several hypothetical observation wells at different distances are plotted. On the basis of these curves, the location of the single observation well is selected. As a general rule, it will be closer for a water-table well than for a confined well.

If there are two observation wells, the second should be in a radial line with the first, but at 10 times the distance. If there are more than two wells, they should form two or more radial lines from the pumping well. This will indicate any radial anisotropy in the aquifer. A map should be carefully made in the field showing the relative locations of the pumping well and all observation wells. The distance from the pumping well to each observation well should be measured with a steel tape.

Ideally, observation wells should fully penetrate the aquifer, so that they measure the average head in the formation at that location.* Plastic (PVC) pipe with slots cut out in the zone of the aquifer serves as a suitable observation well. The annular space between

*Observation wells should also not be screened in aquifers other than the one in which the pumping well is also screened. The author has seen cases where very expensive pumping tests yielded meaningless results because either the pumping well or the observation well was screened in more than one aquifer. Time-drawdown data can be obtained from such misbegotten wells, and misguided hydrogeologists have attempted to evaluate them. The results, however, are garbage.

the drilled hole and the plastic pipe can be backfilled with coarse sand. If the well goes through a confining layer, the hole must be backfilled with clay and tamped to prevent leakage around the pipe.

If the observation well has a short well screen, then the screen should be placed such that the head it measures is representative of the average head in the formation at that location. For a confined aquifer, it should be at the mid-depth of the stratum. For a water-table aquifer, it should be one-third of the distance from the static water table to the bottom of the aquifer.

The observation well should have a rapid response to changes in the water level in the aquifer. One way to test response time is to pour water into the observation well. The induced head should drain away in a fairly short time, usually in a few hours or less in most aquifers. If the observation well does not show a good response, an effort should be made to unclog it. Pouring water in the well may clear it. If the water level is within a few meters of the surface, a plunger on a stick can be used to surge the well to clear it.

Prior to the pumping test, a measuring point should be chosen for each observation well. Usually this is the top of the casing. The elevation of each measuring point should be determined. The depth to the static-water level should also be measured prior to pumping. This will be useful in mapping the potentiometric surface.

Depth-to-water measurements are made in the observation wells on the same schedule as the pumping-well measurements. For the first minutes, this probably will necessitate one observer for each well. After 20 min, when the readings go to a frequency of every 10 min, fewer people will be needed. After 2 1/2 h, readings are made only every 100 min, so that one observer usually can do everything. Also, at the start of the test, one or two additional people should be on hand to measure pump discharge and adjust the flow.

After the end of the scheduled pumping test, recovery measurements can be made in the wells. The water levels will recover at the same rate they fall. In some cases, the drawdown data are affected by uncontrolled variations in the pumping rate. This does not affect the recovery rate. The flow rate for recovery data is equal to the mean discharge for the entire pumping period. In using recovery data, the difference between the water level at the end of pumping and that after a given time since pumping stopped is plotted as a function of the time since pumping stopped. The standard methods of well-test analysis are used. Recovery measurements are a standard part of the aquifer test. In many cases, the recovery data prove to be more useful than the drawdown data, for example, if there was a short period when the well shut down during the test or if the rate of pumping was extremely variable during the drawdown phase of the test.

Butler (1990) observed that in analysis of aquifer-test data from confined aquifers, the hydrogeologist will usually analyze the data by either or both the Theis curve-matching method and the Cooper-Jacob straight-line approximation. If the aquifer is nonuniform, as real aquifers typically are, these two approaches can yield differing results. The Theis curve-matching method is influenced heavily by the hydraulic properties of the aquifer in close proximity to the pumping well. On the other hand, the Cooper-Jacob approximation emphasizes the hydraulic properties of the aquifer near the edge of the cone of depression, which may be far from the pumping well.

The difference, if any, in the results of the two methods is a function of the degree of nonuniformity of the aquifer and the distance from the pumping well to the observation wells. The further the distance of the observation well is from the pumping well, the smaller the difference in results that is observed for a given degree of nonuniformity.

If we are using an aquifer test to predict the long-term drawdown of a pumping well, then the most appropriate method is the Theis curve-matching technique because it reflects conditions near the well. However, if we are using an aquifer test to predict aquifer yield, then the Cooper-Jacob method should be used, since this tests the properties of the aquifer over a greater distance from the pumping well.

Notation

b	Thickness of confined aquifer or saturated thickness of unconfined aquifer
b'	Thickness of aquitard
b''	Saturated thickness of water-table aquifer
B	$(Tb'/K)^{1/2}$ (leakage factor)
h	Hydraulic head
h_0	Head prior to pumping
h_0-h	Drawdown
$\Delta(h_0 - h)$	Drawdown per log cycle of time
H_0	Water level at start of a slug test
H	Water level during a slug test
K	Hydraulic conductivity
K'	Hydraulic conductivity of aquitard
K''	Hydraulic conductivity of water-table aquifer
$K_0(x)$	Zero-order modified Bessel function of the second kind
K_r	Radial hydraulic conductivity
K_v	Vertical hydraulic conductivity
L_c	Length of water column above screen
L_e	Effective length of a well screen
L_w	Length of water column above bottom of well
Q	Pumping rate
q_L	Rate that water leaks across an aquitard into a leaky, confined aquifer
q_s	Rate at which water is withdrawn from elastic storage in a leaky, confined aquifer
r	Radial distance to pumping well
r_c	Radius of a piezometer casing
r_0	Intercept of distance drawdown line with zero drawdown axis
r_s	Radius of a piezometer screen
r_w	Radius of pumping well
R	Radius of screen or gravel pack
R_e	Radial distance over which slug-test head is dissipated
S	Storativity
S'	Storativity of the confining layer
S_s	Specific storage of confining layer
S_y	Specific yield
t	Time
t_0	Intercept of time-drawdown line with zero drawdown axis
T	Transmissivity
t_{37}	Time that it takes for water level to fall to 37% of original value in Hvorslev method
u	$(r^2S)/(4Tt)$
$W(u)$	Well function of u
w	Rate of vertical leakage
z	Elevation
β	$[r/4B][(S'/S)^{1/2}]$
ν	$(K'/b')(S'/S^2)$
η	Tt/r_c^2
μ	r_s^2S/r_c^2
τ	Damping constant
ω	Angular frequency
γ	Wavelength of oscillation

Computer Notes

You have been furnished with a free student version of the automatic pumping-test analysis software, AQTESOLV, found on the CD-ROM in the back of the book (see Appendix 15 for instructions on how to install this software on your computer). The full version of this program can solve pumping tests for confined, leaky confined, fractured, and unconfined aquifers as well as confined and unconfined slug tests.

When you start the program, the program interface will appear. Press F1 for the help menu. It is helpful to read the *Getting Started* section. Next read the *Overview* of the *Guided Tours* section. Then print out *Analyzing a Pumping Test* and *Analyzing a Slug Test* sections of the *Guided Tours* section. Close the Help window. Now go through each of the tutorial printouts. When finished, you should have a basic idea of how the program works. Additional tutorials are available for each of the possible solution methods under *Additional Tutorials* in the *Guided Tours* section.

Your instructor may ask you to repeat some of the pumping-test or slug-test problems using AQTESOLV. It is recommended that you do each problem by hand first so that you have an understanding of how the automated solutions work.

Should you wish to purchase the professional version of AQTESOLV, you can contact the publisher at http://www.aqtesolv.com/, where there is also additional program information.

Analysis

A. As discussed in this chapter, the two-dimensional flow equation in Cartesian coordinates (4–42) could be transformed into the radial coordinates to yield Equation 5–2. Demonstrate how this transformation takes place. (This exercise is for the mathematically astute.)

B. Under certain conditions the Thiem equation (5–43) for confined aquifers, is equivalent to the Cooper-Jacob equation (5–58) for confined aquifers. What are the conditions? (This exercise is easier than Problem A.)

C. If an analysis is made of the hydraulic conductivity of a site using permeameter tests of core samples, slug tests of monitoring wells, and pumping tests of production wells, it is often observed that the hydraulic conductivity as measured by each method is different. Which method would be most likely to have the greatest hydraulic conductivity, and which the least? What are some possible reasons why this would be true?

D. Show by dimensional analysis that u in Equation 5–10 is dimensionless.

E. The drawdown in a long-term pumping test of an unconfined aquifer declines according to Equation 5–37 for several days and then becomes stable (i.e., no longer declines). List two reasons why this might occur.

F. Why does the cone of depression of a confined aquifer spread more quickly than the cone of depression of an unconfined aquifer?

G. Will a pumping test that is run for seven days give more information than a pumping test run for one day? If so, what type of information? Why?

H. You are to design a pumping test for a confined aquifer with an expected transmissivity of the approximate range 1×10^4 to 5×10^4 m^2/day and an expected storativity between 0.0001 and 0.0005. The test is to run for no less than 24 h. You have a budget for two test wells. You would like the closest well to have a drawdown at least five times that of the more distant well. How close to the pumping well would you put each observation well? Show all of your computations.

I. In the preceding problem, no pumping rate was specified. If the drawdown in the closest well is to be at least 1.5 m, what is the minimum pumping rate?

J. You are to design a pumping test for a confined aquifer where neither the pumping well nor the observation well fully penetrates the aquifer. The horizontal hydraulic conductivity is 1.87×10^{-2} cm/s and the vertical hydraulic conductivity is 3.34×10^{-3} cm/s. If the aquifer is 7.65 m thick, what is the minimum distance from the pumping well to the observation well?

K. Write an Excel formula for the Theis well function, $W(u)$, the infinite series of Equation 5–11.

L. Excel 2000 has an engineering toolkit which can be accessed under Tools | Ad-ins | Analysis ToolPack. (You may need to install the analysis toolpack from your Excel 2000 disk.) This program has three functions that you can use to analyze well hydraulics:

1. BESSELK(x,n) gives the modified Bessel function of order n for a given number, x. In this chapter we used the second-order modified Bessel function, so we would write BESSELK(x,2).
2. ERF(x) gives the error function of a number x.
3. ERFC(x) gives the complimentary error function.

M. Write an Excel formula for the expression $K_0(x)\exp(x)$.

Problems

Answers to odd-numbered problems appear at the end of the book. Type curves will be necessary for the solution of many of these problems. Type curves can be constructed from the data in the appendices, although this process is laborious. Type curves have been published for a number of aquifer tests in confined aquifers. The curves were derived by, among others, the Theis method, the two methods for leaky artesian aquifers given in this chapter, and the Cooper-Bredehoeft-Papadopulos method. (J. E. Reed, "Type Curves for Selected Problems of Flow to Wells in Confined Aquifers," in *Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations of the United States Geological Survey*, Book 3, Chapter B3, 1980. This is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., or Scientific Publications Company, P.O. Box 23041, Washington, D.C. 20026-3041.) The published type curves use 3 × 5 cycle logarithmic graph paper with 1.85 in. for each log cycle, such as Keuffel and Esser Co. 46 7522, and semilogarithmic graph paper with 2.00 in. per log cycle, such as Keuffel and Esser Co. 46 6213. The Jacob straight-line methods will require four-cycle semilogarithmic paper such as Keuffel and Esser Co. 46 6013. Instructors may request a copy of the solution manual for *Applied Hydrogeology* from their Prentice-Hall representative. Type curves for these problems are contained therein.

1. A community is installing a new well in a regionally confined aquifer with a transmissivity of 1589 ft^2/day and a storativity of 0.0005. The planned pumping rate is 325 gal/min. There are several nearby wells tapping the same aquifer, and the project manager needs to know if the new well will cause significant interference with these wells. Compute the

theoretical drawdown caused by the new well after 30 days of continuous pumping at the following distances: 50, 150, 250, 500, 1000, 3000, 6000, and 10,000 ft. (This problem and the following problem can readily be solved using Excel with the algorithm that is suggested in Analysis K. The repetitive nature of the calculations is especially suited to a spreadsheet solution.)

2. A well that is screened in a confined aquifer is to be pumped at a rate of 165,000 ft^3/d for 30 d. If the aquifer transmissivity is 5320 ft^2/day, and the storativity is 0.0007, what is the drawdown at distances of 50, 150, 250, 500, 1000, 3000, 5000, and 10,000 ft?
3. Plot the distance-drawdown data from Problem 1 on semilog paper (or on Excel).
4. If the pumping well from Problem 1 has a radius of 1 ft, and the observed drawdown in the pumping well is 87 ft, what is the efficiency of the well?
5. Plot the distance-drawdown data from Problem 2 on semilog paper (or on Excel).
6. If the pumping well has a radius of 1 ft, and the observed drawdown in the pumping well is 64 ft, what is the efficiency of the well?
7. If the aquifer in Problem 1 is not fully confined, but is overlain by a 13.7-ft-thick confining layer with a vertical hydraulic conductivity of 0.13 ft/d and no storativity, what would be the drawdown values after 30 days of pumping at 325 gal/min at the indicated distances?
8. If the aquifer described in Problem 2 is not fully confined, but is overlain by a 8.0-ft-thick leaky, confining layer with a vertical hydraulic conductivity of 0.034 ft/d, what would be the drawdown values after 30 days of pumping at 165,000 ft^3/d at the indicated distances?
9. With reference to the well and aquifer system in Problem 1, compute the drawdown at a distance of 250 ft at the following times: 1, 2, 5, 10, 15, 30, and 60 min; 2, 5, and 12 h; and 1, 5, 10, 20, and 30 d.
10. With reference to the well and aquifer system in Problem 8, compute the drawdown at a distance of 100 ft from the well at the following times: 1, 2, 5, 10, 15, 30, and 60 min; 2, 5, and 12 h; and 1, 5, 10, 20, and 30 d.
11. Plot the time-drawdown data from Problem 9 on semilog paper.
12. Plot the time-drawdown data from Problem 10 on semilog paper. How is this plot different from that of Problem 11?
13. A well that pumps at a constant rate of 78,000 ft^3/d has achieved equilibrium so that there is no change in the drawdown with time. (The cone of depression has expanded to include a recharge zone equal to the amount of water being pumped.) The well taps a confined aquifer that is 18 ft thick. An observation well 125 ft away has a head of 277 ft above sea level; another observation well 385 ft away has a head of 291 ft. Compute the value of aquifer transmissivity using the Thiem equation.
14. A well that pumps at a constant rate of 78,000 ft^3/d has achieved equilibrium so that there is no change in the drawdown with time. (The cone of depression has expanded to include a recharge zone equal to the amount of water being pumped.) The well taps an unconfined aquifer that consists of sand overlying impermeable bedrock at an elevation of 260 ft above sea level. An observation well 125 ft away has a head of 277 ft above sea level; another observation well 385 ft away has a head of 291 ft. Compute the value of hydraulic conductivity using the Thiem equation.
15. A slug test was performed on a monitoring well with a radius of 2 in. and a sand pack radius of 5 in. The aquifer thickness was 8 ft and the initial height of the water column in the casing above the top of the screen was 51 ft. The following data showing the change in the elevation of the water in the casing with time were collected following the lowering of a solid slug into the water. Find the aquifer transmissivity of you assume a storativity of 0.001.

Time (s)	Head (ft)	Time (s)	Head (ft)
0	2.67	10	0.33
0.1	2.38	12	–0.60
0.2	2.13	14	–0.28
0.4	1.83	16	0.42
0.8	1.34	18	0.22
1.2	0.65	20	–0.30
1.6	–0.02	22	–0.20
2.0	–0.55	24	0.21
2.4	–0.96	26	0.16
2.8	–1.26	28	–0.15
3.2	–1.45	30	–0.14
3.6	–1.47	32	0.10
4.0	–1.36	34	0.10
4.4	–1.14	36	–0.08
4.8	–0.84	38	–0.09
5.2	–0.49	40	0.05
5.6	–0.12	42	0.07
6.0	0.23	44	–0.04
6.2	0.53	46	–0.05
6.6	0.75	48	0.02
8.0	0.89	60	0.01

16. The following data are from a pumping test where a well was pumped at a rate of 200 gal per minute. Drawdown as shown was measured in an observation well 250 ft away from the pumped well. The geologist's log of the well is as follows:

0–23 ft	Glacial till, brown, clayey
23–77 ft	Dolomite, fractured
77–182 ft	Shale, black, dense
182–217 ft	Sandstone, well-cemented, coarse
217–221 ft	Shale, gray, limy

Elapsed Time (min)	Drawdown (ft)
0	0.00
1	0.66
1.5	0.87
2.0	0.99
2.5	1.11
3.0	1.21
4.0	1.36
5	1.49
6	1.59
8	1.75
10	1.86
12	1.97
14	2.08
18	2.20
24	2.36
30	2.49
40	2.65
50	2.78
60	2.88
80	3.04
100	3.16
120	3.28
150	3.42
180	3.51
210	3.61
240	3.67

A steel well casing was cemented to a depth of 182 ft and the well was extended as an open boring past that point.

(A) Plot the time-drawdown data on 3 × 5 cycle logarithmic paper. Use the Theis type curve to find the aquifer transmissivity and storativity. Compute the average hydraulic conductivity.

(B) Replot the data on four-cycle semilogarithmic paper. Use the Cooper-Jacob straight-line method to find the aquifer transmissivity and storativity.

17. A test well was drilled to a total depth of 117 ft with the following geologist's log:

0–73 ft	Coarse sand
73–82 ft	Clayey sand
82–117 ft	Coarse sand
117 ft	Crystalline bedrock

The depth to water was 55 ft. The test well was screened from 82 to 117 ft. It was pumped at a rate of 560 gal/min. Drawdown was measured in an observation well that was also screened from 82 to 117 ft and was located 82 ft away from the pumping well. The following time-drawdown data were obtained:

Elapsed Time (min)	Drawdown (ft)
0	0.00
1	0.90
2	2.15
3	3.05
4	3.64
5	4.07
6	4.52
7	4.74
8	5.02
9	5.21
10	5.53
15	5.72
20	5.97
30	6.12
40	6.20
50	6.25
60	6.27
90	6.29
120	6.29

(A) Plot the time-drawdown data on 3 × 5 cycle logarithmic paper. Compute the value of the storativity and transmissivity of the aquifer using the graphical method for leaky aquifers. Find the vertical hydraulic conductivity of the confining layer.

(B) Compute the value of aquifer storativity and transmissivity of the aquifer using the Hantush inflection-point method.

18. A slug test was made with a piezometer that had a casing radius of 2.54 cm and a screen of radius 2.54 cm. A slug of 4000 cm^3 of water was injected; this raised the water level by 197.3 cm. The well completely penetrated a confined stratum that was 2.3 m thick. The decline in head with time is given in the following chart:

Elapsed Time (s)	Head (cm)
0	197.3
1	185.4
2	178.6
3	173.6
5	167.7
7	158.8
10	147.0
13	140.0
17	129.2
22	118.4
32	99.6
53	74.0
84	51.3
119	35.5
170	23.3
245	15.2
400	8.7
800	4.3

Plot the data on semilogarithmic paper and find the aquifer transmissivity and storativity using the Cooper-Bredehoeft-Papadopulos method.

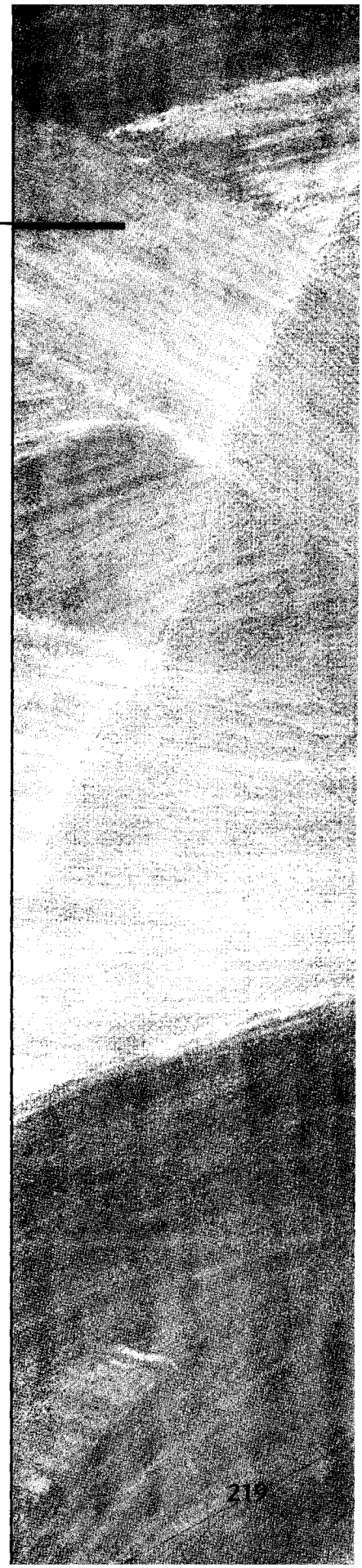
19. A well in a water-table aquifer was pumped at a rate of 873 m^3/d. Drawdown was measured in a fully penetrating observation well located 90 m away. The following data were obtained (Kruseman & deRitter 1991):

Find the transmissivity, storativity, and specific yield of the aquifer.

Time (min)	Drawdown (m)	Time (min)	Drawdown (m)	Time (min)	Drawdown (m)
0	0	18	0.098	300	0.173
1.17	0.004	21	0.103	370	0.173
1.34	0.009	26	0.110	430	0.179
1.7	0.015	31	0.115	485	0.183
2.5	0.030	41	0.128	665	0.182
4.0	0.047	51	0.133	1340	0.200
5.0	0.054	65	0.141	1490	0.203
6.0	0.061	85	0.146	1520	0.204
7.5	0.068	115	0.161		
9.0	0.064	175	0.161		
14	0.090	260	0.172		

CHAPTER 6

Soil Moisture and Ground-Water Recharge



There are two general methods by which water finds its way through the strata; in the one—the rock being close-textured—the water passes through fissures formed by fracture, or tubular channels formed by solution; in the other—the rock being open-textured—the water seeps through the pores, permeating the whole bed.

Requisite and Qualifying Conditions of Artesian Wells,
T. C. Chamberlin, 1885

6.1 Introduction

The uppermost layer of the earth may contain a three-phase system of solid, liquid, and gaseous material. The solid phase contains mineral grains and organic matter. The organic matter represents the remains of plants and animals that are undergoing decay. The liquid phase is water containing dissolved solutes. The vapor phase includes water vapor and other gases that may not be present in the same proportions as the atmosphere (Jury, Gardner, & Gardner 1991).

The earth layer that contains the three-phase system is called the **zone of aeration,** unsaturated zone, or **vadose zone.**

The solid phase of the vadose zone may consist of soil, which is formed by *in situ* weathering; or sediment, which has been transported from the place of weathering; or unweathered bedrock. Mineral grains may be disaggregated, for example, sand grains in a dune. Smaller grains may also be bound by organic matter to form larger units called *aggregates,* or *peds.* The peds have a specific orientation that forms the soil structure. The soil *texture* is determined by the distribution of the size fractions of mineral grains present.

6.2 Porosity and Water Content of Soil

The *porosity* of the soil is the percent of void space.

$$n = 100(V_v/V) \tag{6.1}$$

where

n is porosity (percentage)

V_v is volume of the void space (L^3; cm^3 or m^3)

V is volume of the sample (L^3; cm^3 or m^3)

The *void ratio* of the soil is the ratio of the volume of the voids to the volume of the solids.

$$e = V_v/V_s \tag{6.2}$$

where

e is void ratio (dimensionless)

V_s is volume of the solids (L^3; cm^3 or m^3)

The total volume is equal to the volume of the voids plus the volume of the solids.

$$V = V_v + V_s \tag{6.3}$$

The void ratio is closely related to the porosity if porosity is expressed as a ratio:

$$n = \frac{e}{1 + e} \tag{6.4}$$

and

$$e = \frac{n}{1 - n} \tag{6.5}$$

The *gravimetric water content* of the soil is the mass of the contained water divided by the mass of the solid particles (dry mass of soil):

$$\theta_g = 100(W_w/W_s) \tag{6.6}$$

where

θ_g is the gravimetric water content (percentage)

W_w is the mass of the water in the soil (M; g or kg)

W_s is the mass of the solid particles (M; g or kg)

The *volumetric water content* of the soil is the volume of the contained water divided by the total volume of the soil:

$$\theta_v = V_w/V \tag{6.7}$$

where

θ_v is the volumetric water content (dimensionless ratio)

V_w is the volume of the contained water (L^3; cm^3 or m^3)

The **saturation ratio** of a soil is the volume of the contained water divided by the volume of the voids:

$$R_s = V_w/V_v \tag{6.8}$$

where R_s is the saturation ratio (dimensionless ratio).

The *dry bulk density* of the soil is the mass of the soil particles (dry mass) divided by the volume of the sample:

$$\rho_b = W_s/V \tag{6.9}$$

where ρ_b is the dry bulk density (M/L^3; gm/cm^3 or kg/m^3).

The *particle density* is the mass of the mineral particles of the soil divided by the volume of the soil particles:

$$\rho_m = W_s/V_s \tag{6.10}$$

where ρ_m is the particle density (M/L^3; gm/cm^3 or kg/m^3).

The mass of water in a soil sample is equal to the product of the volumetric water content and the density of water. The mass of water is also equal to the product of the gravimetric water content and the dry bulk density of the soil:

$$\rho_w\theta_v = \rho_b\theta_g \tag{6.11}$$

where ρ_w is the density of water.

Equation 6.11 can be rearranged to yield

$$\theta_v = (\rho_b/\rho_w)\theta_g \tag{6.12}$$

From Equations 6.1 and 6.3, the following relation can be obtained:

$$n = 100\left(\frac{V - V_s}{V}\right) = 100\left(1 - \frac{V_s}{V}\right) \tag{6.13}$$

From Equation 6.9, $V = W_s/\rho_b$, and from Equation 6.10, $V_s = W_s/\rho_m$. Substituting these into Equation 6.13 and dividing to eliminate W_s, we obtain

$$n = 100\left(1 - \frac{\rho_b}{\rho_m}\right) \tag{6.14}$$

The gravimetric water content of a soil sample can be measured directly by excavation of a soil sample. The volume, V, of a moist soil sample is measured and the moist mass, W_m, determined. The sample is oven-dried at 105°C until a constant mass is obtained and then the mass of the soil, W_s, is determined. The mass of the water is $W_m - W_s$. Gravimetric water content is hence $(W_m - W_s)/W_s$. To find the volumetric water content, the volume of the water must first be determined by dividing the mass of the water by the density of water, ρ_w. Volumetric water content is then determined as $[(W_m - W_s)/\rho_w]/V$.*

Soil moisture can also be measured indirectly by nondestructive means. One method involves burying small blocks, called resistance cells, in which electrodes are embedded, and then passing an electrical current through the wire. The electrical resistance of the block is proportional to the moisture it contains, which, in turn, is dependent upon the soil moisture. The meter can be calibrated for the soil type and, once calibrated, can be used for repeated measurements at the same location. This type of apparatus is relatively inexpensive, but the buried resistance blocks must be left in the soil.

A more expensive device uses a source of fast neutrons enclosed in a probe. The probe is lowered into a tube in the soil. When the fast neutrons encounter hydrogen atoms in water, they become slow neutrons. The density of slow neutrons produced is a function of

*The applicable ASTM Standard is D2216—Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures.

the amount of soil moisture. A slow neutron counter is also a part of the probe. The neutron meter must be calibrated against the known water content of one part of the soil profile. The method can be used for repeated soil-moisture measurements in the same access tube. The water content in a spherical volume of 6-in. (15-cm) radius is measured by this method.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A soil sample is collected in the field and placed in a container with a volume of 75.0 cm^3. The mass of the soil at the natural moisture content is determined to be 150.79 g. The soil sample is then saturated with water and reweighed. The saturated mass is 153.67 g. The sample is then oven-dried to remove all the water and reweighed. The dry mass is 126.34 g. Note that masses are determined by weighing on a balance. All measurements were made at 20°C.

Part A: Determine the soil porosity.

The volume of the voids is the volume of the water at saturation. The volume of water is the mass of water divided by the density of water. The density of water at 20°C is 0.998 g/cm^3. The mass of water at saturation is the saturated mass minus the dry mass.

$$W_{w(\text{saturated})} = 153.67\ \text{g} - 126.34\ \text{g} = 27.33\ \text{g}$$

$$V_{w(\text{saturated})} = (27.33\ \text{g})/(0.998\ \text{g/cm}^3) = 27.4\ \text{cm}^3$$

Porosity is $100(V_v/V)$. Since $V_v = V_{w(\text{saturated})}$,

$$n = 100(27.4/75.0) = 36.5\%$$

Part B: Determine the gravimetric water content under natural conditions.

The mass of the water is the moist mass minus the dry mass. The gravimetric water content is the ratio of the mass of the water to the dry mass of the soil.

$$W_w = 150.70\ \text{g} - 126.34\ \text{g} = 24.36\ \text{g}$$

$$\theta_g = 100(W_w/W_s)$$

$$= 100[(24.36\ \text{g})/(126.34\ \text{g})] = 19.28\%$$

Part C: Determine the volumetric water content.

The volume of the water is the mass of the water divided by the density of water.

$$V_w = (24.36\ \text{g})/(0.998\ \text{g/cm}^3)$$

$$= 24.4\ \text{cm}^3$$

$$\theta_v = V_w/V$$

$$= (24.4\ \text{cm}^3)/(75.0\ \text{cm}^3) = 0.325$$

Part D: Determine the saturation ratio.

$$R_s = V_w/V_v$$

Since V_v is equal to $V_{w(\text{saturated})}$,

$$R_s = (24.4\ \text{cm}^3)/(27.4\ \text{cm}^3) = 0.891$$

Part E: Determine the dry bulk density.

The mass of the soil particles is 126.34 g, which is the oven-dried weight. Therefore,

$$\rho_b = W_s/V$$

$$= (126.34\ \text{g})/(75.0\ \text{cm}^3) = 1.68\ \text{g/cm}^3$$

Part F: Determine the particle density.

The volume of the solids is the total volume less the volume of the voids.

$$V_s = 75.0\ \text{cm}^3 - 27.4\ \text{cm}^3 = 47.6\ \text{cm}^3$$

$$\rho_m = W_s/V_s$$

$$= (126.34\ \text{g})/(47.6\ \text{cm}^3) = 2.65\ \text{g/cm}^3$$

The experimentally determined particle density of 2.65 g/cm^3 is equal to the density of quartz, which is 2.65. Quartz is a common soil mineral.

Part G: As a check on the internal consistency of the data, determine the porosity from Equation 6.14.

$$n = 100\left(1 - \frac{\rho_b}{\rho_m}\right)$$

$$= 100\left(1 - \frac{1.68\ \text{g/cm}^3}{2.65\ \text{g/cm}^3}\right)$$

$$= 36.6\%$$

The data show good internal consistency, since the porosity as determined by Equation 6.1 was 36.5%.

6.3 Capillarity and the Capillary Fringe

If fluid pressures are measured above the water table, they will be found to be negative with respect to local atmospheric pressure. This is called a **tension.** Air may also be present in the voids above the water table. Air pressure is equal to atmospheric pressure above the water table. Water vapor is also present in the voids above the water table.

Water molecules at the water table are subject to an upward attraction due to surface tension of the air-water interface and the molecular attraction of the liquid and solid phases. This is known as *capillarity*—a phenomenon well studied in classical physics.

In a tube of small diameter, the free-water surface will assume a shape with the minimum surface area. The attraction of the solid for the liquid will draw the liquid up into the tube. The upward force will eventually be offset by the weight of the column of water. The water, itself, is under tension; thus, the pressure is less than atmospheric. Figure 6.1 shows the rise of a fluid in a glass capillary due to **capillary forces.** The fluid meets the glass capillary wall at a contact angle.

The rise of a fluid in a capillary tube is given by

$$h_c = \frac{2\sigma\cos\lambda}{\rho_w g R} \tag{6.15}$$

where

h_c is the height of the capillary rise (L; cm or m)

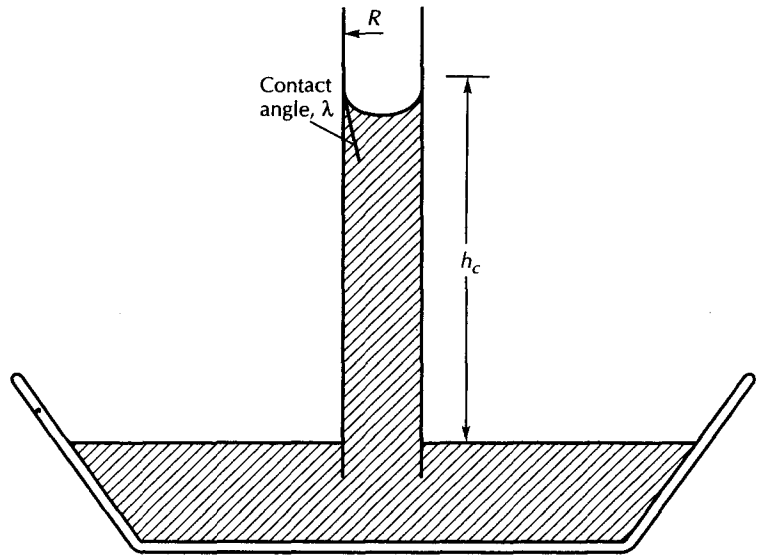
σ is the surface tension of the fluid (M/T^2; g/s^2 or kg/s^2)

λ is the angle of the meniscus with the capillary tube (degrees)

ρ_w is the density of the fluid (M/L^3; g/cm^3 or kg/m^3)

g is the acceleration of gravity (L/T^2; cm/s^2 or m/s^2)

R is the radius of the capillary tube (L; cm or m)



▲ FIGURE 6.1
Rise of water in a capillary tube.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Compute the rise of water in a glass capillary tube.

For water at 18°C, the surface tension is 73 g/s^2, the density is 0.999 g/cm^3, and the contact angle may be taken as 0°.

$$h_c = \frac{2 \times 73\ \text{g/s}^2 \times \cos 0°}{0.999\ \text{g/cm}^3 \times 980\ \text{cm/s}^2 \times R\ \text{cm}} \tag{6.16}$$

$$= \frac{0.15}{R}\ \text{cm}$$

Capillary pores in the *zone of aeration* can draw water up from the zone of saturation beneath the water table. In fine-grained soils, this **capillary fringe** can saturate the soil above the water table. However, tensiometer readings will reveal that the head is negative, indicating that the capillary fringe is part of the vadose zone. The zone of aeration is best defined as the zone where the soil moisture is under tension.

Because of irregularities in the size of the openings, capillary water does not rise to an even height above the water table; rather, it forms an irregular fringe. The capillary fringe is higher in fine-grained soils than in coarse-grained soils because of the greater tensions created by the smaller pore openings. The capillary fringe can provide a means of direct evaporation of ground water if the water table is close enough to the surface that the capillary fringe reaches the ground surface. As water evaporates from the soil surface, it can be replaced by water from the zone of saturation drawn upward by capillarity.

Above the capillary fringe moisture coats the solid surfaces of the fragment or rock particles. If the liquid coating becomes too thick to be held by surface tension, a droplet will pull away and be drawn downward by gravity. The fluid can also evaporate and move through the air space in the pores as water vapor.

The amount of vapor movement in the unsaturated zone is much less important than transport in the liquid form. However, this might not hold true if the water content of the

soil is very low or if there is a strong temperature gradient. The movement of vapor through the unsaturated zone is a function of the temperature and humidity gradients in the soil and molecular diffusion coefficients for water vapor in the soil.

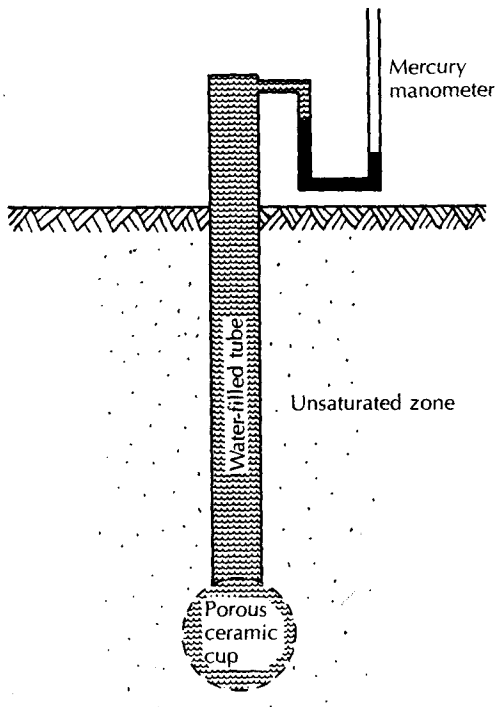
6.4 Pore-Water Tension in the Vadose Zone

Fluid pressures in the unsaturated zone are negative, owing to tension of the soil-surface-water contact. The negative pressure head, ψ, is measured in the field with a **tensiometer.** This device consists of a tube that is closed at the top, with a ceramic cup at the bottom to provide a porous membrane (Figure 6.2). When the tensiometer is inserted into soil, water within it is in contact with the soil moisture through the porous membrane. The suction exerted on the water in the tensiometer can be measured with a mercury manometer, vacuum gauge, or pressure transducer.*

6.5 Soil Water

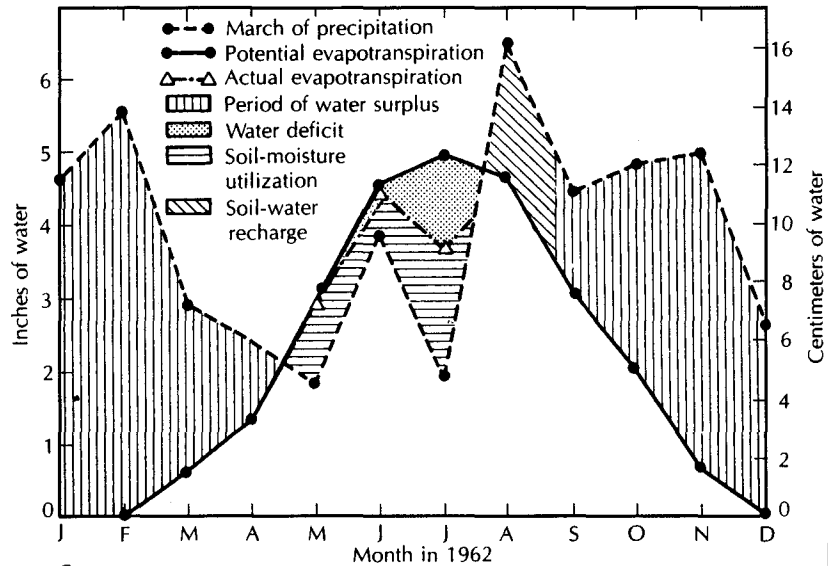
The water in the vadose zone that is available to growing plants is called *soil water,* and is found in the *belt of soil water.* This zone extends from the land surface to the depth of plant roots. In agricultural fields this may extend downward only a meter or two. Some trees have taproots that extend downward many meters. The top of the capillary fringe may be below the belt of soil water. In this case there is an **intermediate zone** between the belt of soil water and the capillary fringe. In other cases the belt of soil water may extend right to the water table and include the capillary fringe.

Soil moisture at a location varies with changes in the amount of precipitation and evapotranspiration. Figure 6.3 shows a soil-moisture budget for a humid area based on



◄ FIGURE 6.2
Porous-cup tensiometer with mercury manometer to measure soil-moisture tension.

*The applicable ASTM Standard is D3430-91—Standard Guide for Measuring Matric Potential in the Vadose Zone Using Tensiometers.



▲ FIGURE 6.3
Soil-moisture budget for Bridgehampton, New York. The diagram is based on measured precipitation and computed potential and actual evapotranspiration. The Thornthwaite method was used for evapotranspiration computations. *Source: C. W. Fetter, Jr.,* Bulletin, Geological Society of America 87 *(1976): 401–6. Used with permission.*

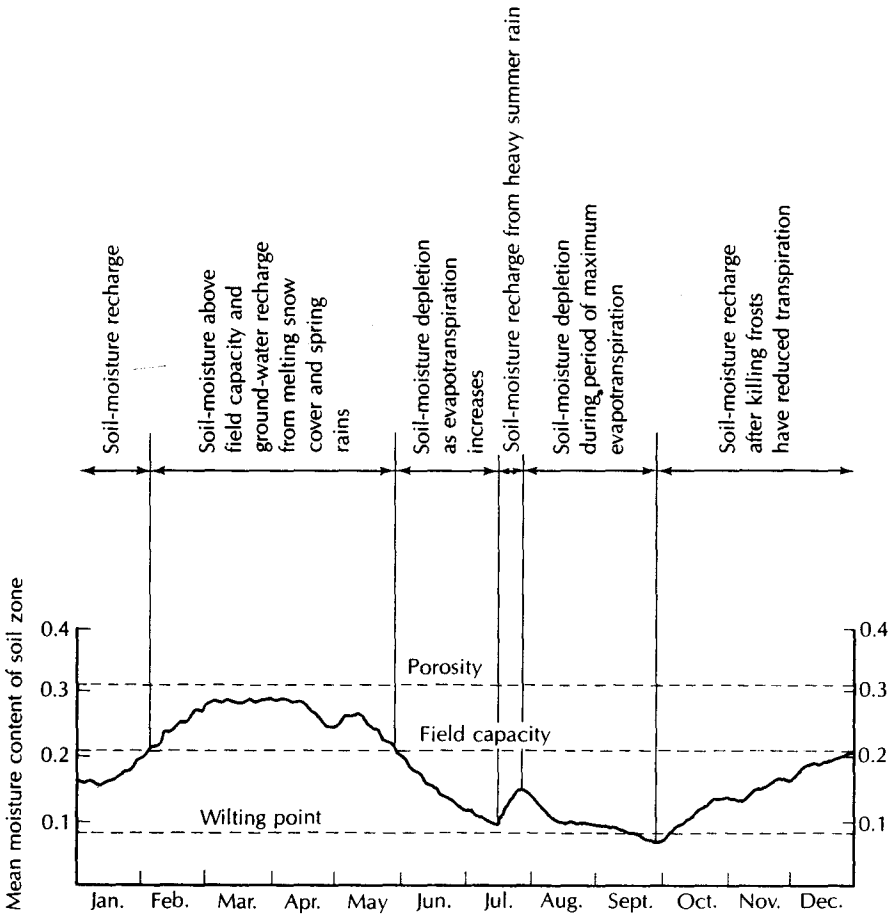
Table 6.1 Moisture Content of a Silt Loam as a Function of Time Since Saturation

Time (days)	θ (%)
1	20.2
7	17.5
30	15.9
60	14.7
156	13.6

Source: Hillel (1971).

measured precipitation and computed potential and actual evapotranspiration. During the period of water surplus, there is moisture available for ground-water recharge and runoff. Major fluctuations are seasonal in nature. In the spring, soil moisture is high, as snowmelt and spring rains have created large amounts of water available for infiltration. At times, the top layer of soil may be completely saturated, even though lower layers are unsaturated. During these periods of very high soil moisture, ground-water recharge can occur. Moisture moves downward by gravity flow. As water is withdrawn from the soil by evapotranspiration, the soil-moisture content drops. When the soil-moisture content of a layer reaches the point at which the force of gravity acting on the water equals the surface tension, gravity drainage ceases. This soil-moisture content is the **field capacity** of the soil. Field capacity is related to specific retention but has different units. It depends upon specific retention, evaporation depth, and the unsaturated permeability characteristic curve of the soil.

The concept of field capacity is somewhat vague. Gravity drainage may take a long period of time to occur. The amount of moisture retained for a few days is much more than that retained for a long period. Table 6.1 shows the soil moisture of a silt-loam (fine-



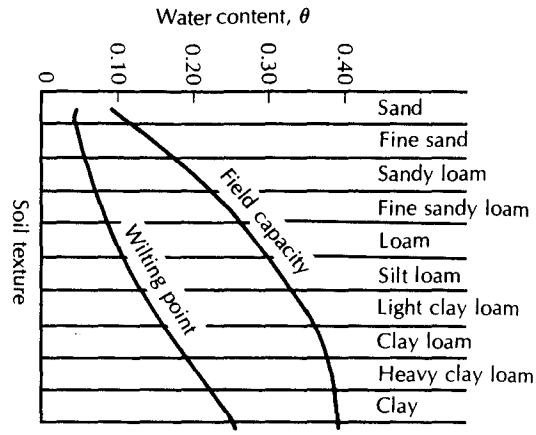
▲ FIGURE 6.4
Hypothetical fluctuation of soil moisture for a sandy loam soil through an annual cycle in a region with a moderate amount of rainfall (20 to 30 in. (50 to 75 cm) per year) and heavy rains in the spring.

textured) soil as a function of time (Hillel 1971). It can be seen that field capacity is not a single value, but a time-dependent parameter.

Soil moisture becomes lower than the field capacity as evapotranspiration removes still more water. During summer periods, the soil often dries. Occasional rainstorms may cause short-term rises in soil-moisture content, but there is generally no ground-water recharge. Exceptionally heavy summer rains, which replenish the depleted soil moisture and raise the water content above the field capacity, can create a wave of infiltrated water that courses downward through the soil-moisture zone and past the roots of thirsty plants, recharging the ground-water reservoir and thus causing the water table to rise. After fall frosts kill plants and cause deciduous trees to lose their leaves, the rate of evapotranspiration slows greatly, and soil moisture increases if rainfall and infiltration continue. Figure 6.4 illustrates a hypothetical annual cycle of soil moisture for a moderately humid area (20 to 30 in., or 50 to 75 cm, per year precipitation).

If the soil moisture drops too low, the remaining moisture is too tightly bound to the soil particles for the plant roots to withdraw it. The soil-moisture content at which this first occurs is the *wilting point*. Plants wilt and may die for lack of moisture. The wilting-point moisture content is greater for fine-textured soils owing to their greater surface area. Figure 6.5 shows typical wilting-point moisture content values for various soil types. Also

► FIGURE 6.5
Water-holding properties of soils based on texture. The available water supply for a soil is the difference between field capacity and wilting point. *Source: U.S. Department of Agriculture,* Yearbook. *1955.*



shown are generalized field capacity values. The available water capacity of a soil is the difference between the field capacity and the wilting point. Water in a soil above the field capacity will drain downward if the soil is permeable or will waterlog a fine-grained, slowly permeable soil. Brief study of Figure 6.5 shows that the available water capacity is greatest for soils of intermediate texture (e.g., loams and silt loams).

In many instances the soil is not homogeneous, but is a complex region of mineral matter, organic matter, plant roots, and animal burrows. Preferential pathways may be created along decaying plant roots and animal burrows. In such cases, infiltrating rainwater may be channeled to the water table, even though soil moisture in the overall soil regime is below the field capacity. Thus, ground-water recharge can occur despite an overall soil-moisture deficit.

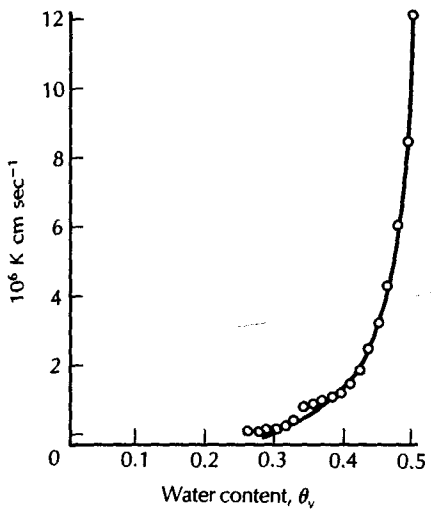
6.6 Theory of Unsaturated Flow

The infiltration of water into the unsaturated zone can be considered mathematically in terms of both a **gravity potential,** Z, and a **moisture potential,** ψ (Childs 1967). The moisture potential is a negative pressure due to the soil-water attraction. The moisture potential increases with decreasing amounts of soil moisture. Depending upon the soil-moisture content, either the moisture potential or the gravity potential may predominate. At moisture contents close to the specific retention, the gravity potential is greater; but when the soil is very dry, the moisture potential may be several orders of magnitude greater than the gravity potential.

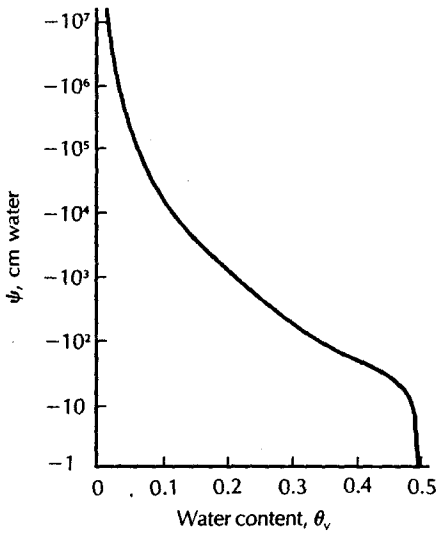
When the soil is not saturated, soil moisture flows downward by gravity flow through interconnected pores that are filled with water and, to a lesser extent, as a film flowing along particle surfaces in pores that also contain air. With increasing water content, more pores fill, and the rate of downward water movement increases. Darcy's law is valid for flow in the unsaturated zone, although the *unsaturated hydraulic conductivity,* $K(\theta_v)$, is not a constant. The unsaturated hydraulic conductivity is a function of the volumetric water content, θ_v. As θ_v increases, so does $K(\theta_v)$. Figure 6.6 shows the relationship between $K(\theta_v)$ and θ_v, for a clay soil. The value of the moisture potential, ψ, is also a function of θ_v, often ranging over many orders of magnitude. The relationship between moisture potential and volumetric water content is determined experimentally for a given soil. The results are graphed as a soil-water retention curve (Figure 6.7). The total potential, ϕ, in unsaturated flow is the sum of the moisture potential, $\psi(\theta_v)$, and the elevation head, Z:

$$\phi = \psi(\theta_v) + Z \tag{6.17}$$

The relationship of unsaturated hydraulic conductivity and volumetric water content is determined experimentally. A sample of the rock or sediment is placed in a container.



◀ FIGURE 6.6
The relationship between hydraulic conductivity, K, and volumetric water content, θ_v, for a clay. *Source: J. R. Philip, "Theory of Infiltration." In* Advances in Hydroscience, *vol. 5, ed. V. T. Chow. (New York: Academic Press, 1969). Used with permission.*

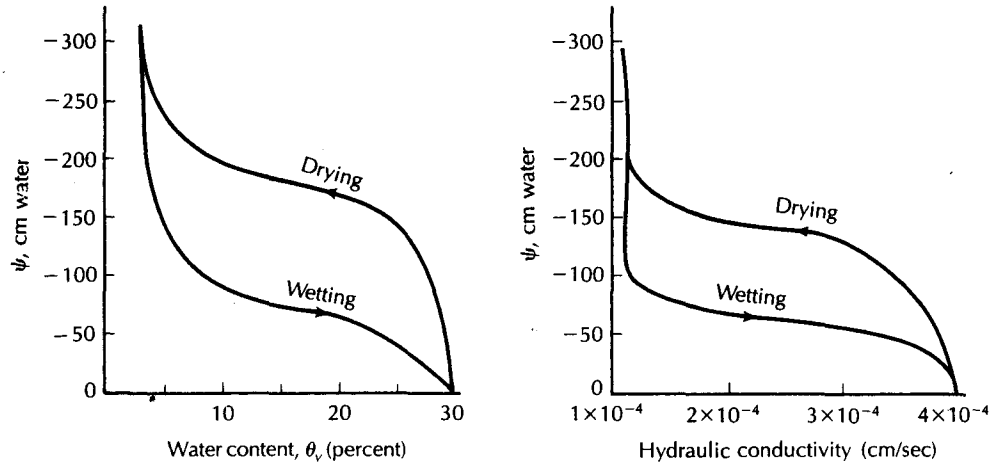


◀ FIGURE 6.7
The relationship between moisture potential, ψ, and volumetric water content, θ_v, for the clay soil of Figure 6.7. *Source: J. R. Philip, "Theory of Infiltration." In* Advances in Hydroscience, *vol. 5, ed. V. T. Chow. (New York: Academic Press, 1969). Used with permission.*

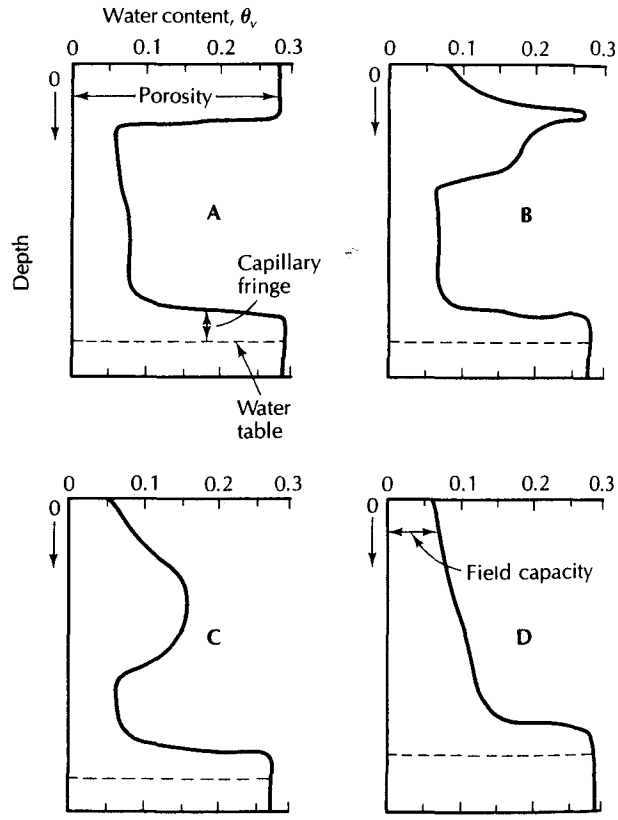
he water content is kept constant, and the rate at which water moves through the soil is ıeasured. The value of $K(\theta_v)$ can be determined by Darcy's law. Figure 6.6 is based on sev-al different measurements at differing values of θ_v.

The moisture potential, ψ, is measured by a suction applied to a soil. The curve of ψ ver-ıs volumetric water content is a plot of the volumetric water content, starting with a satu-ted sample to which increased suction is gradually applied. A rather substantial problem curs because of hysteresis in the volumetric water content–moisture potential relation-ip. The curve of ψ as a function of θ_v is different if it is determined for decreasing as op-ıed to increasing values of θ_v. Thus, two curves similar to Figure 6.7 are needed: one if ² sediment has a particular θ_v as a result of an increase in soil-water content and another he soil is drying. Figure 6.8 shows the impact of hysteresis for an idealized sandy soil. erefore, to use a value of ψ, one must know the prior moisture history of the sample.

Flow in the unsaturated zone is further complicated by the fact that both K and ψ may ınge as θ_v varies, and, by its very nature, unsaturated flow involves many changes in umetric moisture content as waves of infiltrated water pass. The flow equations are ılinear and not subject to easy solutions.

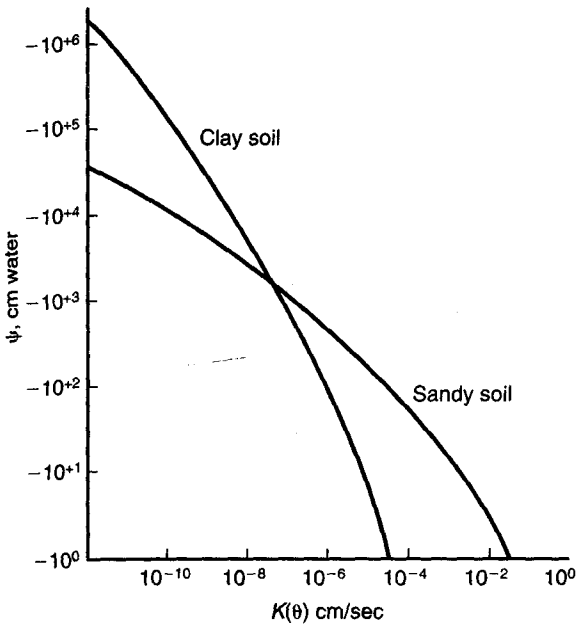


▲ FIGURE 6.8
Idealized curves showing relationships of volumetric water content, θ_v, hydraulic conductivity, K, and soil-moisture tension head, ψ. The effect is included for wetting and drying cycles.



► FIGURE 6.9
Moisture profiles showing the downward passage of a wave of infiltrated water. The soil is saturated at a water content of 0.29 and has a field capacity water content of 0.06. *Source: Modified from* Agronomy Monograph *17, "Drainage for Agriculture." 1974, pp. 359–405. Used with permission of the* American Society of Agronomy.

The downward movement of a slug of infiltrated water is shown in Figure 6.9. During infiltration (part A), the topmost soil layer is brought up to the saturated water content of almost 0.3. The rainfall rate is exceeding the infiltration capacity, so the vertical hydraulic conductivity of the soil controls the rate of downward movement. After infiltration ceases (part B), the slug of infiltrated water begins to move downward, although only a small layer remains at the saturated moisture content. Eventually, all of the downward-moving



◀ FIGURE 6.10
Typical soil-moisture-potential—hydraulic-conductivity curves for a sandy soil showing the crossover effect for increasing moisture potential (decrease in water content.)

slug is at an unsaturated state, and $K(\theta_v)$ controls the downward movement (part C). Finally, the slug reaches the water table and raises it (part D). By this time, gravity drainage has reduced the upper soil layer to field capacity.

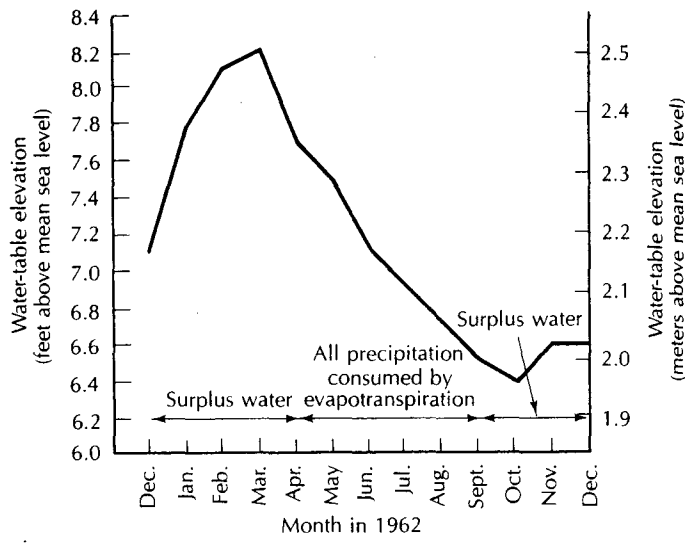
One important consideration in unsaturated flow is that at low volumetric water contents, the relations that hold true in saturated flow may be invalid. The best example is the fact that for coarse materials, such as sand and gravel, the pores are large and drain quickly. At lower volumetric moisture contents, there may be very few saturated pores. On the other hand, finer-grained soils may have most of the pores still saturated. Thus, at lower values of θ_v, the unsaturated hydraulic conductivity of a clay may be greater than that of a sand. A layer of sand in a fine-textured, unsaturated soil may retard downward movement of infiltrating water owing to its low unsaturated hydraulic conductivity.

Figure 6.10 shows the relationship between moisture potential and unsaturated hydraulic conductivity for a sandy soil and a clay soil. It can be seen that at low-moisture potentials (high volumetric water content), the sandy soil has a greater hydraulic conductivity; however, at high (more negative) moisture potential (low water content), the clay has a greater hydraulic conductivity.

6.7 Water-Table Recharge

When the front of infiltrating water reaches the capillary fringe, it displaces air in the pore spaces and causes the water table to rise. The capillary fringe also rises, and the latest-arriving recharge is actually found at the top of the capillary fringe. The time of movement of infiltrating water is a function of the thickness of the unsaturated zone and the vertical unsaturated hydraulic conductivity. The presence of layers of low-permeability material, such as silts and clays, can retard the rate of recharge, even if the layers are thin. The time lag may be only a few hours in the humid regions for very coarse soils with a water table close to the surface. In arid environments, with very infrequent recharge and great depths to the water table, water may take years to pass through the unsaturated zone.

In the arid Hualapai Plateau area of northwestern Arizona, the annual recharge rate is only 0.1 in. (0.25 cm) per year. Although rainfall averages 9 to 13 in. (23 to 33 cm) per year, potential evapotranspiration is in the range of 72 to 76 in. (180 to 190 cm) per year

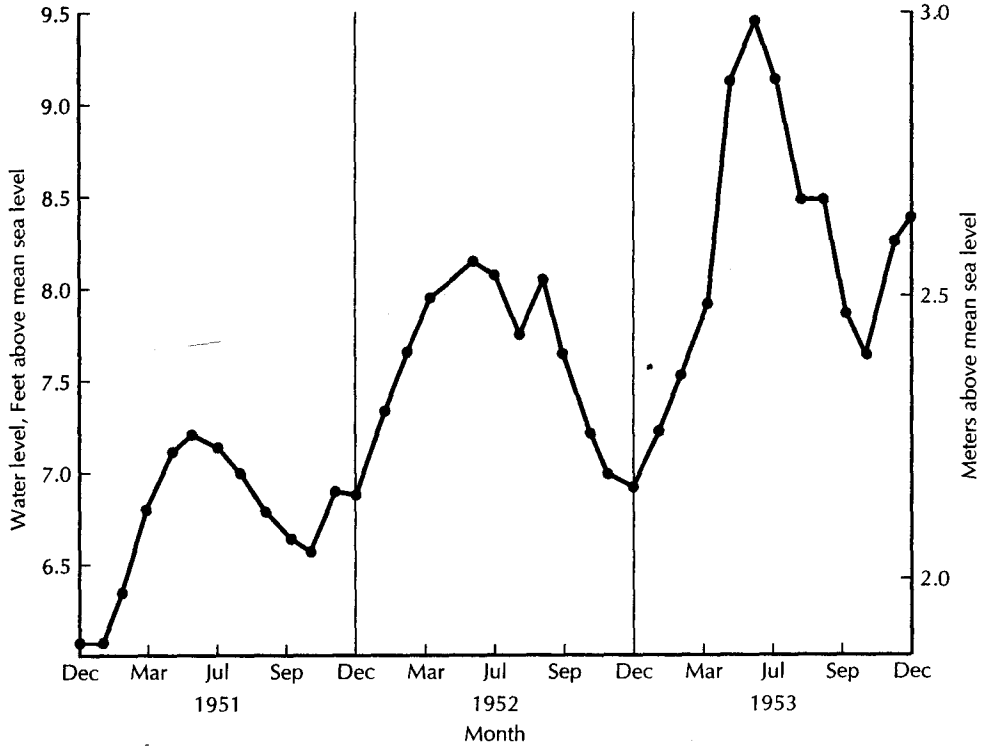


▶ FIGURE 6.11
Hydrograph of a shallow well in a water-table aquifer in Long Island. The period of record is the same as for the soil-moisture budget diagram of Figure 6.3.

(Huntoon 1977). Grassland regions have more precipitation and, consequently, more recharge. In the Sand Hills region of South Dakota and Nebraska, the mean annual precipitation is 18.2 in. (46.3 cm), and ground-water recharge amounts to 2.7 in. (6.9 cm) per year (Rahn & Paul 1975). On eastern Long Island, New York, precipitation averages 46 in. (116.8 cm) per year, and evapotranspiration, as computed by the Thornthwaite method, averages 22.6 in. (57.4 cm) per year. The soils are permeable, and much of the remaining 23.4 in. (59.4 cm) per year of water recharges the water table (Fetter 1976).

The rate at which water-table recharge occurs is variable, depending upon, among other things, the thickness of the unsaturated zone. Where the unsaturated zone is thinner, recharge can reach the water table first, resulting in a localized ground-water mound. The unsaturated zone is thinner in topographically low places, for example, near a lake shore or in a lowland. Soil moisture percolating through the unsaturated zone beneath upland areas takes longer so that if the water table is initially somewhat level, localized high spots can develop on the water table. Localized flow systems can develop that move water laterally from the temporary ground-water mounds toward the water table beneath the uplands, where the infiltration has not reached the water table. Eventually the water table beneath the upland area will rise owing not only to the vertical percolation of infiltrating water but also to the lateral movement from the temporary ground-water mounds. This results in the development of very complex and transitory local flow systems. In very permeable materials, the local ground-water mounds beneath the topographic lows dissipate quickly. However, in less permeable materials the local ground-water mounds could take a rather long time to dissipate. Localized flow reversals could take place with the ground water first flowing from beneath the lowland toward the upland in response to the formation of localized recharge mounds and then moving in the opposite direction as the water table beneath the upland finally is recharged by the percolating soil moisture. It would be anticipated that the flow reversals would affect only the water moving in the very top of an unsaturated flow system (Winter 1983).

On eastern Long Island, the response of the water table to recharge is fairly rapid. Figure 6.11 is a hydrograph for 1962 of a water-table well with an unsaturated zone on the order of 10 to 13 ft (3 to 4 m). This well is a few miles from the precipitation station that yielded the data for Figure 6.3. As the water table is being drained by stream and spring

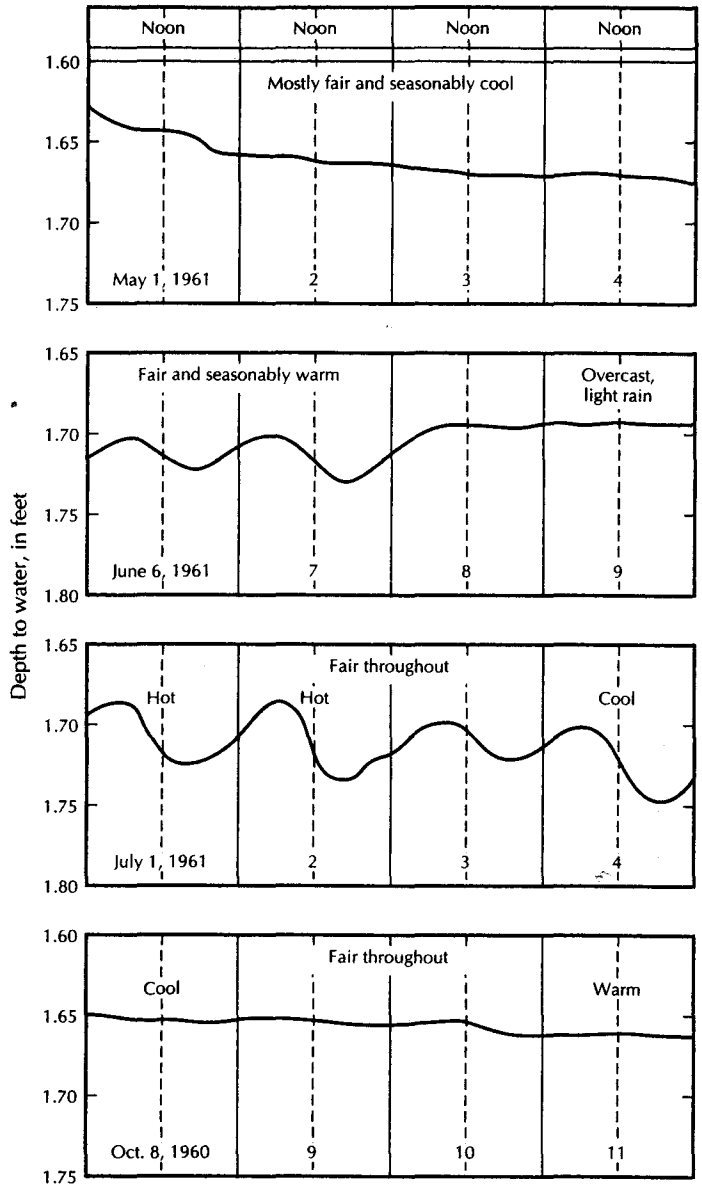


▲ FIGURE 6.12
Monthly hydrograph of water levels in a water-table monitoring well on eastern Long Island, New York.

discharge, it will decline (1) if there is no recharge or (2) if the amount of recharge is less than ground-water outflow. The hydrograph peaks in March and then begins a recession that lasts until October. Periods of surplus water are indicated in Figure 6.5 for January through April, and then September through December. The peak in March corresponds to snowmelt and spring rains, and the upturn in water levels by November is due to fall recharge. The response time of this water-table aquifer is more rapid than for those cases in which the unsaturated zone is many tens of feet thick.

The water table shows a seasonal fluctuation, rising during periods of recharge and falling when no precipitation occurs or when evapotranspiration exceeds precipitation. Figure 6.12 is based on monthly water-level observations in a shallow well on eastern Long Island. There is a seasonal fluctuation, with the peak annual water level occurring in late spring. Over the three-year period of record there is a generally rising water table, indicating a short-term trend toward more precipitation.

If the capillary fringe reaches the land surface, direct evapotranspiration of ground water is possible. Evapotranspiration occurs primarily when the sun is shining; hence, it is at a maximum on warm, sunny days. Figure 6.13 shows the effect of direct evapotranspiration on the shallow water table on the south shore of Long Island. Ground-water levels show diurnal variation in June and July when plants are actively growing and direct evapotranspiration is occurring during the daylight hours. However, in early May, before active plant growth, and in October, after plant growth has stopped, there is little evapotranspiration and no diurnal water-level variation.



▲ FIGURE 6.13
Hydrographs of a water-table monitoring well showing effect of discharge by evapotranspiration on the water table elevation. *Source: E. J. Pluhowski & I. H. Kantrowitz,* U.S. Geological Survey Water Supply Paper 1768, *1964.*

Notation

e	Void ratio
g	Acceleration of gravity
h_c	Height of capillary rise
$K(\theta_v)$	Unsaturated hydraulic conductivity
n	Porosity
R	Radius of a capillary tube
R_s	Saturation ratio
V	Total volume
V_v	Volume of the voids
V_s	Volume of solid particles

W_m	Mass of moist soil sample
W_w	Mass of contained water
W_s	Mass of solid particles
Z	Elevation potential
ϕ	Total potential
θ_g	Gravimetric water content
θ_v	Volumetric water content
$\psi(\theta_v)$	Moisture potential
σ	Surface tension of a fluid
λ	Contact angle of a fluid and a solid
ρ_b	Dry bulk density
ρ_m	Particle density
ρ_w	Fluid density

Analysis

A. Engineered landfills are constructed with a type of cap over the waste to prevent the incursion of people and animals into the waste and to limit the amount of precipitation that can come into contact with it. In humid regions the latter consideration is important. Caps are designed to promote the growth of vegetation to prevent erosion of the cover and to foster evapotranspiration so that the amount of precipitation passing the root zone is limited. This calls for topsoil and a rooting layer beneath the cap.

Landfill covers can be constructed using only natural earth materials. They will be sloped so that as much precipitation as possible will run off. Which of the following landfill designs would promote the most runoff and the least infiltration through the cover and into the waste? Write a paragraph to explain your choice. The materials are listed from top to bottom.

(1) Topsoil/low permeability soil ($K < 10^{-6}$ cm/s) coarse sand ($K > 10^{-2}$ cm/s) / compacted clay ($K < 10^{-7}$ cm/s) / waste

(2) Topsoil / coarse sand ($K > 10^{-2}$ cm/s) / compacted clay ($K < 10^{-7}$ cm/s) / waste

(3) Topsoil / compacted clay ($K < 10^{-7}$ cm/s) / waste

(4) Topsoil / coarse and ($K > 10^{-2}$ cm/s) / waste

(5) Topsoil / low permeability soil ($K < 10^{-6}$ cm/s) / compacted clay ($K < 10^{-7}$ cm/s) / coarse sand ($K > 10^{-2}$ cm/s) / waste

B. Show why Equation 6.4 [$n = e / (1 + e)$] and Equation 6.5 [$e = n/(1-n)$] are equivalent.

Problems

Answers to odd-numbered problems appear at the end of the book.

1. A soil sample is collected and taken to the lab. The volume of the sample is 75 cm^3. At the natural water content, the sample weighs 158.88 g. It is then saturated with water and reweighed. The saturated weight is 164.34 g. The sample is gravity drained, and its weight is found to be 147.30 g. Finally, it is oven-dried; the dry weight is 142.89 g. Assume the density of water is 1.00 g/cm^3. Find each of the following:

(A) Volumetric water content
(B) Gravimetric water content
(C) Saturation ratio
(D) Porosity
(E) Specific yield
(F) Specific retention
(G) Dry bulk density
(H) Porosity computed from density

2. A soil sample is collected and taken to the lab. The volume of the sample is 75 cm^3. At the natural-water content, the sample weighs 168.00 g. It is then saturated with water and reweighed. The saturated weight is 171.25 g. The sample is gravity drained, and its weight is found to be 160.59 g. Finally, it is oven-dried; the dry weight is 157.22 g. Assume the density of water is 1.0 g/cm^3. Find each of the following:

(A) Volumetric water content
(B) Gravimetric water content
(C) Saturation ratio
(D) Porosity
(E) Specific yield
(F) Specific retention
(G) Dry bulk density
(H) Porosity computed from density



CHAPTER 7

Regional Ground-Water Flow

Again, most springs are in the neighborhood of mountains and high grounds, whereas if we except rivers, water rarely appears in the plains. For mountains and high ground suspended over the country like a saturated sponge, make the water ooze out and trickle together in minute quantities but in many places. They also receive a great deal of water falling as rain.

Meteorologica, Aristotle, 384–322 B.C.

7.1 Introduction

A ground-water basin is a defined volume of the subsurface through which ground water flows from areas where the water table is recharged to a location where ground-water discharge occurs. We can consider this flow to be regional in nature. The aerial extent of the ground-water basin is not necessarily the same as the aerial extent of the corresponding catchment area. In a study of the ground-water basin discharging into Mirror Lake, New Hampshire, Tiedeman and others (1998) found that the ground-water recharge area is about 1.5 times the lake's catchment area.

In the zone of actively flowing ground water, the water moves through the porous media under the influence of the fluid potential. This movement is a three-dimensional phenomenon, yet we are usually forced to represent it on a two-dimensional medium. In the diagrams in this chapter, the reader will have to imagine the implied third dimension. We will start by examining steady flow through isotropic, homogeneous media and then include the effects of nonhomogeneity and anisotropy.

Flow nets will be used to illustrate the various regional flow patterns. These are a means of portraying the solution to the Laplace equation (4.43), which governs steady flow. The various solutions will represent differing conditions of hydraulic conductivity and aquifer geometry. This type of flow net is constructed by drawing flow lines on a potential field. The po-

tential fields are solutions to a mathematical model of the aquifer systems. Laplace's equation was solved either analytically (Tóth 1962, 1963) or numerically (Freeze & Witherspoon 1966, 1967) with different boundary conditions. One of the most critical boundary conditions is the shape of the water table or potentiometric surface. The flow lines are drawn to illustrate some of the possible flow paths.

7.2 Steady Regional Ground-Water Flow in Unconfined Aquifers

7.2.1 Recharge and Discharge Areas

In unconfined aquifers, some characteristics are common to most **recharge areas;** likewise, most **discharge areas** have some common denominators. Recharge areas are usually in topographical high places; discharge areas are located in topographic lows. In the recharge areas, there is often a rather deep unsaturated zone between the water table and the land surface. Conversely, the water table is found either close to or at the land surface in discharge areas.

Flow lines on a flow net tend to diverge from recharge areas and converge toward discharge areas. This convergence will not occur if the discharge zone is large, such as a coastline. A water-table contour map can often be used to locate ground-water recharge and discharge areas. Flow lines can be drawn on the basis of ground-water contours, crossing them at right angles if the aquifer is isotropic.

In the field, vegetation and surface water can sometimes be used to locate discharge areas. There may be some physical manifestation of the discharging ground water, which can take the form of a spring, seep, lake, or stream. The presence of vegetation common to wet soils may be indicative of discharge areas. In arid regions, ground water may be discharged as evaporation or transpiration. In such cases, a thicker-than-normal cover of vegetation or a salt deposit may indicate a discharge area.

The aforementioned physical manifestations sometimes betoken a ground-water discharge area—but not always. In nonhomogeneous materials, a low-permeability layer may, for example, form a perched aquifer, which could result in a wetland or pond. A thorough evaluation of all hydrogeologic information should always be made.

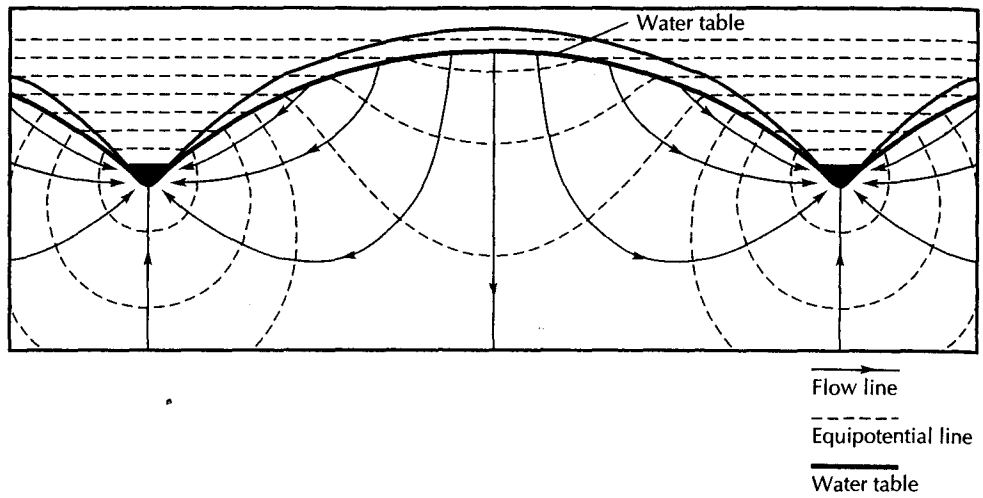
Many field studies conducted in humid regions note that the water table in unconfined aquifers usually has the same general shape as the surface topography. This is not surprising, since recharge taking place in topographical high areas has a greater potential energy than recharge in lower areas. This greater energy is reflected in the higher elevations of the water table in those locations. This generalization may not be true in arid regions.

7.2.2 Ground-Water Flow Patterns in Homogeneous Aquifers

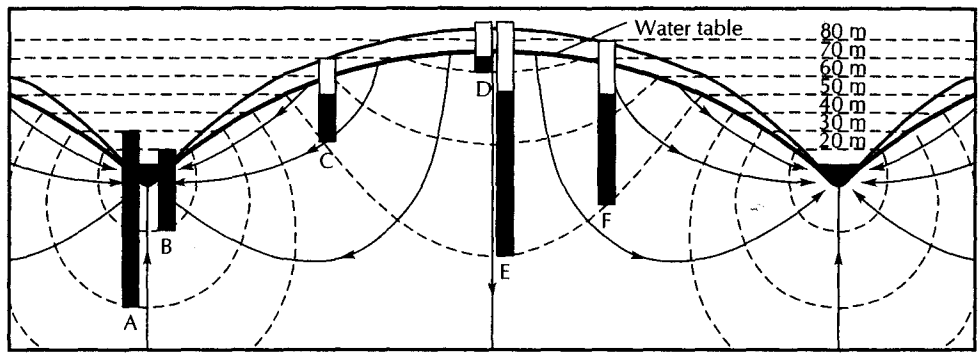
A descriptive model of regional steady-state ground-water flow in an unconfined aquifer was first published by M. K. Hubbert in his pioneering paper, "The Theory of Ground-Water Motion" (Hubbert 1940). Figure 7.1 was first published in that paper. This figure is a cross section of a homogeneous aquifer with the water table rising in a hill between two valleys. Equipotential lines are shown as dashed lines, and flow lines are solid. The diagram does not extend to the bottom of the aquifer, so the flow lines continue below the bottom of Figure 7.1.

Hubbert showed the equipotential lines extending horizontally above the water table, reflecting the elevation head. Below the water table the equipotential lines are curvilinear, reflecting the sum of the elevation and pressure heads.

Figure 7.1 shows that below the hill, where the water table is high, ground-water flow is downward, into the aquifer. This is a recharge zone. However, ground-water flow is upward beneath the valleys, indicating that discharge zones are present there. The valley bottoms are



▲ FIGURE 7.1
Cross-sectional flow net in an isotropic, homogeneous aquifer. The aquifer is much deeper than the diagram. *Source: M. K. Hubbert,* Journal of Geology *48, no. 8 (1940): 795–944. Used with permission of the University of Chicago Press.*



▲ FIGURE 7.2
Piezometers superimposed on Figure 7.1. The water level in the piezometer will rise to the elevation of the hydraulic head, which is represented by the equipotential line at the open end of the piezometer. Source: Modified from M. K. Hubbert, *Journal of Geology* 48, no. 8 (1940): 795–944. *Used with permission of the University of Chicago Press.*

concentrated areas of ground-water discharge into the streams, with the flow lines converging toward them. The crest of the water table is a ground-water divide, with flow on either side going in opposite directions.

The water level in a piezometer will extend to the elevation represented by the equipotential at the bottom end. Figure 7.2 shows several piezometers superimposed on the flow net of Figure 7.1. Head values have also been assigned to the equipotential lines on Figure 7.2.

Piezometers C, E, and F end on the 50-m equipotential line. The water level in each piezometer will rise to the same elevation, which represents a head of 50 m above a datum. Notice that the length of the water column in each piezometer is different, because the 50-m equipotential line is at a different depth at each location.

Piezometers A and B are in essentially the same location, with A being deeper than B. Piezometer A has a head of 30 m, whereas piezometer B has a head of 20 m. The hydraulic

gradient at this location is upward, indicating that the valley is a discharge zone. Likewise, piezometers D and E are at the same location, with D being shallow and E being deep. The head in piezometer D is 70 m; in E, it is 50 m. The gradient here is downward, so this is a ground-water recharge zone. Notice that, although the head in D is greater than the head in E, the water column in piezometer D is much shorter. The important factor is the elevation of the water level in the piezometer, not the length of the water column.

Figure 7.1 was a conceptual model based on Hubbert's mathematical intuition. The next major advancement in the understanding of regional flow systems came in 1962, when J. Tóth found an analytical solution to the Laplace equation. For the case where the water table has a linear slope, his solution was as follows (Tóth 1962):
where

$$h = g\left(z_0 + \frac{\tan \alpha L}{2}\right) - \frac{4g \tan \alpha L}{\pi^2} \cdot \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{\cos[(2m + 1)\pi x/L]\cosh[(2m + 1)\pi z/L]}{(2m + 1)^2 \cosh[(2m + 1)\pi z_0/L)]} \quad (7.1)$$

h is the head (L)

g is the gravitational constant (L/T^2)

z_0 is the elevation of the water table at its lowest point above the bottom of the aquifer (L)

z is the elevation of the water table above the bottom of the aquifer (L)

$\tan \alpha$ is the slope of the water table

L is the total length of the flow system (L)

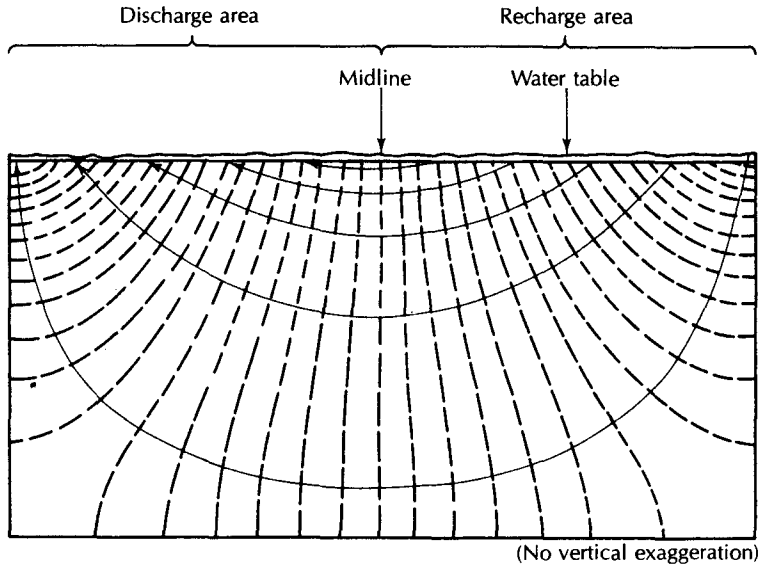
x is the horizontal distance from the place where the water table is at its lowest elevation (L)

Figure 7.3 is a graphical representation of Tóth's solution for the case where there is a linear slope to the water table and the depth of the ground-water basin is one-half the flow length. The base of the flow system is an impermeable boundary, so that flow cannot cross it. The sides of the system are also no-flow boundaries because of hydrodynamic considerations. The solution to Equation 7.1 gave the distribution of hydraulic head. Based on this distribution, the flow lines were drawn at right angles, since the aquifer was assumed to be isotropic and homogeneous.

In the ground-water basin represented by Figure 7.3, ground water is discharged primarily by evapotranspiration or diffused springs on the lower slopes of the basin. This low system does not have converging flow lines as shown in Figure 7.1 because there is ıot a place where ground-water discharge is concentrated. The entire upper part of the round-water basin is a ground-water recharge basin, and the entire lower part is a round-water discharge area. In recharge areas the angle between the water table and flow nes is oblique and points upstream. At the midline, or hinge point, the flow lines are parllel to the water table. In the discharge area, the flow lines are again oblique with the ater table but are pointing downstream.

To solve the Laplace equation by analytical means, the boundary conditions must be speced. In 1963, Tóth published another solution to the Laplace equation, this time for an undulting water table, which was described by a sine-wave function. The results of this analysis ovided hydrogeologists with great insight into ground-water flow systems (Tóth 1963).

If the surface topography has well-defined local relief, a series of *local ground-water w systems* can form in humid regions, because the topographic relief causes undulations the water table. A local ground-water flow system has the recharge area at a topographhigh spot and its discharge area at an adjacent topographic low. Figure 7.4A shows a



▲ FIGURE 7.3
Regional flow pattern in an area of sloping linear topography and water table. The flow pattern is symmetrical about the midline. Source: J. A. Tóth, *Journal of Geophysical Research* 67 (1962): 4375–87. *Used with permission.*

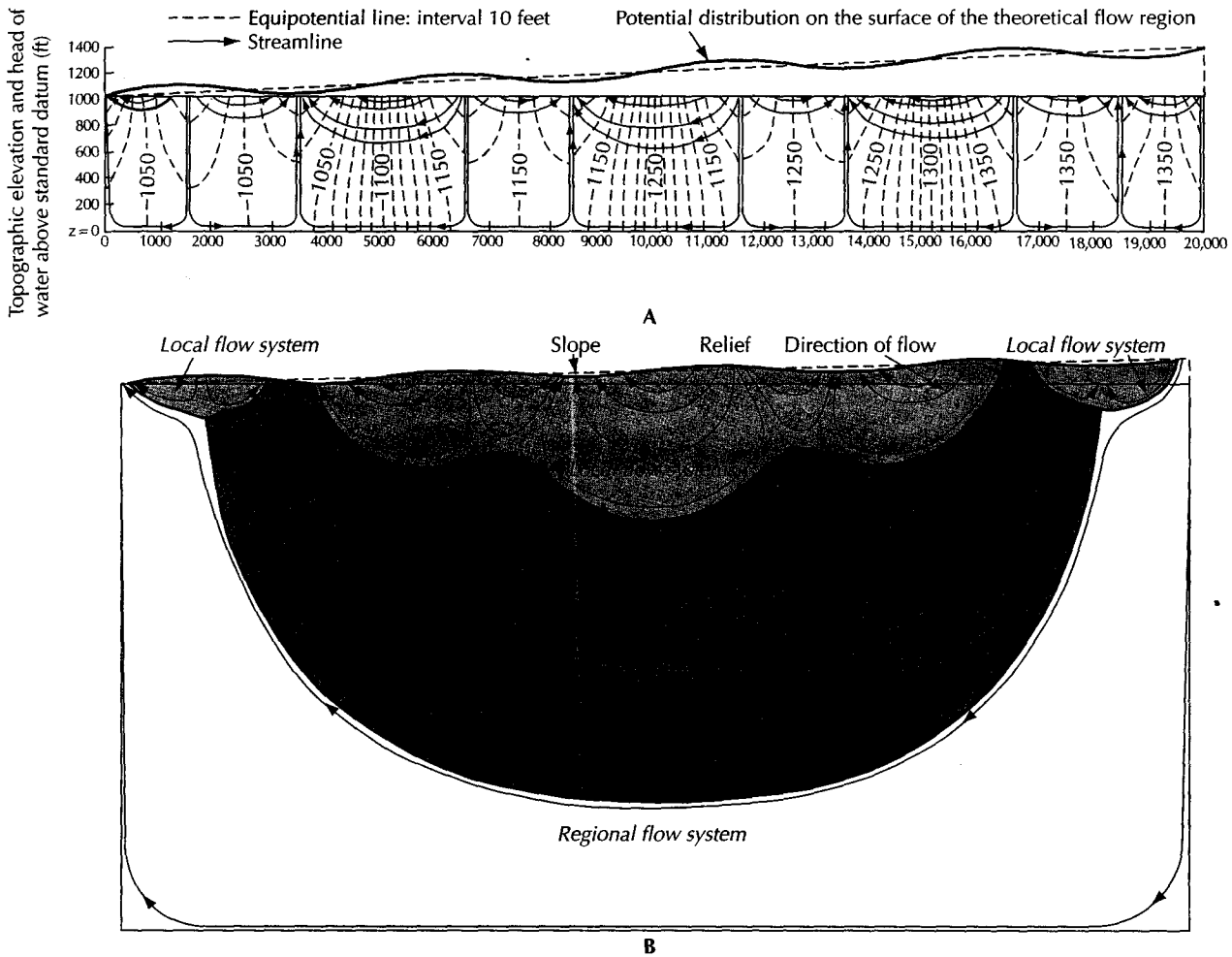
flow net of a ground-water drainage basin with a series of local flow systems. The basin depth is one-twentieth of the basin length from the regional ground-water divide to the lowest part of the basin.

If the basin depth-to-width ratio increases, other flow systems may also develop. *Intermediate flow systems* have at least one local flow system between their recharge and discharge areas. *Regional flow systems* have the recharge area in the basin divide and the discharge area at the valley bottom (Figure 7.4B). Depending on the drainage basin topography and the basin-shape geometry, flow systems may have regional; local; local and intermediate; or local, intermediate, and regional components.

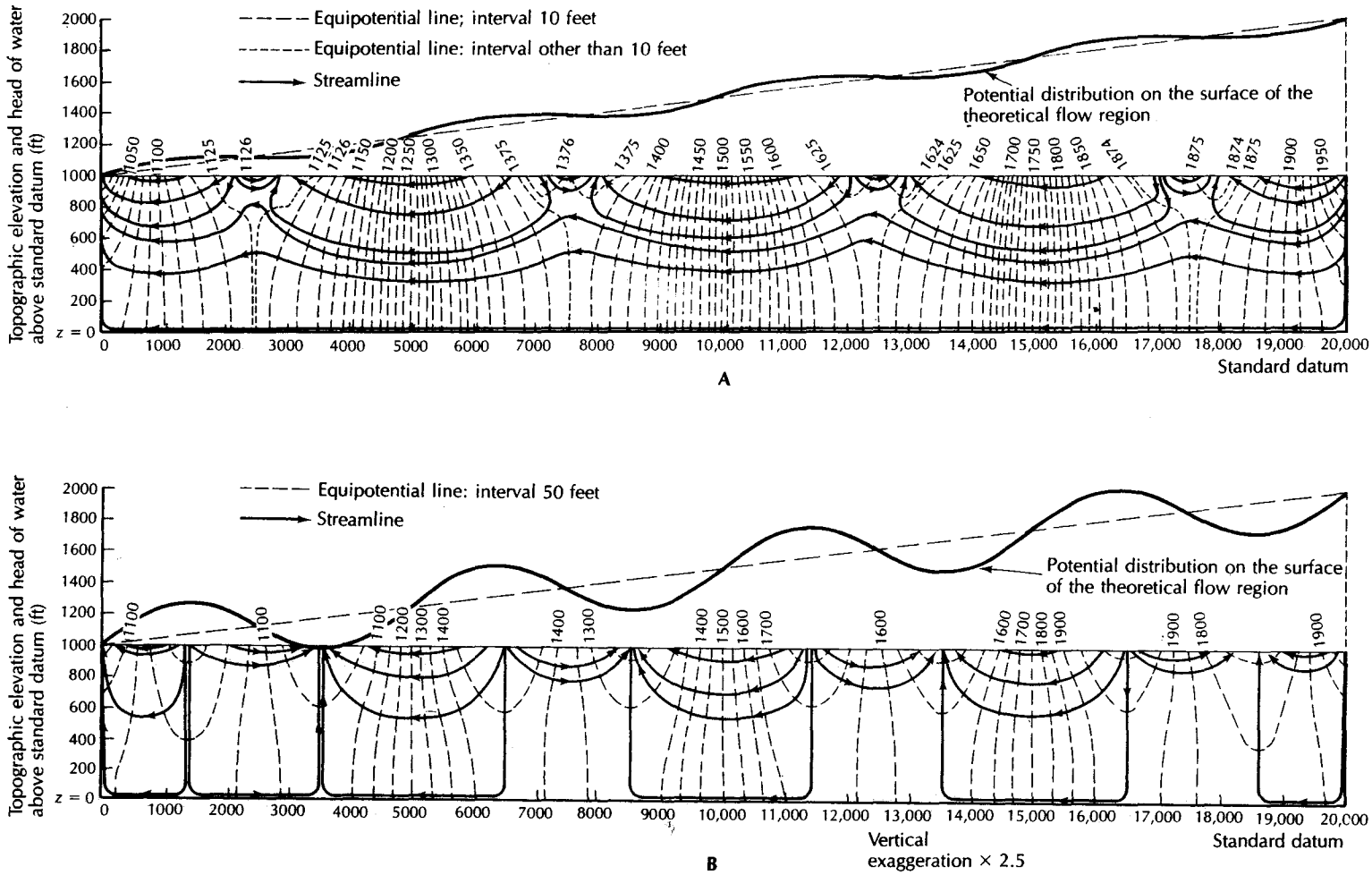
In addition to the influence of the drainage basin depth/length ratio, it has been shown that the more pronounced the relief of the undulating water table, the deeper the local flow systems extend (Tóth 1963). In some basins, both local and regional flow systems may exist, while in other basins with a similar depth/length ratio but with a more pronounced water-table relief, only deep local flow systems develop. This is illustrated in Figure 7.5A, which has local and intermediate flow systems, and in Figure 7.5B, where the more pronounced relief of the water table has resulted in the exclusive formation of local flow systems.

One feature of complex flow systems is the presence of **stagnation points** in the flow field (Tóth 1963). At a stagnation point, the magnitudes of the vectors in the flow field are equal but opposite in direction and cancel each other. The value of the hydraulic potential is higher at the stagnation point than at any part of the surrounding region. Ground-water flow paths diverge around stagnation points, which are found at the juncture of local and regional flow systems. Figure 7.6 illustrates the potential field and flow paths at a stagnation point. Stagnation points can exist in materials that are completely isotropic and homogeneous.

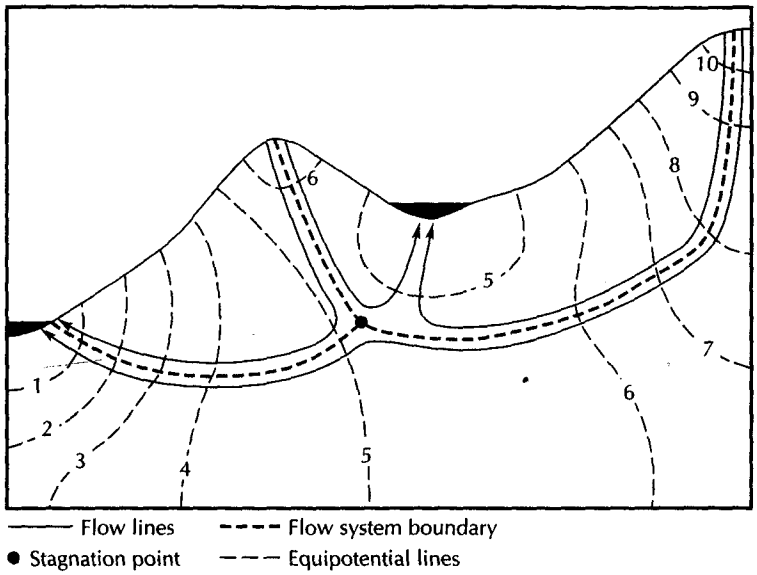
If regional flow systems develop, the flow paths are long compared with those of local flow systems (Tóth 1963). In aquifers composed of soluble rock material, the degree of mineralization is a function of both the initial chemistry of the water and the length of time it is in contact with the aquifer (Back & Hanshaw 1970). Referring back to Figure 7.4B, we see the boundaries of local, intermediate, and regional flow systems for a deep aquifer



▲ FIGURE 7.4
The effect of increased basin depth is shown on these two figures. In Part A, the basin depth/length ratio is 1:20; in Part B, it is 1:2. The shallow basin has only local flow systems, whereas the deep basin has local, intermediate, and regional flow systems. The water-table configuration is the same for both basins. Source: J. A. Tóth, *Journal of Geophysical Research* 68 (1963): 4795–4811. *Used with permission.*



▲ FIGURE 7.5
The amplitude of the undulations of the water table controls the depth of local flow systems. For shallow basins, this can determine whether both local and regional flow systems will develop (Part A), or, with deeper undulations, only local flow systems will form (Part B). *Source: J. A. Tóth,* Journal of Geophysical Research *68 (1963): 4795–4811. Used with permission.*



▲ FIGURE 7.6
The potential field and flow lines in the vicinity of a stagnation point, which will develop at the intersection of three flow systems.

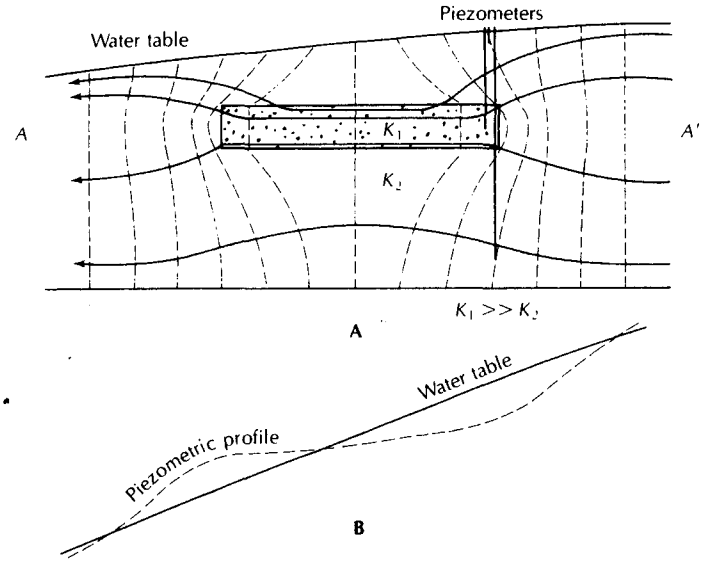
with an undulating water table. The surface area where recharge to the regional flow system takes place is quite small in relation to the volume of water stored in that region of the aquifer. The water moves slowly and circulates deeply within the aquifer, as the flow paths are long. At the point of discharge, the water from the regional flow system is likely to have relatively high mineralization and an elevated temperature due to the geothermal gradient. (The temperature of the earth increases with depth at a more or less constant rate of 2.5°C per 100 m of depth.)

Local flow systems are shallower, with short flow paths. The size of the recharge area is much greater with respect to the volume of water in the aquifer. Thus, water has a shorter contact time with the rocks and is potentially mineralized to a lesser degree than that of the regional system. The temperature of water discharging from the local flow systems is close to the mean annual air temperature. Local flow systems are areas of rapid circulation of ground water; therefore, ground water in these systems is much more active in the hydrologic cycle than ground water in regional flow systems (Tóth 1963). Spring discharge of local flow systems is closely related to recharge of precipitation and shows wide fluctuations (Sartz, Curtis, & Tolsted 1977), as well as great disparity in water quality (Ryan & Meiman 1996). Intermediate flow systems have properties falling between those of local and regional flow systems.

If a flow system has extended areas with a flat water table, the potential is the same in all parts of the field. Neither local nor regional flow systems can develop, and the ground water is stagnant. Evapotranspiration is the only method of ground-water discharge. Ground water under such conditions is likely to be highly mineralized owing to a long contact time with the aquifer rocks and the concentration of dissolved salts by evaporation.

7.2.3 Effect of Buried Lenses

Tóth (1962) also showed why piezometers sometimes yield water levels that are apparently anomalous with respect to the expected regional flow pattern. A set of piezometers at various depths may show a water elevation equal to the water table for a shallow well, a



▲ FIGURE 7.7
A. Equipotential field and flow lines in a region where a high-conductivity body is buried in a lower-conductivity aquifer. **B.** The water table and the potentiometric profile of a line of piezometers, each ending at the same elevation along line *A-A'* of Part A.

lower water elevation for a piezometer of intermediate depth, and then a water elevation equal to the water-table elevation for a deep well. Geologic logs of these piezometers might show the shallow one to end in a fine, silty sand; the one of intermediate depth to end in coarse sand; and the deepest one to end in the fine, silty sand. Figure 7.7A shows a cross section of the potential distribution where a body of material of high hydraulic conductivity is surrounded by material with a lower conductivity. The high-conductivity zone acts as a conduit for flow, attracting water from much of the aquifer. The result is that the potential field bends away from the high-conductivity zone on either end. Flow will thus converge toward the high-conductivity zone on the upstream end and diverge away from it on the downstream side.

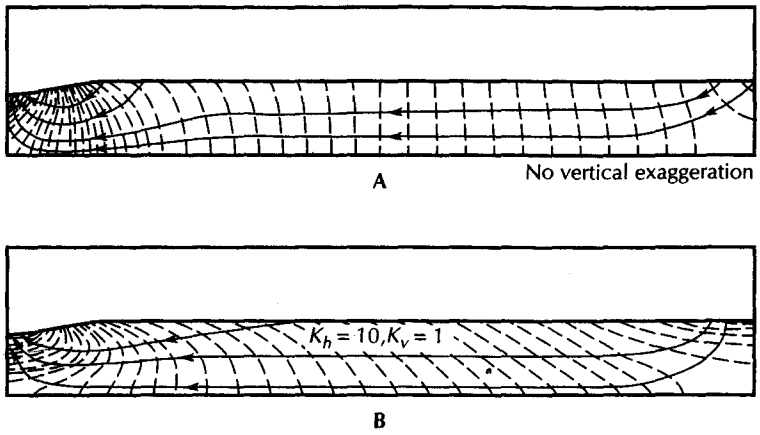
A line of piezometers of equal depth, extending to line *A-A'*, would have a potentiometric profile that would differ from the water-table profile (Figure 7.7B). Upstream of the midpoint of the high-conductivity layer, the potentiometric profile would be lower than the water table. It would cross the water table at the midpoint and be higher than the water table below the midpoint. Such a profile would not occur in a homogeneous aquifer.

If a lens of low-permeability material is buried in an aquifer, it acts as a partial barrier to ground-water flow. The ground-water streamlines diverge around the lens. While a modicum of the flow is carried in the low-conductivity layer, the majority of the flow tends to be in the aquifer.

7.2.4 Nonhomogeneous and Anisotropic Aquifers

Analytical solutions to the Laplace equation are limited to homogeneous, isotropic aquifers with easily described boundary and initial conditions. Most natural aquifers are anisotropic and nonhomogeneous with complex boundary conditions. Freeze and Witherspoon (1966, 1967) developed a numerical method of solving the Laplace equation that could be applied to virtually any aquifer.

In Tóth's model with a linear slope to the water table, the discharge was dispersed over half of the ground-water basin. By selecting a water table with two linear slopes, one



▲ FIGURE 7.8
Ground-water flow in an aquifer with concentrated discharge. **A.** Flow in an isotropic aquifer. **B.** Flow in an anisotropic aquifer with the horizontal hydraulic conductivity ten times the vertical. *Source: R. A. Freeze & P. A. Witherspoon,* Water Resources Research *3 (1967): 623–34. Copyright by the American Geophysical Union. Used with permission.*

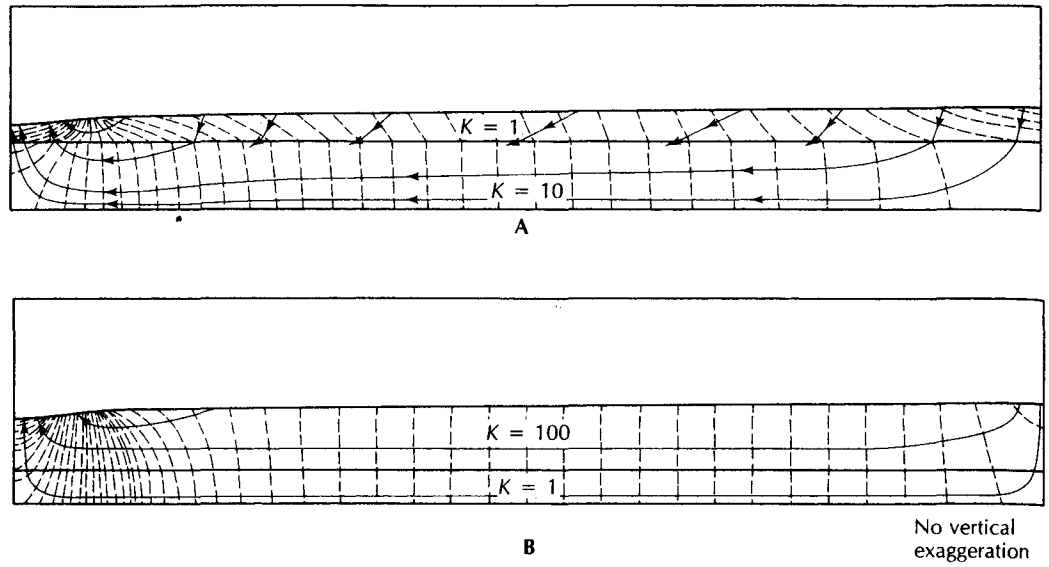
being much steeper and covering only a small portion of the lower part of the ground-water basin, Freeze and Witherspoon were able to show the effect of concentrated ground-water discharge. Figure 7.8A shows the potential distribution and flow lines for a ground-water basin with concentrated discharge for an isotropic and homogeneous aquifer.

There is considerable evidence that many aquifers are anisotropic. For deposits as uniform as glacial outwash, the horizontal permeability may be 2 to 20 times as great as the vertical (Weeks 1969). Figure 7.8B shows the potential distribution in an aquifer in which horizontal conductivity is 10 times as great as the vertical. In anisotropic aquifers, the flow lines do not cross the equipotential lines at right angles; the correct angles can be obtained graphically (Liakopoulos 1965). Compared with an isotropic medium, the vertical components of flow are more pronounced in the anisotropic aquifer. The greatest variation in the potential field occurs at the extreme ends of the ground-water basin.

Layered aquifers are especially prevalent in sedimentary basins, with individual hydrostratigraphic* units having different hydraulic conductivities. If a lower formation has a substantially higher conductivity than the surface layer, it acts as the major conduit of flow (Freeze & Witherspoon 1967). Figure 7.9A shows the potential distribution in a layered aquifer when the lower unit has a conductivity 10 times that of the upper. Flow in the lower unit is horizontal, while the upper unit has vertical flow components in the recharge and discharge areas. As the difference in conductivity between the upper and lower layer increases, the components of vertical flow in the upper unit increase as more of the flow is carried in the lower unit.

If a high-conductivity layer overlies a unit of substantially lower conductivity, the potential field is similar to that of an isotropic aquifer. Most of the flow is carried in the

*Hydrostratigraphic units comprise geologic units grouped on the basis of similar hydraulic conductivity. Several geologic formations may be grouped into a single aquifer, for example. A single geologic formation may be divided into both aquifers and confining units.



▲ FIGURE 7.9
Regional ground-water flow in layered aquifers. The greater proportion of the flow occurs in the layer with higher hydraulic conductivity. *Source: R. A. Freeze & P. A. Witherspoon,* Water Resources Research *3 (1967): 623–34. Used with permission.*

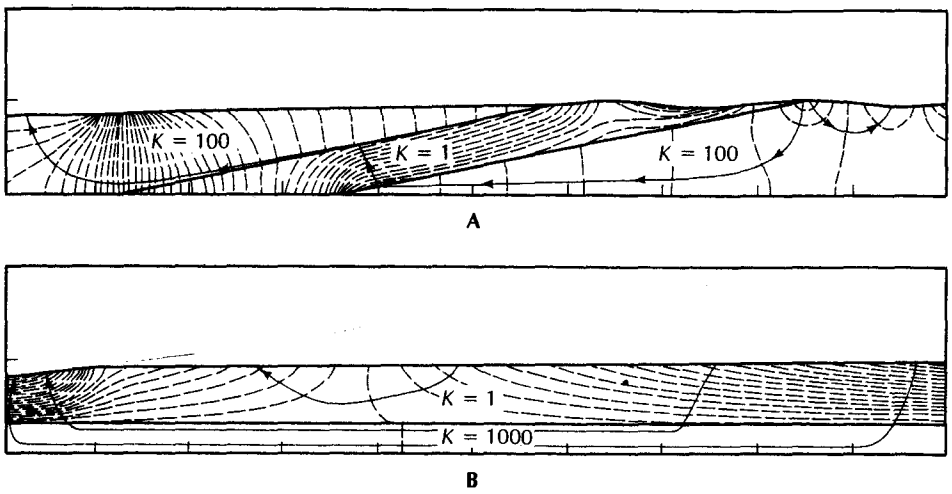
upper, more conductive layer, as Figure 7.9B illustrates. The potential field of Figure 7.9B is quite similar to that of Figure 7.8A, which is homogeneous.

Aquifers that are overlain by a layer of substantially lower hydraulic conductivity are confined. The hydraulic gradient is generally greater in the confining bed than in the aquifer. Since the frictional resistance to flow is so much greater in the confining layer, most of the available energy of the potential field is dissipated there.

Confined aquifers may be either sloping or flat. If the aquifer crops out near a topographic high, substantial recharge takes place in the outcrop area. In the sloping aquifer shown in Figure 7.10A, the confining layer retards flow. Wells drilled through it to the underlying aquifer would yield artesian flow. Flow lines refract as they cross the confining layer. Discharge of the regional flow system is concentrated in the valley bottom.

The flat-lying confined aquifer in Figure 7.10B does not have an outcrop area. Recharge to the aquifer occurs by downward flow through the confining layer. Almost all energy of the potential field is consumed as flow moves through the confining layer in recharge and discharge areas. Only one equipotential line crosses the aquifer. The volume of water flowing through the buried aquifer is less than it would be if the aquifer cropped out in the recharge area, due to the use of much of the available potential energy in forcing recharge through the low-conductivity layer. If a well were drilled in the discharge area, artesian conditions would occur.

Unless the confined aquifer is capped by a completely impermeable layer, there will be some discharge from the aquifer in the form of upward leakage in the area of upward hydraulic gradient. Many confined aquifers have heads above the land surface when the first wells are drilled (Weidman & Schultz 1915). The amount of upward flow occurring through the confining beds is typically small, and the water does not circulate rapidly. Ground-water withdrawals in many confined regional aquifers have lowered the potentiometric head. This actually increases the rate of lateral ground-water flow in the aquifer, as the hydraulic gradient between the recharge area and the well-field area is increased.



▲ FIGURE 7.10
Regional ground-water flow in confined aquifers: **A.** Aquifer confined by a sloping confining layer. **B.** Aquifer confined by a flat-lying confining layer. *Source: R. A. Freeze & P. A. Witherspoon,* Water Resources Research *3 (1967): 623–34. Used with permission.*

7.3 Transient Flow in Regional Ground-Water Systems

The systems we have considered have been in a state of **dynamic equilibrium.** The amount of water recharging the aquifer is balanced by an equal amount of natural discharge, and the potential field is more or less constant. If a well field is established in the ground-water basin, the withdrawal of well water increases the discharge from the system, disrupting the equilibrium. Thus, a new equilibrium must be established (Theis 1938).

In the case of an unconfined aquifer, the water table around the well field will be drawn down. As the discharge exceeds the recharge, the difference comes from gravity drainage of ground water stored in the aquifer. The cone of depression around the well field will slowly expand until it affects the flow system enough to create a new equilibrium condition. This will occur when the area of the cone of depression is large enough to intercept sufficient aquifer recharge to supply the well discharge. This will reduce natural discharge somewhere else, and a new condition of dynamic equilibrium will be reached. Should the rate of withdrawal be so great that the cone of depression reaches the boundaries of the aquifer without intercepting sufficient recharge, the aquifer will not reach equilibrium and eventually could be drained.

In confined and leaky confined aquifers, pumping will reduce the heads near the wells. As a result, the potentiometric surface will decline. The cone of depression will expand rapidly owing to the small value of storativity of confined aquifers. Initially, the water being pumped comes from storage in the aquifer. The cone of depression in a leaky confined aquifer will stabilize when enough downward leakage is induced to balance pumpage. This, of course, will upset the natural equilibrium in the overlying aquifer that is furnishing the water.

In a confined aquifer, the cone of depression will grow until it reaches either the recharge area of the aquifer, or the discharge area, or both. The resulting change in the potential field will induce either increased recharge, or decreased natural discharge, or both.

If this is sufficient to balance recharge and discharge, the aquifer will again be in dynamic equilibrium. If not, the water levels will continue to decline.

7.4 Noncyclical Ground Water

There is a certain amount of water in the ground that is not encompassed by the hydrologic cycle. When sediments are deposited, water is present in the pores. The same may be true for undersea volcanic rocks. Later geologic events may bury the sediment or rock and its contained pore water. Water buried with the rock is termed **fossil water** (White 1957a). Interstitial water that was not buried with the rock but has been out of contact with the atmosphere for an appreciable part of a geologic period is called **connate water** (White 1957a).

Magmatic water is associated with a magma. It may be in part **juvenile water,** having never before circulated in the hydrologic cycle (White 1957b); however, most magmatic water comes from the recycling of connate or fossil water. Magmatic water can reenter the hydrologic cycle through volcanic eruptions or thermal springs.

7.5 Springs

Springs have played a role in the settlement pattern of many lands, where they have served as a local water supply. Mineralized and thermal springs have been thought to have therapeutic value. The importance of springs is evident from the many localities named for the springs found there (e.g., Tarpon Springs, Florida; Palm Springs, California; Hot Springs, Arkansas; Steamboat Springs, Colorado).

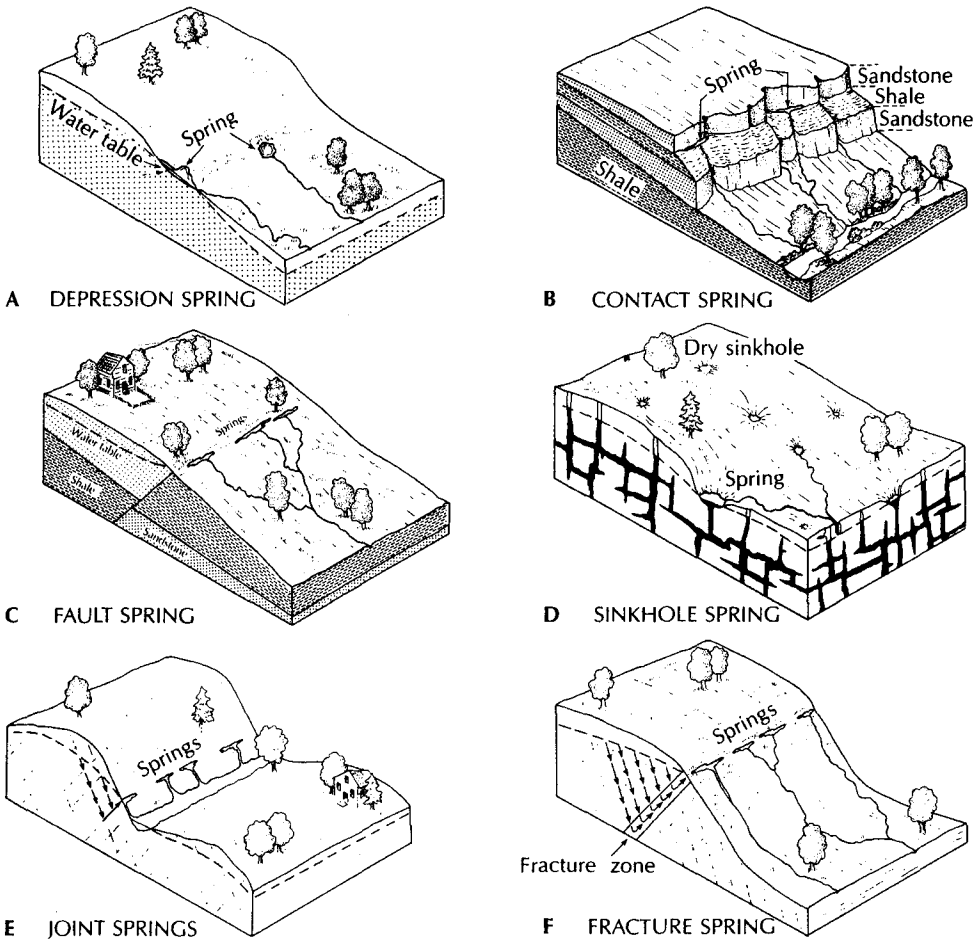
A spring may have a discharge that is fairly constant, or the discharge may vary. Springs can be permanent or ephemeral. The water may contain dissolved minerals of many different types or certain dissolved gases or petroleum. The temperature of the water may be close to the mean annual air temperature or be lower or higher—even boiling. Flow may range from a barely perceptible seepage to 1000 ft^3 (30 m^3) or more per second.

Topographic low spots provide the simplest mechanism for the formation of springs. **Depression springs** are formed when the water table reaches the surface (Bryan 1919). The change in topography creates a corresponding undulation in the water-table configuration. A local flow system is thus created, with a spring formed at the local discharge zone (Figure 7.11A).

Where permeable rock units overlie rocks of much lower permeability, a **contact spring** may result (Bryan 1919). A lithologic contact is often marked by a line of springs, which may be either in the main water table or in a perched water table. It is not necessary for the underlying layer to be impermeable, merely that the difference in hydraulic conductivity be great enough to preclude transmission of all water that is moving through the upper horizon (Figure 7.11B).

A classic occurrence of contact springs is found along the eastern side of Chuska Mountain, New Mexico. A sandstone cliff rises 197 to 492 ft (60 to 150 m) above a terrace composed of shale, which also underlies the sandstone. More than 30 springs are found at the foot of the cliff at the contact of the sandstone and shale (Gregory 1916). One of the most spectacular series of springs in the world is in the Snake River Canyon below Shoshone Falls in Idaho. Along a 40-mi (64-km) reach of the canyon are 11 springs with a discharge of more than 100 ft^3 (2.8 m^3) per second. The springs issue from permeable basalt flows; total spring flow is about 5000 ft^3/s (140 m^3/s) in this reach of the Snake River (Meinzer 1927).

Faulting may also create a geologic control favoring spring formation. A faulted rock unit that is impermeable may be emplaced adjacent to an aquifer. This can form a regional boundary to ground-water movement and force water in the aquifer to discharge as a **fault spring** (Figure 7.11C).

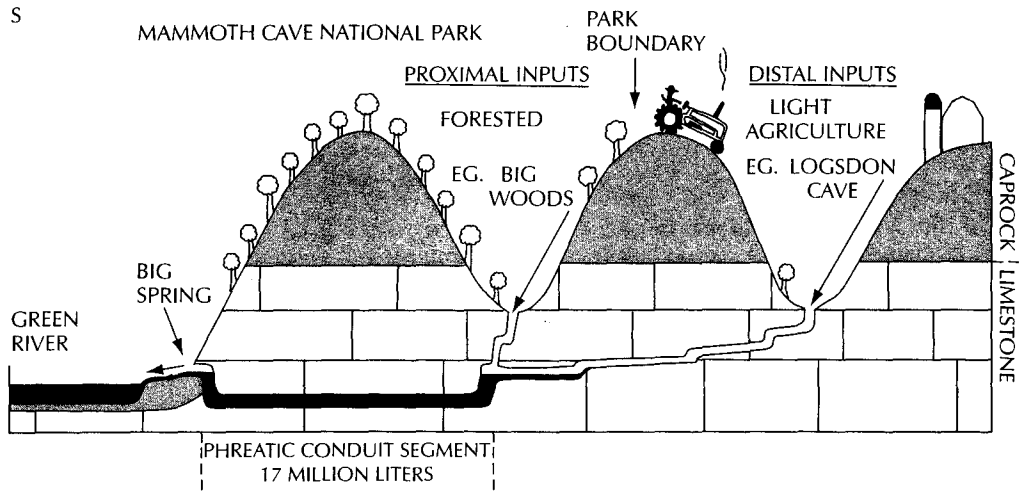


▲ FIGURE 7.11
Types of springs.

Some of the largest springs are found in areas of limestone bedrock. In such areas, the runoff may be carried in part or totally as subterranean flow. It may be either diffused flow in pores and fractures in the rock or channelized flow in caverns. Springs may be found where a cavern is connected to a shaft that rises to the surface. Many of the famous springs of Florida cover an area of several acres in which water rises to the surface through sinkholes (Figure 7.11D). The water in these **sinkhole springs** is under artesian pressure and comes from the principal artesian aquifer, or Floridan aquifer, which underlies Florida (Stringfield 1966). This aquifer is in Tertiary-age limestones.

Joint springs or **fracture springs** may occur from the existence of jointed or permeable fault zones in low-permeability rock. Water movement through such rock is principally through fractures, and springs can form where these fractures intersect the land surface at low elevations (Figure 7.11E, F).

Springs in limestone terrane can be interconnected to topographic depressions caused by collapsed caverns (sinkholes) at higher elevations. Water level in the sinkholes may rise and fall owing to variations in runoff (Brook 1977). Discharge of these springs, known as *karst springs*, may correspond with the elevation of water in the sinkholes.



▲ FIGURE 7.12
Diagrammatic cross section of the Big Spring ground-water basin of Mammoth Cave National Park. Note the phreatic conduit section that is below the water table. *Source: M. Ryan and J. Meiman* Ground Water, *34, no. 1 (1996):23 to 30. © Ground Water Publishing Company. Used with permission.*

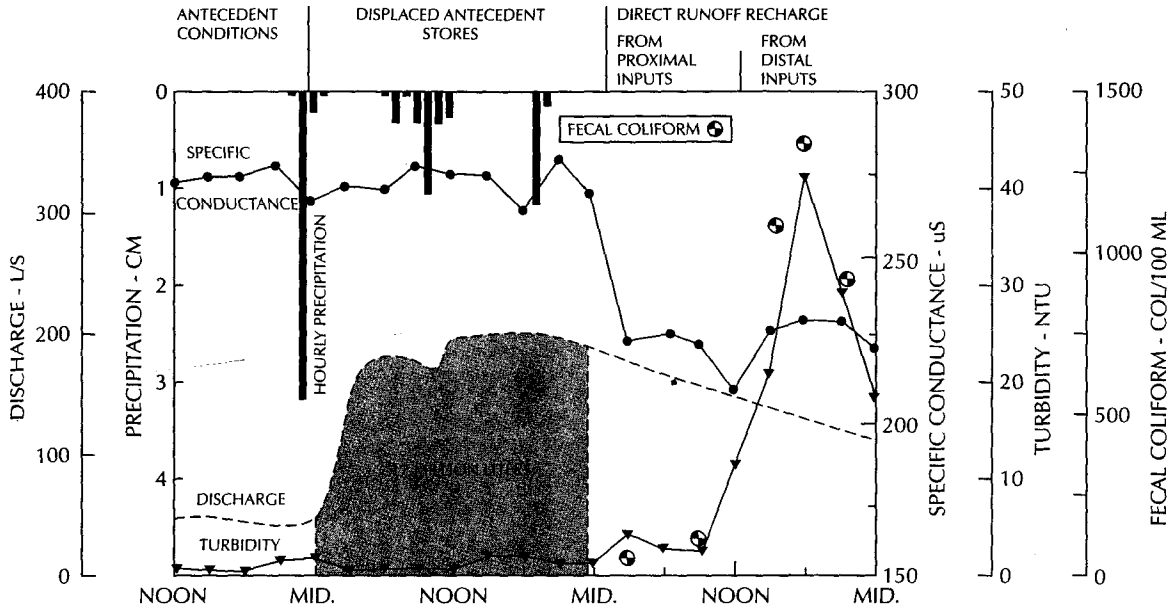
The discharge of a karst spring is directly related to precipitation over the ground-water basin and will increase soon after the precipitation event begins. The phreatic passageways in the karst normally contain a given volume of water in storage. Karst springs may have impacted water quality due to overland flow of surface water that drains into recharging sinkholes (Figure 7.12). Ryan and Meiman (1996) showed that Big Spring in the Mammoth Cave National Park had an increase in turbidity due to suspended sediment, as well as fecal coliform bacteria following significant precipitation events. However, even though the discharge of Big Spring increased soon after the precipitation event started, the onset of poor water quality was delayed. They found that approximately 17 million liters of water had to discharge before the water quality began to decline (Figure 7.13). This is attributed to the volume of good-quality water that was in storage in the phreatic conduits prior to the onset of precipitation and overland flow. In addition, the overland flow that first arrives at the spring is from land areas within the park that are forested. The distal parts of the ground-water basin are outside the park where the surface activities include agriculture. Overland flow from agricultural areas contains more sediment and bacteria than that coming from a forested watershed.

7.6 Geology of Regional Flow Systems

Several case studies illustrate different types of regional flow systems.

Case Study: Regional Flow Systems in the Great Basin

The Basin and Range Province contains a number of topographically closed basins. These intermontane basins are characterized by an accumulation of relatively permeable clastic sediments. The mountains surrounding the basins are composed of bedrock, which also underlies the basins at depth. The hydraulic conductivity of the bedrock types is extremely variable (Mifflin 1968).



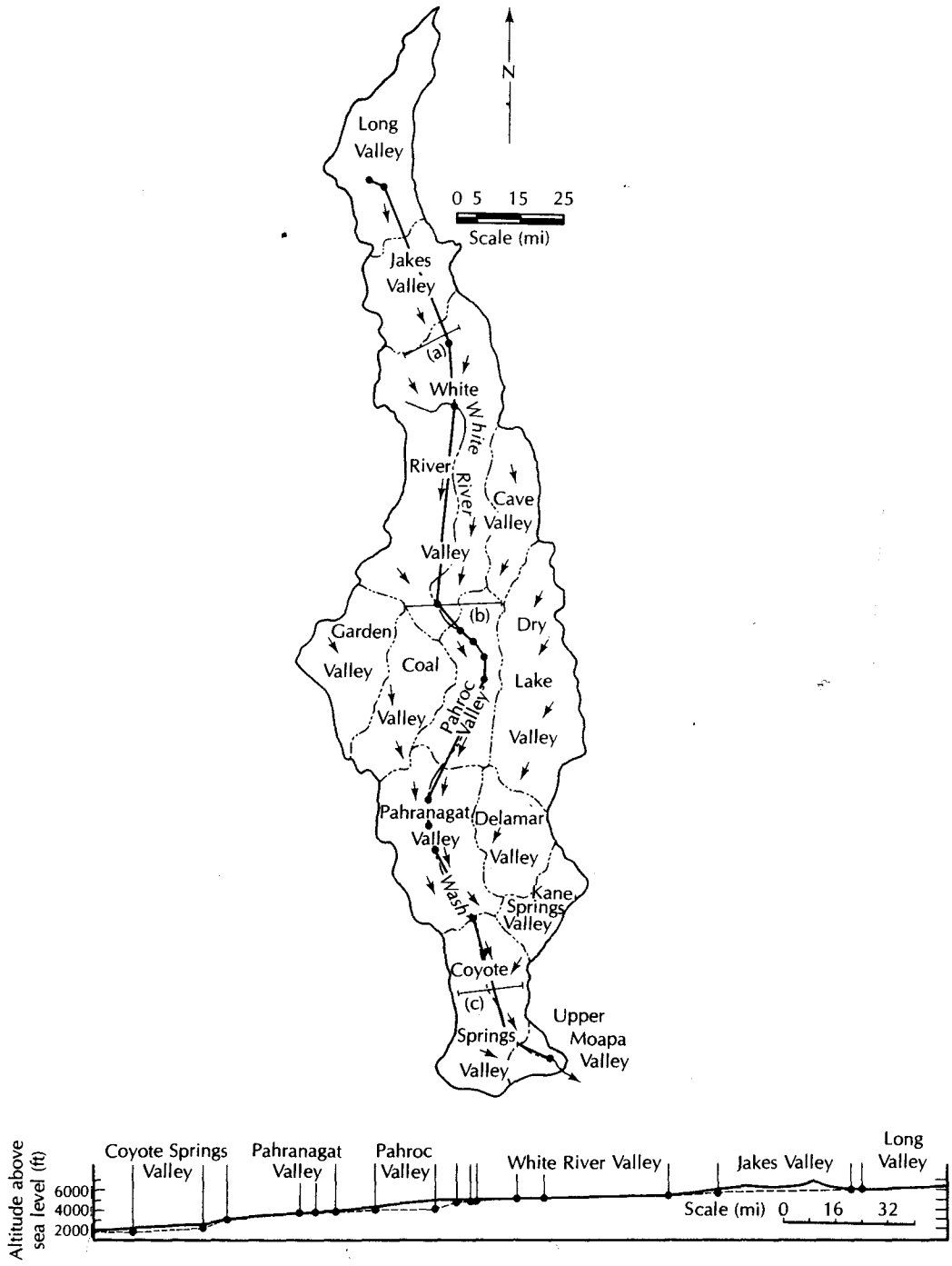
▲ FIGURE 7.13
Change in discharge and water quality of Big Spring in response to a precipitation event.
Source: M. Ryan and J. Meiman Ground Water, *34, no. 1 (1996):23 to 30.© Ground Water Publishing Company. Used with permission.*

Annual precipitation is greatest in the mountains and least in the valleys (Eakin 1966). Below an elevation of 6000 ft (1800 m), annual precipitation is less than 8 in. (20 cm). This is almost all evaporated, with virtually no recharge of ground water. Above 9000 ft (2750 m), there may be more than 20 in. (50 cm) of precipitation, with up to 5 in. (13 cm) of ground-water recharge. The areas of greatest precipitation and recharge are in topographic highs, which are good recharge zones.

Those mountain areas formed by crystalline rocks or low-permeability sedimentary rocks have near-surface permeability due to fracturing. Such mountain areas have many small springs and perennial streams, as the ground water is discharged by local flow systems (Maxey 1968). Mountains underlain by highly permeable carbonate rocks are generally dry. The ground water appears as the discharge of relatively large springs at the foot of the mountains or in the intermontane valleys. In the areas of carbonate aquifers, the water table is relatively flat and may extend with a regional slope beneath topographic divides (Maxey 1968; Mifflin 1968; Eakin 1966).

In the White River area of southeastern Nevada, a regional interbasin ground-water flow system has been identified (Eakin 1966). Of the 13 topographic basins, 7 are closed, and the other 6 were drained by the White River during the Pleistocene era. The mountains are 8000 to 10,000 ft (2450 to 3050 m) high, with the valley bottoms 2000 to 4000 ft (600 to 1220 m) lower. The principal water-bearing units are Paleozoic limestone and dolomites, up to 30,000 ft (9150 m) thick. There are many volcanic rocks (tuffs and welded tuffs) that can form locally perched aquifers. The valleys are filled with Tertiary-age clastic sedimentary rocks and evaporites.

Ground water is discharged by means of several large springs. The flow of Muddy River Springs, which is the largest, is highly uniform, suggesting a regional flow system as the source (Eakin & Moore, 1964). A longitudinal profile of the area, which shows both the topography and the potentiometric surface, reveals that the regional hydraulic gradient is unaffected by crossing topographic divides (Figure 7.14).



▲ FIGURE 7.14
Flow paths and longitudinal profile of a regional ground-water flow system in Nevada. The water table is shown as a dashed line. *Source: T. E. Eakin,* Water Resources Research *2 (1966): 251–71. Used with permission.*

The amount of ground-water recharge is much greater than discharge in the topographically higher basins. The water balance is reversed for the topographically lower basins where the large springs are located. However, the regional water budget is balanced when all 13 basins are included (Eakin, Price, & Harrill 1976).

In the Great Basin area, local flow systems have small drainage areas and short flow paths within the same topographic basin. Springs have a wide fluctuation in discharge. The temperature of the spring water is about the same as mean annual air temperature, and the dissolved ion content is relatively low. Regional flow systems have long flow paths, which often cross basin divides. The drainage basin area is large. Springs are large, with fairly constant discharge, elevated temperatures, and higher concentrations of dissolved salts (Maxey 1968).

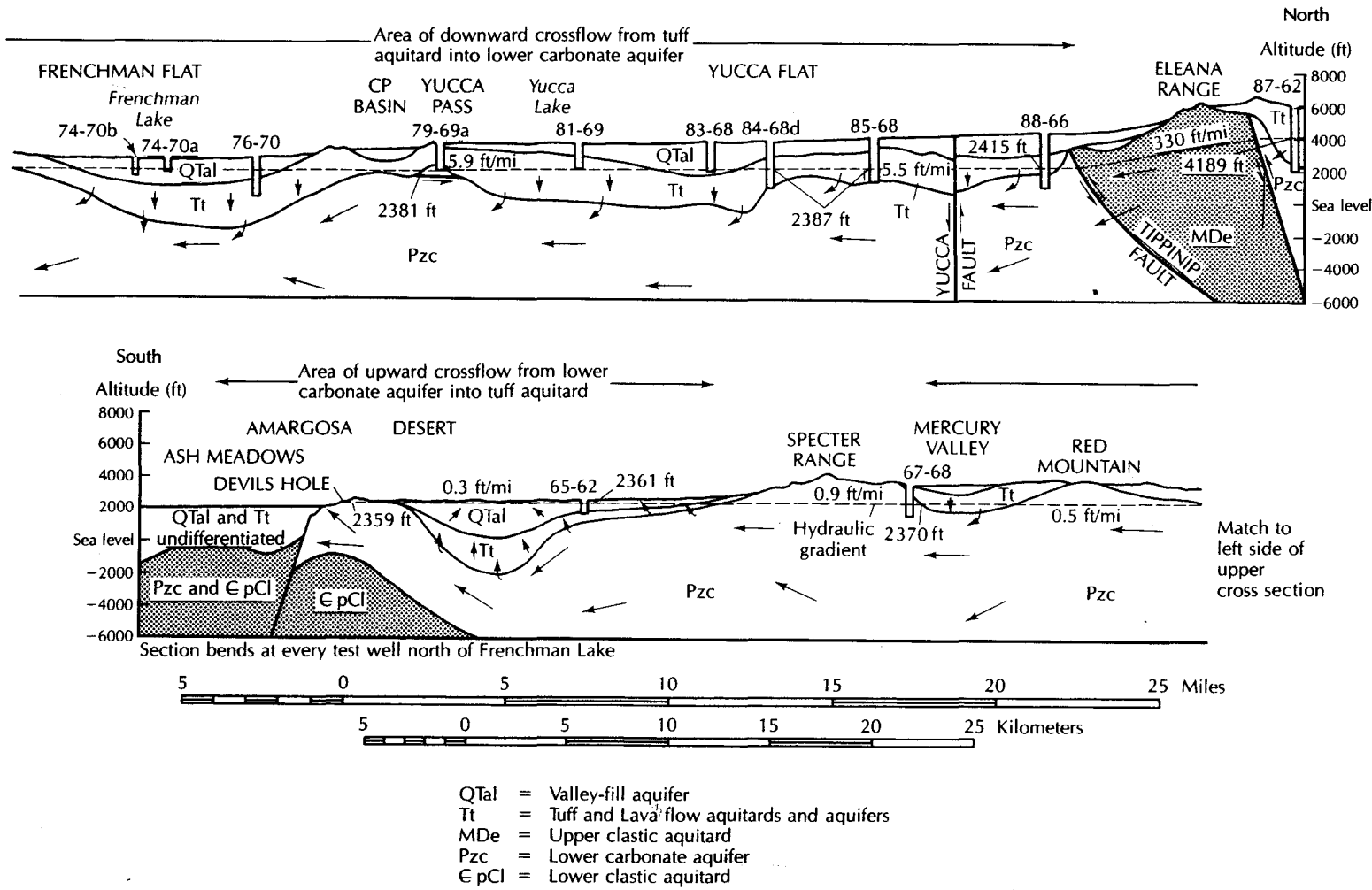
Another large ground-water flow system has been delineated in southern Nevada at the Nevada Test Site (Winograd & Thordarson 1975). The area has typical basin and range topography. Rocks range in age from recent sediments in the valleys to Precambrian. A basement unit of Cambrian and Precambrian siltstones and quartzites is a regional confining layer. Above this layer is a major regional aquifer—the lower carbonate aquifer of Lower Paleozoic age. There are solution openings in the aquifer, but the hydraulic conductivity is due primarily to fractures. The saturated thickness ranges from a hundred to several thousand feet or more. There are several caves in the outcrop area. One of them, Devils Hole, is partially filled with water and extends vertically more than 300 ft (100 m) below the water table. The lower carbonate aquifer feeds many large springs.

No other aquifer has a regional extent, although several are important locally. There is a regional confining layer that overlies the lower carbonate aquifer. This is the welded tuff confining layer of Tertiary age. The clay-rich beds of this layer restrict ground-water movement. The three regional units control ground-water flow. The welded tuff confining layer permits slow downward movement of water to the lower carbonate aquifer in recharge zones and upward movement in discharge zones. The lower carbonate aquifer underlies most of the valleys and ridges.

In some of the upland valleys, such as Yucca Flats and Frenchman Flats, the water table lies from 700 to 2000 ft (210 to 610 m) below the valley floor (Figure 7.15). Water drains from these valleys downward to the lower carbonate aquifer. Water flows laterally in this unit until it reaches the Ash Meadows area of the Amargosa Desert Basin. Running across Ash Meadows is a normal fault with a displacement of at least 500 ft (160 m). This has formed a hydraulic barrier that impedes the ground-water flow. The result is a line of springs discharging at the outcrop of the lower carbonate aquifer. The average discharge of all the springs is 10,000 gal/min (630 L/s).

The inferred ground-water drainage basin contains 10 intermontane valleys and is approximately 4500 mi^2 (11,650 km^2) in area. The Ash Meadows Basin may be hydrologically interconnected with other intermontane valleys from which ground-water flow may be obtained. There may also be underflow past the spring line at Ash Meadows. This spring line feeds into the central Amargosa Desert. The lack of wells and the extremely complex structure of the area make exact delineation of flow systems difficult.

Johannesson and others (1997) have studied the rare earth geochemistry of the ground-water discharge from several springs in the Furnace Creek region of Death Valley National Park, springs in the Ash Meadows area, and wells in the Amargosa Desert. They found that the rare earth geochemical signature of the springs in the Furnace Creek area was similar to that of the springs in Ash Meadows, but dissimilar to the shallow ground water in the Amargosa Desert. They concluded that the spring water discharging at the Furnace Creek Springs comes primarily from the lower Paleozoic carbonate aquifer that supplies the Ash Meadows Springs.



▲ FIGURE 7.15
Regional ground-water flow in the vicinity of the Nevada Test Site, Southern Nevada. *Source: I. J. Winograd and W. Thordarson, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 712-C, 1975.*

Case Study: Regional Flow Systems in the Coastal Zone of the Southeastern United States

Ground-water flow regimes in humid regions characteristically have a much thinner unsaturated zone than those in arid regions. The saturated zone is close to the surface in recharge areas as well as in discharge areas. Because of the greater amounts of precipitation, the volume of recharge is much higher, and proportionally more water circulates through ground-water flow systems.

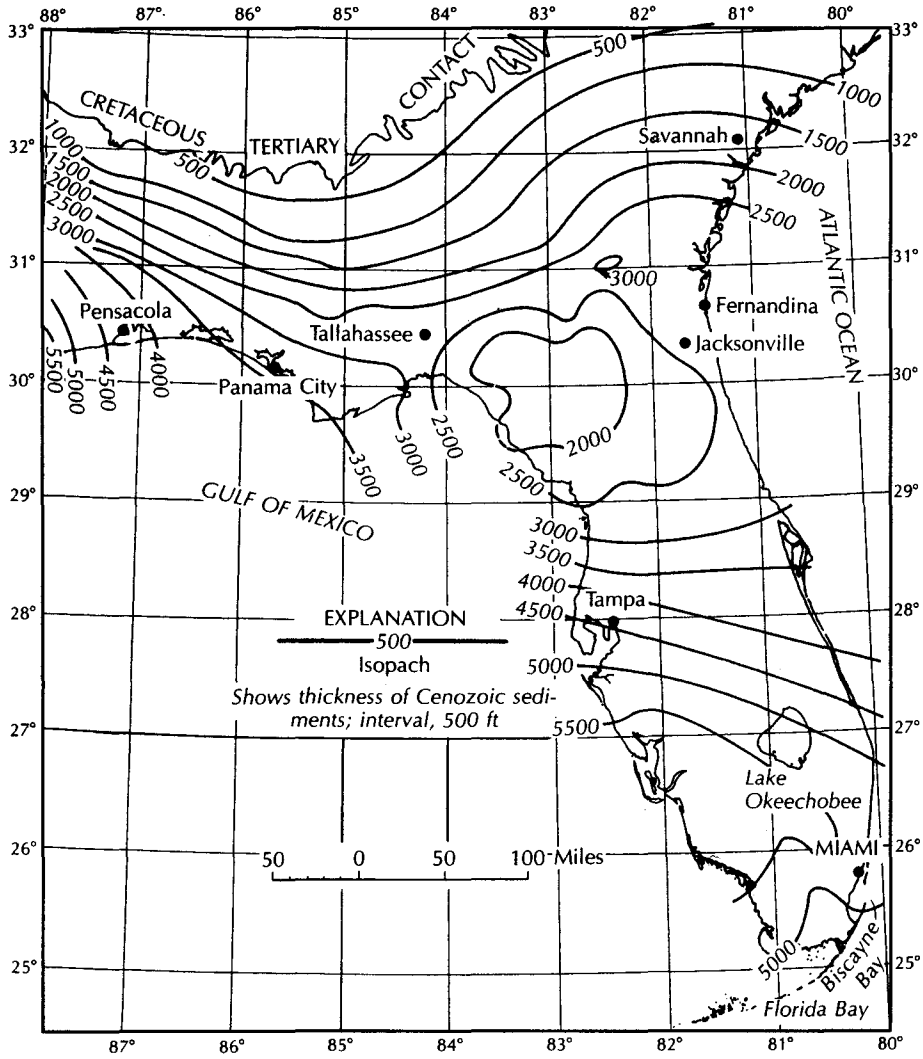
The coastal zone of the southeastern United States is underlain by extensive aquifers contained in Tertiary- and Quaternary-age limestones, forming some of the most productive aquifers in the United States (Stringfield 1966; Stringfield & LeGrand 1960; Miller 1986). Sediments on the coastal plain dip seaward, and the units thicken as the coast is approached. Figure 7.16 shows the isopach map of the Cenozoic sediments and sedimentary rocks of the region. Starting at a feather-edge near the interior border of the Atlantic coastal plain, they thicken to more than 5500 ft (1680 m) in southwestern Florida. The structure is disrupted by the Ocala uplift north of Tampa, resulting in a thinning of the sediments.

There are a number of hydrostratigraphic units in the region. There is a surficial aquifer system, an upper confining unit, the upper Floridan aquifer, a middle confining unit, the lower Floridan aquifer, and a lower confining unit (Miller 1986; Bush & Johnson 1986).

Most of the region has permeable materials at or near the surface. These are predominantly sand, but also include gravel, sandy limestone, and limestone. In most places the sands are relatively thin and are termed the *surficial aquifer.* In southwest Florida the surficial material consists of highly permeable sands and limestones that are as much as 200 ft (60 m) thick and occur in a wedge shape that thins to the northwest. It has been termed the *Biscayne aquifer.* In the western part of the Florida panhandle, the surficial material consists of a thick deposit of sand and gravel termed the *sand and gravel aquifer.* The surficial aquifer system is mostly unconfined and receives recharge directly from precipitation. It is underlain by either the upper confining unit, or, if that unit is missing, by the upper Floridan aquifer. The surficial aquifer materials are Pleistocene to recent in age. Figure 7.17 shows the surficial hydrostratigraphic units of the area.

The *upper confining layer* consists of low-permeability rocks that are primarily clastic. It basically consists of the Hawthorn formation of Miocene age, although in some areas the lower Miocene Tampa Limestone and the Oligocene Suwannee Limestone are included if the permeability of these limestones is comparatively low. The thickness and lithology of this unit are variable and hence the degree to which it retards vertical flow differs from place to place. In some areas where it is thin the Hawthorn has been breached by sinkholes so that direct pathways for water movement between the surficial deposits and the Floridan aquifer are present. In some places it is so thick, as much as 500 ft (150 m), that it directs virtually all of the water in the surficial aquifer laterally toward the coastline. The Hawthorn Formation has been removed by erosion in the area of the Ocala uplift of Florida so that the underlying Floridan aquifer system forms the surface material (Figure 7.17).

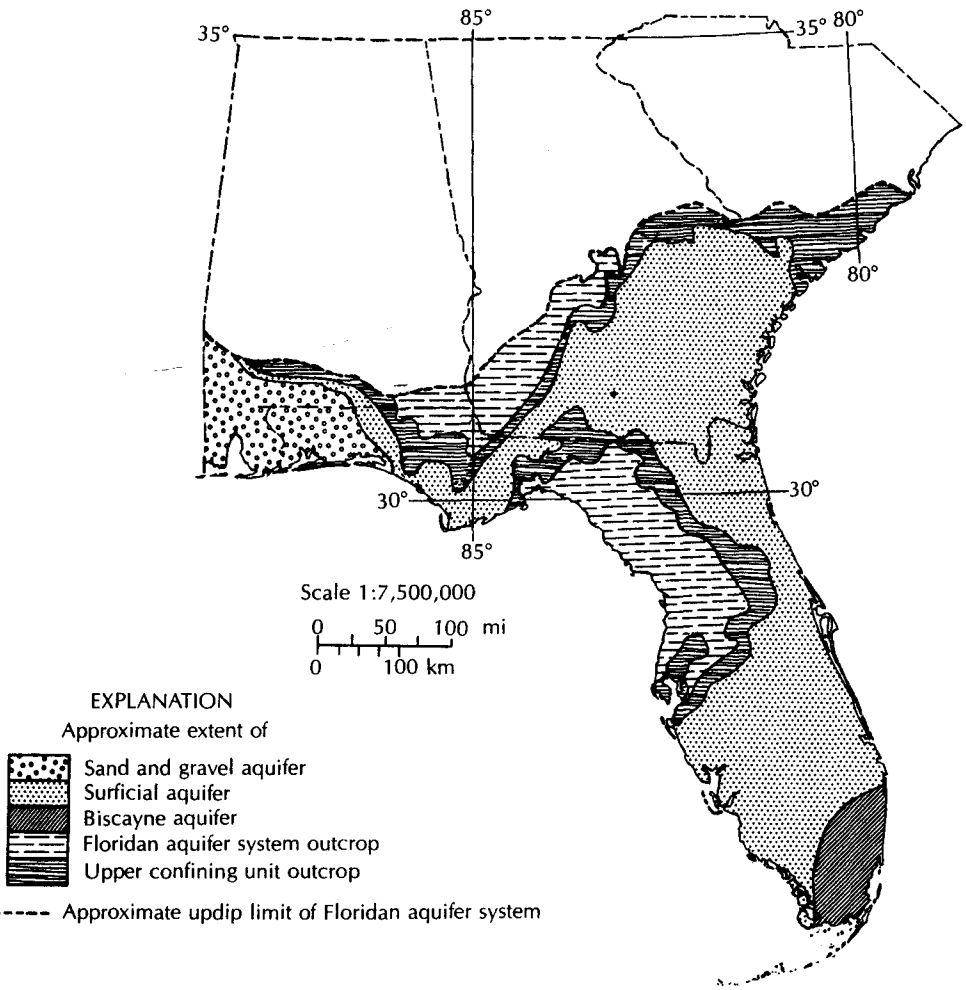
The *Floridan aquifer system* is quite thick and consists of Eocene- to Miocene-age limestones of different permeability. The units contained in the Floridan aquifer system consist of the early Miocene Tampa Limestone, where it is permeable; the Oligocene Suwannee Limestone; and the Eocene Ocala Limestone, Avon Park Formation, and Oldsmar Formation. The hydraulic conductivity of the rocks of the Floridan aquifer ranges from one to several orders of magnitude greater than that of the overlying confining layer. The Floridan aquifer system is unconfined in areas where the confining layer is missing and is semiconfined or confined elsewhere, depending upon the thickness and vertical hydraulic conductivity of the Hawthorn Formation. It is recharged in upland areas either directly,



▲ FIGURE 7.16
Isopach map of Cenozoic sediments in Florida, Georgia, and adjacent parts of Alabama and South Carolina. *Source: V. T. Stringfield, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 517, 1966.*

where the Hawthorn Formation is missing or is breached by sinkholes, or by leakage through the Hawthorn Formation. In Orlando, Florida, recharge wells have been drilled through the Hawthorn Formation into the Floridan aquifer. There is a head differential across the Hawthorn Formation of approximately 40 ft (13 m). Storm water is discharged into these wells as a means of draining the land surface. Some of the lakes, such as Lake Coucord, also have Floridan aquifer recharge wells to prevent rising lake levels from flooding shoreline property.

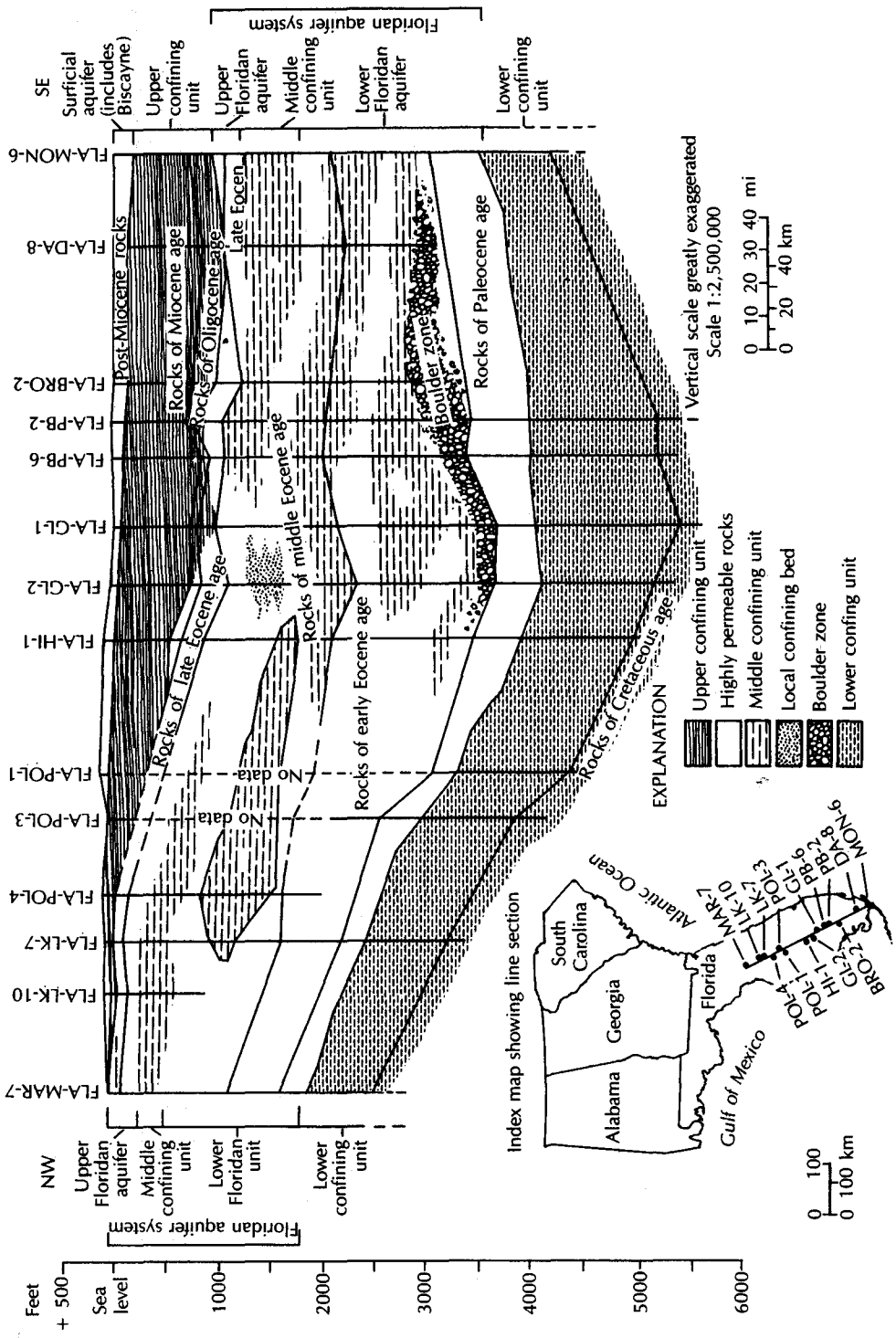
Water discharging from the Floridan aquifer forms some of the major springs of Florida. Water also discharges as subsea outflow in coastal areas. The Floridan aquifer is subdivided into an upper aquifer unit, a middle confining layer, and a lower aquifer unit (Figure 7.18). The *middle confining layer* is discontinuous and is represented by several different geologic units. In places the *upper Floridan aquifer* and the *lower Floridan aquifer* are joined into one unit. The upper aquifer unit is generally highly transmissive, although



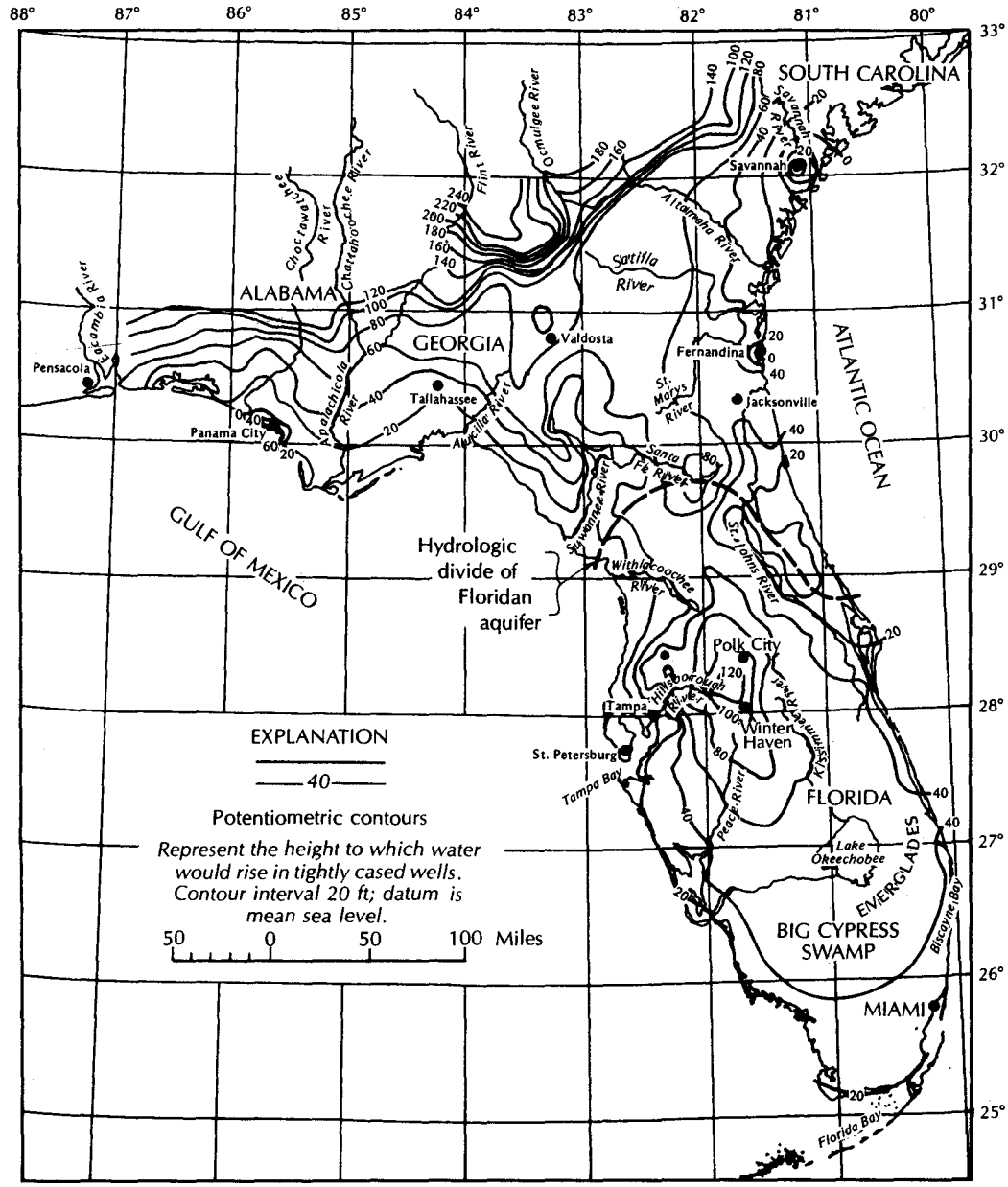
▲ FIGURE 7.17
Approximate extent of the surface aquifer, sand-and-gravel aquifer, Biscayne aquifer, and outcrop area of the upper confining unit in the southeastern United States. *Source: J. A. Miller, "Hydrogeologic Framework of the Floridan Aquifer System in Florida and Parts of Georgia, Alabama, and South Carolina." U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1403-B:B41, 1986.*

there is a complex relationship between the transmissivity of the limestone units and their postdepositional erosional history. In areas where the upper Floridan aquifer is unconfined, transmissivities of as much as 1×10^6 ft^2/day (9×10^4 m^2/day) occur because of sinkholes and caves. Where the aquifer is confined by a thick zone of the Hawthorn Formation, the transmissivity is much less, being as little as 5×10^4 ft^2/day (5×10^3 m^2/day) in southern Florida. The upper Floridan aquifer typically has good water quality and is extensively used as a water supply. The lower Floridan aquifer frequently contains saline water. It has some highly transmissive areas. The *Boulder zone* of southern Florida is a paleokarst zone developed in early Eocene rocks. It contains saline water and is extensively used for disposal of treated municipal sewage.

The Floridan aquifer is bounded on the bottom by a *lower confining unit*. This is a low-permeability unit that consists of the Cedar Keys Formation, which contains massive anhydrite beds as well as other units with a much lower hydraulic conductivity than the Floridan aquifer.



▲ FIGURE 7.18
Generalized hydrogeologic cross section from Monroe County to Marion County, Florida.
Source: J. A. Miller, "Hydrogeologic Framework of the Floridan Aquifer System in Florida and Parts of Georgia, Alabama and South Carolina." U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1403-B:B78, 1986.



▲ FIGURE 7.19
Potentiometric surface of water in the principal artesian aquifer of the southeastern United States. *Source: V. T. Stringfield, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 517, 1966.*

Precipitation in Florida averages about 55 in. (140 cm) annually with about 39 in. (100 cm) of evaporation (Parker 1975). The 16-in. (40-cm) difference represents the recharge to aquifers and overland flow into streams. The vast majority of the available water, 14 in. (35 cm), flows into surface water, with only 1 to 2 in. (3 to 5 cm) recharging the Floridan aquifer. The major recharge areas are discernible as the areas of high elevation on the potentiometric map (Figure 7.19). The Florida aquifer has two major hydraulic regions separated by a hydrologic divide (Parker 1975). This is shown as a dashed line in Figure 7.19).

The northern portion of the Floridan aquifer is recharged in the outcrop area of central Georgia, where the elevations are 100 to 230 ft (30 to 70 m) above sea level. Recharge to the

aquifer also occurs in a region extending from north of Valdosta, Georgia, to east of Gainesville, Florida. This is an area of high topography with many sinkhole lakes. The sinkholes breach the Hawthorn Formation, a confining layer, so recharge occurs through the sinkhole lakes into the underlying Floridan aquifer. Water flows from the recharge areas, following the regional hydraulic gradient, and discharges along the coastlines. There are also lesser amounts of recharge from downward leakage through the Hawthorn Formation over much of Florida.

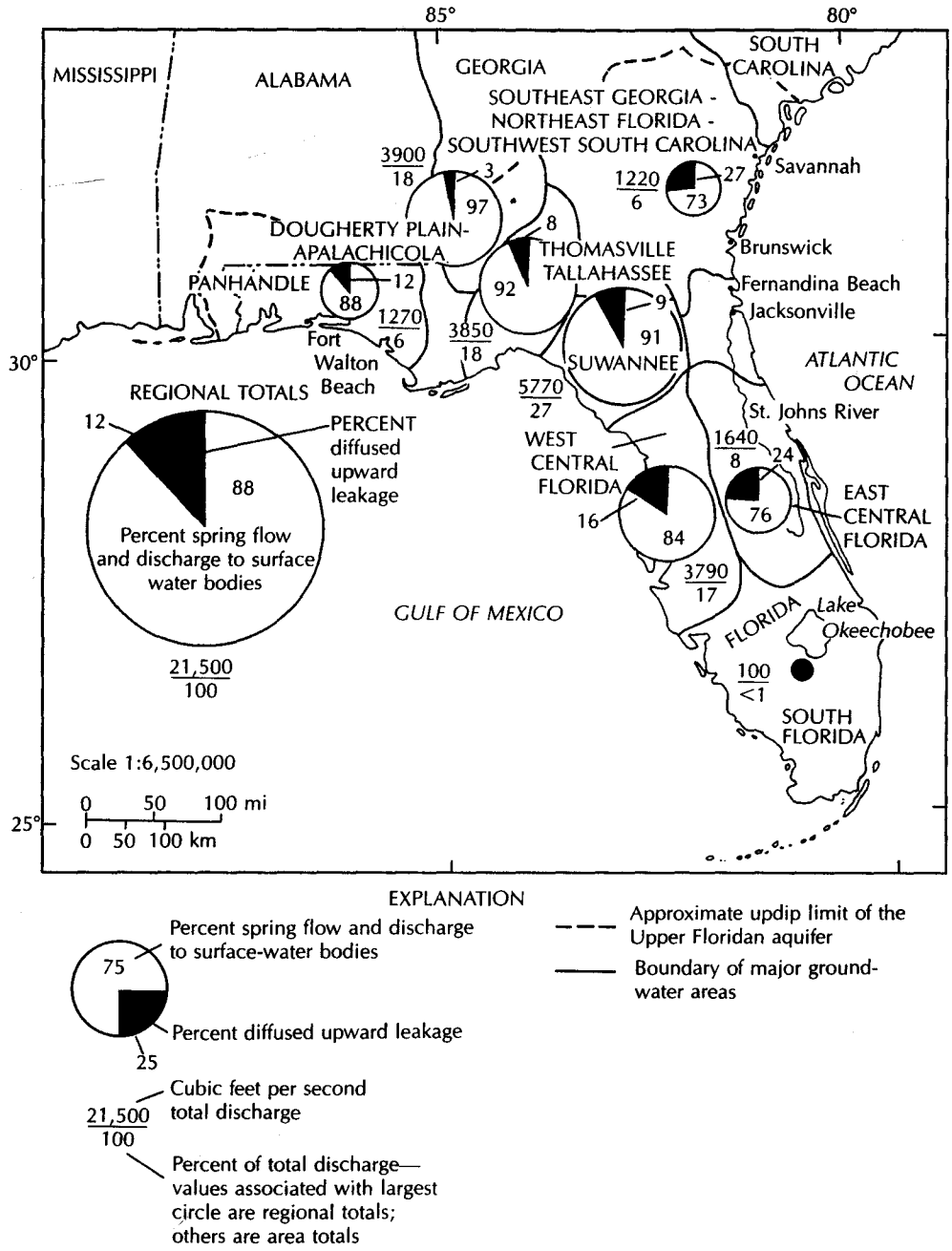
The southern portion of the Floridan aquifer is hydraulically separated from the north by the potentiometric divide. The Withlacoochee River and the St. Johns River act as ground-water drains to lower the potentiometric surface and isolate the southern aquifer. In the Polk City area, north of Winter Haven, the potentiometric surface is as much as 115 ft (35 m) above sea level (Stewart et al. 1971). This is another area in which sinkhole lakes as deep as 200 ft (60 m) are present and can serve as recharge conduits.

The general circulation of ground water in the Floridan aquifer is downward in the recharge areas and then laterally toward the coasts. To the west, discharge is by upward leakage through the Hawthorn Formation into the Gulf of Mexico or into coastal springs located in sinkholes. Flow eastward can reach the Atlantic Ocean floor, where some units of the Floridan aquifer crop out. There is also discharge into the rivers that drain the coastal area. Major rivers, such as the Suwannee and St. Johns in northern Florida, have a profound effect on the potentiometric surface, as they are regions of major discharge from the aquifer.

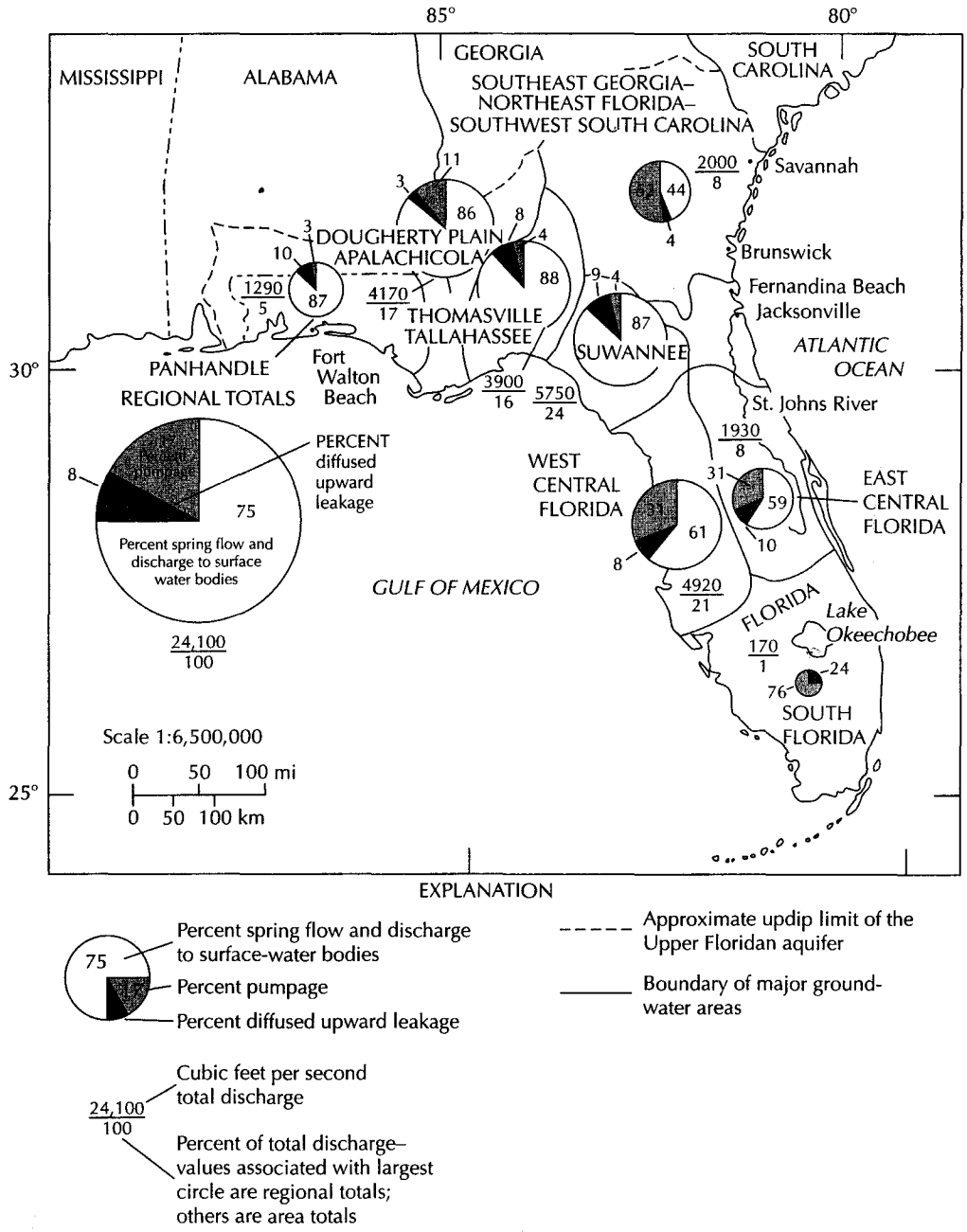
Zones of high-salinity ground water are found in the lower parts of the Floridan aquifer. These are naturally occurring, but heavy pumping of overlying fresh water is causing an upconing of the saline water. In several areas in the southeastern coastal plain, the principal artesian aquifer has been heavily pumped, with a subsequent lowering of the potentiometric surface. In an area east of Tampa, the potentiometric surface declined by as much as 60 ft (18 m) from 1949 to 1969 (Stewart et al. 1971). In the Savannah area, the cone of depression resulting from ground-water pumping has reversed the regional hydraulic gradient and has caused salt-water encroachment (Counts & Donsky, 1963; Bush, Miller, & Maslia 1986). This is becoming common throughout much of the southeastern coastal plain.

The estimated predevelopment discharge of water from the Floridan aquifer system is shown in Figure 7.20. Water from the aquifer discharges into known springs as well as lakes and streams in areas where the aquifer is unconfined or loosely confined. As of 1980 the total discharge from some 300 known springs was about 13,000 ft^3/s (370 m^3/s) with an additional 7000 ft^3/s (200 m^3/s) estimated discharge into the lakes and streams. The remainder of the water from the Floridan aquifer, about 2500 ft^3/s (70 m^3/s), diffused upward across the upper confining layer into surface aquifers.

Development of the Floridan aquifer system has resulted in the withdrawal of some 4000 ft^3/s (110 m^3/s) of ground water by pumping. Overall, the discharge from the Floridan aquifer system is now estimated to be 24,100 ft^3/s (680 m^3/s), which is 12% more than under predevelopment conditions. Figure 7.21 shows the estimated 1980 discharge from the Floridan aquifer. The creation of cones of depression in the potentiometric surface of the Floridan aquifer has enlarged the recharge area and resulted in increased recharge. Long-term regional water-level declines of more than 10 ft (3 m) have occurred in the Savannah–Hilton Head Island area, Brunswick-Jacksonville-Fernandina beach area, Fort Walton beach area, and west-central Florida. Most of the discharge is still through the major springs, with some 18,000 ft^3/s (510 m^3/s) of flow into known springs and surface-water bodies. There still remains a large amount of water in the Floridan aquifer that could be developed, especially in southeast Georgia and north-central Florida (Bush & Johnson 1986). However, future development could be hindered by salt-water encroachment, which is also a threat to those areas that have already developed deep cones of depression (Bush, Miller, & Maslia 1986).



▲ FIGURE 7.20
Estimated predevelopment discharge for major ground-water areas of the upper Floridan aquifer. *Source: P. W. Bush & R. H. Johnson, "Floridan Regional Aquifer-System Study." In* Regional Aquifer-System Analysis Program of the U.S. Geological Survey, Summary of Projects, *1978–84. U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1002 (1986): 17–29.*



▲ FIGURE 7.21
Estimated 1980 discharge from major ground-water areas of the upper Floridan aquifer. *Source: P. W. Bush & R. H. Johnson, "Floridan Regional Aquifer-System Study." In* Regional Aquifer-System Analysis Program of the U.S. Geological Survey, Summary of Projects, *1978–84. U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1002 (1986): 17–29.*

Case Study: Regional Flow System of the High Plains Aquifer

The *High Plains aquifer* occurs in the states of Colorado, Kansas, Nebraska, New Mexico, Oklahoma, South Dakota, Texas, and Wyoming. It is a water-table aquifer system consisting primarily of near-surface sand and gravel deposits that were formed as alluvium deposited by streams draining from the Rocky Mountains, which lie to the west. The *Ogalalla Formation,* which consists of alluvium, is the principal hydrogeologic unit, but the aquifer system also includes the fractured and thus permeable zones of the Brule Formation, a massive siltstone; and the Arikaree Group, a sandstone. Dune sands of Quaternary age are also an important part of the High Plains aquifer, especially in Nebraska. Figure 7.22 is a geologic map showing the principal geologic units of the aquifer system (Gutentag et al. 1984; Weeks 1986).

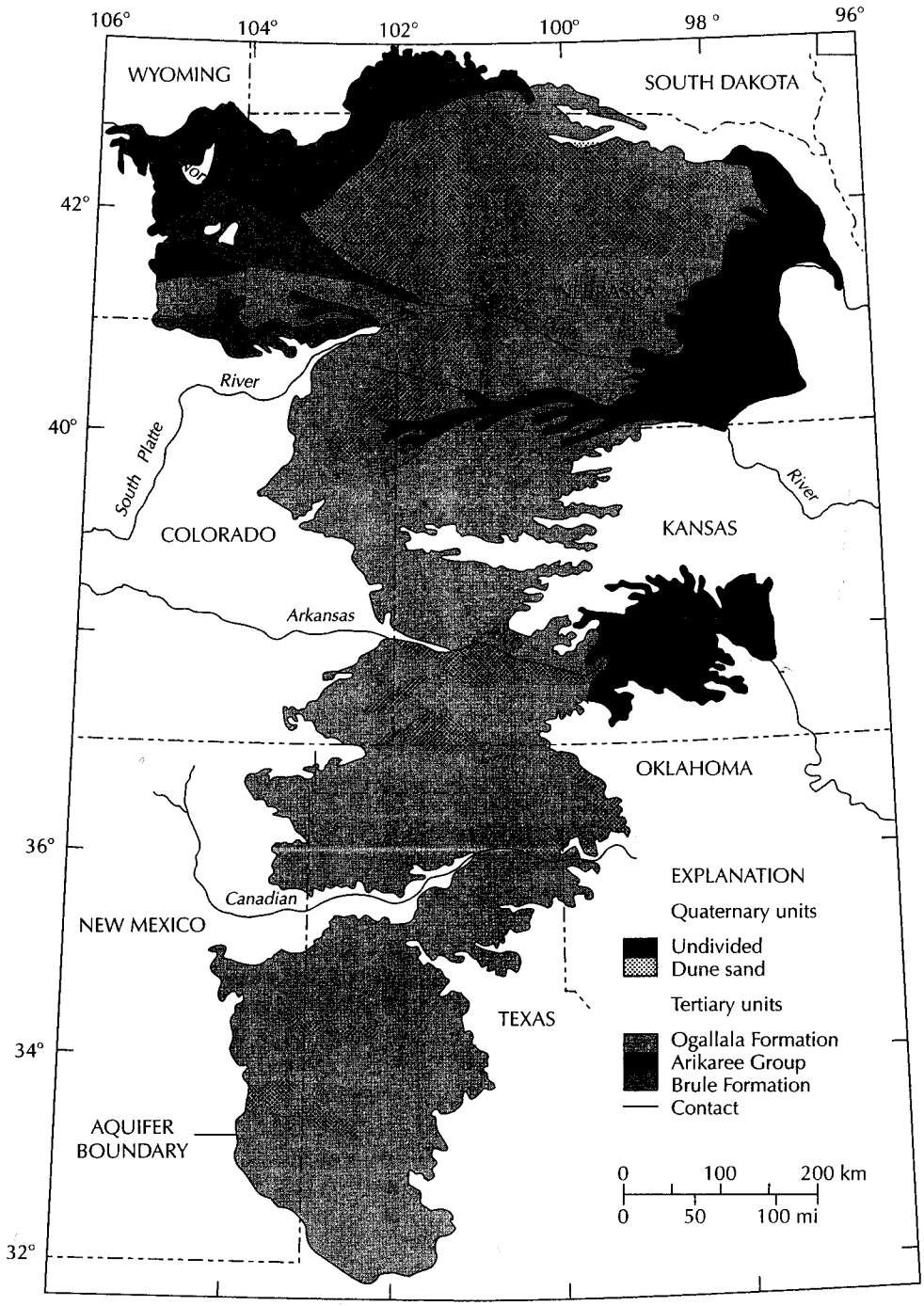
The High Plains aquifer is recharged by rainfall, which varies from 16 in. (41 cm) annually in the western part of the aquifer to 28 in. (71 cm) in the extreme eastern part. However, potential evapotranspiration greatly exceeds the available precipitation. Class A pan evaporation ranges from 60 in. (152 cm) in the northern part of the aquifer to 105 in. (267 cm) in the southern. As a result, net annual recharge to the aquifer system is as low as 0.024 in (0.061 cm) per year in Texas to 6 in. (15 cm) per year in south-central Kansas. Recharge rates are greatest in areas of surficial sand dunes. Except in dune areas the long-term annual recharge is 1 in. (2.5 cm) per year or less (Gutentag et al. 1984).

The hydrogeologic characteristics of the High Plains aquifer materials vary widely because of the differing grain-size distribution of the sediments. The specific yield varies from less than 5% to more than 30% and averages 15%. Hydraulic conductivity varies from 25 to 300 ft/day (7.6 to 91 m/day) and averages 60 ft/day (18 m/day). There is a complex areal variability of the hydrogeologic characteristics because of the fluvial depositional history of the formations that comprise the aquifer (Figure 7.23).

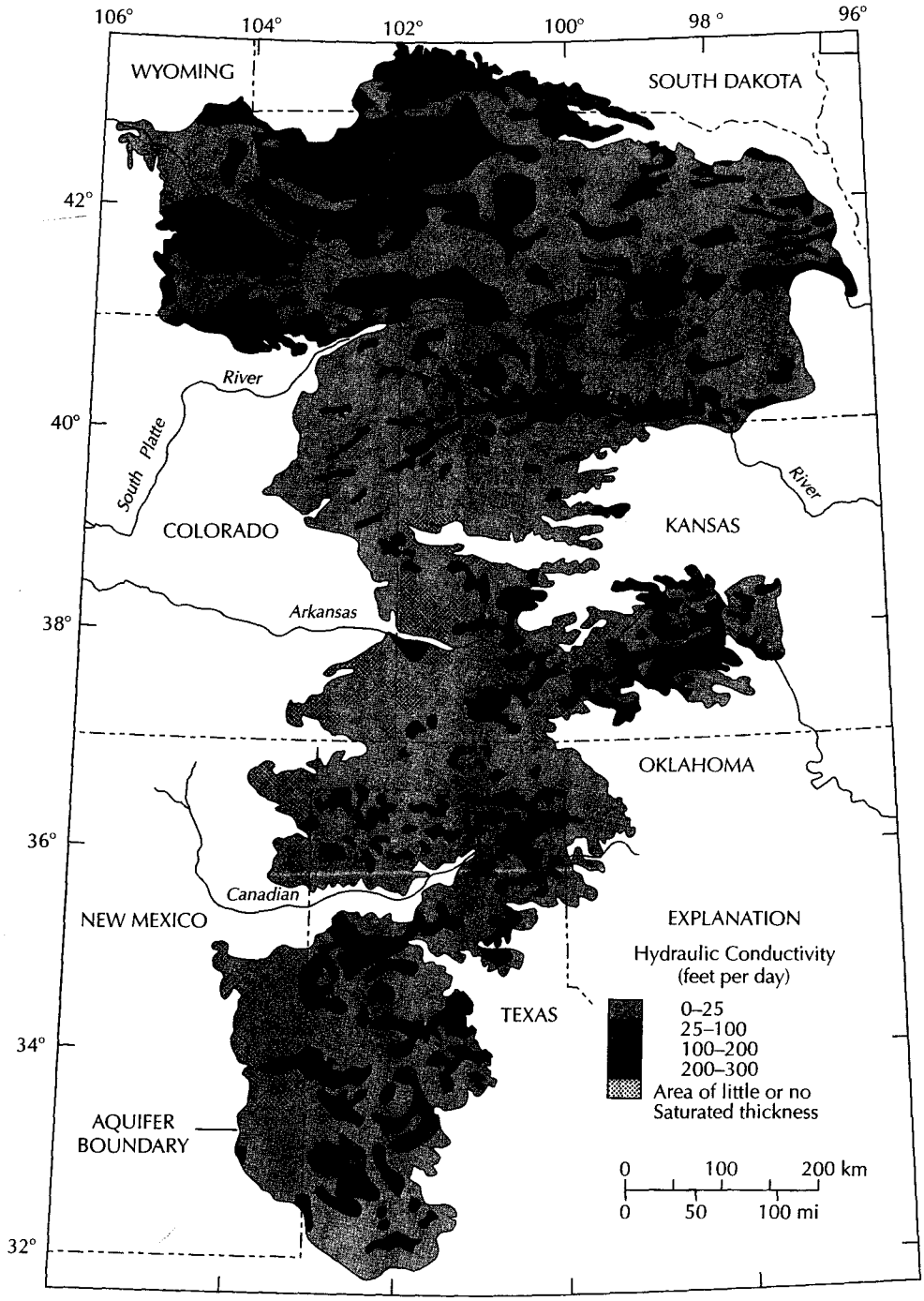
The water table slopes from west to east (Figure 7.24), due to the regional topographic slope in this direction. Ground water is flowing from west to east at an average rate of about 1 ft/day (0.3 m/day). It discharges naturally into streams and springs as well as by evapotranspiration.

The saturated thickness of the aquifer ranges from zero at the western edge to about 1000 ft (305 m) in west-central Nebraska and averages 200 ft (60 m). Prior to development there were about 3.42 billion acre-feet (4.22×10^{12} m^3) of drainable water in storage in the aquifer system. Starting in the late nineteenth century, the aquifer was tapped by wells for irrigation. In 1978 there were some 170,000 wells pumping 23 million acre-feet (2.84×10^{10} m^3) of water annually (Gutentag et al. 1984). In some areas the amount of annual pumpage is from 2 to 100 times greater than the annual recharge. This has resulted in declines in the water table of more than 100 ft (30 m) (Figure 7.25).

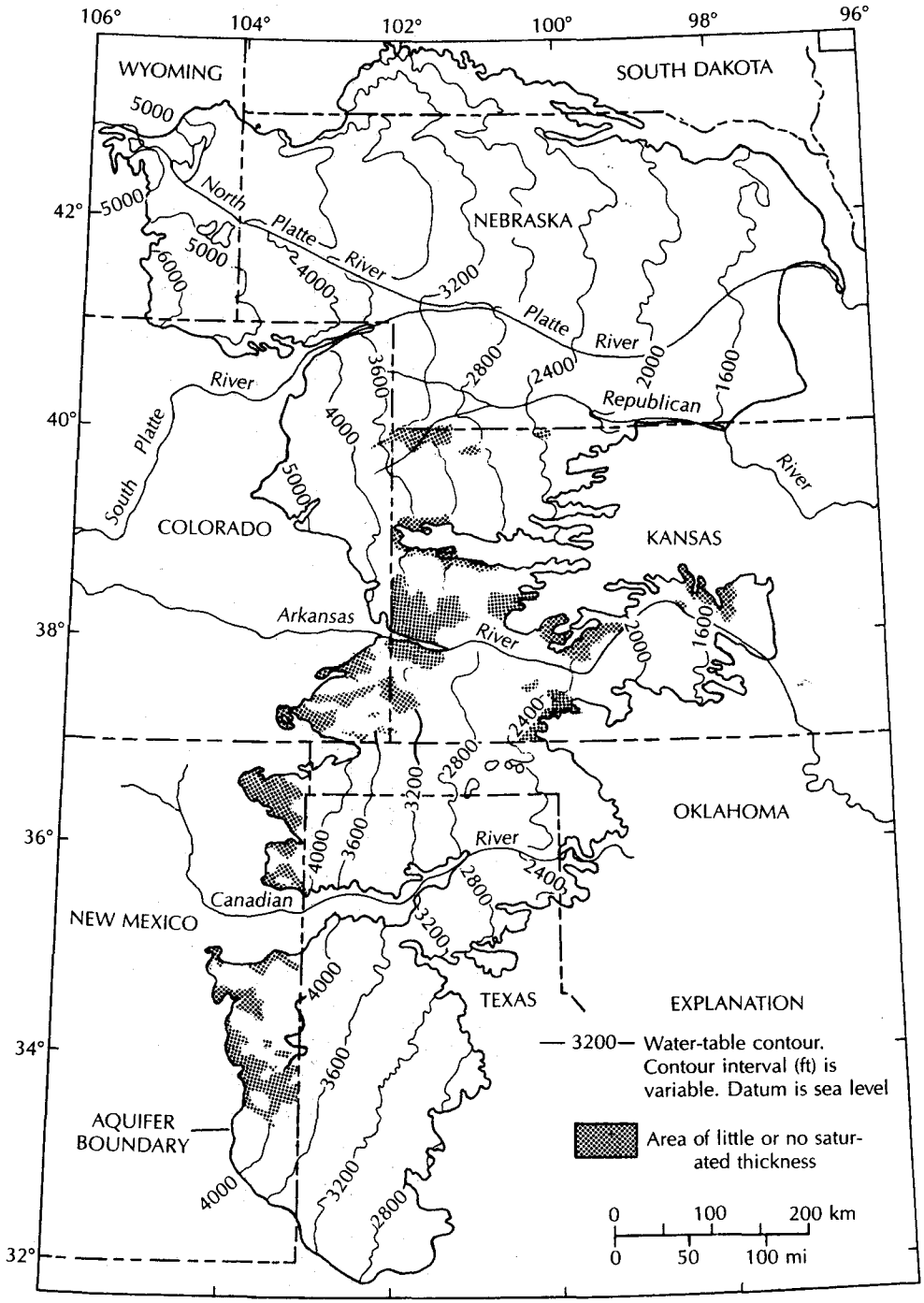
The volume of water in storage in the aquifer has decreased by about 166 million acre-feet (2.05×10^{11} m^3) per year, with most of the decline occurring in Kansas and Texas. Some 3.25 billion acre-feet (4×10^{12} m^3) of drainable water still remain in the aquifer system, but the costs of obtaining it increase as the depth to water increases. In some places, the natural quality of the water precludes its use for drinking water, although it is generally usable for irrigation. Careful management of this resource will help to extend the period of time that it will continue to supply water for irrigation in those areas of low recharge and high use.



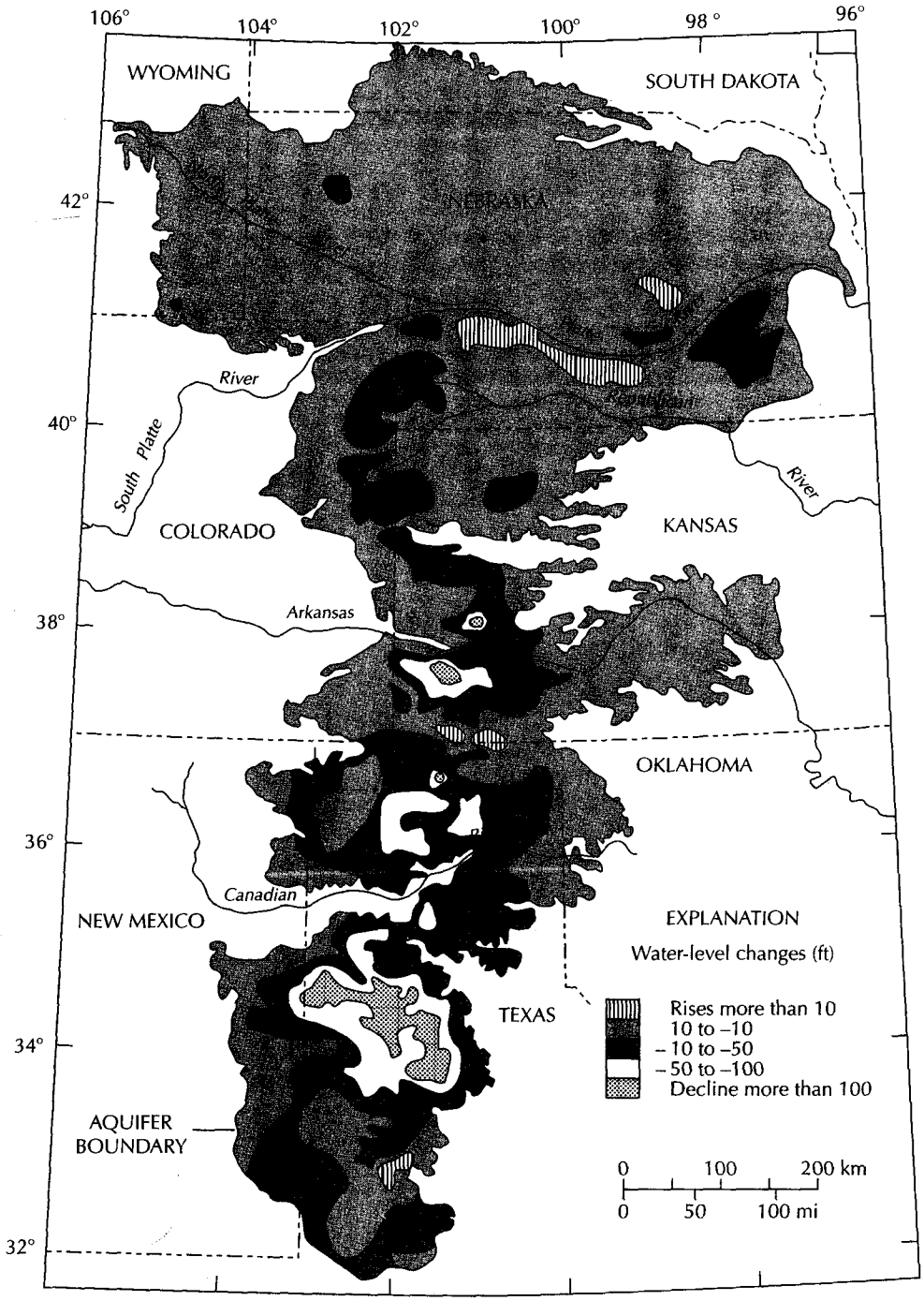
▲ FIGURE 7.22
Principal geologic units of the High Plains aquifer. *Source: E. D. Gutentag, F. J. Heimes, N. C. Krothe, R. R. Luckey, & J. B. Weeks, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1400-B, 1984.*



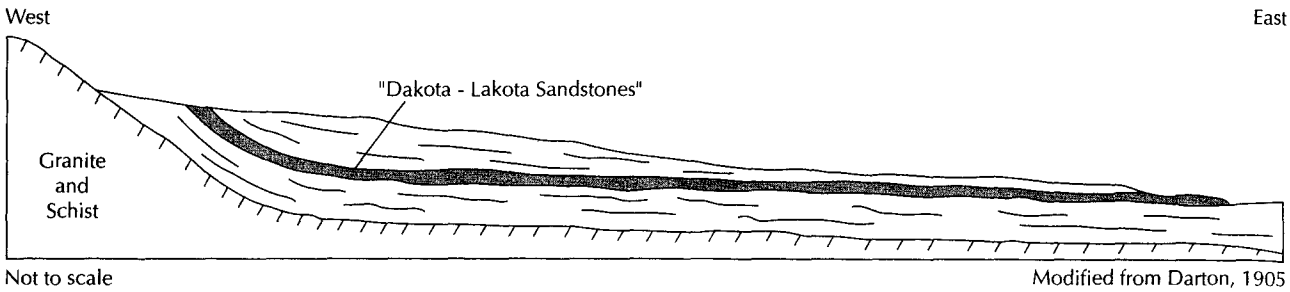
▲ FIGURE 7.23
Areal distribution of hydraulic conductivity in the High Plains aquifer. *Source: E. D. Gutentag, F. J. Heimes, N. C. Krothe, R. R. Luckey, & J. B. Weeks, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1400-B, 1984.*



▲ FIGURE 7.24
Water table in the High Plains aquifer, 1980. *Source: E. D. Gutentag, F. J. Heimes, N. C. Krothe, R. R. Luckey, & J. B. Weeks, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1400-B, 1984.*



▲ FIGURE 7.25
Water-level changes in the High Plains aquifer, predevelopment to 1980. *Source: E. D. Gutentag, F. J. Heimes, N. C. Krothe, R. R. Luckey, & J. B. Weeks, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1400-B, 1984.*



▲ FIGURE 7.26
The Dakota aquifer as conceptualized by Darton. *Source: Darton, H. H. 1905. Preliminary report on artesian waters of a portion of the Dakotas.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper *32.*

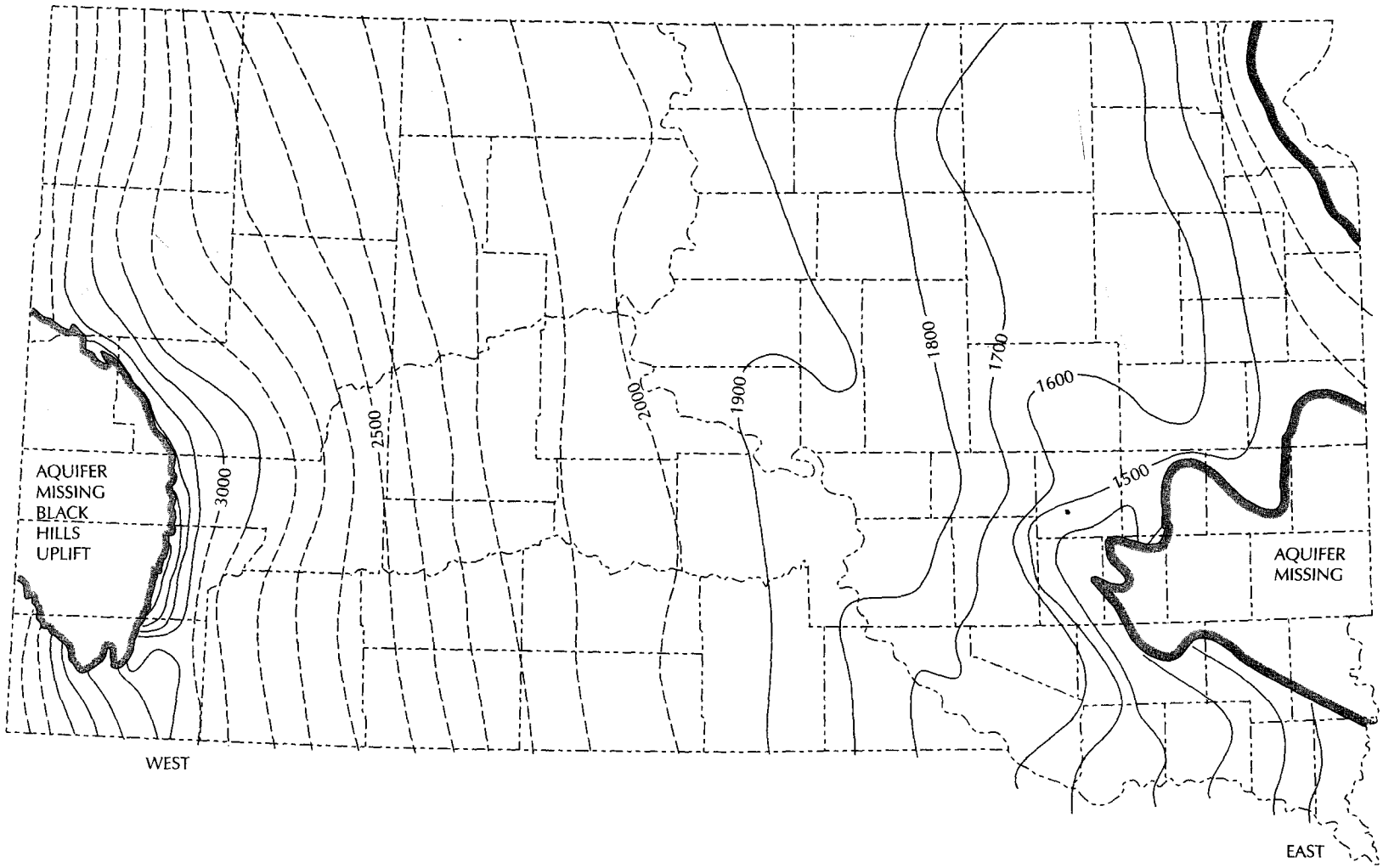
Case Study: The Dakota Aquifer

One classic, regionally confined artesian aquifer system is the Dakota aquifer of the midwestern United States. This important aquifer, which consists of layers of Cretaceous sandstone separated by beds of shale, mudstone, and clay, underlies part or all of North Dakota, South Dakota, Nebraska, Kansas, Montana, Wyoming, Colorado, Minnesota, and Iowa. Most of the Ogallala aquifer is underlain by the Dakota aquifer, where it is the uppermost major bedrock aquifer.

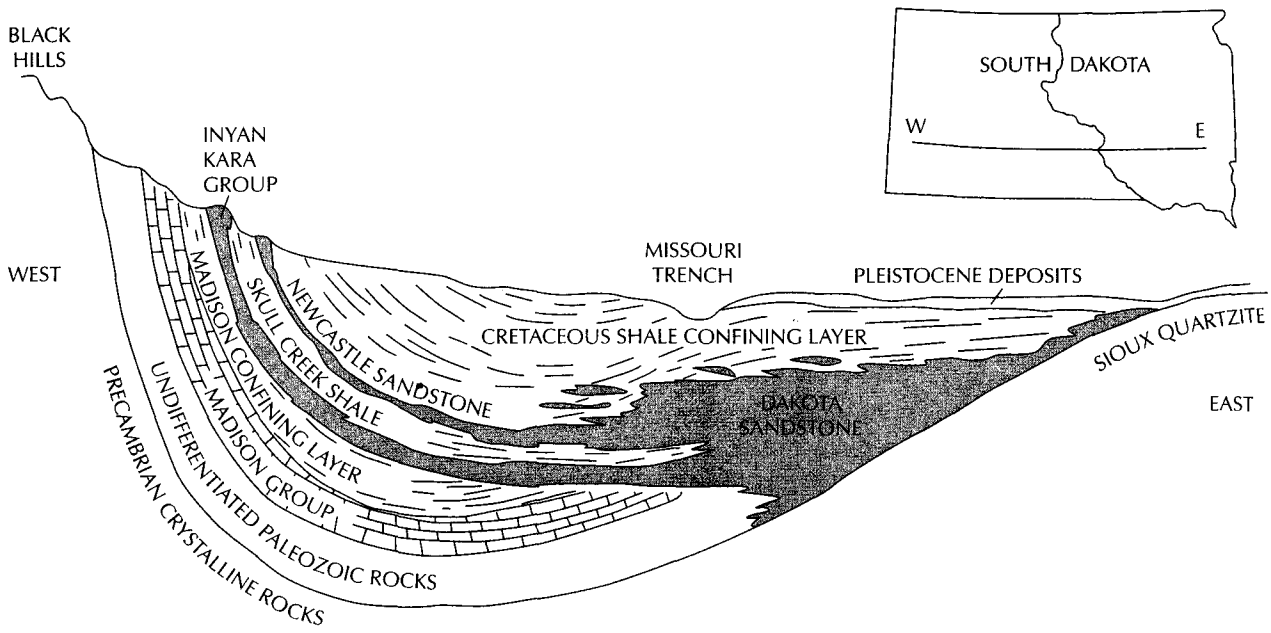
The first study of the Dakota aquifer system was done by H. H. Darton (1896, 1905, 1909). He conceived the system to be a classic confined aquifer with recharge occurring where the edge had been uplifted so that it cropped out along the Front Range and the Black Hills (Figure 7.26). According to Darton's model, recharge to the aquifer occurred in the outcrop areas and then moved laterally to distant discharge areas. Darton published a preliminary potentiometric head map of the Dakota aquifer in South Dakota, based on limited data that indicated the ground-water flow in the aquifer was from west to east (Figure 7.27). Later studies revealed that the stratigraphy of the Dakota aquifer was more complex than originally thought; no individual formations are continually present from west to east across the width of the aquifer system. The Cretaceous formations were deposited in a fluctuating terrestrial to nearshore marine environment. From east to west, the Dakota sandstones start to interfinger with and then are replaced by marine shales (Leonard & others, 1982).

Although the regional Dakota aquifer system is quite complex, the Dakota aquifer of South Dakota is less complex. The aquifer is continuous from the uplifted edge at the Black Hills in the west to the unconformity with the Precambrian Sioux Quartzite in the east (Figure 7.28). In eastern North and South Dakota, the Dakota aquifer consists of the Dakota sandstone while in the Black Hill area it consists of the stratigraphically equivalent, but thinner, Newcastle sandstone. The Muddy sandstone is the equivalent lower Cretaceous formation in western North Dakota and Montana (Anna 1986). The Dakota aquifer is confined by the Pierre, Carlile, and Belle Fourche–Mowry shales. There are some minor aquifers included in the shales (Figure 7.29).

Underlying the Dakota aquifer in the Black Hills region and western South Dakota is a confining unit, the Skull Creek shale. The Inyan Kara group aquifer underlies the Skull Creek shale. In eastern South Dakota, the Skull Creek shale is missing and the equivalent Inyan Kara group is included in the Dakota sandstone. A third major confined aquifer is present in the Black Hills region, the Mississippian-age Madison group aquifer. The Black



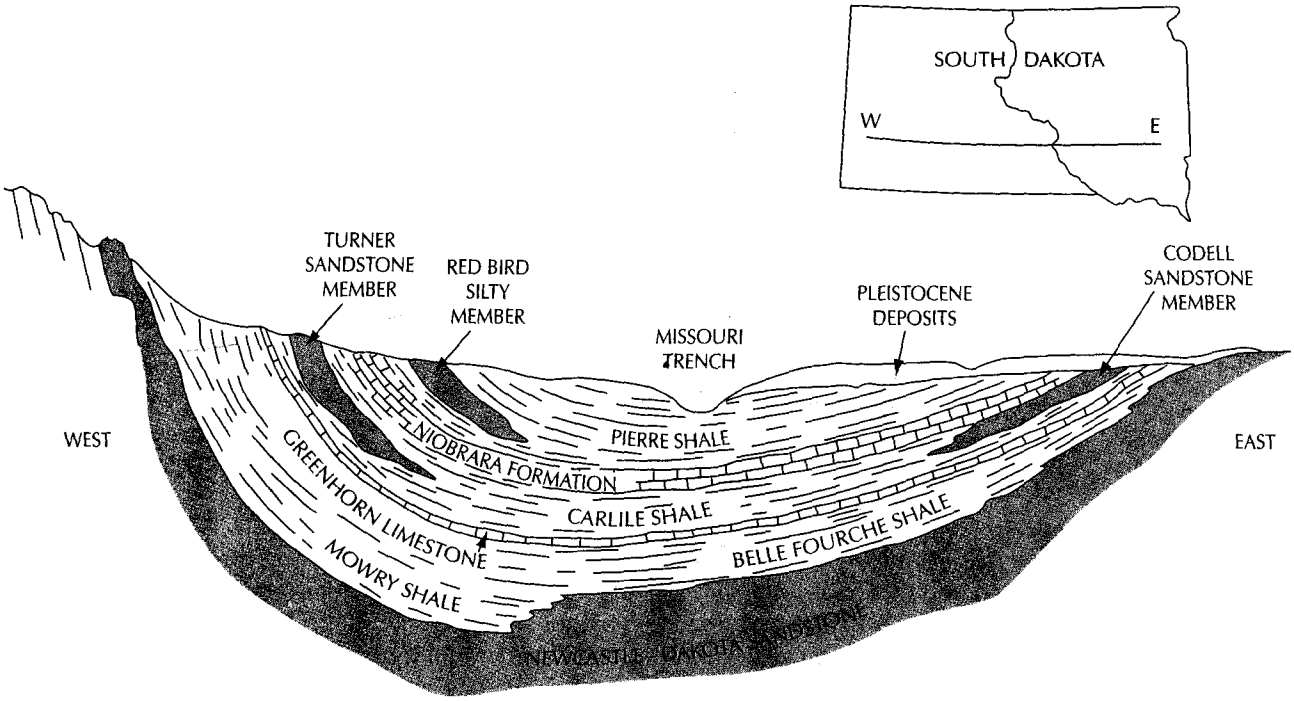
▲ FIGURE 7.27
Predevelopment potentiometric surface of the Dakota aquifer in South Dakota as mapped by Darton (1909, Plate XI). *Source: Bredehoeft, J. D., C. E. Neuzil and P. C. D. Milly. 1983. Regional flow in the Dakota aquifer: A study of the role of confining layers.* U.S. Geological Survey Water Supply Paper 2237.



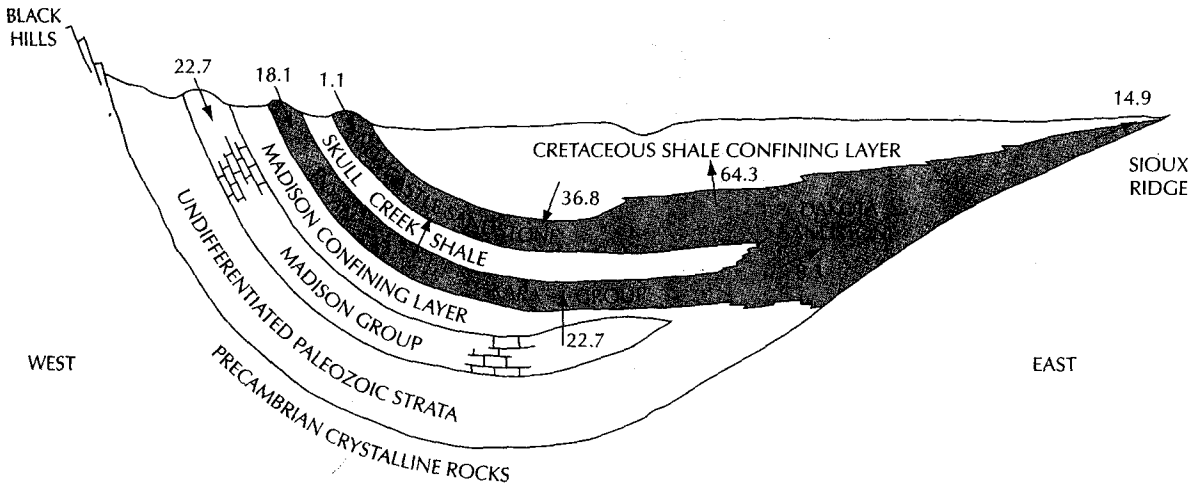
▲ FIGURE 7.28
Generalized west to east cross section of the bedrock aquifers of South Dakota. Not to scale, vertical exaggeration. *Source: Bredehoeft, J. D., C. E. Neuzil and P. C. D. Milly. 1983. Regional flow in the Dakota aquifer: A study of the role of confining layers.* U.S. Geological Survey Water Supply Paper *2237.*

Hills uplift has exposed distal ends of the Newcastle aquifer, the Inyan Kara group aquifer, and the Madison group aquifer.

The primary driving force for ground-water flow is the hydraulic head which is controlled by the surface topography of the Great Plains which slopes from west to east (Bredehoeft, Neuzil, & Milly 1983). Ground-water flow in the Dakota aquifer is hence from the Black Hills toward the outcrop area in eastern South Dakota. Bredehoeft, Neuzil, and Milly (1983) have estimated the predevelopment water budget for the Dakota aquifer. The volume of recharge to the Newcastle Sandstone in the outcrop area is relatively small, 1.1 ft^3/s (0.03 m^3/s), compared with the recharge to the Inyan Kara group aquifer, 18.8 ft^3/s (0.53 m^3/s), and the Madison group aquifer, 22.7 ft^3/s (0.64 m^3/s) (Figure 7.30). The deeper aquifers are thicker and have a larger outcrop area than the shallower aquifers. In addition, the outcrop of the Madison group aquifer is a karst limestone with sinking streams and abundant recharge in the higher elevations of the Black Hills (Green 1997). Water-balance calculations require that large volumes of vertical recharge occur across the confining shales, probably along vertical fractures because the intrinsic permeability of the shales is low (Neuzil, Bredehoeft, & Wolff 1984). Even though unit rates of recharge are low, the large surface area means that significant amounts of recharge can occur. Upward leakage from the underlying aquifers also contributes to the Dakota aquifer (Case 1984, Bredehoeft, Neuzil, & Milly 1983). Predevelopment recharge to the Madison group aquifer discharged upward into the Inyan Kara group aquifer, and the Inyan Kara group aquifer discharged into the Dakota aquifer. In western South Dakota, downward recharge occurred across the Cretaceous shale confining layer, while in eastern South Dakota there



▲ FIGURE 7.29
Generalized west to east cross section of the upper Cretaceous confining layers above the Dakota aquifer in South Dakota. Not to scale, vertical exaggeration. *Source: Bredehoeft, J. D., C. E. Neuzil and P. C. D. Milly. 1983. Regional flow in the Dakota aquifer: A study of the role of confining layers.* U.S. Geological Survey Water Supply Paper *2237.*



▲ FIGURE 7.30
Computed pre-development steady state ground water flows in cubic feet per second through the bedrock aquifers of South Dakota. *Source: Bredehoeft, J. D., C. E. Neuzil and P. C. D. Milly. 1983. Regional flow in the Dakota aquifer: A study of the role of confining layers.* U.S. Geological Survey Water Supply Paper *2237.*

was upward leakage across the Cretaceous shale confining layers as well as discharge in the Dakota sandstone outcrop area (Figure 7.31).

Much of the original potentiometric surface of the Dakota aquifer in South Dakota was above the land surface, creating artesian conditions. Records of the South Dakota state engineer show that the well discharge increased from zero in 1881 to about 370 million gallons per day in 1912. Then there was a precipitous decline to about 80 million gallons per day by 1922 (Bredehoeft, Neuzil, & Milly 1983). The head in the aquifer declined, especially in eastern South Dakota where the centers of ground-water withdrawal were located. Figure 7.31 shows the potentiometric surface in eastern South Dakota in 1915, after 34 years of development. A comparison with Figure 7.27 shows the degree of drawdown during these 34 years.

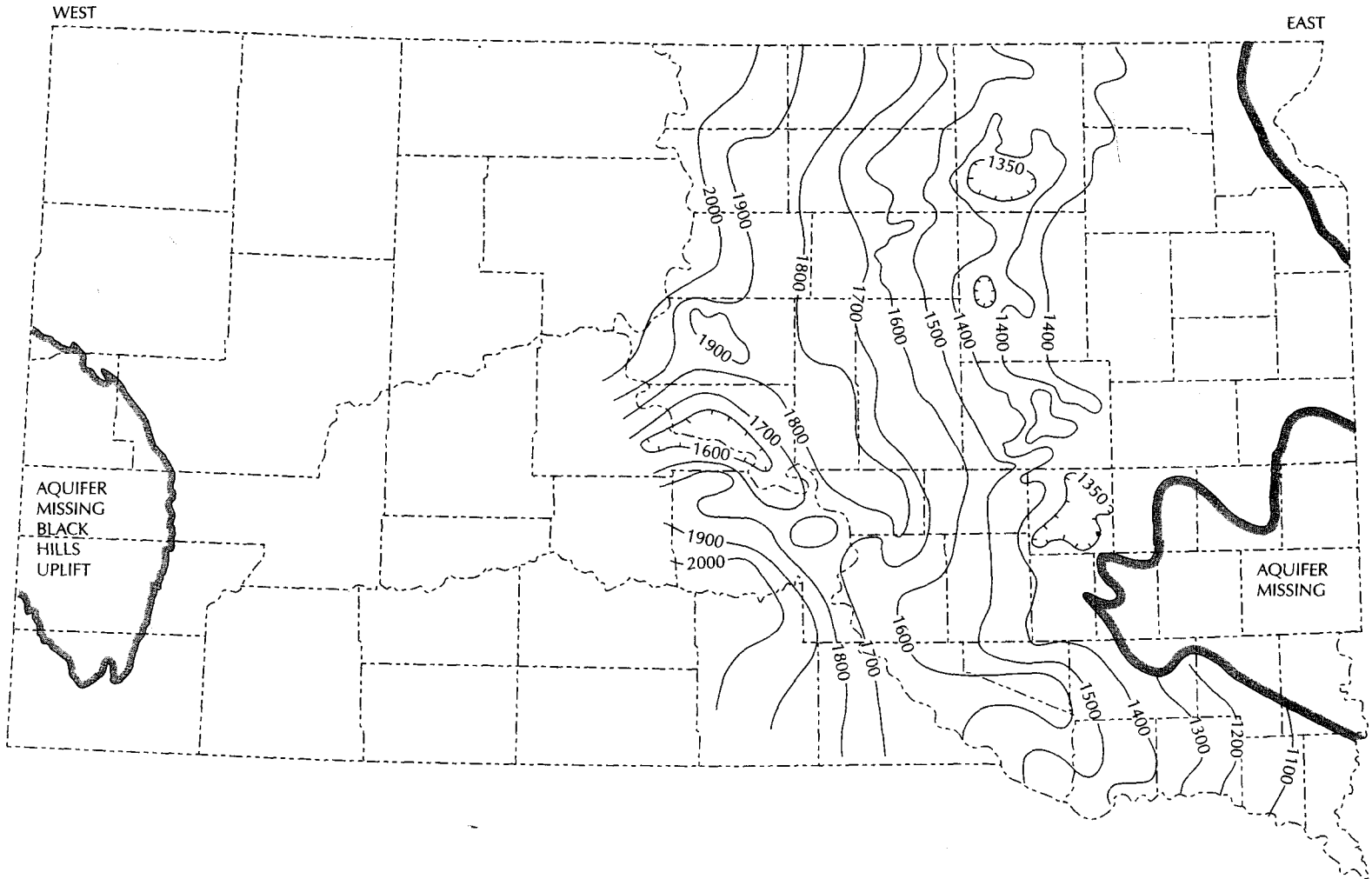
7.7 Interactions of Ground Water and Lakes or Wetlands and Streams

One important aspect of the hydrology of wetlands and lakes is their interaction with ground water. This interaction plays an important role in determining the water budget for a lake or a wetland (Winter 1977; Siegel 1988a, 1988b). Lakes may be classified hydrogeologically on the basis of domination of the annual hydrologic budget by surface water or ground water. Surface-water-dominated lakes typically have both inflow and outflow streams, whereas seepage lakes are ground-water dominated (Born, Smith, & Stephenson 1979). Siegel (1988a) points out some wetlands are recharge areas, where excess water recharges the water table. Other wetlands are maintained by ground-water discharge. For example, bogs can be ground-water-recharge areas, whereas fens are typically supported by ground-water discharge (Siegel 1988b).

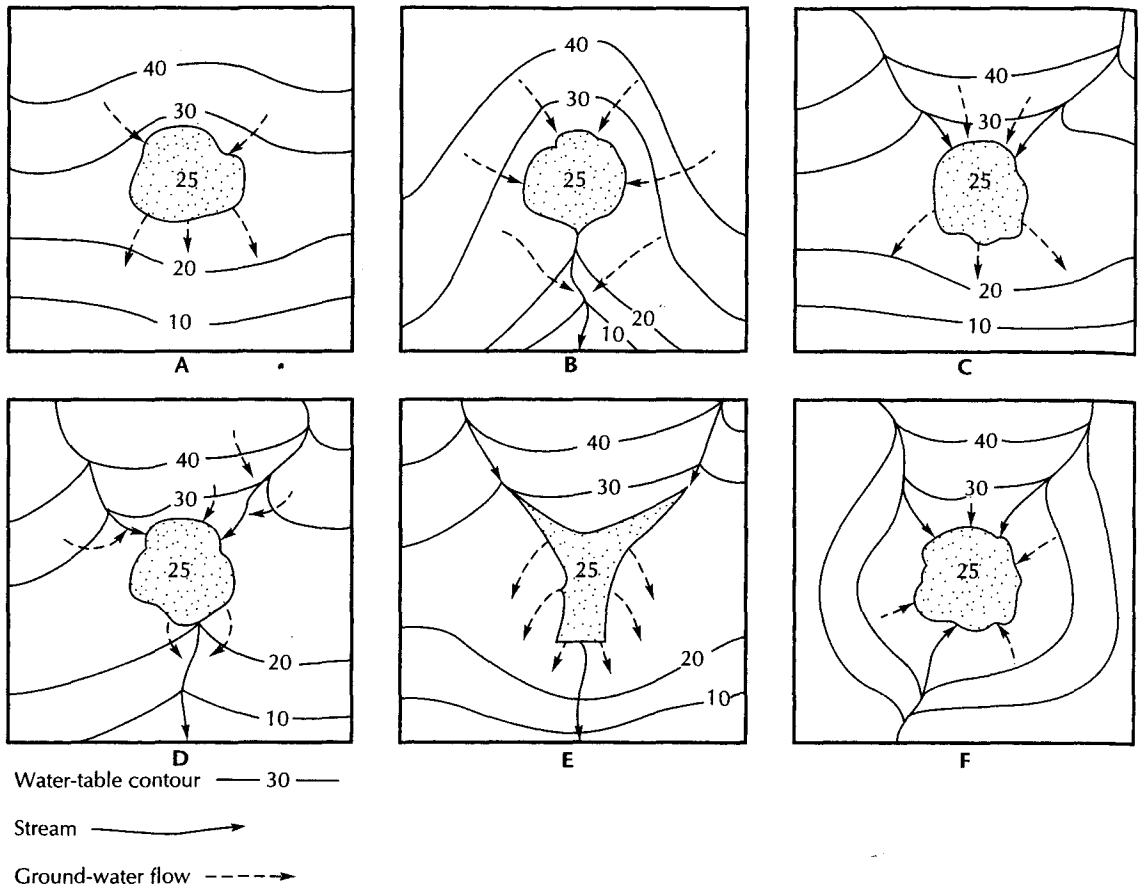
There is a continuum from wetlands to lakes, starting with a wet meadow, which has saturated surface soils but no standing water, and ending with a deep lake. Thus, the hydrologic relationships of ground water and lakes can also be applied to ground water and wetlands. Indeed, many lakes are ringed by wetlands.

Figure 7.32 shows several possible relationships between ground water, surface water, and lakes or wetlands. All the lakes or wetlands receive direct precipitation and lose water by evaporation. In most cases, neither of these will dominate the water balance. Figure 7.32A shows a seepage lake. It is ground-water-dominated, being fed by ground-water inflow on one side and drained by ground-water outflow on the other. The lake shown in Figure 7.32B is also ground-water dominated, being fed by ground water and drained by stream flow. Some lakes may be controlled by neither ground water nor surface water. The lake shown in Figure 7.32C is fed by both stream flow and ground-water inflow. However, the amount of stream flow is low enough that it can be drained entirely by ground-water outflow. The lake in Figure 7.32D is surface-water dominated, being fed by streams and also drained by streams. The ground-water inflow and outflow are minimal. Figure 7.32E represents a reservoir created behind a dam. The water level created by the reservoir is much greater than the adjacent ground-water level. Water can be lost by seepage along both sides and the dam. A terminal lake is shown in Figure 7.32F. It is fed by both streams and ground-water inflow on all sides. Water is discharged only by evaporation, which dominates the water balance.

In a field study of the ground-water regime of permanent lakes in hummocky moraine of western Canada, both local and intermediate flow systems were identified (Meyboom 1967). The lakes were seepage type (no surface outlet) and received inflow from either local



▲ FIGURE 7.31
Potentiometric surface of the Dakota aquifer in eastern South Dakota in 1915. This was after 34 years of ground-water development. *Source: Bredehoeft, J. D., C. E. Neuzil and P. C. D. Milly. 1983. Regional flow in the Dakota aquifer: A study of the role of confining layers.* U.S. Geological Survey Water Supply Paper *2237.*



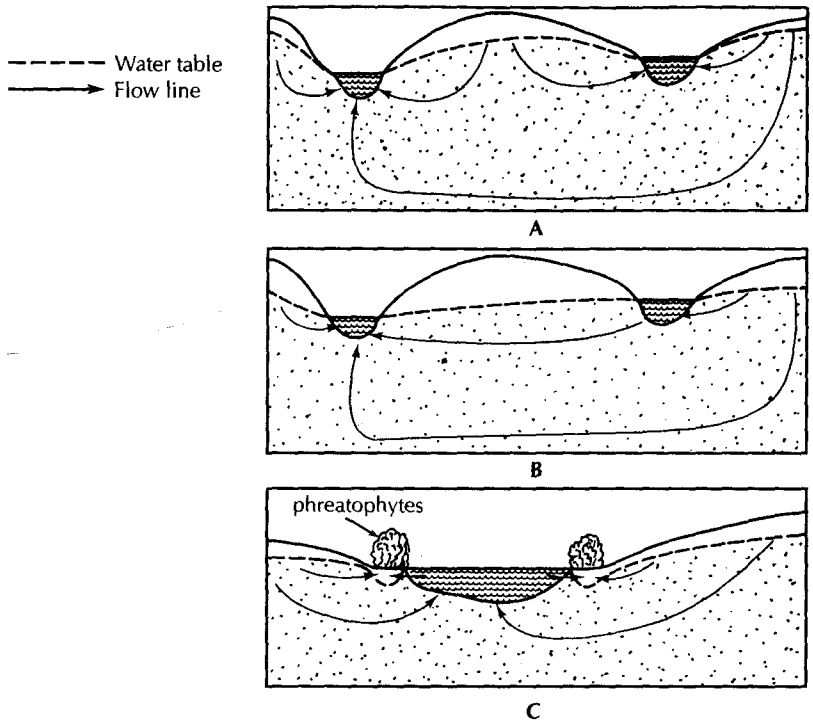
▲ FIGURE 7.32
Some possible interactions among ground water, streams, and lakes and wetlands.

or local plus regional flow systems. Figure 7.33 shows the water table and two lakes. Interlake areas are recharge areas, with the higher-elevation lake receiving water from local flow systems; the lower lake is fed by both local and regional flow systems.

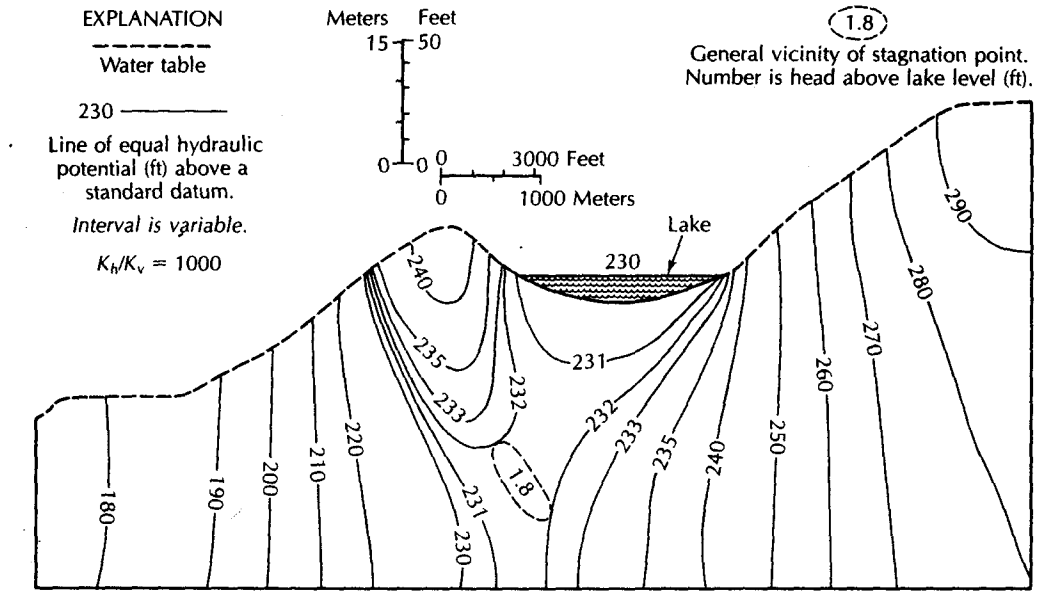
In early spring, the water table was high, and most lakes were like those of Figure 7.33A. However, as the water table fell during the dry season, the ground-water divide disappeared between some lakes. These lakes became flow-through lakes, with ground water flowing in on one side and out on the other. The upper lake in Figure 7.33B illustrates this condition.

The flow conditions close to each lake were complicated by a growth of willow trees around the lake. Willows are *phreatophytes*—plants that use large amounts of ground water. During the growing season, the water table may be locally depressed below lake level beneath the phreatophyte fringe (Figure 7.33C). This can cause outflow at the margins of the lake, still leaving inflow beneath the bottom. Phreatophyte water usage is diurnal, with resulting fluctuations in the seepage balance of the lake (Meyboom 1967).

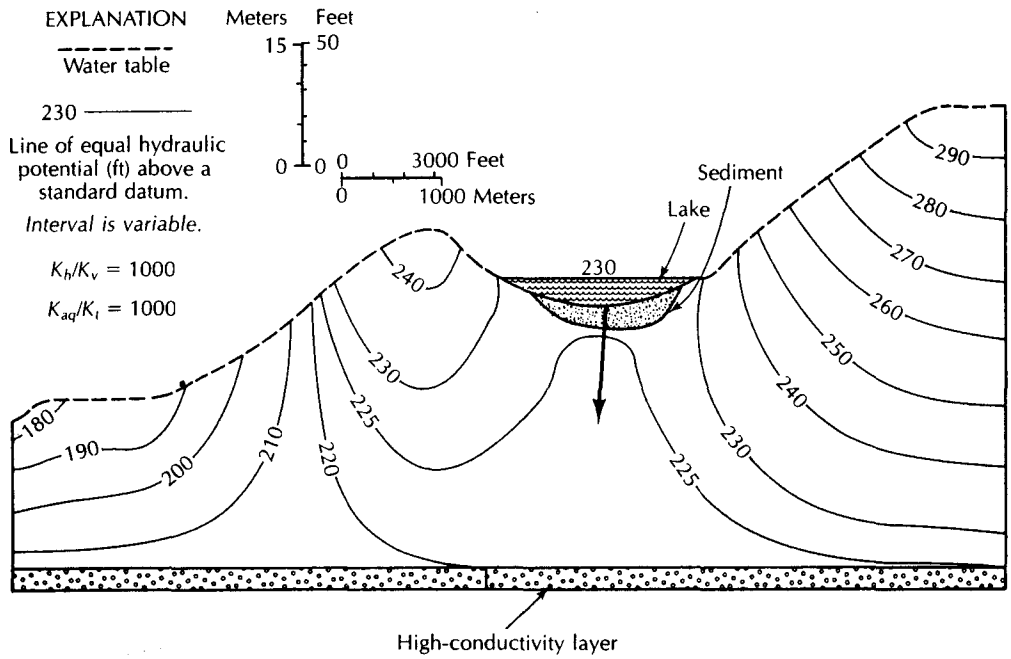
An interesting aspect of lake hydrology has been revealed through the numerical modeling of ground-water–lake systems. If the water table is higher than the lake level on all sides of a seepage lake, ground water will seep into the lake from all sides. Figure 7.34 shows a cross section through a seepage lake, with the water table higher than the lake surface. Potential distribution is based on a two-dimensional steady-state numerical model (Winter 1976). There is a stagnation zone beneath the lake, indicating both local and regional ground-water



▲ FIGURE 7.33
Ground-water–lake interactions: **A.** High water table and interlake ground-water divide. **B.** Low water table and no interlake divide. **C.** Depressed water table due to fringe of phreatophytes. *Source: Redrawn from P. Meyboom,* Journal of Hydrology *5 (1967): 117–42. Used with permission of Elsevier Scientific Publishing Company, Amsterdam.*



▲ FIGURE 7.34
Hydrogeologic cross section showing head distribution in a one-lake system with a homogeneous, anisotropic aquifer system. Results are based on a two-dimensional, steady-state, numerical-simulation model. *Source: T. C. Winter, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1001, 1976.*



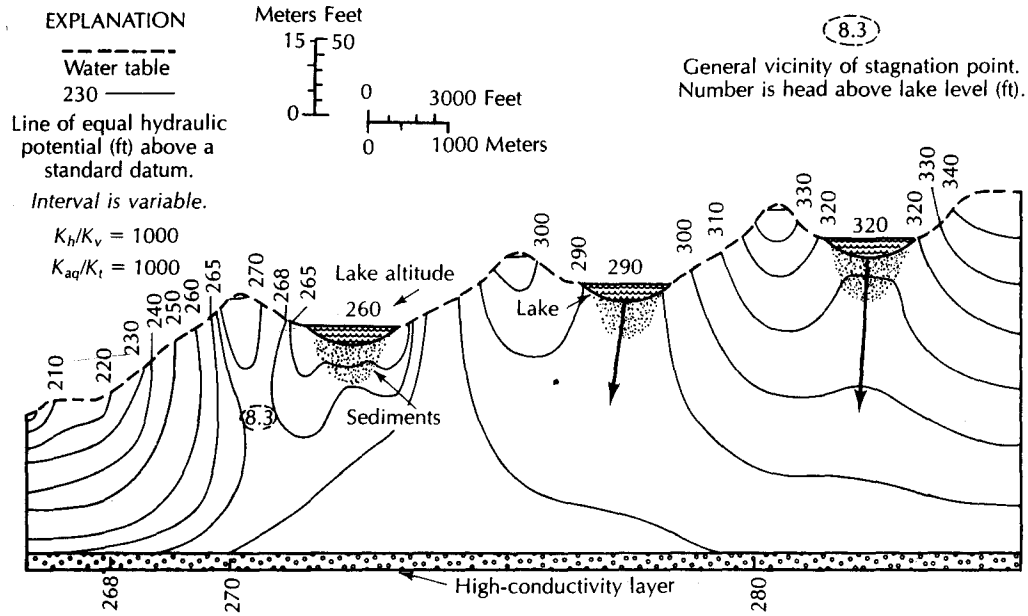
▲ FIGURE 7.35
Hydrogeologic cross section showing head distribution in a one-lake system with a layered aquifer system. The high-conductivity layer has a conductivity 1000 times as great as the low-conductivity layer. The lake loses water to the aquifer. *Source: T. C. Winter, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1001, 1976.*

flow. Upward seepage takes place throughout the lake bottom. As long as the stagnation zone is present, the lake will not lose water through the bottom. However, should an aquifer or high-conductivity layer underlie the lake, the stagnation zone could be eliminated (Winter 1976). Without the stagnation zone, the lake will lose water through part or all of the bottom, even with the presence of a water-table mound downslope (Figure 7.35). Flow patterns of considerable complexity can form in multiple-lake systems, with some lakes having inflow through the bottom and some outseepage (Figure 7.36).

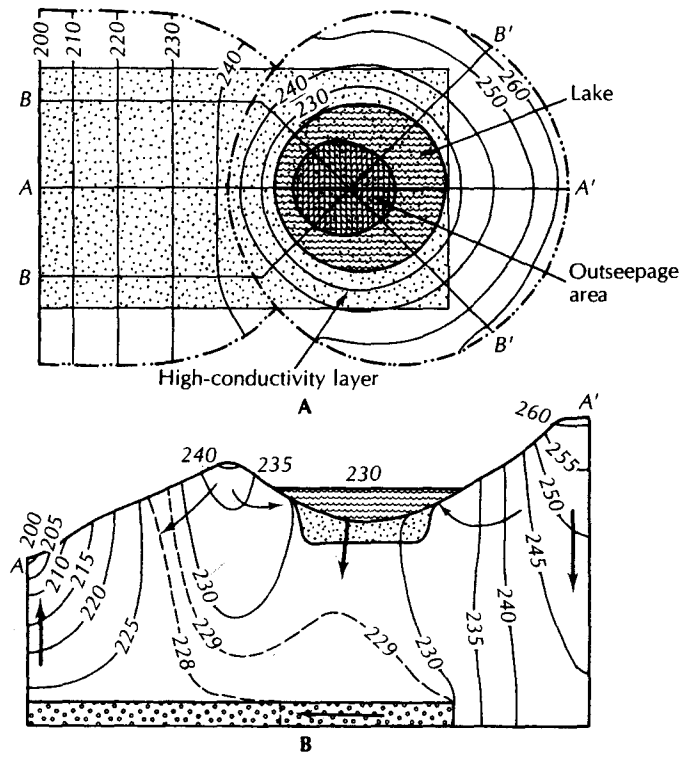
Three-dimensional numerical analysis of ground-water–lake systems has shown that the stagnation zone, if present, is beneath the down-gradient side of the lake and follows the lakeshore (Winter 1978). The area of outseepage, if present, can be estimated from the three-dimensional model. The one-lake system in Figure 7.37 is shown in top view and cross section. Outseepage occurs through the center of the lake, while seepage into the lake takes place all around the edges.

Whether a stagnation zone will develop is largely determined by the following factors: (a) the height of adjacent water-table mounds relative to the lake level, (b) the position and conductivity of highly conductive layers in the ground-water system, (c) the ratio of horizontal to vertical hydraulic conductivity, (d) the regional slope of the water table, and (e) the lake depth (Winter 1976).

As the down-gradient ground-water mound height increases, the likelihood that the lake will leak decreases. If the ratio of horizontal to vertical hydraulic conductivity is low (less than 100), the model studies have indicated that stagnation points typically are present. As the ratio increases, so does the likelihood of the stagnation point disappearing and outseepage developing. Also, the presence of high-conductivity layers increases the possibility of outseepage, as does the presence of deeper lakes. Flow systems with a low regional water-table gradient, as well as thin aquifers, are more likely to have only local flow systems—hence, lakes that do not leak if there is a down-gradient water-table divide.



▲ FIGURE 7.36
Hydrogeologic cross section through a three-lake system with a complex aquifer. Local and regional ground-water flow systems are present. *Source: T. C. Winter, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1001, 1976.*



◀ FIGURE 7.37
Three-dimensional analysis showing the area of outseepage in the center of the lake. Seepage into the lake occurs over the rest of the bottom. Areal extent of the high-conductivity layer is indicated by stipples. *Source: T. C. Winter,* Water Resources Research *14, no. 2 (1978): 245–54.*

Numerical modeling studies have shown that, of all factors that affect ground-water flow systems near a lake, the water-table configuration is the most dynamic and hence the most important to monitor during field studies. The slope of the water table beyond the immediate drainage basin of a lake has a strong impact on lake-bed seepage. This is particularly true for the slope between the ground-water mound on a lake's down-gradient side and a regional discharge area. The steeper the slope, the greater the likelihood that lake-bed seepage will occur (Winter 1981).

Because of the complex nature of ground-water recharge, localized ground-water mounds may develop temporarily. These typically form in areas where the unsaturated zone is thin, for example, near lakes. They can create temporary flow reversals. Thus it is possible for ground-water mounds to temporarily develop on the down-gradient side of a lake so lakes that normally have outseepage could undergo transient metamorphosis to lakes with no outseepage (Winter 1983).

In field studies of ground-water–lake interactions, there is no substitute for piezometers in defining the flow field. There must be several shallow piezometers all around the lake to define the water-table configuration (Winter 1976, 1978). It is necessary to determine whether a ground-water divide exists on the down-gradient side of a lake or between two lakes. If a divide exists, then the maximum water-table elevation must be found. The existence of a stagnation point can be determined by placing a nest of closely spaced piezometers of different depths below the shoreline on the downslope side of the lake. If the head at all depths is greater than the elevation of the lake surface, then a stagnation point is indicated.

To calculate the seepage rate into a lake, the seepage per unit area can be measured at the sediment-lake interface (Lee 1976). This is done with a device made of half an oil drum, with the open part pushed into the sediments. The rate of flux across the sediments is measured. Inflow generally occurs in the littoral zone of a lake (Winter 1978; Lee 1976). Outseepage in lakes with no down-gradient water-table divide can occur in both the down-gradient littoral zone and the deeper part of the lake. If the lake has a down-gradient water-table divide and there still is outseepage, it will be through the deeper part of the lake bottom. This area typically contains low-conductivity sediments, limiting the rate of water loss (Winter 1976).

Fluvial systems have complex interactions between water in the stream and ground water. The stream channel is typically a preferential flow path as it contains coarse alluvial sediments that may be more permeable than the surrounding floodplain (Woessner 1998). The entire fluvial system consists of modern and ancient stream channels that form a complex three-dimensional network of preferential flow paths that are typically more permeable than either floodplain deposits or the surrounding uplands. Ground-water flow within the fluvial system is parallel to the general direction of stream flow and naturally is in the same direction as the stream drainage.

Woessner (2000) classified four types of interactions between a stream and ground water: (1) gaining, where the ground water flows into the stream; (2) losing, where the water in the stream drains into the aquifer; (3) flow through, where the ground water flows into the stream on one side of the channel and out of the stream on the other side of the channel; and (4) parallel, where the ground water flows in the aquifer beneath the stream and in the same direction as the stream without entering or leaving the stream.

These interactions can take place between a stream and the underlying ground water within a short reach of a stream. As the stream meanders across a floodplain, the ground water in the stream sediments will move in the direction that the floodplain is sloping. The water in the meandering stream channel will move back and forth across the general direction of ground-water movement. Ground water will move into the stream on the upstream side of a meander and back into the aquifer on the downstream side when the stream crosses the general direction of ground-water flow. Ground water may also simply flow parallel to the stream when the stream flows in the same direction as the ground water.

Computer Notes

FLOWNET is a finite-difference computer program that models vertical slices through the earth, similar to the diagrams in this chapter. Chapter 13 explains what a finite-difference model is. It is a simple program to use, yet powerful. This is a steady-state model in which the potentiometric head along one or more of its boundaries is entered. The output is a flow net that illustrates the potential distribution within the earth as well as some illustrative flow paths. The model has an animation feature that allows the user to compare the relative rates of ground-water flow along different flow paths. Both isotropic and anisotropic aquifers can be modeled, and it is simple to account for heterogeneities.

Input to the model is the head distribution along its open boundaries and the horizontal and vertical hydraulic conductivity and porosity for each cell of the model. The model consists of cells in a matrix of vertical columns and horizontal rows. The model can have up to about 5000 cells—for example, 100 columns and 50 rows.

On the disk that accompanies this book is a free student version of FLOWNET called FLOWNETLT. It is the same as the full program, except that it is limited to a maximum of 200 cells, with 3 to 20 columns and 3 to 13 rows. The program is interactive. Directions on how to load and run the program are in Appendix 15. Once the program is running, the instructions appear on the screen. You turn from one page in the program to the next with the Page Up and Page Down keys on the keyboard. If you simply page through all seven pages of the program, there is a test case of Tóth's model (Figure 7.3). Once the flow net is on the screen, press Page Up once; then use the Down-arrow key to move the cursor to the line marked "Time steps are not drawn." Press the Right-arrow key, and the line will then read: "Time steps are drawn." Now press the Page Down key, and the flow net will reappear with little dots on the flow lines. Press the space bar and the little dots will begin to move. Use the + key to make them move faster and the − key to make them move more slowly. The geometry of the ground-water basin can be defined on page 3 by selecting the number of rows and columns and the length and height of the model. It is a good idea to keep the model to true scale by having the ratio of the number of columns to rows the same as the ratio of length to height. The default model has closed boundaries on all sides but the top. It is possible to have the left and right sides open to flow, but heads need to be specified along any open boundary. The heads are specified on page 4. They can be positive or negative with respect to an arbitrary datum. These fixed heads are displayed at a relative scale along each open boundary. Conductivity values are entered on page 5. The matrix on this page represents the rows and columns. There is a blinking cursor that can be moved with the arrow keys. If you wish to put in a layer of different hydraulic conductivity, move the cursor to the point where the layer starts. Then type any letter except (lowercase) *x*—for example, *b*. You must now enter hydraulic conductivity values and porosity for the new symbol, using the Down-arrow key to move from one value to the next. After you enter the porosity and press the Down-arrow key, the program will return to the hydraulic conductivity matrix. The blinking cursor is at the same place. Type *b* to access the newly defined symbol. Move the cursor with the arrow keys to encompass the area of the different conductivity layer. This can be more than one row thick. When you have entered the position of the layer, press *x* to return the cursor to the default value. Using this method you can enter several layers with different conductivity values. Once the conductivity values are entered, press Page Down twice to obtain a solution.

FLOWNET is available for purchase from the author, C. J. Hemker, at http://www.microfem.com.

Notation

h	Head	z_0	Lowest water-table elevation
g	Gravitational constant	z	Water-table elevation
L	Length of flow system	$\tan \alpha$	Slope of the water table
x	Horizontal distance from lowest point in the water table		

Analysis

A. In the case history of the Dakota aquifer, ground-water withdrawals in South Dakota declined from 370 million gallons per day in 1912 to 80 million gallons per day in 1922. Please advance one or more hypotheses as to why this happened.

B. Install the FLOWNETLT model on your computer. Now run the default model, the Tóth solution, to learn how the model operates. Next install a horizontal lens of high permeability ($K_v = K_h = 100$, and effective porosity = 0.30) in the center of the model. Rerun the model.

1. What is the effect of a permeable lens on the ground-water flow lines?
2. Rerun the model with the lens set at $K_v = K_h =$ 100, and effective porosity = 0.05. How does the change in effective porosity affect the flow field?
3. Rerun the model with the lens set at $K_v = K_h =$ 1000, and effective porosity = 0.30. How does the higher permeability of the lens affect the flow field?
4. Rerun the model with the lens set at $K_v = K_h =$ 0.001, and effective porosity = 0.30. How does a low permeability lens affect the flow field?
5. Rerun the model with the lens set at $K_v = 10$ and $K_h = 100$, and effective porosity = 0.30. How does an anisotropic lens affect the flow field?

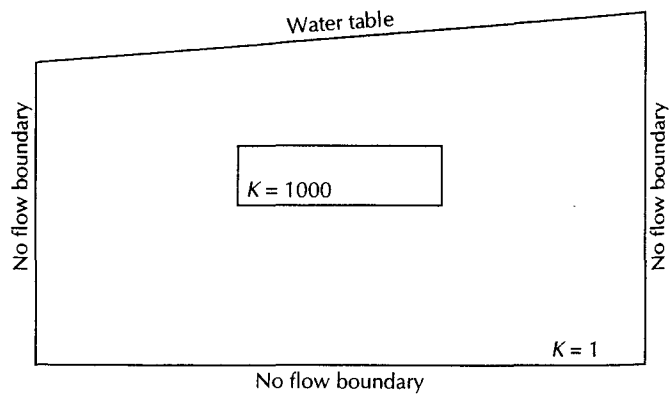
C. Set up FLOWNETLT to model the aquifer in Figure 7.6. The aquifer is isotropic and homogeneous.

1. What type of boundaries are the left, bottom, and right sides of the model?
2. How do you model the water table?
3. If the model is isotropic and homogeneous, does it matter what value of hydraulic conductivity you use?
4. Can you find a stagnation zone in your flow field?

Problems

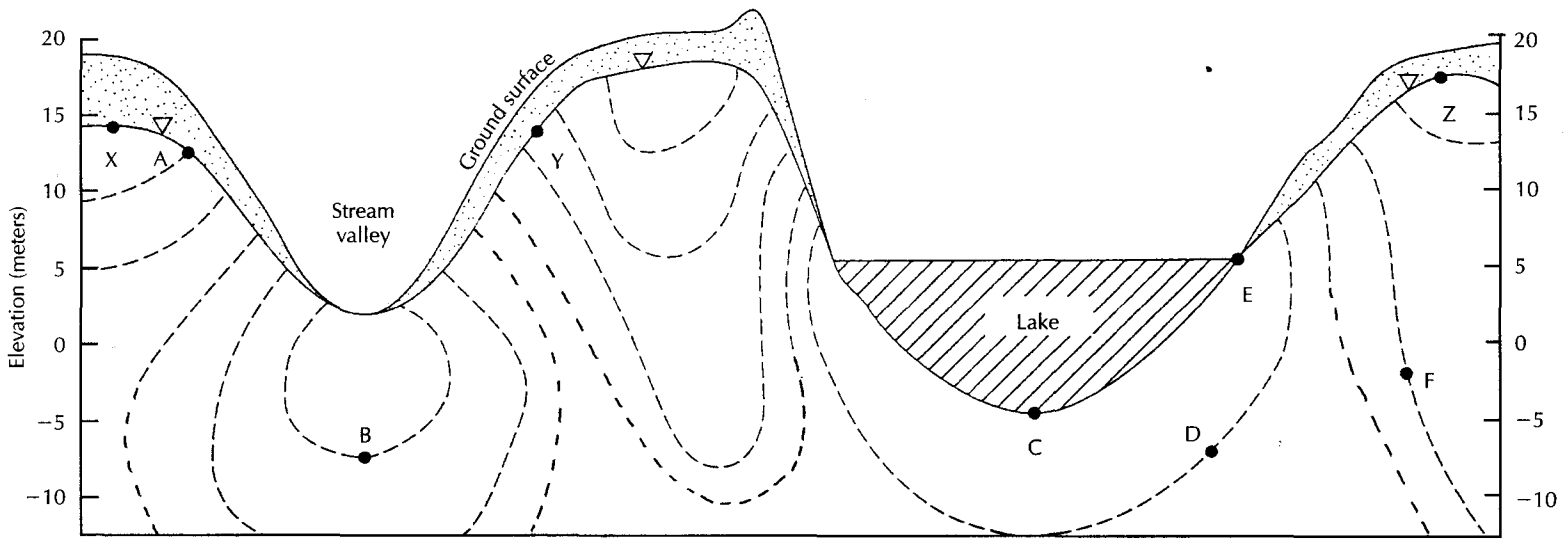
1. Copy Figures 7.34, 7.35, and 7.36. Draw sufficient flow lines on them to illustrate the regional flow patterns. Assume that the aquifers are isotropic so that the flow lines cross the equipotential lines at right angles.
2. Based on the flow fields shown on Figures 7.3 and 7.8, draw a flow net on Figure 7.38.

► FIGURE 7.38
Diagram for Problem 2.



3. Answer the following questions based on Figure 7.39.
   (A) Fill in the heads at the locations labeled on the diagram.
   (B) Find one place on Figure 7.39 where recharge is occurring, and label it *R*.
   (C) Find one place on Figure 7.39 where discharge is occurring, and label it *D*.
   (D) Draw in flow lines on Figure 7.39 starting at points *X*, *Y*, and *Z*.

Location	Elevation Head	Pressure Head	Total Head
A			
B			
C			
D			
E			
F			



▲ FIGURE 7.39
Diagram for Problem 3. The dashed lines are equipotentials. Heads are in meters.

CHAPTER 8

Geology of Ground-Water Occurrence



Let us not forget in this connection that every stream of water whenever it comes from a higher point and flows to a delivery tank through a short length of pipe, not only comes up to its measure but yields, moreover, a surplus; but whenever it comes from a low point, that is, under a less head, and is conducted a tolerable long distance, it will actually shrink in measure by the resistance of its own conduit.

De aquis urbis Romae, libri II, Sextus
Julius Frontinus, ca. A.D. 35–104

8.1 Introduction

Ground water inevitably occurs in geological formations. Knowledge of how these earth materials formed and the changes they have undergone is vital to the hydrogeologist. The earth is basically heterogeneous, and geological training is prerequisite to understanding the distribution of geological materials of varying hydraulic conductivity and porosity.

A ground-water study of an area necessarily includes a review of previous geologic studies. In an area of limited geologic knowledge, a detailed geologic study must be made along with the ground-water study. The hydrogeologist is concerned with the distribution of earth materials as they affect the porosity and hydraulic conductivity of the earth. The results of a geologic study conducted by a ground-water geologist may well differ substantively from a study in the same area by a paleontologist or a petrologist. The methods employed by each would be very similar, however. Rock outcrops would be examined, certain properties noted, and the results mapped. Test borings and geophysical methods would be used to examine the subsurface. Earth materials would be grouped according to

similar properties. The hydrogeologist most often begins with the proper formation names that have been assigned to an area. But these formations may then be grouped or split according to hydraulic characteristics rather than by lithology or fossil species present. For example, some bedding planes in a limestone may have been enlarged by solution, so as to transmit significant amounts of water. A hydrogeologic study might identify these on the basis of outcrop and subsurface data and map their locations. Other geological studies might not even note their occurrence.

A locality almost always has a variety of geologic materials resulting from different processes. For example, the Keweenaw Peninsula of Michigan has Precambrian bedrock famous for copper mineralization in the Portage Lakes Lava Series and Copper Harbor Conglomerate. Some water wells obtain a small supply of water from fractures in the dense bedrock, which has a very low primary permeability. One community obtains a supply from an old mine adit originally constructed to intercept seepage into the lower working levels of the mine. Sediments deposited as glaciofluvial deposits and as deltaic or long-shore deposits in Lake Superior (especially during the Pleistocene, when lake levels were higher) also serve as aquifers for community water supplies (Doonan, Hendrickson, & Byerlay 1970). A hydrogeological study of ground-water exploration in this area must examine a number of different geologic settings. A study focused on bedrock aquifers might locate wells yielding 1 to 15 gal/min (0.06 to 1 L/s) from fractured bedrock. Sand deposited by long-shore currents along Lake Superior can yield up to 100 gal/min (6.3 L/s) to wells. If present, this is a preferred alternative to bedrock wells.

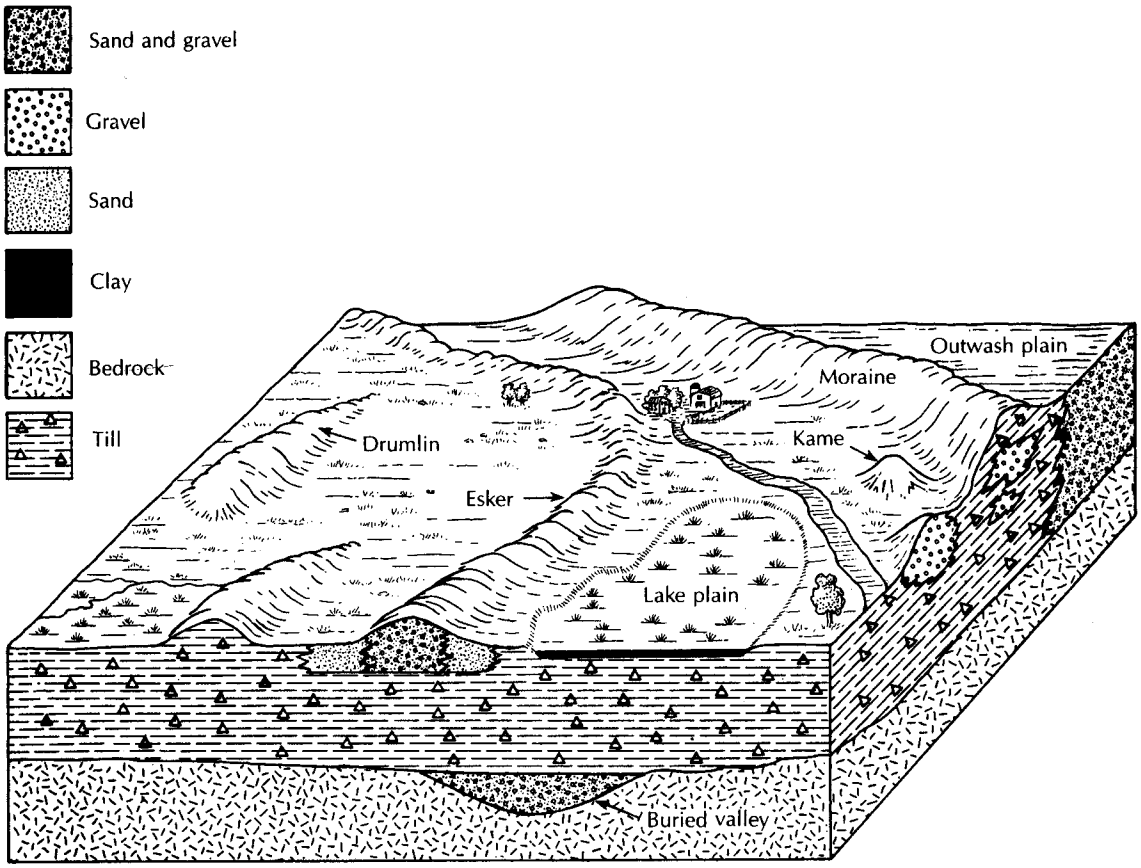
The hydrogeologist should consider all alternatives before selecting one or more sites for detailed exploration. The preliminary survey usually consists of examination of air photos, topographic and geologic maps, and logs and reports of existing wells and then a "walking survey" of the area. This is followed by detailed study using methods such as test borings, fracture-trace analyses, and geophysical surveys. If the results of the detailed study are favorable, one or more test wells are usually installed and pumping tests made.

Hydrogeologic studies are also made to evaluate the suitability of a site for such uses as sanitary landfills, land treatment of wastewater, seepage ponds for wastewater disposal and spray irrigation of wastewater, or nuclear power plant siting. The basic methods of study and evaluation are similar. However, the target geologic terrane will differ according to the application. Landfills are usually placed in areas of low-permeability material to minimize the possibility of ground-water pollution. On the other hand, seepage ponds for artificial aquifer recharge would be located in as coarse a material as possible. While this chapter will focus on ground-water as a resource, the basic principles of occurrence are the same, regardless of the application.

8.2 Unconsolidated Aquifers

Materials ranging in texture from fine sand to coarse gravel are capable of being developed into a water-supply well. Material that is well sorted and free from silt and clay is best. The hydraulic conductivities of some deposits of unconsolidated sands and gravels are among the highest of any earth materials. The filterlike nature of many fine- to medium-grain sediments removes such particulate matter as bacteria and viruses, so that epidemiological water quality is usually good. However, dissolved contaminants such as nitrate, chloride, and tetrahydrofuran can travel through most host sediment and rock with little attenuation other than dilution. Unconsolidated materials are also often close to a source of recharge, such as a stream or lake. Shallow, unconsolidated aquifers are in the region of rapid circulation of water—usually in local flow systems.

Unconsolidated deposits range in thickness up to tens of thousands of feet in sedimentary basins such as the Gulf of Mexico. Local well-construction regulations often call



▲ FIGURE 8.1
Distribution of sediments in a glaciated terrane.

for at least 30 ft (10 m) of surface casing to prevent surface water or very shallow ground water from entering a well. In such cases an unconsolidated deposit must extend more than 30 ft below the surface to be useful for a water supply. Even for a domestic well, at least 3 to 6 ft (1 to 2 m) of slotted casing, well screen, or a well point is needed below the minimum casing depth.

8.2.1 Glaciated Terrane

The midcontinental area of North America has been covered a number of times in the past by great sheets of glacier ice. The moving ice eroded and deposited as it waxed and waned across the land surface. As a result, deposits of glacial drift from less than a few feet to scores of feet thick mantle the bedrock. This covering of glacial drift is a potential source of ground water, although the hydrogeology of glaciated areas can be very complex (Figure 8.1).

Glacially related sediments have a wide range of hydraulic conductivity values. Materials carried by the glaciers ranged in size from clay to large boulders. The mode of deposition determined how well the sediment was size-sorted. Glacial till was deposited directly from the glacial ice without significant sorting by running water. As a result, it can contain particles of any size. If the ice held a wide range of particle sizes, so will the till it deposited. Generally the till will have a low hydraulic conductivity, especially if it is clay-rich. However, mountain glaciers, in particular, have deposited some very coarse till materials.

Several studies have resulted in published and unpublished hydraulic conductivity values of glacial till deposits (Norris 1963; Sharp 1984; Hendry 1982; Prudic 1982; Herzog & Morse 1984; Gordon & Huebner 1983). Permeability of glacial tills depends upon the clay content, mode of deposition, and degree of weathering. *Ablation till* is deposited as the ice melts and is typically slightly water-sorted; this should make it more permeable than *basal till*, which is laid down beneath the ice. In one study of the Vandalia Till in Illinois, the hydraulic conductivity was determined by slug tests (Cooper et al. method) (Herzog & Morse 1984). The unaltered basil till had a mean hydraulic conductivity of 1.35×10^{-7} cm/s; the basal till that was weathered and fractured had a mean hydraulic conductivity of 5.86×10^{-6} cm/s; and the weathered ablation till had a mean hydraulic conductivity of 3.81×10^{-5} cm/s. In New York State, a homogeneous till was tested that contained 50% clay, 27% silt, 10% sand, and 13% gravel (Prudic 1982). The mean hydraulic conductivity as determined from slug tests (Hvorslev method) was 2×10^{-8} cm/s and ranged from 1×10^{-8} to 3×10^{-8} cm/s. Falling-head permeameter tests on the same till had an average vertical hydraulic conductivity of 6.2×10^{-8} cm/s and horizontal hydraulic conductivity of 3.8×10^{-8} cm/s. A till that consisted of an upper weathered zone and an unweathered lower zone was studied in Alberta (Hendry 1982). The unweathered till had a hydraulic conductivity of about 10^{-8} cm/s. The weathered till had both small-scale fractures with a hydraulic conductivity of 10^{-7} cm/s and large-scale fractures with a hydraulic conductivity of 10^{-5} cm/s. In Wisconsin, a till that averaged 83% clay and silt had a mean hydraulic conductivity of 3×10^{-8} cm/s on the basis of laboratory tests (Gordon & Huebner 1983). However, slug tests in the field yielded a hydraulic conductivity of 1×10^{-5} cm/s. This till is highly fractured and the matrix conductivity as revealed by the permeameter test is much less than the bulk conductivity, which is measured by the slug test. Other reports of till permeability indicate that it ranges from as little as 1.9×10^{-9} to as high as 2.3×10^{-3} cm/s (Norris 1963; Sharp 1984). In most cases, if both laboratory and field tests are performed on the same till, the field test indicates one to three orders of magnitude more permeability. The reason for this is that the field tests measure the properties of a larger sample of the material, which may have fractures or sand and silt seams with higher conductivity values than the clay matrix (Stephenson, Fleming, & Mickelson 1988).

In a study of ground-water flow in a clayey till in Ontario, it was found that the till was fractured near the surface. Even with the fracturing, the bulk hydraulic conductivity of the till as determined by slug tests using the Hvorslev method was in the range of 10^{-7} to 10^{-8} cm/s. Active weathering along the fractures was noted to a depth of 5.7 m in test pits, and tritium dating of ground water showed that water to depths as great as 12 m was no older than 40 y. This suggests that water is actively circulating through the fractures to depths as great as 12 m (Ruland, Cherry, & Feenstra 1991).

In a study in central Iowa it was found that the hydraulic conductivity of a weathered till was 3×10^{-4} to 5×10^{-4} cm/s, which was three orders of magnitude greater than the unweathered till. This till was quite sandy, having an average of 48% sand, 37% silt, and 15% clay (Jones, Lemar, & Tsai 1992).

Glacial-lacustrine sediments have hydraulic conductivity values similar to those of tills. Lake Michigan bottom sediments were shown to have a hydraulic conductivity ranging from 2×10^{-5} to 5×10^{-8} cm/s (Bradbury & Taylor 1984). Fine-grained glacial-lacustrine sediments in southern Indiana had lab permeability values ranging from 3.3×10^{-6} to 2.7×10^{-8} cm/s and averaged 5.9×10^{-7} cm/s (Fetter 1985). A sandy lacustrine layer at the same site had a higher hydraulic conductivity of 3.3×10^{-4} cm/s.

Glacial drift may also have been well sorted by running water—usually the meltwater from the glacier. Such sediments, called glacial outwash, can be seen forming in the braided stream deposits of meltwater streams draining modern mountain glaciers. The coarse

gravel is close to the terminus, sand is deposited farther downstream, and the silt and clay are carried away to be deposited far downstream in lakes or the ocean. Coarser, water-sorted glacial materials can have very high hydraulic conductivities. The general range for these sediments is 2.8 to 2800 ft/day (10^{-3} to 1 cm/s). The materials with lower hydraulic conductivities are not as well sorted. Some silty outwash materials have hydraulic conductivities as low as 2.8×10^{-2} ft/day (10^{-5} cm/s). Well-sorted glacial deposits may be found associated with recognizable geomorphic features such as moulin kames, kame terraces, and eskers. However, these features are topographically high and, except for the base, may be unsaturated (Figure 8.1). If they are buried, then they can be excellent but limited sources of water. Such buried gravel deposits can sometimes be located by electrical resistivity methods. Outwash plains and valley-train deposits are not as obvious geomorphic features, although they are often found near terminal moraines. Outwash deposits are usually well-sorted sand or gravel or mixtures of both. Some glacial outwash materials are tens of feet thick and make prolific aquifers. The city of Tacoma, Washington, obtains ground water from outwash deposits in the valley of the North Fork of the Green River. Six production wells were tested at rates of 7500 to 8600 gal/min (470 to 540 L/s) with total drawdowns of 1.9 to 7.3 ft (0.58 to 2.23 m). *Specific capacities** as high as 4400 gal/min/ft (0.9 m^2/s) were obtained (Carr 1976).

A key mark of glaciated terrane is the variability of hydraulic conductivity. A single test boring might reveal sequences of glacial deposits with a variation of hydraulic conductivity of 280 ft/day (10^{-1} cm/s) for well-sorted glacial sands to 0.003 ft/day (10^{-7} cm/s) for interbedded tills or clays. Figure 8.2 shows glacial stratigraphic cross sections for three areas in the Mesabi Iron Range of Minnesota with a high potential for ground-water development (Winter 1973).

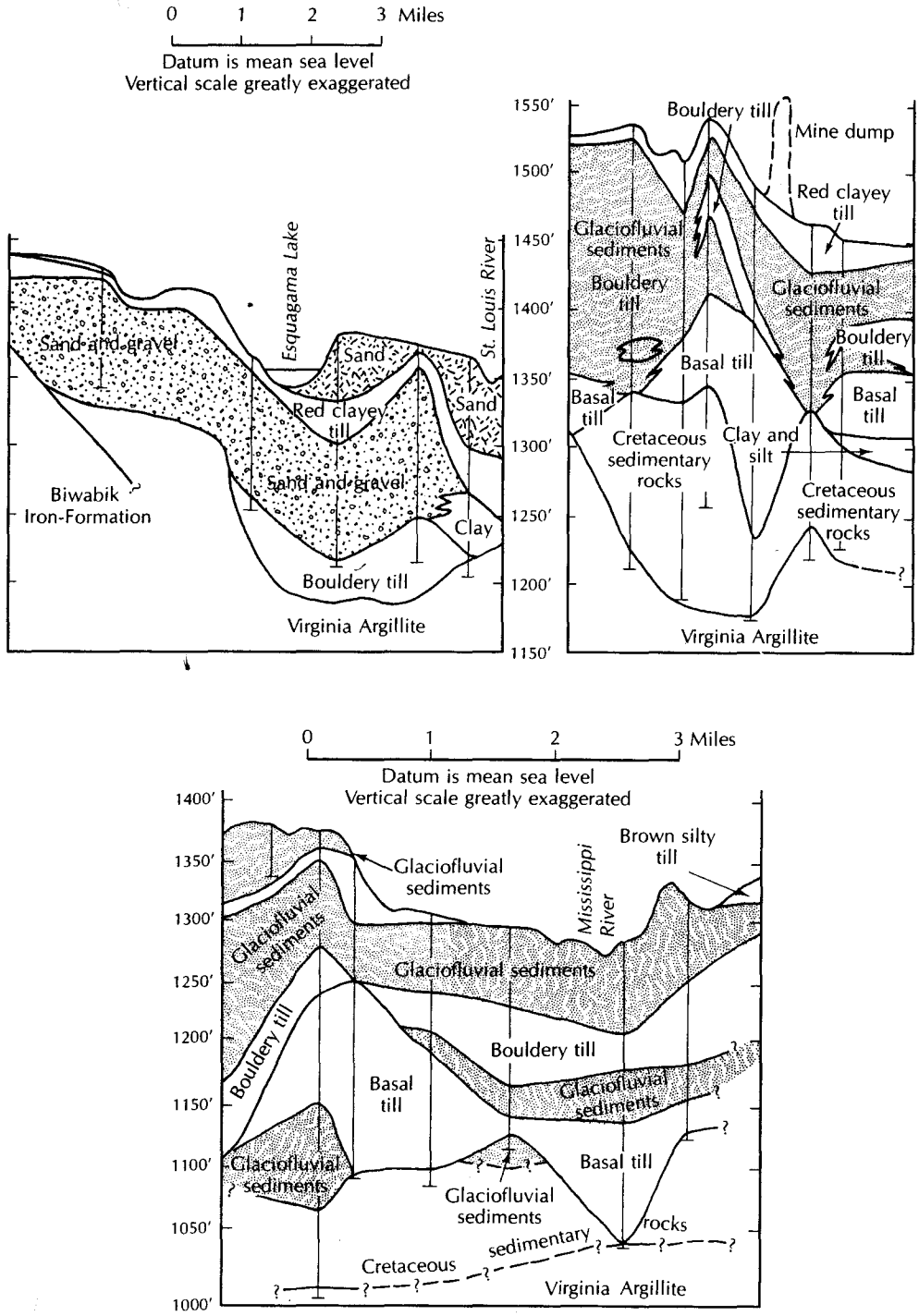
During the Pleistocene, meltwaters from continental glaciers flowed across much of the North American landscape. This was true even in areas south of the limit of glaciation. These rivers carried large volumes of sediment. Well-sorted glaciofluvial sediments can provide excellent supplies of ground water.

The pre-Pleistocene landscape of the midcontinent was a bedrock erosional surface. Deeply incised rivers drained the land with a well-developed drainage network. The glacial sculpting of the North American landscape resulted in many changes of the preglacial drainage patterns. Many of the deep bedrock valleys were filled with sediment. Layers of till, lacustrine silts, and clays alternate with glaciofluvial deposits. Modern rivers follow the courses of some of the buried channels, whereas other former channels lie inconspicuously beneath the farmland of the Midwest. The courses of buried bedrock valleys can be determined by use of a number of remote-sensing and geophysical methods along with test drilling. In one study in Kansas (Denne et al. 1984), tonal patterns on springtime *LANDSAT* imagery and winter/summer anomalies in soil temperature were used along with seismic refraction, earth resistivity, and gravity measurements to define the channels of two bedrock valleys that had been filled with glacial drift. Test drilling was used to confirm the results of the remote techniques.

Hydraulic barriers may be present in Pleistocene-buried valley aquifers. These barriers may be parallel to or across the trend of the buried valley aquifer. Their presence may be determined by aquifer test analysis as well as evaluation of hydraulic head relationships found in piezometers (Shaver & Pusc 1992).

---

*The specific capacity of a well is the yield divided by the drawdown of the water level from the nonpumping level. The units are thus flow-distance or $m^3/s/m$ (m^2/s) or gal/min/ft.; 1 gal/min/ft $= 2.07 \times 10^{-4}$ m^2/s.



▲ FIGURE 8.2
Complex glacial stratigraphy in the Mesabi Iron Range, Minnesota. Sand and gravel and glaciofluvial sediments are potential aquifers. *Source: T. C. Winter, U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2029-A, 1973.*

Case Study: Hydrogeology of a Buried Valley Aquifer at Dayton, Ohio

There is a classic buried valley running beneath the city of Dayton, Ohio. One of the factors promoting the growth of Dayton has been the ready availability of a source of high-quality ground water (Norris & Spieker 1966). Permeable layers of glacial drift in the bedrock valley furnish water in large quantities to wells. In turn, these are recharged by infiltration of precipitation, as well as by water from the Miami River and its tributaries.

The bedrock in the area is the Richmond Shale of Ordovician age. During the Tertiary, an erosional surface developed, which was cleft by deeply incised rivers. During the late Tertiary, the main river draining the area was the Teays. This drainage system cut a number of valleys in the bedrock. Early Pleistocene glaciation dammed the rivers, so that lacustrine silts are found filling many parts of the Teays system. During the Kansan-Illinosian interglacial period, a radically different drainage system, the Deep Stage, prevailed in southwestern Ohio. Bedrock valleys were deeply entrenched during this time. The Deep Stage Valley passed through the present site of Dayton. Glacial processes of Illinosian and Wisconsinan age filled the Deep Stage Valley with layers of till and outwash. The character of the sediment is quite heterogeneous, as revealed by a test hole in the bedrock valley south of Dayton (Figure 8.3). The valley-train gravel aquifers alternate with confining till sheets. The aquifer layers beneath the till sheets are recharged where the till is missing because of either nondeposition or river-channel erosion. A cross section of the valley just south of Dayton shows the upper and lower aquifers separated by a discontinuous till sheet (Figure 8.4). The potentiometric surface in the lower aquifer lies below the bed of the Miami River. The potentiometric surface rises sharply near the river when the discharge and stage of the Miami River rise. This indicates a good hydraulic connection between the river and the aquifer.

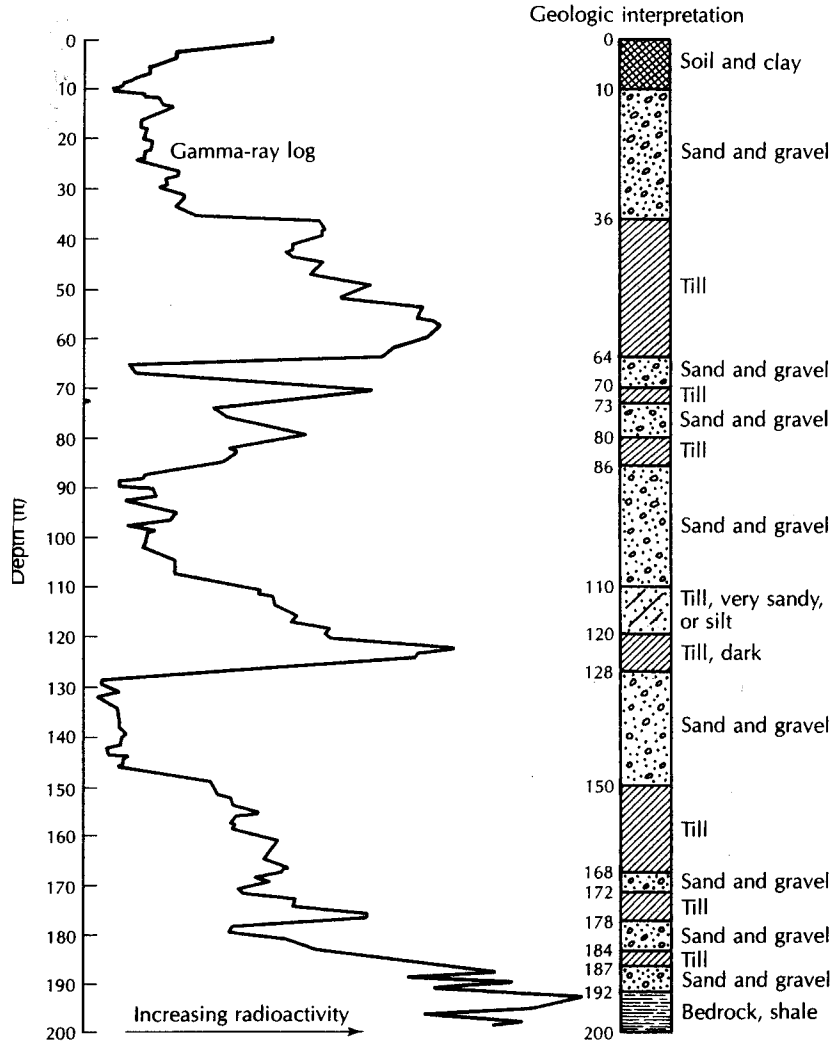
The Rohrers Island Well Field is located on an island in the Mad River, a tributary of the Miami River. The upper sand and gravel aquifer yields up to 90 million gallons per day (3940 L/s). The upper aquifer, which is up to 65 ft (20 m) thick, is artificially recharged with river water that floods onto about 20 ac (8 ha) of infiltration lagoons during periods when the river turbidity is low. The lagoon bottoms are annually cleaned of silt and clay. This is a classic example of induced stream infiltration used as a water resource management technique. Virtually all of the water pumped from this aquifer comes indirectly from the river. The filtration through the sediments reduces turbidity and removes pathogens.

8.2.2 Alluvial Valleys

Flowing rivers deposit sediment, generally termed **alluvium.** During periods of flooding, alluvium is deposited in the channel as well as in the floodplain. As the flood peak passes, flow velocities start to drop, the energy available to transport sediment decreases, and deposition begins. Coarse gravel is deposited in the stream channel, sand and fine gravel form natural levees along the banks, and silt and clay come to rest on the floodplain. Point bars are formed by deposition on the inside of a bend in the river. Point-bar formation is not limited to floods.

The alluvium may be reworked by a meandering stream, even during quiescent periods for the river. As the channel swings back and forth across the floodplain, point-bar deposits of sand and coarse gravel are left behind. If the stream is aggrading, the general land level subsiding, or both, the alluvial deposits will thicken with time (Figure 8.5).

Rivers draining glaciers, either modern or Pleistocene, have very heavy sediment loads. Braided streams and gravel bars in the river are typical and connote the aggrading nature of such rivers. Thick deposits of sand, gravel, or mixtures of both are formed.

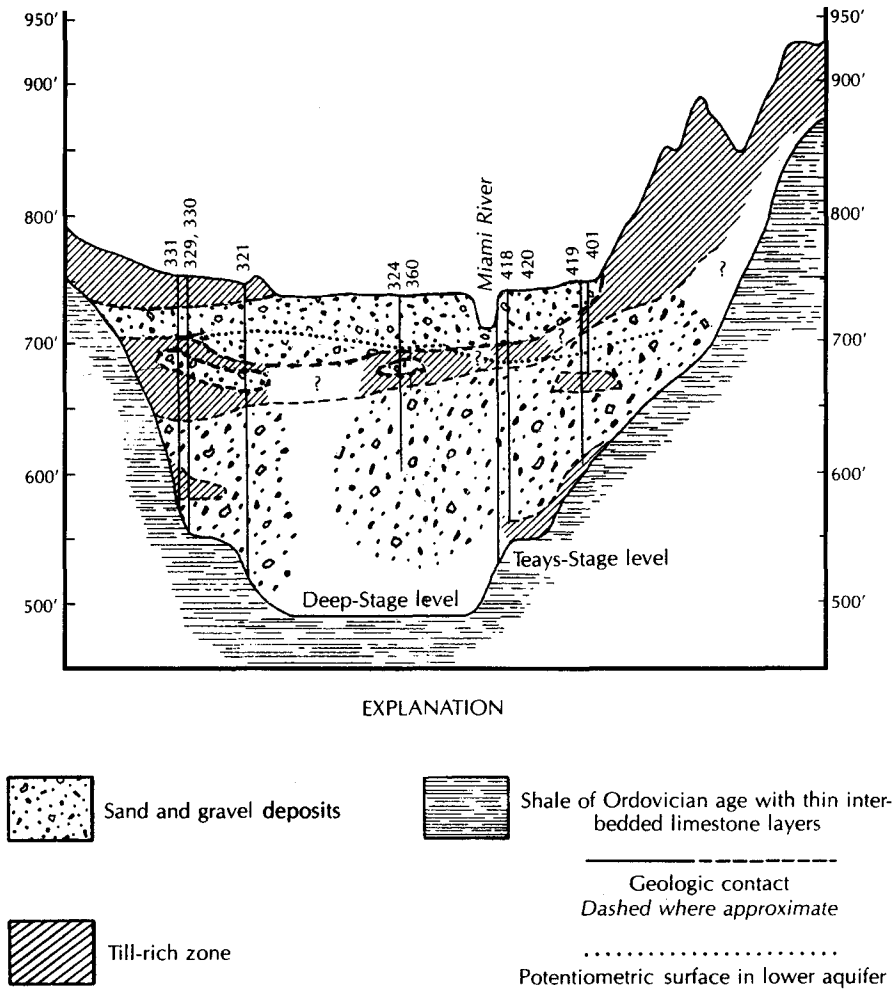


▲ FIGURE 8.3
Well log and gamma-ray log of uncased test hole in glacial deposits filling a buried bedrock valley south of Dayton, Ohio. *Source: S. E. Norris & A. M. Spieker, U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1808, 1966.*

Downcutting by a river through previously deposited sediment can form terraces on the sides of the lower-stage floodplain. Many modern rivers, even some outside of glaciated regions, have terraces formed of Pleistocene-age gravel deposits.

Alluvial valleys can be excellent sources of water. There are zones of gravel in old channel and point-bar deposits with a very high conductivity. The task of the hydrogeologist is to find these gravel zones, since silt and clay floodplain deposits may also be present, obscuring their locations. A knowledge of fluvial processes is helpful in this regard. Surface geophysical surveys can often be used to locate sand and gravel deposits where they are surrounded by cohesive sediments. Test drilling is usually necessary to confirm the preliminary conclusions of the hydrogeologist and geophysicist.

In evaluating the water-yielding potential of stream-terrace deposits, remember that erosion, as well as deposition, can result in terrace formation. If a terrace represents an erosional surface on bedrock, it is not underlain by potentially permeable alluvium.

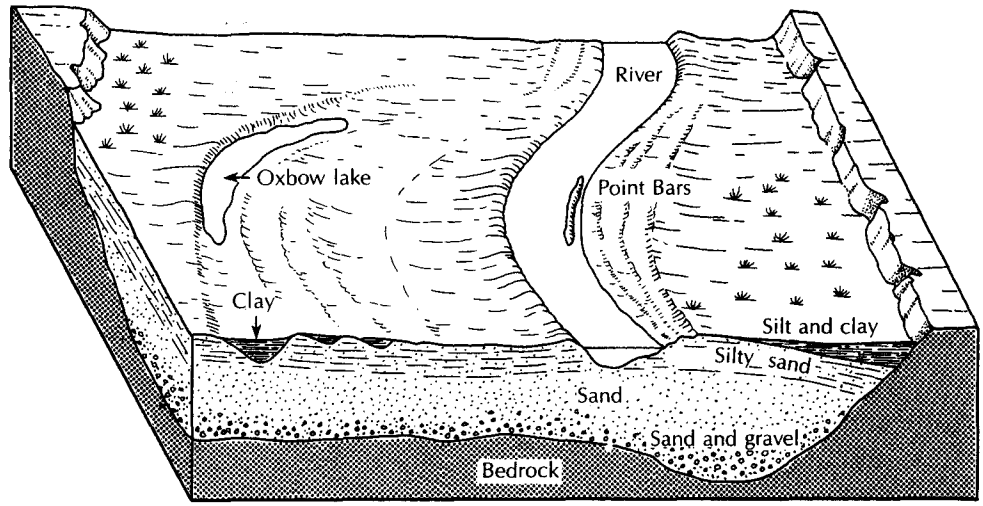


▲ FIGURE 8.4
Cross section of buried bedrock valley at Dayton, Ohio, showing upper (water-table) aquifer and lower (confined) aquifer. *Source: Modified from S. E. Norris & A. M. Spieker, U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1808, 1966.*

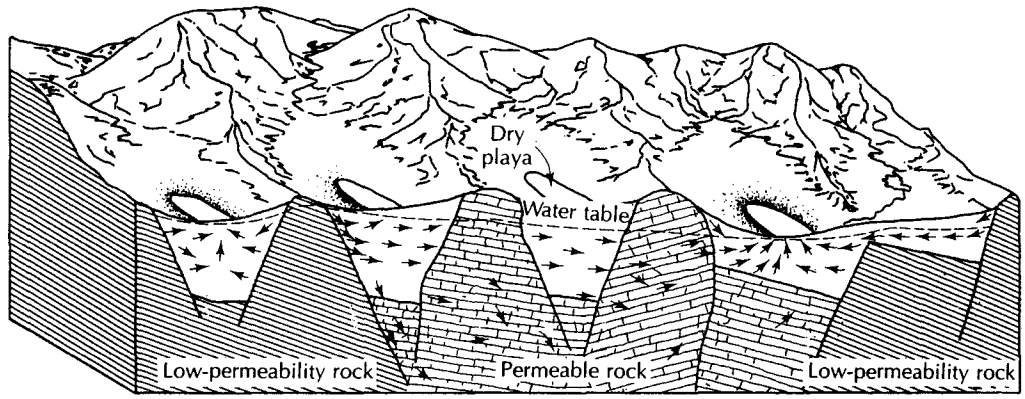
Although the ground water in an alluvial valley is most likely to be recharged by rainfall and leakage from streams, one needs to be aware that streams are often ground-water discharge zones. Panno and others (1994) studied the ground-water chemistry of a bedrock valley aquifer in Illinois. Based on the ground-water chemistry, they concluded that in parts of the bedrock valley system the alluvial aquifer was recharged by upward leakage from the underlying bedrock.

8.2.3 Alluvium in Tectonic Valleys

Many major valley systems are products of tectonic activity rather than of fluvial or glacial erosion. During mountain-building episodes, the uplift of mountain masses will result in intermontane basins being formed. Fault-block valleys can also be created by down-dropping of large crustal pieces along faults. Erosion of the mountains creates sediment that is carried into the valleys, forming talus slopes, alluvial fans, and alluvial and lacustrine deposits. These sediments can be very coarse, with high hydraulic conductivities—alluvial fan gravels



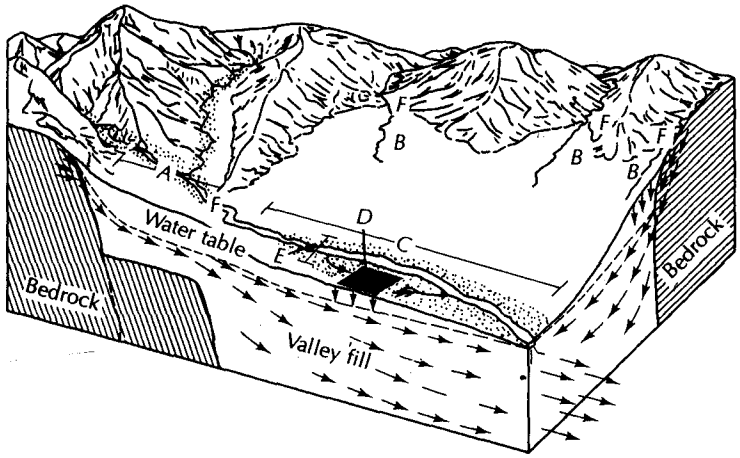
▲ FIGURE 8.5
Distribution of alluvium in a flowing river.



▲ FIGURE 8.6
Common ground-water flow systems in tectonic valleys filled with sediment. Basins bounded by impermeable rock may form local or single-valley flow systems. If the interbasin rock is permeable, regional flow systems may form. In closed basins, ground water discharges into playas, from which it is discharged by evaporation and transpiration by phreatophytes. *Source: Modified from T. E. Eakin, D. Price, & J. R. Harrill, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 813-G, 1976.*

and channel deposits, for example. Lacustrine clays, on the other hand, can be fine, with low conductivity. Gravel aquifers confined by lacustrine sediment are quite typical of such basins.

Intermontane valleys of the interior basins of southeastern California and the Great Basin area of Nevada and Utah are typically tectonic. The unconsolidated sediments in the basins may be part of either local or regional flow systems (Figure 8.6). In regions that are semiarid to arid, ground water is recharged by precipitation in the mountains. Bedrock beneath the mountains may receive direct recharge and then feed the valley-fill sediments. Streams originating in the mountains may also lose water to the alluvium when the flow goes across the valley bottoms (Figure 8.7).



A, Gaining reach, net gain from ground-water inflow, although in localized areas stream may recharge wet meadows along floodplain. Hydraulic continuity is maintained between stream and ground-water reservoir. Pumping can affect streamflow by inducing stream recharge or by diverting ground-water inflow that would have contributed to streamflow.

B, Minor tributary streams, may be perennial in the mountains but become losing ephemeral streams on the alluvial fans. Pumping will not affect the flow of these streams because hydraulic continuity is not maintained between streams and the principal groundwater reservoir. These streams are the only ones present in arid basins.

C, Losing reach, net loss in flow due to surface-water diversions and seepage to ground water. Local sections may lose or gain depending on hydraulic gradient between stream and ground-water reservoir. Gradient may reverse during certain times of the year. Hydraulic continuity is maintained between stream and groundwater reservoir. Pumping can affect streamflow by inducing recharge or by diverting irrigation return flows.

D, Irrigated area, some return flow from irrigation water recharges ground water.

E, Floodplain, hydrologic regimen of this area dominated by the river. Water table fluctuates in response to changes in river stage and diversions. Area commonly covered by phreatophytes (shown by random dot patterns).

F, Approximate point of maximum stream flow.

▲ FIGURE 8.7
Ground-water–surface-water relationships in valley-fill aquifers located in arid and semiarid climates. *Source: T. E. Eakin, D. Price, & J. R. Harrill, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 813-G, 1976.*

The water table is generally closer to the surface in the lower elevations of intermontane basins than it is at the edges next to the mountains, so wells in the former locations would have a smaller pumping lift—hence, lower energy use. The intermontane deposits typically slope downward from the mountain flanks. Beneath the upper parts of alluvial fans, the depth to ground water may be hundreds of feet. Surface streams flowing onto high alluvial fans may disappear as they lose water to the coarse sediment.

In the Great Basin region of the western United States, saturated valley-fill deposits over 1000 ft (300 m) thick are common in the large valleys (Eakin, Price, & Harrill 1976). Artesian conditions are often found in the lower elevations of these basins. Pleistocene lacustrine clays near the surface overlying coarse alluvium create this situation.

In tectonic valleys, ground-water outflow can occur by transpiration, evaporation from surface water or saturated soils, spring discharge, and/or underflow into adjacent basins. Water pumped and used consumptively for irrigation is also an outflow. If the basin is topographically closed, there is no stream discharge. In such a case, evapotranspiration and underflow are the natural drainage methods.

Wells in tectonic valleys should be located where the aquifer material is coarse, the depth to water is not great, and a source of recharge water is available. These criteria are

often met in well fields located near modern rivers. However, there may not be any surface streams near areas where wells are needed. Artesian aquifers overlain by thick lacustrine deposits may be too deep to find by surficial geophysical methods, such as electrical resistivity. Test drilling may be the only recourse in such cases, albeit an expensive one. Ground-water quality in tectonic valleys can have significant spatial variation. In general, ground water that is not actively circulating may be high in dissolved solids. Shallow ground water, with a high rate of direct evaporation, may also have high salinity. In the Great Basin area, individual wells have been developed with yields of up to 8600 gal/min (540 L/s) with specific capacities of up to 3000 gal/min/ft (0.6 m^2/s). These are prodigious wells. The average yield is lower but still substantial at 1000 gal/min (65 L/s) (Eakin, Price, & Harrill 1976).

Case Study: Tectonic Valleys—San Bernardino Area

The San Bernardino area is in the upper Santa Ana Valley of the coastal area of southern California (Dutcher & Garrett 1963). The valley is tectonic in origin and bounded on the north, east, and south by mountains of consolidated rocks. The alluvial valley is subdivided into separate ground-water basins by faults in the alluvial materials, which are barriers to ground-water movement. The Bunker Hill Basin has mountains on three sides and the San Jacinto Fault on the fourth side (Figure 8.8).

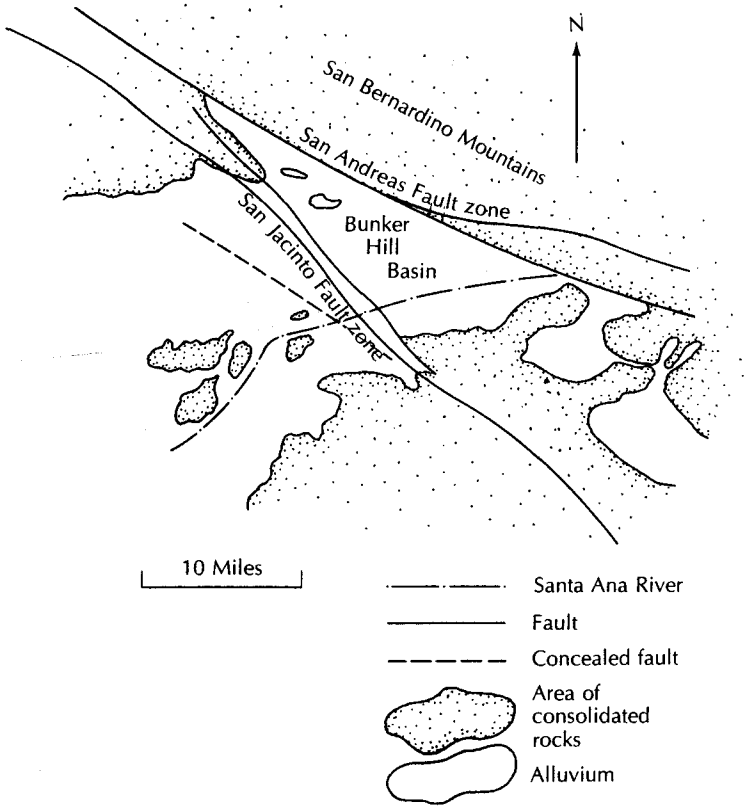
The alluvium in the basin consists of Pleistocene-age deposits overlain by Recent alluvium, river-channel deposits, and dune sands. The alluvium is from 690 to 1400 ft (210 to 425 m) thick at the center of the basin. The older deposits consist of alluvial fans, terrace deposits, and stream channels. The deposits can be highly permeable, but facies of low permeability exist and form confining layers. Faulting cuts the older alluvium, and the faults are generally barriers to ground-water movement. They may impede ground-water flow by (1) offsetting of gravel beds against clay layers, (2) folding of impermeable beds upward along the fault, (3) cementation by carbonate formation, and (4) formation of clayey gouge.

Recent alluvium includes highly permeable river-channel deposits through which much of the ground-water recharge occurs. They underlie active and abandoned stream channels and are above the water table, for the most part. The Recent floodplain material is less permeable than the stream channels. It is 50 to 100 ft (15 to 30 m) thick and is not known to be faulted.

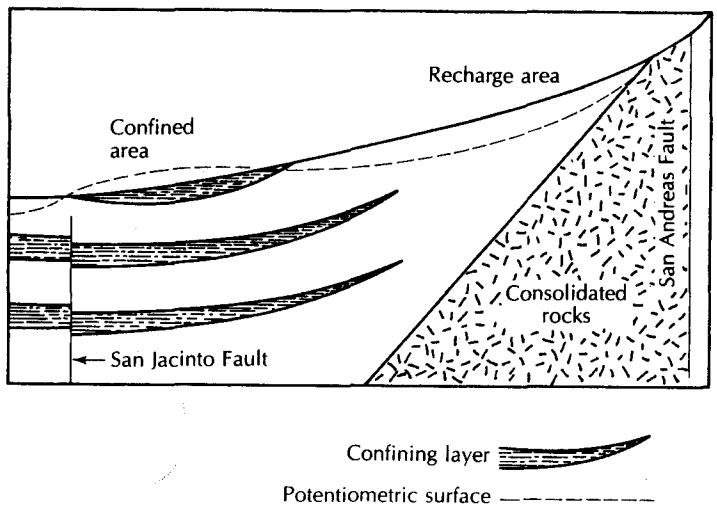
The lower parts of the valley floor receive 12 to 17 in. (30 to 43 cm) of precipitation per year. Owing to orographic effects, precipitation in the San Bernardino Mountains to the east is as much as 28 in. (71 cm). Runoff from the mountains flows into the Santa Ana River and its tributaries. In the upper reaches of the basin, the river is a losing stream. Ground-water recharge by floodwater takes place through the permeable river-channel deposits.

A cross section of the Bunker Hill area is shown in Figure 8.9. Ground-water recharge takes place in the upper parts of the basin and flows toward lower elevations. Well hydrographs on the upstream side of the San Jacinto Fault show that the head in a shallow well is lower than in deeper wells, indicating upward flow. In the San Bernardino area, the younger alluvium is confining, and when wells were first drilled in the area they were flowing.

At one time, considerable ground-water outflow occurred from the Bunker Hill Basin in the area where the Santa Ana River crosses the San Jacinto Fault Zone (Colton Narrows). Although the fault zone does not offset the Recent alluvium, it forces deeper water to move upward. Except for Recent river-channel deposits beneath the Santa Ana River, the surficial



▲ FIGURE 8.8
Location of the Bunker Hill ground-water basin in the San Bernardino area of southern California. *Source: Modified from L. C. Dutcher & A. A. Garrett, U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1419, 1963.*

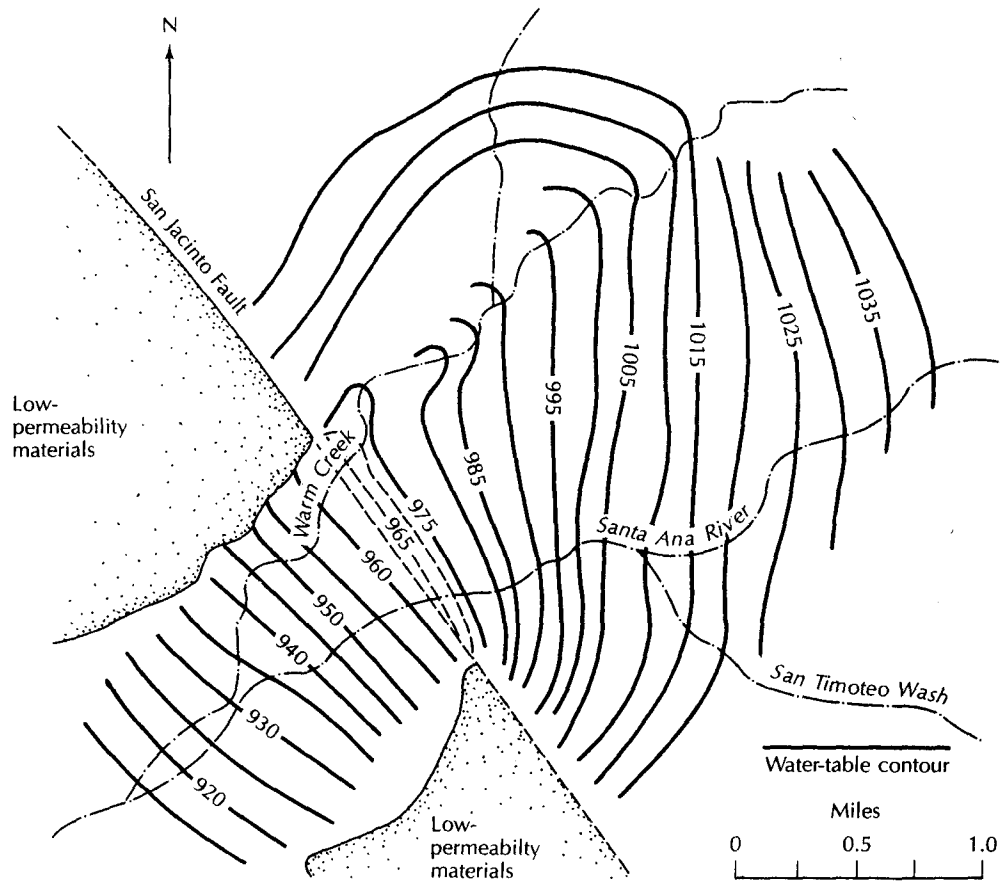


▲ FIGURE 8.9
Cross section through the unconsolidated deposits of the Bunker Hill ground-water basin. The section is along the course of the Santa Ana River, which provides recharge to the aquifers. *Source: Modified from L. C. Dutcher & A. A. Garrett, U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1419, 1963.*

deposits are, for the most part, impermeable. At the turn of the century, large springs made this area marshy, and ponds were present. Heavy ground-water withdrawals for irrigation have lowered the water table and reduced the amount of outflow. Figure 8.10 shows the water-table contours where the Santa Ana River crosses the San Jacinto Fault as they existed in 1939. Ground-water contours northeast (upstream) of the fault indicate that ground water is moving toward the surface. Well hydrographs in the area also indicate upward ground-water movement. The water-table contours on either side of the fault indicate a very steep gradient across the fault zone.

By the 1970s the basin had undergone extensive ground-water overdrafts. The water level in the swampy area along the Santa Ana River dropped 50 to 150 ft (15 to 46 m) below the land surface. This drained the wetland, and the land became dry. Extensive urban development occurred, with the site of the former swamp becoming downtown San Bernardino.

A computer model of the ground-water basin was developed (Hardt & Hutchinson 1978). This model predicted that if ground-water pumpage were to be reduced or natural recharge were to increase, ground-water levels could rise. In the first edition of this book the author pointed out that this would be especially severe in the San Jacinto Fault area,



▲ FIGURE 8.10
Water-table contours in March 1939 of shallow deposits at the Colton Narrows area, where the Santa Ana River crosses the San Jacinto Fault. The contours of 970 and 965 are shown, but the exact positions were not known. *Source: L. C. Dutcher & A. A. Garrett, U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1419, 1963.*

which is the point of natural ground-water discharge from the Bunker Hill Basin, and indicated that "Abandoned and forgotten wells could begin to flow again. Basements would be flooded and soils waterlogged." This prediction came true. By 1982, several years of above-average precipitation in the Bunker Hill Basin resulted in ground-water levels that were high enough to cause severe problems. Basements were flooded; abandoned wells began to flow (one beneath a building split the foundation); and springs at the land surface made a new water hazard in the fifth fairway of the San Bernardino Golf Club (Hoffman 1983). An even greater fear was that the high ground-water levels might result in the failure of building foundations owing to soil liquefaction during an earthquake (Hoffman 1983).

The U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) made a detailed study of the potential for liquefaction and found that an earthquake on the San Jacinto Fault with a magnitude of 7.0 on the Richter scale might trigger liquefaction under much of greater San Bernardino if the water table was within 30 ft (10 m) of the land surface (McGreevy 1987). Meanwhile, the municipal authorities had made plans to install dewatering wells to lower the water table in the downtown area. About the time that the USGS report was released—and before the dewatering wells could be installed—nature did an about-face. The wet period ended and ground-water levels began to fall (Sears 1987). Within a few years Southern California was in the grip of a severe drought. Between 1986 and 1990, ground-water levels in the San Bernardino area declined as much as 67 ft, and high ground-water problems were a thing of the past (Atwood 1990)—that is, until the next wet period.

8.3 Lithified Sedimentary Rocks

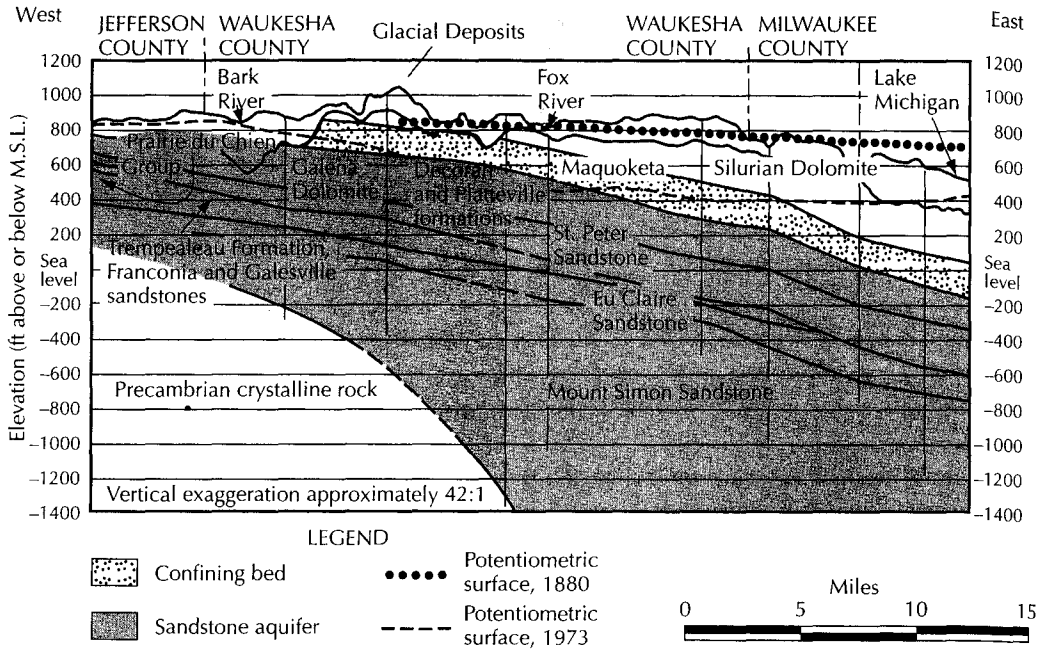
Clastic sedimentary rocks are typically composed of silicate, carbonate, or clay minerals. Chemically precipitated sedimentary rocks are primarily limestone, dolomite, salt, or gypsum. Coal and lignite can also be considered to be sedimentary deposits, with the original sediments being organic matter.

Sedimentary rock sequences were formed with younger beds laid down upon older ones. The original sediments may have been subaqueous or terrestrial. Rarely do sedimentary rocks occur as a single unit; there is typically a sequence of many beds. The original layered sequence may be undisturbed or it may be extensively folded and faulted.

Case Study: Sandstone Aquifer of Northeastern Illinois–Southeastern Wisconsin

The sandstone bedrock aquifer of northeastern Illinois–southeastern Wisconsin comprises formations of Cambrian and Ordovician age, primarily sandstones and dolomites. The formations strike north–south and dip to the east. The aquifer is confined by the Maquoketa Shale (Figure 8.11) and makes a classic confined artesian system in clastic rock. The aquifer extends from the area north of Milwaukee, Wisconsin, to south and west of the Chicago, Illinois, area (Young 1976; Fetter 1981a; Visocky, Sherrill, & Cartwright 1985).

The Maquoketa Shale has been eroded away in the western part of the area so that the upper formations of the sandstone aquifer can be recharged directly (Figure 8.12). The average direct recharge rate to the sandstone aquifer in Illinois is estimated to be 20,400 gal/day/mi^2 (30 m^3/day/km^2) (Visocky, Sherrill, & Cartwright 1985).



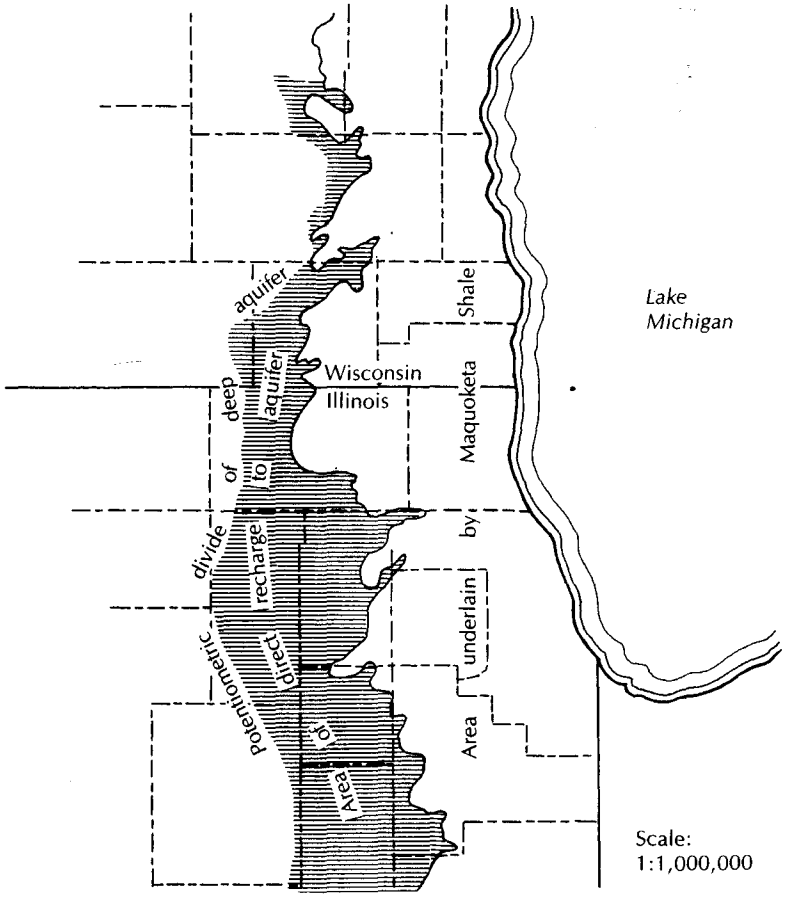
▲ FIGURE 8.11
Artesian flow system of southeastern Wisconsin. *Source: U.S. Geological Survey.*

In the area where the aquifer is confined by the Maquoketa Shale, the amount of recharge across the shale is determined by the thickness and vertical hydraulic conductivity of the shale and the hydraulic gradient across it.

Before the sandstone aquifer was developed, there was a small amount of recharge in the western part of the region, with lateral flow to the east and upward flow from the deep aquifers to the overlying shallow aquifer in the vicinity of Lake Michigan. Figure 8.13A shows the potentiometric surface of this aquifer system prior to development. When wells were first drilled in eastern Wisconsin the artesian head in the sandstone aquifer was 130 to 200 ft (40 to 60 m) above the level of Lake Michigan. As water was pumped from the deep sandstone aquifer, the potentiometric surface fell and the upward gradient in the eastern part of the aquifer disappeared. Eventually, substantial downward hydraulic gradients were developed, and the amount of downward recharge across the Maquoketa Shale increased. The maximum rate of recharge across the shale layer in Illinois is estimated to be about 3000 gal/day/mi^2 (4.4 m^3/day/km^2) in Illinois (Visocky, Sherrill, & Cartwright 1985) and 4200 gal/day/mi^2 (6.1 m^3/day/km^2) in Wisconsin (Fetter 1981a).

The practical sustained yield of the sandstone aquifer in Illinois has been estimated to be 65 million gallons (246,000 m^3) per day (Visocky, Sherrill, & Cartwright 1985). This consists of 50 million gallons (189,240 m^3) a day of direct recharge, 12 million gallons (45,400 m^3) per day of downward leakage across the Maquoketa Shale, and 3 million gallons (11,360 m^3) per day of upward leakage from deeper fresh-water aquifers (Mt. Simon aquifer). In Wisconsin, the practical sustained aquifer yield has been estimated to be 34 million gallons (128,700 m^3) per day—25 million gallons (94,600 m^3) per day of direct recharge and 9 million gallons (34,100 m^3) per day of recharge across the shale layer (Fetter 1981a).

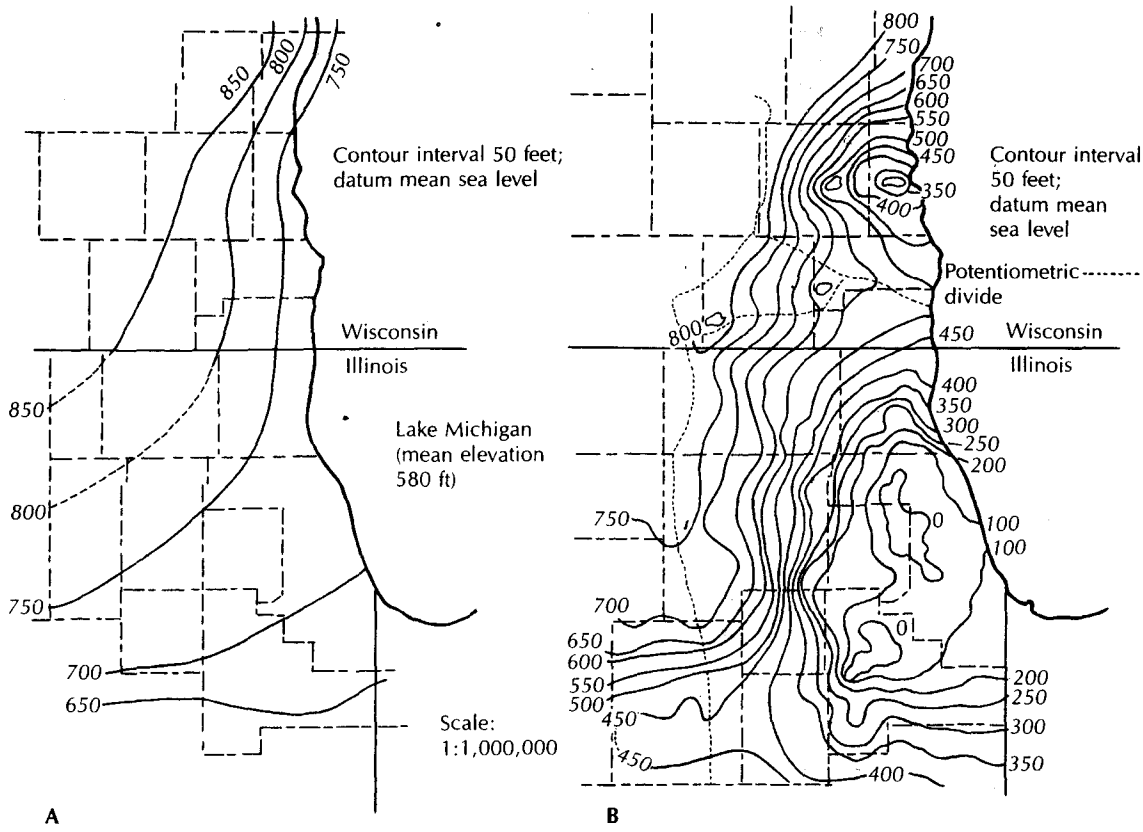
Since 1958 the ground-water withdrawals from this aquifer system in Illinois have exceeded the practical sustained yield and in Wisconsin the pumpage first exceeded the practical sustained yield about 1980. As a result of the ground-water withdrawals, the



▲ FIGURE 8.12
Area where Maquoketa shale is thin or missing and direct recharge to the Cambrian-Ordovician aquifer can occur. *Source: C. W. Fetter, Jr.,* Ground Water *19 (1981): 201–13.*
© Ground Water Publishing Company. Used with permission.

piezometric pressure in the aquifer has declined and the potentiometric surface has declined. Figure 8.13B shows the potentiometric surface as it existed in 1973. Deep pumping cones had developed in the Milwaukee and Chicago areas. A ground-water divide formed in southern Wisconsin, with flow north of the divide going toward Milwaukee and flow south of the divide going toward Chicago.

The potentiometric surface in the Milwaukee area has fallen more than 400 ft (120 m); in the Chicago region it has declined to below sea level, a distance of more than 900 ft (275 m) (Young et al. 1986). The potentiometric surface in parts of northeastern Illinois has fallen below the Maquoketa Shale so that the aquifer, which was formerly confined, is now unconfined. In some areas, parts of the Galena-Platteville unit have been dewatered along with the upper part of the Ancell unit. The great decline in the water levels indicates that much of the water that has been withdrawn has come from storage. Unless ground-water withdrawals are reduced to the amount of recharge in this circumstance, water levels will continue to decline until the aquifers can no longer transmit water from the recharge area to the well fields. Even if the pumpage were to be reduced to the practical sustained yield, ground-water levels would not recover to their former positions.

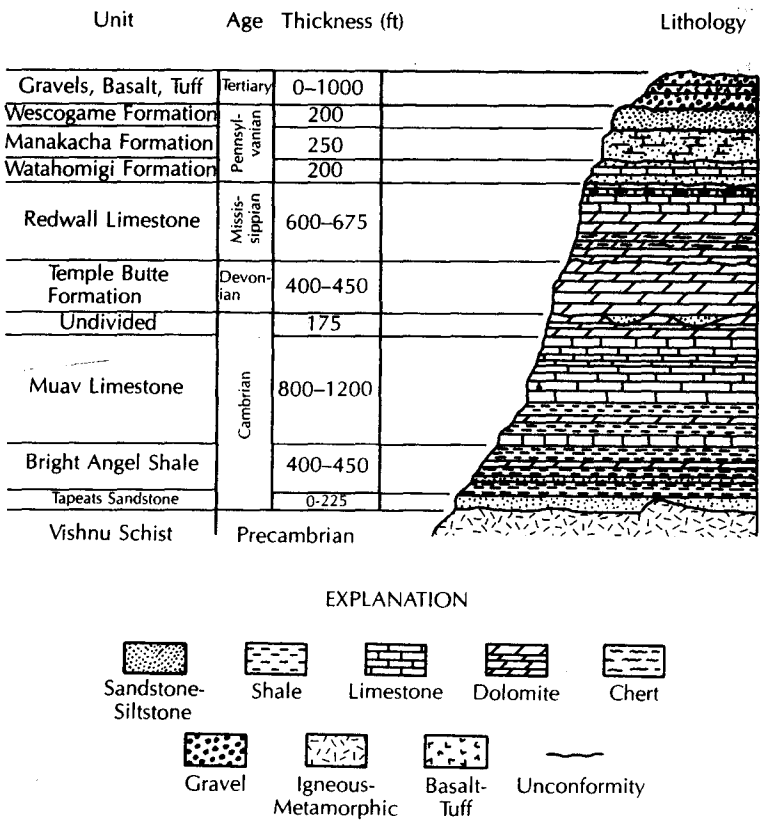


▲ FIGURE 8.13
Potentiometric surface of Cambrian-Ordovician aquifer in southeastern Wisconsin and northeastern Illinois. **A.** About 1865–1880. **B.** In 1973. *Source: C. W. Fetter, Jr.,* Ground Water *19 (1981): 201–13. © Ground Water Publishing Company. Used with permission.*

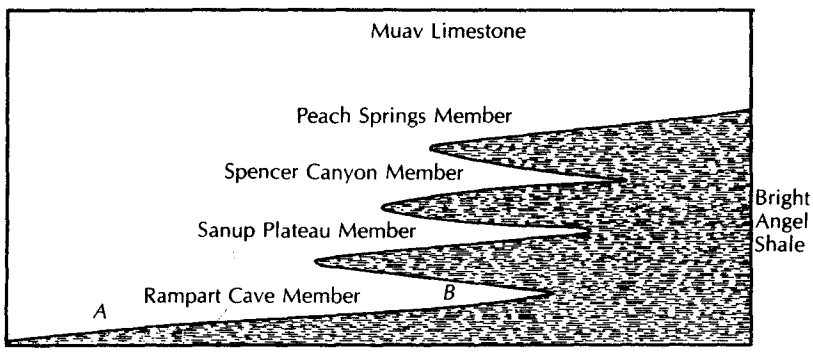
8.3.1 Complex Stratigraphy

The fact that a formation may change in lithology from one locality to another accounts for some of the difficulties associated with studies of sedimentary rock units. For example, a sandstone may grade into a shaly sandstone or siltstone, yet still have the same fossil fauna assemblage and the same stratigraphic nomenclature. The Eau Claire Formation of Cambrian age is a sandstone in east-central Wisconsin, but it grades into a shale and siltstone in northern Illinois. In Wisconsin, it has high conductivity and is an aquifer; in Illinois, it becomes a confining layer (Walton 1965; Schicht, Adams, & Stall 1976).

Complex stratigraphy can be a very real hindrance to ground-water exploration. On the Hualapai Plateau of northwestern Arizona, the best potential aquifer is the stratigraphic sequence of sedimentary rocks in the Rampart Cave Member of the Muav Limestone Formation (Twenter 1962). Springs discharge from this member into the Grand Canyon along the flanks of the plateau. The Bright Angel Shale stratigraphically underlies the Rampart Cave Member of the Muav Limestone, causing the ground water to be perched (Figure 8.14). However, because these units were being deposited in a transgressing sea, the various beds are interfingering. As a result, at some localities the Bright Angel Shale can be both above and below the Rampart Cave Member (Figure 8.15). Drillers in the area have had unsuccessful wells because they stopped drilling when the Bright Angel



▲ FIGURE 8.14
Stratigraphy of the Grand Canyon area. *Source: P. W. Huntoon,* Ground Water *15 (1977): 426–33. © Ground Water Publishing Company. Used with permission.*



▲ FIGURE 8.15
Interfingering of sedimentary rock units of the Hualapai Plateau area. *Source: Adapted from P. W. Huntoon,* Ground Water *15 (1977): 426–33. © Ground Water Publishing Company. Used with permission.*

Shale was first reached (Huntoon 1977). Unfortunately, the target formation had not yet been penetrated. A well drilled at Location A of Figure 8.15 would not hit Bright Angel Shale until the Rampart Cave Member was penetrated. However, at location B, three shale members alternating with limestone would have to be penetrated before the Rampart Cave Member was reached. The area of these interfingering members extends for tens of miles. The hydrogeologist working in areas of such complex stratigraphy must be aware of the possible hydrogeologic consequences.

8.3.2 Folds and Faults

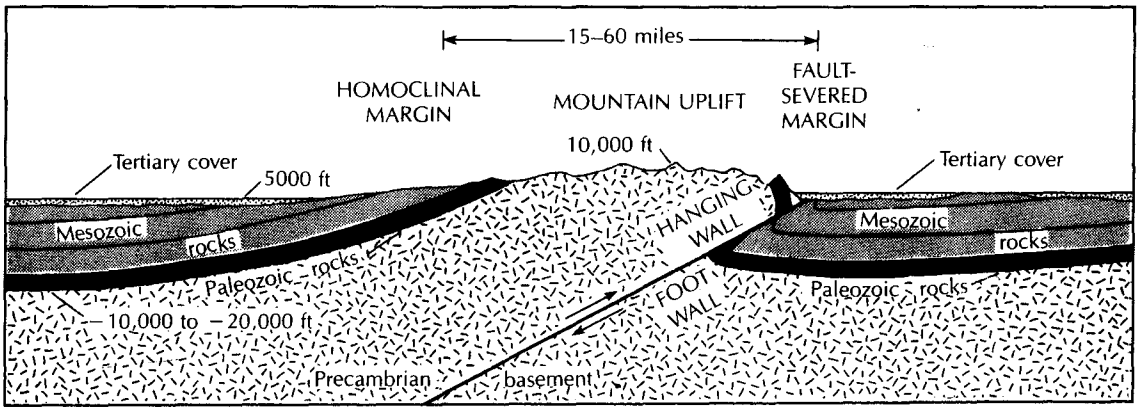
Folding and faulting of sedimentary rocks can create very complex hydrogeologic systems, in which determination of the locations of recharge and discharge zones and flow systems is confounded. Not only must the hydrogeologist determine the hydraulic characteristics of rock units and measure ground-water levels in wells to determine flow systems, but detailed geology must also be evaluated. In most cases, the basic geologic structure will have already been determined; however, logs of test wells and borings must be reconciled with the preexisting geologic knowledge.

Fault zones can act either as barriers to ground-water flow or as ground-water conduits, depending upon the nature of the material in the fault zone. If the fault zone consists of finely ground rock and clay (gouge), the material may have a very low hydraulic conductivity. Significant differences in ground-water levels can occur across such faults (see Figures 8.9 and 8.10). Impounding faults can occur in unconsolidated materials with clay present, as well as in sedimentary rocks where interbedded shales, which normally would not hinder lateral ground-water flow, can be smeared along the fault by drag folds. **Clastic dikes** are intrusions of sediment that are forced into rock fractures. If they are clay-rich, they can act as ground-water barriers in either sediments or in a lithified sedimentary rock. Clastic dikes are known to occur in alluvial sediments, glacial outwash, and lithified sedimentary rock.

Faults in consolidated rock units can act either as pathways for water movement or as flow barriers. If there has been little displacement along the fault, then the fault is more likely to develop fracture permeability because there is less opportunity for the formation of soft, ground-up rock, called **gouge,** to form between the moving surfaces (Huntoon 1986). Fault gouge can have a matrix of rock breccia encased in clay and can have a wider range of permeability (Snipes et al. 1986). Faults in poorly consolidated rocks in South Carolina had greater permeability than those in well-consolidated rocks (Snipes et al. 1986).

If the fault zone has a high porosity and hydraulic conductivity, it can serve as a conduit for ground-water movement. Springs discharging into the Colorado River in Marble Canyon are controlled by a vertical fault zone, the Fence Fault. The springs discharge where the faults intersect the river. The fault zones provide for vertical movement of recharging ground water from the land surface as well as lateral movement toward the river. The geochemistry of the spring water indicates that some of the water discharging on one side of the river originated in the ground-water basin on the opposite side of the river, indicating the fault zone was conducting some ground-water flow beneath the river even though it is a regional discharge zone (Huntoon 1981).

Faults may contain ground water at great pressures at depths where tunnels or mines may be constructed. One danger of hard-rock tunneling is the possibility of breaching an unexpected fault zone. Damaging and dangerous flooding can occur if the fault contains ground water with a high hydraulic head. In Utah, a well being drilled through an anticlinal structure, which in an unfaulted state creates a regional confining layer, encountered an exceptionally high-permeability zone created by normal faults and associated extensional joints that imprinted joint permeability on the brittle rocks. The well was being



▲ FIGURE 8.16
Schematic cross section through a typical Wyoming mountain uplift showing the style of deformation that results in approximately equal percentages of fault severed and homoclinal basin perimeters. *Source: P. W. Huntoon,* Ground Water *23 (1985): 176–81. © Ground Water Publishing Company. Used with permission.*

drilled to initiate solution mining of an abandoned underground potash mine. Unfortunately, ground water under high pressure in the fracture zone rushed into the well boring when the mine level was reached and flooded it with mineralized water (Huntoon 1986).

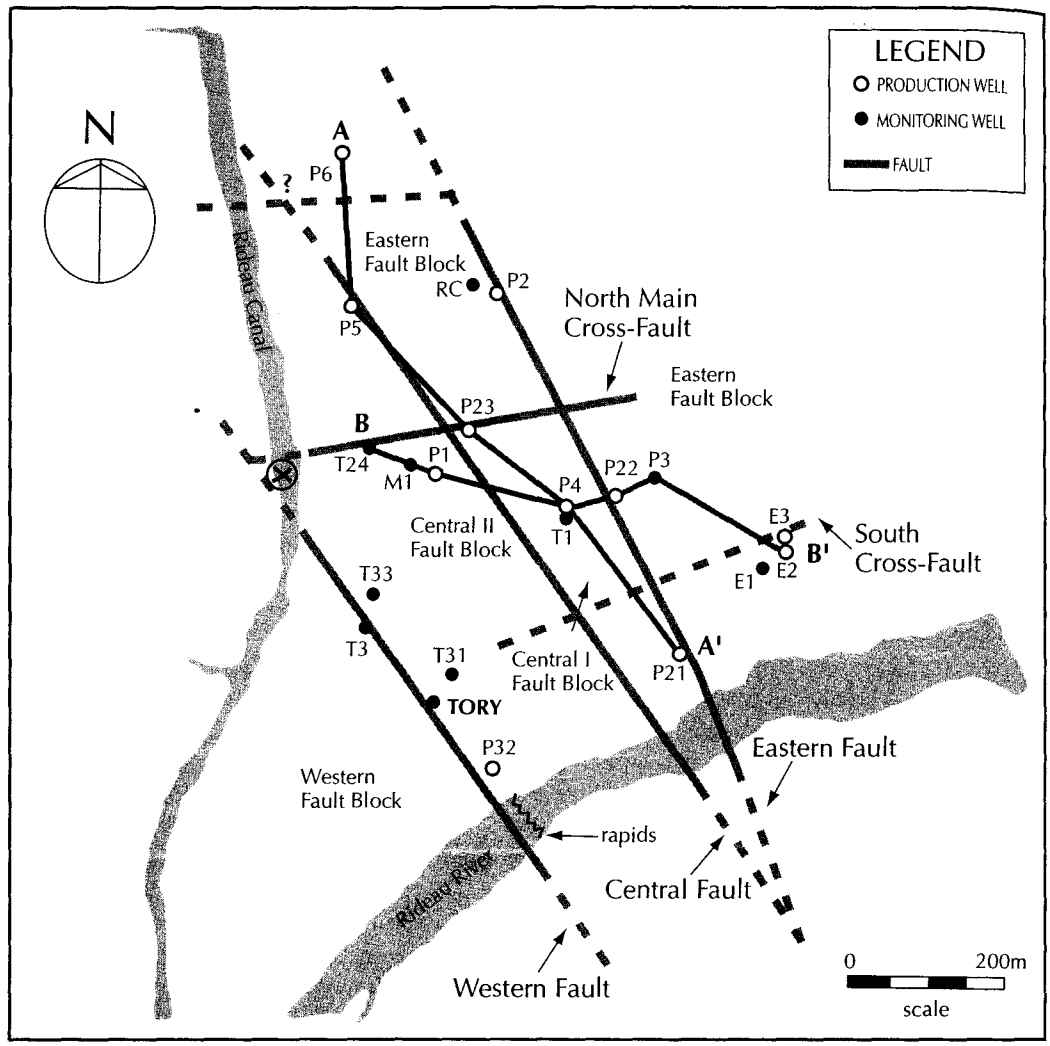
Overthrust faulting can create conditions in which a rock, normally found as an impermeable basement unit, is overlying the sedimentary rock units, typically a ground-water source. In such a case, the hydrogeologist might recommend drilling through the "basement" rocks to attempt to obtain a ground-water supply from younger sedimentary units, provided there is an opportunity for recharge to occur and the water is not known to have a high mineral content (Figure 8.16).

The major artesian basins of Wyoming consist of sedimentary rock units bounded by major thrust faults. The fault-severed margins of the basins have good permeability, adequate recharge, and good-quality water in the sedimentary rock aquifers of the hanging wall. However, the foot-wall rocks receive little recharge, have poor-quality water, and have permeabilities often many orders of magnitude lower than those of the adjacent hanging wall segments of the same formation (Huntoon 1985).

Case Study: Faults as Aquifer Boundaries

Allen and Michel (1996, 1998, 1999) studied an aquifer beneath Carlton University in Ottawa, Ontario, that consists of carbonate rock which has been extensively faulted. The faults are nearly vertical and create fault-bounded blocks. Figure 8.17 shows the location of the fault-bounded blocks, and Figure 8.18 contains stratigraphic cross sections, the locations of which are indicated on Figure 8.17. The bedrock topography is influenced by the faults, but glacial deposits cover the bedrock and mask the presence of the faults.

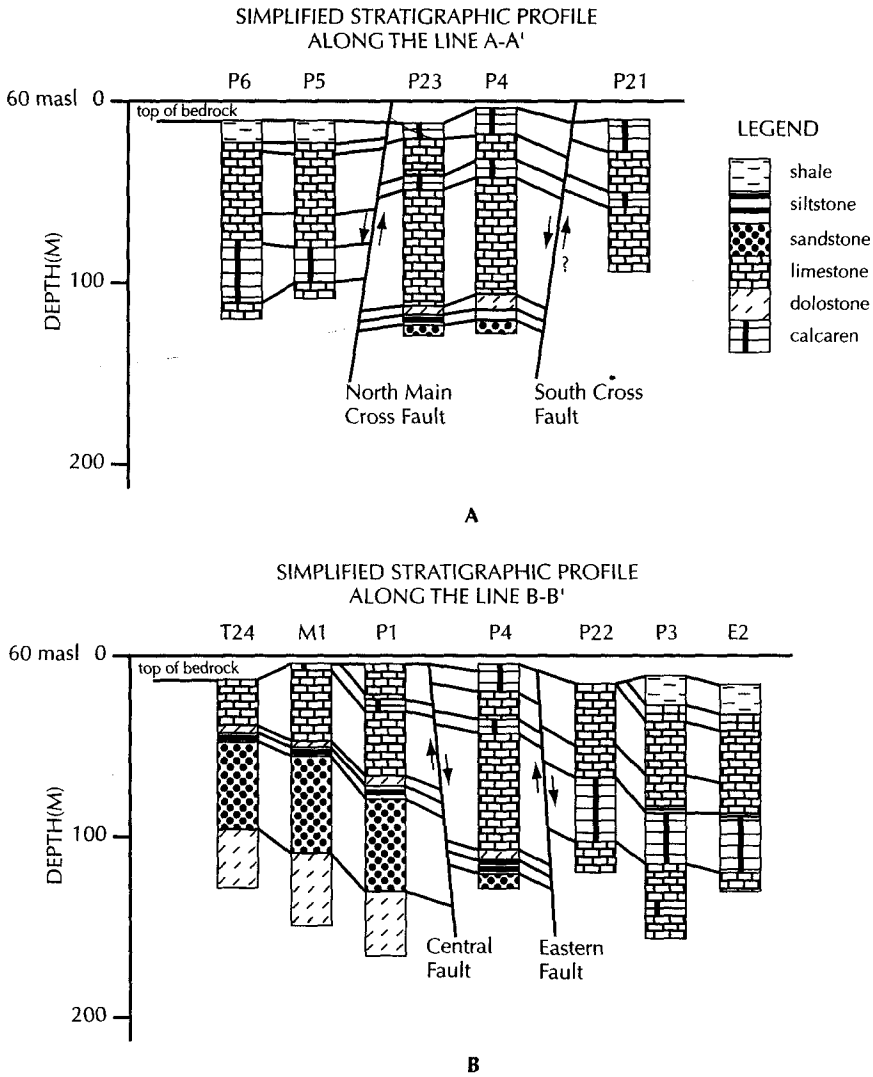
Static ground-water levels suggest that one fault acts as a barrier to ground-water flow. Hydraulic heads in the eastern fault block range from 200.57 ft (61.13 m) to 200.67 ft (61.16 m) while those in the central I and II fault blocks are lower, with a wider range, that is, from 196.89 ft (60.01 m) to 198.07 ft (60.37 m) (Figure 8.19). Borehole logs indicate that the rock is uniformly fractured with depth, with more extensive fractured zones in the rock



▲ FIGURE 8.17
Locations of wells, faults, and fault blocks, Carlton University. *Source: Allen, Diana M. and Frederick A. Michel. 1998.* Ground Water *36. no. 6:938–948 © Ground Water Publishing Company. Used with permission.*

adjacent to the faults. Numerical simulations indicate that the two fault blocks have somewhat different transmissivities. The central zone had a transmissivity of 674 ft^2/day (58 m^2/day) while the eastern zone had a transmissivity of 1755 ft^2/day (163 m^2/day.) The low-permeability zone that separates the two aquifer blocks was successfully modeled with a transmissivity of 9.26 ft^2/day (0.86 m^2/day.)

Folding can affect the hydrogeology of sedimentary rocks in several ways. The most obvious is the creation of confined aquifers at the centers of synclines. The nature of the fold will affect the availability of water. A tight, deeply plunging fold might carry the aquifer too deep beneath the surface to be economically developed. Deeply circulating ground water is also typically warmed by the geothermal gradient and may be highly

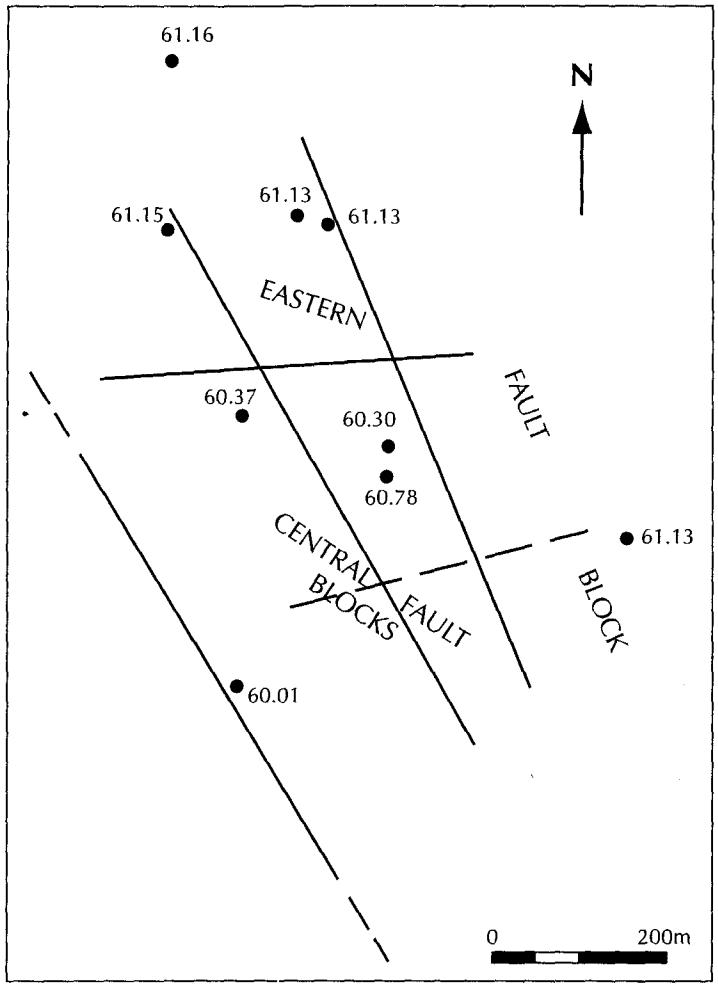


▲ FIGURE 8.18
Stratigraphic cross sections across Carlton University campus. Cross section locations shown on Figure 8.16. *Source: Allen, Diana M. and Frederick A. Michel. 1998.* Ground Water *36. no. 6:938–948. © Ground Water Publishing Company. Used with permission.*

mineralized. A broad, gentle fold can create a relatively shallow, confined aquifer that extends over a large area. This might be a good source of water if sufficient recharge can occur through the confining layer or if the aquifer can transmit enough water from areas where the confining layer is absent.

Another effect of folding is to create a series of outcrops of soluble rock, such as limestone, alternating with rock units that are not as permeable. Smaller streams flowing across the limestone might sink at the upper end, only to reappear at the lower outcrop. The type of trellis drainage that can develop on folded rocks is shown in Figure 8.20. Surface streams follow the strike of rock outcrops, usually along fault or fracture traces. In folded sedimentary rocks with solutional conduits in carbonate units, ground-water flow may be along the conduits that parallel the strike of the fold and not down the dip.

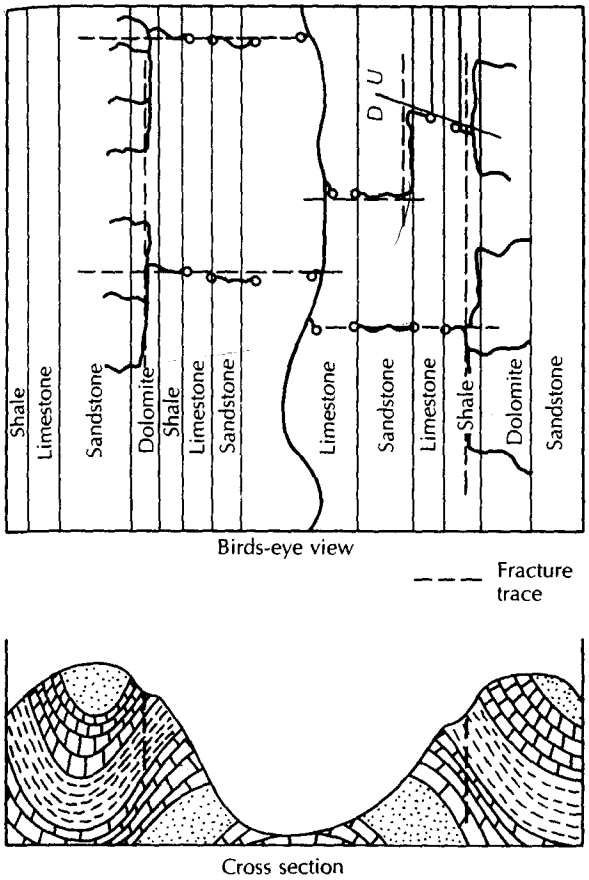
In areas of homoclinal folds, the outcrop areas usually have bands of sedimentary rocks, with resistant rocks forming ridges and more easily erodable rocks forming valleys.



▲ FIGURE 8.19
Static hydraulic head measurements in wells on Carlton University campus. *Data from Allen, Diana M. and Frederick A. Michel. 1999.* Ground Water *37. no, 5:718–728.*

The ridges may create ground-water divides, with aquifers outcropping in the valleys. The outcrop area of an aquifer will have local water-table flow systems with relatively large amounts of water circulating. These areas also serve as the recharge zones for the more distal parts of the aquifer, which are downdip in the basin and confined. There is a limited amount of natural discharge from the confined portions of the aquifer, this is, typically upward leakage into overlying beds with lower hydraulic head. Because of poor ground-water circulation, the confined portions of the aquifer may have low hydraulic conductivity and poor water quality (LeGrand & Pettyjohn 1981).

Complex folded and faulted sedimentary rock units are a challenge to the hydrogeologist. Competency in geology is necessary in order to construct geologic cross sections based on well logs, drill-core samples, and outcrops. Regional flow systems can be controlled by the structural and stratigraphic relations of the confining beds and aquifer units. In addition, distribution of hydraulic potential must be determined, very often from limited data.

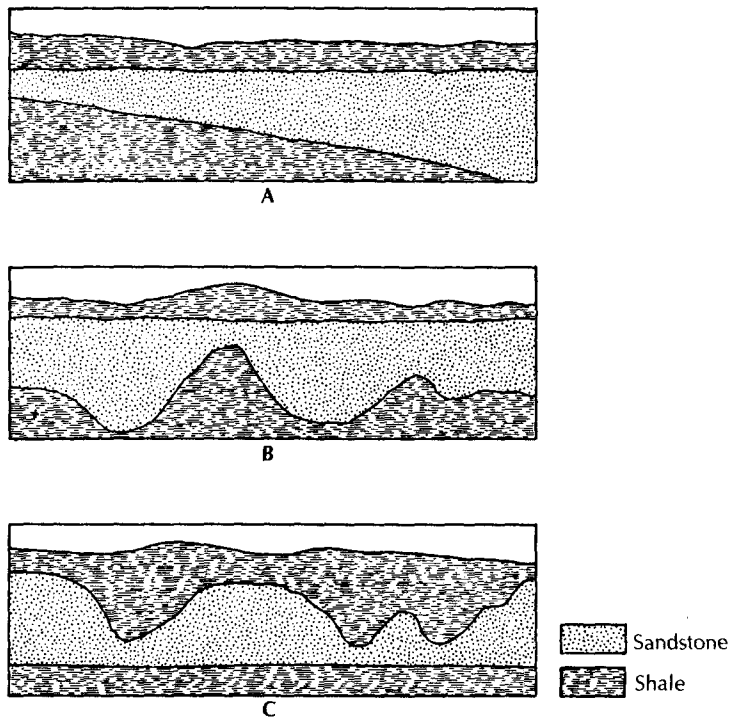


◀ FIGURE 8.20
Drainage pattern developed in an area of longitudinally folded rock strata: **A.** Top view. **B.** Cross section.

8.3.3 Clastic Sedimentary Rocks

Hydraulic conductivity of clastic sedimentary rocks, based on primary permeability, is a function of the grain size, shape, and sorting of the original sediment. The same factors that affect the permeability and porosity of loose sediments also are important in sedimentary rocks. **Cementation,** in which parts of the voids are filled with precipitated material such as silica, calcite, or iron oxide, can reduce the original porosity. Solution of the original material or cementing agent may occur during and after diagenesis, resulting in an increase in porosity.

Consolidated rocks also contain secondary porosity and permeability due to fracturing. Microfractures may add very little to the original hydraulic characteristics; however, major fracture zones may have localized hydraulic conductivities several orders of magnitude greater than that of the unfractured rock. Fracturing can occur through several geologic processes. Rock at depth is under great pressure owing to the weight of the overburden. As uplift and erosion bring the consolidated rock to the surface, it expands as the pressure is reduced. The expansion can cause fracturing of the rock, with the majority of the expansion fractures occurring within about 300 ft (100 m) of the surface. Vertical fractures carry recharging precipitation downward and provide a very important function in bypassing low-permeability layers near the surface. Wells located in surface fracture zones are generally highly successful.



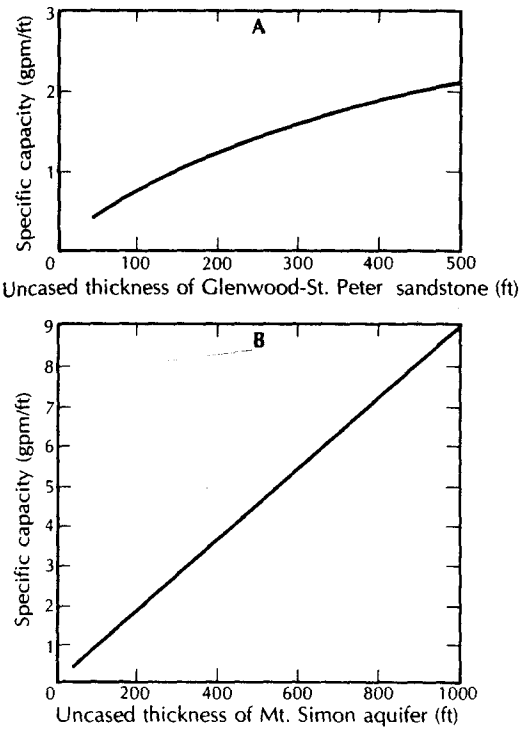
▲ FIGURE 8.21
Sedimentary conditions producing a sandstone aquifer of variable thickness: **A.** Sandstone deposited in a sedimentary basin. **B.** Sandstone deposited unconformably over an erosional surface. **C.** Surface of sandstone dissected by erosion prior to deposition of overlying beds.

Fracturing may also be associated with tectonic activity. Rock deformed by faulting or folding may fracture when subjected to tension or compression. Such activity can take place at substantial depths; thus, secondary permeability is not strictly a near-surface phenomenon. However, great pressure on the deeper fractures does not permit them to be as open (have as great a porosity) as shallow fractures.

The yield to wells is proportional to the transmissivity of the aquifer. This, in turn, is proportional to the aquifer thickness if the hydraulic conductivity is uniform throughout the aquifer. Sedimentary aquifers were deposited in sedimentary basins in which units gradually thicken. Variable thickness of a sedimentary aquifer may also be due to the deposition of the aquifer material over an eroded surface with high relief or a dissection of the top of the aquifer after deposition (Figure 8.21). Higher well yields will be obtained from thicker sections of the aquifer. The relationship between the specific capacity of wells and the uncased thickness of two sandstone aquifers in northern Illinois is shown in Figure 8.22.

Wells in sandstone aquifers should be located in such a manner as to penetrate the maximum saturated thickness of the aquifer. If one area of the aquifer is known to have a higher hydraulic conductivity than other areas, the combination of hydraulic conductivity and thickness should be considered in order to locate the well in the area of greatest aquifer transmissivity.

The yield of sandstone wells can sometimes be increased by the detonation of explosives in the uncased hole. The shots are generally located opposite the most permeable zones of the sandstone. The loosened rock and sand is bailed from the well prior to the installation of the pump. The shooting process has two effects on the borehole: it enlarges



◀ FIGURE 8.22
Relation between the specific capacity of a well (gallons per minute of yield per foot of drawdown) and the uncased thickness of the sandstone aquifer: **A.** Glenwood–St. Peter Sandstone. **B.** Mt. Simon Sandstone. Both of northern Illinois. *Source: W. C. Walton & S. Csallany, Illinois State Water Survey Report of Investigation 43, 1962.*

the diameter of the well in the permeable zones and also breaks off the surface of the sandstone, which may have been clogged by fine material during drilling. Fractures near the well may be opened all the way to the borehole by shooting. Old wells may be rehabilitated by shooting if the yield has decreased owing to mineral deposition on the well face. Shooting has increased the specific capacities of sandstone wells in northern Illinois by an average of 22% to 38%, depending upon the formation (Walton & Csallany 1962).

Case Study: Newark Basin Hydrogeology

Morin and others (1997) made a geophysical study of the Passaic formation of New Jersey. This important regional aquifer in the Newark Basin consists of sequences of mudstone, siltstone, and sandstone. They found two important water-yielding features in this aquifer. The first is a set of bedding-plane partings that dip northward at 20° with a strike of N 70° W. The bedding-plane partings have transmissivities that generally decrease with depth, likely due to overburden pressures and cementation. The second feature is a set of steeply dipping fractures that have a strike of N 79° E with a dip of 71° S. These fractures are less transmissive than the bedding-plane partings, but do not exhibit a decrease in transmissivity with depth. The aquifer is anisotropic since the bedding-plane fractures are more transmissive than the steeply dipping fractures near the surface; however, at depth, the near-vertical fractures are more transmissive.

In another part of the Newark Basin, Morin, Senior, and Decker (2000) found that there was a change in the character of the fractures with depth. The upper 125 m of the Brunswick group had gently dipping bedding-plane fractures that struck N 46° E and dipped at 11° to the northwest. Below 125 m (410 ft) were numerous high-angle fractures that were orthogonal to the bedding planes and dipping at 77°. The lower fractures are

found in a sandstone unit that had a low transmissivity. The majority of ground-water movement was found to be in the upper zone, where there were few steeply dipping fractures. The steeply dipping fracture set was controlled by lithology, being confined to the sandstone unit.

Michalski and Britton (1997) have also studied the bedding-plane partings of the Passaic formation. They developed a conceptual model of the Passaic formation as a leaky, multiunit aquifer system. The more transmissive bedding planes have been opened by stress relief and form individual aquifer units. Horizontal ground-water flow is concentrated in a few of the major bedding planes. Vertical leakage from one bedding plane to another occurs through the vertical fractures. As the vertical hydraulic conductivity is much less than the horizontal, the aquifer units are confined but leaky. The upper part of the bedrock is weathered, which, together with the unconsolidated overburden, provides a shallow transition zone where the water table may be unconfined. The weathered zone may be less transmissive, but have a greater storage capacity than the fractured bedrock. Major aquifer zones may be separated by vertical distances of 30 ft (10 m) to 150 ft (50 m). An individual bedding-plane aquifer was traced downdip for a distance of more than 1500 ft (450 m). An aquifer test performed on a well that tapped this bedding plane produced almost instantaneous drawdown in a monitoring well in the same bedding plane that was located 1527 ft (465 m) away. This indicates that there is good hydraulic connection along the bedding plane.

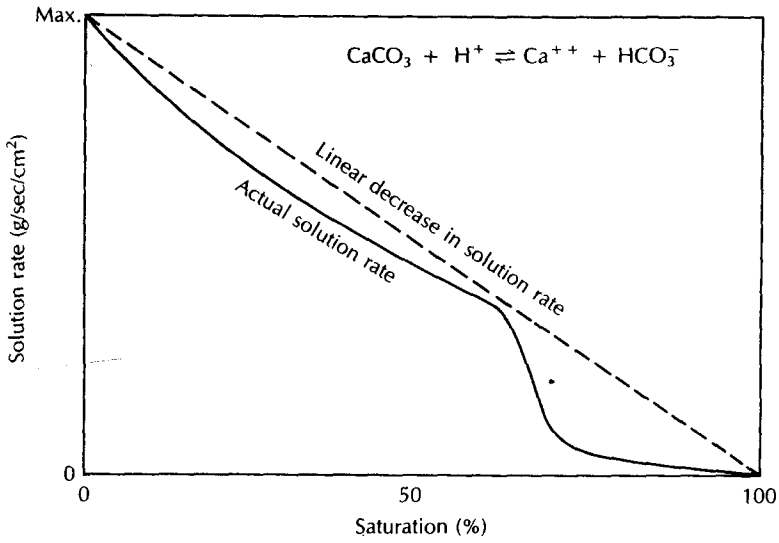
8.3.4 Carbonate Rocks

The primary porosity of limestone and dolomite is variable. If the rock is clastic, the primary porosity can be high. Chemically precipitated rocks can have a very low porosity and permeability if they are crystalline. Bedding planes can be zones of high primary porosity and permeability.

Limestone and (to a much lesser extent) dolomite are soluble in water that is mildly acidic. In general, if the water is unsaturated with respect to calcite or dolomite, it will dissolve the mineral until it reaches about 99+% saturation with respect to calcite (Plummer, Wigley, & Parkhurst 1978; Palmer 1984). The rate of solution is linear with respect to increasing solute concentration until somewhere between 65% and 90% saturation, at which value the rate decreases dramatically. Figure 8.23 shows the general nature of the solution rate as a function of degree of saturation.

Massive chemically precipitated limestones can have very low primary porosity and permeability. Secondary permeability in carbonate aquifers is due to the solutional enlargement of bedding planes, fractures, and faults (Ford & Ewers 1978). The rate of solution is a function of the amount of ground water moving through the system and the degree of saturation (with respect to the particular carbonate rock present), but it is nearly independent of the velocity of flow (Palmer 1984). The width of the initial fracture is one factor controlling how long the flow path is until the water reaches 99+% saturation and dissolution ceases (Palmer 1984).

Initially, more ground water flows through the larger fractures and bedding planes, which have a greater hydraulic conductivity. These become enlarged with respect to lesser fractures; hence, even more water flows through them. Solution mechanisms of carbonate rocks favor the development of larger openings at the expense of smaller ones. Carbonate aquifers can be highly anisotropic and nonhomogeneous if water moves only through fractures and bedding planes that have been preferentially enlarged. Water entering the carbonate rock is typically unsaturated. As it flows through the aquifer, it approaches sat-



▲ FIGURE 8.23
Solution rate vs. degree of saturation. Instead of decreasing linearly, the solution rate drops sharply to a low level at 65–90% saturation. *Source: A. N. Palmer,* Journal of Geological Education *32 (1984): 247–53.*

uration, and dissolution slows and finally ceases. It has been shown experimentally that solution passages form from the recharge area to the discharge area and that, as they follow fracture patterns, many smaller solution openings join to form fewer but larger ones (Ewers et al. 1978) (Figure 8.24). Eventually, many passages join to form one outlet. Greater ground-water movement—hence, solution—takes place along the intersection of two joints or a joint and a bedding plane. Ground water moving along a bedding plane tends to follow the strike of intersecting joints.

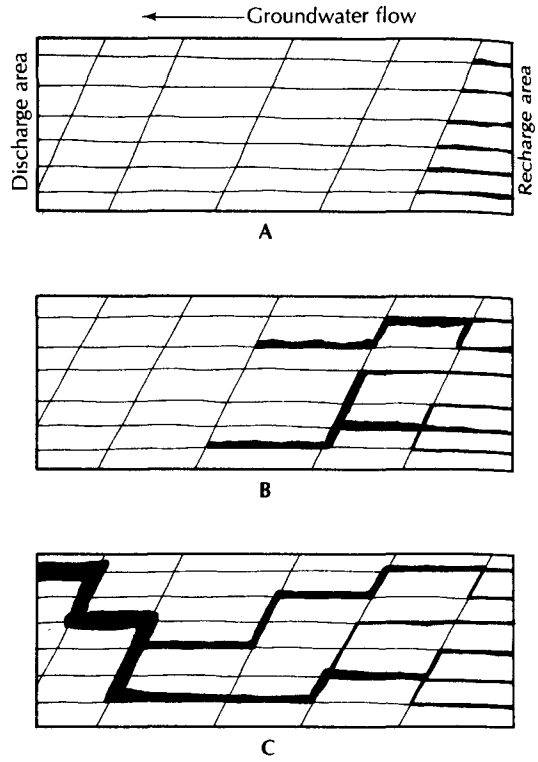
A second mode for the entry of unsaturated water into a carbonate aquifer occurs near valley bottoms. In **karst*** regions, flow in valleys with permanent streams is usually discharged from carbonate aquifers recharged beneath highlands. Water tables in many karst areas are almost flat owing to the high hydraulic conductivity. Floodwaters from surface streams can enter the carbonate aquifers and reverse the normal flow. If the floodwaters are unsaturated with respect to the mineral in the aquifer, solution will occur (White 1969).

Swallow holes, or shafts leading from surface streams, can carry surface water underground into caverns. Swallow holes can drain an entire stream or only a small portion of one.

Geochemical studies have shown that there are two types of ground water found in complex carbonate aquifer systems (Shuster & White 1971). The joints and bedding planes that are not enlarged by solution contain water that is saturated with respect to calcite (or dolomite). Because of the low hydraulic conductivity of these openings, this water mass moves slowly. Another mass of water, generally undersaturated, moves more rapidly through well-defined solution channels close to the water table. It is this second body that forms the passageways.

Cave systems can be formed above, at, or below the water table. They form when free-flowing water enlarges a fracture or bedding plane sufficiently for non-Darcian flow to

*Karst is a term applied to topography formed over limestone, dolomite, or gypsum; and characterized by sinkholes, caverns, and lack of surface streams.

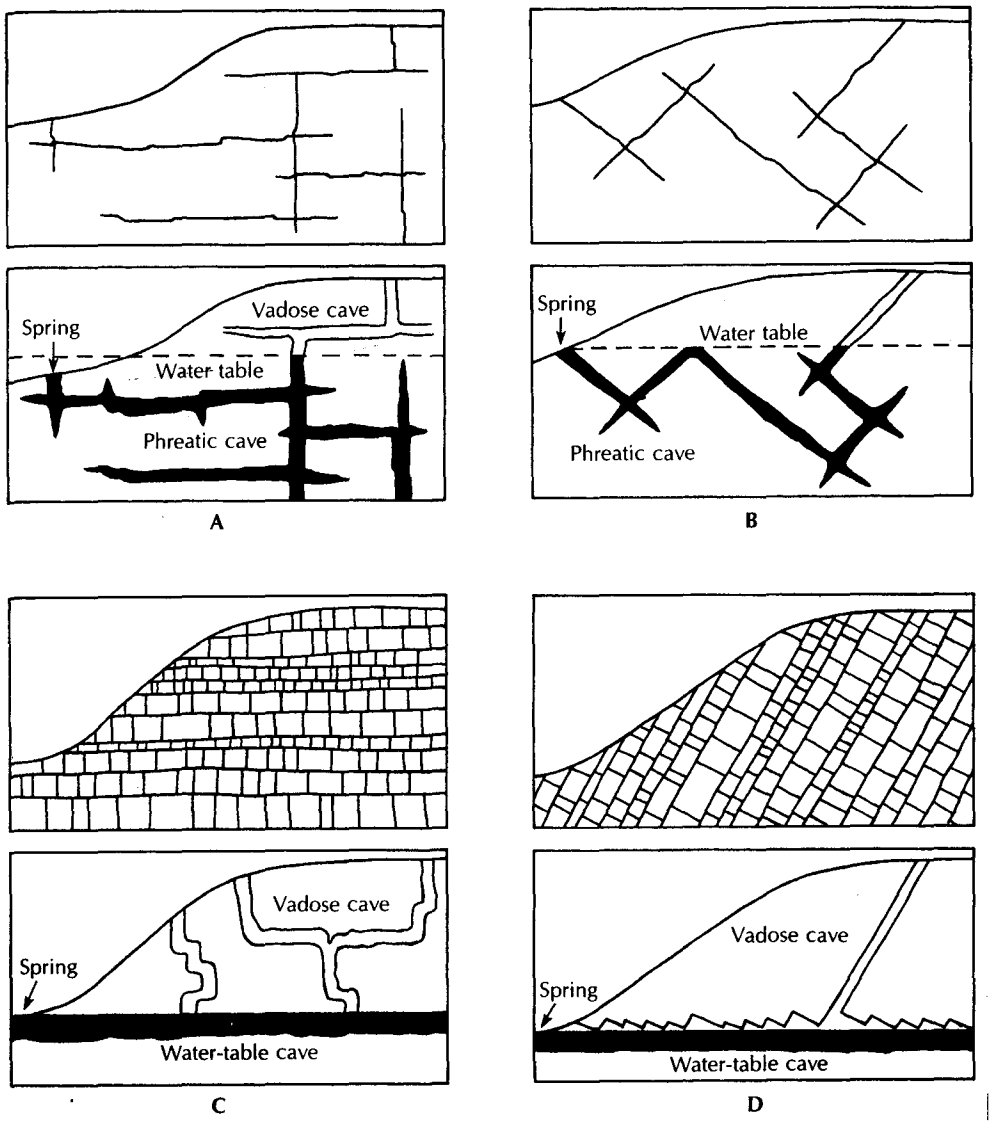


▶ FIGURE 8.24
Growth of a carbonate aquifer drainage system starting in the recharge area and growing toward the discharge area. **A.** At first, most joints in the recharge area undergo solution enlargement. **B.** As the solution passages grow, they join and become fewer. **C.** Eventually, one outlet appears at the discharge zone.

occur. This can be above the water table if a surface stream enters the ground in the unsaturated zone **(vadose cave),** below the water table if the joint or bedding plane through which flow is occurring dips below the water table **(phreatic cave),** or at the water table itself **(water-table cave)** (Ford & Ewers 1978). The pattern of cave passages is controlled by the pattern and density of the joints and/or bedding planes in the carbonate rock (Ford & Ewers 1978). Figure 8.25 shows the influence of fissure density and orientation on cave formation. With widely spaced fissures, the cave can develop below the potentiometric surface because the fissure pattern is too coarse to allow the cave development to parallel the water table (Figure 8.25A and B). If the fissure density is great enough, cave development can occur along the water table (Figure 8.25C and D). Vertical shafts can form in the vadose zone by undersaturated infiltrating water trickling down the rock surface (Brucker, Hess, & White 1972). Some caves that are presently dry were formed at or below the water table when the regional water table was higher. The regional base level of a karst region is typically a large river. If the river is downcutting, the regional water table will be lowering. The result will be a series of dry caves at different elevations, each formed when the regional water table was at a different level.

Carbonate aquifers show a very wide range of hydrologic characteristics. There are, to be sure, a number of "underground rivers" where a surface stream disappears and flows through caves as open channel flow. At the other extreme, some carbonate aquifers behave almost like a homogeneous, isotropic porous medium. Most lie between these extremes.

Three conceptual models for carbonate aquifers have been proposed (White 1969). *Diffuse-flow carbonate aquifers* have had little solutional activity directed toward opening large channels; these are to some extent homogeneous. *Free-flow carbonate aquifers* receive diffused recharge but have well-developed solution channels along which most flow occurs. Ground-water flow in free-flow aquifers is controlled by the orientation of the bed-



▲ FIGURE 8.25
Effects of fissure density and orientation on the development of caverns. *Source: Modified from D. D. Ford & R. O. Ewers,* Canadian Journal of Earth Science *15 (1978). Used with permission.*

ding planes and fractures that determine the locations of solutional conduits, but not by any confining beds. *Confined-flow carbonate aquifers* have solution openings in the carbonate units, but low-permeability noncarbonate beds exert control over the direction of ground-water movement.

Diffuse-flow aquifers are typically found in dolomitic rocks or shaly limestones, neither of which is easily soluble. Water movement is along joints and bedding planes that have been only modestly affected by solution. Moving ground water is not concentrated in certain zones in the aquifer and, if caves are present, they are small and not interconnected. Discharge is likely to be through a number of small springs and seeps. The Silurian-age dolomite aquifer of the Door Peninsula of Wisconsin is an example. Well tests have shown that the horizontal flow of water is along seven different bedding planes in the dolomite.

Vertical recharge is through fractures. The bedding-plane zones can be identified by borehole geophysical means (caliper logs) and correlated across several miles (Sherrill 1978). Because water movement takes place along broad bedding planes, the yield of wells is fairly constant from place to place. Wells in vertical fractures have a higher yield, as they possess both vertical and horizontal conductivity. The water table in diffuse-flow aquifers is well defined and can rise to a substantial elevation above the regional base level.

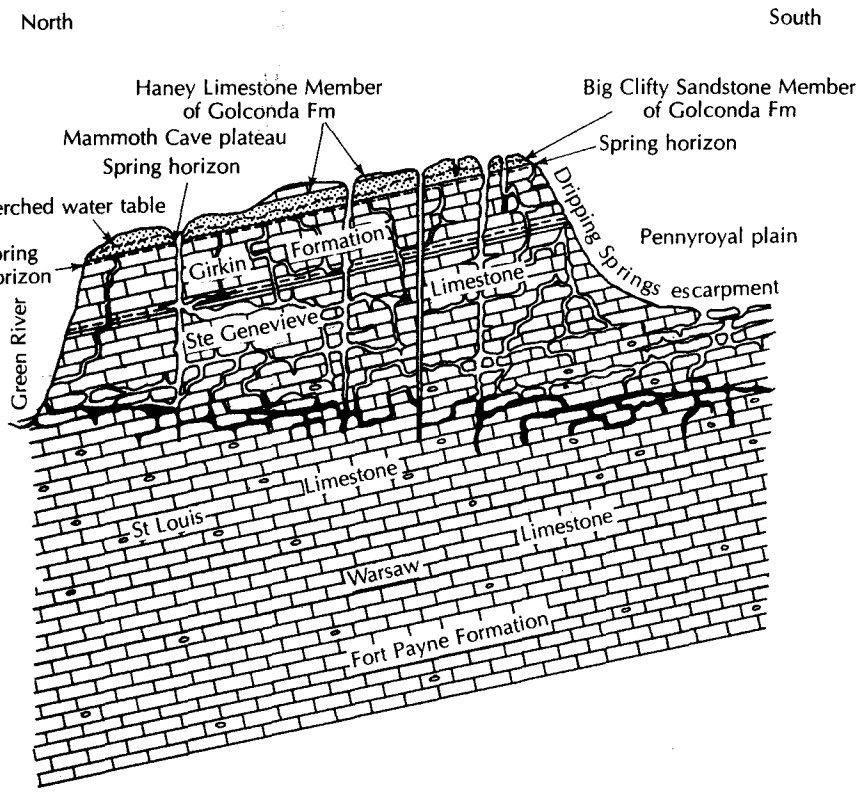
Free-flow carbonate aquifers have substantial development of solution passages. Not only are many joints and bedding planes enlarged, but some have formed large conduits. Although all the openings are saturated, the vast majority of flow occurs in the large channels; the flow behaves hydraulically as pipe flow. Velocities are similar to those of surface streams. Flow is turbulent, and the stream may carry a sediment load—as suspended material, bedload, and suspended bedload. Water quality is similar to that of surface water, and the regional discharge may occur through a few large springs. Because of the rapid drainage, the water table is nearly flat, having only a small elevation above the regional base level. The very low hydraulic gradient indicates that diffused flow through the unenlarged joints and fractures is exceedingly slow. Recharge to the subterranean drainage system is rapid, as water drains quickly through the vadose zone. The water level in the open pipe network may rise rapidly in a recharge event (Fox & Rushton 1976). The spring discharge will also increase in response to the amount of recharge, so that the spring hydrograph may resemble the flood peak of a surface stream. The water levels in the open-pipe network will also fall rapidly as the water drains. Caving expeditions have been known to end tragically when a "dry" cave passage became filled with surcharged water during a rapid recharge event.

The depth of major solution openings below base level is probably less than 200 ft (60 m), unless artesian flow conditions are present (White 1969). However, in areas where the regional base level was formerly at a lower level (for example, where a buried bedrock valley is present), cavern development may have taken place graded to that base level. In the coastal aquifers of the southeastern United States, the drilling fluid may suddenly drain from a well being drilled when it is 300 ft (100 m) or more deep. Cavernous zones found at these depths are well below the present water table. They formed when mean sea level and the regional water table were lower during the Pleistocene. The development of a sinkhole in Hernando County, Florida, was initiated by drilling in the Suwannee Limestone. The drilling fluid was lost several times, and the drill bit would drop through small caverns. At 200 ft (62 m), the drill broke into a cavern and, within 10 min, a large depression had formed, with the drill rig sinking into the ground and the drillers narrowly escaping the same fate. The present-day water level is close to the land surface (Boatwright & Ailman 1975).

Sinking surface streams may also feed the pipe-flow network of a karst region. Lost River of southern Indiana is a typical headwater surface stream flowing across a thick clay layer formed as a weathering residuum on the St. Louis and St. Genevieve limestones. Where the clay thins, a karst landscape is present, and Lost River sinks beneath an abandoned surface channel. It appears as a large spring some miles away. There is no surface drainage in the karst region other than some ephemeral streams flowing into sinkholes (Ruhe 1977).

If the carbonate rock beneath the uplands between regional drainage systems is capped by a clastic rock, karst landforms will not form. Dry caves in the uplands capped with clastics are less likely to have collapsed than caves in areas that are not capped. Recharge to the phreatic zone occurs through vertical shafts located at the edge of the caprock outcrop (Brucker, Hess, & White 1972). These shafts, which may be as large as 30 ft (10 m) in diameter and more than 300 ft (100 m) deep, extend only to the water table. Water flows from them through horizontally oriented drains.

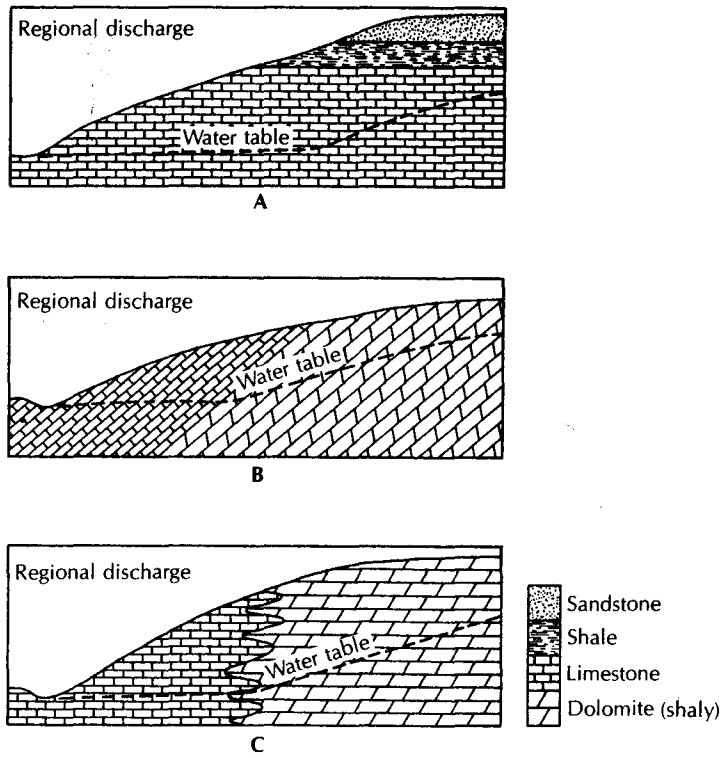
The central Kentucky karst region, including the Mammoth Cave area, is a capped carbonate aquifer system in some areas (Brown 1966; White 1970). A cross section through the Mammoth Cave Plateau is shown in Figure 8.26. The plateau is capped by the Big Clifty



▲ FIGURE 8.26
Diagrammatic cross section through the Mammoth Cave Plateau. Groundwater flow in the carbonate aquifer is from south to north. *Source: R. F. Brown, U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1837, 1966.*

Sandstone Member of the Golconda Formation, with cavern development in the underlying limestone formations, including the Girkin, St. Genevieve, and St. Louis limestones. Contact springs are found at the margins of the top of the plateau, as there is a thin shale layer at the top of the Girkin Formation. Recharge to the main carbonate rock aquifer takes place through vertical shafts formed in the plateau where the shale layer is absent. Karst drainage in the Pennyroyal Plain also contributes to the regional water table. Drainage is to the Green River through large springs, such as the River Styx outlet and Echo River outlet. These streams may also be seen underground where they flow in cave passages. Wells in the area draw water from the Big Clifty Sandstone, which yields enough for domestic supplies. There are some perched water bodies in the limestone, but the amount of water in storage is limited. A more permanent supply is reached if the well penetrates the regional water table, below the level of the Green River. The water level in these deep wells can rise 25 ft (8 m) in a few hours during heavy rains and then can fall almost as fast (Brown 1966).

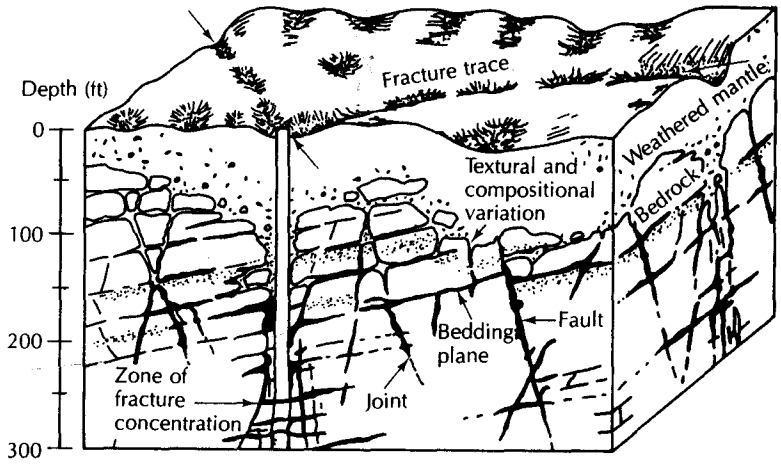
If a carbonate rock is confined by strata of low hydraulic conductivity, those strata may control the rate and direction of ground-water flow (White 1969). Such confined systems may have ground water flowing to great depths, with solution openings that are much deeper than those found in free-flow aquifers. Flow is not localized, and a greater density of joint solution takes place. The cavern formation of the Pahasapa Limestone of the Black Hills is apparently of this type, as water flows through the equivalent Madison



▲ FIGURE 8.27
Geologic conditions resulting in a difference in hydraulic conductivity and, hence, a difference in the water-table gradient.

Limestone aquifer eastward from a recharge area at the eastern side of the Black Hills. It has been suggested that because of the low gradient (0.00022) of the potentiometric surface, the Madison Limestone is highly permeable, owing to solution openings, for at least 130 mi (200 km) east of the Black Hills (Swenson 1968).

In the preceding discussion of karst hydrology, it was assumed that the various types of carbonate rock aquifers were isolated; however, this may not actually be the case. Highly soluble carbonate rock may be adjacent to a shaley carbonate unit with only slight solubility. The slope and position of the water table is a reliable indicator of the relative hydraulic conductivity of different carbonate rock units. In general, the water table will have a steeper gradient in rocks of lower hydraulic conductivity (LeGrand & Stringfield 1971), due to either a change in lithology or the degree of solution enlargement of joints. Figure 8.27 illustrates some conditions that might result in a change in the water-table gradient. In part A, the hilltop is capped by sandstone, with a low-permeability shale between the sandstone and the underlying limestone. Only a limited amount of recharge occurs through the shale. A spring horizon exists at the sandstone-shale contact, with small streams flowing across the shale outcrop area, only to sink into the limestone terrane. The much greater amount of water circulating through the limestone in the area where the shale is absent has created a highly permeable, cavernous unit. Beneath the caprock, the limestone is less dissolved, owing to lower ground-water recharge. Because of the lower hydraulic conductivity, the water-table gradient is steeper. This type of situation has been reported in the central Kentucky karst, with the hydraulic gradient beneath the caprock near the drainage divide being much steeper (0.01) than that near the Green River (0.0005) (Cushman 1967). If an area has two rock units, one of which is more soluble, the more sol-



▲ FIGURE 8.28
Concentration of ground water along zones of fracture concentrations in carbonate rock. Wells that do not intercept an enlarged fracture or a bedding plane may be dry, thus indicating a discontinuous water table. *Source: L. H. Lattman & R. R. Parizek.* Journal of Hydrology *2 (1964): 73–91. Used with permission of Elsevier Scientific Publishing Company, Amsterdam.*

uble rock may develop large solution passages and, hence, have greater conductivity. Parts B and C of Figure 8.27 illustrate two situations in which the upland is underlain by shaly dolomite and the lowland by cavernous limestone. The difference in rock solubility creates a change in hydraulic gradient.

The general concept of a water table in free-flowing karstic regions may be different from the model water table found in sandstones or sand-and-gravel aquifers. Because of the extremely high conductivity of some limestones, the water table can occur far beneath the land surface in mountains. Water can "perch" in solution depressions above the main water table. The level of free-flowing streams in caves is controlled by the regional water table, and the streams can have losing and gaining reaches, just as surface streams. Finally, because the solution of carbonate rock can be isolated along such features as fracture zones, the water table may be discontinuous. Wells drilled between fractures may not have any water in them, whereas nearby wells of the same depth may be in a fracture and therefore measure a water table (Figure 8.28).

The selection of well locations in carbonate terrane is one of the great challenges for the hydrogeologist. As the porosity and permeability may be localized, it is necessary to find the zones of high hydraulic conductivity. One of the most productive approaches to the task is the use of **fracture traces** (Lattman & Parizek 1964; Parizek 1976). Fracture traces (up to 1 mi, or 1.5 km) and lineaments (1 to 100 mi, or 1.5 to 150 km) are found in all types of geologic terrane. As they represent the surface expression of nearly vertical zones of fracture concentrations, they are often areas with hydraulic conductivity 10 to 1000 times that of adjacent rocks. The fracture zones are from 6 to 65 ft (2 to 20 m) wide and have surface expressions such as swales and sags in the land surface; vegetation differences, due to variations in soil moisture and depth to the water table; alignment of vegetation type; straight stream and valley segments; and alignment of sinkholes in karst. The surface features can reveal fracture traces covered by up to 300 ft (100 m) of residual or transported soils. Fracture traces are found over carbonate rocks, siltstones, sandstones, and crystalline rocks.

Because of differential solution in carbonate rocks, if a fracture zone has somewhat higher conductivity than that of the unfractured rock, flowing ground water will eventually create a much larger conductivity difference. Wells located in a fracture trace, or especially at the intersection of two fracture traces, have a statistically significant greater yield than wells not located on a fracture trace (Siddiqui & Parizek 1971). The same relationship is apparently true for wells located on lineaments, as opposed to those not on lineaments (Parizek 1976).

In areas where topography is influenced by structure, valleys may form along fracture traces. In central Pennsylvania 60% to 90% of a valley may be underlain by fracture traces (Siddiqui & Parizek 1971). Under such conditions, valley bottoms are good places to prospect for ground water. In the Valley and Ridge Province of Pennsylvania, the valleys are structural, and wells in valley bottoms are statistically more productive. In Illinois, just the reverse is true. For the shallow dolomite aquifer, the yields of wells in bedrock uplands are greater than those in bedrock valleys (Csallany & Walton 1963).

In central Pennsylvania, the yield of wells drilled into anticlines is greater than the yield of wells drilled into synclines. However, the proximity to a fault trace and rock type are more significant than structure in determining yield (Siddiqui & Parizek 1971). In other karst areas, synclines have been noted as major water producers (LaMoureaux & Powell 1960). The relation between structure and well yield is not clear; thus, local experience must be used as a guide.

Siddiqui and Parizek (1971) made their study in a region that had been tectonically active, and hence there were frequent fractures. Would fractures still control hydraulic conductivity in carbonate rocks where there are fewer fractures?

Rovey and Cherkauer (1994) studied the Silurian dolomite aquifer of southeastern Wisconsin. This aquifer consists of shoaling upward sequences of fine-grained mudstones with interbeds of porous coarse-grained packstones and grainstones. Most of the carbonate unit is mudstone with thin, but regionally continuous layers of coarser packstone and grainstone. The geometric mean hydraulic conductivity of the coarse-grained units is as much as 1000 times greater than the mudstone. As a result, the thin porous zones control regional ground-water flow and the aquifer behaves like a porous media. The porosity and permeability of the mudstone is controlled by fractures. As a result, the aquifer is both a fractured rock aquifer and a porous media aquifer. The yield of any particular well will depend on whether it taps only a fractured mudstone or if it is open to the much more transmissive, but thin, coarser-grained zones.

A comparison of the hydrogeology of reef and nonreef carbonate aquifers was made by Schnoebelen and Krothe (1999). The Silurian-Devonian aquifer system of northeastern Indiana consists of up to 550 ft (170 m) of carbonate rock that ranges from argillaceous limestones and dolomites with thin shales to vuggy bioclastic and fossiliferous limestones and dolomites. The Silurian section contains thousands of fossil reefs that range from a few square meters to square kilometers in size. The fossil reefs have porosities as high as 30%. The porosity of nonreef carbonates was much lower. The average transmissivity of the one nonreef aquifer studied was 495 ft^2/day (46 m^2/day), and for the two reef aquifers it was 52,000 ft^2/day (4831 m^2/day) and 7500 ft^2/day (697 m^2/day), respectively. Flow into a well occurred in only the top 20% of the section in the nonreef aquifer, but through at least 90% of the section in the reef aquifers. The nonreef well produced 2.4 gal/s (9 L/s) while the reef aquifer wells produced 6.6 to 8.2 gal/s (25 to 31 L/s.) Clearly carbonate reefs in this area are preferential targets for wells.

The upper zone of a carbonate aquifer may also be the most transmissive due to weathering. Podgorney and Ritzi (1997) found this phenomenon in a fractured carbonate rock aquifer in southwestern Ohio. They identified three distinct vertical zones: The upper zone was highly fractured and behaved as an equivalent porous medium; the middle zone was less fractured and behaved as a distinctly fractured rock aquifer; and the lower zone

had many fewer fractures that tended not to be connected and hence the zone behaved as an aquitard. Moore (1997) opined that it could be difficult to quantify ground-water flow in fractured carbonate rock aquifers. Reasons included that the upper zone is much more permeable than lower zones due to higher amounts of fracturing and weathering; and that during periods of recharge, the water table might rise and saturate permeable rock in the vadose zone so that the transmissivity of the unit may change with time.

One integral part of carbonate terrane hydrogeology is the **regolith**—the layer of soil and weathered rock above bedrock. The regolith can be composed of weathering residuum of insoluble minerals remaining after solution of the carbonate minerals. This is typically reddish in color, owing to iron oxides, and contains a high proportion of clay minerals. The regolith may also include transported materials, such as glacial drift. If recharge must first pass through a low-permeability regolith, the rapid response of a carbonate aquifer will be reduced or eliminated. As the regolith slowly releases water from storage, spring discharge from areas overlain by a thick regolith will be more constant than if the regolith were absent. The regolith may also be a local aquifer. The weathering residuum of the Highland Rim area of Tennessee contains localized zones of chert, which can yield water in small amounts (Marcher, Bingham, & Lounsbury 1964; Zurawski 1978).

8.3.5 Coal and Lignite

Coal contains bedding planes cut by fractures that are termed **cleat.** Cleat is similar to joint sets in other rock. It is formed as a response to local or regional folding of the coal. There are typically two trends of cleat—normal to the bedding planes and cutting each other at about a 90° angle (Stone & Snoeberger 1977). Coal is often an aquifer and yields water from the cleat and bedding. Such coals are typically anisotropic, with the maximum hydraulic conductivity oriented along the face cleat, which develops perpendicular to the axis of folding. The quality of water from coal aquifers is variable and sometimes can be poor.

Little information exists on the hydraulic characteristics of coals. The maximum hydraulic conductivity of the Felix No. 2 coal of the Wasatch Formation was determined to be 0.88 ft/day (3.1×10^{-4} cm/s), with a storativity of 1.2×10^{-3} (Stone & Snoeberger 1977). The mean hydraulic conductivity of lignite from four sites in western North Dakota is 1.1 ft/day (3.9×10^{-4} cm/s) (Rehm, Groenewold, & Moran 1978). The Sawyer-A coal aquifer (Fort Union Formation, Montana) exhibits horizontal anisotropy, with a maximum hydraulic conductivity of 3.3 ft/day (1.2×10^{-3} cm/s) and a minimum hydraulic conductivity of 0.85 ft/day (3.0×10^{-4} cm/s). The storativity was 3.4×10^{-4}. The Anderson coal aquifer of the same formation had a maximum horizontal hydraulic conductivity of 0.66 ft/day (2.3×10^{-4} cm/s) and a minimum value of 0.23 ft/day (8.1×10^{-5} cm/s) (Stoner 1981).

Thick coal beds, such as those of the Powder River Basin of Wyoming, may be important regional aquifers. Well yields of 10 to 100 gal/min (0.6 to 6 L/s) are possible from these coals (Keefer & Hadley 1976). Conflicts arise between water supply from coal aquifers and energy development. Strip mining takes place at the outcrop areas of the coal. If these are recharge areas for the coal aquifer, mine dewatering will adversely affect the potentiometric level in the coal aquifer. If the infiltration capacity of the area is reduced by mining, spoil disposal, or the like, this can also reduce the available recharge to the aquifer.

8.4 Igneous and Metamorphic Rocks

8.4.1 Intrusive Igneous and Metamorphic Rocks

Intrusive igneous and highly metamorphosed crystalline rocks generally have very little, if any, primary porosity. For ground water to occur, there must be openings developed through fracturing, faulting, or weathering. Fractures can be developed by tectonic movements, pressure relief due to erosion of overburden rock, loading and unloading of

glaciation, shrinking during cooling of the rock mass, and the compression and tensional forces caused by regional tectonic stresses.

The amount of fracturing in crystalline rocks may decrease with depth. However, two deep test wells drilled in northern Illinois as exploratory holes for a possible pumped hydroelectric storage project have shown this is not always the case (Coates et al. 1983; Haimson & Doe 1983; Daniels, Olhoeft, & Scott 1983; Coutre, Steitz, & Steindler 1983). These wells were drilled in an area of Paleozoic bedrock overlying crystalline bedrock comprised of biotite granite. Crystalline rocks were penetrated from a depth of 2179 to 5443 ft (664 to 1669 m) in one hole and 2179 to 5273 ft (664 to 1607 m) in the other. Even at these great depths, fractures were found in the crystalline rock. Porosity ranged from 1.42% to 2.15% and intrinsic permeability, determined from in situ packer tests,* from 10^{-4} darcy in a more highly fractured zone near the top of the crystalline basement to 10^{-8} darcy in an area with few fractures. Brines were found in the fractures of the rock at these depths. Brines have also been found in mines at depths in excess of 3000 ft (900 m) in a number of areas of the Precambrian shield of North America (Brace 1980). As crystalline rocks are a potential medium for the construction of mined repositories for high-level nuclear waste, the presence of fracture permeability and porosity at great depths is significant.

One study of crystalline rock wells in the eastern United States has shown that the yield, expressed in gallons per minute divided by the depth of the saturated zone penetrated by the well, decreases rapidly with depth (Davis & Turk 1964). However, jointed crystalline rock in the Piedmont of the eastern United States is known to be fractured to depths of 500 ft (150 m) (Stewart 1962). In Wisconsin, fracture zones in crystalline rock are known to be present and can be delineated from air photos. One well drilled on a fracture trace to a depth of 353 ft (108 m) was test-pumped for 12 h at 200 gal/min (13 L/s) with a drawdown of 134 ft (41 m); another well drilled to a depth of 400 ft (122 m) had a yield of 80 gal/min (5 L/s) (Socha 1983).

In a study of 227 crystalline bedrock wells in coastal Maine, Loiselle and Evans (1995) concluded that in this area, at least, there was no empirical justification for limiting well drilling depth to the near surface. They found no significant differences in the yield from a water-bearing fracture yield with depth, with fractures occurring to depths as great as 550 ft (168 m). They did find a 90% chance of hitting at least one fracture in the first 250 ft (76 m). Their findings are not necessarily in direct opposition to those of Davis and Turk (1964). Davis and Turk defined well yield in terms of gallons per minute per foot of open borehole. A 10-gal per minute (gpm) yield in a 100-ft well would have a gpm/ft of 0.1 while a 10-gal per minute yield in a 500-ft-deep well would have a gpm/ft of 0.02. As a practical matter, both wells yield 10 gal per minute, although the deeper well is obviously more expensive.

Mabee (1999) examined the factors that influenced well yield in metamorphic terrain of coastal Maine once covered with glacial drift. He found a correlation between well transmissivity and bedrock type (amphibolite was more transmissive than schist), topographic setting (upland flat areas were more transmissive than slopes or lowlands), proximity to a fracture-controlled lineament ($\leq$ 80 ft (25 m) as opposed to $>$ 200 ft (60 m), and structural position (wells on fold axes were more transmissive than those on the limbs of

*A **packer test** is performed in an open borehole through rock. Inflatable seals, called packers, are used to isolate a particular segment of the open borehole. A pump test or a slug test is then performed on the isolated segment of the borehole.

folds). Factors not having statistically significant influence on well yield were depth to the water table, distance to surface water bodies, and overburden type and thickness.

8.4.2 Volcanic Rocks

Because volcanic rocks crystallize at the surface, they can retain porosity associated with lava-flow features and pyroclastic deposition. Hydraulic conductivity of volcanic rocks such as lava flows and cinder beds is typically quite high. However, ash beds, intrusive dikes, and sills may have a much lower hydraulic conductivity. Younger basalt flows tend to have greater conductivity than older ones. Flow features such as clinker zones and gas vesicles in *aa* (a type of lava) and lava tubes and gas vesicles in *pahoehoe* (another lava type), as well as vertical contraction joints and surface irregularities and stream gravels buried between successive flows, contribute to overall conductivity (Peterson 1972). Some of the most productive aquifers are located in basalt flows, as is described in the following case studies.

Case Study: Volcanic Plateaus—Columbia River Basalts

The Columbia Plateau area of Washington, Oregon, and Idaho consists of a very thick sequence of Miocene-age basaltic lava flows that erupted from fissures. The lava was very fluid: individual flows are 150 to 500 ft (50 to 150 m) thick, and some can be traced for 125 mi (200 km). For the most part, the basalt flows are either flat lying or gently tilted. In some places, the basalts have been folded by later tectonic activity. The basalt flows of the Columbia River Group of east-central Washington are as thick as 10,000 ft (3000 m), although in most areas a thickness of 4600 ft (1400 m) is more typical (Luzier & Skrvian 1975). The basalt flows dip at angles of 1° to 2° from northwest to southeast. Water occurs in distinct zones, probably related to interflow boundaries.

A number of irrigation wells have been drilled in the uppermost 1000 ft (300 m) of the basalt flows. Typical well yields of 1000 to 2000 gal/min (60 to 120 L/s) are obtained from confined aquifers located at a depth of between 500 and 1000 ft (150 and 300 m). Shallower aquifers are not as productive, but have a hydraulic head up to 100 ft (30 m) greater than those of the deeper aquifers. Uncased well bores are draining water from the shallower aquifers into the deeper ones (Newcomb 1972). Recharge to the aquifer systems comes from precipitation and loss from ephemeral streams. Precipitation—hence, recharge—increases to the north and east. As these are also topographical high areas, regional ground-water flow is away from them, to the southwest. Age determinations based on carbon-14 dating of ground water of the basalts range from modern to as old as 32,000 years B.P. Age appears to increase with depth, but relationships are obscured by mixing of water of different ages coming from different aquifer zones (Newcomb 1972).

The classic conceptual model of a series of confined aquifers corresponding to individual basalt flows might not be valid in all parts of the Columbia Plateau. Vertical joints form in basalt as it shrinks during cooling. These can provide substantial vertical conductivity, producing unconfined aquifer conditions in thick sequences of lava flows (Foxworthy 1983). In Horse Heaven Plateau, Washington, there is reported to be an unconfined aquifer consisting of the Saddle Mountains Basalt and the upper part of the underlying Wanapum Basalt. A deeper basalt, the Grande Ronde, is confined by a saprolite layer, which formed by weathering of a basalt flow (Brown 1979).

Case Study: Volcanic Domes—Hawaiian Islands

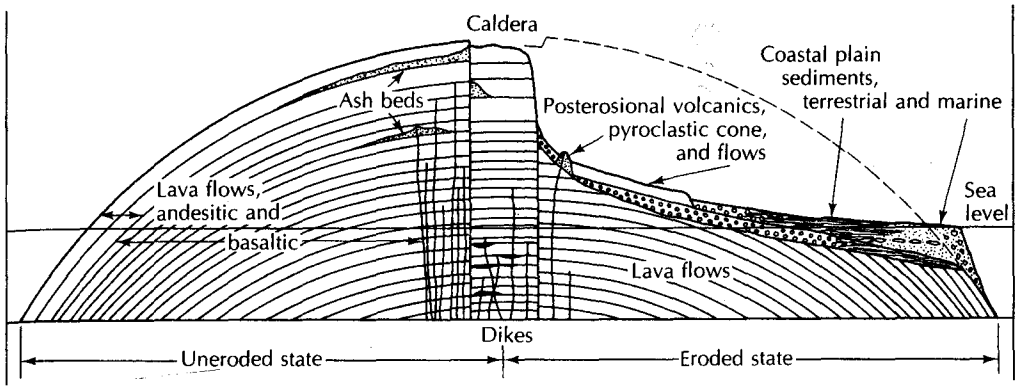
In contrast to the very large area of similar geology of the Columbia Plateau Basalts, lava flows associated with some volcanic eruptions can have very heterogeneous aquifer systems. The Hawaiian Islands provide the classic example (Peterson 1972; Cox 1954; Visher & Mink 1964; Takasaki 1978).

Each of the Hawaiian Islands consists of shield volcanoes forming from one to five volcanic domes. Each dome consists of thousands of individual basaltic lava flows coming from either craters or fissures. Lava flows cooling above sea level are thin bedded, highly fractured, or composed of vesicular and very permeable basalt. Those cooled under water are more massive and less permeable. However, owing to lowered sea levels during the Pleistocene and isostatic sinking of the islands, highly permeable, air-cooled basalt is found below present-day sea level. Interbedded with the lava flows are ash beds, which have a lower permeability. In the zone in which lava flows originated, igneous dikes with low porosity and permeability cut across the lava beds. The original dome structure may be partially eroded. Sediments have accumulated along some of the coastal areas. These coastal plain sediments consist of both terrestrial and marine deposits. The cross section of Figure 8.29 is through an idealized Hawaiian volcanic dome, with both the original and eroded states illustrated.

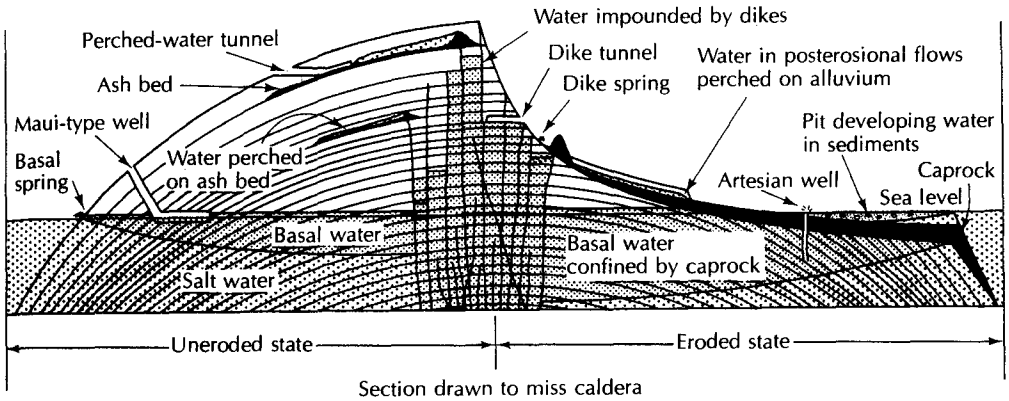
The Hawaiian Islands are typical examples of oceanic islands where fresh ground water is underlain by salty ground water. Because fresh water is less dense than salty water, the fresh ground water beneath an oceanic island can be thought of as "floating" as a thin lens in the salty ground water. The fresh ground water grades into salty ground water in a zone of mixing.

Ground water in the Hawaiian Islands is contained in the highly permeable basalt flows. It is recharged by rainfall, which can average as much as 20.8 ft (635 cm) per year on Oahu. In the interior of the islands, the basalt flows are isolated by cross-cutting igneous dikes, which are ground-water dams. The ground water is trapped at a high elevation behind these dams. High-level ground water is also found as perched water in lava beds overlying low-permeability ash beds. If the infiltration is not trapped on an ash bed or behind a dike dam, it moves downward to the basal ground-water body, which is a fresh-water lens in dynamic balance with salty ground water. The basal ground water may be unconfined or, in areas of coastal plain sediments, may be confined by the low-permeability sediments locally termed *caprock*. A cross section of the occurrence of ground water is shown in Figure 8.30. A bird's-eye view of the island of Oahu indicates areas of high-level water bodies impounded by dikes (Figure 8.31).

Springs issue from ash-bed perched aquifers and also from dike-dammed water bodies. Some of these are 300 ft (100 m) or more above sea level. High-level water is developed by tunnels into the tops of ash beds or penetrating dike dams. Most ground water is developed from the basal ground-water body. Unconfined basal water is collected in horizontal skimming tunnels, called *Maui tunnels*, which are at sea level and slightly below. These skimming tunnels can develop water where the fresh-water lens is very thin and conventional wells would pump brackish or salt water. Maui tunnels are capable of producing up to 3.1×10^4 gal/min (2×10^3 L/s), although in most cases the yield is much less. Where the basal water is confined by coastal plain sediments, conventional wells are used for ground-water development.



▲ FIGURE 8.29
Geologic structure of an idealized Hawaiian volcanic dome. *Source: D. C. Cox,* Hawaiian Planters Record *54 (1954). Used with permission.*



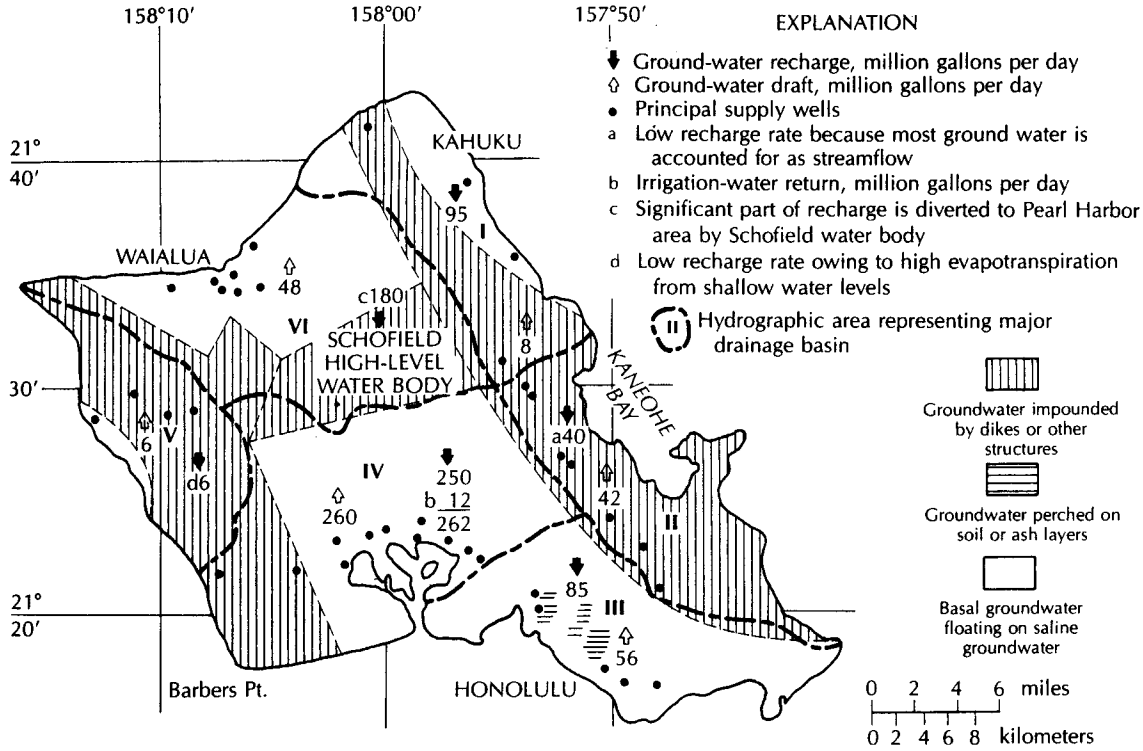
▲ FIGURE 8.30
Occurrence and development of ground water in an idealized Hawaiian volcanic dome. *Source: D. C. Cox,* Hawaiian Planters Record *54 (1954). Used with permission.*

8.5 Ground Water in Permafrost Regions

In polar latitudes and high mountains, the mean annual temperatures may be sufficiently low for the ground to be at a temperature below 0°C. If this temperature persists for two or more years, the condition is known as **permafrost** (Cederstrom, Johnson, & Subitzky 1953; Brandon 1965; Williams 1970). During the summer, warm temperatures may cause the upper 3 to 6 ft (1 to 2 m) of the soil or rock to thaw. This is called the *active layer,* but underneath it the ground may be frozen to depths to 1300 ft (400 m).

The magnitude of the annual temperature fluctuation of the soil is greatest at the surface and diminishes with depth until, at some depth, there is zero annual temperature amplitude. The depth at which the maximum annual soil temperature is 0°C is the *permafrost table.* In some areas, the permafrost may occur in layers, with zones of unfrozen ground between them. This condition is usually the result of past climatic events, and the permafrost distribution is not congruent with the present climatic and thermal regime. The local depth of permafrost is a function of the geothermal gradient and the mean annual air temperature (Terzagki 1950).

The insulating cover of glacier ice and large lakes may prevent the formation of permafrost. Permafrost is likewise not present beneath the ocean. At higher elevations and on north-facing slopes, where the mean temperature is lower, permafrost may be thicker



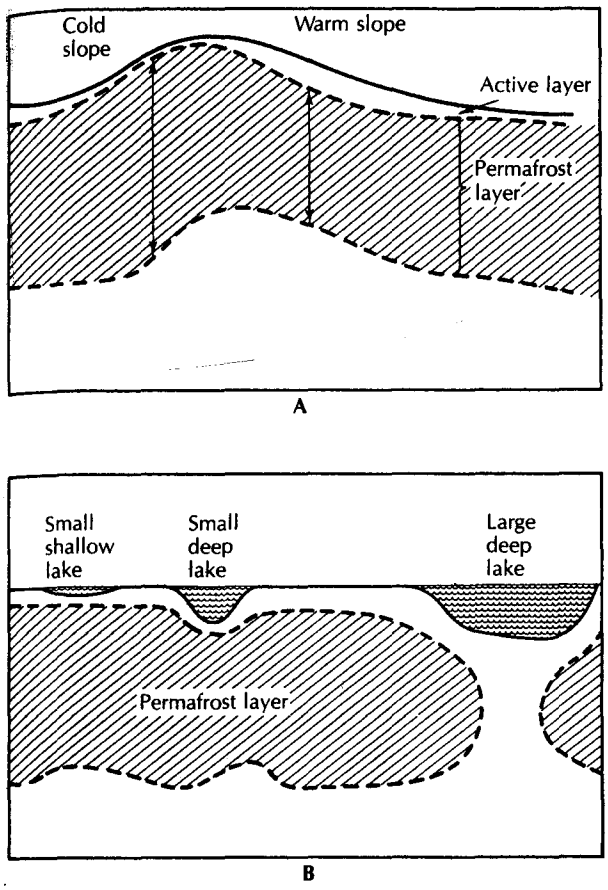
▲ FIGURE 8.31
Map of the island of Oahu showing the approximate outline of ground-water reservoirs, recharge, 1975 draft, and principal supply wells by hydrographic areas representing major drainage basins. *Source: K. J. Takasaki, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 813-M, 1978.*

(Figure 8.32A). Lakes and streams also affect the permafrost. Shallow lakes—6 ft (2 m) deep or less—freeze to the bottom in winter and have little effect on the permafrost table, but the permafrost may be warmer; hence, not as thick. Deeper lakes are unfrozen at the bottom and have an insulating effect. Small, deep lakes create a saucer-shaped depression in the permafrost table, which in turn creates an upward indentation in the bottom of the permafrost (Lachenbruch et al. 1962). Permafrost is absent beneath large, deep lakes—even in the continuous permafrost zone (Figure 8.32B). The effects of large rivers on distribution of permafrost are similar to those of large deep lakes.

The permafrost table creates perched water in the active layer. This results in poorly drained soils and the typical muskeg and marsh vegetation of tundra regions. Deeper aquifers are recharged only in the absence of permafrost, as the permafrost layer acts as a confining layer.

Water below the permafrost layer is confined. The potentiometric surface may be in the permafrost layer or even above land surface (Williams 1970). Subpermafrost water may discharge into large rivers and lakes, beneath which unfrozen conduits are open. Saline ground water may exist beneath permafrost, but it is typically not actively circulating (Williams 1970). Discharge of ground water at the surface, especially in winter, may result in the development of sheets of surface ice or large conical hills called *pingos*. Pingos have ice cores and are formed by the upward arch of the ground surface due to hydraulic pressure of ground water confined by permafrost.

Alluvial river valleys are good sources of ground water in permafrost regions. The permafrost beneath and along the river may be thin, or absent in places, and alluvial gravel deposits are good aquifers. Large rivers will have more unfrozen ground—hence, more available water—than smaller tributaries and headwater streams.



◀ FIGURE 8.32
A. Effect of topography on the permafrost layer with the thinnest layer found beneath a warm, south-facing slope. **B.** Effect of lakes on the permafrost layer.

In the far northern parts of Alaska, Canada, and the Soviet Union, permafrost is present nearly everywhere. It is in this continuous permafrost region that maximum permafrost depths are found. To the south, the permafrost layer is discontinuous. It may be up to 600 ft (180 m) thick locally, but elsewhere there could be unfrozen ground. In the continuous permafrost regions of Alaska, alluvial valleys of large rivers may be the only water available. As the active layer freezes in winter, baseflow to even the largest rivers may be reduced to zero. Subpermafrost ground water is typically saline or brackish. In the discontinuous permafrost region, the permafrost is thinner, and the areas free of permafrost are much more extensive in alluvial river valleys.

Alluvial fans are found in Alaska at the margins of many of the mountain ranges. The fans are composed of glaciofluvial deposits, which tend to be coarse sand and gravel. Ground water can be obtained from these deposits, either below the permafrost or near rivers or lakes, where the permafrost may be thin or absent. In the more southerly alluvial fans, the water table may be below the permafrost layer. In this case, the permafrost has little impact on the hydrogeology other than preventing recharge to areas where it is present.

The distribution of permafrost in consolidated rocks is similar to that in unconsolidated deposits. If a rock unit has significant hydraulic conductivity in both the horizontal and vertical directions, ground-water hydrology should be similar to that of unconsolidated deposits. In highly anisotropic aquifers, even discontinuous permafrost bodies could act as ground-water dams, preventing horizontal flow and significantly reducing or eliminating vertical recharge. For example, ground water in fracture zones is replenished by downward recharge. If the fracture zone were covered by a patch of permafrost, recharge would be difficult, even if the fracture zone extended below the permafrost layer.

Case Study: Alluvial Aquifers—Fairbanks, Alaska

In the area of Fairbanks, Alaska, the Chena and Tanäua Rivers have alluvial deposits up to 800 ft (240 m) thick. The alluvium consists of interbedded gravel, sand, and silt. The floodplains are interspersed with terraces from 3 to 25 ft (1 to 8 m) in height. The distribution of permafrost in the area is irregular. Permafrost is absent or nearly so in the alluvium beneath the river channels. Thin permafrost may be found under islands. The youngest, low-terrace deposits are underlain by unfrozen alluvium, with some isolated permafrost bodies up to 80 ft (24 m) thick. Higher terraces have more continuous permafrost, which can be 200 ft (60 m) deep. The older terraces have nearly continuous permafrost up to 280 ft (85 m) deep (Williams 1970). Permafrost thickness increases beneath progressively older terraces. Wells in the alluvial valley obtain water from unfrozen areas or, if there is permafrost, from either above or below it (Cederstrom 1963).

8.6 Ground Water in Desert Areas

Desert areas receive 10 in. (25 cm) of precipitation or less each year. Cold deserts, such as Antarctica, can have great accumulations of water. In warm deserts, however, the potential evapotranspiration may be many times the annual precipitation. Under such conditions, there is often virtually no local ground-water recharge. Yet, some warm deserts can have large volumes of fresh water stored beneath them.

Both bedrock and unconsolidated aquifers are known in desert areas. As the dry climate promotes mechanical weathering of rock, the unconsolidated materials are often rather coarse and permeable. Alluvial fans and talus slopes at the bases of mountains and escarpments can be productive. In South Yemen on the Arabian peninsula, ground water is obtained from shallow wells in alluvial materials (Cederstrom 1971). Recharge occurs during flooding that accompanies the infrequent precipitation.

Vast bedrock aquifers are known to occur in the sedimentary basins of Egypt, Jordan, and Saudi Arabia (Harshbarger 1968). The Sahara Desert is underlain by the Nubian aquifer, a sandstone up to 3000 ft (900 m) thick. Several younger aquifers overlie it. The ground water in the Nubian Sandstone is confined, and there are large initial heads. High-capacity wells now tap this aquifer. Several major aquifer systems, primarily sandstone, also underlie the Arabian peninsula. Carbonate aquifers may not have high-solution permeability owing to the lack of actively circulating ground water. Those that are permeable are a result of primary permeability or solution permeability developed during moister periods of the past.

Recharge to aquifers can occur through runoff from adjacent mountains, which receive relatively more water. However, under much of North Africa and Arabia, the ground water is old, exceeding 35,000 radiocarbon years B.P. (Lloyd & Farag 1978). It has been shown by model studies that the water in these aquifers was probably recharged during wet climatic periods during the Pleistocene. Under such conditions, ground water is mined from the aquifers, as there is no modern recharge.

Arid zones may have significant water-quality problems. The slow circulation of ground water results in mineralization. In addition, evaporation of ground water from discharge areas results in salt deposition, with consequent high salinity in the soil and shallow ground water.

Case Study: Desert Hydrology—Azraq Basin, Jordan

Topographically, the Azraq Basin occupies 4900 mi^2 (12,710 km^2) primarily in northwest Jordan. The highest elevation, 5170 ft (1576 m) above mean sea level, is to the north where part of the basin lies in Syria. The elevation decreases into the central depression, where it is about 1640 ft (500 m) above mean sea level. It then increases to about 2950 ft (900 m) in the southern part of the basin. The Azraq Basin is closed, with all surface drainage going into a central basin, which is occupied by a salt pan (Al-Kharabsher 2000).

There are three aquifers that underlie the basin. The *upper aquifer complex* consists of Quaternary alluvial deposits, Miocene-Quaternary basalt flows, the Eocene Shallala Formation, and the Paleocene Rijam Formation. This aquifer complex is unconfined and, in the center part of the basin, water in the alluvial deposits is within a few meters of the land surface and can be reached with hand-dug wells. The two other units of this aquifer complex vary in quantity and quality of water. The *middle aquifer complex* is confined, being separated from the upper aquifer complex by low permeability marls and chalks. This aquifer complex crops out in the west and southwest of the basin, where it is recharged. The middle aquifer complex consists of the Amman Formation (an aquifer), the Ruseifa Formation (an aquitard), and the Wadi Sir Formation (an aquifer). Ground water in the Amman aquifer lies between 1380 ft (420 m) and 1935 ft (590 m) below the surface. The *lower aquifer complex* is confined by low permeability marls and consists of poorly consolidated, early Cretaceous sandstones. Ground-water development in the basin is primarily from the upper aquifer complex (Al-Kharabsher 2000).

Annual precipitation ranges from 12 in (300 mm) in the northern highlands, to 6 in (150) mm both west and east, to 2 in (50 mm) in the south. The average precipitation over the entire basin is 88 mm/yr. The major form of precipitation is convectional thunderstorms with intense rainfall that causes flooding. The floodwaters accumulate in the central basin where they may take several weeks to months to evaporate. The long-term water budget for the basin indicates that of the 3.46 in (88 mm) of precipitation, 3.26 in (83.12 mm) is lost to evaporation (94.35%), 0.09 in (2.19 mm) (2.49%) is overland flow, and 0.11 in (2.78 mm) (3.16%) infiltrates the ground (Al-Kharabsher, Al-Weshah, & Shatanawi 1997).

Total mean annual infiltration over the basin is 1.24×10^9 ft^3/y (35×10^6 m^3/y). Ground water in the upper aquifer complex flows toward the center of the closed basin. Ground-water discharge formerly created the Shishan and Drouz Springs, which formed the Azraq Oasis, a wetland oasis in the middle of a desert with an aquatic habitat supporting animals and plants. The oasis is also known for the date palms, and is a resting habitat for migrating birds. Long-term mean annual discharge to the springs and evapotranspiration amounts to 3.2×10^8 ft^3/y (9×10^6 m^3/y.) An additional 3.5×10^7 ft^3/y (1×10^6 m^3/y) flows from the basin as underflow toward the Dead Sea. This gives a net recharge to the upper aquifer system of 8.8×10^8 ft^3/y (25×10^6 m^3/y.) Increased ground-water withdrawals from the basin to supply both agriculture and drinking water for the cities of Amman, Zerqa, and Irbid exceed the safe yield of the aquifer system [8.8×10^8 ft^3/y (25×10^6 m^3/y)], which lowered the water table and thus dried up springs in the early 1990s (Al-Kharabsher 2000).

8.7 Coastal-Plain Aquifers

Coastal plains are found on all continents, with the exception of Antarctica. They are regional features, bounded on the continental side by highlands and seaward by a coastline. Coastal plains exist in areas of stable basement rock as well as in those areas where the basement is sinking. The coastal plain may include large areas of former sea floor, and the geology of the coastal zone may be very similar to that of the adjacent continental shelf.

Sediment and sedimentary rocks of coastal plains were formed as either terrestrial or marine deposits. The terrestrial deposits tend to be landward and the marine deposits seaward, although fluctuating sea levels have resulted in alternating continental and marine strata—units deposited at a given time grade from continental to marine. Individual units have a variety of shapes, although the overall sequence usually thickens seaward. Coastal plains almost always contain Quaternary sediments; many also contain Tertiary- and Mesozoic-age deposits as well. The older rock units tend to crop out on the landward side, whereas younger, Quarternary and Recent, rock and sediments are found at the surface near the coast.

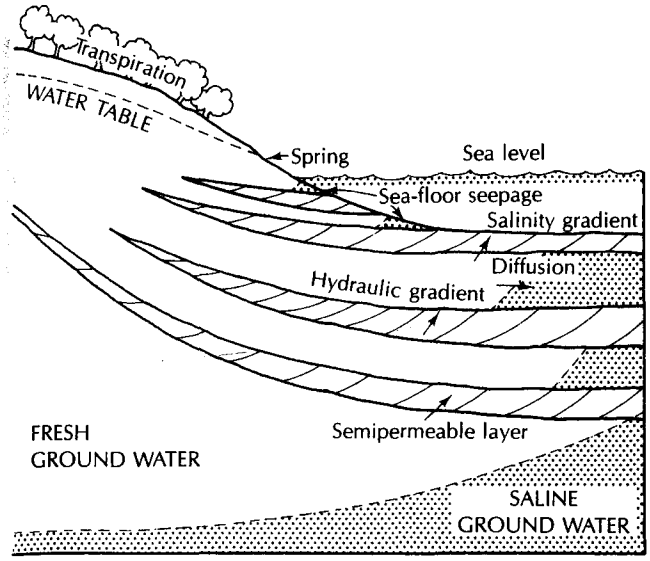
The coastal plain sediments may be unconsolidated or lithified, with no relationship to age. The Magothy aquifer of the northeastern United States is an unconsolidated sand of Cretaceous age, while the Biscayne aquifer of southeastern Florida consists of Pleistocene-age marine limestone. Aquifers typically are continental sands, gravels, and sandstones or marine sands or limestones. Confining beds consist of marine and continental silts and clays.

Typically, alternating and interfingering facies of different lithology are encountered. Some units are thick and extend for hundreds of miles; others are often not traceable for more than a few miles. One or more aquifers may be found at most locations. Baton Rouge, Louisiana, has 10 aquifers in the first 3000 ft (900 m) of sediments (Kazmann 1970). Some of the world's most prolific aquifers are found in coastal plain deposits. A notable example is the Atlantic and Gulf coastal plain of North America (Miller 1986; Grubb 1986; Wait et al. 1986; Meisler et al. 1986).

The sediments of coastal plain areas were deposited either adjacent to or in shallow marine waters. Thus, pore water was originally saline. Fluctuating sea levels during the Pleistocene inundated many areas that are now land. As a result, saline waters occupied many contemporary fresh-water coastal plain aquifers in the not-too-distant geologic past. Relative sea level was up to 300 ft (90 m) lower during the last Wisconsinan glaciation than present sea level, uncovering more of the continental shelf than is now exposed. During this period, saline water was flushed from inland aquifers to considerable depths.

Because of the seaward-sloping nature of coastal plain strata, deep aquifers are recharged in inland areas. Fresh water flows down-gradient and then discharges by several mechanisms to the coastal waters. The amount of aquifer flushing that has occurred is a function of the volume of aquifer recharge and the amount of fresh water that can escape down-gradient via the available mechanisms. Saline water has been flushed to a depth of 5900 ft (1800 m) in Karnes County, Texas (McGuinness 1963), and 3495 ft (1070 m) below sea level in St. Tammany Parish, Louisiana (Rollo 1960), although this is unusual. Fresh water is found at depths of 1000 ft (300 m) or more below sea level in many areas of the coastal plain aquifer (McGuinness 1963). Fresh water has been found to occur in deep, confined coastal plain sediments many miles at sea. In a deep test well on Nantucket Island, located 40 mi (64 km) off the New England coast, fresh water was found in confined aquifers at depths of 730 to 820 ft (223 to 250 m) and 900 to 930 ft (274 to 283 m). These are Cretaceous-age sands and are confined by clays (Kohout et al. 1977). They represent aquifers that were recharged during the Pleistocene, when sea level was lower (Kohout et al. 1977; Collins 1978).

Fresh water can discharge from a coastal aquifer via several natural mechanisms (1) evapotranspiration, (2) direct seepage into springs, streams, tidal water, and the ocean floor, (3) mixing with saline ground water in a zone of diffusion, (4) flow across a semipermeable layer under the influence of a hydraulic gradient, and (5) flow across a semipermeable layer due to osmotic pressure caused by a salinity gradient. Examples of the various discharge mechanisms in a coastal area are shown in Figure 8.33. Mechanisms (1) and (2) are very efficient in discharging water from unconfined aquifers. Fresh-water springs in the sea bottom occur in unconfined aquifers or confined aquifers where the confining layer is breached. Deep confined aquifers utilize only the last three methods—3, 4 and 5—which are not as efficient. Assuming that all aquifers have equal transmissivities



◀ FIGURE 8.33
Typical fresh-water–salt-water relationship in a layered coastal aquifer.

the deeper the aquifer, the less fresh water it can discharge because of the reduction in the number and efficiency of discharge methods. Confined coastal aquifers can contain fresh water, even though overlying aquifers are salty.

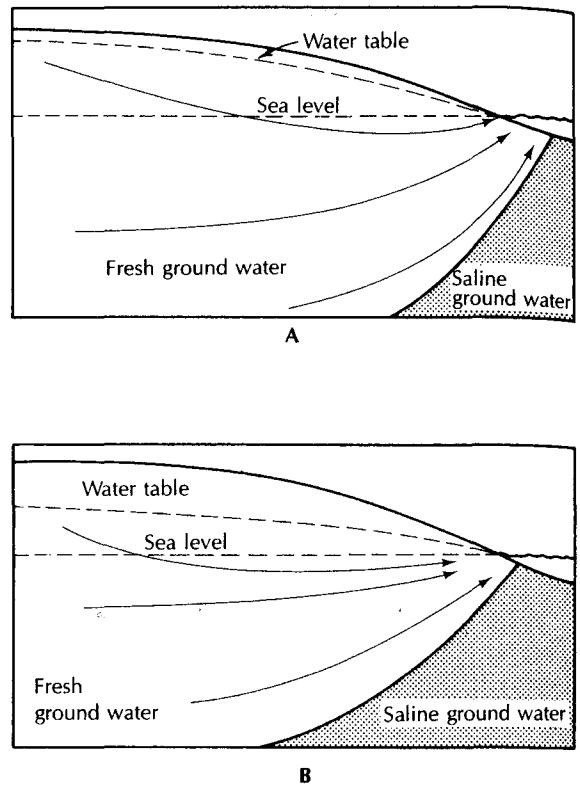
On Long Island, New York, there is an unconfined aquifer and two deep confined aquifers, all recharged by precipitation at the center of the island. Most of the fresh ground water discharges through the unconfined aquifer, with much lower volumes flowing in the confined aquifers. Wells drilled in a barrier island 28,600 ft (8700 m) from the coastline show fresh water the full depth of both confined aquifers, with 5 to 10 ft (1.5 to 3 m) of artesian head in the upper confined aquifer and 20 ft (6 m) in the lower. This is a distance of at least 11 to 12 mi (18 to 19 km) from the closest part of the recharge area for the confined aquifers (Pluhowski & Kantrowitz 1964).

The most characteristic type of water-quality degradation occurring in coastal plain aquifers is saline-water intrusion. Sources of saline water are found as connate water below inland fresh-water aquifers, as subsurface sea water below island aquifers, on the seaward edges of coastal aquifers, and as surface tidal waters in natural estuaries and artificial canals.

The shape and position of the boundary between saline ground water and fresh ground water is a function of the volume of fresh water discharging from the aquifer (excluding intrinsic aquifer characteristics). Any action that changes the volume of fresh-water discharge results in a consequent change in the salt-water–fresh-water boundary. It should be noted that minor fluctuations in the boundary position occur with tidal actions and seasonal and annual changes in the amount of fresh-water discharge. For this reason, the boundary is in a state of quasi-equilibrium. Natural changes in the equilibrium position can result from long-term changes in climatic patterns or the position of relative sea level.

Human action that results in saline ground water entering a fresh-water aquifer is termed **saline-water encroachment.** It occurs as a result of a diversion of fresh water that previously had discharged from a coastal aquifer. Salt-water encroachment can be either *active* or *passive* (Fetter 1973).

Passive saline-water encroachment occurs when some fresh water has been diverted from the aquifer—yet the hydraulic gradient in the aquifer is still sloping toward the salt-water–fresh-water boundary. In this case, the boundary will slowly shift landward until it reaches an equilibrium position based on the new discharge conditions. Passive saline-water



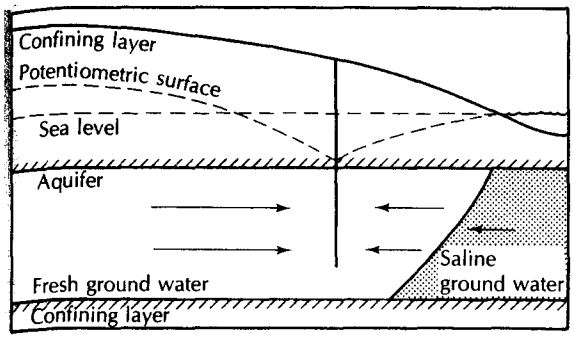
► FIGURE 8.34
A. Unconfined coastal aquifer under natural ground-water discharge conditions. **B.** Passive saline-water encroachment due to a general lowering of the water table. Flow in the fresh-water zone is still seaward.

encroachment is taking place today in many coastal plain aquifers where ground-water resources are being developed. It acts slowly and, in some areas, it may take hundreds of years for the boundary to move a significant distance (Figure 8.34).

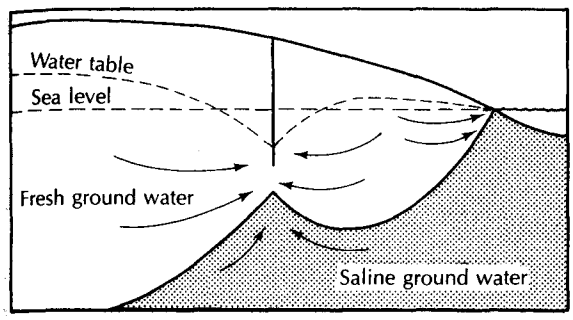
The consequences of active saline-water encroachment are considerably more severe, as the natural hydraulic gradient has been reversed and fresh water is actually moving away from the salt-water–fresh-water boundary (Figure 8.35). This occurrence is due mainly to the concentrated withdrawals of ground water creating a deep cone of depression. The boundary zone moves much more rapidly than it does during passive saline-water encroachment. Furthermore, it will not stop until it has reached the low point of the hydraulic gradient: the center of pumping. It is this type of rapid encroachment that destroyed the aquifers beneath Brooklyn, New York, in the 1930s, when the water table was lowered 30 to 50 ft (9 to 15 m) below sea level.

Both types of saline-water encroachment can occur in areas of inland connate saline waters as well as in coastal areas. In Baton Rouge, Louisiana, heavy industrial pumpage has lowered the potentiometric surface in the "600-ft sand" aquifer. This has caused connate saline ground water in the aquifer to move northward toward the well field (Kazmann 1970).

Saline-water encroachment is also a serious problem in the Miami area of Florida. The unconfined Biscayne aquifer is the sole source of ground water for this area, as the Floridan aquifer is salty here. The encroachment began with the 1907 installation of inland drainage canals to lower the water table. This diverted fresh water that had been flowing through the Biscayne aquifer to Biscayne Bay. Passive saline-water encroachment resulted as the salt-water–fresh-water boundary sought a new equilibrium position. Because of the high transmissivity of the aquifer, saline water occupied many areas of the Biscayne aquifer beneath Miami in only a few years (Parker et al. 1955). Seawater also moved up the canals to-



A



B

◀ FIGURE 8.35
A. Active saline-water encroachment in a confined aquifer with the potentiometric surface below sea level. **B.** Active saline-water encroachment in an unconfined aquifer with the water table drawn below sea level.

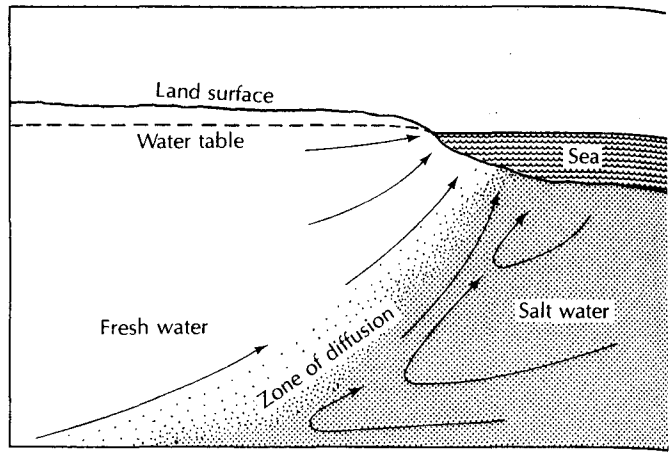
ward the aquifer during high tides. Dams have now been built across the canals to keep salt water from traveling up them. Water impounded behind the dams is fresh, adding to the available recharge to the Biscayne aquifer. This fresh water had formerly been lost to the sea during flooding. New canals must be constructed with salinity-control dams.

8.8 Fresh-Water–Saline-Water Relations

8.8.1 Coastal Aquifers

We have assumed to this point that the content of dissolved solids of ground water is so low that it does not affect the physics of flow. However, if fresh ground water is adjacent to saline ground water, the difference in density between the two fluids becomes very important. Due to the difference in dissolved solids, the density of the saline water, ρ_s, is greater than the density of fresh water, ρ_w. Salt water is found adjacent to fresh water in inland areas, often in the same aquifer, as well as in oceanic coastal areas and oceanic islands. Highly saline water in inland aquifers could be either trapped from the time of formation of the rock unit (connate water) or occur through mineralization due to stagnant flow conditions. At coastal locations, the fresh ground water beneath land is discharging near the coast and mixing with saline ground water beneath the sea floor.

Fresh ground water usually grades into saline water with a steady increase in the content of dissolved solids. In some situations, the contact may be quite sharp, that is, a very thin zone of mixed water. The mixture of fresh water and salt water yields the zone in which there is a salinity gradient. If the aquifer is subject to hydraulic head fluctuations caused by tides, the zone of mixed water will be enlarged. In unconfined coastal aquifers, there is ground-water flow occurring in both the fresh zone and the saline zone (Cooper



▶ FIGURE 8.36
Circulation of fresh and saline ground water at a zone of diffusion in a coastal aquifer. *Source: H. H. Cooper, Jr., U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1613-C, 1964.*

1959). Fresh water is flowing upward to discharge near the shoreline, and there is a cyclic flow in the salty water near the interface (Figure 8.36). We will make the simplifying assumption that there is a sharp interface between fresh water and saline water. Although the salt-water interface problem can be studied using dispersion and mass-transport theory (Bredehoeft & Pinder 1973; Segol, Pinder, & Gray 1975), the mathematical treatment is beyond the scope of this book. The zone of dispersion is often thin with respect to the overall thickness of the fresh-water lens. Likewise, we will consider only the steady-state case. Solutions have been developed for moving interface problems (Bredehoeft & Pinder 1973; Segol, Pinder, & Gray 1975; Anderson 1976; Collins & Gelhar 1971; Pinder & Cooper 1970) but they are too complex to be considered here.

A number of scientists have made significant contributions to the study of the saline water–fresh-water interface in coastal aquifers. Studies by W. Baydon-Ghyben (1888–1889) and A. Herzberg (1901) in the late nineteenth century have been widely cited and have given rise to the Ghyben-Herzberg principle, which we will now discuss. However, their work was antedated by more than half a century by an American, Joseph DuCommun (1828), who clearly made the same observations. Unfortunately, DuCommun is not given just credit in the literature.

These early observers noted that in unconfined coastal aquifers, the depth to which fresh water extends below sea level is approximately 40 times the height of the water table above sea level. The (misnamed) **Ghyben-Herzberg principle** states that

$$z_{(x,y)} = \frac{\rho_w}{\rho_s - \rho_w} h_{(x,y)} \tag{8.1}$$

where

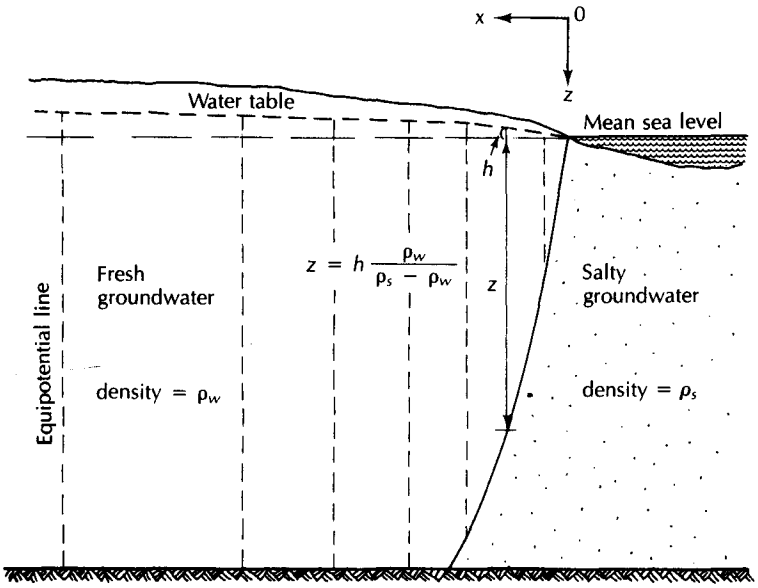
$z_{(x,y)}$ is the depth to the salt-water interface below sea level at location (x,y) (L; ft or m)

$h_{(x,y)}$ is the elevation of the water table above sea level at point (x,y) (L; ft or m)

ρ_w is the density of fresh water (M/L^3; g/cm^3)

ρ_s is the density of salt water (M/L^3; g/cm^3)

The application of this principle is limited to situations in which both the fresh water and salt water are static.



▲ FIGURE 8.37
Relationship of fresh-water head and depth to salt-water interface.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

If $\rho_w = 1.000\ \text{g/cm}^3$ and $\rho_s = 1.025\ \text{g/cm}^3$, what is the ratio of $z_{(x,y)}$ to $h_{(x,y)}$?

$$z_{(x,y)} = \frac{\rho_w}{\rho_s - \rho_w} h_{(x,y)}$$

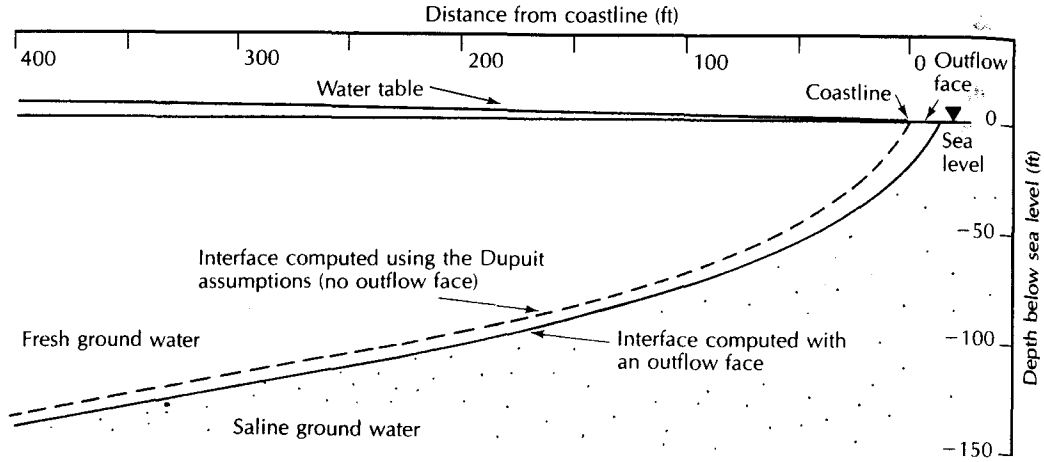
$$= \frac{1.000\ \text{g/cm}^3}{1.025\ \text{g/cm}^3 - 1.000\ \text{g/cm}^3} h_{(x,y)}$$

$$= 40h_{(x,y)}$$

Figure 8.37 illustrates the Ghyben-Herzberg principle for an unconfined coastal aquifer. Hubbert (1940) pointed out that $h_{(x,y)}$ should actually be the hydraulic head at the interface at point (x,y). However, for thin aquifers with a large vertical extent, the Dupuit assumption that equipotential lines are vertical can be made, so that the hydraulic head at the salt-water interface is equal to the elevation of the water table at that location (Fetter 1972b). In a study of the salt-water interface on eastern Long Island, it was shown that even at the coastline, where the greatest deviations from the Dupuit assumptions could be expected, there was almost no difference in the position of the interface as computed from potential theory versus Dupuit flow (Figure 8.38).

Flow in coastal aquifers can be described by means of the Dupuit equations in combination with the Ghyben-Herzberg principle. The steady flow of ground water is given by the partial differential equation (Fetter 1972b):

$$\frac{\partial^2 h^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h^2}{\partial y^2} = \frac{-2w}{K(1 + G)} \tag{8.2}$$



▲ FIGURE 8.38
Comparison of the position of the salt-water interface on eastern Long Island as computed using the Dupuit assumptions with that computed using an outflow face. *Source: C. W. Fetter, Jr.,* Water Resources *8 (1972): 1307–14. Used with permission.*

where

w is the recharge to the aquifer (L/T; ft/day, m/day)

K is the hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/day, m/day)

G is equal to $\dfrac{\rho_w}{\rho_s - \rho_w}$ (dimensionless)

Should the value of the depth to the salt-water interface, as computed by Equation 8.1 exceed the depth of the aquifer, then the salt-water wedge is missing. This is the case on the left side of Figure 8.37. In this region, the governing equation is (Polubarinova Kochina 1962)

$$\frac{\partial^2 h^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h^2}{\partial y^2} = \frac{-w}{K\,(z_m + h)} \tag{8.3}$$

where z_m is the aquifer thickness below sea level. Both Equations 8.2 and 8.3 can be solved for an infinite-strip coastline, that is, one with flow in only one direction. The x- and z-axes are shown on Figure 8.37.

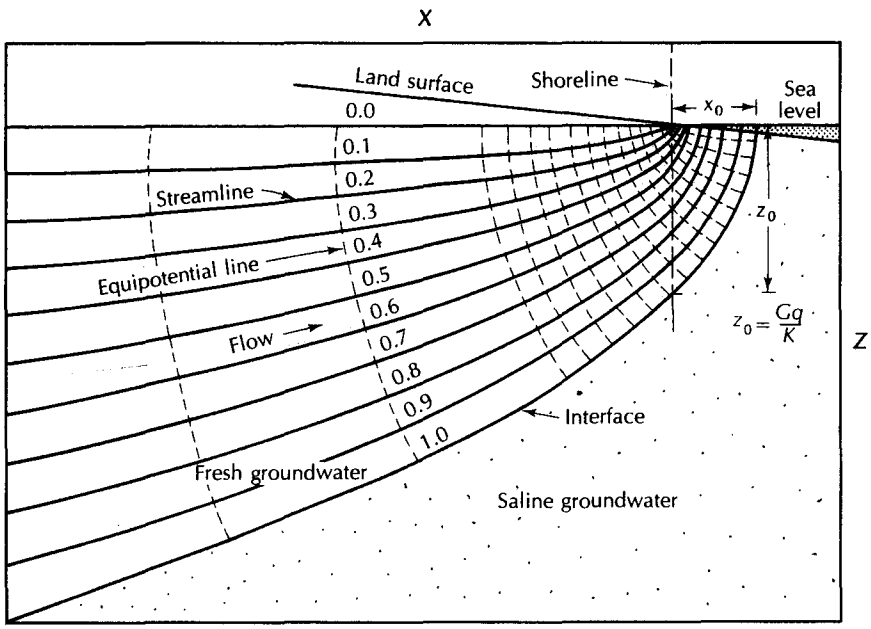
The *Dupuit-Ghyben-Herzberg model* of one-dimensional flow in coastal aquifers yields the following expression for the x- and z-coordinates of the interface (Todd 1953):

$$z = \sqrt{\frac{2q'xG}{K}} \tag{8.4}$$

where q' is the discharge from the aquifer at the coastline, per unit width $[(L^3/T)/L]$.

One of the failings of the Dupuit-Ghyben-Herzberg model of coastal aquifers is that the salt-water interface intercepts the water table at the coastline. This does not allow for vertical components of flow and discharge of the fresh water into the sea floor. Therefore a simple model has been developed in which the x- and z-coordinates of the interface are given by the following relation (Glover 1964):

$$z = \sqrt{\frac{G^2 q'^2}{K^2} + \frac{2Gq'x}{K}} \tag{8.5}$$



▲ FIGURE 8.39
Flow pattern near a beach as computed using Equation 8.5. *Source: R. E. Glover, U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1613-C, 1964.*

Note that Equation 8.5 is identical to 8.4, except that a constant, Gq'/K, has been added. Thus, when $x = 0$, z will still have a value. The interface is shown in Figure 8.39.

The width of the outflow face, x_0, may be found from the expression

$$x_0 = -\frac{Gq'}{2K} \tag{8.6}$$

and the height of the water table at any distance, x, from the coast is given by

$$h = \sqrt{\frac{2q'x}{GK}} \tag{8.7}$$

8.8.2 Oceanic Islands

Oceanic islands are underlain by salty ground water as well as being surrounded by sea water. The fresh water takes the form of a fresh-water lens floating on the more dense salty water. Equation 8.2 also describes the flow of water in an oceanic island. It can be solved for islands of regular shape, such as an infinite strip or circle.

For an infinite-strip island receiving recharge at a rate, w, with a width equal to $2a$, the head of the water table, h, at any distance, x, from the shoreline is given by (Fetter 1972b):

$$h^2 = \frac{w[a^2 - (a - x)^2]}{K(1 + G)} \tag{8.8}$$

A circular island with a radius of distance R can be evaluated using

$$h^2 = \frac{w(R^2 - r^2)}{2K(1 + G)} \tag{8.9}$$

where h is the head above sea level at some radial distance, r, from the center of the island.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Part A: An infinite-strip island has a width of 2 km. The permeability of the sediments is 10^{-} cm/s and there is a daily accretion of 0.13 cm/day. The density of fresh water is 1.000 and th density of salty ground water is 1.025. Compute a water-table profile across the island usin Equation 8.8. Then determine the interface depth using Equation 8.1.

$$G = \frac{1}{1.025 - 1} = 40$$

$$K = 10^{-2}\ \text{cm/s} = 8.64\ \text{m/day}$$

$$w = 0.0013\ \text{m/day}$$

$$a = 1000\ \text{m}$$

$$h^2 = \frac{w[a^2 - (a - x)^2]}{K(1 + G)}$$

$$z = Gh$$

x (m)	h (m)	z (m)
1000	1.92	76.8
900	1.91	76.4
800	1.88	75.2
700	1.83	73.2
600	1.76	70.4
500	1.66	66.4
400	1.53	61.2
300	1.37	54.8
200	1.15	46.0
100	0.84	33.6
0	0	0

Part B: From the computed profile, it can be seen that the fresh-water lens thins very rapidly ir the last 100 m as the shoreline is approached. As the Dupuit assumptions may not be valid nea the coastline, the profile of the interface close to the coast can be computed by use of Equation 8.5 The outflow per unit width, q', is equal to the recharge rate times the half-width.

$$q' = 0.0013\ \text{m}^3/\text{day} \times 1000\ \text{m}$$

$$= 1.3\ \text{m}^3/\text{day/m}$$

$$z = \frac{Gq'}{K} + \sqrt{\frac{2Gq'x}{K}}$$

x (m)	z (m)
0	6.0
20	21.5
40	28.0
60	32.9
80	37.1
100	40.7

Find the width of the outflow face:

$$x_0 = -\frac{Gq'}{2K}$$

$$= -3.0 \text{ m}$$

Find the height of the water table at a distance from the coast of 100 m:

$$h = \sqrt{\frac{2q'x}{GK}}$$

$$= 0.87 \text{ m}$$

Comparison of the position of the salt-water interface in a coastal aquifer as computed by using Equation 8.4, which does not allow for an outflow face, with the position computed by Equation 8.5, which includes an outflow face, will show the results are similar (see Figure 8.38). However, the solution using Equation 8.5 will be more exact at the coastline and in that area will show a greater value of head and a greater depth to the interface. The coastal zone is about 1% to 5% of the total width of the island (Vacher 1987). The two equations will yield essentially the same results away from the coastal zone. Use of Equations 8.1, 8.4, 8.8, and 8.9 will result in a slight error near the coastline owing to the lack of allowance for an outflow face.

However, the Dupuit-Ghyben-Herzberg model for oceanic islands has been used successfully in several field applications (for example, Fetter 1972b; Vacher 1988; Wallis, Vacher, & Stewart 1991; Vacher & Wallis 1992; Calvache & Pulido-Bosch 1994).

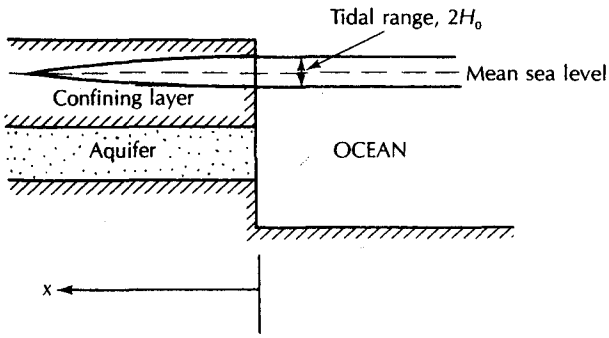
8.9 Tidal Effects

Aquifers located next to tidal bodies are subject to short-term fluctuations in the head, h, due to the tide. Water-level recorders located in coastal wells show a fluctuation in the hydraulic head that parallels the rise and fall of the tide. The amplitude of the fluctuation is greatest at the coast and diminishes as one goes inland.

If we have a confined aquifer, as shown in Figure 8.40, water can enter at the subsurface outcrop. The governing flow equation in one dimension can be used to describe the flow of water into and out of the aquifer as the tide changes.

The amplitude of the tidal change is H_0 and the tidal period, or time for the tide to go from one extreme to the other, is t_0. At any distance, x, inland from the coast, the amplitude of the tidal fluctuation, H_x, is given by (Jacob 1950)

$$H_x = H_0 \exp\left(-x\sqrt{\pi S/t_0 T}\right) \tag{8.10}$$



◀ FIGURE 8.40
Coastal aquifer showing the tidal range, $2H_0$, and the effect of the tide on the potentiometric surface.

where S and T are the aquifer storativity and transmissivity.

The time lag, t_τ, between the high tide and the peak of the water level (or low tide and the low point in the water level) is given by

$$t_\tau = x\sqrt{t_0 S/4\pi T} \tag{8.11}$$

The preceding equations can also be applied to unconfined flow, as an approximation, if the range of tidal fluctuations is small compared with the saturated aquifer thickness (Erskine 1991).

Equations 8.10 and 8.11 show that the response of the hydraulic head in an aquifer to changes in the tides decreases exponentially with distance from the coast, whereas the time lag increases linearly with distance.

8.10 Ground-Water Regions of the United States

One useful generalization in the study of hydrogeology is the concept of ground-water regions. These are geographical areas of similar occurrence of ground water. If an area is subdivided into several smaller regions, useful comparisons can be made between areas of well-known hydrogeology and areas that are geologically similar but have not been as well studied.

The ground-water regions of the United States have been classified by several different authorities. In 1923, O. E. Meinzer, who could be considered to be the father of modern hydrogeology in the United States, proposed a classification system based on 21 different ground-water provinces (Meinzer, 1923a). Thomas (1952) proposed a system based on 10 ground-water regions and then McGuinness (1963) revised Thomas's system. Heath published yet another revision of Thomas's basic system (Heath 1984). Heath based his classification system on five features of ground-water systems:

1. The components of the system and their arrangement
2. The nature of the water-bearing openings of the dominant aquifer or aquifers with respect to whether they are of primary or secondary origin
3. The mineral composition of the rock matrix of the dominant aquifers with respect to whether it is soluble or insoluble.
4. The water storage and transmission characteristics of the dominant aquifer or aquifers
5. The nature and location of recharge and discharge areas

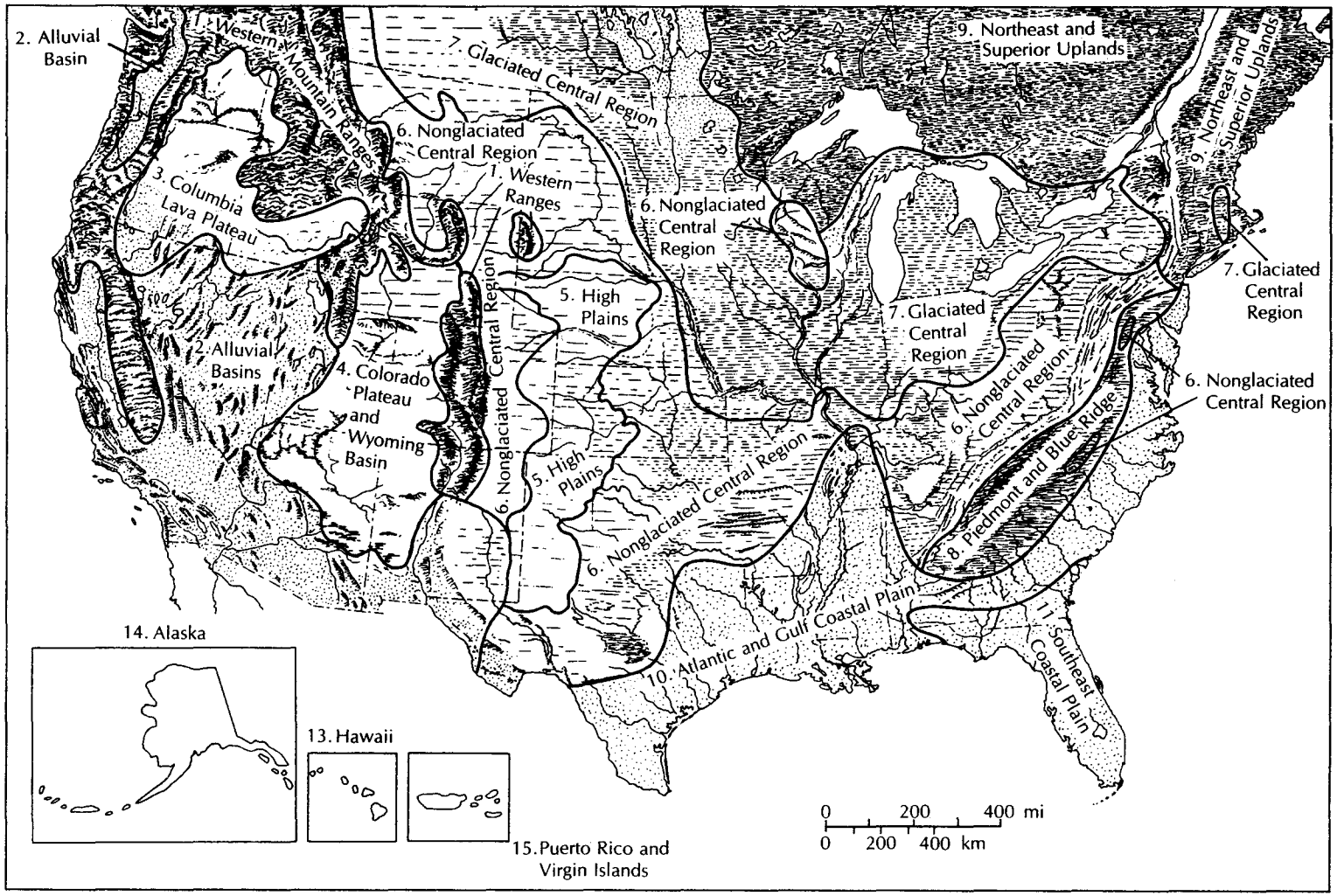
Eleven of the ground-water regions are based on physiography and are not necessarily contiguous. The locations of these areas are shown in Figure 8.41. Area 12 comprises alluvial valleys throughout the United States and is shown on Figure 8.42. Area 13 is Hawaii, area 14 is Alaska, and area 15 is Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands.

In 1988, Heath defined the ground-water regions of North America as the organizing theme of the book, *Geology of North America: Hydrogeology* (vol. 0–2). In addition to extending his coverage to include all of Canada and Mexico, some of his 1984 regions in the United States were subdivided for editorial purposes. In this text we will retain the 1984 subdivisions, which are based on the character of the underlying rock units and recharge/discharge relationships.

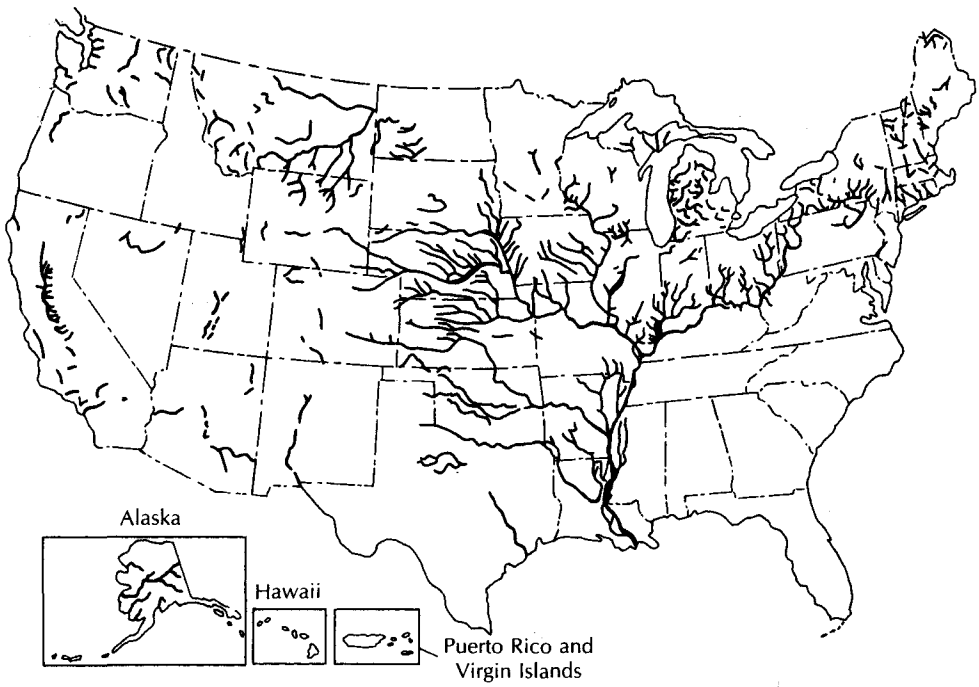
8.10.1 Western Mountain Ranges

This region consists of mountains with thin soils over fractured rocks and alternating narrow alluvial valleys, some of which have been glaciated.

The mountains of the western United States are the headwater areas of many rivers including the Columbia, Snake, San Joaquin, Sacramento, Missouri, Platte, Colorado



▲ FIGURE 8.41
Ground-water regions of the United States. *Source: R. C. Heath, U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2242, 1984.*



▲ FIGURE 8.42
Alluvial Valleys ground-water region. *Source: R. C. Heath, U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2242, 1984.*

Arkansas, and Rio Grande. The mountains tend to be well watered, receiving higher levels of precipitation than the surrounding lowlands. The rocks in the western mountains are predominantly crystalline, although there are some sedimentary ranges. Intermontane valleys may contain aquifers of alluvial deposits of glacial outwash. Most consolidated rock aquifers are of local rather than regional extent. Mountain ranges included in this region are the northern Coast Ranges, the Sierra Nevada and Cascade Range, parts of the physiographic Basin and Range Province, and the Rocky Mountains.

8.10.2 Alluvial Basins

This region consists of thick alluvial deposits in basins and valleys that are bordered by uplifted mountain ranges.

Lying between the ranges of the western mountains are tectonic troughs that have been partially filled with erosional products from the adjacent uplands and mountains. The sediment filling the valleys has been sorted into various size fractions by running water. Sand and gravel layers are found interspersed between silt and clay deposits. The valley-fill material is porous; hence, there are many permeable zones—especially, close to the mountains, where coarser debris was deposited in coalescing alluvial fans.

Runoff coming from the mountains can soak into the coarse deposits; however, rainfall over the basins themselves may be rather low. The deep sedimentary basins hold vast volumes of water in storage. Many of the aquifers can yield large amounts of water to individual wells. Demands for water are high, and the amount of ground-water recharge is relatively low. As a result, the water in storage is being withdrawn and ground-water levels are falling in many of the basins. Land subsidence due to the lowered ground-water levels in some of the basins is also a problem.

8.10.3 Columbia Lava Plateau

This region consists of thin soils overlying a thick sequence of basalt flows with interbedded sediments.

The Columbia Lava Plateau is formed of intrusive volcanic rock with interbedded alluvium and lake sediments. The plateau is somewhat arid, but some of the higher areas and surrounding mountains are more humid.

The lava flows are nearly horizontal, with some layers and interflow surfaces highly permeable. Shrinkage cracks create vertical permeability. The amount of water in storage is high; it is replenished by local precipitation, runoff from nearby mountains, and excess irrigation water applied to the surface.

The plateau is deeply dissected by the Columbia and Snake Rivers and their tributaries. There are many large springs flowing from the permeable basalt layers into incised rivers (e.g., the Thousand Springs area of the Snake River). Ground water is obtained from wells in the basalt, many of them 1000 ft (300 m) deep or more. Glacial outwash gravel deposits along many of the rivers also are productive aquifers.

8.10.4 Colorado Plateau and Wyoming Basin

This region consists of thin soils over consolidated sedimentary rocks.

The Colorado Plateau and Wyoming Basin are areas of extensive sedimentary rocks. The strata are flat-lying for the most part, but some areas have been tilted, folded, or faulted. At different levels, there are a number of plateaus that are deeply dissected by the Colorado River system or the Missouri River system. The sediments are chiefly shales and low-permeability sandstones.

The rate of ground-water recharge is very low, as the warm and arid climate causes most of the precipitation to be quickly evaporated. Some of the higher plateaus, such as the southern edge of the Colorado, do receive somewhat more precipitation. The most productive consolidated rock aquifer of the region, the Coconino Sandstone (Permian), crops out here. Other aquifers include the Dakota Sandstone (Cretaceous), the Entrada and Junction Creek Sandstones (Jurassic), and the Wingate Sandstone (Triassic). Small amounts of water can be obtained from sandstone and limestone aquifers, which can receive local recharge, as well as from some alluvial deposits, such as the Uinta Basin at the edge of the Uinta Range. In general, the Colorado Plateau–Wyoming Basin is a water-poor region.

8.10.5 High Plains

This region consists of thick alluvial deposits over sedimentary rocks.

The High Plains ground-water region corresponds with the High Plains part of the physiographic Great Plains Province. This area is underlain by sedimentary rocks that dip gently to the east and are upturned at their contact with the Rocky Mountains and other places at which dome mountains, such as the Black Hills, have pushed through them. The entire surface is mantled with an alluvial apron representing material eroded from the Rocky Mountains. This alluvial cover, known as the Ogallala Formation, slopes to the east, but has been dissected in some areas.

The area of Nebraska between the Platte and Niobrara Rivers is mantled with deposits of windblown sand—the Sand Hills. Both the Sand Hills and the Ogallala Formation (Pliocene) are highly porous and permeable. Rivers, which have cut all the way into bedrock, isolate these unconsolidated aquifers from recharge by streams draining from the Rocky Mountains. Recharge is by means of local precipitation, and the Sand Hills receive enough to be relatively well supplied compared with the rest of the High Plains. The Ogallala Formation is the major aquifer through most of the High Plains. It had a large volume of water in storage, but with heavy ground-water development for irrigation, water levels are rapidly falling—particularly in Texas and New Mexico.

Consolidated rock aquifers in Nebraska include units of the Arikaree Group (Miocene), Chadron Formation (Oligocene), and Dakota Group (Cretaceous). The Dakota Group is overlain by up to 3000 ft (1000 m) of impermeable Pierre Shale and is recharged in the Black Hills outcrop area. Water is also obtained from Quarternary-age river alluvium along modern rivers, which can furnish a local source for recharge.

8.10.6 Nonglaciated Central Region

This region consists of thin regolith over sedimentary rocks.

The Nonglaciated Central Region encompasses a large area of the central United States extending from the Rocky Mountains to the Appalachian Plateau and Valley and Ridge physiographic province and includes several small outlying sections such as the driftless area of Wisconsin and the Triassic sedimentary basins of the East. The bedrock underlying the region consists of level or gently tilted and folded sedimentary rocks ranging in age from Paleozoic to middle Tertiary. The land surface encompasses plains and plateaus and is gently rolling to sharply dissected. Climate ranges from semiarid to humid, but most of the area is subhumid to humid.

Consolidated rock aquifers include the Edwards Limestone (Cretaceous) of southwestern and central Texas, from which a flowing well in San Antonio yielded 24 million gallons per day (1050 L/s) when first drilled. Sands of the Trinity Group (early Cretaceous) and Woodbine Sand (late Cretaceous) are productive aquifers in north-central Texas and southern Oklahoma. These units include primarily clay, sand, and slightly consolidated sandstone. The Dakota Sandstone (late Cretaceous), Minnelusa Formation (Pennsylvanian and Permian), and Pahasapa Limestone (early Mississippian) are bedrock aquifers in South Dakota. In North Dakota, the Dakota Sandstone and Lakota Formation (early Cretaceous) are important. In eastern Montana, the Hell Creek Formation (late Cretaceous), Fox Hills Sandstone (late Cretaceous), and Fort Union Formation (Paleocene) are widespread. Other aquifers in Montana that are more restricted are the Judith River Formation (late Cretaceous) and the Kootenai, Dakota, and Lakota Formations (Cretaceous). Fresh water may be available at depth from the Madison Limestone (Mississippian). The Roswell Basin of New Mexico includes the San Andres Limestone (Permian), which is confined by the Artesia Group. The initially high artesian heads in the Roswell Basin have long since declined owing to the many flowing wells, as has the head in the Dakota Sandstone elsewhere. Limestone aquifers also occur in Arkansas, Missouri, Kentucky, and Tennessee. These units tend to be cavernous and many yield large springs, but generally they are not very productive because of the sporadic occurrence of water and the low storage capacity.

Carbonate aquifers, such as the Knox Dolomite of the Valley and Ridge physiographic province, provide ground water in many parts of the eastern sectors of this region.

8.10.7 Glaciated Central Region

This region consists of glacial deposits over sedimentary rocks.

The Glaciated Central Region extends from the Catskill Mountains in New York to the northern Great Plains in Montana and includes the Triassic Valley of central Connecticut and Massachusetts. Only the eastern part of the region is underlain by uplands. The bedrock aquifers of the area are contiguous with those in the adjacent nonglaciated areas.

The principal feature of the Glaciated Central Region is the yield of ground water from glacial drift. Outwash plains and buried bedrock valleys are the principal sources. Most of the drift is fine grained, but there are numerous sand and gravel deposits. The region ranges from semiarid in North Dakota to humid in the Great Lakes states.

Major bedrock aquifers include limestones and sandstones of Paleozoic age. Some of these are widespread and include the following: Mt. Simon Sandstone, Galesville Sandstone, Ironton Sandstone, Franconia Sandstone, Jordan Sandstone, and Trempealeau For-

mation (all Cambrian); Prairie du Chien Formation and St. Peter Sandstone (both Ordovician). These are the bedrock aquifers of eastern Iowa, southern Minnesota, southern Wisconsin, and northern Illinois. The bedrock aquifers are collectively known locally as the deep aquifer, sandstone aquifer, or Cambrian-Ordovician aquifer. Elsewhere in this region the Paleozoic bedrock aquifers are not regional in extent, and saline water in them tends to be a problem. In areas underlain by Precambrian crystalline rocks, the yield to wells is generally small. Alluvium, especially glaciofluvial deposits, is a major source of ground water.

8.10.8 Piedmont–Blue Ridge Region

This region consists of a thick mantle of weathering residuum over fractured crystalline and metamorphic rock.

The Appalachian Mountains are a part of the Piedmont–Blue Ridge Region. Bedrock in the area includes metamorphic and crystalline rocks of the Piedmont and Blue Ridge. Precipitation ranges from 30 in. (76 cm) up to 75 in. (190 cm).

Weathered zones in the metamorphic rocks of the Piedmont yield small to moderate amounts of water almost anywhere, with larger-yield wells possible on fracture traces. More-productive wells are usually in valleys rather than on hilltops. Some sandstone units that lie in belts parallel to the structural trend are also moderately good aquifers. There is little ground water in the Blue Ridge; for the most part, the bedrock is impermeable.

8.10.9 Northeast and Superior Uplands

This region consists of glacial deposits over fractured crystalline rock.

There are two separate areas in this region. One is in northeast New York State and northern New England and the other is in northern Wisconsin and Minnesota. The region extends into Canada as the Canadian shield. Glacial deposits of varying thickness mantle crystalline bedrock. Ground water is obtained from fractures in the bedrock or from permeable glacial deposits. Glacial outwash in the form of sand and gravel deposits forms the best aquifer systems in this region. The area is humid, with 30 to 45 in. (76 to 114 cm) of precipitation.

8.10.10 Atlantic and Gulf Coastal Plain

This region consists of complex sequences of interbedded sand, silt, clay, and limestone.

The Atlantic and Gulf Coastal Plain starts at Cape Cod and includes Long Island and southern New Jersey, most of each of the Atlantic coastal states, part of Alabama and Mississippi, parts of Missouri and Arkansas, all of Louisiana, and southeastern Texas. At the interior edge, the deposits thin to a featheredge and thicken toward the coast. They consist of unconsolidated to consolidated continental and marine sediments. Almost all of the coastal plain has a humid climate, with ample water available to recharge the aquifers.

Cape Cod and Long Island are covered with glacial deposits, including outwash, which is a good aquifer. Pleistocene sediments are also the most productive aquifer in Delaware. Elsewhere, the coastal plain deposits contain many excellent aquifers, including sands, sandstones, dolomites, and limestones. Saline water is present at the coasts and at depth in many of the areas. Otherwise, water quality is generally good.

Major aquifers of the Atlantic Coastal Plain include the Magothy Formation and Lloyd Sand Member of the Raritan Formation (both Cretaceous) of Long Island and northern New Jersey, Cheswold and Fredonia aquifers (Miocene) in Delaware, and Castle Hayne Limestone of North Carolina. A number of good aquifers exist in Texas and include the Wilcox Group and Carrizo Sand (Eocene); Catahoula Sandstone, Oakville Sandstone, and sand units of Lagarto Clay (Miocene); and Goliad Sand, Willis Sand, and sand units of the Lissie Formation (Pliocene to Pleistocene). Other states have equally productive aquifers, either unnamed or of local extent.

8.10.11 Southeast Coastal Plain

This region consists of thick layers of sand and clay over semiconsolidated and consolidated carbonate rock.

This area includes the Florida Peninsula and parts of coastal South Carolina, Georgia, and Alabama. The surface is underlain by unconsolidated deposits of clay, sand, gravel, and shell beds. Deeper layers consist of alternating layers of semiconsolidated and consolidated limestones and dolomites. The Floridan aquifer is located in the carbonate units and is one of the most prolific aquifers in the world. It is confined by the overlying Hawthorn Formation. Water may also be obtained from the surficial sand and gravel deposits. This region is described in greater detail as a case study in Chapter 7.

8.10.12 Alluvial Valleys

This region consists of thick sand and gravel deposits beneath floodplains and stream terrace deposits.

The Alluvial Valley region is not one of geographic continuity, but rather one of similar geologic origin. Many river systems have deposited thick sequences of sand and gravel, which are highly porous and permeable. Much of the sand and gravel is glacial outwash deposited by streams that carried water away from the melting ice front during the Pleistocene. These sediments were deposited far beyond the extent of the glaciers in some instances. They represent long, narrow aquifer systems and, as in most cases, are the foundations for modern river systems, with an ample supply of water to recharge that removed by pumping. The Miami River of Dayton, Ohio, is an example.

8.10.13 Hawaiian Islands

This region consists of lava flows interbedded with ash deposits and segmented by dikes.

The occurrence of ground water in the Hawaiian Islands has already been discussed as a case study in this chapter. Ground water occurs in several different types of aquifers, with some boundary conditions that are unique to the Hawaiian Islands. Different types of ground-water development schemes, such as Maui tunnels and inclined wells, are necessary to capture the ground water by skimming, thereby preventing saline-water encroachment.

8.10.14 Alaska

This region consists of glacial and alluvial deposits, occupied in part by permafrost and overlying bedrock of various types.

Alaska is placed in a single ground-water region for reasons of convenience. There are many different terranes in which ground water occurs in Alaska. The state is thinly populated and not a great deal of ground-water exploration has taken place. The occurrence of ground water is to a large extent controlled by the permafrost. In areas of continuous permafrost, ground-water supplies are limited to small, discontinuous thawed areas beneath large lakes and rivers. In the area of discontinuous permafrost, the water in the sand and gravel deposits is frequently not frozen and is available for development. Most inhabited areas of Alaska have glacial outwash or river alluvium that can serve as an aquifer.

8.10.15 Puerto Rico

This region consists of alluvium and limestones overlying and bordering fractured igneous rocks.

This region contains the islands of Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands. These islands are generally hilly and underlain by both limestones and volcanic and intrusive igneous rocks. These islands receive high amounts of rainfall; ground-water recharge averages almost 6 ft (2 m) annually in Puerto Rico. Alluvium, which occurs in stream valleys and along the coast areas, is an effective aquifer where sand and gravel are present. The limestone areas are also aquifers; however, the volcanic rocks are metamorphosed and contain water mainly in fractures, as do other dense crystalline rocks.

Notation

a	Half-width of an infinite-strip oceanic island
G	$\rho_w/(\rho_s - \rho_w)$
$h_{(x,y)}$	Elevation of the water table above sea level
H_0	Tidal fluctuation
H_x	Fluctuation of potentiometric surface due to tidal fluctuation at distance x from coast
K	Hydraulic conductivity
q'	Discharge per unit width
R	Radius of circular oceanic island
r	Radial distance from the center of a circular island
S	Aquifer storativity
T	Aquifer transmissivity
t_0	Tidal period from high to low tide
w	Recharge to the aquifer
x	Distance from the coast
x_0	Width of the outflow face
$z_{(x,y)}$	Depth to the salt-water interface
t_τ	Time lag between tidal high (or low) and ground-water high (or low)
ρ_s	Density of saline water
ρ_w	Density of fresh water

Problems

Answers to odd-numbered problems appear at the end of the book.

1. At a tropical coastal aquifer the ground water is stagnant. The density of fresh water is 0.998 g/cm^3 and that of the underlying salt water is 1.024 g/cm^3. If the fresh-water head is 14.2 ft above mean sea level, what is the depth to the salt-water interface?
2. The fresh water at a coastal area has a density of 0.999 g/cm^3, and the underlying saline water has a density of 1.025 g/cm^3. If the fresh-water head is 3.75 m above mean sea level, what is the depth to the salt-water interface?
3. A coastal aquifer has a mean hydraulic conductivity of 2.61 m/day. The density of fresh water is 1.000 g/cm^3 and the density of underlying saline water is 1.024 g/cm^3. The ground-water discharge per unit width of the coastline is 0.00345 m^2/d.
   (A) What is the depth to the salt-water interface at a point 125 m inland?
   (B) What is the elevation of the water table above mean sea level at a point 125 m inland?
   (C) What is the depth to the salt-water interface at the shoreline?
   (D) What is the width of the outflow face?
4. A coastal aquifer has a mean hydraulic conductivity of 4.15 m/d. The density of fresh water is 1.000 g/cm^3 and the density of underlying saline water is 1.025 g/cm^3. The ground-water discharge per unit width of the coastline is 0.0127 m^2/d.
   (A) What is the depth to the salt-water interface at a point 100 m inland?
   (B) What is the elevation of the water table above mean sea level at a point 100 m inland?
   (C) What is the depth to the salt-water interface at the shoreline?
   (D) What is the width of the outflow face?
5. The aquifer beneath a circular oceanic island has a mean hydraulic conductivity of 312 ft/d. The amount of recharge is 0.00831 ft/d. The density of fresh water is 1.000 g/cm^3 and the density of underlying saline water is 1.024 g/cm^3. If the island is 8715 ft in diameter, what is the depth to the salt-water interface in the center of the island?
6. The aquifer beneath an infinite-strip oceanic island has a mean hydraulic conductivity of 312 ft/d. The amount of recharge is 0.00831 ft/d. The density of fresh water is 1.000 g/cm^3 and the density of underlying saline water is 1.024 g/cm^3. If the island is 8715 ft in width, what is the depth to the salt-water interface in the center of the island?



CHAPTER 9

Water Chemistry

They [clouds] are often wafted about and borne by the winds from one region to another, where by their density they could become so heavy that they fall in thick rain; and if the heat of the sun is added to the power of the element of fire, the clouds are drawn up higher still and find a greater degree of cold, in which they form ice and fall in storms of hail. Now the same heat which holds up so great a weight of water as is seen to rain from the clouds, draws them from below upwards, from the foot of the mountains, and leads and holds them within the summits of the mountains and these, finding some fissure, issue continuously and cause rivers.

Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519)

9.1 Introduction

For most of its uses, the chemical properties of water are as important as the physical properties and available quantity. In the next chapter, we will consider water quality, which involves the type and amount of substances dissolved in the water. In this chapter, our focus will be the chemical reactions that occur between water and the solids and gases it contacts.

Natural waters are never pure; they always contain at least small amounts of dissolved gases and solids. The composition of the aqueous solution is a function of a multiplicity of factors, for example, the initial composition of the water, the partial pressure of the gas phase, the type of mineral matter the water contacts, and the pH and oxidation potential of the solution. Water containing a biotic assemblage has an even more complex chemistry owing to the life processes of the biota.

The detailed study of water chemistry is far beyond the scope of this chapter. We will concentrate on the aspect of solubility of gases and liquids in dilute aqueous solutions. Further, we will assume that all reactions take place at a pressure of 1 atm. Small deviations from this assumption (a few

atmospheres pressure) will not lead to significant error (Hem 1985). The systems considered will be presumed to be abiotic.

It is very difficult to collect a sample of ground water that is actually representative of the chemistry of the water as it exists in the ground. The process of drawing the sample up from the aquifer by means of a well and pump can change the pressure of the water. The sample may also be exposed to atmospheric oxygen during the sampling process. As a result, the Eh, pH, and equilibrium conditions of the water can change. Ground-water monitoring and methods of collecting representative ground-water samples are discussed in Chapter 10.

9.2 Units of Measurement

Chemical analysis of an aqueous solution yields the amount of solute in a specified amount of water. There are several ways in which this can be reported.

Weight per weight units are dimensionless ratios of the weight of the solute divided by the weight of the solvent, for example, *parts per million* (ppm) and *parts per billion* (ppb). These units are no longer commonly used, but the terms are still used.

Weight per volume units are the more commonly used units today. They are expressed in terms of weight of solute per volume of water. Common units are **milligrams per liter (mg/L)** and **micrograms per liter (μg/L).** As a liter of pure water contains 1 million milligrams at 3.89°C, the temperature at which it is most dense, it is commonly assumed that 1 ppm is equal to 1 mg/L. The density and hence weight of a liter of water will change with temperature and dissolved mineral matter. However, as a practical matter, the density corrections are necessary only if the dissolved solids of the water are in excess of 7000 mg/L (Hem 1985).

Equivalent weight units are handy when the chemical behavior of the solute is being considered. The equivalent, or combining, weight of a dissolved ionic species is the formula weight divided by the electrical charge. By dividing a concentration in milligrams per liter by the equivalent weight of the ion, the result is a concentration expressed in **milliequivalents per liter (meq/L).** Dissolved species such as silica, which is not ionic, cannot be expressed in meq/L.

In chemical thermodynamics, units of **molality** are useful. One *mole* (mol) of a compound is its formula weight in grams. A solution of one mole per 1000 g of solvent is a one-*molal* solution; a solution of 1 mol of solute per liter of solution is a one-*molar* solution. For dilute solutions, up to about 0.01 molal, the concentration expressed in either molality or molarity is equal.

For dilute solutions, it is not necessary to make density corrections; the following conversion factors may be used (Back & Hanshaw 1965):

$$\text{Molality} = \frac{\text{milligrams per liter} \times 10^{-3}}{\text{formula weight in grams}} \tag{9.1}$$

$$\text{Molality} = \frac{\text{milliequivalents per liter} \times 10^{-3}}{\text{valence of ion}} \tag{9.2}$$

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Part A: What is the weight of NaCl in a 0.01-molal solution?

Atomic weight of sodium = 22.991
Atomic weight of chlorine = 35.457
One mole of NaCl = 58.448 g
0.01 mol = 0.01 × 58.448 g = 0.58448 g
0.01-molal solution = 0.58448 g NaCl in 1000 g H_2O

Part B: What is the concentration of NaCl in a 0.01-molal solution at 25°C?
At 25°C, the density of water is 0.99707 g/mL. The volume of 1000 g is 1000 g/0.99707 g/mL, or 1002.94 mL. The concentration is 0.58448 g in 1.00294 L, or 582.8 mg/L.

9.3 Types of Chemical Reactions in Water

Chemical reactions in an aqueous solution are either *reversible* or *irreversible*. Those that are reversible can reach equilibrium with their hydrochemical environment and are amenable to study by kinetic and thermodynamic methods.

The simplest aqueous reaction is the dissociation of an inorganic salt. If the salt is present in excess, it will tend to form a saturated solution:

$$NaCl \rightleftharpoons Na^+ + Cl^- \quad (9.3$$

Natural systems always tend toward equilibrium; thus, if the solution is undersaturated more salt will dissolve. If it is supersaturated, salt will crystallize, although for kinetic reasons the solution may remain supersaturated. Notice that the water molecule does not actively participate in this reaction.

Water molecules can actively bond with either a gas or solid in a reversible reaction:

$$CaCO_3 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+} + HCO_3^- + OH^- \quad (9.4$$

$$CO_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons HCO_3^- + H^+ \quad (9.5$$

In this type of reaction, the water molecule breaks into H^+ and OH^- ions when combining with the species in solution.

Reversible oxidation-reduction reactions may also involve the transfer of electrons from one ion to another. When this happens, the species undergo a valence change:

$$4Fe^{2+} + 3O_2 \rightleftharpoons 2Fe_2O_3 + 4e^- \quad (9.6$$

In this example, the ferrous iron is oxidized to ferric iron by the transfer of an electron from the iron to the oxygen.

A gas or solid may also dissolve in an aqueous solution without dissociation:

$$O_{2\,(gas)} \rightleftharpoons O_{2\,(aqueous)} \quad (9.7$$

9.4 Law of Mass Action

If a reversible reaction can go in either of two directions, which way will it go? The answer to this basic question is found in the **law of mass action,** which suggests that the reaction will strive to reach equilibrium. In an aqueous mixture, both reactions are occurring simultaneously:

$$A + B \rightarrow C + D \quad (9.8A)$$

and

$$C + D \rightarrow A + B \quad (9.8B)$$

At chemical equilibrium, the two rates are equal; thus, if the mixture is not at chemical equilibrium, it will proceed in the direction that produces equilibrium. A chemical reaction may be expressed as

$$cC + dD \rightleftharpoons xX + yY \quad (9.9)$$

where capital letters represent chemical constituents and lowercase letters represent coefficients. The *equilibrium concentration* of each chemical formula is [X], and the **equilibrium constant, K,** for the given reaction is

$$K = \frac{[X]^x[Y]^y}{[C]^c[D]^d} \tag{9.10}$$

where [X] represents the molal concentration of the X ion. An equilibrium constant is valid only for a specific chemical reaction. It is either experimentally determined or calculated from thermodynamic properties. In equilibrium studies, the value of the concentration of a pure liquid or solid is defined as 1.

If AgCl is dissolved in water, it will eventually saturate the water and no more will dissolve. The reaction is

$$AgCl \rightleftharpoons Ag^+ + Cl^- \tag{9.11}$$

The equilibrium reaction is given by

$$K_{sp} = \frac{[Ag^+][Cl^-]}{[AgCl]} \tag{9.12}$$

The equilibrium constant for a slightly soluble salt is termed the **solubility product,** K_{sp}. The experimentally determined value of K_{sp} for the reaction is $10^{-9.8}$. Since [AgCl] is defined as 1,

$$K_{sp} = [Ag^+][Cl^-] = 10^{-9.8}$$

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

What is the solubility of Ag^+ at equilibrium?

The two ions have equal solubility:

$$[Ag^+] = [Cl^-] = \text{solubility}$$

The product of $[Ag^+][Cl^-]$ is the square of the solubility of either ion; thus, the solubility of either ion is the square root of the equilibrium constant:

$$\text{Solubility} = \sqrt{K_{sp}} = \sqrt{10^{-9.8}} = 1.26 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{mol/L}$$

The solubility of Ag^+ is 1.26×10^{-5} mol/L.

The situation is more complex if it involves a salt such as $PbCl_2$. The reaction is

$$PbCl_2 \rightleftharpoons Pb^{2+} + 2Cl^-$$

and the solubility product is given by

$$K_{sp} = \frac{[Pb^{2+}][Cl^-]^2}{[PbCl_2]} = [Pb^{2+}][Cl^-]^2 \tag{9.13}$$

One mole of $PbCl_2$ yields one mole of Pb^{2+} and two moles of Cl^-. To solve the equation for the solubility, X, of $PbCl_2$, use the expression

$$K_{sp} = [X][2X]^2 \tag{9.14}$$

The value of K_{sp} is $10^{-4.8}$ and, X, the solubility of $PbCl_2$, is found from

$$K_{sp} = 4X^3$$

$$X = \sqrt[3]{K_{sp}/4} = \sqrt[3]{0.25 \times 10^{-4.8}}$$

$$= 0.0158\ \text{mol}$$

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

One thousand grams of water will dissolve 1.0×10^{-4} mol of $PbSO_4$. Calculate K_{sp}.

$$[Pb^{2+}] = [SO_4^{2-}] = 1 \times 10^{-4} \text{ mol}$$

$$K_{sp} = [Pb^{2+}][SO_4^{2-}] = 10^{-8}$$

9.5 Common-Ion Effect

If the solvent contains another source for an ion also present in a salt, the **common-ion effect** will reduce the solubility of the salt. This applies to any salt in equilibrium with its saturated solution. If we dissolve AgCl in two solutions, one pure water and one containing 0.1 mol of NaCl, less of the AgCl will dissolve in the solution of NaCl. The solubility of NaCl is many orders of magnitude greater than that of the AgCl and is not affected. The total amount of the common ion in solution controls the amount of the less soluble salt that can dissolve. For example, consider the solution of AgCl in the 0.1-molal solution of NaCl. There will be X moles of AgCl and 0.1 mol of Cl^- from the NaCl. Thus, there are X moles of Ag^+ and $X + 0.1$ moles of Cl^-:

$$K_{sp} = [Ag^+][Cl^-] = [X][X + 0.1] = 10^{-9.8}$$

and

$$[0.1X] + [X^2] = 10^{-9.8}$$

Since $[X]$ is small, $[X^2]$ is very small and can be ignored; hence,

$$[X] = 10^{-8.8} = 1.58 \times 10^{-9}$$

The solubility of AgCl in pure water is 1.26×10^{-5} mol, whereas in a 0.1-molal solution of NaCl, it is only 1.58×10^{-9} mol. In general, ground and surface water contain ions from many sources, so that the common-ion effect must be considered.

9.6 Chemical Activities

In very dilute aqueous solutions, the molal concentrations can be used to determine equilibrium and solubility. For the general case, chemical activities must be computed from the concentration before the law of mass action can be applied, because electrostatic forces cause the behavior of the solutes to be nonideal.

The **chemical activity** of an ion is equal to the molal concentrations times a factor known as the *activity coefficient:*

$$\alpha = \gamma m \tag{9.15}$$

where

α is the chemical activity

γ is the activity coefficient

m is the molal concentration

To compute the activity coefficient of an individual species, the *ionic strength* of the solution must be determined. For a mixture of electrolytes in solution, the ionic strength is given by

$$I = \frac{1}{2}\sum m_i z_i^2 \tag{9.16}$$

where

I is the ionic strength

m_i is the molality of ith ion

z_i is the charge of ith ion

The ionic strength of 0.2-molal solution of $CaCl_2$ is

$$I = \tfrac{1}{2}(m_{Ca^{2+}} \times 2^2 + m_{Cl^-} \times 1^2)$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{2}(0.2 \times 2^2 + 0.4 \times 1^2) = 0.6$$

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Compute the ionic strength of ground water from a Cambrian-age sandstone in Neenah, Wisconsin.

Chemical Analysis (mg/L)
(major ions only)

Ca^{2+}	Mg^{2+}	HCO_3^-	SO_4^{2-}
234	39	290	498

The concentrations must be converted to molality by Equation 9.1:

Chemical Analysis (molalities)

Ca^{2+}	Mg^{2+}	HCO_3^-	SO_4^{2-}
0.00584	0.0016	0.00475	0.00518

The ionic strength is then computed using Equation 9.16:

$$I = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.00584 \times 2^2 + 0.0016 \times 2^2 + 0.00475 \times 1^2 + 0.00518 \times 2^2)$$
$$= 0.0276$$

Once the ionic strength of a solution of electrolytes is known, the activity coefficient of the individual ion can be determined from the **Debye-Hückel equation:**

$$-\log \gamma_i = \frac{Az_i^2\sqrt{I}}{1 + a_iB\sqrt{I}} \qquad \textbf{(9.17A)}$$

where

γ_i is the activity coefficient of ionic species i

z_i is the charge of ionic species i

I is the ionic strength of the solution

A is a constant that is temperature dependent (Table 9.1)

B is a constant that is temperature dependent (Table 9.1)

a_i is the effective diameter of the ion (Table 9.2)

Table 9.1 Values for constants *A* and *B* in the Debye-Hückel equation

Temperature, °C	*A*	*B*
0	0.4883	0.3241
5	0.4921	0.3249
10	0.4960	0.3258
15	0.5000	0.3262
20	0.5042	0.3273
25	0.5085	0.3281
30	0.5130	0.3290
35	0.5175	0.3297
40	0.5221	0.3305
45	0.5271	0.3314
50	0.5319	0.3321

Data from R. M. Garrels and C. L. Christ, *Solutions, Minerals, and Equilibria.* San Francisco: Freeman Cooper, 1982.

Table 9.2 Values of the parameter a_i in the Debye-Hückel equation

a_i	Ion
11	Th^{4+}, Sn^{4+}
9	Al^{3+}, Fe^{3+}, Cr^{3+}, H^+
8	Mg^{2+}, Be^{2+}
6	Ca^{2+}, Cu^{2+}, Zn^{2+}, Sn^{2+}, Mn^{2+}, Fe^{2+}, Ni^{2+}, Co^{2+}, Li^+
5	$Fe(CN)_6^{4-}$, Sr^{2+}, Ba^{2+}, Cd^{2+}, Hg^{2+}, S^{2-}, Pb^{2+}, CO_3^{2-}, SO_3^{2-}, MoO_4^{2-}
4	PO_4^{3-}, $Fe(CN)_6^{3-}$, Hg_2^{2-}, SO_4^{2-}, SeO_4^{2-}, CrO_4^{3-}, HPO_4^{2-}, Na^+, HCO_3^-, $H_2PO_4^-$
3	OH^-, F^-, CNS^-, CNO^-, HS^-, ClO_4^-, K^+, Cl^-, Br^-, I^-, CN^-, NO_2^-, NO_3^-, Rb^+ Cs^+, NH_4^+, Ag^+

Source: J. Kielland, "Individual Activity Coefficients of Ions in Aqueous Solutions," *American Chemical Society Journal* 59 (1937): 1676–78.

The Debye-Hückel equation is valid for solutions with an ionic strength of 0.1 or less (approximately 5000 mg/L).

For aqueous solutions with higher ionic strength, the Debye-Hückel equation can be modified by the addition of a second term on the right side to form the **Davies equation:**

$$-\log \gamma_i = \frac{Az_1^2\sqrt{I}}{1 + a_iB\sqrt{I}} + 0.3\sqrt{I} \qquad \textbf{(9.17B)}$$

Whereas Equation 9.10 is valid only for very dilute solutions where $\gamma \simeq 1$, the law of mass action, expressed in terms of chemical activities, is valid for solutions with any ionic strength.

$$K = \frac{(\alpha_X)^x(\alpha_Y)^y}{(\alpha_C)^c(\alpha_D)^d} \qquad \textbf{(9.18)}$$

where $cC + dD \rightleftharpoons xX + yY$ and α_x is the activity of the X ion.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Determine γ_i and α for Ca^{2+} in a solution where the molal concentration of Ca^{2+} is 0.00584 and I = 0.0276 at 25°C. The value of a_i for Ca^{2+} is 6.

The activity coefficient can be determined using Equation 9.17A:

$$-\log \gamma_i = \frac{Az_i^2\sqrt{I}}{1 + a_iB\sqrt{I}}$$

$$\log \gamma_i = -\frac{0.5085(2)^2\sqrt{0.0276}}{1 + (6)(0.3281)\sqrt{0.0276}}$$

$$= -\frac{(0.5085)(4)(0.166)}{1 + (6)(0.3281)(0.166)}$$

$$= -0.255$$

$$\gamma = 0.556$$

The activity of calcium is then found from Equation 9.15:

$$\alpha = \gamma m$$

$$= (0.556)(0.00584)$$

$$= 0.00325$$

The *ion activity product* (K_{iap}), which is the product of the measured activities, can be calculated for any aqueous solution to test for saturation. The value of K_{iap} for a mineral equilibrium reaction in a natural water may be compared with the value of K_{sp}, the solubility product of the mineral. If the value of K_{iap} is equal to or greater than K_{sp}, the natural water is saturated or supersaturated with respect to the mineral. If K_{iap} is less than K_{sp}, the solution is undersaturated with respect to the mineral, and the mineral may be actively dissolving. For the case where the mineral C is being dissolved according to the reaction $cC \rightleftharpoons xX + yY$, K_{iap} is given by

$$K_{iap} = (\alpha_x)^x(\alpha_Y)^y \tag{9.19}$$

Solubility products for a number of compounds are given in Appendix 11.

9.7 Ionization Constant of Water and Weak Acids

Water undergoes a dissociation into two ionic species:

$$H_2O \rightleftharpoons H^+ + OH^-$$

In reality, a hydrogen ion (H^+) cannot exist; it must be in the form H_3O^+, the hydronium ion, formed by the interaction of water with the hydrogen ion. For convenience, however, we will represent it as H^+. The equilibrium constant for water is

$$K = \frac{\alpha_{H^+} \times \alpha_{OH^-}}{\alpha_{H_2O}} \tag{9.20}$$

For water that is neutral, there are exactly the same concentrations of H^+ and OH^- radicals, 10^{-7}. The negative logarithm of the concentration of H^+ ions in an aqueous solution is called the pH of the solution. For all aqueous solutions, either acidic or basic, the product $\alpha_{H^+}\alpha_{OH^-}$ is always 10^{-14} (at about 25°C). Since a neutral solution has equal amounts of H^+ and OH^- radicals, the pH is 7. If there are more H^+ ions than OH^- ions, the solution is acidic and the pH is less than 7.0. Basic solutions have more OH^- than H^+ ions and a pH between 7 and 14.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

What is the $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ of an aqueous solution of pH 3.2?

Since pH is the negative logarithm of $[H^+]$, the value of $[H^+]$ is $10^{-3.2}$. Since the produc $[H^+][OH^-] = 10^{-14}$,

$$[OH^-] = 10^{-14}/[H^+] = 10^{-14}/10^{-3.2} = 10^{-10.8}$$

It is apparent that by measuring the pH of an aqueous solution, we can obtain the nu merical value of both $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$. If the solution is nonideal, the pH meter measure the activity of H^+, since $\alpha_{H^+}\alpha_{OH^-} = 10^{-14}$.

An acid is a substance that can add H^+ (more properly, H_3O^+) ions to aqueous solution Strong acids will completely dissociate in water to release H^+ ions. Since the $[H^+][OH^-]$ product is constant at a given temperature, the concentration of OH^- ions decreases. A 1 molal solution of HCl will have a pH of 0 and a $[H^+]$ of 1. A 0.01-molal solution will have pH of 2, and a $[H^+]$ of 10^{-2}. On the other hand, a 0.01-molal solution of H_2CO_3 will have higher pH, as it is a weak acid. In dilute aqueous solution, the H_2CO_3 is only slightly broke down into ions. Weak acids with more than one H^+ per molecule ionize in steps; for example

$$H_2CO_3 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HCO_3^- \qquad \textbf{(9.21A}$$

$$HCO_3^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + CO_3^{2-} \qquad \textbf{(9.21B}$$

The equilibrium constants at 25°C are

$$\frac{[H^+][HCO_3^-]}{[H_2CO_3]} = K_1 = 10^{-6.4} \qquad \text{(first ionization constant)} \qquad \textbf{(9.22A}$$

and

$$\frac{[H^+][CO_3^{2-}]}{[HCO_3^-]} = K_2 = 10^{-10.3} \qquad \text{(second ionization constant)} \qquad \textbf{(9.22B}$$

The value of K for water varies significantly with temperature. Table 9.3 lists the equi librium constants for the dissociation of water at temperatures between 0°C and 60°C. A 0°C, a neutral solution has a pH of 7.5; at 60°C, neutrality occurs at pH 6.6.

Table 9.3 Equilibrium constants for dissociation of water

Temperature (°C)	K	pH of a Neutral Solution
0	0.1139×10^{-14}	7.47
5	0.1846×10^{-14}	7.37
10	0.2920×10^{-14}	7.27
15	0.4505×10^{-14}	7.17
20	0.6809×10^{-14}	7.08
25	1.008×10^{-14}	7.00
30	1.469×10^{-14}	6.92
35	2.089×10^{-14}	6.84
40	2.919×10^{-14}	6.77
45	4.018×10^{-14}	6.70
50	5.474×10^{-14}	6.63
55	7.297×10^{-14}	6.57
60	9.614×10^{-14}	6.51

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

What is the pH of a 0.01-molal solution of H_2CO_3 at 25°C in a closed system?

There are five ionic species present: H^+, OH^-, H_2CO_3, HCO_3^-, and CO_3^{2-}. The total of the carbonate species, H_2CO_3, HCO_3^-, and CO_3^{2-}, is 0.01 mol. The 0.01-molal solution is obtained by dissolving 0.01 mol of CO_2 in 1 L of water. For most geologic applications, some assumptions can be made to simplify the problem. From the values of K_1 and K_2, we see that K_2 is 10^4 smaller than K_1, so almost all of the H^+ ions come from $H_2CO_3 \rightleftarrows H^+ + HCO_3^-$. There will also be a very small value of CO_3^{2-}, since K_2 is so small. Likewise, there will be relatively few OH^- ions since it is an acid solution.

From the dissociation reactions, we must balance the electrical charges:

$$[H^+] = [OH^-] + [HCO_3^-] + 2[CO_3^{2-}]$$

Since OH^- and CO_3^{2-} are relatively small,

$$[H^+] \simeq [HCO_3^-]$$

From the equilibrium equation,

$$\frac{[H^+][HCO_3^-]}{[H_2CO_3]} = K_1 = \frac{[H^+]^2}{[H_2CO_3]} = 10^{-6.4}$$

Since the solution has 0.01 mol CO_2, total,

$$[HCO_3^-] + [H_2CO_3] + [CO_3^{2-}] = 0.01 \text{ mol}/1000 \text{ g}$$

With a small value for CO_3^{2-}, and HCO_3^- equal to H+,

$$[H_2CO_3] + [H^+] \simeq 0.01$$

Since this is a weak acid, $[H^+]$ is very small compared with $[H_2CO_3]$, so that $[H_2CO_3] \simeq 0.01$. Putting these two results together,

$$\frac{[H^+]^2}{[H_2CO_3]} = 10^{-6.4} \text{ and } [H_2CO_3] = 0.01$$

$$[H^+]^2 = 0.01 \times 10^{-6.4} = 0.01 \times 3.98 \times 10^{-7} = 3.98 \times 10^{-9}$$

$$[H^+] = 6.31 \times 10^{-5} = 10^{-4.2}$$

Thus, pH = 4.2. Concentrations of other ions would be

$$[HCO_3^-] = [H^+] = 10^{-4.2}$$

$$[OH^-] = \frac{10^{-14}}{[H^+]} = 10^{-9.8}$$

$$[CO_3^{2-}] = \frac{10^{-10.3}[HCO_3^-]}{[H^+]} = 10^{-10.3}$$

These values are accurate to ±1% (Krauskopf 1967).

Although this type of problem can promote understanding of weak acids, in a real-world situation there may be many other ionic species present, increasing the ionic strength. This would necessitate the use of chemical activities and might also introduce the common-ion effect.

9.8 Carbonate Equilibrium

In hydrogeologic studies, the equilibrium of calcium carbonate in contact with natural water, either surface or ground water, is one of the most important geochemical reactions. Neutral water exposed to CO_2 in the atmosphere will dissolve CO_2 in proportion to the partial pressure. The CO_2 will react with H_2O to form H_2CO_3, a weak acid, and the resulting solution

will have a pH of about 5.7. Soil CO_2 from organic decomposition is another source of even more importance in ground-water studies. As calcite and dolomite are soluble in acid solution, even rainwater will dissolve carbonate rocks. Likewise, a change in pH can result in a precipitation of $CaCO_3$ from a solution that was at equilibrium prior to the pH shift.

9.8.1 Carbonate Reactions

The following reactions must be considered in carbonate systems.

1. The solution of carbon dioxide in water to form carbonic acid:

$$H_2O + CO_2 \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3 \tag{9.23A}$$

$$K_{CO_2} = \frac{\alpha_{H_2CO_3}}{P_{CO_2}} \tag{9.23B}$$

   P_{CO2} is the partial pressure of the carbon dioxide, which for most hydrogeological conditions is the gas activity, expressed as atmospheres (atm).

2. The dissolution of carbonic acid in water to form bicarbonate:

$$H_2CO_3 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HCO_3^- \tag{9.24A}$$

$$K_{H_2CO_3} = \frac{\alpha_{H^+}\alpha_{HCO_3^-}}{\alpha_{H_2CO_3}} \tag{9.24B}$$

3. The dissolution of bicarbonate in water to form carbonate:

$$HCO_3^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + CO_3^{2-} \tag{9.25A}$$

$$K_{HCO_3^-} = \frac{\alpha_{H^+}\alpha_{CO_3^{2-}}}{\alpha_{HCO_3^-}} \tag{9.25B}$$

4. The dissolution of calcium carbonate in water to form calcium and carbonate. There are two common forms of calcium carbonate, calcite and aragonite. They each have different solubility products.

$$CaCO_3 \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+} + CO_3^{2-} \tag{9.26A}$$

$$K_{CaCO_3} = \frac{\alpha_{Ca^{2+}}\alpha_{CO_3^{2-}}}{\alpha_{CaCO_3}} \tag{9.26B}$$

Table 9.4 contains the solubility products for each of these reactions for temperatures from 0°C to 60°C.

Examination of Equations 9.24B and 9.25B reveals that the activity of the hydrogen ion plays an important role in determining the form in which carbonate is present. From Equation 9.24B, the relative proportions of H_2CO_3 and HCO_3^- vary with pH. At 20°C, the value of $K_{H_2CO_3}$ is $10^{-6.38}$. From Equation 9.24B:

$$K_{H_2CO_3} = \frac{\alpha_{H^+}\alpha_{HCO_3^-}}{\alpha_{H_2CO_3}} = 10^{-6.38}$$

This can be rearranged to yield

$$\frac{\alpha_{H_2CO_3}}{\alpha_{HCO_3^-}} = \frac{\alpha_{H^+}}{10^{-6.38}}$$

By substituting different values for α_{H^+} (expressed as pH), the ratio of bicarbonate ion to carbonic acid can be found. For example, at a pH of 6.38, α_{H^+} is 6.38 and the ratio of car-

Table 9.4 Carbonate equilibria constants at 1 atm pressure

Temperature °C	K_{CO_2}	$K_{H_2CO_3}$	$K_{HCO_3^-}$	K_{CaCO_3} (cal.)	K_{CaCO_3} (arag.)
0	$10^{-1.11}$	$10^{-6.58}$	$10^{-10.63}$	$10^{-8.38}$	$10^{-8.22}$
5	$10^{-1.19}$	$10^{-6.52}$	$10^{-10.55}$	$10^{-8.39}$	$10^{-8.24}$
10	$10^{-1.27}$	$10^{-6.46}$	$10^{-10.49}$	$10^{-8.41}$	$10^{-8.26}$
15	$10^{-1.34}$	$10^{-6.42}$	$10^{-10.43}$	$10^{-8.43}$	$10^{-8.28}$
20	$10^{-1.41}$	$10^{-6.38}$	$10^{-10.38}$	$10^{-8.45}$	$10^{-8.31}$
25	$10^{-1.47}$	$10^{-6.35}$	$10^{-10.33}$	$10^{-8.48}$	$10^{-8.34}$
30	$10^{-1.52}$	$10^{-6.33}$	$10^{-10.29}$	$10^{-8.51}$	$10^{-8.37}$
45	$10^{-1.67}$	$10^{-6.29}$	$10^{-10.20}$	$10^{-8.62}$	$10^{-8.49}$
60	$10^{-1.78}$	$10^{-6.29}$	$10^{-10.14}$	$10^{-8.76}$	$10^{-8.64}$

Source: L. N. Plummer & E. Busenberg, *Geochemica et Cosmochemica Acta* 46 (1982):1011–1040.

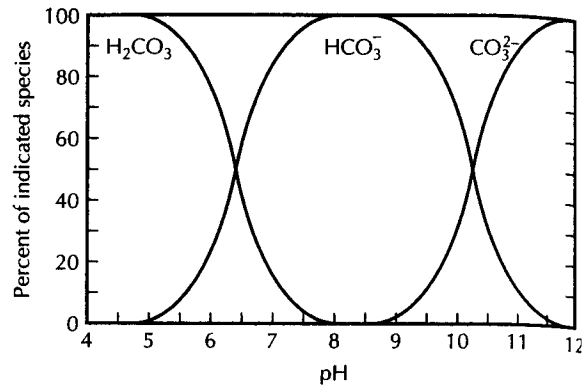
bonic acid to bicarbonate ion is 1:1. This means that at a pH of 6.38, 50% of the solution is present as carbonic acid and 50% as bicarbonate ion. At a pH of 6.00, the ratio is 2.4:1, which means that 70.59% of the carbonate is present as carbonic acid, whereas 29.41% is bicarbonate ion.

Equation 9.25B can be rearranged to find the ratio of bicarbonate ion to carbonate ion. At 20°C, the value of $K_{HCO_3^-}$ is $10^{-10.38}$. At a pH of 10.38, the ratio of bicarbonate to carbonate is 1:1. At a pH of 10, 70.59% is present as bicarbonate ion, and 29.41% as carbonate ion. At a pH of 11, only 5.17% is bicarbonate ion; 94.83% is carbonate ion. Table 9.5 shows the distribution of carbonic acid, bicarbonate ion, and carbonate ion as a function of pH. This relationship is also plotted on Figure 9.1. Table 9.5 and Figure 9.1 show that in the pH range of most natural waters, 4 to 9, carbonate is present as either carbonic acid or bicarbonate ion but not as carbonate ion. Carbonate ion is found in appreciable amounts only in very alkaline water. The ionization constants of the carbonate species vary slightly with temperature, so Table 9.5 would be slightly different at temperatures other than 20°C.

Table 9.5 Distribution of carbonate species as a function of pH at 20°C

pH	Carbonic Acid	Bicarbonate Ion	Carbonate Ion
2.00	99.99%	0.01%	
3.00	99.96%	0.04%	
4.00	99.6%	0.4%	
5.00	96.0%	4.0%	
6.00	70.6%	29.4%	
6.38	50.0%	50.0%	
7.00	5.2%	94.8%	
8.00	2.3%	97.7%	
9.00		96.0%	4.0%
10.00		70.6%	29.4%
10.38		50.0%	50.0%
11.00		5.2%	94.8%
12.00		2.3%	97.7%
13.00		0.2%	99.8%

► FIGURE 9.1
Distribution of major species of dissolved inorganic carbon at 20°C.



9.8.2 Carbonate Equilibrium in Water with Fixed Partial Pressure of CO_2

Water in streams and lakes is in contact with the atmosphere, in which CO_2 is present. Th gas is dissolved in the water, adding to the carbonate content of the water. The system i described by

$$H_2O + CO_2 \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3 \tag{9.27A}$$

$$H_2CO_3 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HCO_3^- \tag{9.27B}$$

$$HCO_3^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + CO_3^{2-} \tag{9.27C}$$

$$CaCO_3 \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+} + CO_3^{2-} \tag{9.27D}$$

$$H_2O \rightleftharpoons H^+ + OH^- \tag{9.27E}$$

The system is electrically neutral, so that

$$2m_{Ca^{2+}} + m_{H^+} = 2m_{CO_3^{2-}} + m_{HCO_3^-} + m_{OH^-} \tag{9.27F}$$

The partial pressure of CO_2 in the atmosphere is $10^{-3.5}$. The value of the activity of H_2CO_3 can be computed from the activity product of CO_2 at 25°C:

$$K_{CO_2} = \frac{\alpha_{H_2CO_3}}{P_{CO_2}} = 10^{-1.5}$$

Therefore,

$$\alpha_{H_2CO_3} = P_{CO_2} \times 10^{-1.5} = 10^{-3.5} \times 10^{-1.5} = 10^{-5.0}$$

The activity values for the remaining ionic species can be determined in relationshi to α_{H^+}. This enables computation of the pH of a solution of calcite that is in equilibriun with atmospheric CO_2. The H_2CO_3 will dissociate into H^+ and HCO_3^-:

$$K_{H_2CO_3} = \frac{\alpha_{H^+}\alpha_{HCO_3^-}}{\alpha_{H_2CO_3}} = 10^{-6.4}$$

As we know, $\alpha_{H_2CO_3} = 10^{-5.0}$:

$$\alpha_{HCO_3^-} = (10^{-6.4} \times 10^{-5.0})/\alpha_{H^+} = 10^{-11.4}/\alpha_{H^+}$$

The HCO_3^- will further dissociate into H^+ and $\alpha_{CO_3^{2-}}$:

$$K_{HCO_3^-} = \frac{\alpha_{H^+}\alpha_{CO_3^{2-}}}{\alpha_{HCO_3^-}} = 10^{-10.3}$$

This can be rearranged to give $\alpha_{CO_3^{2-}}$:

$$\alpha_{CO_3^{2-}} = \frac{(\alpha_{HCO_3^-})(10^{-10.3})}{\alpha_{H^+}}$$

$$= \frac{10^{-11.4}}{\alpha_{H^+}} \times \frac{10^{-10.3}}{\alpha_{H^+}} = \frac{10^{-21.7}}{(\alpha_{H^+})^2}$$

The equilibrium constant for calcite is $10^{-8.5}$. For the solid phase of a substance at saturation, $\alpha = 1$; therefore, $\alpha_{CaCO_3} = 1$:

$$K_{CaCO_3} = \frac{\alpha_{Ca^{2+}}\alpha_{CO_3^{2-}}}{\alpha_{CaCO_3}} = 10^{-8.5}$$

The activity of Ca^{2+} can be found as

$$\alpha_{Ca^{2+}} = \frac{10^{-8.5}}{\alpha_{CO_3^{2+}}} = \frac{10^{-8.5}}{10^{-21.7}/(\alpha_{H^+})^2} = 10^{13.2}(\alpha_{H^+})^2$$

By definition, $\alpha_{OH^-} = 10^{-14}/\alpha_{H^+}$:

For very dilute solutions $\gamma_i \simeq 1$; therefore, $m_i = \alpha_i$, and the equation for electrical neutrality can be expressed as

$$2\alpha_{Ca^{2+}} + \alpha_{H^+} = 2m_{CO_3^{2-}} + m_{HCO_3^-} + m_{OH^-}$$

Expressions for $\alpha_{Ca^{2+}}$, $\alpha_{Co_3^{2-}}$, $\alpha_{HCO_3^-}$, and α_{OH^-} have been determined with respect to α_{H^+}. The equation for electrical neutrality can be determined to be

$$2[10^{13.2}(\alpha_{H^+})^2] + \alpha_{H^+} = 2[10^{-21.7}/(\alpha_{H^+})^2] + 10^{-11.4}/\alpha_{H^+} + 10^{-14}/\alpha_{H^+}$$

Solution of the preceding yields $\alpha_{H^+} = 10^{-8.3}$.

Thus, the pH of a solution open to atmospheric CO_2 and in equilibrium with calcite is 8.3. This is lower than the pH of a solution of calcite with no external source of CO_2, which is about 9.9. This suggests that field measurements of pH should always be made, especially if the water is from a source with no external CO_2. Exposure of such a sample to the atmosphere for more than a few minutes would result in a lowering of the pH. Ground-water samples should always be tested for pH in the field as soon as the sample is collected. As a practical matter it is quite difficult to collect representative ground-water samples that do not undergo reactions during the process of collection.

9.8.3 Carbonate Equilibrium with External pH Control

In most ground-water and many surface-water bodies, there are ionic species other than H_2CO_3 that influence or control the pH. The hydrogeologist often has a set of chemical analyses and a measured pH for the total solution. If pH, total calcium, total carbonate, and ionic strength are known, the ion activity product, K_{iap}, can be calculated and compared with the solubility product, K_{sp}, to determine whether the water is in equilibrium with calcite. If K_{iap}/K_{sp} is greater than 1, the solution is supersaturated; if less than 1, it is undersaturated; if equal to 1, the solution is in equilibrium.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Determine whether the sample of ground water represented by the following analysis is saturated with respect to calcite. The field pH is 7.15. The total dissolved solids (TDS) is 371 mg/L.

	Ca^{2+}	Mg^{2+}	Na^{+}	K^{+}	HCO_3^{-}	SO_4^{2-}	Cl^{-}	NO_3^{-}
Concentration (mg/L)	82	9	25	7.6	252	17	40	38
Molality $\times 10^3$	2.046	0.37	1.087	0.194	4.13	0.177	1.128	0.613

1. Calculate the ionic strength.

$$I = 1/2\,(0.002046 \times 2^2 + 0.00037 \times 2^2 + 0.001087 + 0.000194 + 0.00413 + 0.000177 \times 2^2 + 0.001128 + 0.000613)$$

$$= 0.0088$$

2. Compute γ_i for Ca^{2+}, HCO_3^{-}, and CO_3^{2-}. For water at 25°C, the Debye-Hückel equation is

$$-\log \gamma_i = \frac{0.5085 z_i^2 \sqrt{I}}{1 + 0.3281 a_i \sqrt{I}}$$

Values of a_i (from Table 9.2) are

$Ca^{2+} = 6$ $HCO_3^{-} = 4$ $CO_3^{2-} = 5$

$$\log \gamma_{Ca^{2+}} = \frac{-0.5085(2)^2\sqrt{0.0088}}{1 + 0.3281(6)\sqrt{0.0088}}$$

$$= -0.161$$

$$\gamma_{Ca^{2+}} = 0.690$$

$$\alpha_{Ca^{2+}} = m_{Ca^{2+}}\gamma_{Ca^{2+}} = 0.002046 \times 0.690 = 0.00141 = 10^{-2.85}$$

$$\log \gamma_{HCO_3^-} = \frac{-0.5085(1)\sqrt{0.0088}}{1 + 0.3281(4)\sqrt{0.0088}}$$

$$= -0.0425$$

$$\gamma_{HCO_3^-} = 0.907$$

$$\alpha_{HCO_3^-} = m_{HCO_3^-}\gamma_{HCO_3^-} = 0.00413 \times 0.907 = 0.003746 = 10^{-2.43}$$

$$\log \gamma_{CO_3^{2-}} = \frac{-0.5085(2)^2\sqrt{0.0088}}{1 + 0.3281(5)\sqrt{0.0088}}$$

$$= -0.165$$

$$\gamma_{CO_3^{2-}} = 0.683$$

The molality of CO_3^{2-} is below detectable limits, but activity can be computed, since

$$\frac{\alpha_{H^+}\alpha_{CO_3^{2-}}}{\alpha_{HCO_3^-}} = 10^{-10.3}$$

From the pH, $\alpha_{H^+} = 10^{-7.15}$

$$\alpha_{CO_3^{2-}} = \frac{10^{-10.3} \times 10^{-2.43}}{10^{-7.15}} = 10^{-5.58}$$

3. The calculated ion activity product is

$$K_{iap} = \alpha_{Ca^{2+}}\alpha_{CO_3^{2-}}$$

$$= 10^{-2.85} \times 10^{-5.58} = 10^{-8.43}$$

4. The value of K_{sp} for calcite at 25°C is $10^{-8.48}$. By comparing the ratio K_{iap}/K_{sp}, we determine whether the solution is saturated:

$$K_{iap}/K_{sp} = 10^{-8.43}/10^{-8.48} = 10^{+0.05} = 1.12$$

The water is supersaturated with respect to calcite.

9.9 Thermodynamic Relationships

One of the functions in chemical thermodynamics is termed **free energy** (also known as *Gibbs free energy*). It is a measure of the driving energy of a reaction. At standard conditions, the standard Gibbs free energy of a reaction, ΔG_r^0 is the difference between the sum of the free energy of the products and the sum of the free energy of the reactants:

$$\Delta G_r^0 = \sum \Delta G_r^0 \text{ products} - \sum \Delta G_r^0 \text{ reactants} \quad \textbf{(9.28)}$$

It is related to the equilibrium constant by the formula

$$\Delta G_r^0 = -RT \ln K_{sp} \quad \textbf{(9.29)}$$

where

R is the gas constant, which is a conversion factor equal to 0.00199 kcal/(mol·K)

T is the temperature in kelvins

ΔG_r^0 is in kcal/mol

This is a useful relationship. Since the values of ΔG_r^0 at 25°C and 1 atm pressure have been measured for many reactions, the value of K_{sp} can be computed if ΔG_r^0 is known. At 1 atm pressure and 25°C, in base 10 logs (Hem 1985),

$$\log K_{sp} = -\frac{\Delta G_r^0}{1.364} \quad \textbf{(9.30)}$$

where ΔG_r^0 is in kcal/mol. Since 1 cal equals 4.184 joules (J), when the standard free energy is expressed in kJ/mol at 25°C, Equation 9.30 becomes

$$\log K_{sp} = -\frac{\Delta G_r^0}{5.708} \quad \textbf{(9.31)}$$

Because ground water is not often as warm as 25°C, we need to be able to adjust the value of K_{sp} that is calculated at 25°C to the actual temperature.

Gibbs free energy, G, is related to two other thermodynamic functions, enthalpy (H) and entropy (S) by the equation:

$$G = H - TS \quad \textbf{(9.32)}$$

where

T = temperature in kelvins

G = Gibbs free energy in kJ/mol or kcal/mol

H = enthalpy in kJ/mol or kcal/mol

S = entropy in kJ/mol·T or kcal/mol·T

For changes in energy at constant temperature and pressure, which is a reasonable assumption for ground water, we have the relationship

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S \quad \textbf{(9.33)}$$

For temperatures in the range of 25°C ± 20°, which is the range of most ground water, the standard Gibbs free energy is related to standard enthalpy and entropy by

$$\Delta G_r^0 = \Delta H_r^0 - T\Delta S_r^0 \tag{9.34}$$

We can combine Equations 9.29 and 9.34 to obtain

$$\ln K_{sp} = \frac{-\Delta H_r^0}{RT} + \frac{\Delta S_r^0}{R} \tag{9.35}$$

Values of $-\Delta H_r^0$ and $-\Delta S_r^0$ may be available from published values of standard-state enthalpies and entropies; if so, Equation 9.35 can be used to calculate the equilibrium constant at a given temperature of interest. If $-\Delta H_r^0$ is available, but $-\Delta S_r^0$ is not, then an alternative equation can be used.

If we differentiate Equation 9.35, we obtain

$$\frac{d \ln K_{sp}}{dT} = \frac{\Delta H_r^0}{RT^2} \tag{9.36}$$

Now integrate Equation 9.36 from T_1 (the reference temperature, 25°C), to T_2, the temperature at which you want to know the value of K_{sp}. This yields the **Van't Hoff equation.**

$$\ln K_{T_2} - \ln K_{T_1} = \frac{\Delta H_r^0}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right) \tag{9.37}$$

where K_T is the equilibrium constant at temperature T.

or

$$\log K_{T_2} = \log K_{T_1} + \frac{\Delta H_r^0}{2.303R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right) \tag{9.38}$$

Therefore, all one needs to know is the equilibrium constant at one temperature, usually 25°C, and the standard enthalpy of reaction, to calculate the equilibrium constant at any other temperature in the range of about 5°C to 45°C.

Tables of standard values for enthalpies and entropies can be found in *The Geochemistry of Natural Waters*, third edition, by James Drever (Prentice-Hall, 1997).

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

What is the solubility of calcite in ground water with a temperature of 8°C?

We know that the solubility product for calcite at 25°C is $10^{-8.48}$. The value of ΔH_r^0 is –9.61 kJ/mol and R is 8.3143 J/mol·K. Substituting these values into Equation 9.38 we obtain:

$$\log K_{T_2} = -8.48 + \frac{-9.61}{2.303 \times 8.3143 \times 0.001}\left(\frac{1}{298} - \frac{1}{281}\right)$$

$$= -8.48 + 0.102 = -8.38$$

9.10 Oxidation Potential

For chemical reactions in which electrons are transferred from one ion to another (*oxidation-reduction reactions*, or redox reactions), the oxidation potential of an aqueous solution is called the Eh. A transfer of electrons is an electrical current; therefore, a redox equation has an electrical potential. At 25°C and 1 atm pressure, the standard potential, E^0 (in volts),

has been measured for many reactions. The sign of the potential is positive if the reaction is oxidizing and negative if it is reducing. The absolute value of E^0 is a measure of the oxidizing or reducing tendency.

The oxidation potential of a reaction is given by the *Nernst equation:*

$$\text{Eh} = E^0 + \frac{RT}{nF} \ln K_{sp} \tag{9.39}$$

where

R is the gas constant, 0.00199 kcal/(mol·K) [0.008314 kJ/(mol·K)]

T is the temperature (kelvins)

F is the Faraday constant, 23.1 kcal/V [96.484kJ/V]

n is the number of electrons

Eh expresses the activity of the electrons in solution (i.e., the redox level) in units of volts. We can also express the redox level in terms of electron activity, or p*e*. Eh and p*e* are related by the following equation

$$pe = \frac{F}{2.303\,RT} \text{Eh} \tag{9.40}$$

At a temperature of 25°C,

$$\text{Eh} = 0.059\,pe \tag{9.41A}$$

$$pe = 16.9\,\text{Eh} \tag{9.41B}$$

Oxidation potential is measured with a specific ion electrode meter. A positive value indicates that the solution is oxidizing; a negative value indicates that it is chemically reducing.

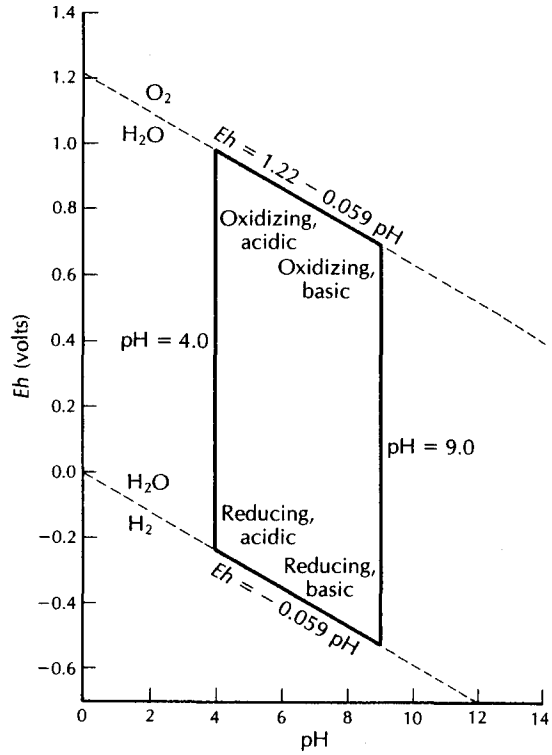
If the pH and Eh of an aqueous solution are known, the stability of minerals in contact with the water may be determined. This stability relationship is best represented on an Eh-pH diagram. Water, itself, is stable only in a certain part of the Eh-pH field. Figure 9.2 shows the framework of aqueous Eh-pH fields. Water in nature at near-surface environments is usually between pH 4 and pH 9, although values that are more acidic or more basic can occur.

One can also make p*e*-pH diagrams; the only way they differ from an Eh-pH diagram is in the scale on the vertical axis. Eh is converted to p*e* according to Equation 9.40.

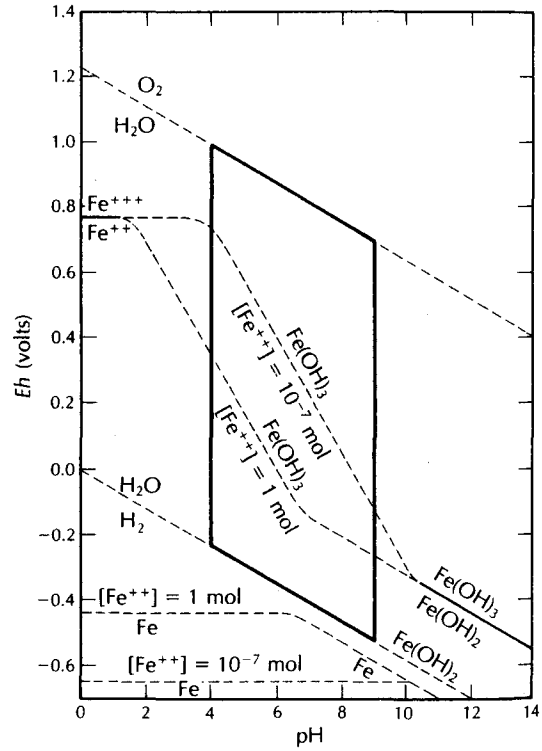
The Eh-pH diagram can be used to show the fields of stability for both solid and dissolved ionic species. It has been used very effectively for iron. The Eh-pH diagram depends on the concentrations of all ionic species present. For the simple ions and hydroxides of iron, the fields depend upon the molality of the iron in solution. Figure 9.3 shows the stability-field diagram for a 10^{-7}-molal solution of iron. The iron may be either in the Fe^{3+} or Fe^{2+} valence state, depending on its position in the stability field. As the iron concentration increases, the line separating the ferrous and ferric state shifts to the left. This is demonstrated by a dashed line in Figure 9.3, which represents a 1-molal iron concentration. Ferrous iron can exist as Fe^{2+}, $Fe(OH)^+$, or $Fe(OH)_2$, depending upon the Eh and pH of the solution; ferric iron can be in the forms Fe^{3+}, $Fe(OH)_2^+$, and $Fe(OH)_3$. The pH at which these species change is also a function of the total amount of iron present. Procedures are available to compute an Eh-pH field for iron of any molality (Hem & Cropper 1959).

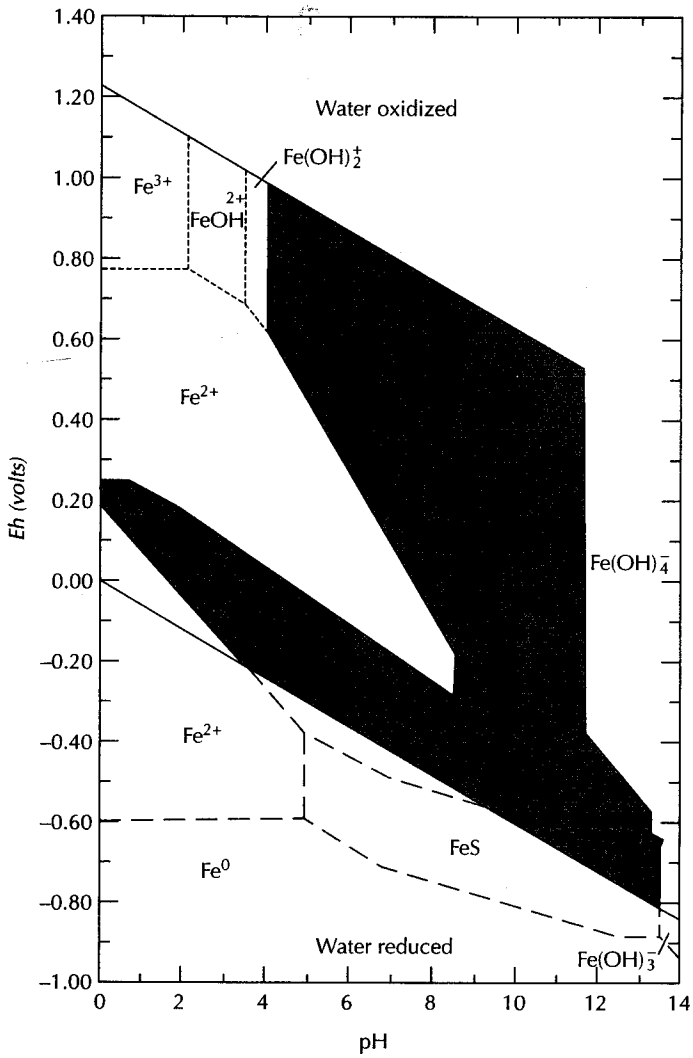
Of practical concern is the great difficulty in measuring the Eh of ground water under field conditions. Even for spring water, the measured Eh has been shown to be too great for the amount of ferrous iron in the sample (Hem & Cropper 1959). With very careful work, oxygen can be excluded from the sampling procedure and field Eh measured (Back & Barnes 1965).

► FIGURE 9.2
The Eh-pH field where water is a stable component. The usual limits of Eh and pH for near-surface environments are also indicated by solid lines. *Source: K. Krauskopf,* Introduction to Geochemistry. *New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1967. Used with permission.*



► FIGURE 9.3
Stability-field diagram for a 10^{-7}-molal solution of iron. *Source: K. Krauskopf,* Introduction to Geochemistry. *New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1967. Used with permission.*





▲ FIGURE 9.4
Stability fields based on Eh and pH for solid and dissolved forms of iron in an aqueous solution of 56 μg/L iron, 96 mg/L of sulfur as SO_4^{-2}, 61 mg/L carbon dioxide as HCO_3^- at 25°C, and 1 atm pressure. *Source: J. D. Hem, U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2254, 1985.*

High Eh is generally the direct result of dissolved oxygen in the water. For deep ground-water systems, the Eh is usually sufficiently low that, for a pH of less than about 8, iron is present as the soluble Fe^{2+} ion. Near a recharge zone, the ground water may have sufficient dissolved oxygen to elevate the Eh. As the water travels through the aquifer, the oxygen is chemically reduced by contact with reducing species, and the Eh is further lowered. The oxygen can react with the small amount of ferrous iron to form ferric hydroxide, $Fe(OH)_3$. Interestingly, the ferric hydroxide thus formed may be colloidal, and can move through the aquifer with the ground water. In the Eh-pH range where Fe^{2+} exists, large amounts of dissolved iron can be present.

Natural waters contain many ionic species. Again, using iron as an example, an Eh-pH diagram can be used to show the stable iron minerals in a mixed aqueous solution with iron, sulfur, and carbonate present. This is done in Figure 9.4; the given concentrations are iron 56 μg/L ($10^{-6.00}$ molar), 96 mg/L dissolved sulfur as SO_4^{2-}, and 61 mg/L dissolved

carbon dioxide as HCO_3^-. Shaded areas indicate Eh-pH domains where solid species would be thermodynamically stable. The stable ionic species are also indicated on the figure. For a thorough discussion of Eh-pH diagrams, see Drever (1997).

The redox level in the ground water is determined by the presence of oxygen in recently recharged water and the subsequent elimination of oxygen by the microbially mediated biodegradation of organic matter. Precipitation will contain dissolved oxygen probably near saturation. Unless the infiltrating rainwater must first pass through a soil zone with high organic carbon which promotes the removal of oxygen, water reaching the water table will typically contain some dissolved oxygen and be oxidizing.

As the ground water passes through an aquifer, oxygen will be consumed by microbes which use it as an electron acceptor in respiration as they consume organic matter. As the ground water passes from a recharge area to a discharge area, the amount of dissolved oxygen will diminish, and the redox conditions will change as Eh becomes less positive. When all of the dissolved oxygen is gone, Eh becomes negative. Organic matter can still be biodegraded as different microbes are present which can utilize other electron acceptors.

Several reducing anaerobic environments may be present in anoxic ground waters. If oxygen is present, it acts as an electron acceptor. Once the oxygen is gone, nitrate (NO_3^-) in the ground water becomes the electron acceptor (nitrate-reducing environment). The nitrate is reduced to nitrogen (N_2). When the nitrate is gone, then iron (III) can act as an electron acceptor, the iron (III) being reduced to iron (II). After the iron (III) is removed, the next electron acceptor is sulfate (SO_4^{2-}), with the production of H_2S and H_2S^-. Once the sulfate is removed, the extreme reducing condition becomes methanogenic with the production of methane gas (CH_4). These reducing environments are listed here in order from the least reducing (nitrate reducing) to the most reducing (methanogenic).

Because of the difficulty of measuring in situ Eh in ground water, there is not a great deal of information on the Eh-pH range of natural ground waters. Some data suggest that a range of Eh from –0.2 to +0.7 V can occur (Back & Barnes 1965; Bass Becking, Kaplan, & Moore 1960). In one study, the measured Eh ranged from −0.04 to +0.7 V in ground water found in a single county in Maryland (Back & Barnes 1965). The ground water was in a coastal plain aquifer with a regional flow pattern toward the sea. The highest oxidation potentials were in shallow ground water of recharge areas. Eh was found to decrease with increasing length of flow from the aquifer recharge area. As might be expected, an inverse relationship was found between the oxidation potential and the amount of iron in solution. In the same study, field pH was found to range from 3.20 to 7.79; although, in general, higher and lower values are possible. For example, water draining from mineral deposits or mines can have a pH as low as 2 (Bass Becking, Kaplan, & Moore 1960).

Surface waters are usually oxidizing, although low Eh can occur in the anaerobic depths of some lakes. The pH of surface waters typically is in the range of 4 to 10 (Bass Becking, Kaplan, & Moore 1960).

9.11 Ion Exchange

Under certain conditions, the ions attracted to a solid surface may be exchanged for other ions in aqueous solution. This process is known as **ion exchange.** Both cation exchange and anion exchange can occur, but in some natural soils cation exchange is the dominant process. The presence of exchange sites is a function of the same general conditions affecting adsorption sites. The ion-exchange process can be conceptualized as the preferential absorption of selective ions with concomitant loss of other ions. Ion-exchange sites are found primarily on clays and soil organic materials (Mitchell 1932), although all soils and sediments have some ion-exchange capacity.

The ion-exchange reactions of different soils must be studied individually in the laboratory. Results are reported in terms of milliequivalents per 100 g of soil. In one study of

Table 9.6 Ion-exchange values for stream sediments

Size Fraction (μm)	Ion Exchange (meq/100 g soil)
4	14–65
4–61	4–30
61–1000	0.3–13

Source: V.C. Kennedy, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 433-D, 1965.

exchange capacities for stream sediments (Kennedy 1965), the results shown in Table 9.6 were reported.

A general ordering of cation exchangeability for common ions in ground water is

$$Na^+ > K^+ > Mg^{2+} > Ca^{2+}$$

The divalent ions are more strongly bonded and tend to replace monovalent ions. However, it is a reversible reaction and, at high activities, the monovalent ions can replace divalent ions. This is the concept behind the home water softener. The divalent Ca^{2+} and Mg^{2+} ions replace the monovalent Na^+ ions on the exchange media. The exchange medium is regenerated when a brine solution with very high Na^+ activity is forced through the softener. The Na^+ replaces the Ca^{2+} and Mg^{2+} at the exchange sites. Ion-exchange capacities of organic colloids and clays can also remove heavy metal cations and thus provide some protection to groundwater supplies, but enough cases of ground-water pollution from heavy metals have been documented to demonstrate that such protection is limited to areas with clay in the soils.

One particularly well-studied ion-exchange reaction is the replacement of calcium in the soil with sodium. If water used for irrigation is high in sodium and low in calcium, the cation-exchange complex may become saturated with sodium. This can destroy the soil structure owing to dispersion of the clay particles. A simple method of evaluating the danger of high-sodium water is the *sodium-adsorption ratio*, or *SAR* (Richards 1954):

$$\text{SAR} = \frac{(Na^+)}{\left[\frac{(Ca^{2+}) + (Mg^{2+})}{2}\right]^{0.5}} \tag{9.42}$$

A low SAR (2 to 10) indicates little danger from sodium; medium hazards are between 7 and 18, high hazards between 11 and 26, and very high hazards above that. The lower the ionic strength of the solution, the greater the sodium hazard for a given SAR. Anions present in the water can affect calcium replacement.

If the ion-exchange process is controlled by a reversible equilibrium process, the following equation applies.

$$b[\bar{A}] + a[B] \rightleftharpoons a[\bar{B}] + b[A] \tag{9.43}$$

where

A and B are chemically exchanging species, A with a valence of a and B with a valence of b

[A] is the concentration of solute A in terms of mass per unit volume of liquid

$[\bar{A}]$ is the amount of solute A adsorbed by ion exchange on a unit mass of sediment or soil.

When the exchanged ions are in equilibrium, the concentration of products and reactants at equilibrium is described by the ion-exchange selectivity coefficient, K_s:

$$K_s = \frac{[\bar{B}]^a [A]^b}{[\bar{A}]^b [B]^a} \tag{9.44}$$

The **cation-exchange capacity (CEC)** is defined as $[\bar{A}] + [\bar{B}]$ and the total solute concentration, C_0, is equal to [A] + [B]. When the concentration of one exchanging ion is very low, the adsorbed phase of the other (dominant) ion is approximately equal to CEC, and the total solute concentration is almost entirely that of the dominant ion. Equation 9.44 can be rewritten under these conditions, if A is the major species, as

$$K_s = \frac{[\bar{B}]^a C_0^b}{CEC^b [B]^a} \tag{9.45}$$

The *ion-exchange distribution coefficient*, K_d, is the ratio of the adsorbed species concentration to the concentration of the solute:

$$K_d = \frac{[\bar{B}]}{[B]} \tag{9.46}$$

A standard laboratory test is available to determine the cation exchange capacity of soils. A 100-g sample of dry soil is mixed with a solution of ammonium acetate to saturate the exchange sites with NH_4^+ ions. The pH of the pore water is adjusted to a value of 7.0. The soil is leached with a strong NaCl solution to replace the NH_4^+ on the exchange sites with Na^+ ions. The sodium content of the leaching solution is then determined and the CEC computed as the difference between the sodium in the original solution and the sodium in the leaching solution at equilibrium. It is reported in milliequivalents per 100 g of soil. The CEC is frequently used as an indication of the potential of a soil to attenuate pollutants with exchangeable ions.

9.12 Isotope Hydrology

Isotopes of a particular element have the same atomic number but different atomic weights due to varying numbers of neutrons in the nucleus. *Stable* isotopes are not involved with any natural radioactive decay process. *Radioactive* isotopes undergo spontaneous radioactive decay to form new elements or isotopes. *Radiogenic* isotopes are the stable product of radioactive decay. Certain stable isotopes of hydrogen, oxygen, carbon, nitrogen, and sulfur can be used to study geologic processes that affect ground and surface water. Radioactive isotopes can be used to determine the age of ground water.

Environmental isotopes are those that are naturally occurring. Radioactive isotopes can also be introduced into the ground as part of a ground-water study, usually to determine the direction and/or velocity of ground-water flow.

9.12.1 Stable Isotopes

Stable isotope studies are based on the tendency of some pairs of isotopes to *fractionate*, or separate into light and heavy fractions. This fractionation occurs during some geologic process, such as evaporation or heating. The five elements that are used in stable isotope studies are able to fractionate readily, are fairly common, have a relatively large difference in mass between the two isotopes, and have one isotope that is much more abundant than the other. If R is the ratio of the heavy isotope to the light one, then the relative fractionation is expressed in del notation as:

$$\delta = \frac{R_{sample} - R_{standard}}{R_{standard}} \times 1000 \tag{9.47}$$

Results are expressed as deviation in parts per thousand (‰). If the value of δ is positive then the sample is enriched with the heavy isotope relative to the standard; a negative sample is isotopically light.

There are two stable isotopes of hydrogen, ^1H and ^2H (deuterium), as well as three stable isotopes of oxygen, ^{16}O, ^{17}O, and ^{18}O. There are nine different combinations of these isotopes that make stable water molecules with atomic masses ranging from 18 to 22. The most abundant water molecule, $^1H_2{}^{16}O$, which is the lightest, has a much higher vapor pressure than the heaviest form, $^2H_2{}^{18}O$. During phase changes of water between liquid and gas, the heavier water molecules tend to concentrate in the liquid phase, which fractionates the hydrogen and oxygen isotopes. Water that evaporates from the ocean is isotopically lighter than the water remaining behind, and precipitation is isotopically heavier; that is, it contains more ^2H and ^{18}O than the vapor left behind in the atmosphere.

The use of mass spectrometry can determine the ratio of isotopes in a water sample. Important isotope ratios include $^{18}O/^{16}O$ and $^2H/^1H$. These isotopic ratios from an environmental water sample can be compared with the isotopic ratio of standard mean ocean water (SMOW). The comparison is made by means of the parameter δ, which is defined as

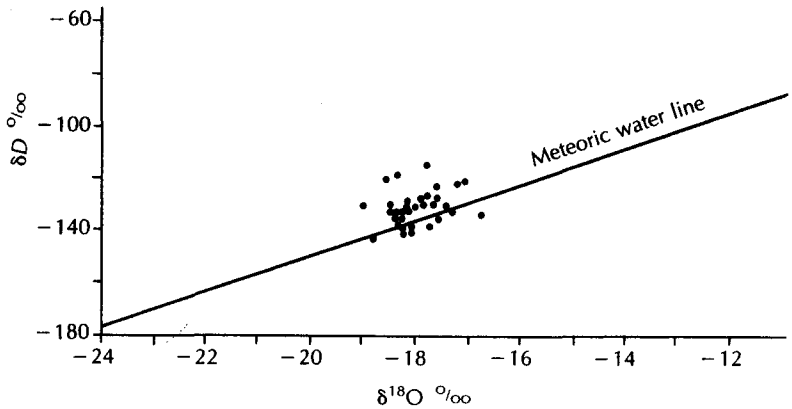
$$\delta^{18}O\,(‰) = \left[\frac{(^{18}O/^{16}O)_{sample}}{(^{18}O/^{16}O)_{SMOW}} - 1\right]10^3 \tag{9.48}$$

$$\delta^{2}H\,(‰) = \left[\frac{(^{2}H/^{1}H)_{sample}}{(^{2}H/^{1}H)_{SMOW}} - 1\right]10^3 \tag{9.49}$$

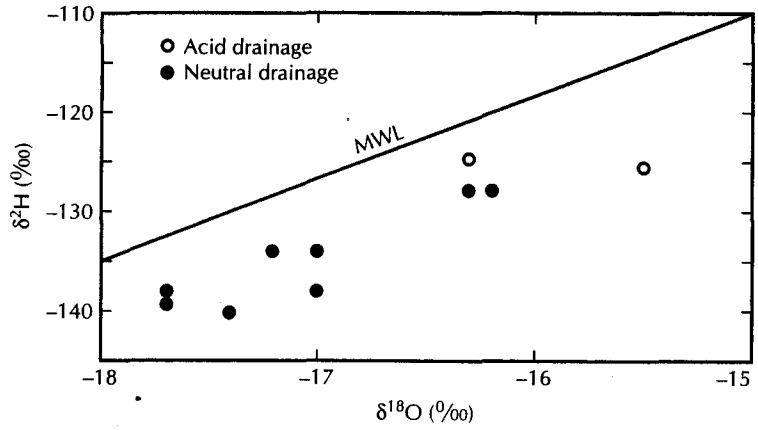
When δ^2H is plotted as a function of $\delta^{18}O$ for water found in continental precipitation, an experimental linear relationship is found that can be described by the equation (Mayo, Muller, & Ralston 1985)

$$\delta^2H = 8\delta^{18}O + 10 \tag{9.50}$$

This is known as the *global meteoric water line.* Continental precipitation samples will tend to group close to this line. Precipitation falling in areas with lower temperatures or at higher latitudes will tend to have lower δ^2H and $\delta^{18}O$ values. Naturally, oceanic water will fall below the meteoric water line as it is isotopically enriched. Deviations from the meteoric water line can be interpreted as being caused by precipitation that occurred during a warmer or colder climate than at present or by geochemical changes that occurred when the water was underground (Craig 1961). Geothermal water tends to be isotopically enriched with respect to $\delta^{18}O$ owing to equilibration of the oxygen in the ground water with respect to oxygen in the rocks (Mayo, Muller, & Ralston 1985). Figure 9.5 shows the meteoric water line



▲ FIGURE 9.5
δD (δ^2H) and $\delta^{18}O$ values from spring and well waters in the Meade thrust area, southeastern Idaho. *Source: A. L. Mayo. Ground-Water Flow Patterns in the Meade Thrust Allochthon, Idaho-Wyoming Thrust Belt, Southeastern Idaho. Ph.D. thesis, University of Idaho, 1982.*



▲ FIGURE 9.6
Plot of δ^2H versus $\delta^{18}O$ for ground water in the central Wasatch Range, Utah, showing a "local" meteoric water line parallel to the global meteoric water line. *Source: A. L. Mayo et al.,* Ground Water *30, no. 2 (1992): 243–249. Used with permission. © 1992 Ground Water Publishing Company.*

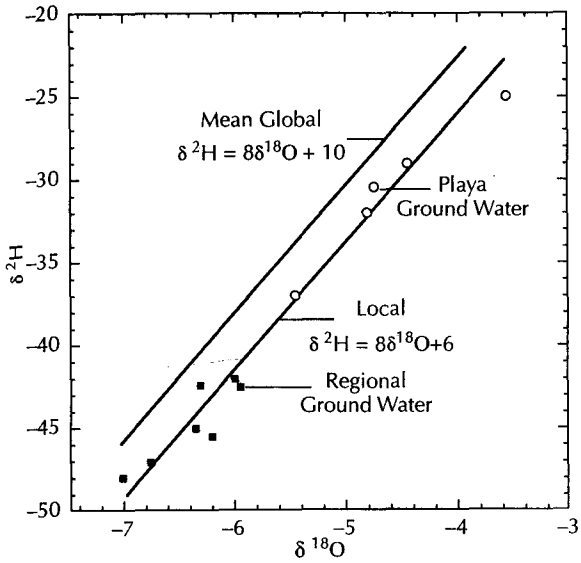
and the results of stable isotope analyses for a number of spring water samples from the Meade thrust area of southeastern Idaho.

In some ground-water studies the plot of δ^2H as a function of $\delta^{18}O$ forms a straight line that is parallel to but below the meteoric water line (Figure 9.6). This has been interpreted as a "local" meteoric water line (White & Chuma 1987; Mayo et al. 1992).

Wood and Sanford (1995) studied ground-water recharge in the southern High Plains of Texas. They hypothesized that ground-water recharge was primarily focused through the 25,000 shallow, ephemeral playas (lake basins) rather than diffused across the broad region. Other studies had shown that the $\delta^{18}O$ in the High Plains aquifer becomes isotopically heavier in the direction of regional ground-water flow, because the recharge water temperatures increase in the direction of ground-water flow due to the decrease in mean ground elevation and the decreasing latitude. Wood and Sanford (1995) found that the ground water beneath a research playa was isotopically heavier than the upgradient water coming from lateral ground-water flow (Figure 9.7). This provided one line of evidence that the recharge was focused in the playas by demonstrating that the upgradient water was not locally recharged, but that ground water beneath the playa was from a local source.

Stable carbon isotopes are ^{12}C and ^{13}C, with ^{13}C being relatively rare. One of the standards for carbon isotopes is a marine belemnite from the Pee Dee formation of South Carolina (PDB). Inorganic carbon in ground water can come from atmospheric carbon dioxide, carbon dioxide generated by biota in the soil zone, and dissolution of carbonate materials. The $\delta^{13}C$ of dissolved inorganic carbon in the ocean is about 0‰ PDB. Soil gas carbon dioxide is about −20‰, whereas atmospheric carbon dioxide is about −7‰ (Drever 1997). The contribution of atmospheric carbon dioxide is small due to the low partial pressure of atmospheric carbon dioxide (Mayo et al. 1992). The $\delta^{13}C$ of carbonate rocks is about 0‰, which is understandable because they precipitated from the ocean, which has a similar value. Mayo et al. (1992) found a mean $\delta^{13}C$ for carbonate rocks of the Wasatch Range of Utah of +0.30‰, and Muller and Mayo (1986) found a mean value of −1.85‰ ± 1.85 PDB for the Redwall Limestone of Arizona.

The $\delta^{13}C$ of ground water is estimated to come in roughly equal amounts from soil-zone gas and carbonate rocks in most carbonate rock aquifers (Mayo et al. 1992). If this is



◀ FIGURE 9.7
Graph of δ^2H as a function of $\delta^{18}O$ for a playa in the Southern High Plains. Isotopically heavier ground water is found beneath the playa than is found in the upgradient regional ground water. *Source: Wood, Warren W. and Ward E. Sanford. 1995. Chemical and isotopic methods for quantifying ground-water recharge in a regional semiarid environment.* Ground Water *33. No. 3:458–468. Used with permission. © 1995 Ground Water Publishing Company.*

true, it should be about −10‰ PDB. If the actual value is between about 0‰ and −10‰, then carbonate rocks are contributing a greater amount. If the value is less than −10‰, then soil-zone carbon dioxide is more important than carbonate rock as a source.

Sulfur isotope fractionation studies can be used to distinguish the origin of dissolved sulfur in ground water. The sulfur isotope pair used is $^{34}S/^{32}S$. The standard for $\delta^{34}S$ is the mineral troilite (FeS), which is found in the Canyon Diablo meteorite of Meteor Crater, Arizona. Sources of sulfur in ground water include atmospheric sulfur, dissolution of sulfate minerals such as gypsum, and oxidation of sulfide minerals such as pyrite. The dissolution of gypsum will result in an enrichment of ^{34}S; that is, $\delta^{34}S$ becomes more positive. On the other hand, the oxidation of reduced sulfur species will result in an enrichment of ^{32}S, which means that $\delta^{34}S$ will decrease. Mayo and Klauk (1991) used sulfur isotopes to demonstrate that, although ground water from a sedimentary rock unit and a nearby crystalline rock unit had similar concentrations of dissolved sulfate, the ground waters had different sources because the $\delta^{34}S$ values of the two units were different.

The ratio of $^{15}N/^{14}N$ in inorganic nitrogen in ground water as compared with the ratio of atmospheric nitrogen, which is the standard, can be used to determine the source of the nitrogen. Kreitler and Jones (1975) used stable nitrogen isotopes to demonstrate that the source of nitrate contamination in a Texas aquifer was from natural soil nitrate. Kreitler, Ragone, and Katz (1978) demonstrated that in rural, eastern Long Island, inorganic nitrogen in ground water was primarily from inorganic fertilizer, whereas in western, more urbanized Long Island, the nitrogen was mostly from septic tank wastes.

Fogg and others (1998) examined the $\delta^{15}N$ values in the vadose zone beneath a number of sites in two semiarid regions of California. They were concerned that in regions with a thick vadose zone, denitrification might change the $\delta^{15}N$ signature in the recharging water and hence affect the $\delta^{15}N$ ratio in the ground water making interpretation difficult. In general, they found that there was little evidence of denitrification and the $\delta^{15}N$ values remained consistent with depth at each site.

9.12.2 Radioactive Isotopes Used for Age Dating

Tritium, ^3H, is an unstable isotope of hydrogen with a half-life of 12.3 y. Tritium in the atmosphere is typically in the form of the molecule H^3HO and enters the ground water as

recharging precipitation. Prior to 1953, rainwater had less than 10 tritium units (TU). Starting in 1953, the manufacturing and testing of nuclear weapons has increased the amount of tritium in the atmosphere, with a resulting increase in tritium in the ground water. As a result, ^3H can be used in a qualitative manner to date ground water in the sense that ground water with less than 2 to 4 TU is dated prior to 1953; if the amount is significantly greater than 10 to 20 TU, it has been in contact with the atmosphere since 1953. Because of the great temporal and spatial variations in ^3H injected into the atmosphere since 1953, it cannot be used with more precision.

Wood and Sanford (1995), in their study of recharge in the High Plains, determined the tritium concentration with depth in the vadose zone beneath a playa. Atmospheric testing of thermonuclear devices peaked in 1963, so that the peak tritium concentration in the vadose zone should correspond to water that was recharged through the playa in 1963. That occurred at a depth of 21 ft (6.6 m). The data were collected in 1993; therefore, it took 30 years for the recharge to travel 21 ft (6.6 m), or an average distance of 8.66 in/y (220mm/y). Wood and Sanford then calculated a recharge flux of 3.03 ± 0.3 in./y (77 ± 8 mm/y); a second line of evidence that ground-water recharge in the southern High Plains is concentrated in the playas.

Ground-water ages were estimated in a shallow unconfined aquifer that had been contaminated by fuel-related organics by using the ratio of ^3H to ^3He (Solomon & others 1995). They were able to estimate the recharge rate to the aquifer, the horizontal ground-water velocity, the date when contamination first reached the water table, and the location of the contaminant source.

Radiocarbon dating methods can be applied to obtain the age of ground water. Carbon exists in several naturally occurring isotopes, ^{12}C, ^{13}C, and ^{14}C. Carbon 14 is formed in the atmosphere by the bombardment of ^{14}N by cosmic radiation (DeVries 1959). The ^{14}C forms CO_2, so that the atmospheric CO_2 has a constant radioactivity due to modern ^{14}C. If the CO_2 is incorporated into a form in which it is isolated from modern ^{14}C, age determinations can be made from the ^{14}C radioactivity as a percent of the original. The half-life of ^{14}C is 5730 y, so that if one-fourth of the original activity is present, two half-lives, or 11,460 y, have elapsed. When precipitation soaks into the ground, it is saturated with respect to CO_2, with a known ^{14}C activity. Once the water has entered the soil, additional carbon may come from soil CO_2 and the solution of carbonate minerals. The modern carbon is diluted by the inactive carbon from carbonate minerals. The raw dates obtained must be adjusted for this dilution.

If A_C is the measured ^{14}C radioactivity and A_0 is the activity at the time the sample was isolated, then the following equation may be used:

$$A_C = QA_0 2^{-t/Tc} \tag{9.51}$$

where

t is the age

T_C is the half-life of ^{14}C

Q is an adjustment factor to account for dilution by *dead carbon** (Wigley 1975)

The equation requires an estimation of initial value, A_0, and the adjustment factor, Q.

The value of A_0 will depend on the carbonate equilibria established under an open system in which the ground water was exposed to an infinite reservoir of CO_2. This occurs in nature in the soil zone and in shallow ground water. When the ground-water system becomes closed with respect to CO_2, then any added carbon would be only from carbonate

*Dead carbon is carbon from a source old enough for any ^{14}C to have decayed below measurable limits.

rocks, that is, dead carbon. The value of Q is generally in the range of 0.5 to 0.9. Carbon 14 dates of ground water thus tend to be somewhat less than raw dates as a result of the dilution by dead carbon from carbonate minerals. The determination of A_0 and Q is somewhat complex, and several different methods are available (Wigley 1975; Plines, Langmuir, & Harmon 1974). Radiocarbon dates of ground water of up to 50,000 to 80,000 y may be obtained, although the accuracy under the best of conditions is approximately ±20% (Davis & Bentley 1982). Indeed, Muller and Mayo (1986) demonstrated that a variation of ±20% could be expected on the basis of variation of the ^{13}C content of the dead carbon in carbonate rocks.

A number of other isotopes have been used or have been proposed to be used to date ground water. Chlorine 36 is one of them (Bentley & Davis 1980). It has been proposed as a method to date ground water that is older than water that can be dated with carbon 14 as it has a half-life of 3.01×10^5 years. A ratio of ^{36}Cl to total Cl is determined; the higher the ratio, the younger the sample. Oceanic water is old enough that little, if any, ^{36}Cl is present. Young water near the coastline, which is likely to contain chloride produced as salt spray from the ocean, will appear to be much older owing to the large amount of "dead" chloride. Other isotopes with possible uses in age dating are ^{85}Kr, ^{81}Kr, ^{39}Ar, and ^{32}Si (Davis & Bentley 1982).

9.13 Major Ion Chemistry

More than 90% of the dissolved solids in ground water can be attributed to eight ions: Na^+, Ca^{2+}, K^+, Mg^{2+}, SO_4^{2-}, Cl^-, HCO_3^-, and CO_3^{2-}. These ions are usually present at concentrations greater than 1 mg/L. Silica, SiO_2, a nonionic species, is also typically present at concentrations greater than 1 mg/L. Direct analysis can be done for the first six ions. Bicarbonate and carbonate concentrations are found by titrating the sample with acid to an endpoint with a pH of about 4.4. This is reported as total alkalinity. Based on the pH of the sample, the proportion of carbonate and bicarbonate can be calculated from Equation 9.25B. Field measurements of pH, temperature, and specific electrical conductance are usually made at the time the sample is collected. Without field pH, the concentrations of carbonate and bicarbonate cannot be determined from the alkalinity.

Other naturally occurring ions that may be present in amounts of 0.1 mg/L to 10 mg/L include iron, nitrate, fluoride, strontium, and boron. Iron and nitrate are typically included in water-chemistry studies, with fluoride, strontium, and boron being less commonly reported. Many other inorganic ions are important from a standpoint of water quality and are discussed in Chapter 10.

Total dissolved solids (TDS) can be determined by evaporating a known volume of the sample and weighing the residue. TDS can be estimated by summing the concentrations of the individual ions. This method does not account for any dissolved solids that might be present from unreported ions or other dissolved substances. For example, dissolved silica, SiO_2, may not be reported but contributes to TDS.

As a check on the chemical analysis, a cation-anion balance is usually performed. This is accomplished by converting all the ionic concentrations to units of equivalents per liter. The anions and cations are summed separately, and the results are compared. If the sum of the cations is not within a few percent of the sums of the anions, then either there is a problem with the chemical analysis or one or more ionic species that have not been identified are present in significant amounts.

An alternative method is to calculate the charge balance error (CBE). The charge balance error can be found from the following equation.

$$\text{CBE}\% = \frac{\sum z \times m_c - \sum z \times m_a}{\sum z \times m_c + \sum z \times m_a} \tag{9.52}$$

where

z is the charge on an ion

m_c is the molality of a cation

m_a is the molality of an anion

If there is a zero charge balance error, then $\Sigma z \times m_c$ would equal $\Sigma z \times m_a$. This does not mean that there is no error, as it is possible that the anionic errors exactly cancel out the cationic errors.

Fritz (1994) studied the charge balance errors in published journal articles. He found that the average error was 3.99%. If the error was random, then there should be an equal number of positive as opposed to negative charge balance errors. Fritz found more positive than negative errors, that is, more cations than anions, which suggests a systematic error with some anion being undermeasured. He suggests that this is due to alkalinity being measured in the lab rather in the field. Alkalinity is a measure of the bicarbonate. By waiting until the sample is back in the lab, carbonate material can precipitate in the portion of the sample collected for anion analysis, thus removing bicarbonate. However, the portion of the sample collected for cation analysis is acidified, so that the calcium and magnesium have not precipitated and are thus measured accurately.

9.14 Presentation of Results of Chemical Analyses

Tables of data are the most common form in which the results of an analysis of water chemistry are reported. The data can be expressed in milligrams per liter (mg/L), milliequivalents per liter (meq/L), or millimoles per liter. For many purposes, the data may be also displayed in graphical form.

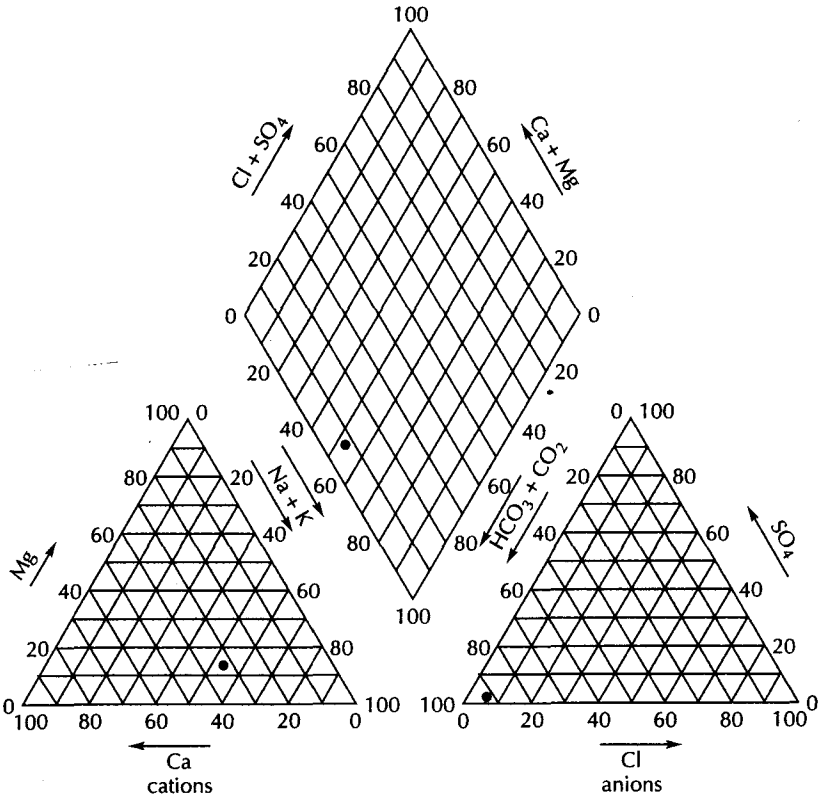
9.14.1 Piper Diagram

The major ionic species in most natural waters are Na^+, K^+, Ca^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, Cl^-, CO_3^{2-}, HCO_3^-, and SO_4^{2-}. A trilinear diagram can show the percentage composition of three ions. By grouping Na^+ and K^+ together, the major cations can be displayed on one trilinear diagram. Likewise, if CO_3^{2-} and HCO_3^- are grouped, there are also three groups of the major anions. Figure 9.8 shows the form of a trilinear diagram that is commonly used in water-chemistry studies (Piper 1944). Analyses are plotted on the basis of the percent of each cation (or anion).

Each apex of a triangle represents a 100% concentration of one of the three constituents. If a sample has two constituent groups present, then the point representing the percentage of each would be plotted on the line between the apexes for those two groups. If all three constituent groups are present, the analyses would fall in the interior of the field. The diamond-shaped field between the two triangles is used to represent the composition of water with respect to both cations and anions.

The cation point is projected onto the diamond-shaped field parallel to the side of the triangle labeled magnesium, and the anion point is similarly projected parallel to the side of the triangle labeled sulfate. The intersection of the two lines is plotted as a point on the diamond-shaped field.

As water flows through an aquifer it assumes a diagnostic chemical composition as a result of interaction with the lithologic framework. The term **hydrochemical facies** is used to describe the bodies of ground water, in an aquifer, that differ in their chemical composition. The facies are a function of the lithology, solution kinetics, and flow patterns of the aquifer (Back 1960, 1966). Hydrochemical facies can be classified on the basis of the dominant ions in the facies by means of the trilinear diagram (Figure 9.9).



▲ FIGURE 9.8
Trilinear diagram of the type used to display the results of water-chemistry studies. Results of the example problem from Section 10.14 are plotted on the diagram.

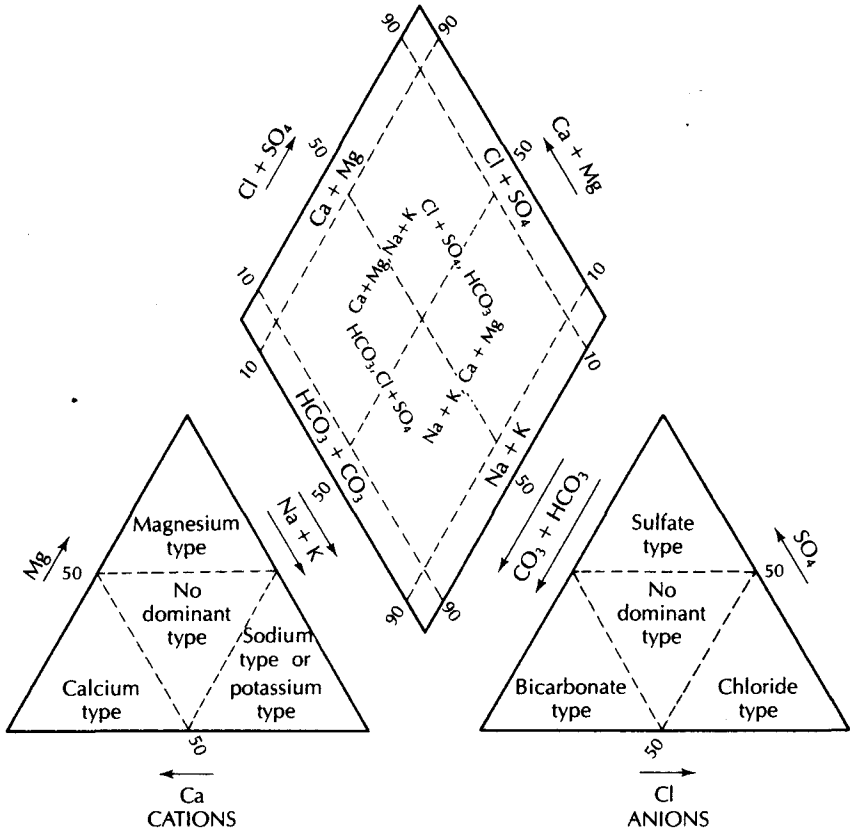
EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Plot the results of the following analysis on a trilinear diagram.

	Ca^{2+}	Mg^{2+}	Na^{+}	K^{+}	HCO_3^{-}	CO_3^{2-}	SO_4^{2-}	Cl^{-}
mg/L	23	4.7	35	4.7	171	0	1.0	9.5
meq/L	1.15	0.39	1.52	0.12	2.80	0	0.02	0.27

The first step is to find the percent of each cation and anion group as a percentage of the total:

Cations	meq/L	% of Total	Anions	meq/L	% of Total
Ca^{2+}	1.15	36	Cl^{-}	0.27	9
Mg^{2+}	0.39	12	SO_4^{2-}	0.02	1
$Na^{+} + K^{+}$	1.64	52	$CO_3^{2-} + HCO_3^{-}$	2.80	90
Total	3.18		Total	3.09	



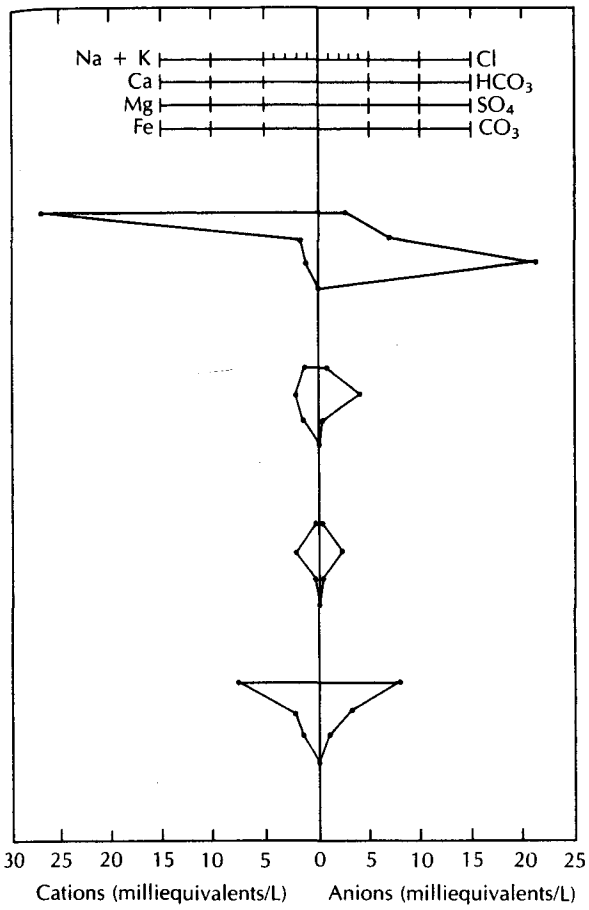
▲ FIGURE 9.9
Hydrogeochemical classification system for natural waters using the trilinear diagram.

Due to analytical error and unreported minor constituents, the total equivalents of anions and cations do not exactly match. Theoretically, the total equivalent weight of the anions should be exactly that of the cations, as equivalent weights are based on the amount of the ion that would combine with O_2.

The points for both cations and anions are plotted on the appropriate triaxial diagrams in Figure 9.8. The positions of these points are projected onto the diamond-shaped field and the intersection of the projected lines is plotted.

9.14.2 Stiff Pattern

A second type of graphical presentation of chemical analyses is the **Stiff pattern** (Stiff 1951). A polygonal shape is created from four parallel horizontal axes extending on either side of a vertical zero axis. Cations are plotted in milliequivalents per liter on the left of the zero axis, one to each horizontal axis, and anions are plotted on the right. Figure 9.10 shows several Stiff patterns. The use of the lower horizontal bar with iron and carbonate is optional as in many waters they are close to zero. Stiff patterns are useful in making a rapid visual comparison between water from different sources. The larger the area of the polygonal shape, the greater the concentrations of the various ions. Figure 9.11 shows the use of Stiff patterns in an area where mineralized water exists in a portion of an aquifer system. The isocon lines represent lines of equal total dissolved solids and the Stiff patterns are centered over the location of a particular well. In these patterns the lower horizontal line for iron and carbonate was not used.



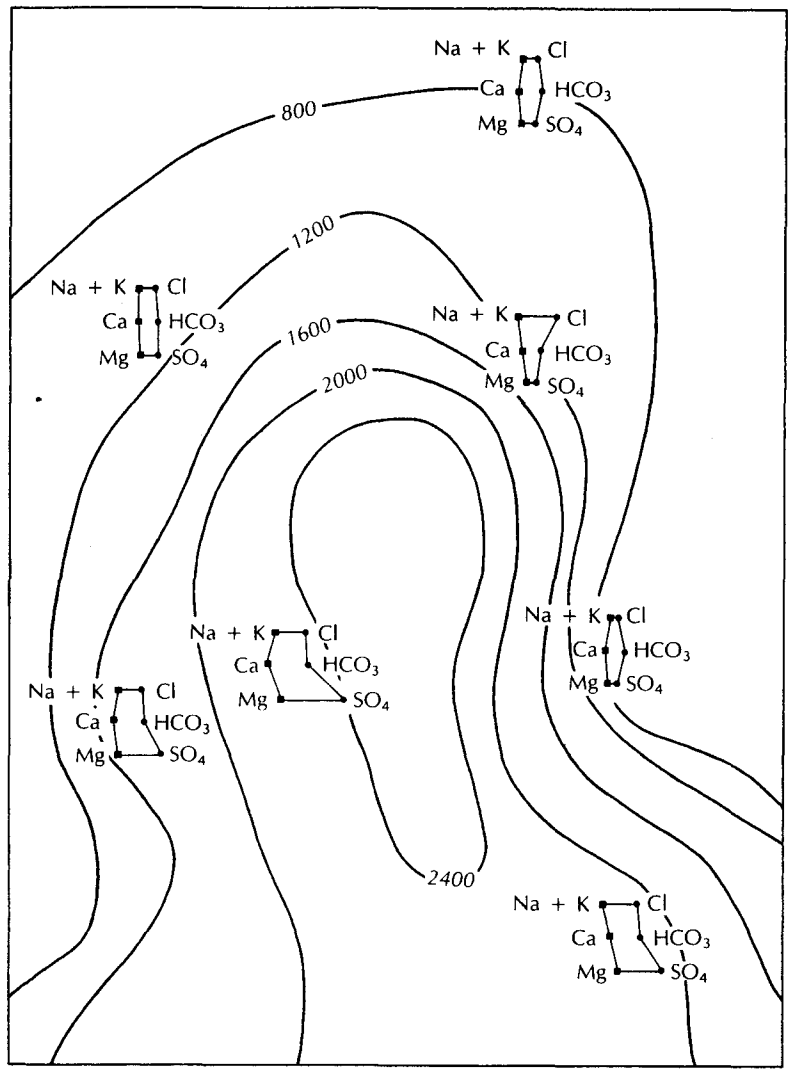
◀ FIGURE 9.10
Analysis represented by Stiff patterns. The horizontal distance from the vertical axis is based on the number of milliequivalents per liter of each anion or cation. Use of the lower bar for iron and carbonate is optional. *Source: J. D. Hem, U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2254, 1985.*

9.14.3 Schoeller Semilogarithmic Diagram

Schoeller (1955) proposed the use of semilogarithmic graph paper to plot the concentrations of the anions and cations. The concentrations are plotted in meq/L. This type of diagram allows us to make a visual comparison of the compositions of different waters. Figure 9.12 is an example of a Schoeller diagram, which uses the data from the example problem in Section 9.14.1. Sodium and potassium are often grouped, although since there can be more than three cations, this is not necessary.

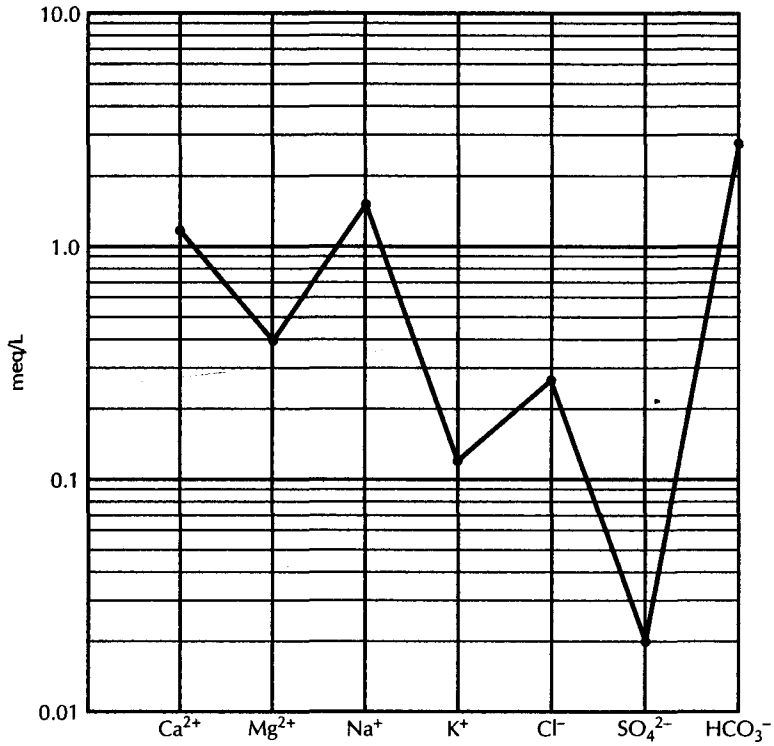
Case Study: Chemical Geohydrology of the Floridan Aquifer System

The regional geohydrology of the Floridan aquifer was discussed in Section 7.4. The chemical geohydrology of this aquifer system is also well known. We will consider the chemical changes that take place as the water flows from the central recharge area at Polk City to the south. Data from five wells form the basis for the hydrochemical cross sections (Back, Cherry, & Hanshaw 1966; Back & Hanshaw 1970; Plummer 1977). Figure 9.13 indicates the locations of the wells on the potentiometric map of central Florida, with Polk City located at the southern edge of the recharge area. The five wells tap the Floridan aquifer and lie approximately along the same flow path. Chemical analyses of water from the wells are

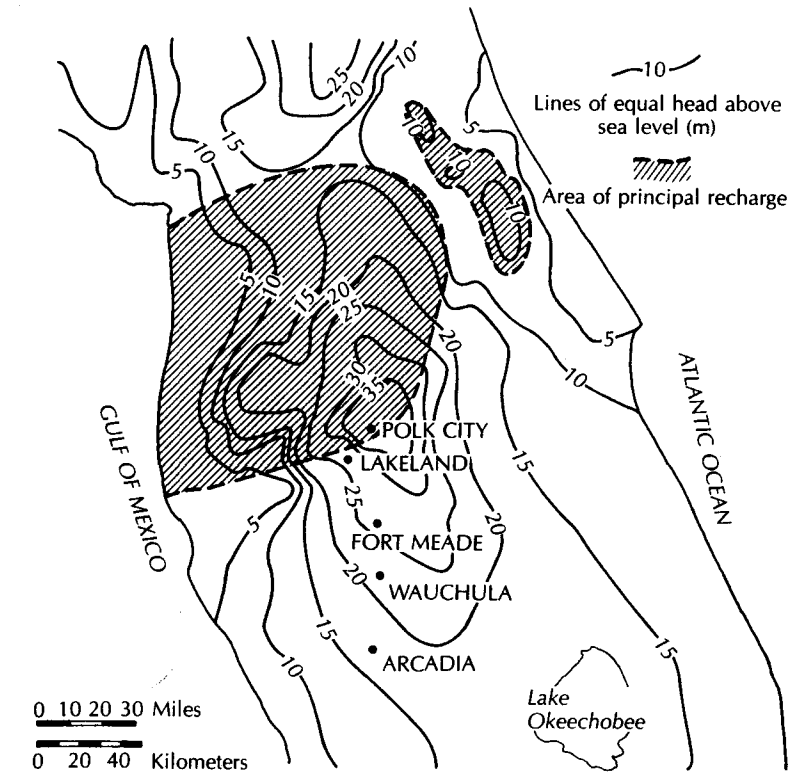


▲ FIGURE 9.11
Use of Stiff patterns to show the varying ground-water chemistry in an area containing mineralized water from a waste-disposal operation. Solid lines represent isocons of total dissolved solids. Stiff patterns are centered over locations of wells.

given in Table 9.7. As water travels down the flow path, it increases in total dissolved solids, from 138 to 726 mg/L. All ions except bicarbonate show a progressive increase along the flow path (Figure 9.14). Computation of ion-activity products from the analyses show that both dolomite and calcite saturation increase along the flow path. For the most part, the K_{iap}/K_{sp} of the water is greater than 1, indicating supersaturation. Hydrochemical cross sections along the flow path are shown in Figure 9.14. A trilinear plot (Figure 9.15) of the well analyses indicates that the chemical composition of the water is shifting along the flow path. This is due to an increase in the Mg^{2+}/Ca^{2+} and the SO_4^{2-}/HCO_3^- ratios with increasing distance from the recharge area. The change in these ratios is due to the solution of gypsum ($CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$) and dolomite [$CaMg(CO_3)_2$] along the flow paths. It is important to note that these reactions involve only the solution of minerals in fresh water. If



◀ FIGURE 9.12
A Schoeller diagram with the data from the example problem in Section 9.14.1 plotted.



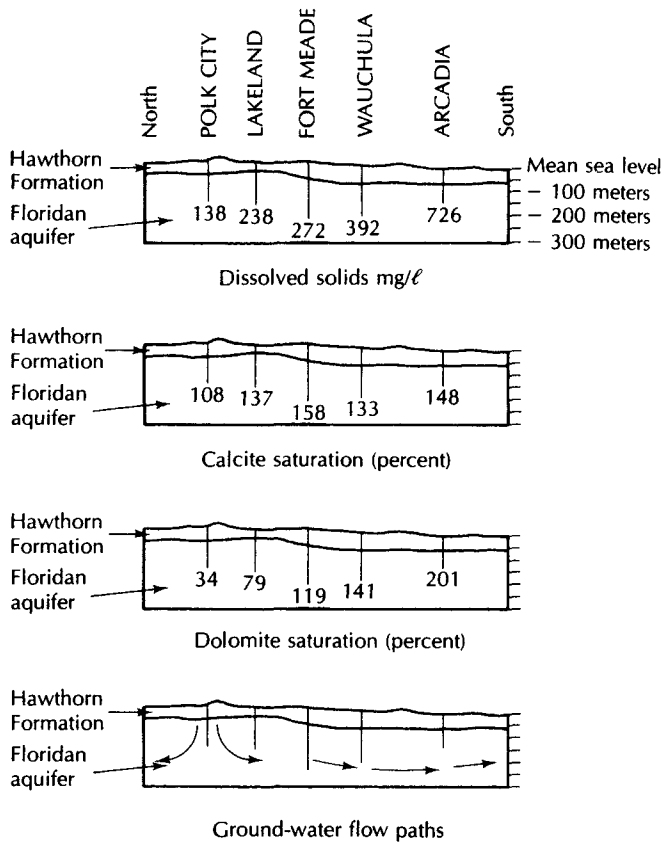
▲ FIGURE 9.13
Potentiometric surface of the Floridan aquifer in central Florida. *Source: Adapted from L. N. Plummer,* Water Resources Research *13 (1977): 801–12.*

Table 9.7 Chemical analysis of water from Floridan aquifer in central Florida

Well	Location	Temp % C	Field pH	Milligrams per liter SiO_2	Ca^{2+}	Mg^{2+}	Na^{+}	K^{+}	HCO_3^{-}	SO_4^{2-}	CL^{-}	TDS
1	Polk City	23.8	8.0	12	34	5.6	3.2	0.5	124	2.4	4.5	138
2W	Lakeland	26.3	7.62	18	54	14	6.9	1.0	253	3.6	8.5	238
2S	Ft. Meade	26.6	7.75	16	58	17	6.1	0.7	163	71	9.0	272
3S	Wauchula	25.4	7.69	18	66	29	8.3	2.0	168	155	10	392
4S	Arcadia	26.3	7.44	31	106	60	21	3.7	206	344	28	726

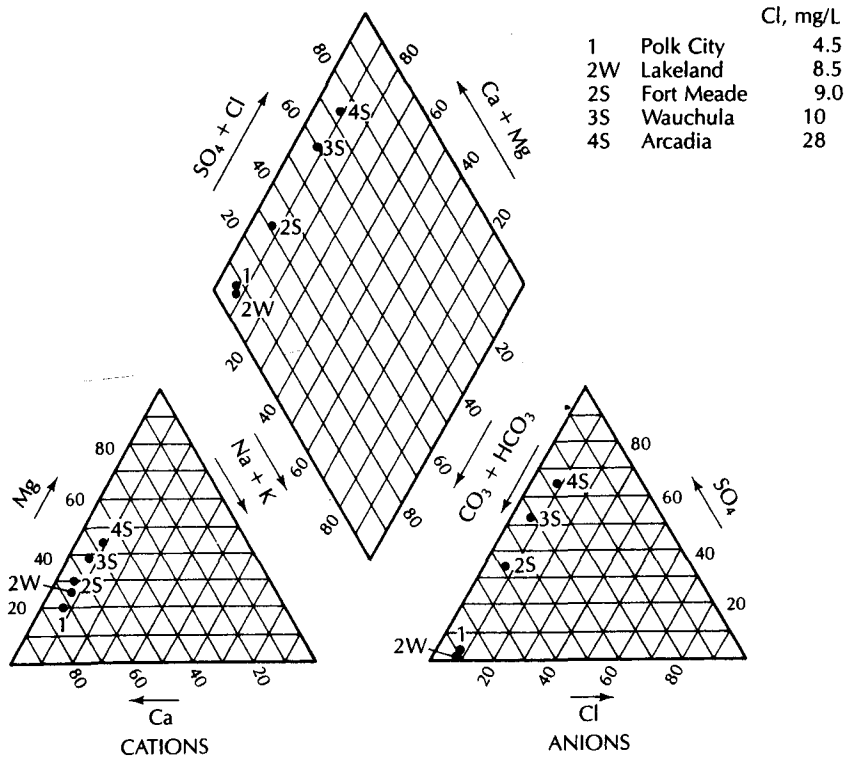
Source: Data from W. Back and B. B. Hanshaw, *Journal of Hydrology* 10 (1970):330–68.

► FIGURE 9.14 •
Hydrogeochemical cross sections from Polk City through Arcadia through the Floridan aquifer. *Sources: Data from Back, Cherry, and Hanshaw (1966); Back and Hanshaw (1970); and Plummer (1977).*



this water mixes with sea water, water chemistry would rapidly change and be dominated by sodium and chloride, both of which are minor constituents in fresh water.

Calculation of the age of ground water from the Floridan aquifer on the basis of ^{14}C activity is complex owing to the solution of dead carbon from carbonate. Complicating the dating is the fact that the flow path from Polk City to Ft. Meade is partially open to soil CO_2, and then it is closed to CO_2 from Ft. Meade to Wauchula. However, from Wauchula to Arcadia, it is again open to CO_2, the source being the oxidation of lignite from sulfate reduction (Plummer 1977). Several authors have dealt with the ^{14}C dating of this water (Wigley 1975; Back & Hanshaw 1970; Plummer 1977) and have cited dates ranging from 20,600 to 24,100 to 36,000 y B.P. Based on the isotopic dating and the reaction coefficients, apparent rates of solution for several mineral species have been calculated (Plummer 1977).



▲ FIGURE 9.15
Trilinear diagram of water analysis from the Floridan aquifer of central Florida. Locations are shown on Figure 9.13. *Source: W. Back and B. B. Hanshaw,* Journal of Hydrology *10 (1970): 330–68 (Amsterdam: North-Holland Publishing Company).*

This type of study illustrates what can be accomplished in chemical geohydrology. It can be a companion to the more commonly performed hydrodynamic study of flow paths and rates. The flow velocity as determined from hydrodynamic considerations can be compared with radiocarbon estimates.

Notation

a	Effective diameter of an ion
A_C	Measured ^{14}C radioactivity
A_0	Radioactivity when a sample becomes geologically isolated
A	Constant in the Debye-Hückel equation
B	Constant in the Debye-Hückel equation
E^0	Standard potential
F	Faraday constant
G	Gibbs free energy
H	Enthalpy
I	Ionic strength
K_d	Ion-exchange distribution coefficient
K	Equilibrium constant
K_{iap}	Ion-exchange selectivity coefficient
K_s	Ion-exchange selectivity coefficient
K	Degrees Kelvin
K_{sp}	Solubility product
m	Molal concentration
n	Number of electrons
Q	Dead-carbon adjustment factor
R	Gas constant
S	Entropy
t	Age
T	Temperature in Kelvin

T_C	Half-life of ^{14}C	ΔG_r^0	Gibbs free energy at standard state
z	Charge of an ion	γ	Activity coefficient
α	Chemical activity	ΔH_r^0	Standard enthalpy of reaction

Analysis

Several programs are available that can be used to make the calculations presented in this chapter, including WTEQ4F and MINTEQA2. However, it is a relatively simple matter to create your own Excel spreadsheet to make some of the calculations. You should first work each type of problem by hand to understand the example problem, and then create your spreadsheet to do the rest of the problems.

A. The first step in making your spreadsheet is to set up the format. You can use the format shown in Figure 9.16. At this point do not enter any formulas into cells.

B. Next enter permanent data that are common for all problems, including formula weight, charge, and ionic radius for each of the ions. Enter this information into each cell, as shown by the example for potassium.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	PROGRAM TO CALCULATE CHEMICAL ACTIVITIES AND EQUIVALENT WEIGHTS								
2									
3									
4									
5	Ion	Formula Weight	Charge	Ionic Radius	Concen. (mg/L)	Concen. (mol/L)	Activity Coefficient	Chemical Activity	Concen. meq/L
6									
7									
8	CATIONS								
9	Potassium	39.1	1	3					
10	Sodium								
11	Calcium								
12	Magnesium								
13	Iron								
14	Barium								
15					Total=			Total=	
16									
17									
18	ANIONS								
19	Sulfate								
20	Bicarbonate								
21	Carbonate								
22	Chloride								
23	Nitrate								
24	Fluoride								
25					Total=			Total=	
26									
27	Ionic Strength =								
28									
29	Total Dissolved Solids =								
30									
31	Piper Diagram Percentages								
32		CATIONS							
33	Sodium + Potasium =								
34	Calcium =								
35	Magnesium =								
36		ANIONS							
37	Sulfate =								
38	Bicarbonate + carbonate =								
39	Chloride =								
40									
41	Charge Balance Error =								

▲ FIGURE 9.16
Format of EXCEL spreadsheet to make basic geochemical calculations.

C. Laboratory data for concentrations are always given in mg/L. These data will be entered in column E. Since you have no data to enter yet, list a value of zero in each cell. You must have a value, even if it is zero. An empty cell is not the same as zero. Later, after your spreadsheet is complete, you can enter the values of each ion in an analysis that are nonzero.

D. Now convert the concentration in mg/L to mol/L by using Equation 9.1. Enter Equation 9.1 into the cells in column F. For example, the equation for potassium is =(E9*0.001)/C9. The value of the concentration in cell E9 is multiplied by 10^{-3} and then divided by the charge, which is in cell C9. You can use the copy function to copy the formula from cell F9 to all other cells in column F that correspond to an ion.

E. Now use the summation function to sum the total cation molality into cell F15 and the total anion molality into cell F25.

F. The next step is to write a formula for the ionic strength using Equation 9.16. On the example spreadsheet, this formula goes into cell D27. Ionic strength is calculated using the charges, which are in column C and the computed molalities from column F.

G. Now you can write equations in column G to calculate the activity coefficients for each ion using the Debye-Hückel equation (9.17A). Note that if $\log \gamma = -A$, then $\gamma = 10^{-A}$. You cannot use the copy function here, as the ionic strength is always stored in cell D27. Use of the copy function would change D27. You need to retype the equation into every cell. Alternatively, you could use the copy function and then go to each cell and edit the equation to restore D27 everywhere that it had been changed.

H. The activity is computed for each ion as the product of the activity coefficient, located in column G, and the molality, located in column F. This equation goes in column H. This completes the part of the spreadsheet that computes the chemical activities.

I. One can also conveniently calculate the percentages that are used to find the plotting points on a Piper diagram. First convert the concentrations in mg/L to meq/L. These concentrations go into column I. Use the summation function to find the total cations, cell I15, and total anions, cell I25. Now write equations to find the percent of the total anions and percent of the total cations for each of the plotting axes on the Piper diagram.

J. The total dissolved solids is the sum of the total cations and total anions in mg/L.

K. The charge balance is computed using Equation 9.52.

Problems

Answers to odd-numbered problems appear at the end of the book.

1. How much KCl is in one liter of a 0.26-molar solution?
2. How much NaCl is in one liter of a 0.75-molar solution?
3. The solubility product for CuCl is $10^{-5.9}$. What is the solubility of Cu^+ at equilibrium with CuCl?
4. The solubility product of $CaSO_4$ is $10^{-4.5}$. What is the solubility of Ca^{2+} at equilibrium with $CaSO_4$?
5. The solubility product of fluorite, CaF_2, is $10^{-10.5}$.
   (A) What is the solubility of Ca^{2+} at equilibrium with fluorite?
   (B) If CaF_2 is dissolved in a solution of 0.009-molar F^-, how much will dissolve at equilibrium?
6. The solubility product of MgF_2 is $10^{-8.2}$.
   (A) What is the solubility of Mg^{2+} at equilibrium with MgF_2?
   (B) If MgF_2 is dissolved in a solution of 0.011-molar F^-, how much will dissolve at equilibrium?
7. Given the following ground-water analysis at 25°C:

Ca^{2+}	134 mg/L	HCO_3^-	412 mg/L
Mg^{2+}	44 mg/L	Cl^-	34 mg/L
Na^+	145 mg/L	pH = 8.0	
SO_4^{2-}	429 mg/L	TDS = 1205 mg/L	

   (A) Convert all analyses into molal concentrations.
   (B) Compute ionic strength.
   (C) Compute activity coefficient for each ion.
   (D) Find activity of each ion.
   (E) Convert analyses to meq/L.
   (F) Do a cation-anion balance..
   (G) Find the K_{iap} of anhydrite ($CaSO_4$).
   (H) Compare the K_{iap} of anhydrite with the K_{sp} of anhydrite ($10^{-4.5}$).
   (I) Find the K_{iap} of calcite ($CaCO_3$).
   (J) Compare the K_{iap} of calcite with the K_{sp} of calcite ($10^{-8.4}$).
8. Given the following ground-water analysis at 25°C:

Ca^{2+}	83.27 mg/L	HCO_3^-	366.78 mg/L
Mg^{2+}	24.32 mg/L	Cl^-	12.50 mg/L
Na^+	18.33 mg/L	pH = 7.8	
K^+	2.34 mg/L	TDS = 542 mg/L	
SO_4^{2-}	23.45 mg/L		

   (A) Convert all analyses into molal concentrations.
   (B) Compute ionic strength.
   (C) Compute the activity coefficient for each ion.
   (D) Find the activity of each ion.
   (E) Convert analyses to meq/L.
   (F) Do a cation-anion balance.
   (G) Find the K_{iap} of anhydrite ($CaSO_4$).
   (H) Compare the K_{iap} of anhydrite with the K_{sp} of

CHAPTER 10

Water Quality and Ground-Water Contamination



And these waters, falling on these mountains through the ground and cracks, always descend and do not stop until they find some region blocked by stones or rock very close-set and condensed. And then they rest on such a bottom and having found some channel or other opening, they flow out as fountains or brooks or rivers according to the size of the openings and receptacles; and since such a spring cannot throw itself (against nature) on the mountains, it descends into the valleys. And even though the beginnings of such springs coming from the mountains are not very large, they receive aid from all sides, to enlarge and augment them; and particularly from the lands and mountains to the right and left of these springs.

Discours admirables, Bernard Palissy, ca. 1510–1590

10.1 Introduction

The quality of water that we ingest, as well as the quality of water in our lakes, streams, rivers, and oceans, is a critical parameter in determining the overall quality of our lives. Water quality is determined by the solutes and gases dissolved in the water, as well as the matter suspended in and floating on the water. Water quality is a consequence of the natural physical and chemical state of the water as well as any alterations that may have occurred as a consequence of human activity. The usefulness of water for a particular purpose is determined by the water quality. If human activity alters the natural water quality so that it is no longer fit for a use for which it had previously been suited, the water is said to be **polluted** or **contaminated.** It should be noted that in many areas water quality has been impacted by human activity, but the water is still usable.

Table 10.1 Classification of water based on total dissolved solids

Class	TDS (mg/L)
Fresh	0–1,000
Brackish	1,000–10,000
Saline	10,000–100,000
Brine	>100,000

One basic measure of water quality is the *total dissolved solids (TDS),* which is the total amount of solids, in milligrams per liter, that remain when a water sample is evaporated to dryness. Table 10.1 gives a classification scheme for water based on the total dissolved solids.

Water naturally contains several different dissolved inorganic constituents. The major cations are calcium, magnesium, sodium, and potassium; the major anions are chloride, sulfate, carbonate, and bicarbonate. Although not in ionic form, silica can also be a major constituent. These *major constituents* constitute the bulk of the mineral matter contributing to total dissolved solids. In addition there may be *minor constituents* present, including iron, manganese, fluoride, nitrate, strontium, and boron. *Trace elements* such as arsenic, lead, cadmium, and chromium may be present in amounts of only a few micrograms per liter, but they are very important from a water-quality standpoint.

Dissolved gases are present in both surface and ground water. The major gases of concern are oxygen and carbon dioxide. Nitrogen, which is basically inert, is also present. Minor gases of concern include hydrogen sulfide and methane. Hydrogen sulfide is toxic and imparts a bad odor but is not present in water that contains dissolved oxygen.

Surface water may be adversely impacted by human activity. If organic matter, such as untreated human or animal waste, is placed into the surface-water body, *dissolved oxygen* levels diminish as microorganisms grow, using the organic matter as an energy source and consuming oxygen in the process. The total dissolved solids may increase owing to the disposal of wastewater, urban runoff, and increased erosion due to land-use changes in the drainage basin.

The concentration of dissolved solids in Lake Michigan increased by some 20 mg/L from 1895 to 1965 (Beeton 1965). This has been due to the discharge of water products into the lake as well as changes in the land uses of the basin that have altered the quality of water draining from the land. Air pollution has resulted in an increase in the dissolved solids of precipitation into the lake. A large-volume lake such as Lake Michigan can accept some increased amount of common dissolved salts and unreactive sediment without significant water-quality degradation. However, when a lake is lacking in a mineral critical to plant growth, the addition of only a small amount of the *limiting nutrient* can overly stimulate plant growth and result in a dramatic increase in the rooted vegetation and floating algae. This process is known as **eutrophication.** In Lake Michigan there is a greater concentration of phosphorus in the water near Milwaukee, Wisconsin, than there is at midlake. There is also a larger concentration of diatoms, a type of algae, near shore, where the phosphorus content is high (Hollard & Beeton 1972). The source of the increased phosphorus is agricultural and urban runoff, as well as sewage effluent carried into the lake by the Milwaukee River.

The natural quality of ground water varies substantially from place to place. It can range from total dissolved solids contents of 100 mg/L or less for some fresh ground water to more than 100,000 mg/L for some brines found in deep aquifers. The U.S. Environmen-

tal Protection Agency has developed a three-part classification system, taking this variability into account, for the ground waters of the United States (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency 1984):

> Class I: *Special Ground Waters* are those that are highly vulnerable to contamination because of the hydrological characteristics of the areas under which they occur and that are also either an irreplaceable source of drinking water or ecologically vital in that they provide the baseflow for a particularly sensitive ecological system.
>
> Class II: *Current and Potential Sources of Drinking Water and Waters Having Other Beneficial Uses* are all other ground waters except Class III.
>
> Class III: *Ground Waters Not Considered Potential Sources of Drinking Water and of Limited Beneficial Use* because the salinity is greater than 10,000 mg/L or the ground water is otherwise contaminated beyond levels that can be removed using methods reasonably employed in public water-supply treatment.

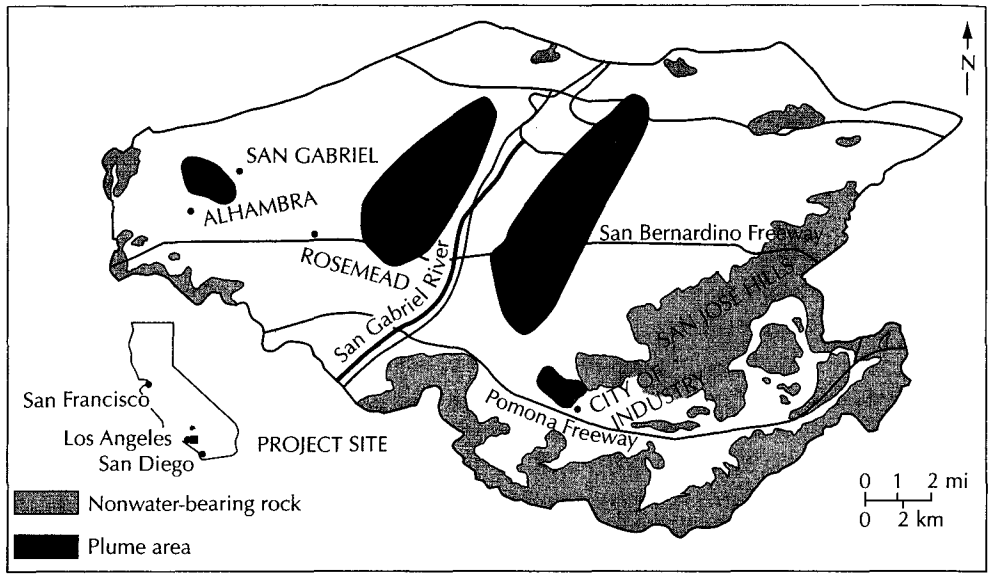
The U.S. EPA uses this classification scheme in promulgating rules and regulations at the federal level. The highest degree of protection is given to Class I ground water.

Pollution of surface water frequently results in a situation where the contamination can be seen or smelled. However, contamination of ground water most often results in a situation that cannot be detected by human senses. Ground-water contamination can be due to bacteriological or toxic agents or simply to an increase in common chemical constituents to a concentration whereby the usefulness of the water is impaired. Figure 10.1 shows the extent of four plumes of contaminated water that have developed in the San Gabriel ground-water basin of southern California.

In the past, water contamination was primarily due to microbiological agents. Although many advances in public health have been made, incidences of waterborne disease still occur in the United States and appear to be increasing. Of 672 cases of waterborne disease in the United States from 1946 to 1980, 52% were due to unknown causes, 22% were due to bacteria, 12% were viral in nature, 7% were due to parasites, 4% were caused by inorganic chemicals, and 3% were caused by organic chemicals (Lippy & Waltrip 1984). Use of untreated, contaminated ground water was responsible for 35% of the disease outbreaks in public water-supply systems during this period, whereas only 8% were due to untreated, contaminated surface water (Lippy & Waltrip 1984). In addition, many of the remaining outbreaks were caused by the failure of systems designed to treat contaminated ground water.

Reported incidences of waterborne disease in the United States peaked in 1980 at 553 and have shown a marked decrease since then. In 1987 there were 15 incidences; in 1988, 13; in 1989, 12; and in 1990, 14 (Herwaldt et al. 1992). For the 2-y period from 1989 to 1990, half the cases were due to well water, 12% to spring water, and 38% to surface water. In more than half the cases, no disease agent was identified. The parasite *Giardia lamblia* was identified in 27% of the cases; viral agents, in 12%; the bacterium *E. coli* 0157:H7, in 4%; and cyanobacteria, in 4%. In the outbreak of *E. coli* 0157:H7, 243 people became ill, 32 were hospitalized, and 4 died (Herwaldt et al. 1992).

In March and April 1993, an estimated 200,000 people served by the Milwaukee, Wisconsin, public water supply became ill with severe intestinal distress and other flulike symptoms such as weakness, aches, and pains. By March 1994, at least 104 people had died from this outbreak. Most were people with weakened immune systems—more than 80 were HIV positive. The disease was eventually traced to a microscopic protozoan, *Cryptosporidium.* Improper filtration of the city water source, which is Lake Michigan, had failed to remove this parasite, which is fairly common in surface water.



▲ FIGURE 10.1
Plumes of contaminated ground water in the 170-mi^2 San Gabriel groundwater basin, southern California. Contaminants, which include trichloroethylene, perchloroethylene, carbon tetrachloride, and other suspected carcinogens, are found in more than 88 municipal supply wells to depths as great as 1000 ft (300m). Multiple sources of contamination are responsible for the common industrial solvents and degreasers found in the ground water. *Source: J. J. Kosowatz & M. J. Sponseller,* Engineering News Record *217, no. 21 (Nov. 21, 1986): 28–29.*

Our understanding of the toxicology of carcinogenic compounds has increased along with the analytical capacity to detect low concentrations of organic compounds in aqueous samples. Recent regulations have greatly increased the amount of ground-water monitoring required. As a result, numerous instances of ground-water contamination have been revealed. Legal cases involving ground-water contamination have resulted in corporations paying millions of dollars to clean up contaminated ground water as well as paying for damages to families suffering from illness and death alleged to have been caused by organic chemicals in well water ingested by the plaintiffs.

The chemical and microbiological agents that are adversely impacting the quality of ground water are coming from a variety of sources, including land application of agricultural chemicals; animal wastes; septic-tank disposal systems for sewage; sewage-treatment lagoons; land application of organic wastes; municipal landfills; toxic- and hazardous-waste landfills; leaking underground storage tanks; faulty underground injection wells, pits, ponds, and lagoons used for storage; treatment and disposal of various liquid compounds; and chemical and petroleum product spills. In this chapter we will consider water-quality standards that have been developed in the United States, methods of monitoring ground-water quality, mass transport of contaminants in flowing ground water, sources of ground-water contamination, and methods of aquifer restoration.

10.2 Water-Quality Standards

Water-quality standards are regulations that set specific limitations on the quality of water that may be applied to a specific use. **Water-quality criteria** are values of dissolved substances in water and their toxicological and ecological meaning. These data can be used to set water-quality standards (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency 1976).

In Public Law 92-500, Section 302, the U.S. Congress directed each state to establish water-quality standards for surface-water bodies. These water-quality standards specify maximum concentrations of substances in surface water for the purpose of protecting aquatic life, users of surface water, and consumers of aquatic life. States are, of course, free to establish ground-water standards and other types of water-quality standards.

The EPA has been directed by Congress to establish *drinking-water standards* under provisions of Public Law 93-523, the Safe Drinking Water Act, and its amendments. The goal of the Safe Drinking Water Act is to determine **maximum contaminant level goals (MCLGs)** and **maximum contaminant levels (MCLs)** for materials that may be found in drinking water. There are three criteria for selection of contaminants for regulation under this act: (1) the analytical ability to detect a contaminant in drinking water, (2) the potential health risk, and (3) the occurrence or potential for occurrence in drinking water. Maximum contaminant-level goals are nonenforceable health goals set at a level to prevent known or anticipated adverse effects with an adequate margin of safety. Maximum contaminant levels are enforceable standards that are to be set as close to the MCLGs as is feasible on the basis of the water-treatment technologies and cost. Compounds that are carcinogenic will have their MCLGs set at zero, whereas the MCLGs for chronically toxic compounds are based upon an acceptable daily intake, which takes into account total exposure from air, food, and drinking water. Risk from carcinogenic compounds is expressed in terms of additional cancer risk over a lifetime of exposure at a given level. A cancer risk of 10^{-6} means that there would be one additional cancer death out of a population of 1 million people.

The drinking-water standards set by the EPA may be found at *http://www.epa.gov/OGWDW/mcl.html*. This web page by reference is Table 10.2 of this book. Occasionally new standards are set and this way you will have the most recent rules. Maximum contaminant levels will be enforced for all public water-supply systems by the various states. States are free to set MCLs that are more stringent than the federal standards, but not less stringent.

Drinking-water standards are especially important for evaluating ground-water quality because many consumers utilize untreated ground water that is pumped directly from a well. Public water-supply systems that rely upon ground water are required to perform a complete analysis of the water for the drinking-water standards prior to the time a well is put into service and periodically thereafter. Private wells are often tested for bacteria and nitrate only when they are first drilled and then never tested again. It is important to maintain high quality in ground water to protect private well owners. State water-quality standards for ground water are sometimes based on the drinking-water standards.

The European Community has established water-quality standards for member nations that apply to all water used for drinking or food processing from both private and public supplies. Standards are set for 66 water-quality parameters including elements that are naturally occurring in water, toxic elements, organic compounds, and microbiological parameters. The European Community standards for organic compounds are not as specific as the U.S. EPA drinking-water standards. For example, there is a blanket guide (similar to a MCLG) of 1 μg/L for all chlorinated organic compounds, with the exception of pesticides and PCBs, which have a maximum admissible concentration of 0.1 μg/L individually and 0.5 μg/L in total (Carney 1991).

10.3 Collection of Water Samples

The practicing hydrogeologist rarely will perform the chemical analysis of water samples; this is typically done in a specialized analytical laboratory. However, the hydrogeologist will usually be involved with the collection of water samples in the field. This section will focus on methods of collecting representative water samples for chemical analysis.

The program to sample both ground and surface water must be carefully planned. The four basic steps involved are as follows:

1. Determining the purpose of the sampling program. Is the objective to define the basic water chemistry, to determine if the water meets drinking-water standards, or to determine if there is contamination present? Will surface water, water in the vadose zone, or ground water be tested?
2. Deciding how many sampling points will be tested. Will all possible points be tested, or will only selected sampling points be involved? Will new sampling points, such as ground-water monitoring wells, be needed?
3. Determining which chemical constituents will be analyzed and the **quantification limits** that the lab will employ. Analytical instruments have a lower limit to the range in which the results can be quantified and below that a range where a compound can be detected but not quantified. Results can be expressed as detected, but not quantified, or as not detected. In some cases, the detection limit will be more sensitive for some instrumental methods than others for the same compound. The quantification limits selected should be based on the purpose of the sampling program.
4. Developing a *quality assurance/quality control (QA/QC)* program. There are many aspects of QA/QC, the purpose of which is to ensure that the analytical results reported by the laboratory accurately express the actual concentrations of the solutes in the water as it existed in the field (Keith et al. 1983a, 1983b; Kirchmer 1983). This is not a trivial problem. It is beyond the scope of this book to discuss laboratory methods of QA/QC. The hydrogeologist has two basic methods of checking on the *accuracy* and *precision* of the laboratory. Accuracy—the ability of the laboratory to report what is in the sample—can be measured by the use of **spiked samples,** where a set of samples with a known concentration of a solute is submitted to the lab. Precision—the ability of the laboratory to reproduce results—is determined by submitting *duplicate samples* from the same source. The duplicate sample should be thoroughly mixed before being split for shipment to the lab. A field-sampling program should have duplicates submitted to the lab for 10% of the samples, and they should be submitted as *blind duplicates* so the lab does not know which samples are duplicates. **Field blanks** are used to assess the field sampling program. Highly purified water (HPLC grade) is taken into the field in a sealed container, run through the field-sampling devices, placed into sample containers, and shipped to the laboratory for analysis. If trace amounts of solutes are reported in both the samples and the field blanks, then they can be assumed to be a result of the sampling or lab methodology and are not actually present in the water in the field.

Sampling protocols have been developed by the EPA. They specify the type of sample that is needed (grab or composite), the type of container that is to be used for the sample, the method by which the sample container is cleaned and prepared, whether the sample is filtered, the type of preservative that is to be added to the sample in the field, and the maximum time the sample can be held prior to analysis in the laboratory.

It is good field practice to thoroughly clean the sampling device prior to use. The method of cleaning should be such that no residue remains. For example, equipment rinsed in acetone should first be rinsed thoroughly with distilled water after the acetone has been used and then autoclaved to volatilize any acetone that may not have been rinsed away. Frequently the analytical methods employed will detect acetone in concentrations of a few parts per billion. The sampling devices and bottles should be rinsed with a sample of the water being sampled if they are not thoroughly dry. This will prevent the mixing of rinse water with the final sample.

Methods of sample collection and preservation are specified in Title 40, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 136 (40 CFR 136) by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. They are also contained in ASTM Guide D 3694-96, *Standard Practices for Preparation of Sample Containers and for Preservation of Organic Constituents.*

10.4 Ground-Water Monitoring

10.4.1 Planning a Ground-Water Monitoring Program

The science of ground-water sampling has advanced greatly in recent years, not only in our understanding of the techniques to be used, but in the development of materials and equipment used in the sampling process (Fetter 1999). The first step in designing a ground-water monitoring program is to determine the purpose. There are at least four major reasons to monitor ground water: to determine the water quality and chemistry of a region, to determine the water quality and chemistry of a specific water-supply well or well field, to determine the extent of ground-water contamination from a known source, and to monitor a potential source of contamination to determine if the ground water becomes contaminated.

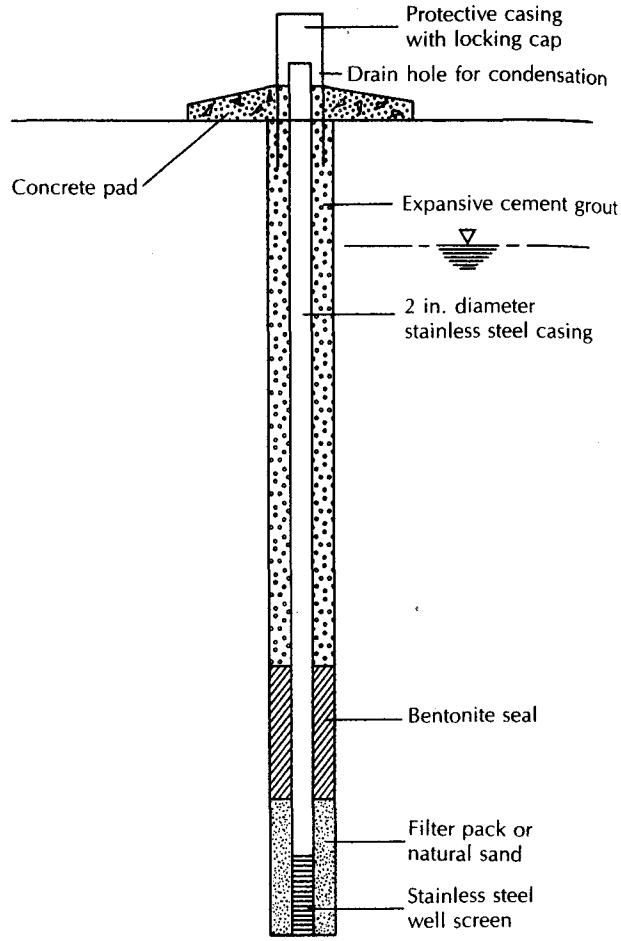
If the purpose of a study is to evaluate the existing water quality and chemistry of a region, then it is likely that only existing wells and springs would be sampled. In this event, it is necessary to know the construction details of the well and pump. One needs to know from what aquifer the well is drawing water to interpret the chemical analyses. Wells that tap more than one aquifer should not be used in these studies, which are usually designed to map the distribution of ions in a specific aquifer. A good geographical distribution of wells is needed. In studies of chemical hydrogeology, wells located in both recharge and discharge areas should be sampled. One must be careful that the water sample collected has not been altered by the well system. A common occurrence with existing private wells is that all water in the system passes through a water softener, which changes the water chemistry. Some older-model submersible pumps have capacitors that, if they leak, can introduce polychlorinated biphenols (PCBs) into the well water.

If the water quality of a potential well site is being investigated, nearby wells may be sampled to establish regional water quality. In most cases it is desirable to construct a test well before a permanent well is installed. As the test boring is being advanced, temporary test wells and screens can be installed at progressively deeper depths to sample multiple aquifers or potential water-yielding zones in the same aquifer. At each screen zone the drill column and bit are removed from the hole and a temporary casing and well screen are installed. The temporary well is pumped to develop it until the water is clear. Replicate water samples are then collected and analyzed. The hydraulic and water-quality results of the various tested zones are compared and the best one is selected for the permanent well construction. It has been shown that water samples from such temporary test wells are very similar to those from high-capacity municipal wells later constructed in the same aquifer (Fetter 1975). If there is only one potential aquifer zone, a small-capacity test well may be installed on a permanent basis. This well can later be used as an observation well for a pumping test on the permanent well and may be useful as a standby well for emergency use.

10.4.2 Installing Ground-Water Monitoring Wells

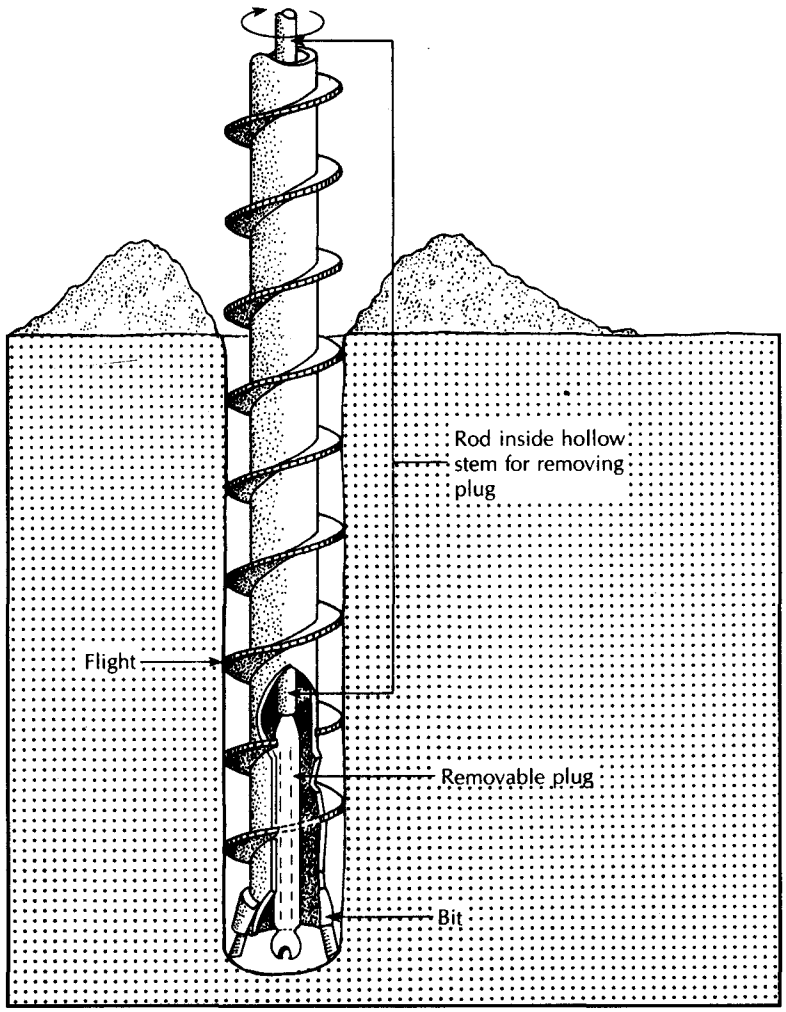
Most of the *ground-water monitoring wells* installed today are for the purpose of determining ground-water quality at localities such as waste-storage or waste-disposal facilities, underground storage tanks, mines, and areas of known or suspected ground-water contamination. Ground-water monitoring wells are installed for the specific purpose of determining the quality of the ground water in a specific aquifer and at a particular location.

► FIGURE 10.2
Typical ground-water monitoring well.



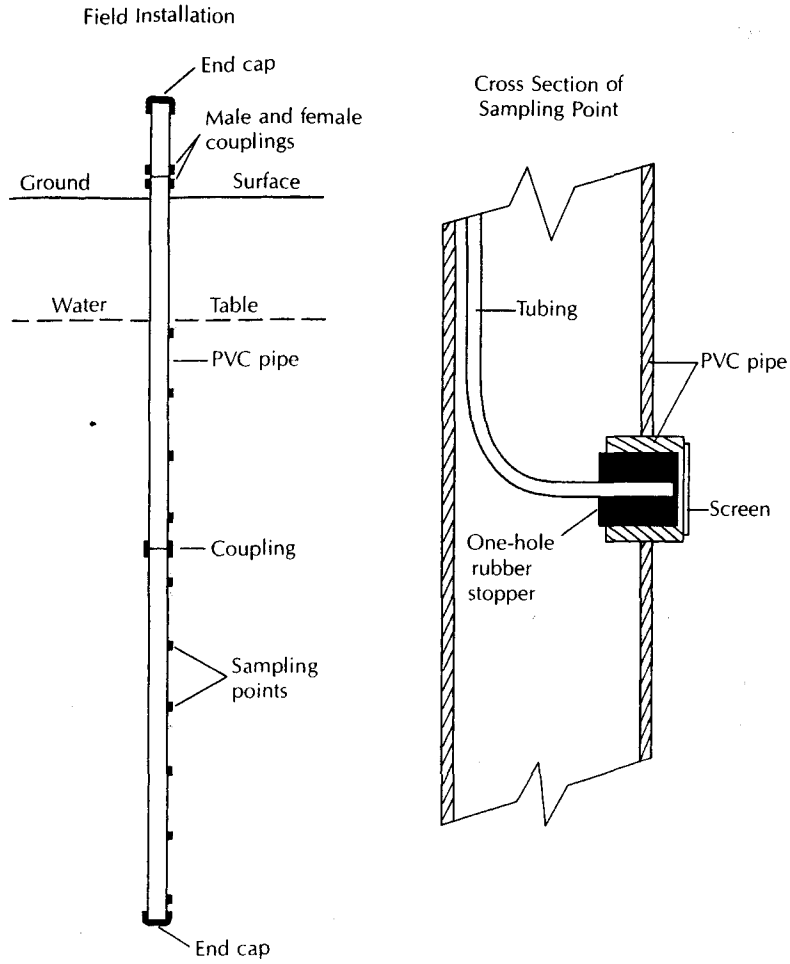
The design of a typical ground-water monitoring well is given in Figure 10.2. Installers must take specific steps to properly install a ground-water monitoring well. One important consideration is to take care during the installation of the well that contaminating materials are not introduced into the ground (Fetter 1983; Hix 1992).

1. A **boring** is advanced into the ground by means of a drilling rig. The drilling method needs to be selected on the basis of the local geology, size and depth of the monitoring well to be installed, and available expertise. Borings in unconsolidated materials are frequently installed by means of **hollow-stem augers,** which are rotated into the ground to bring up soil and create the boring (Figure 10.3). A plug at the bottom of the hollow stem keeps soil from going up into the interior of the stem (Hackett 1987, 1988; Keeley & Boateng 1987).
2. Samples of the geologic materials are then collected so that a *geologic log* can be constructed. A **split-spoon sampler,** a hollow tube comprised of two halves, or a **Shelby tube,** a one-piece hollow tube, may be driven into the soil ahead of the *bit,* or cutting edge, at the bottom of the hollow-stem auger by temporarily removing the end plug. The sampling tube is retrieved and the soil sample is ejected and described by the geologist. It is also available for further testing, such as grain-size analysis.



▲ FIGURE 10.3
Hollow-stem auger drilling. The hollow-stem, continuous-flight auger bores into soft soils, carrying the cuttings upward along the flights. When the desired depth is reached, the plug is removed from the bit and withdrawn from inside the hollow stem. A well point on a casing (1¼ in. or 2-in.) can then be inserted to the bottom of the hollow stem and the auger pulled out, leaving the small-diameter monitoring well in place. *Source: M. L. Scalf et al.,* Manual of Ground Water Sampling Procedures, *National Water Well Association, 1981.*

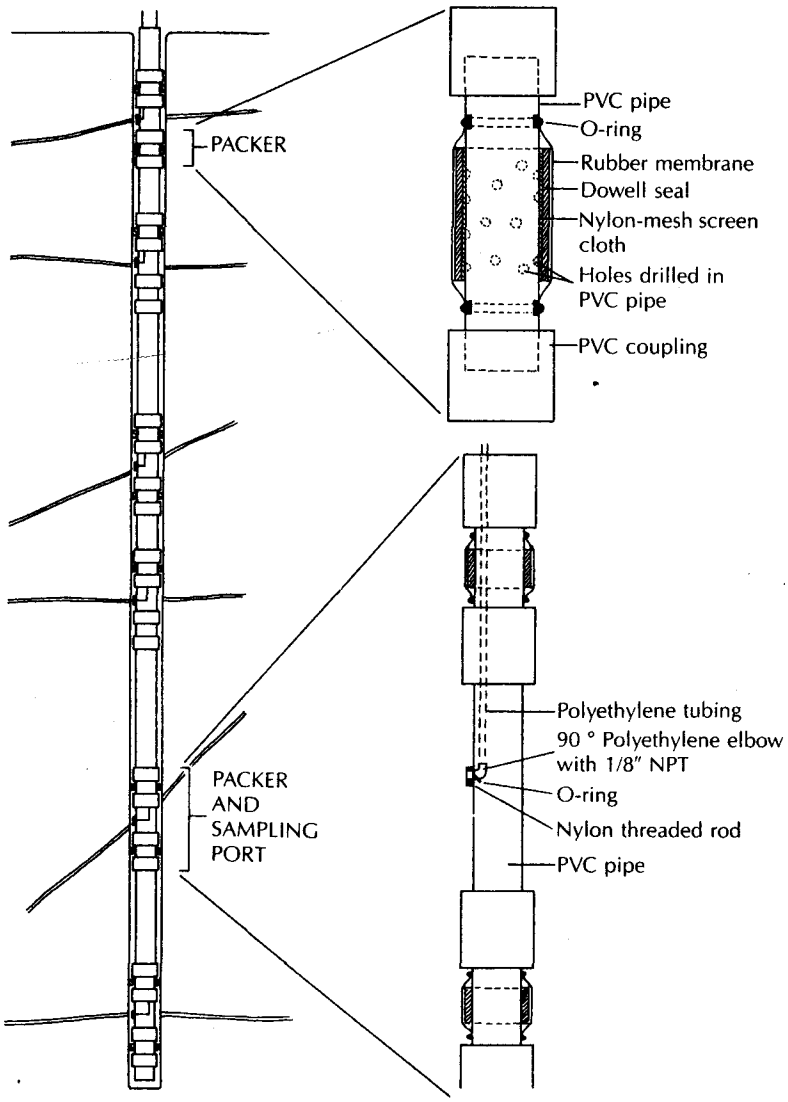
3. Once the auger is at the desired final depth of the bottom of the monitoring well, the plug at the end is removed. A *knockout plug* made of some noncontaminating material such as stainless steel may also be used if soil samples are not being collected as the auger is being advanced.
4. The well consists of a **casing** and a **screen.** The casing is a piece of solid-wall pipe and the screen is a piece of pipe with holes, slots, gauze, or a continuous wire wrapped around it. The purpose of the screen is to allow water to enter the well but to keep out the soil. A commercially manufactured screen should be used rather than a pipe with slots cut into it. The screen is attached to the end of the casing by means of threaded joints. Casings and screens made from several different materials are commercially available. The hydrogeologist must select a material on the basis



▲ FIGURE 10.4
Multilevel ground-water sampling device for use in sandy soil. *Source: J. F. Pickens et al.,* Ground Water Monitoring Review *1, no. 1 (1981): 48–51.*

of cost, durability, and potential reactivity with the water in the aquifer. Teflon is the most costly, least durable, but most inert material. Stainless steel is the most durable material; it has moderate cost and is also essentially inert. Rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe, because of low cost, is frequently used. Only PVC pipe with threaded joints is acceptable; PVC pipe joined with solvent-welded joints should never be used because solvent can add organic contaminants to the water. Because of its structural weakness and high cost for most uses, Teflon is inferior to stainless steel as well-casing material. Stainless steel may react unfavorably with acidic or saline ground water; rigid PVC casing with threaded joints would be superior under such conditions.

In addition to monitoring wells, there are *multilevel sampling devices,* which can be installed in a single borehole to sample ground water. When monitoring wells are used to sample ground water from different depths, each monitoring well must be installed in a separate borehole. Drilling costs can be reduced substantially by the use of multilevel sampling devices. Figure 10.4 shows the design of a multilevel device used in sandy soil with a shallow water table and primarily horizontal flow (Pickens et al. 1981). The device con-



▲ FIGURE 10.5
Multilevel ground-water sampling device for use in fractured rock borehole. *Source: J. A. Cherry & P. E. Johnson,* Ground Water Monitoring Review *2, no. 3 (1982): 41–44.*

sists of a rigid PVC pipe inside of which are multiple tubes, each of which ends at a sampling port at a different depth. Such a device can be used to collect ground-water samples t elevations in the aquifer as close as 1 to 2 ft. Only a small sample of water is withdrawn, o that each sample represents water from a very small portion of the aquifer. As a result, detailed picture of the vertical distribution of ground-water contamination can be developed. The multilevel device is installed by augering a boring to the desired depth with ollow-stem augers. The PVC pipe is lowered through the hollow stem and, as the augers re withdrawn, the sand heaves into the annular space around the pipe and seals it off. One disadvantage of the device is that water levels cannot usually be measured.

A second type of multilevel device can be used in a borehole in bedrock or cohesive material such as dense glacial till. Figure 10.5 shows the design of such a device (Cherry & Johnson 1982), which is similar to the one shown in Figure 10.4. However, inflatable packers are located above and below each sampling port. In this case the device is lowered into

an open borehole and each zone to be sampled is isolated by inflating the packers above and below the sampling port. The device is intended to be permanently installed so that multiple samples over time can be taken. If needed, it could be removed from a well after a study is completed and reused.

Once a monitoring well or other device is installed, it is necessary to develop the well. The purpose of **well development** is to remove any fine material that may be blocking the well screen or port. A secondary purpose may be to remove any water from the aquifer that was introduced during well construction and that may not be representative of the local ground-water quality. Well development is usually accomplished by surging the well, that is, making the water in the well flow into and out of the well screen for a period of time. The well is then usually pumped for a while to remove the loose sediment from the well casing and screen. To maintain the integrity of the well for water-quality sampling, it is usually not good practice to add any water to the well during well development.

10.4.3 Withdrawing Water Samples from Monitoring Wells

Once the monitoring well is installed and developed, a method of removing the water from the well must be selected. There are a number of different ways to pump water from a monitoring well (Barcelona et al. 1984; Slawson, Kelly, & Everett 1982; Nielsen & Yeates, 1985). There are a large number of different devices commercially available for this task. The basic considerations in selecting a pumping device will be

1. does it collect a representative sample,
2. can it be easily cleaned and decontaminated if it is to be used in more than one well,
3. will it work in the application that is at hand,
4. can it lift the water from the water level in the well to the surface,
5. can it pump the well at a rate sufficient to purge it prior to sampling,
6. will the method of pumping or the materials from which the pump is made change the water chemistry of the sample,
7. how easy is it to use the device,
8. how reliable is the device, and
9. how much does it cost to buy, maintain, and operate?

In selecting a sampling device it is important to pick one that will not alter the chemistry of the sample as it is brought to the surface. This could occur if the materials from which the pump is constructed would either leach compounds into the sample or absorb compounds from the sample. One of the first considerations will be the selection of the type of material used in the construction of the pumping device. Teflon and stainless steel are inert materials that could be used for the rigid parts of the pump; Teflon and polypropylene are inert materials that could be used for the flexible parts of the pump. Polyvinyl chloride may be acceptable for some uses but is not as inert as the other materials.

Changes in the pressure of the sample while it is being transported to the surface can cause loss of dissolved gases. This can result in a change in pH due to change in carbon dioxide, a change in Eh due to a change in oxygen, and a change in the dissolved volatile organic compounds due to a drop in pressure. The best sampling devices will not put the sample in contact with air or noninert gasses as it is brought to the surface and will maintain the sample under positive pressure. These considerations limit the usefulness of several sampling devices, such as suction pumps, peristaltic pumps, and air-lift pumps.

Bailers are tubes that can be made of any material and that have a check valve on the bottom. They are inexpensive and simple to operate as they can be lowered into the well on a wire or cord and yield a representative water sample if used carefully. **Bladder**

pumps are positive-displacement devices that use a pulse of gas to push the sample to the surface. The gas does not come into contact with the sample and positive pressure is maintained at all times. The bladder pump yields a representative water sample, provided the correct materials are used in its construction. The bladder pump is superior in performance to the bailer but costs more than an order of magnitude more.

One concern in sampling a monitoring well is to be assured that the sample does not contain any water that was standing in the well casing. One way to ensure this is to purge the well before pumping. Depending upon the design of the well and the type of pump, from one to five times the volume of water standing in the well casing and the screen should be removed prior to withdrawing the water sample. During the purging process it is good practice to monitor the pH and conductivity of the water until a stable condition is reached. It is also good practice to purge the well until any turbidity has cleared, although in some wells this may not be possible. If the well is slow to recharge, it is probably not a good idea to pump the well dry during the purging process. For such a well, one to two well volumes should be sufficient to purge any stagnant water.

Deep open-borehole wells in solid rock or mine shafts can present an opportunity to the hydrogeologist to obtain water-quality data at depths to which it might be uneconomical to construct dedicated monitoring wells. If the well is not pumped for some time and the borehole is not acting as a conduit for water flowing from one aquifer to another, the water quality at various levels in the borehole can reflect the ground-water quality at the same level. **Borehole geochemical probes** are water-quality monitoring devices that can be lowered into the well on a cable to measure such parameters as pH, Eh, temperature, and specific conductance. By lowering the probe and taking readings at discrete intervals, geochemical well logs can be constructed. In addition, the **Kemmerer sampler,** a sample collection device developed for drawing water samples from depths in lakes and oceans, can be used in deep wells. The Kemmerer sampler is lowered into the borehole in an open position until the desired depth is reached. At that point a weight is sent down on the cable, triggering a spring-loaded device on the sampler to close it. The closed Kemmerer sampler is then raised to the surface by the cable and the water sample is withdrawn. The Kemmerer sampler can be used to collect water samples at different depths so that a geochemical log can be developed.

A modification of the medical **syringe** can be used to draw a water sample from a specific depth in a monitoring well. The syringe is lowered into the well on the end of a length of tubing. A weight may be needed to sink the syringe and tubing. At the desired depth, a vacuum is applied to the tubing and the pressure of the water in the well will force the syringe plunger up, forcing a water sample into the syringe. The syringe can then be raised up by the tubing. The advantages of the syringe are that the sample does not undergo a pressure change or exposure to the atmosphere. The syringe can even be used as the sample storage container. However, the sample volume is small, and the syringe cannot be used to purge the well. If the syringe is used for sample storage, the chance of cross-contamination is very small if the tubing and other appurtenances are carefully cleaned between wells (Nielsen & Yeates 1985).

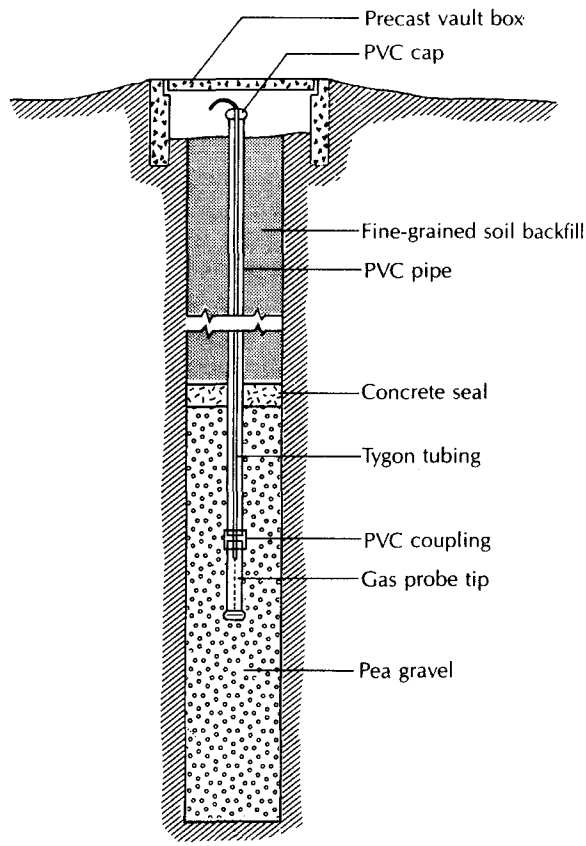
10.5 Vadose-Zone Monitoring

If a contaminant is detected in the ground water, it is an indication that a problem is at hand. Solutions to the problem may be difficult and expensive. It would be desirable to be able to determine if ground-water contamination is likely to occur at some time in the future so that corrective action could be taken early to prevent contamination from reaching the water table. For example, when a landfill or a lagoon is constructed, a ground-water monitoring system might be installed to detect leaks from the facilities. Storage facilities for toxic and hazardous materials can also be monitored for leaks. However, if a leak were

to be detected prior to the time that the contaminant reaches the water table, corrective action, such as draining a lagoon and repairing the liner, might be possible before the ground water becomes contaminated. Leaks can potentially be detected by monitoring the water in the vadose (unsaturated) zone (Everett 1981; Johnson, Cartwright, & Schuller 1981; Everett et al. 1984; Robbins & Gemmell 1985; Wilson 1983; Robbins et al. 1990a, 1990b).

Contaminants in the unsaturated zone can move in both the liquid and vapor phases. Vapors can move in any direction depending on their relative density and air-pressure gradients. Liquids can generally move downward only. Vadose-zone monitoring systems for liquids must be constructed beneath the facility to be monitored as that is the direction the liquid would be seeping. Therefore, such devices are usually installed prior to the time that the facility is constructed. It is difficult to install such devices after construction; for example, in order to put a collection device beneath an active landfill, either a vertical boring must be made through the landfill or an angular boring must be made from the side. Because of the fact that vapors can migrate laterally, gas-monitoring wells can be placed to the side of active facilities. Hence it is easier to retrofit a site with gas-monitoring devices than liquid-monitoring devices in the vadose zone.

Vapors can be detected by *gas-monitoring wells*, which are simply wells that terminate in the unsaturated zone (Figure 10.6). Gas-monitoring wells can be used to detect the movement of methane from municipal landfills. Methane has been implicated in explosions near landfills. Gas-monitoring wells can also detect the vapors of volatile organic chemicals in the vadose zone. These compounds move rapidly in ground water and many are known or suspected carcinogens. Gas-monitoring wells can be located beneath a landfill or lagoon if they are installed before construction. After construction, it is easier to place them to the side of an active facility.



► FIGURE 10.6
Gas monitoring well in vadose zone. *Source: L. S. Wilson,* Ground Water Monitoring Review *3, no. 1 (1983): 155–66.*

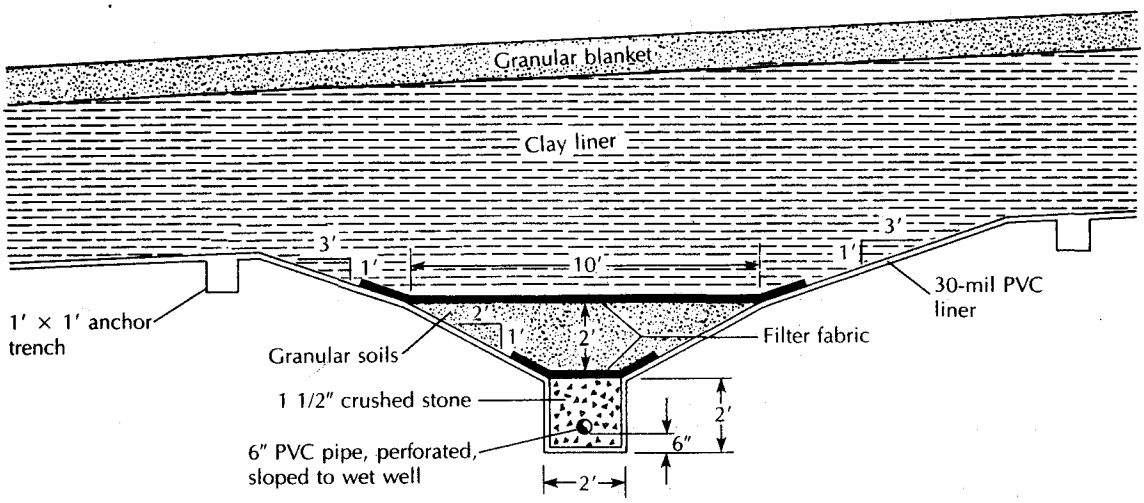
The vadose zone can be monitored by indirect means. For example, a lagoon that holds aqueous liquids could be monitored for changes in soil moisture. Changes in soil moisture could mean a leak. If the lagoon holds a brine, changes in the electrical conductivity of resistivity blocks buried in the soil beneath the landfill could mean a leak. Temperature changes in the vadose zone could also indicate a leak.

The vadose zone can also be sampled by direct sampling of the soil. Soil samples can be removed by shovel, by a sampling tube being pushed into the ground, or by augering a borehole and then pushing a sampling tube ahead of the auger. Soil samples can be tested for moisture content, the moisture can be extracted and tested for chemical composition, or the soil sample can be leached with a standard leaching solution and the leachate tested. If the soil sample is placed in a vial for volatile organic compound testing within a few seconds of being exposed to the atmosphere, most of the volatile organics in the soil will be retained and testing of the volatile organics in the headspace in the vial will give a good indication of the organics in the soil.

Several devices can be placed in the vadose zone to collect a sample of the liquid in the pores. These devices fall into two categories: (1) **suction lysimeters,** which are devices that apply tension to a porous ceramic cup to induce the pore water that is under negative pressure to enter the porous cup, whereby it can be transported to the surface; and (2) **collection lysimeters,** which have a membrane liner buried in the vadose zone so that liquid collects on the liner until the soil above it becomes saturated, forcing the liquid to flow to a wet well, where it can be sampled.

The suction lysimeter has been used for many years in agricultural applications. It has been used in landfills to monitor for leachate with mixed success. The vacuum that can be applied is limited to 0.5 to 0.8 bar. Consequently, in some applications, the lysimeter fails to collect liquids, probably because it becomes clogged. It also is somewhat limited in that it samples liquids from only a very small portion of the aquifer. If it is not located under a leak, that leak may go undetected.

Collection lysimeters are less prone to failure and have the added advantage that they can be made any size; they can, therefore, be placed under spots where failure of a system component is more likely, such as a seam. Figure 10.7 shows a collection lysimeter beneath a portion of a landfill. One landfill in Wisconsin was located over an aquifer where it ap-



▲ FIGURE 10.7
Cross section of leachate-collection lysimeter beneath clay liner of a landfill.

peared that ground-water monitoring would be very difficult to do reliably. The landfill was designed with a collection lysimeter beneath the entire landfill to serve as the primary means of detecting leaks in the clay liner of the landfill. Obviously, such a system must be installed as the facility is being constructed.

10.6 Mass Transport of Solutes

10.6.1 Introduction

In studying ground-water contamination it is helpful to understand the basic theory behind the movement of solutes contained in ground water. In the study of water chemistry, the processes by which substances can become dissolved in water are examined. However, the processes by which these substances move through porous media are complex. They can be expressed mathematically, although in some instances we do not fully understand how to obtain the field data necessary to apply the theoretical equations.

There are two basic processes operating to transport solutes. **Diffusion** is the process by which both ionic and molecular species dissolved in water move from areas of higher concentration (i.e., chemical activity) to areas of lower concentration. **Advection** is the process by which moving ground water carries with it dissolved solutes. We will see how, as solutes are carried through porous media, the process of **dispersion** acts to dilute the solute and lower its concentration. Finally, there are chemical and physical processes that cause **retardation** of solute movement so that it may not move as fast as the advection rate would indicate.

10.6.2 Diffusion

The diffusion of a solute through water is described by Fick's laws. Fick's first law describes the flux of a solute under steady-state conditions:

$$F = -D\, dC/dx \tag{10.1}$$

where

F	=	mass flux of solute per unit area per unit time
D	=	diffusion coefficient (area/time)
C	=	solute concentration (mass/volume)
dC/dx	=	concentration gradient (mass/volume/distance)

The negative sign indicates that the movement is from greater to lesser concentrations. Values for D are well known for electrolytes in water. For the major cations and anions in water, D ranges from 1×10^{-9} to 2×10^{-9} m^2/s.

For systems where the concentrations may be changing with time, Fick's second law may be applied:

$$\partial C/\partial t = D\, \partial^2 C/\partial x^2 \tag{10.2}$$

where $\partial C/\partial t$ = change in concentration with time.

Both Fick's first and second laws as expressed in Equations 10.1 and 10.2 are for one-dimensional situations. For three-dimensional analysis, more general forms would be needed.

In porous media, diffusion cannot proceed as fast as it can in water, because the ions must follow longer pathways as they travel around mineral grains. In addition, the diffusion can take place only through pore openings because mineral grains block many of the possible pathways. To take this into account, an effective diffusion coefficient must be used, termed D^*.

The value of D^* can be determined from the relationship

$$D^* = wD \tag{10.3}$$

where w is an empirical coefficient that is determined by laboratory experiments. For species that are not adsorbed onto the mineral surface it has been determined that w ranges from 0.5 to 0.01 (Freeze & Cherry 1979). Berner (1971) gave a nonempirical relationship between D^* and D that indicated that D^* was equal to D times the porosity divided by the square of the **tortuosity** of the flow path of the diffused species. Tortuosity is the actual length of the flow path, which is sinuous in form, divided by the straight-line distance between the ends of the flow path. Unfortunately, tortuosity cannot be determined in the field, and one is left with the experimental approach.

The process of diffusion is complicated by the fact that ions must maintain electrical neutrality as they diffuse. If we have a solution of NaCl, the Na^+ cannot diffuse faster than the Cl^-, unless there is some other negative ion in the region into which the Na^+ is diffusing.

It should also be mentioned at this point that if the solute is adsorbed onto the mineral surfaces of the porous medium, the net rate of diffusion will obviously be less than for a nonadsorbed species. This topic is addressed more fully in Section 10.6.6.

It is possible for solutes to move through a porous medium by diffusion, even though the ground water is not flowing. Thus, even if the hydraulic gradient is zero, a solute could still move. In rock and soil with very low permeability, the water may be moving very slowly. Under these conditions, diffusion might cause a solute to travel faster than the ground water is flowing. Under such conditions, diffusion is more important than advection.

10.6.3 Advection

The rate of flowing ground water can be determined from Darcy's law as

$$v_x = -\frac{K}{n_e}\frac{dh}{dl} \tag{10.4}$$

where

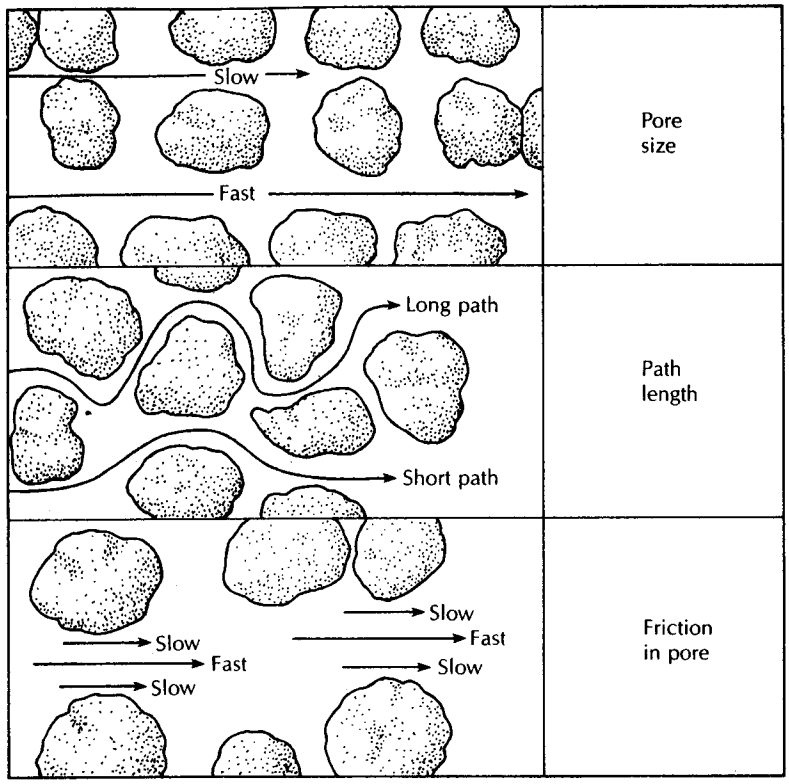
v_x = average linear velocity
K = hydraulic conductivity
n_e = effective porosity
$\frac{dh}{dl}$ = hydraulic gradient

Contaminants that are advecting are traveling at the same rate as the average linear velocity of the ground water.

10.6.4 Mechanical Dispersion

As a contaminated fluid flows through a porous medium, it will mix with noncontaminated water. The result will be a dilution of the contaminant by a process known as dispersion. The mixing that occurs along the streamline of fluid flow is called longitudinal dispersion. Dispersion that occurs normal to the pathway of fluid flow is lateral or transverse dispersion.

There are three basic causes of pore-scale longitudinal dispersion: (1) As fluid moves through pores, it will move faster through the center of the pore than along the edges. (2) Some of the fluid will travel in longer pathways than other fluid. (3) Fluid that travels through larger pores will travel faster than fluid moving in smaller pores. This is illustrated by Figure 10.8.



▲ FIGURE 10.8
Factors causing pore-scale longitudinal dispersion.

Lateral dispersion is caused by the fact that, as a fluid containing a contaminant flows through a porous medium, the flow paths can split and branch out to the side. This will occur even in the laminar flow conditions that are prevalent in ground-water flow (Figure 10.9).

The mechanical dispersion due to the preceding factors is equal to the product of the average linear velocity and a factor called the dynamic dispersivity (a_L).

$$\text{Mechanical dispersion} = a_L v_x \tag{10.5}$$

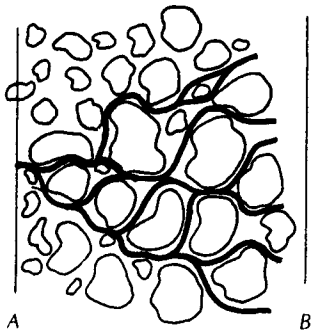
10.6.5 Hydrodynamic Dispersion

The processes of molecular diffusion and mechanical dispersivity cannot be separated in flowing ground water. Instead, a factor termed the coefficient of hydrodynamic dispersion, D_L, is introduced. It takes into account both the mechanical mixing and diffusion. For one-dimensional flow it is represented by the following equation:

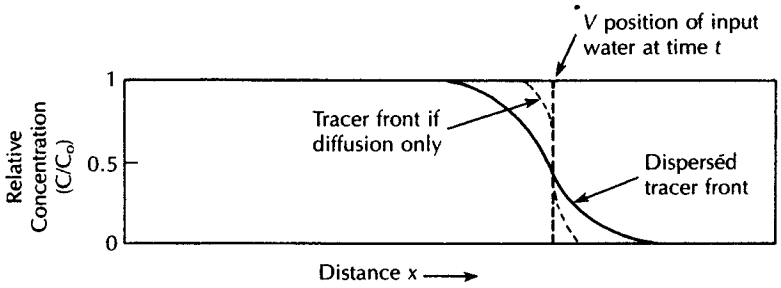
$$D_L = a_L v_x + D^* \tag{10.6}$$

where

D_L = the longitudinal coefficient of hydrodynamic dispersion
a_L = the dynamic dispersivity
v_x = the average linear ground-water velocity
D^* = the effective molecular diffusion coefficient



◀ FIGURE 10.9
Flow paths in a porous medium that cause lateral hydrodynamic dispersion.



▲ FIGURE 10.10
Influence of dispersion and diffusion on "breakthrough" of a solute.

The process of longitudinal hydrodynamic dispersion can be illustrated by the following simple experiment. A tube is filled with sand and set up so that distilled water is flowing through it at a constant rate. We then change the influent to a 1% saline solution and begin to monitor the effluent for chloride. The effluent has zero chloride initially, as distilled water is still flushing from the tube. Eventually we will begin to detect chloride in the effluent water. It arrives initially at a very low concentration. The "breakthrough" is not at the 1% concentration. This small amount gradually increases until the 1% saline concentration is reached. The first chloride ions to arrive traveled through the shortest flow paths. Diffusion in advance of the advecting water may have even caused some of the chloride to reach the outlet prior to water that was advecting it. The initial chloride was being diluted by the distilled water that was arriving at the same time. The amount of distilled water available for dilution continually decreased until the saline solution filled all the pores and the effluent water was at the influent concentration. Figure 10.10 illustrates this process.

The one-dimensional equation for hydrodynamic dispersion (Beruch & Street 1967; Hoopes & Harleman 1967) is given by

$$D_L \frac{\partial^2 C}{\partial x^2} - v_x \frac{\partial C}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial C}{\partial t} \tag{10.7}$$

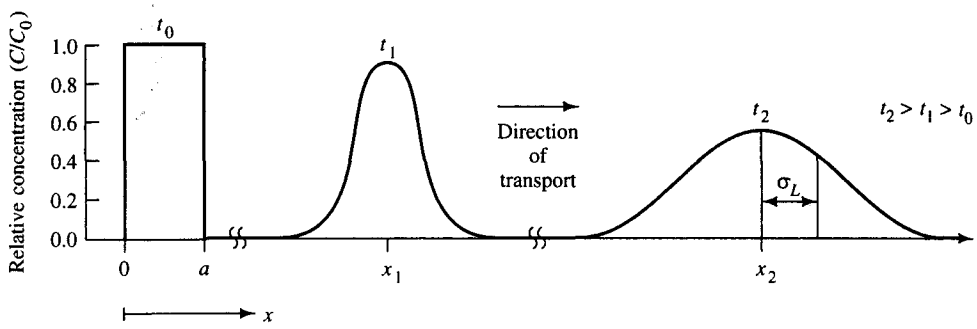
where

D_L is the coefficient of longitudinal hydrodynamic dispersion

C is the solute concentration

v_x is the average ground-water velocity in the x-direction

t is the time since start of solute invasion



▲ FIGURE 10.11
Transport and spreading of a solute slug with time due to advection and dispersion. A slug of solute was injected at $x = 0 + a$ at time t_0 with a resulting concentration of C_0. The ground-water flow is to the right. *Source: C. W. Fetter,* Contaminant Hydrogeology. *Upper Saddle River NJ: Prentice Hall, 1999.*

The concentration, C, at some distance, L, from a constant source of contamination at concentration, C_0, at time, t, is given by the following expression (Ogata 1970), where erfc is the complementary error function:

$$C = \frac{C_0}{2}\left[\text{erfc}\left(\frac{L - v_x t}{2\sqrt{D_L t}}\right) + \exp\left(\frac{v_x L}{D_L}\right)\text{erfc}\left(\frac{L + v_x t}{2\sqrt{D_L t}}\right)\right] \tag{10.8}$$

where

C is the solute concentration (M/L^3, mg/L)

C_0 is the initial solute concentration (M/L^3, mg/L)

L is the flow path length (L; ft or m)

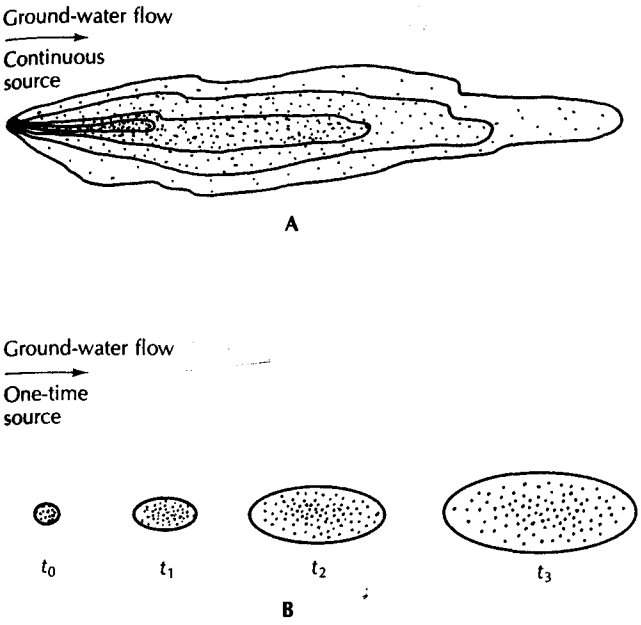
v_x is the average linear ground-water velocity (L/T; ft/day or m/day)

t is the time since release of the solute (T; day)

D_L is the longitudinal dispersion coefficient (L^2/T; ft^2/s or m^2/s)

The advection-dispersion equation is based on the premise that the center of mass of the solute is moving at the same rate as the average linear ground-water velocity. Furthermore it is assumed that hydrodynamic dispersion causes the solute to spread out both ahead of and behind the center of mass in a pattern that follows a statistically normal distribution, which is the familiar bell-shaped curve. The normal distribution is also sometimes called a Gaussian distribution. Figure 10.11 shows the movement of a solute mass and the way that it spreads with time and distance. The solute front is moving at a rate that is greater than would be predicted by the average linear ground-water velocity.

Mechanical dispersion is also caused by the heterogeneities in the aquifer. As ground-water flow proceeds in an aquifer, regions of greater than average hydraulic conductivity and lesser than average conductivity will be encountered. The resulting variation in linear ground-water velocity results in much greater hydrodynamic dispersion than that caused by the pore-scale effects. The greater the distance over which dispersivity is measured, the greater the value that is observed. This has been called the *scale effect* (Anderson 1979). Pore-scale dispersion measured in the laboratory is on the order of centimeters, whereas macrodispersion measured in the field is on the order of meters. Xu and Eckstein (1995) made a statistical study of the relationship between apparent longitudinal dynam-



◀ FIGURE 10.12
A. The development of a contamination plume from a continuous point source. **B.** The travel of a contaminant slug from a one-time point source. Density of dots indicates solute concentration.

ic dispersivity and flow length, and found that the following equation best describes the relationship.

$$a_L = 0.83(\log L)^{2.414} \tag{10.9}$$

where

a_L is the apparent longitudinal dynamic dispersivity (L; ft or m)

L is the length of the flow path (L; ft or m)

Because of hydrodynamic dispersion, the concentration of a solute will decrease with distance from the source. The solute will spread in the direction of ground-water movement more than in the direction perpendicular to the flow, because the longitudinal dispersivity is greater than the lateral dispersivity. A continuous source will yield a plume, whereas a spill will yield a slug that grows with time as it moves down the ground-water flow path. This is illustrated by Figure 10.12.

Heterogeneities in the aquifer can cause the pattern of the solute movement to vary from what one might expect in homogeneous beds. Because flowing ground water always follows the most permeable pathways, those pathways will also have the most contaminant.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A landfill is leaking leachate with a chloride concentration of 725 mg/L, which enters an aquifer with the following properties:

Hydraulic conductivity = 3.0×10^{-3} cm/s (3.0×10^{-5} m/s)

dh/dl = 0.0020

Effective porosity = 0.23

D^* = 1×10^{-9} m^2/s (estimated)

Compute the concentration of chloride in 1 y at a distance 15 m from the point where the leachate entered the ground water.

1. Determine average linear velocity.

$$v_x = \frac{K(dh/dl)}{n_e} = (3.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m/s} \times 0.002)/(0.23)$$
$$= 2.6 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m/s}$$

2. Determine the coefficient of longitudinal hydrodynamic dispersion.

   a. Find the value of a_L from Equation 10.9

$$a_L = 0.83\ (\log L)^{2.414}$$
$$= 0.83\ (\log 15\ \text{m})^{2.414}$$
$$= 1.23\ \text{m}$$

   b. Find the value of D_L.

$$D_L = a_L \times v_x + D^*$$
$$= (1.23\ \text{m} \times 2.6 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m/s}) + 1 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}$$
$$= 3.2 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}$$

3. Restate the 1-y time of travel in seconds.

$$t = 1\ \text{y} \times 60\ \text{s/min} \times 1440\ \text{min/day} \times 365\ \text{days/y}$$
$$= 3.15 \times 10^7\ \text{s}$$

4. Substitute values into Equation 10.8.

$$C_0 = 725\ \text{mg/L}$$
$$L = 15\ \text{m}$$
$$t = 3.15 \times 10^7\ \text{s}$$
$$D_L = 3.2 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}$$
$$v_x = 2.6 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m/s}$$

$$C = \frac{725}{2}\left\{\text{erfc}\left[\frac{15\ \text{m} - (2.6 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m/s} \times 3.15 \times 10^7\ \text{s})}{2 \times (3.2 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m}^2/\text{s} \times 3.15 \times 10^7\ \text{s})^{0.5}}\right]\right.$$
$$+ \exp\left(\frac{2.6 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m/s} \times 15\ \text{m}}{3.2 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}}\right)$$
$$\left.\times\ \text{erfc}\left[\frac{15\ \text{m} + (2.6 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m/s} \times 3.15 \times 10^7\ \text{s})}{2 \times (3.2 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m/s} \times 3.15 \times 10^7\ \text{s})^{0.5}}\right]\right\}\text{mg/L}$$

$$= 362.5\left[\text{erfc}\left(\frac{15\ \text{m} - 8.19\ \text{m}}{6.3\ \text{m}}\right) + \exp(12.19) \times \text{erfc}\left(\frac{15\ \text{m} + 8.19\ \text{m}}{6.3\ \text{m}}\right)\right]\text{mg/L}$$

$$= 362.5\ [\text{erfc}(1.08) + \exp(12.9) \times \text{erfc}(3.68)]\ \text{mg/L}$$

The complementary error function can be determined from Appendix 13. Since the complementary error function of numbers greater than 3 is very small, we may ignore the second term of the equation.

$$C = 362.5 \times 0.127\ \text{mg/L}$$
$$= 46\ \text{mg/L}$$

10.6.6 Retardation

We can consider solutes in two broad classes: conservative and reactive. Conservative solutes do not react with the soil and/or native ground water or undergo biological or radioactive decay. The chloride ion is a good example of a conservative solute.

The surfaces of solids, especially clays, have an electrical charge due to isomorphous replacement, broken bonds, or lattice defects. The electrical charge is imbalanced and may be satisfied by adsorbing a charged ion. The **adsorption** may be relatively weak, essentially a physical process caused by van der Waals forces. It may be stronger if chemical bonding occurs between the surface and the ion. Clays tend to be strong adsorbers, as they have both a high surface area per unit volume and significant electrical charges at the surface.

Most clay minerals have an excess of imbalanced negative charges in the crystal lattice. Adsorptive processes in soils thus favor the adsorption of cations. Divalent cations are usually more strongly adsorbed than monovalent ions. Some positively charged sites exist, but they are not as abundant as negative sites. In addition, some common negatively charged ions, such as HCO_3^-, SO_4^{2-}, and NO_3^-, are too large to be effectively adsorbed. Chloride ions are larger than the common cations.

Laboratory studies of adsorption involve the use of a specific soil and given solutes. In one approach, batches of solutions of the ionic substances are prepared in differing concentrations. For each batch a preweighed mass of dry soil is mixed with measured portions of the solutions, each with a different initial concentration. In a second approach, different amounts of dry adsorbent are mixed with portions of the same solution, each with the same concentration. After equilibrium between the soil and the solution has been determined, the equilibrium concentration of the solute in each batch is determined. The amount of solute adsorbed by the soil will be in direct proportion to the chemical activity of the solute. The amount adsorbed onto the soil can be calculated as the difference in mass of the solute in solution before the test and in solution at equilibrium. As a result of the test for each batch, one knows the mass adsorbed per unit weight of soil, C^*, as a function of the equilibrium concentration of solute remaining in solution, C. A graphical plot of C as a function of C^* is known as an *adsorption isotherm.*

The adsorption characteristics are typically plotted on graph paper by showing the mass of solute adsorbed per unit mass of soil as a function of the concentration of the solute. Figure 10.13 shows an adsorption isotherm for lead. While either the Langmuir or Freundlich isotherm equation could be used to describe this relationship, the Freundlich equation is of special utility as it can easily be applied to retardation studies.

When an adsorption relationship can be plotted as a straight line on log-log paper, it is described by the Freundlich isotherm as

$$\log C^* = j \log C + \log K_f \tag{10.10}$$

or

$$C^* = K_f C^j \tag{10.11}$$

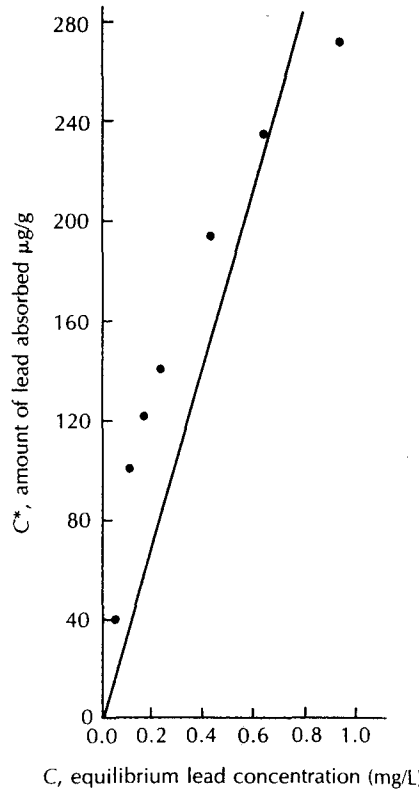
where

C^* = mass of solute sorbed per bulk unit dry mass of soil

C = solute concentration

K_f, j = coefficients

► FIGURE 10.13
Lead adsorption by Cecil clay loam at pH 4.5 and at 25°C described by a linear Freundlich equation through the origin. *Source: W. R. Roy, I. G. Krapac, S. F. J. Chou, & R. A. Griffin,* Batch-Type Adsorption for Estimating Soil Attenuation of Chemicals. *Technical Resource Document, EPA/530-SW-87-006, 1987.*



The slope of the curve on the log-log paper is represented by j. In a plot of C^* versus C, where the slope is a straight line, the relationship is linear, and j has a value of one. Under these conditions, the derivative of C^* with respect to C yields the relationship

$$dC^*/dC = K_d \tag{10.12}$$

where K_d is known as a **distribution coefficient.**

A second isotherm may be determined by plotting C/C^* versus C on arithmetic graph paper. If this falls on a straight line, it is the **Langmuir adsorption isotherm** (Olsen & Watanabe 1957) and is given by

$$\frac{C}{C^*} = \frac{1}{\beta_1\beta_2} + \frac{C}{\beta_2} \tag{10.13}$$

where

C is the equilibrium concentration of the ion in contact with the soil (mg/L)

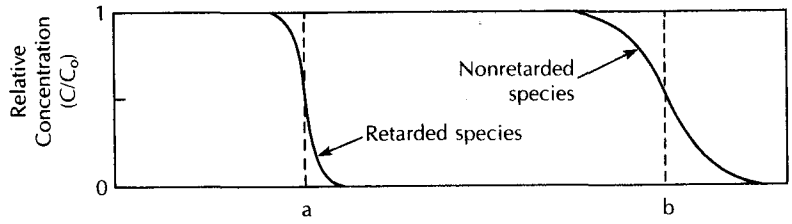
C^* is the amount of the ion adsorbed per unit weight of soil (mg/g)

β_1 is an adsorption constant related to the binding energy

β_2 is the adsorption maximum for the soil

A plot of C/C^* as a function of C is made on rectilinear scales. The data points will fall on a straight line. Some experiments yield two straight-line segments—one at lower concentrations of the ion and one at higher concentrations with a lower slope (Syers et al. 1973). In some cases, the soil may have adsorbed some of the ion under natural conditions prior to the laboratory test. If this is the case, a correction must be made (Fitter & Sutton 1975).

The maximum ion adsorption, β_2, is the reciprocal of the slope of the straight line. The binding energy constant, β_1, is the slope of the line divided by the intercept. The experi-



▲ FIGURE 10.14
Influence of retardation on movement of a solute front in a one-dimensional column.

mental procedure usually tests for only a single ion at a time. Natural waters are more complex, and field reactions may differ from those determined by laboratory study. The Langmuir adsorption isotherm can be used for both anions and cations.

The K_d value can be used to compute the retardation of the solute front as it passes through the soil by the following equation:

$$\text{Retardation factor} = 1 + (\rho_b/\theta)\,(K_d) \tag{10.14}$$

where

ρ_b is dry bulk mass density of the soil (M/L^3; gm/cm^3)

θ is volumetric moisture content of the soil (dimensionless)

K_d is distribution coefficient for the solute with the soil (L^3/M; mL/g)

If a solute is reactive, it will travel at a slower rate than the ground water owing to adsorption. The rate of solute movement can be determined by the retardation equation

$$v_c = v_x/[1 + (\rho_b/\theta)(K_d)] \tag{10.15}$$

where

v_x is average linear velocity (L/T; ft/day or m/day)

v_c is velocity of the solute front. In a one-dimensional column the solute concentration is one-half of the original value ($C/C_0 = 0.5$) (L/T; ft/day or m/day)

Figure 10.14 shows the impact of retardation on the movement of a solute front compared with a nonretarded species. It can be seen that the effect of retardation is to cause the solute front to advance more slowly.

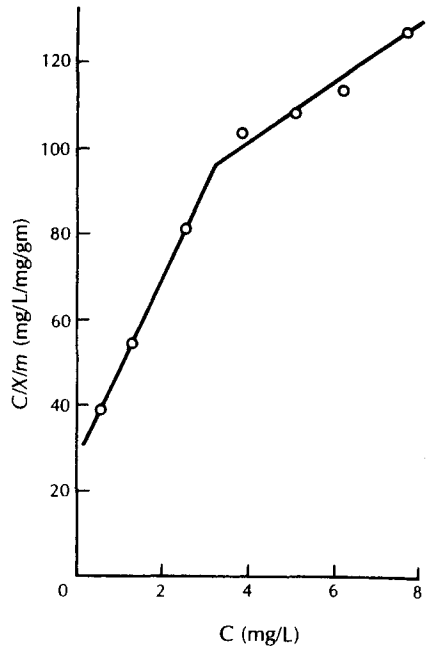
EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A calcareous glacial outwash sediment was present at the proposed site for an artificial recharge basin for wastewater (Fetter 1977a). The phosphorus-removal capacity of the soil was determined by laboratory adsorption studies. Equal weights of soil were shaken in various concentrations of disodium phosphate. The soil already had 0.016 mg of phosphorus per gram adsorbed prior to the test, and this was added to the value of C^* adsorbed during the test to determine total C^* in equilibrium with the solution. The equilibrium concentration of the solute is C.

A plot of C/C^* as a function of C is given in Figure 10.15. There are two straight-line segments, indicating that one type of adsorption is taking place at low activities of phosphorus and another type of adsorption, with a higher bonding energy, is occurring at greater concentrations.

The slope of the straight line at lower concentrations is $\dfrac{20\ (\text{mg/L})(\text{mg/g})}{1\ \text{mg/L}}$, so the reciprocal is 0.05 mg of phosphorus per gram of soil, which is the adsorption maximum (β_2). For higher concentrations, the adsorption maximum is 0.16 mg of phosphorus per gram of soil.

► FIGURE 10.15
Langmuir adsorption isotherm for phosphorus adsorbed on calcareous glacial outwash. *Source: C. W. Fetter, Jr., Ground Water 15 (1977): 365–71.*



EXAMPLE PROBLEM

The following table shows the adsorption of varying amounts of lead by the Cecil clay. The aliquots of solution were each 200 mL and the amount of adsorbent in each case was 10.18 g. Find the value of K_d.

Initial Conc. (mg/L)	C Equilibrium Conc. (mg/L)	C^* Amount Adsorbed (μg/g)
2.07	0.05	40
5.11	0.11	98
6.22	0.16	119
7.28	0.22	139
10.2	0.41	192
12.4	0.65	231
14.6	0.94	268

The value of C^*, the amount adsorbed, is found by taking the initial concentration, subtracting from that the equilibrium concentration, multiplying by the volume of the solution, and dividing the entire product by the weight of the adsorbent. In the first line of the above table, the computation is

$$C^* = \frac{(2.07 \text{ mg/L} - 0.05 \text{ mg/L}) \times 0.200\ L}{10.18 \text{ g}} = 0.040 \text{ mg/g} = 40 \text{ μg/g}$$

Figure 10.13 shows the plot of the equilibrium concentration, C, versus the amount adsorbed, C^*, for the above data. The data can be reasonably approximated by a straight line drawn through the origin.

A statistical test called a linear regression can be used to find the straight-line equation that best fits the data set. Many scientific calculators have a built-in linear regression function. It can also be run on a personal computer with Excel.

The straight-line equation, $y = mx + b$, where m is the slope of the line and b is the intercept with the y-axis, simplifies to $y = mx$ when the intercept passes through the origin. In Figure 10.13 the data were forced through the origin; that is, b was set to zero. The equation for the straight line in Figure 10.13 is $C^* = 232\ C$ since the slope of the line, dC^*/dC, is 232. The value of K_d, the retardation coefficient, is thus 232 mL/g.

*Data from W. R. Roy, I. G. Krapac, S. F. J. Chou, and R. A. Griffin, "Batch-type soil adsorption procedures for estimating soil attenuation of chemicals," U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Technical Resource Document EPA/530-SW-87-006, 1987.

Potential solutes in ground water have a wide range of soil-solute specific distribution coefficients. Because of the large surface areas and numerous ion-exchange sites, clays will have the largest K_d values for specific inorganic solutes. Cations are more often strongly adsorbed than anions, and divalent cations will be adsorbed more readily than those of monovalent species. Substances such as chloride may be only very weakly adsorbed or even completely unattenuated by passage through a clay. Sodium is weakly attenuated; potassium, ammonia, magnesium, silicon, and iron are moderately attenuated; and lead, cadmium, mercury, and zinc can be strongly held.

Synthetic organic chemicals in solution can be adsorbed by the organic carbon in the soil. In determining the movement and retardation of organic chemicals when one does not have site-specific batch adsorption data, one must first consider the solubility of the organic compound in water. The relative tendency for an organic compound to remain dissolved in water rather than to be adsorbed onto soil organic carbon is related to the octanol-water partition coefficient of that chemical, which is the tendency for the chemical to be dissolved into either water or n-octanol when shaken in a solution of the two. The soil-water partition coefficient, K_{oc}, can be estimated from either the water solubility or the octanol-water partition coefficient. Table 10.3 gives the solubility and soil-water partition coefficient for a large number of organic chemicals that are potential ground-water contaminants. The K_d for an organic compound in a specific soil can easily be estimated as it is

Table 10.3 Solubility, K_{oc}, and mobility class for common organic pollutants

Compound	Solubility (mg/L)	K_{oc} (mL/g)	Mobility Class
1, 4-Dioxane	miscible	1	very high
4-hydroxy-4-methyl-2-pentanone	miscible	1	very high
acetone	miscible	1	very high
tetrahydrofuran	miscible	1	very high
N,N'-dimethylformamide		1	very high
N,N'-dimethylacetamide		2	very high
2-methyl-2-butanol	140000.	6	very high
2-butanol	125000.	6	very high
ethyl ether	84300.	8	very high
cyclohexanol	56700.	10	very high
3-methylbutanoic acid	42000.	12	very high
benzyl alcohol	40000.	12	very high
aniline	34000.	13	very high
2-hexanone (butylmethylketone)	35000.	14	very high
2-hydroxy-triethylamine		15	very high
2-methylphenol (*o*-cresol)	31000.	15	very high
2-methyl-2-propanol		16	very high

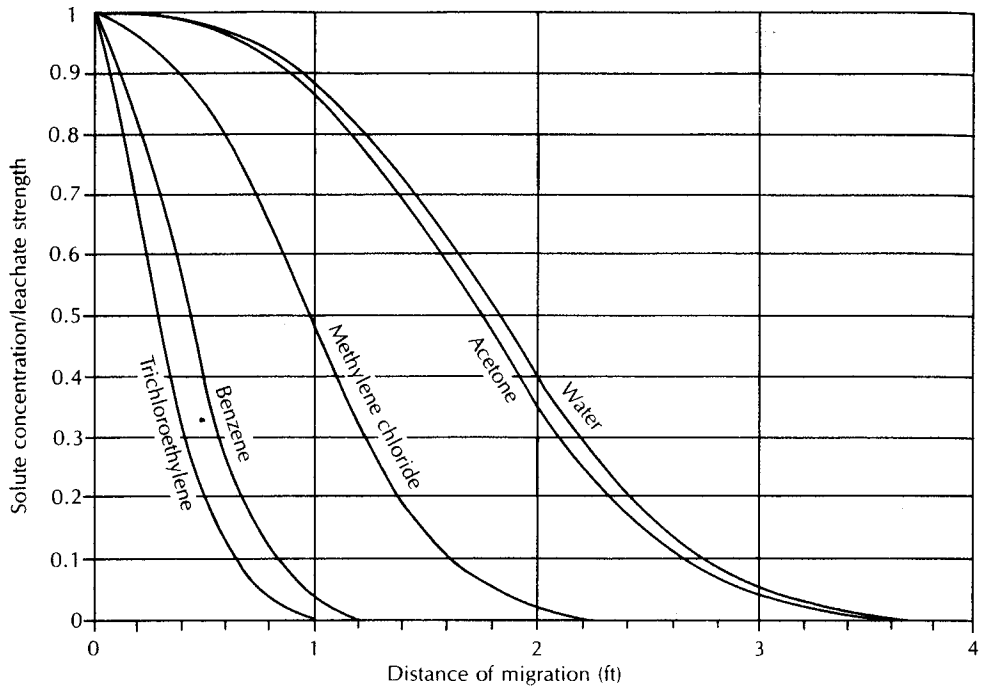
Table 10.3 continued

Compound	Solubility (mg/L)	K_{oc} (mL/g)	Mobility Class
4-methylphenol (*p*-cresol)	24000.	17	very high
pentanoic acid	24000.	17	very high
cyclohexanone	23000.	18	very high
4-methyl-2-pentanone	19000.	20	very high
2, 4-dimethyl phenol	17000.	21	very high
4-methyl-2-pentanol	17000.	21	very high
methylene chloride	13200.	25	very high
isophorone	12000.	26	very high
phenol	82000.	27	very high
2-chlorophenol	11087.	27	very high
hexanoic acid	11000.	28	very high
chloroform	7840	34	very high
1,2-dichloroethane	8450.	36	very high
1,2-trans-dichloroethene	6300.	39	very high
chloroethane	5700.	42	very high
5-methyl-2-hexanone	5400.	43	very high
chloromethane	5380.	43	very high
1,1-dichloroethane	5100.	45	very high
1,1,2-trichloroethane	4420.	49	very high
1,2-dichloropropane	3570.	51	high
benzoic acid	2900.	64	high
octanoic acid	2500.	70	high
heptanoic acid	2410.	71	high
1,1,2,2-tetrachloroethane	3230.	88	high
benzene	1780.	97	high
diethyl phthalate	1000.	123	high
2-nonanol	1000.	123	high
bromodichloromethane	900.	131	high
3-methylbenzoic acid	850.	136	high
trichloroethene	1100.	152	moderate
1,1,1-trichloroethane	700.	155	moderate
di-*n*-butyl phthalate	400.	217	moderate
1,1-dichloroethene	400.	217	moderate
carbon tetrachloride	800.	232	moderate
2-butanone (methylethylketone)	353.	235	moderate
4-methylbenzoic acid	340.	240	moderate
toluene	500.	242	moderate
tetrachloroethylene	200.	303	moderate
chlorobenzene	448.	318	moderate
1,2-dichlorobenzene	148.	343	moderate
o-xylene	170.	363	moderate
1,2,2-trifluoro-1,1,2-trichloroethane		372	moderate
styrene	162.	380	moderate
1,3-dichlorobenzene	118.	463	moderate
fluorotrichloromethane	110.	476	moderate
4,6-dinitro-2-methylphenol		477	moderate
p-xylene	156.	552	low
m-xylene	146.	588	low
1,4-dichlorobenzene	79.	594	low
ethyl benzene	150.	622	low
pentachlorophenol	14.	900	low

Table 10.3 continued

Compound	Solubility (mg/L)	K_{oc} (mL/g)	Mobility Class
N-nitrosodiphenylamine	35.1	982	low
3,5-dimethylphenol		1038	low
BHC-delta	31.5	1052	low
2,6-dimethylphenol		1060	low
1,2,4-trichlorobenzene	30.	1080	low
naphthalene	31.7	1300	low
4-ethylphenol		1986	low
dibenzofuran	10.	2140	slight
hexachloroethane	8.	2450	slight
acenaphthene	7.4	2580	slight
tri-*N*-propylamine		2610	slight
BHC-alpha	8.5	2627	slight
BHC-beta	2.7	3619	slight
hexachlorobenzene	0.035	3910	slight
hexachlorobutadiene	3.2	4330	slight
di-*n*-octyl phthalate	3.	4510	slight
butyl benzyl phthalate	2.9	4606	slight
fluorene	1.98	5835	slight
2-methylnaphthalene	25.4	8500	slight
bis(2-ethylhexyl)phthalate	0.6	12200	slight
toxaphene	0.4	15700	slight
heptachlor epoxide	0.35	17087	slight
endosulfan II	0.28	19623	slight
fluoranthene	0.275	19800	slight
1,2-diphenylhydrazene (as azobenzene)	0.252	20947	immobile
endosulfan sulfate	0.22	22788	immobile
phenanthrene	1.29	23000	immobile
dieldrin	0.188	25120	immobile
anthracene	0.073	26000	immobile
BHC-gamma	0.15	28900	immobile
decanoic acid		39610	immobile
chlordane	0.056	53200	immobile
pyrene	0.135	63400	immobile
PCB-1254	0.042	63914	immobile
heptachlor	0.03	78400	immobile
endrin	0.024	90000	immobile
benzo(a)anthracene	0.014	125719	immobile
aldrin	0.013	132000	immobile
4,4'-DDE	0.01	155000	immobile
4,4'-DDT	0.0017	238000	immobile
4,4'-DDD	0.005	238000	immobile
benzo(*a*)pyrene	0.0038	282185	immobile
PCB-1260	0.0027	349462	immobile
chrysene	0.022	420108	immobile
benzo(*b*)fluoranthene		1148497	immobile
benzo(*k*)fluoranthene		2020971	immobile

Source: R. A. Griffin, 1985, personal communication, and W. R. Roy & R. A. Griffin, "Mobility of organic solvents in water-saturated soil materials," Environmental Geology and Water Sciences, 7 (1985):241–47.



▲ FIGURE 10.16
Vertical migration, in feet per 100 y, of various synthetic organic compounds through a soil with a hydraulic conductivity of 1.6×10^{-8} cm/s, hydraulic gradient of 0.222, bulk density of 2.00 g/cm^3, particle density of 2.65, effective porosity of 0.22, and soil organic carbon content of 0.5%.

merely the K_{oc} for that compound times the weight fraction of organic carbon in the soil. If the soil is a pure silica sand, there will be very limited retardation.

As a result of the processes of advection, dispersion, diffusion, and retardation, there is a pattern of solute distribution as one moves away from the source of the contamination. If the contaminant source contains multiple solutes, then each will have a retardation typified by the K_d for that solute and there will be a number of solute fronts. The resulting plume can be very complex. Figure 10.16 shows the relative rates of movement for water and several organic compounds of differing mobility classes. The movement is through a low-permeability glacial till with about 0.5% soil organic carbon. The curves were obtained from the one-dimensional solute transport equation and were solved on a personal computer.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Compute the relative velocity of the solute front of a solute-soil system with a distribution coefficient of 10 mL/g, a ρ_b value of 1.75 g/cm^3, and θ of 0.20:

$$v_c = \frac{v_x}{1 + (\rho_b/\theta)(K_d)}$$

$$= \frac{v_x}{1 + \left(\frac{1.75\ \text{g/cm}^3}{0.20}\right)\left(10\frac{\text{mL}}{\text{g}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \text{cm}^3}{1\ \text{mL}}\right)}$$

$$= \frac{v_x}{88.5}$$

$$= 0.011 v_x$$

10.6.7 Degradation of Organic Compounds

It is well known that straight-chain and aromatic hydrocarbons associated with petroleum products can undergo biological degradation (Chappele et al. 1996). Hydrogeologists observed that halogenated organic solvents dissolved in ground water undergo transformations under natural conditions with the compounds undergoing progressive dehalogenation (Roberts, Schreiner, & Hopkins 1982; Parsons, Wood, & DeMarco 1984; Cline & Viste 1985).

The following classes of organic compounds have been found to undergo either biotic or abiotic degradation: chlorinated methanes, chlorinated ethanes, chlorinated propanes, chlorinated butanes, chlorinated ethenes, bromonated methanes, bromonated ethenes, alkylbenzenes, bromochloropropanes, halogenated acetates, and various aromatics such as benzene and toluene (for example, see Vogel, Criddle, & McCarty 1987; McCarty 1997; Chappelle 1997).

The chlorinated ethanes and ethenes have been well studied and are a common ground-water contaminant. Several reactions can occur abiotically to break them into lower-molecular-weight compounds. *Substitution* is a reaction in which water interacts with the halogenated compound to substitute an OH^- for an X^-, creating an alcohol. Other groups can be substituted as well, such as the reaction with an HS^- radical under reducing conditions to release an X^- ion and form mercaptains. Substitution reactions proceed most rapidly for monohalogenated compounds. Monohalogenated compounds have reaction half-lives of about 1 mo. As the number of halogen ions increases, the half-life for reactions due to substitution increases rapidly into the range of years to hundreds of years. *Dehydrohalogenation* is a reaction where an alkane loses both an X^- and an H^+ ion to form a double bond between the carbon atoms, thus creating an alkene. The rate of dehydrohalogenation increases with increasing numbers of halogen ions; hence, compounds that undergo substitution most slowly undergo dehydrohalogenation most rapidly. Bromine ions are more rapidly removed than chlorine ions in abiotic reactions.

Oxidations and *reductions* are typically biologically mediated. Oxidations include (1) the addition of an OH^- radical on an alkane in place of an H atom on a carbon that also contains a halogen ion, (2) oxidation of a halogen ion, (3) formation of an epoxy from the double bond of an alkene, and (4) addition of a halogen ion and a hydroxyl ion to the double bond of an alkene. Reductions start with the removal of an X^- ion by a reduced species, such as a reduced transition metal. The alkyl radical thus formed can react with an H^+ ion, which substitutes for the departed X^-. This process is called *hydrogenolysis.* If the adjacent carbon also contains a halogen ion, it too can be reduced. In this case the loss of halogens on adjacent carbon atoms creates an alkene by formation of a double bond between the carbon atoms.

Environmental conditions influencing the type and rate of the preceding reactions include pH, temperature, state of oxidation or reduction, microorganisms present, and types of other chemicals present. Reaction kinetics also play an important role in the determination of the abiotic and biotic fate of organic contaminants. Theoretically, the end products of the abiotic reactions are either ethane and ethene, both of which should be amenable to further biodegradation. However, under field conditions, such a favorable outcome might require many years to occur. Before it does, the contaminant might well flow from the point of origin to contaminate a large area of the aquifer system.

10.7 Ground-Water Contamination

10.7.1 Introduction

The specter of ground-water contamination looms over industrialized, suburban, and rural areas. The sources of ground-water contamination are many and the contaminants numerous. Common industrial solvents such as trichloroethylene, 1,1,1-trichloroethane,

tetrachloroethane, benzene, and carbon tetrachloride have been found in widespread areas, with all indications being there are multiple sources (Fusillo, Hochreiter, & Lord 1985). Suburban areas have ground water with high levels of nitrate due to the use of lawn fertilizers as well as septic tank discharges (Flipse et al. 1984). Agricultural areas have not only high levels of fertilizers found in ground water (Pionke & Urban 1985), but specialized synthetic organic agricultural chemicals as well (Rothschild, Manser, & Anderson 1982). Landfills in urban and rural areas are known sources of contamination (Noss & Johnson 1984; McLeod 1984). Underground storage tanks holding petroleum products (Kramer 1982) and synthetic organic chemicals (Oliveira & Sitar 1985) have leaked and caused ground-water contamination.

The extent of ground-water contamination in an area will depend upon the nature of the contaminant and the hydrogeology of the area. Contaminants which do not interact with geologic materials will travel farther than those which do interact. Contamination will travel farther in permeable materials where the ground water velocity is greater. Contaminated ground water in most cases will not travel more than a few thousand feet from the source and in many cases not more than a few hundred feet. If there is a single source, then the contamination may be localized. If there are multiple sources, or if the contamination is a result of widespread land-use practices, then the contamination may cover a large area. Table 10.4 is a partial listing of contaminants reported to have been found in ground water.

Ground-water contamination is not an irreversible process. Certain natural conditions act to remove contaminants. Attenuation mechanisms include dilution, dispersion, mechanical filtration, volatilization, biological activity, ion exchange and adsorption on soil particle surfaces, chemical reactions, and radioactive decay. Even synthetic organic compounds can undergo biological decay although the decay products may also be toxic. In recent years a number of techniques have been developed for restoring the quality of ground water that has been contaminated. This is discussed in Section 10.8.

10.7.2 Septic Tanks and Cesspools

The disposal of domestic wastewater is accomplished in many areas through the use of septic tanks and drain tile fields. An estimated 800 billion gallons of water per year are discharged to the subsurface in the United States via septic tanks (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency 1977). Anaerobic decomposition of wastes takes place in the septic tank. The liquid waste is carried to a drain tile field, where it seeps through the vadose zone to the water table.

Septic tank effluent contains bacteria and viruses. It is a major factor in the incidences of waterborne disease from private wells in the United States (Craun 1981) and presumably elsewhere as well. The most important factor that influences the development of ground-water contamination from septic tanks is the density of septic tank systems in the area (Yates 1985). Documented cases of widespread ground-water contamination from septic tank systems have been in areas where lot sizes range from less than one-quarter of an acre to three acres (Yates 1985).

Several cases of infectious disease outbreaks due to septic tanks have been reported. In Polk County, Arkansas, in 1971, an outbreak of viral hepatitis was traced to a well that was contaminated by seepage from a septic tank located 95 ft away (Craun 1979). In 1972, typhoid in Yakima, Washington, was attributed to well water from driven well points. Wastewater from the septic tank serving the home of a typhoid carrier was discharged into the ground 210 ft away from the contaminated well. A Norwalk-like virus was responsible for 400 cases of gastroenteritis at a resort camp in Colorado. A septic tank was located 50 ft above the spring supplying drinking water to the camp (Craun 1984).

Septic tanks are most likely to contribute to ground-water contamination in areas where (1) there is a high density of homes with septic tanks, (2) the soil layer over

Table 10.4 Chemicals and organisms known to have caused ground-water contamination (various sources)

Metals	Nonmetals	Organics	Extractable Organic Compounds	Volatile Organic Compounds	Organisms
aluminum	acids	aldrin	tri-*n*-propylamine	benzene	*Giardia lamblia*
arsenic	ammonia	BOD	3- and/or 4-methyl phenol	1,2-dichloroethane	*Salmonella* sp.
barium	boron	chlordane	4-methyl benzoic acid	1,1,1-trichloroethane	*Shigella* sp.
cadmium	chloride	DDT	1,4-dioxane	1,1-dichloroethane	typhoid
chromium	cyanide	detergents	4-methyl-2-pentanol	1,1,2-trichloroethane	*Yersinin enterocolitica*
copper	fluoride	ethyl acrylate	*n,n*-dimethyl-formamide	chloroethane	viral hepatitis
iron	nitrate	gasoline	2-hexanone	1,1-dichloroethene	*E. coli*
lead	phosphate	hydroquinone	4-methyl-2-pentanone	cis-1.2-dichloroethene	
lithium	radium	lindane	1-methyl-2-pyrrolidinone	trans-1,2-dichloroethene	
manganese	selenium	paramethyl amino-phenol	2-hexanol	ethyl benzene	
mercury	sulfate	PBB	3,5-dimethyl phenol and/or 4-ethyl phenol	methylene chloride	
molybdenum	various radioactive isotopes	PCB	benzoic acid	tetrachloroethane	
nickel		DCPD (dicyclopenta-diene)	hexanoic acid	toluene	
silver		DIMP (diisopropyl-methyl-phospho-nate)	cyclohexanol	trichloroethene	
uranium		DBCP (dibromochloro-propane)	2-ethyl hexanoic acid	vinyl chloride	
zinc			octanoic acid	tetrahydrofuran	
			pentanoic acid	acetone	
			bis(2-ethylhexyl) phthalate	2-methyl-2-propanol	
			di-*n*-butyl phthalate	2-butanone	
			2,4-dimethyl phenol	2-butanol	
			isophorone	2-propanol	
			phenol		
			1,2-dichlorobenzene		

permeable bedrock is thin, (3) the soil is extremely permeable, such as gravel, or (4) the water table is within a couple of feet of the land surface. Areas with high population densities should not be served with septic tanks, and areas with thin soils, extremely permeable soils, and high water tables should be avoided.

10.7.3 Landfills

Burial in a landfill is the most common means of disposing of municipal refuse, ashes, garbage, leaves, demolition debris, and sludges from municipal and industrial wastewater treatment facilities. Radioactive, toxic, and hazardous wastes have also been subjected to land burial as a means of disposal. Precipitation that infiltrates the waste can mix with liquids already present in the waste and leach compounds from the solid waste. The result is a liquid known as **leachate.** Leachate can move downward from the landfill into the water table and cause ground-water contamination. If the waste is buried below the water table, moving ground water can leach compounds from the waste and become contaminated. Table 10.5 gives the overall range and range of median values for municipal solid-waste leachate in Wisconsin. Landfill leachates can contain very high concentrations of both inorganic and organic compounds.

When leachate from a landfill mixes with ground water, it forms a plume that spreads in the direction of the flowing ground water. As one goes away from the source, the concentration decreases owing to hydrodynamic dispersion and retardation. Figure 10.17 shows in cross section a plume of ground water with high sulfate from a fly ash* disposal pond located with the waste pile below the water table. In this particular case, the plume of high-sulfate water is moving directly toward the Mississippi River, where it is discharging into the river. The location of a waste-disposal area adjacent to a ground-water discharge zone limits the amount of ground water that can become contaminated, although surface-water contamination could occur.

The volume of leachate that is produced is a function of the amount of water percolating through the refuse. Land disposal of solid waste in humid areas is more likely to produce large volumes of leachate than land disposal in arid zones. The vadose zone in arid regions may receive little or no recharge. Under such conditions, solid-waste disposal is not likely to result in ground-water contamination.

Current state-of-the-art hydrogeologic and engineering practice for determining the locations of municipal waste landfills calls for careful geologic analysis of several alternative sites, to select the site least likely to result in ground-water contamination. Landfills may be designed to minimize both the formation of leachate and the amount of leachate that escapes from the landfill. Leachate may also be collected and treated.

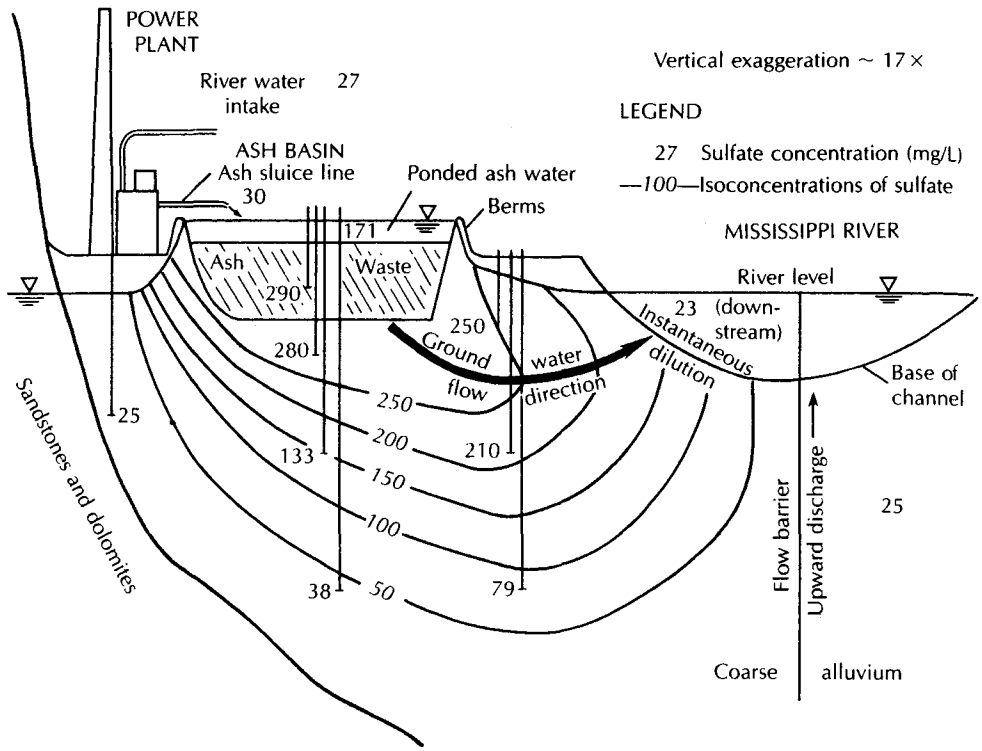
It is desirable in most cases to construct landfills above the water table. Some attenuation of leachate may occur as it passes through the unsaturated zone. A *natural-attenuation* landfill is one that relies totally on natural processes to attenuate any leachate formed. Such landfills should be well above the water table to promote maximum attenuation in the vadose zone. Soils with the greatest potential attenuation are clays because they have the most ion exchange and adsorption sites. Unfortunately, in humid areas, the water table in clay soils tends to be close to the land surface; this means that much of the landfill should be above grade. Leachate generation may be reduced by capping the landfill with 3 to 5 ft (0.9 to 1.5 m) of compacted clay soil or a synthetic membrane. If large amounts of leachate are generated in a natural-attenuation landfill located in a low-permeability clay, there is a tendency for leachate to come to the land surface and form leachate springs.

*Fly ash is the ash that is produced from the burning of coal at a power plant. Large amounts are produced from power generation, and this presents a major waste-disposal problem.

Table 10.5 Overall summary from the analysis of municipal solid-waste leachates in Wisconsin

Parameter	Overall Range*	Typical Range (range of site medians)*	Number of Analyses
TDS	584–50430	2180–25873	172
Specific conductance	480–72500	2840–15485	1167
Total susp. solids	2–140900	28–2835	2700
BOD	ND–195000	101–29200	2905
COD	6.6–97900	1120–50450	467
TOC	ND–30500	427–5890	52
pH	5–8.9	5.4–7.2	1900
Total alkalinity ($CaCO_3$)	ND–15050	960–6845	328
Hardness ($CaCO_3$)	52–225000	1050–9380	404
Chloride	2–11375	180–2651	303
Calcium	200–2500	200–2100	9
Sodium	12–6010	12–1630	192
Total Kjeldahl nitrogen	2–3320	47–1470	156
Iron	ND–1500	2.1–1400	416
Potassium	ND–2800	ND–1375	19
Magnesium	120–780	120–780	9
Ammonia-nitrogen	ND–1200	26–557	263
Sulfate	ND–1850	8.4–500	154
Aluminum	ND–85	ND–85	9
Zinc	ND–731	ND–54	158
Manganese	ND–31.1	0.03–25.9	67
Total phosphorus	ND–234	0.3–117	454
Boron	0.87–13	1.19–12.3	15
Barium	ND–12.5	ND–5	73
Nickel	ND–7.5	ND–1.65	133
Nitrate-nitrogen	ND–250	ND–1.4	88
Lead	ND–14.2	ND–1.11	142
Chromium	ND–5.6	ND–1.0	138
Antimony	ND–3.19	ND–0.56	76
Copper	ND–4.06	ND–0.32	138
Thallium	ND–0.78	ND–0.31	70
Cyanide	ND–6	ND–0.25	86
Arsenic	ND–70.2	ND–0.225	112
Molybdenum	0.01–1.43	0.034–0.193	7
Tin	ND–0.16	0.16	3
Nitrite-nitrogen	ND–1.46	ND–0.11	20
Selenium	ND–1.85	ND–0.09	121
Cadmium	ND–0.4	ND–0.07	158
Silver	ND–1.96	ND–0.024	106
Beryllium	ND–0.36	ND–0.008	76
Mercury	ND–0.01	ND–0.001	111

*All concentrations in mg/L except pH (std. units) and specific conductance (μmhos/cm).
ND indicates no data.



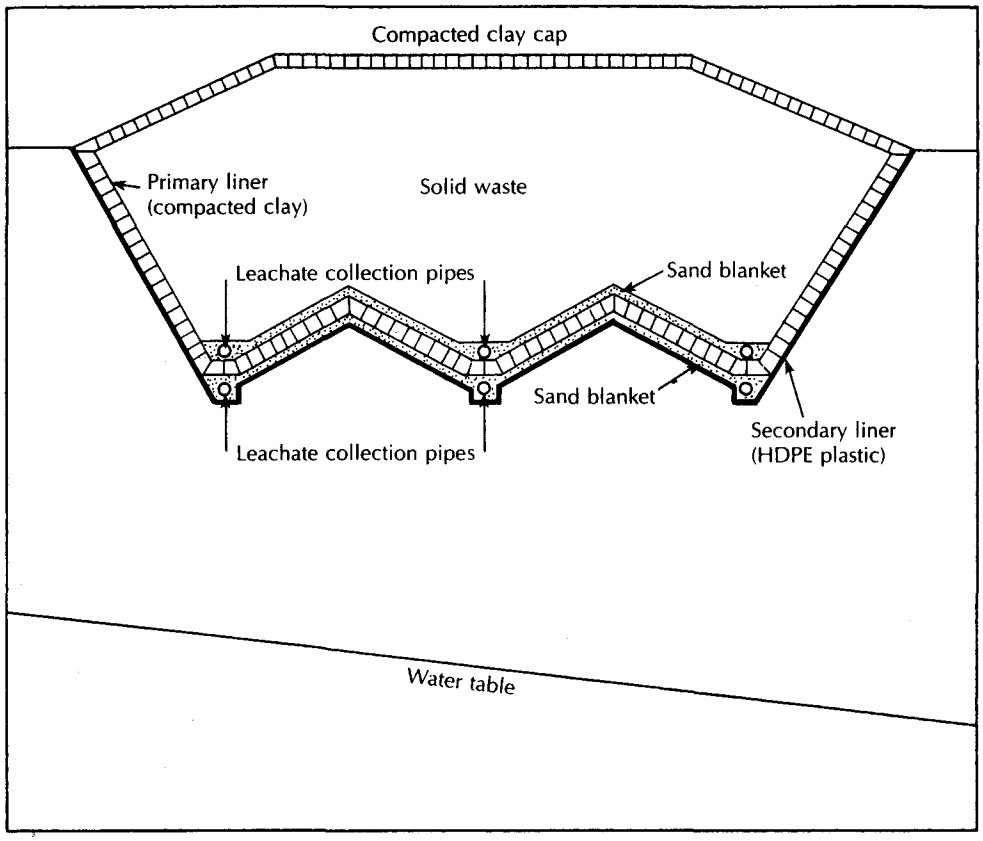
▲ FIGURE 10.17
Plume of ground water contaminated with high-sulfate leaching from a fly ash landfill located below the water table. *Source: Daniel R. Viste.* Proceedings, First Annual Conference of Applied Research and Practice on Municipal and Industrial Waste *(Madison: University of Wisconsin, 1978), pp. 327–40.*

Many natural-attenuation landfills have resulted in ground-water contamination from leachate.

A *lined* landfill is one designed to capture part or all of the leachate generated. Landfill liners are typically constructed of 3 to 10 ft (0.9 to 3 m) of compacted clay soils. The permeability of the liner should be no greater than 3×10^{-4} ft/day (1×10^{-7} cm/s). Alternatively, a synthetic membrane such as HDPE (high-density polyethylene) could be used as the liner. Because leachate will collect on the liner, a **leachate-collection system** is also needed. The leachate-collection system consists of a blanket of sand or gravel, with perforated drainage lines, lying on the liner. The base of the liner is sloped toward the drain tiles. Leachate drains through the leachate-collection system to a holding tank or sewer and is ultimately removed and treated. Clay-lined systems can be designed to collect about 70% to 90% of the leachate produced (Kmet, Quinn, & Slavik 1981). The remainder of the leachate will seep or diffuse through the liner. A double liner and secondary leachate-collection system installed beneath the primary liner can be constructed to capture the leakage through the primary liner. A membrane or clay liner could be used for the secondary liner. Figure 10.18 shows a double-lined system with leachate collection.

10.7.4 Chemical Spills and Leaking Underground Tanks

Ground-water contamination due to a variety of inorganic and organic compounds has occurred as a result of spills and leaks of toxic and hazardous chemicals. These discharges may be the result of a sudden action, such as a tank car accident, or may be the result of slow leakage. Typically more than one chemical may be released. As shown in Section 10.6,



▲ FIGURE 10.18
Double-lined landfill with leachate collection system. The primary liner consists of 5 ft of compacted clay soil with hydraulic conductivity of no more than 1×10^{-7} cm/s. The secondary liner is flexible membrane such as 40-mil HDPE plastic. The leachate collection system consists of 1-ft-thick sand layers with perforated pipes, which drain to a leachate collection tank.

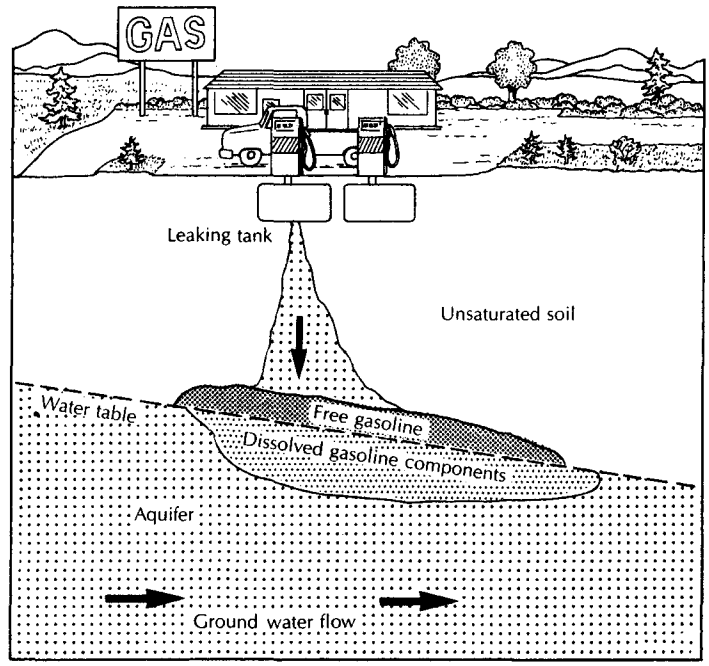
different chemicals will travel through the ground at different rates owing to retardation effects. As a result, complex plumes of contaminated water may result.

If the contaminant dissolves in the water, it will flow along with the ground water. However, if a liquid discharged into the ground has a specific gravity less than that of water, it can float on the water table. This is what happens when a petroleum product leaks into the ground. Figure 10.19 shows a gasoline plume moving along the surface of the water table. Note that the gasoline may spread upgradient a short way and that there will be soluble components of the gasoline, such as benzene, dissolved in the water below the water table.

Dense liquids may sink to the bottom of the aquifer. In general, the chlorinated hydrocarbons are heavier than water. They have various solubilities in water. Table 10.6 gives the density and solubility of some organic compounds. For those that are denser than water, the pure product will sink to the bottom of the aquifer. Some of the product will go into the solution so that there will also be a plume of ground water with dissolved product (see Figure 10.20).

The residual DNAPL in the vadose zone can partition into the air in the soil pores and fractures. The plume of DNAPL vapors can spread for many meters from the site of the spill (Mendoza & McAlary 1990; Mendoza & Frind 1990a, 1990b).

There are many sites in the United States where ground water has been contaminated with organic compounds. In some cases, contaminated water has migrated from a spill area

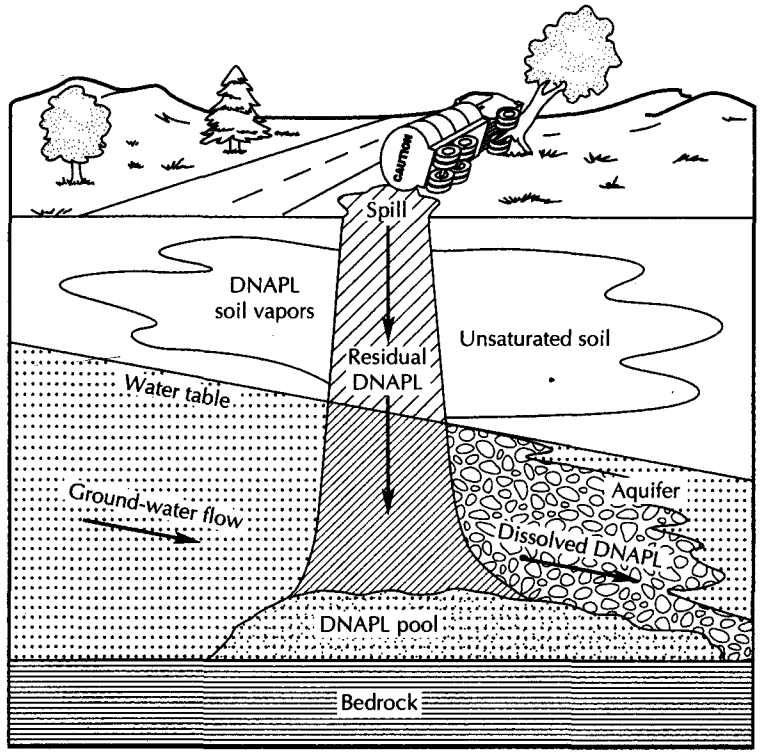


▲ FIGURE 10.19
Organic liquids such as gasoline, which are only slightly soluble in water and are less dense than water, tend to float on the water table when a spill occurs.

Table 10.6 Density and solubility in water of organic compounds

Compound	Specific Gravity[a]	Solubility[b] Milligrams compound/liter water (@ °C Temperature)
Acetone	0.79	Infinite
Benzene	0.88	1780 (20)
Carbon tetrachloride	1.59	800 (20), 1160 (25)
Chloroform	1.48	8000 (20), 9300 (25)
Methylene chloride	1.33	20,000 (20), 16,700 (25)
Chlorobenzene	1.11	500 (20), 488 (30)
Ethyl benzene	0.87	140 (15), 152 (20)
Hexachlorobenzene	1.60	0.11 (24)
Ethylene chloride	1.24	9200 (0), 8690 (20)
1, 1, 1-trichloroethane	1.34	4400 (20)
1, 1, 2-trichloroethane	1.44	4500 (20)
Trichloroethylene	1.46	1100 (25)
Tetrachloroethylene	1.62	150 (25)
Phenol	1.07	82,000 (15)
2-Chlorophenol	1.26	28,500 (20)
Pentachlorophenol	1.98	5 (0), 14 (20)
Toluene	0.87	470 (16), 515 (20)
Methyl ethyl ketone	0.81	353 (10)
Naphthalene	1.03	32 (25)
Vinyl chloride	0.91	1.1 (25)

[a]Source: R. Weast, "Handbook of Chemistry and Physics," 60th ed., CRC Press, Inc., 1979, 1980.
[b]From Verschueren, Karel. "Handbook of Environmental Data on Organic Chemicals." New York, Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1983. Numbers in parentheses = temperatures.

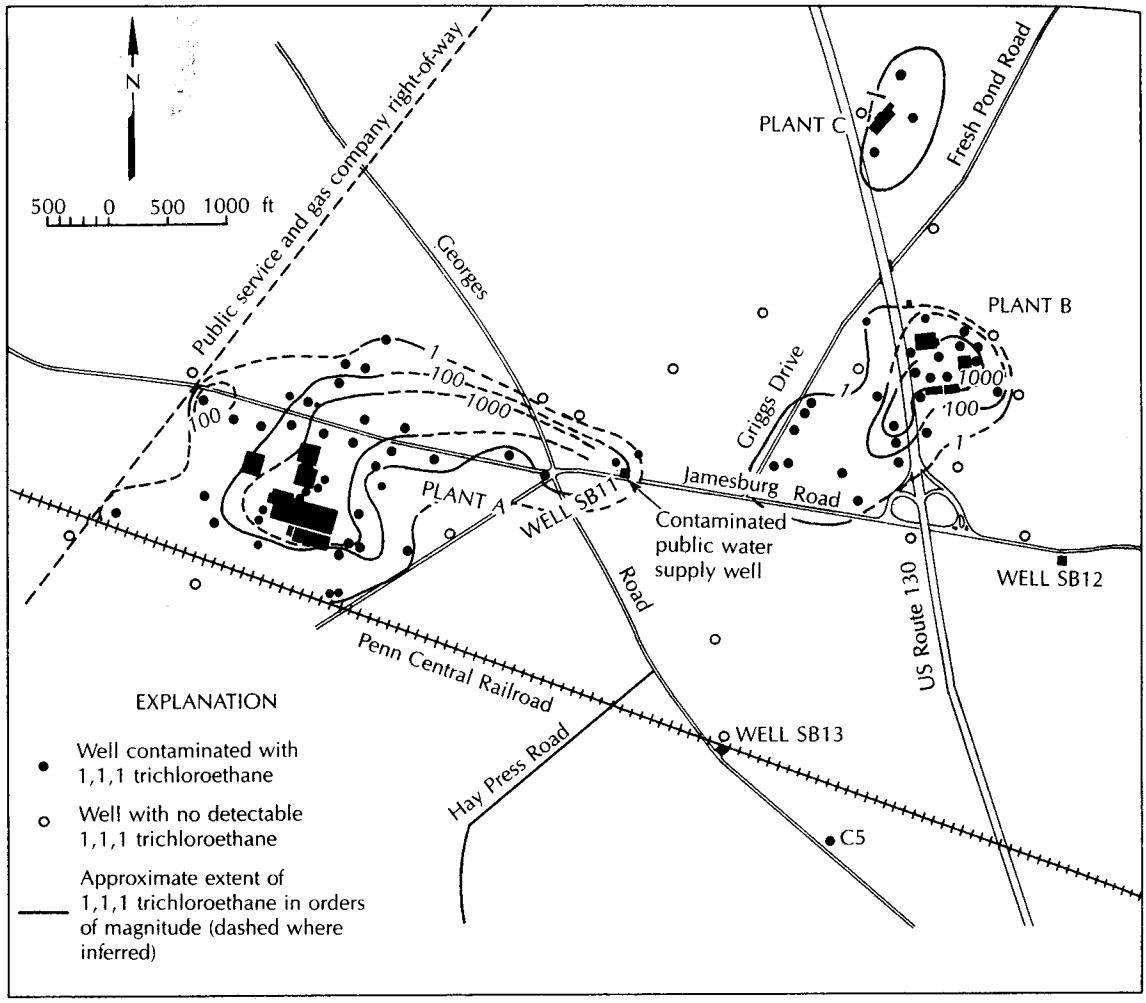


▲ FIGURE 10.20
Organic liquids such as trichloroethylene, which are only slightly soluble in water and are more dense than water, may sink to the bottom of an aquifer when a spill occurs.

to a water-supply well. In a shallow aquifer in South Brunswick Township, New Jersey, 1,1,1-trichloroethane and tetrachloroethane migrated more than 3000 ft from a factory site to a water-supply well. At times the 1,1,1-trichloroethane was present in amounts in excess of 1000 μg/L and the tetrachloroethane in amounts ranging from 100 to 300 μg/L. The affected well was taken out of service (Roux & Althoff 1980). Figure 10.21 shows the plume of 1,1,1-trichloroethane. There are actually three plumes, each from a different source, although only one was affecting the supply well.

10.7.5 Mining

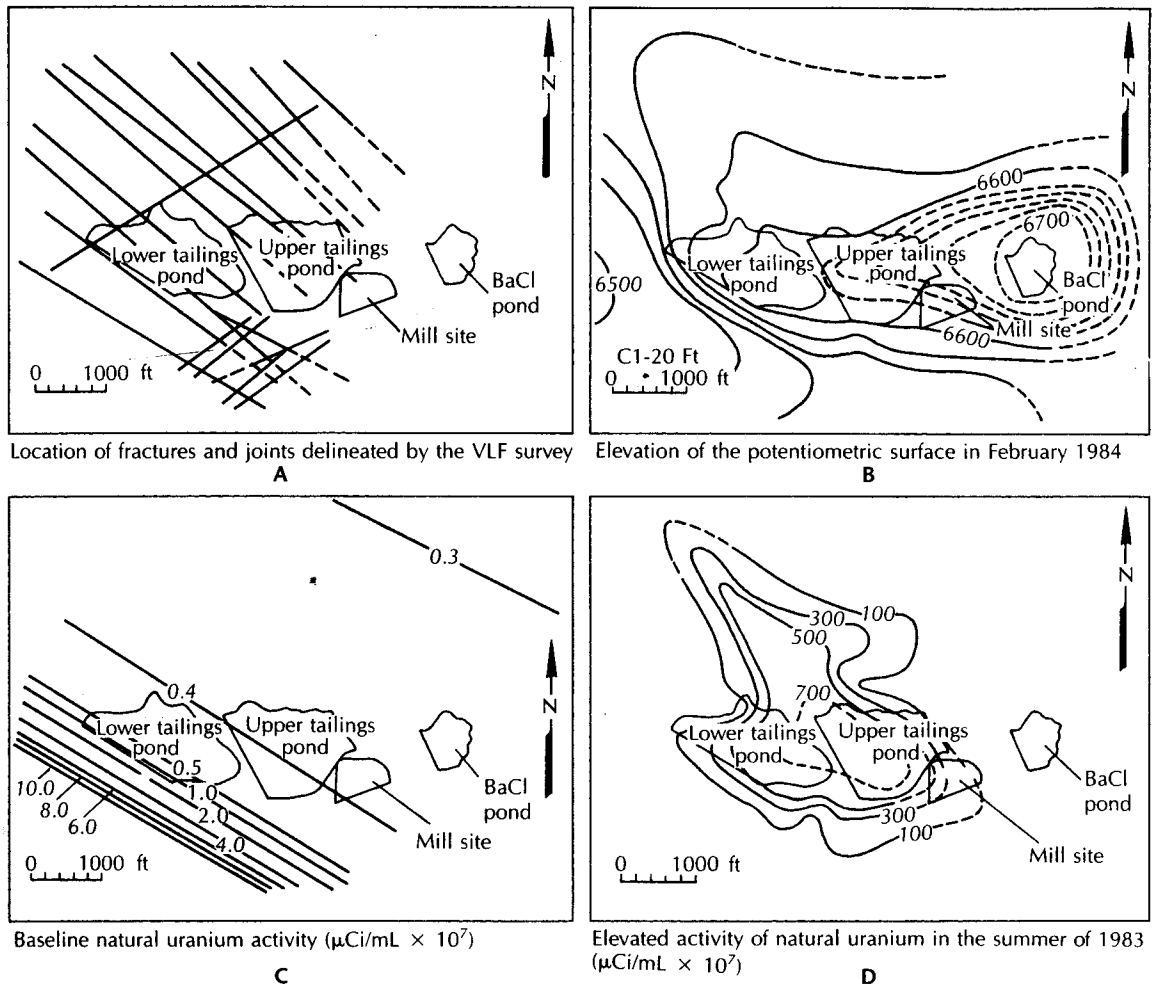
Extraction and processing of metallic ore and coal have been the source of both surface- and ground-water contamination. Ground water moving through mineralized rock zones may contain excessive amounts of heavy metals (Klusman & Edwards 1977). Mining and milling expose overburden and waste rock to oxidation. Oxidation of pyrite, a common mineral, can produce sulfuric acid. In the Appalachian region of the eastern United States, 6000 tons of sulfuric acid are produced daily in this manner (Ahmad 1974). This results in highly acidic water draining from spoil piles and tailings deposits; hence, the shallow ground water and surface water of the region tend to have a low pH. The low-pH water draining through spoil piles and tailings can also leach heavy metals (Norbeck, Mink, & Williams 1974; Ralston & Morilla 1974), as well as soluble calcium, magnesium, sodium, and sulfate (McWhorter, Skogerboe, & Skogerboe 1974). Uranium and thorium mining and milling operations can release radioactive isotopes to the atmosphere, surface water, and ground water (Kaufman, Eadie, & Russell 1976).



▲ FIGURE 10.21
Plumes of 1,1,1-trichloroethane in shallow ground water in South Brunswick Township, New Jersey. The plume to the southwest has traveled to the east and has reached a public water-supply well. *Source: P. H. Roux & W. F. Althoff,* Ground Water *18 (1980): 464–72.*

Case Study: Contamination from Uranium Tailings Ponds

In one study of the ground water beneath two unlined uranium tailings ponds in Utah, a comparison was made of baseline natural uranium activity before the tailings ponds were put into service and the natural uranium activity after 11 y of operation (White & Gainer 1985). The tailings ponds, each of which covers about 40 ac, were constructed by placing earthen dams across a small valley. The surface geology is a fine-grained sandstone interfingered with siltstones and claystones. Ground-water flow is fracture controlled. Figure 10.22A shows the locations of the tailings ponds and the fracture patterns affecting the ground water. Figure 10.22B shows the potentiometric surface. It was found that the baseline water quality showed somewhat elevated levels of natural uranium activity due to natural leaching of uranium-bearing rocks by water moving along a fracture system. Figure 10.22C shows the baseline natural uranium activity. It follows a linear pattern along the strike of a major fracture southwest of the lower tailings pond. After 11 y of operation, the natural uranium activity had increased significantly



Location of fractures and joints delineated by the VLF survey
A

Elevation of the potentiometric surface in February 1984
B

Baseline natural uranium activity ($\mu Ci/mL \times 10^7$)
C

Elevated activity of natural uranium in the summer of 1983 ($\mu Ci/mL \times 10^7$)
D

▲ FIGURE 10.22
Ground-water contamination by uranium beneath active uranium mill tailings ponds.
Source: R. B. White & R. B. Gainer, Ground Water Monitoring Review *5, no. 2 (1985): 75–82.*

above the baseline measurements. Figure 10.22D shows the elevated activity, corrected for the baseline variation. The plume is spreading to the northwest, following the strike of the fractures. This illustrates one of the facets of ground-water contamination in fractured rock aquifers that are anisotropic. That is, the plume will tend to follow the fractures and not necessarily move normal to the potentiometric surface. If the aquifer were isotropic, from the potentiometric surface map one would expect that the plume would spread primarily to the southwest.

10.7.6 Other Sources of Ground-Water Contamination

In a 1977 report to Congress, the U.S. EPA listed a number of waste-disposal practices and their potential impact on ground water (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency 1977). Waste-disposal practices mentioned in that report and not already covered in this section include liquid industrial-waste disposal in lagoons and injection wells, oil-field brine disposal in lagoons and wells, land-spreading of sewage and industrial sludges, leakage from municipal wastewater sewers and lagoons, and land disposal of animal waste from feed

lots. Other major causes of ground-water contamination listed in the report to Congress were spills and leaks; mine drainage; salt-water intrusion; poorly constructed or abandoned water, oil, and gas wells; infiltration of contaminated surface water; agricultural activities; highway deicing salts; and atmospheric contaminants.

10.8 Ground-Water Restoration

Our knowledge of the processes that occur in contaminated ground water has greatly expanded in recent years. It has been observed at many service stations with leaking underground tanks that, although ground water has been contaminated with dissolved substances associated with gasoline (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene, and ethylbenzene), the plume of contaminated ground water has not spread more than a few hundred feet (Rice and others, 1995). Clearly some natural process is occurring to remove these dissolved substances. Conversely, at some sites where chlorinated solvents were disposed decades ago, ground-water contamination still persists. The key to understanding what sites may clean up on their own and what sites will need strong action to implement a cleanup is knowledge about the hydrogeologic setting, the type and distribution of contamination, and the geochemistry of the ground water.

10.8.1 Risk-Based Corrective Action

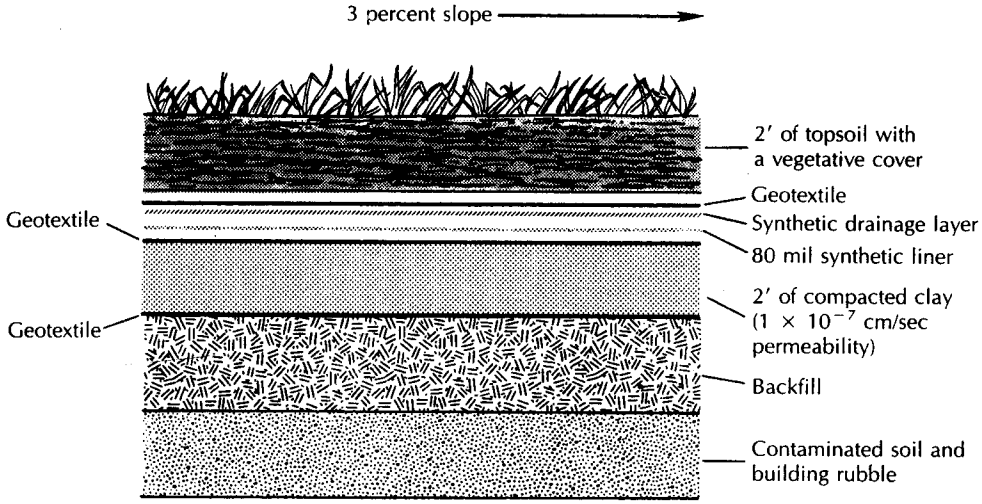
It has been established that in aerobic aquifers, microbial degradation of hydrocarbons is a relatively rapid process. Thus, at many gasoline stations regulatory authorities are now encouraging risk-based corrective action (RBCA) for soil and ground-water contamination. The first phase of a cleanup is the removal of as much floating product as possible, and excavation of heavily contaminated soil. If the plume of contaminated ground water does not pose a risk to any potential receptor, then natural biodegradation is used to clean up the remaining soil and ground-water contamination. Risk-based corrective action should only be utilized with continuing ground-water monitoring to ensure that the plume of contamination is not spreading. ASTM Standard E 1739-95—*Risk-Based Corrective Action Applied at Petroleum Release Sites*—is the standard guide.

10.8.2 Source-Control Measures

The first step in the use of risk-based corrective action is source control. Intrinsic bioremediation will not be effective if a source of contamination continues to exist and release dissolved contaminants into the ground water. Nonaqueous phase liquids (NAPLs) are organic substances that are only slightly soluble in water. So long as these liquids remain in the ground, they will continue to slowly release dissolved constituents. Sites where gas was formerly manufactured from coal and coke serve as an example. These former manufactured gas plant sites may have been inactive for 50 to 100 years, but coal tar from the gas manufacturing process can still remain in the ground. The coal tar is a dense nonaqueous phase liquid (DNAPL), and as long as it remains in the ground, organic compounds will slowly dissolve from the tar and enter the ground water.

Source control can involve either the physical removal of the contaminant source, or its physical isolation. LNAPLs such as gasoline can be removed by shallow drains and pumps, DNAPLs are much more difficult to locate and remove by pumping. Soil contaminated by DNAPLs can be excavated to physically remove the source if it is reasonably shallow.

One extreme method of source control is to excavate and remove the waste source. This was done at a toxic chemical waste landfill in Wilsonville, Illinois, when the court ordered a landfill operator to exhume and remove a large number of drums of liquid waste that had been buried in a licensed landfill (Johnson et al. 1983). A less drastic approach is to isolate the waste in place. If the waste is entirely above the water table, this is much more easily done than if the waste extends below the water table.



▲ FIGURE 10.23
Design of a low-permeability multimedia cap to cover waste. Fill material is used above waste to create a 3% slope if the waste material or land surface over the waste material is not sloped.

Changing the surface drainage so that runoff from upland areas does not cross the land surface above the waste will reduce the amount of surface water that infiltrates into the waste and produces leachate. The construction of a low-permeability cap above the waste can also be effective in reducing the amount of infiltration through the waste. Caps can be constructed of compacted clay, synthetic membranes, concrete, asphalt, and other types of materials. The most effective caps have several layers and include coarse granular layers between fine-grained layers to act as drains to divert infiltration away from the waste (Herzog et al. 1982). Figure 10.23 shows a multimedia cap design.

If the waste extends below the water table, then it is necessary to keep the ground water from flowing through it. This can be accomplished by installing a low-permeability vertical barrier around the waste body. Vertical barriers can be constructed by digging a trench and backfilling it with a slurry-type mixture of water, soil, and bentonitic clay. This is called a **slurry wall.** Slurry wall construction is limited to the depths that the trench can be constructed. A **grout curtain** can be installed by injecting any of a number of compounds into boreholes around the site. The materials fill the pore spaces in the rock or soil and harden. Grout curtains can be installed to great depths. Interlocking metal *sheet piling* can also be driven into soil to form a cutoff wall.

10.8.3 Plume Treatment

In some cases it may be desirable to remove the contaminated water from an aquifer and treat it to remove the contaminant. This step is especially necessary if the plume is a threat to a drinking-water supply, or if it might discharge into a wetland or stream and thus pose a possible risk to wildlife or people.

Extraction wells are used to remove the contaminated water. The spacing and pumping rate for the extraction wells is typically determined by computer modeling. The extraction wells are designed to capture the plume while at the same time removing as little of the uncontaminated water as possible. Extraction wells can also be planned as *plume-stabilization wells.* In this case they are located somewhere within the plume and sized to reverse the hydraulic gradient beyond the edge of the plume. They then prevent further movement of the plume. Locating an extraction well outside of the plume will tend to expand the plume boundaries.

Contaminated water that has been removed from the ground is usually treated before being discharged. Naturally, the treatment will depend upon the types and concentrations of the contaminants. Synthetic organic compounds are usually removed from contaminated water by one or more of the following methods: volatilization to the atmosphere in an air-stripping column, adsorption on activated carbon, and biological treatment.

A large study of the efficiency of pump-and-treat methods of ground-water remediation has indicated that there would initially be a rapid decline in the concentration of dissolved constituents in the ground water but that eventually the concentration would show little change with additional pumping. If the initial concentrations were in excess of 1000 μg/L, then a reduction of 90% to 99% could be achieved before leveling occurred. If the initial concentration was less than 1000 μg/L, then less than 90% removal could be accomplished before no further reductions occurred (Doty & Davis 1991). Although a 90% removal is significant, the resulting ground water could still have an unacceptable concentration of a contaminant. Moreover, if residual nonaqueous phase organic liquids are present, the dissolved concentrations would soon rise if pumping is halted. In fact, it may be impossible to remediate some aquifers, especially fractured rock aquifers, that are contaminated with dense nonaqueous phase liquids (Mackay & Cherry 1989; Freeze & Cherry 1989).

10.8.4 Natural and Enhanced Bioremediation

Natural biodegradation can act not only on petroleum hydrocarbons, but also on chlorinated solvents such as perchloroethylene, trichloroethylene, and 1,1,1-trichloroethane. These three compounds were widely used as degreasers to clean metal parts as well as for solvents. They have been found at numerous sites, usually associated with an industrial facility or a landfill. Under reducing geochemical conditions, they can undergo transformations. For example:

perchloroethylene > trichloroethylene > cis-1,2-dichloroethylene > vinyl chloride > ethene > carbon dioxide

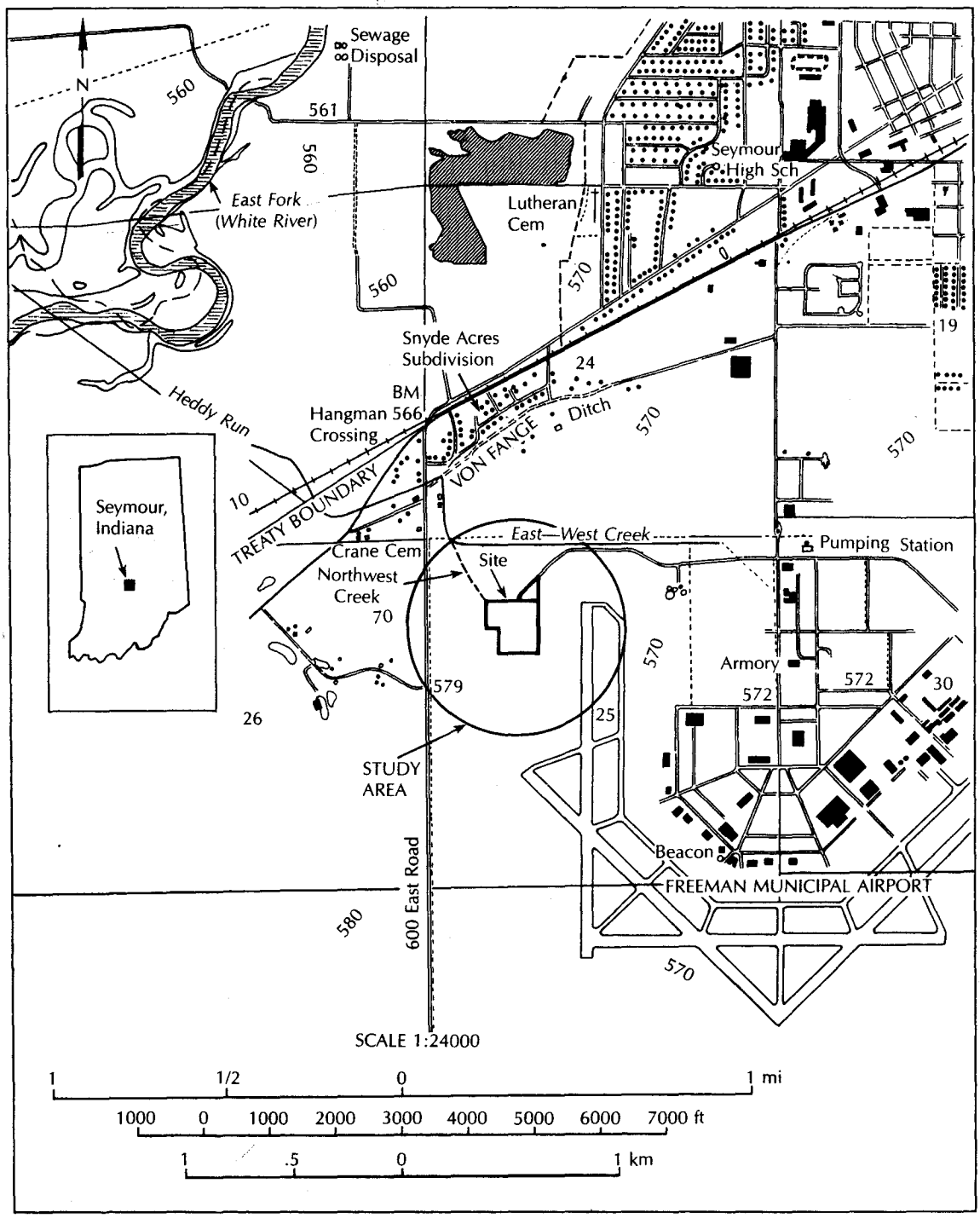
These transformations can act to remove the chlorinated compound from the ground water so long as there is not an ongoing source from a DNAPL. However, we need to be aware of the fact that the last chlorinated compound, vinyl chloride, is extremely carcinogenic.

If natural processes are not operating, or if they are operating too slowly, it may be possible to enhance them. One method is to add oxygen and nutrients to the aquifer to promote microbial growth, which will in turn consume the contaminant. This is especially useful for substances such as petroleum hydrocarbons that break down under aerobic conditions. It also may be possible to chemically break down NAPLs through the addition of a strong oxidizing agent such as hydrogen peroxide. A word of caution here: in one remediation effort of a gasoline spill using hydrogen peroxide, gasoline fumes were apparently forced through a sanitary sewer system and into the basement of a house, resulting in a fatal explosion.

10.9 Case History: Ground-Water Contamination at a Superfund Site

10.9.1 Background

From 1970 to 1979 a solvent recovery and recycling plant, Seymour Recycling Corporation, was operated in Seymour, Indiana. The company went bankrupt in 1979 and the owners abandoned 98 large tanks and approximately 50,000 drums, all filled with organic chemicals. Many of the drums were in a deteriorated condition, and prior to 1983, when they were all removed, an unknown amount of liquid synthetic organic compounds leaked into



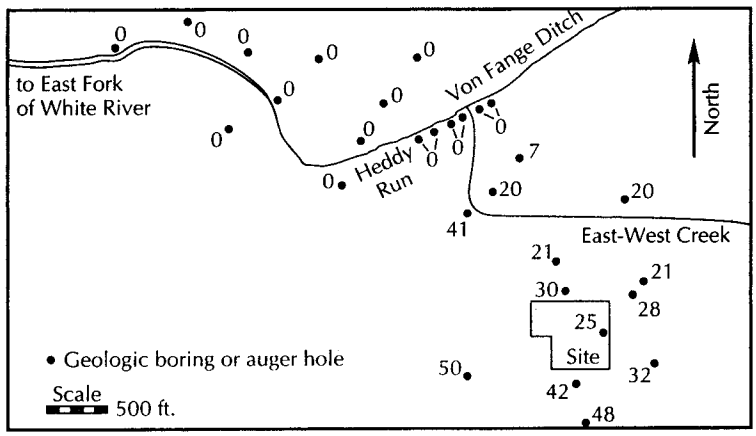
▲ FIGURE 10.24
Location of the Seymour Recycling Corporation Superfund site. *Source: CH2M-Hill,* Feasibility Study Report, Seymour Recycling Corporation Hazardous Waste Site, *U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1986.*

the soil. Recharging precipitation dissolved organic compounds from the soil and carried them into the ground water. Figure 10.24 shows the location.

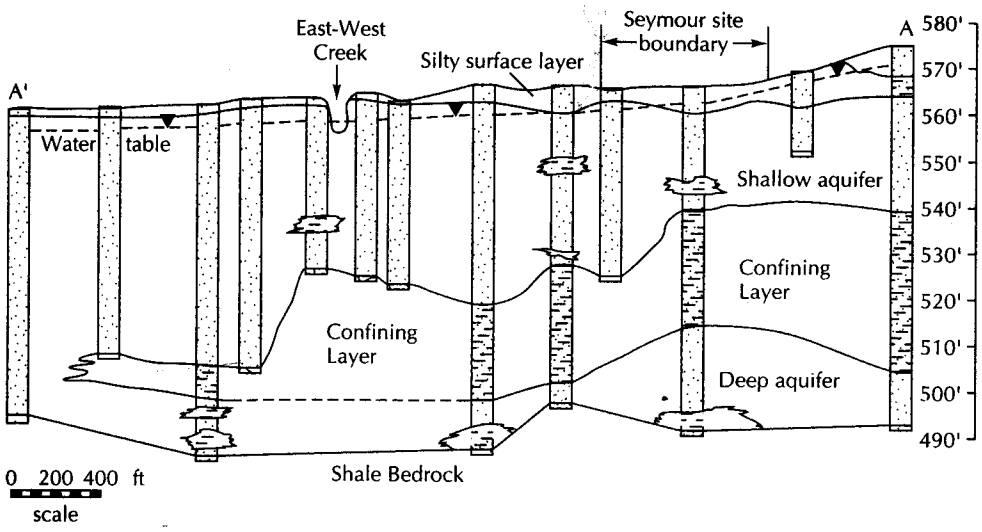
From 1983 through 1985 a remedial investigation was performed for the EPA to quantify the extent of contamination of soil and ground water. In 1986, a feasibility study was conducted to identify a practical method of remediating the contaminated soil and ground water. Following the completion of the feasibility study, the EPA negotiated with the owners of the companies that had sent hazardous wastes to the site in order to force them to effect a site cleanup at their expense. Following lengthy negotiations, a consent decree was signed in 1988 by the EPA and the responsible parties. The consent decree and the accompanying remedial action plan detailed the cleanup plan that was negotiated and that was to be implemented by the responsible parties. Actual construction of the remedial facilities was begun in 1988 and completed in late 1991.

10.9.2 Geology

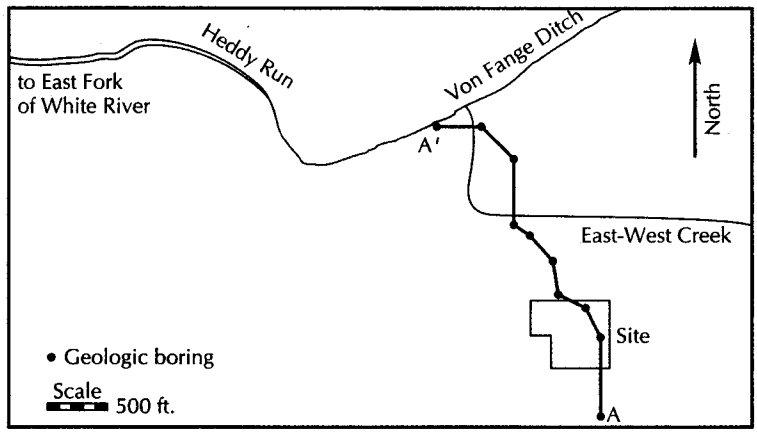
The Seymour Recycling Corporation hazardous waste site is located on a nearly level plain at the edge of a glacial sluiceway now occupied by the East Fork of the White River. There are about 70 to 80 ft (21 to 24 m) of unconsolidated glacial fluvial sediments overlying shale bedrock at the site. The shale is reported to have a very low hydraulic conductivity and is not considered to be an aquifer. No bedrock wells are located in the area. There are both private and public water-supply wells screened in sand and gravel horizons of the glacial-fluvial deposits. A deposit of sand and gravel overlies the bedrock or a basal clay. In the immediate vicinity of the site, this deep aquifer is overlain by a confining layer of silty clay. The confining layer is as much as 50 ft (15 m) thick south of the hazardous waste site and is continuous beneath the site. However, it thins to the north and disappears about 2000 ft (600 m) northwest of the site. Figure 10.25 shows the thickness of the confining layer at a number of boring locations. Overlying the confining layer at the hazardous waste site is a sandy outwash layer called the shallow aquifer. This aquifer is relatively thin, 8 ft (2.4 m), at the southern end of the study area, but it thickens to the north. Eventually the shallow aquifer and the deep aquifer merge where the confining layer thins and disappears. There is a surface deposit of dune sand and loess, which is from 6 to 10 ft (2 to 3 m) thick. This acts as a semiconfining layer for the underlying layers of outwash sand. Figure 10.26 is a geologic cross section that goes roughly southeast to northwest; the location of the cross section is in Figure 10.27.



▲ FIGURE 10.25
Thickness, in feet, of the confining layer as measured in borings in the vicinity of the Seymour Hazardous Waste Site.



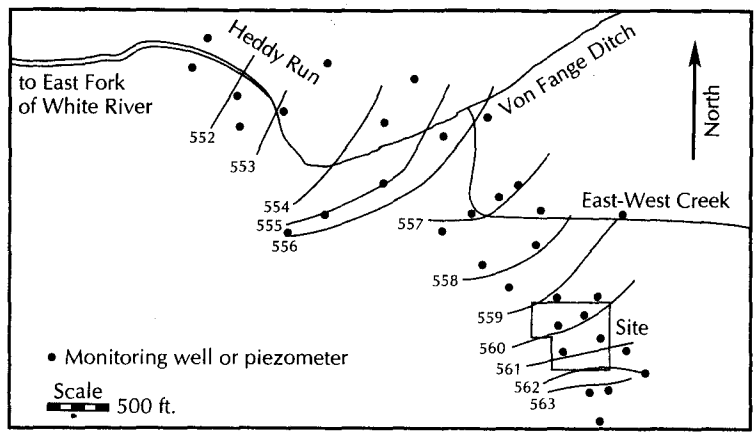
▲ FIGURE 10.26
Southeast to northwest geological cross section through the Seymour Recycling Corporation Hazardous Waste Site. The elevation scale on the right is in feet above mean sea level.



▲ FIGURE 10.27
Location of the geological cross section shown on Figure 10.26.

10.9.3 Hydrogeology

Ground water in the shallow aquifer is moving to the north beneath the site at a rate of about 400 ft (120 m) per year. Figure 10.28 is a water-table map of the site. There is a shallow stream, the East-West Creek, lying about 1000 ft (300 m) north of the site. During periods of high ground-water levels, the upper part of the shallow aquifer discharges in the East-West Creek. When ground-water levels fall, the East-West Creek dries up, and all the ground water flows north beneath it. The East-West Creek discharges in the Von Fange Ditch, which drains to Heddy Run, a tributary of the East Fork of the White River. Ground-water flow north of the East-West Creek follows the course of the Von Fange Ditch and Heddy Run by turning west and draining toward the East Fork of the White River.



▲ FIGURE 10.28
Elevation of the water table in the vicinity of the Seymour Recycling Corporation Hazardous Waste Site. Elevations are in feet above mean sea level.

In the part of the study area where the confining layer is present, the shallow aquifer and deep aquifer are hydraulically separated. The water table in the shallow aquifer is higher than the potentiometric surface of the deep aquifer, so there is downward leakage to the deep aquifer. Moreover, the deep aquifer beneath the site is flowing to the southeast, which is in the opposite direction of the flow in the shallow aquifer. Water levels in the deep aquifer are heavily influenced by pumping from an irrigation well located west of the site and high-capacity municipal supply wells located to the east.

10.9.4 Ground-Water Contamination

Three rounds of water-quality samples were collected from the monitoring wells in 1984 and 1985 as a part of the remedial investigation. A large number of hazardous organic compounds were found in the shallow aquifer beneath the site. Table 10.7 shows the maximum concentration of various organic compounds found in August 1984. The compounds that were quantified were on a list, the target organic compound list, that was used at most Superfund sites where the specific organic compounds that were present were unknown. A large number of tentatively identified compounds were not quantified.

Trans-1,2-dichloroethene had the highest concentration of any compound, as much as 240 mg/L. The water solubility of this compound is 600 mg/L at 20°C. With the concentration of a nonaqueous phase liquid at 40% of solubility, there is a possibility that pure phase product might be present in the aquifer. This is probably not the case at this site. First of all, no nonaqueous phase liquids were recovered from the monitoring wells. Moreover, in nested wells beneath the site the deeper wells within the shallow aquifer had lower concentrations than more shallow wells. If a dense nonaqueous phase liquid, such as trans-1,2-dichloroethene, were present in an aquifer, one would expect to find the product at the bottom of the aquifer, and hence the greatest dissolved concentrations at the bottom of the aquifer as well.

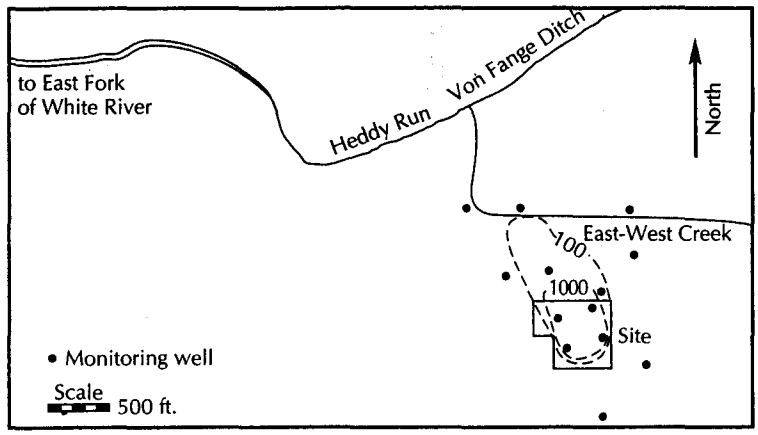
The source of the trans-1,2-dichloroethene is curious. Natural biodegradation of trichloroethene yields the cis isomer of 1,2-dichloroethene, not the trans. If one makes 1,2-dichloroethene chemically, one would get approximately equal amounts of cis and trans isomers. In such a case, one would find both the cis and the trans isomer in the ground water. It might be possible that the laboratory misidentified the cis isomer and reported it as trans; there is no other obvious explanation.

Table 10.7 Maximum concentrations in µg/L of target organic compounds in August 1984 at the Seymour Recycling Corporation hazardous waste site.

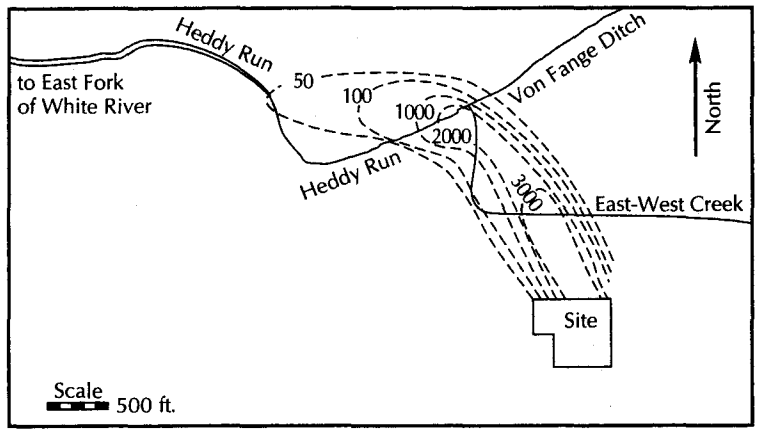
Semivolatile compounds	Maximum concentration µg/L	
2,4-dimethylphenol	780	
Phenol	4,800	
Benzoic acid	20,000	
2-methylphenol	190	
4-methylphenol	6,000	
bis(2-ethylhexyl)phthalate	17	
2-chlorophenol	10	K
Isophorone	120	
Benzyl alcohol	200	K
Pentachlorophenol	10	K
Benzo(a)anthracene	10	K
Chrysene	20	K
Napthalene	100	K
1,2-dichlorobenzene	100	K
Volatile compounds		
Chloroethane	14,000	
1,2-dichloroethane	3,200	
1,1,1-trichloroethane	93,000	
1,1,2-trichloroethane	2,300	
Tetrachloroethene	500	K
1,1-dichloroethene	2,600	
Trans-1,2-dichloroethene	240,000	
Trichloroethene	500	K
Chloroform	3,300	
Methylene chloride	32,000	
Vinyl chloride	19,000	
Acetone	37,000	
Benzene	9,700	
Ethylbenzene	500	K
Toluene	18,000	
2-butanone	31,000	
2-hexanone	9,800	
4-methyl-2-pentanone	12,000	
Total xylenes	500	K

K indicates a compound identified but at a concentration less than the indicated quantification limit

The extent of the plume of contamination in the shallow aquifer was based on the total of the hazardous organic compounds on the target organic list. As it turned out, one of the tentatively identified compounds was more mobile and less subject to natural biodegradation than any of the compounds on the target organic list. The reported extent of this compound, 1,4-dioxane, a cyclical ether, was contained within the target organic compound plume in December 1984 because there was a high analytical detection limit for the compound at that time. Figure 10.29 shows the extent of the 1,4-dioxane plume in December 1984.



▲ FIGURE 10.29
Extent of the 1,4-dioxane plume on December 1984. Concentrations in μg/L.



▲ FIGURE 10.30
Extent of the 1,4-dioxane plume in 1990. Concentrations in μg/L.

Because of pending litigation and settlement negotiations, no water-quality samples were collected between 1985 and 1988. In 1989, it was discovered that 1,4-dioxane and another mobile compound, tetrahydrofuran, had spread much farther than expected. New analytical methods lowered the detection limit for 1,4-dioxane from 100 μg/L to 0.1 μg/L. Figure 10.30 shows the known 1,4-dioxane plume in 1990.

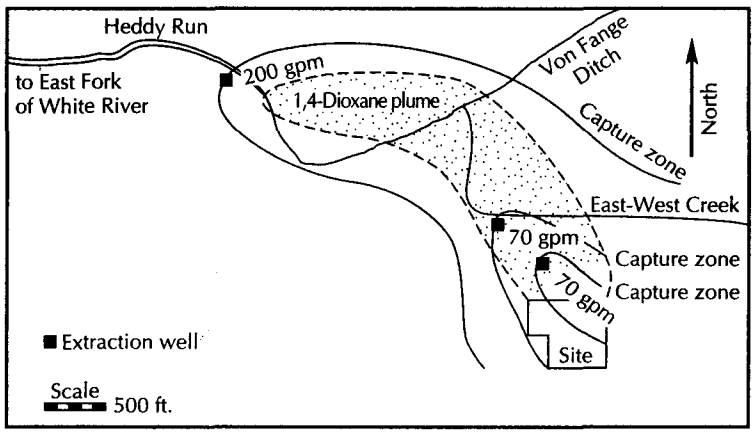
10.9.5 Site Remediation

Private water-supply wells were located to the north of the site in the shallow aquifer. As a part of the remedial effort at the site, public water supply was extended to the owners of these wells and the wells were sealed. Although this alleviated the immediate danger, the plume will eventually reach a point of surface-water discharge, and new wells could be installed in the future outside the area with public water. Therefore, an endangerment assessment recommended that the contaminated ground water be remediated.

The site-remediation plan involved several elements.

1. A plume-stabilization well was installed to prevent the further spread of the contamination. Unfortunately, the 1,4-dioxane plume was far past the area of influence of the plume-stabilization well by the time that it was built. However, the plume-stabilization well did capture the chlorinated organic plume, which was the basis for its design.
2. Nutrients, including nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium, were added to the soil at the site to promote the growth of soil microbes, which would biodegrade the residual organic compounds in the vadose zone.
3. A horizontal soil-vapor-extraction system was built to flush volatile organic compounds from the soil at the site.
4. Following the addition of the nutrients and the construction of the soil-vapor-extraction system, a multimedia cap was installed over the site to prevent the infiltration of rain water. This prevented any further release of organic compounds from the soil.
5. A ground-water extraction system was installed. The first extraction well, the plume-stabilization well, is located some 600 ft (180 m) down-gradient of the site. As the ground water travels over this distance, substantial biodegradation occurs. The only chlorinated organic found in the closest extraction well is chloroethane. This is one of the end products of the biodegradation of chloronated organics. Two more extraction wells are located along the axis of the contamination plume. Figure 10.31 shows the three extraction wells and their calculated ground-water capture zones. The overlapping capture zones are greater than the extent of the 1,4-dioxane plume. The extracted water is pretreated at the site by air stripping and carbon extraction before being sent to the Seymour Waste Water Treatment Plant.
6. The extraction well system will operate for a minimum of 12 y. It will continue until the water is cleaned to meet specific standards or until the pumping does not result in any further reduction in contamination. Air and ground-water monitoring will continue throughout the period of the remediation.

Total costs for remedial investigation, design, construction, and operation through 1992 were $25 million. An additional expenditure of $12 million is projected for operating expenses for the next 18 y.



▲ FIGURE 10.31
Location of extraction wells, with pumping rates in gallons per minute and corresponding capture zones.

References for this case study include: Nyer, Kramer, and Valkenburg (1991); Hauptman, Rumbaugh, and Valkenburg (1990); Kramer, Valkenburg, and Hauptman (1990); Fetter (1985, 1989, 1992); Miller and Valkenburg (1992); Walter et al. 1990; and Sghia-Hughes, Taddeo, and Fogel (1991).

10.10 Capture Zone Analysis

In the design of pump-and-treat ground-water remediation systems, it is necessary to compute the *capture zone* of the extraction well(s). A capture zone consists of the up-gradient and down-gradient areas that will drain into a pumping well. If the water table is perfectly flat, the capture zone will be circular and will correspond to the cone of depression. However, in most cases the water table is sloping, so the capture zone and the cone of depression will not correspond. The capture zone will be an elongated area that extends slightly down-gradient of the pumping well and extends in an up-gradient direction. Capture zones are controlled by the time that it takes for water to flow from an up-gradient area to the pumping well. If sufficient pumping time elapses, the capture zone will eventually extend up-gradient to the closest ground-water divide.

To protect the quality of water draining toward municipal supply wells, *well-head protection zones* are being defined in many communities. Land uses that may result in ground-water contamination are being regulated in the well-head protection zones, which commonly correspond to the recharge areas for well fields completed in unconfined aquifers. The capture zone of an extraction well is equivalent to a well-head protection zone of a water-supply well.

Figure 10.32A shows a cross section of an unconfined aquifer with a sloping water table. The cone of depression of the pumping well will reverse the hydraulic gradient for a short distance down-gradient of the well. Thus, the capture zone extends for a short distance down-gradient of the well. The entire capture zone is surrounded by a ground-water divide. Outside the divide, flow will pass by the well, whereas inside the divide, the flow will be drawn into the well. This is illustrated in Figure 10.32B.

The equation to describe the edge of the capture zone for a confined aquifer when steady-state conditions have been reached is (Todd 1980; Grubb 1993):

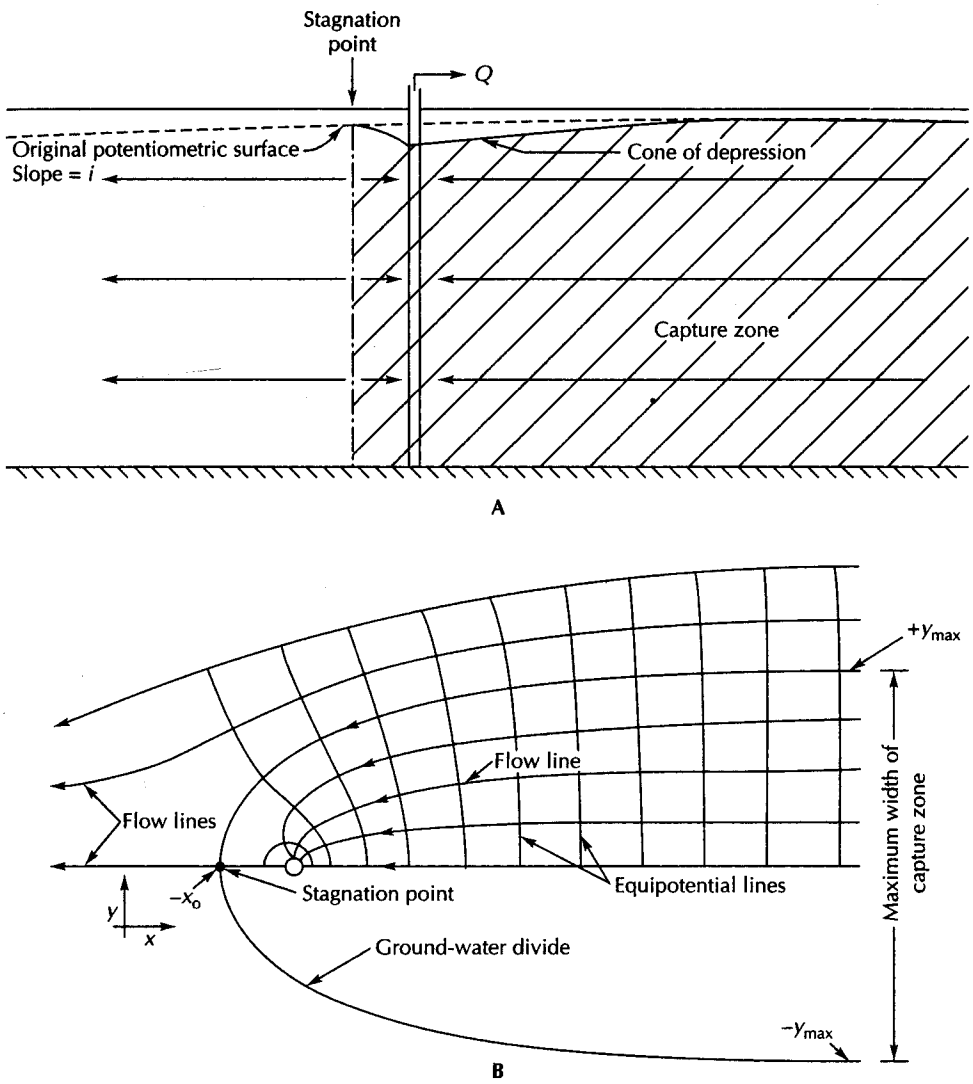
$$x = \frac{-y}{\tan(2\pi Kbiy/Q)} \tag{10.16}$$

where

x and y	are directions defined on Figure 10.32
Q	is the pumping rate (L^3/T; ft^3/day or m^3/day)
K	is the hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/day or m/day)
b	is the initial saturated thickness of the aquifer (L; ft or m)
i	is the hydraulic gradient of the flow field in the absence of the pumping well (dimensionless)
$\tan(y)$	is in radians

There are two bounding solutions to Equation 10.16 that do not follow directly from the preceding form of the equation.

1. The distance from the pumping well downstream to the stagnation point that marks the end of the capture zone is given by



▲ FIGURE 10.32
Capture zone of a well pumping from an aquifer with a uniform hydraulic gradient.
A. Cross-sectional view. **B.** Top view of equipotential field.

$$x_0 = -Q/(2\pi Kbi) \tag{10.17}$$

where x_0 is the distance from the pumping well to the down-gradient edge of the capture zone (L; ft or m).

2. The maximum width of the capture zone as x approaches infinity is given by

$$y_{max} = \pm Q/(2Kbi) \tag{10.18}$$

where y_{max} is the half-width of the capture zone as x approaches infinity.

Equations 10.16 through 10.18 are applicable to confined aquifers. To plot the shape of the capture zone, first use Equation 10.18 to find the maximum width of the capture zone. Once the value of y_{max} is known, substitute smaller values of y into Equation 10.16 to find

the position of the capture zone. Finally, use Equation 10.17 to find the stagnation point where $y = 0$.

Grubb (1993) gave a solution for a capture zone in an unconfined aquifer. In this case one needs to know the head at two wells along the axis of the ground-water-flow direction. Let h_1 be the up-gradient head and h_2 be the down-gradient head, with L the distance between the two monitoring wells. In this case, the shape of the capture zone is given by

$$x = \frac{-y}{\tan\left[\pi K(h_1^2 - h_2^2)y/QL\right]} \tag{10.19}$$

where

x and y	are directions defined in Figure 10.32
Q	is the pumping rate (L^3/T; ft^3/day or m^3/day)
K	is the hydraulic conductivity (L/T; ft/day or m/day)
tan(y)	is in radians

The maximum width of the capture zone as x approaches infinity is given by

$$y_{max} = \pm \frac{QL}{K(h_1^2 - h_2^2)} \tag{10.20}$$

The position of the stagnation point where $y = 0$—that is, the down-gradient end of the capture zone—is given by

$$x_0 = \frac{-QL}{\pi K(h_1^2 - h_2^2)} \tag{10.21}$$

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Compute the capture zone of an interceptor well pumping at a rate of 190,000 ft^3/day from a confined aquifer with a hydraulic conductivity of 1500 ft/day, an original hydraulic gradient of 0.00300, and a saturated thickness of 75.0 ft.

Part A: Find the maximum width of the capture zone.

$$y_{max} = \pm \frac{Q}{2bKi}$$

$$= \pm \frac{190{,}000 \text{ ft}^3/\text{day}}{2 \times 75.0 \text{ ft} \times 1500 \text{ ft/day} \times 0.00300}$$

$$= \pm 281 \text{ ft}$$

Part B: Find the distance to the stagnation point.

$$x_0 = -\frac{Q}{2\pi Kbi}$$

$$= -\frac{190{,}000 \text{ ft}^3/\text{day}}{2 \times \pi \times 1500 \text{ ft/day} \times 75.0 \text{ ft} \times 0.00300}$$

$$= -89.6$$

Part C: Find the shape of the curve describing the capture zone. The following values are for one-half of the capture zone, which is symmetrical about the x-axis.

$$x = \frac{-y}{\tan\left(\frac{2\pi Kbiy}{Q}\right)}$$

$$= \frac{-y}{\tan\left(\frac{2 \times \pi \times 1500\ \text{ft/day} \times 75.0\ \text{ft} \times 0.00300 \times y}{190{,}000\ \text{ft}^3\text{/day}}\right)}$$

$$= -\frac{y}{\tan(0.0112y)}$$

Remember that the tangent must be in radians.

y	x
250 ft	682 ft
200 ft	156 ft
175 ft	70.3 ft
150 ft	15.5 ft
140 ft	−1.2 ft
130 ft	−15.7 ft
100 ft	−48.9 ft
70 ft	−70.6 ft
30 ft	−86.2 ft
10 ft	−89.2 ft
1 ft	−89.6 ft

Notation

a_L	Dynamic dispersivity
b	Saturated thickness of an aquifer
C	Solute concentration
C^*	Amount of solute sorbed per unit dry mass of soil
C_0	Initial solute concentration
D	Diffusion coefficient
D_L	Longitudinal coefficient of hydrodynamic dispersion
D^*	Effective diffusion coefficient
dC/dx	Concentration gradient
dh/dl	Hydraulic gradient
F	Mass solute flux
i	Hydraulic gradient
j	Adsorption isotherm coefficient
K	Hydraulic conductivity
K_d	Distribution coefficient
K_{oc}	Octanol-water partition coefficient
K_f	Adsorption isotherm coefficient
L	Length of flow path
n_e	Effective porosity
Q	Pumping rate
t	Time
v_c	Solute front velocity, where $C/C_0 = 0.5$
v_x	Average linear ground-water velocity
w	Diffusion coefficient factor related to tortuosity
x_0	Down-gradient distance from pumping well to edge of capture zone
y_{max}	Maximum half-width of the capture zone
β_1	Adsorption isotherm coefficient
β_2	Adsorption isotherm coefficient
ρ_b	Dry bulk mass density
θ	Volumetric moisture content

Analysis

A. Go to the Superfund section of the U.S. EPA web page, *http://www.epa.gov/superfund.* Find a fact sheet on a superfund site in your home state.

1. What is the name of the site?
2. Where is it located?
3. What are the contaminants of concern at this site?
4. What was the source of the contamination?
5. What remediation method is being used?
6. What is the status of the site?

B. Go to the Drinking Water Standards section of the U.S. EPA website, *http://www.epa.gov/OGWDW/wot/appa.html.*

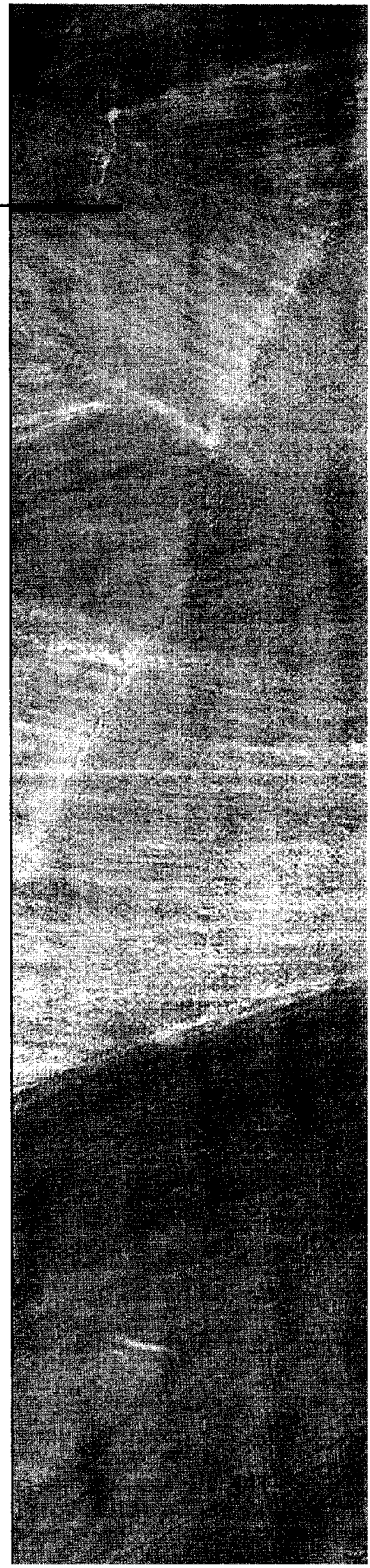
1. Print out the Federal Drinking Water Standards. Keep it with your book. This is Table 10.2 of *Applied Hydrogeology,* fourth edition.
2. Pick out one inorganic and one organic chemical and one radionuclide. List the name, MCLG, MCL, potential health effects, and sources of contamination for each.

C. Write an Excel program to compute the position of a diffused solute front for one-dimensional mass transport following the example problem in Section 10.6.5.

Problems

1. A saline solution with a concentration of 1823 mg/L is introduced into a 2-m-long sand column in which the pores are initially filled with distilled water. If the solution drains through the column at an average linear velocity of 1.43 m/day and the dynamic dispersivity of the sand column is 15 cm, what would the concentration of the effluent be 0.7 day after flow begins?
2. Given the flow situation in Problem 1, what would the effluent concentration be 1.1 days after flow begins?
3. A landfill is leaking an effluent with a concentration of sodium of 1250 mg/L. It seeps into an aquifer with a hydraulic conductivity of 9.8 m/day, a gradient of 0.0040, and an effective porosity of 0.15. A down-gradient monitoring well is located 25 m from the landfill. What would the sodium concentration be in this monitoring well 300 days after the leak begins? *Note:* In this problem you will need to find $\text{erfc}(-x)$, which is equal to $1 + \text{erf}(x)$.
4. What would the concentration of sodium be at the same time at a monitoring well located 37 m down-gradient of the leaking landfill?
5. What is the relative velocity of a solute front of a solute-soil system with a distribution coefficient of 83 mL/g, a dry bulk density of 2.12 gm/cm^3, and a volumetric water content of 0.26?
6. What is the relative velocity of a solute front of a solute-soil system with a distribution coefficient of 3.9 mL/g, a dry bulk density of 1.88 gm/cm^3, and a volumetric water content of 0.20?
7. A capture well is pumping at a rate of 37,000 ft^3/day from a confined aquifer with a hydraulic conductivity of 920 ft/d, an initial hydraulic gradient of 0.0027, and an initial saturated thickness of 40 ft.
   (A) What is the maximum width of the capture zone?
   (B) What is the distance from the well to the stagnation point?
8. A capture well is pumping at a rate of 2500 m^3/day from a confined aquifer with a hydraulic conductivity of 1425 m/day, an initial hydraulic gradient of 0.00076, and a saturated thickness of 31 m.
   (A) What is the maximum width of the capture zone?
   (B) What is the distance from the well to the stagnation point?

CHAPTER 11



Ground-Water Development and Management

I approach now an account of the experiments that I carried out at Dijon together with Engineer Charles Ritter, to determine the laws of flow of water through sand. . . . Each experiment consisted of establishing a specified pressure in the upper chamber of the column by adjustment of the inflow tap; then, when it was established by means of two observations that the flow had become essentially uniform, the outflow from the filter during a certain time was noted, and the mean outflow per minute was calculated from it.

Les fontaines publiques de la ville de Dijon, Henry Darcy, 1856

11.1 Introduction

The area of water resources development and management is so broad that we will make no attempt to cover all aspects in this book. Instead we will focus on ground water, since it is this aspect of the general topic to which hydrogeology most closely relates. However, as ground water is not isolated from surface water, a study of ground-water development necessarily encompasses many aspects of surface-water flow.

Surface water occurs in readily discernible drainage basins. The boundaries are topographic and may be easily delineated on a topographic map. The water conveniently flows in the direction in which the land surface is sloping. Moreover, surface water does not cross topographic divides (except, perhaps, during floods) and the locations of the drainage divides are fixed. Ground water, on the other hand, occurs in aquifers that are hidden from view. The boundaries of an aquifer are physical: it can crop out, abut an impermeable rock unit, grade into a lower-permeability deposit, or thin

and disappear. At a given location, the land surface may be underlain by several aquifers. Each aquifer may have different chemical makeup and different hydraulic potential; each may be recharged in a different location and flow in a different direction. Moreover, ground-water divides do not necessarily coincide with surface-water divides. Clearly, the development and management of ground water is more complicated than that of surface water, simply on the basis of the mode of occurrence.

11.2 Dynamic Equilibrium in Natural Aquifers

Under natural conditions, an aquifer is usually in a state of *dynamic equilibrium* (Theis 1938). A volume of water recharges the aquifer and an equal volume is discharged. The potentiometric surface is steady and the amount of water in storage in the aquifer is a constant. The aquifer transmits the water from the recharge areas to the discharge zones. The maximum amount of water any section of the aquifer can transmit is a function of the transmissivity and the maximum gradient of the potentiometric surface. If the water table is close to the surface of an unconfined aquifer, the aquifer is full and is transmitting the maximum amount of water. If, however, the water table is far below the surface, the aquifer is not transmitting water at full capacity.

The amount of water that recharges an unconfined aquifer is determined by three factors: (1) the amount of precipitation that is not lost by evapotranspiration and runoff and is thus available for recharge; (2) the vertical hydraulic conductivity of surficial deposits and other strata in the recharge area of the aquifer, which determines the volume of recharged water capable of moving downward to the aquifer; and (3) the transmissivity of the aquifer and potentiometric gradient, which determine how much water can move away from the recharge area. Should an aquifer be transmitting the maximum volume of water, it is more than likely that some potential recharge is being rejected in the recharge area. This is often the case in humid areas. Should the water table be low, indicating that the aquifer is not flowing at full capacity, there is probably either a lack of potential recharge or low vertical hydraulic conductivity in the recharge area, retarding downward movement. Aquifers in arid regions typically have deep water tables in the recharge areas, indicating a deficiency in the amount of potential recharge.

Recharge to confined aquifers can occur in places in which the confining layer is absent. Under such conditions, the three factors affecting unconfined aquifer recharge are controlling. If there is a hydraulic gradient across a leaky confining layer in a direction that promotes flow into the aquifer, then recharge can occur across the confining layer. In this case, the vertical hydraulic conductivity of the confining layer, the thickness of the confining layer, and the head difference across it control the amount of recharge. Recharge to a confined aquifer may come from both downflow from a higher aquifer or upflow from a lower aquifer.

When a well begins to pump water from an aquifer, the water is withdrawn from storage around the well and from vertical leakage (Theis 1938). As the cone of depression grows, an increasingly larger portion of the aquifer will be contributing water from storage. The amount of water discharging naturally from the aquifer will remain at the predevelopment rate until the pumping cone reaches the recharge or discharge area. When the pumping cone reaches a discharge area, the potentiometric gradient toward the discharge area is lowered and the amount of natural discharge proportionally reduced. If the pumping cone reaches the recharge area of an aquifer, it may induce additional recharge of water that was previously rejected. It is even possible for a section of the aquifer to change from a discharge area to a recharge area. For example, drawdown near a river may eliminate ground-water discharge to the river and induce infiltration from the river into the aquifer, reversing the prior direction of flow.

In any event, the pumping cone will continue to grow until it has sufficiently reduced natural discharge or increased recharge to balance the volume of water removed by pump-

ing. With this occurrence, a new condition of dynamic equilibrium is reached (Theis 1938). However, it is important to note that in order for this to happen a pumping cone must form. This means the potentiometric surface in parts of the aquifer must be lowered. The resultant cone of depression is usually a complex surface resulting from the withdrawals of hundreds of wells. Should the sum of the remaining natural discharge and the pumping withdrawals exceed the available recharge, the cone of depression will not stabilize and water levels will continue to fall.

The rate at which the cone of depression spreads is inversely proportional to the storativity of a confined aquifer or the specific yield of a water-table aquifer. As storativity values are 100 to 1000 times smaller than specific yields, the cone of depression will spread 100 to 1000 times faster in an artesian aquifer than in a water-table aquifer. It can take many years for the cone of depression to influence recharge or discharge areas sufficiently for an aquifer to regain dynamic equilibrium.

Case Study: Deep Sandstone Aquifer of Northeastern Illinois

The deep sandstone aquifer beneath northeastern Illinois is confined by the Maquoketa Shale, a leaky layer. It has an outcrop area that receives direct recharge west of the limit of the shale. Under predevelopment conditions, the potentiometric surface stood at or above land level and had a very gentle slope toward Lake Michigan of about 3×10^{-4} ft/ft. Flow through the aquifer from the recharge area was about 0.9 million gallons (3400 m^3) per day (Suter et al. 1959). Natural discharge was by slow upward leakage through the shale into Silurian limestone beneath Lake Michigan. Most of the ground-water recharge in the recharge area of the regional aquifer was circulating in local flow systems. It could not move as a part of regional flow owing to the low carrying capacity of the aquifer caused by the gentle slope of the potentiometric surface. As ground-water development began, the well discharge soon exceeded the natural discharge and the pumping cone rapidly grew. As the hydraulic gradient steepened, increasingly greater amounts of water were drawn into the regional flow system. By 1958, an estimated 19 million gallons (72,000 m^3) per day were moving into the pumping cone (Suter et al. 1959). At that time, pumpage from the aquifer was 43 million gallons (163,000 m^3) per day. The difference between pumpage and recharge was coming from storage as the cone of depression grew. By 1975, ground-water pumpage was 150 million gallons (568,000 m^3) per day, and the hydraulic gradient was 4 $\times 10^{-3}$ ft/ft, with water levels falling several feet per year.

If pumpage from the deep sandstone aquifer in the Chicago region had been limited to 46 million gallons (174,000 m^3) per day, the cone of depression would have eventually stabilized. The period to reach a stable configuration would have been about 50 y from the time pumpage first reached 46 million gallons (174,000 m^3) per day (Fetter & Young 1978; Young 1976). However, so long as the rate of deep-well pumpage exceeds 46 million gallons per day, the cone of depression will continue to grow (Sasman et al. 1977).

11.3 Ground-Water Budgets

Some knowledge of the amount of natural recharge to an aquifer is mandatory in a ground-water development program. Several methods are available to make such an estimate. In Section 2.12, we described a method for estimating annual ground-water recharge from baseflow-recession curves. This method is useful for areas in which the ground watershed and the river basin coincide.

A second method is to determine the flow in the aquifer across a vertical plane at the boundary of the recharge area and the discharge area (Walton 1960). If there is sufficient knowledge of the potential field of the aquifer, the area(s) of recharge and discharge can be determined. The rate of steady flow from recharge areas to discharge areas is determined using either Darcy's law for a confined aquifer or the Dupuit equation for an unconfined aquifer. The flow from the recharge areas is equal to the rate of recharge for aquifers in dynamic equilibrium.

A **water budget** for the recharge area of an aquifer is a very useful means of determining ground-water recharge. An advantage of the water-budget method is that the aquifer does not have to be in dynamic equilibrium to use it. Many of the parameters used for a hydrologic budget are measured directly: precipitation, streamflow, transported water, and reservoir evaporation. Ground-water inflow, outflow, and change in storage are computed from the hydraulic aquifer characteristics and measured potentiometric data. The amount of evapotranspiration could be measured in lysimeters, but it is more typically computed using an appropriate formula such as the Thornthwaite method (Section 2.3). Basinwide evapotranspiration may also be determined by a water-budget analysis as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Evapotranspiration} = {} & (\text{precipitation} + \text{surface-water inflow} \\ & + \text{imported water} + \text{ground-water inflow}) \\ & - (\text{surface-water outflow} + \text{ground-water outflow} + \text{reservoir} \\ & \quad \text{evaporation} + \text{exported water}) \\ & \pm \text{changes in surface-water storage} \\ & \pm \text{changes in ground-water storage}\end{aligned} \tag{11.1}$$

The natural recharge to an undeveloped aquifer may be determined by a water-budget analysis of the recharge area:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Ground-water recharge} = {} & (\text{precipitation} + \text{surface-water inflow} \\ & + \text{imported water} + \text{ground-water inflow}) \\ & - (\text{evapotranspiration} + \text{reservoir evaporation} \\ & \quad + \text{surface-water outflow} \\ & + \text{exported water} + \text{ground-water outflow}) \\ & \pm \text{changes in surface-water storage}\end{aligned} \tag{11.2A}$$

Equation 11.2A can account for ground-water recharge not only from precipitation, but also from losing streams, irrigation water, unlined canals, and so forth. Its usefulness may be limited, however, if evapotranspiration cannot be determined. Detailed knowledge of all factors is necessary if the computation of recharge is to be accurate.

If the land surface of the recharge area is developed for agriculture, industry, urban growth, and so forth, then additional computations of recharge may be necessary. Water used for many purposes may be recharged to the ground-water reservoir. Excess irrigation water is one example. On Long Island, New York, all ground water pumped for cooling or air conditioning must be returned to the aquifer from which it was removed. Water used for domestic purposes is often recharged by septic tank drain fields or cesspools. The increasing emphasis on the use of land systems* for municipal wastewater treatment means that treated sewage effluent that formerly flowed into rivers may now be recharging aquifer systems. The amount of recharge from such sources can be determined by a supplemental water-budget analysis:

---

*Land systems of treatment include, among other techniques, spraying wastewater as irrigation water, recharging it through seepage basins, and allowing it to flow across the land surface. Biological, chemical, and physical processes act to reduce pollutant concentrations.

$$\text{Additional ground-water recharge} = (\text{industrial use} + \text{municipal use} + \text{domestic use} + \text{irrigation use}) - (\text{cooling-water evaporation} + \text{irrigation-water evapotranspiration} + \text{water exported in products} + \text{sewage discharge into surface waters}) \quad \textbf{(11.2B)}$$

The determination of the additional ground-water recharge is often more complicated than an analysis of the basic amount of recharge. Water-use records of dozens or hundreds of individual water users and sewage dischargers must be collected. These records may range from excellent to nonexistent. Many of the factors must be estimated. For example, the owners of private wells for home use will almost never know how much water they pump. An accurate accounting of this type involves long and tedious inventory analysis.

Should an attempt be made to balance the additions to the water supply of an area with the depletions, the result should be accurate to within the accuracy of measurement or estimation of the various parameters. Each parameter will have an accuracy of estimation dependent upon how precisely the measurement can be made. Measurement of streamflow might be accurate to ±5% for a good measurement. If total streamflow is 30 ft^3/s, then there is a variability of 30 $ft^3/s \times 0.05$, or ±1.5 ft^3/s. The overall accuracy of the estimate can be determined by taking a weighted average of the individual variability.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A water-budget analysis of a watershed indicates an estimated total outflow of 90 ft^3/s. The accuracy of estimation of each of the individual components is known. What is the accuracy of the estimate of the total discharge?

Factor	Estimated Flow (ft^3/s)	Accuracy of Estimate (%)	Variability of Factor (ft^3/s)
Evapotranspiration	60	±25	±15
Surface outflow	20	± 5	± 1
Ground-water outflow	5	±10	± 0.5
Exported water in canal	5	± 2	± 0.1
TOTAL	90		±16.6

The sum of the variability of each factor is ±16.6 ft^3/s; therefore, the accuracy of the total flow is 16.6/90 or ±18%

The amount of water available for use from an aquifer is not the natural recharge. It is the increase in recharge or leakage from adjacent strata induced by development, combined with the reduction in discharge. As water levels fall to accommodate the development, there will also be some water available from storage. A water-budget analysis is helpful in determining the amount of natural recharge and discharge. Further hydrologic analysis is then necessary to evaluate the effects that pumping will have on these figures.

11.4 Management Potential of Aquifers

Aquifers can play many roles in the overall development of the water resources of an area. Some of the functions have been recognized for many years; others have been recognized only recently. The most obvious use of an aquifer is to supply water to wells—the *supply*

function. One of the more vexing problems in ground-water management has been to determine how much water an aquifer can supply. This problem will be discussed in Section 11.5.

Aquifers also transmit water from one location to another. This has been called a *pipeline function* (Kazmann 1956). Many communities are dependent upon ground-water sources that are recharged elsewhere. In this case, the aquifer acts as an aqueduct. However, when the user community does not have zoning and land-use control, as, for example, when the aquifer is transmitting water some distance, there may be difficulty in protecting the recharge area of the aquifer from overdevelopment or contamination* (Hordon 1977). Aquifers are not as efficient in carrying large volumes of water as are surface canals. However, surface canals can lose large amounts of water by evaporation; furthermore, they require capital for construction.

Ground water can be mined in the same manner as minerals. Whenever ground water is withdrawn at a rate greater than the rate of replenishment, mining is occurring. Under these conditions the water in storage in the aquifer must be considered a nonrenewable resource. This is the *mining function* of an aquifer.

In some aquifers, the rate of replenishment is so low that it is almost nonexistent. For example, the average annual recharge to the Ogallala aquifer of the southern High Plains of New Mexico and Texas is 1.5 in. (3.8 cm) per year (Brutsaert, Gross, & McGehee 1975). Based on the average rate of withdrawal for the 1951 to 1960 period, the ground-water mine will be exhausted in 100 y. That pumping rate is 28 times the natural recharge. Property owners of land in the High Plains are permitted an income-tax depletion allowance to compensate for the loss of property value due to a falling water table (Sellers 1973).

The unsaturated zone overlying an aquifer can act as a waste-treatment system. This has been called the *"filter-plant" function* of aquifers (Hordon 1977). However, the unsaturated zone can do much more than act as a physical filter to remove bacteria and viruses. It is also effective in removing phosphorus and heavy metals (Fetter 1977a). Passage of water through the saturated zone can also improve the quality. Degradation of native water quality can occur if the treatment potential of soil systems is exceeded.

Ground water can also have an *energy-source function.* The ground-water heat pump is a viable alternative to conventional heat pumps in some localities (Gass and Lehr 1977). As the thermal energy of the aquifer is removed by a heat pump in colder climates, it is another type of mining. In Wisconsin, the thermal impact is very small (Andrews 1978). In states farther south, where heating and air-conditioning demands are more equal, the net impact on ground-water temperatures is even less.

Ground-water reservoirs sometimes also have a *storage function.* This is not true for an undeveloped aquifer in dynamic equilibrium if the recharge zone is rejecting potential recharge. However, if the ground-water reservoir has unused storage capacity, it can effectively store water from wet periods for use during time of drought (Ambroggi 1977; Greydanus 1978; Lehr 1978; Thomas 1978). Aquifers with available storage capacity may be either those that are not filled by the natural recharge to them or those in which the potentiometric surface has been lowered by pumping. Water put into storage could be from natural sources, especially extreme precipitation or flood events (Ambroggi 1977). Treated wastewater effluent can be used to replenish aquifers (Fetter & Holzmacher 1974).

When ground water stored in aquifers can be used to replace surface-water reservoirs, a number of benefits accrue (Helweg 1978). The expense of surface-water reservoirs is circumvented, as there are no capital costs involved. There are no evaporative losses from ground-water storage, nor are there any infiltration losses. Surface-water reservoirs some-

*The 1986 Safe Drinking Water Act in the United States enables communities to establish ground-water protection zones around well fields.

times create great ecological disruption with the destruction of riverine and floodplain environments. Productive farmland may also be lost beneath surface reservoirs. Such disruption may be avoided with ground-water storage; furthermore, there is no worry over dam safety. On the other side of the coin, a person cannot waterski in a ground-water reservoir!

Aquifers are also used for the storage of natural gas. The aquifer must be confined, and a structural or stratigraphic feature, such as an anticline, is required to hold the gas in place. Wells are drilled through the structure and the gas is pumped into the aquifer under pressure. It displaces water and forms a bubble in the aquifer. Fresh water could also be stored in salt-water aquifers, as the former is less dense and would float as a bubble in the saline water.

11.5 Paradox of Safe Yield

It is a natural inclination of scientists to compare and classify phenomena in quantitative terms. Thus, it is to be expected that hydrogeologists have attempted to define the amount of water that could be developed from a ground-water reservoir. The term **safe yield** was apparently used in this regard as early as 1915 (Lee 1915). At that time, safe yield was regarded as the amount of water that could be pumped "regularly and permanently without dangerous depletion of the storage reserve." Later, other necessary factors were added, such as economics of ground-water development (Meinzer 1923b), protection of the quality of the existing store of ground water (Conkling 1946), and protection of existing legal rights and potential environmental degradation (Banks 1953). Synonyms for safe yield appear in the literature, including "potential sustained yield" (Fetter 1972a), "permissive sustained yield" (American Society of Civil Engineers 1961), and "maximum basin yield" (Freeze 1971). A composite definition, based on the ideas of many authors, could be expressed as follows: Safe yield is the amount of naturally occurring ground water that can be withdrawn from an aquifer on a sustained basis, economically and legally, without impairing the native ground-water quality or creating an undesirable effect such as environmental damage.

The concept of ground-water withdrawals causing environmental damage warrants more than a mention. Many surface-water systems are dependent upon natural ground-water discharge. It has been shown by model studies that ground-water development may reduce streamflow and, as a consequence, lower lake levels and dry wetlands (Collins 1972). As these may be environmentally sensitive areas, the danger of environmental harm is real. Likewise, ground-water withdrawals have been linked to subsidence of the land surface (Bouwer 1977). This has resulted in land-surface cracking and damage to structures, highways, pipelines, dams, and tunnels. The gradients of irrigation canals have been changed—even reversed—and low areas have become flooded by seawater. In a broader sense, environmental impacts include ecological, economical, social, cultural, and political values (Fetter 1977b).

Many authorities are uneasy with the concept of safe yield. For some, the term is too vague (Thomas 1951). Obviously, the amount of ground water that can be produced will vary under varied patterns of pumping and development. In addition, the question of what would constitute an undesirable result to be avoided is open to debate (Anderson & Berkebile 1977). The abandonment of the term *safe yield* has been proposed on the grounds that it does not take into account the interrelationship of ground water and surface water and may preclude the development of the storage functions of an aquifer (Kazmann 1956).

However, in spite of the reservations of many hydrogeologists with regard to the concept of safe yield and its implications, the basic concept must be applied whenever the use of an aquifer is planned and managed. Ground-water management programs obviously imply that water must be pumped from the ground (Peters 1972). If there is no evaluation

of the hydrologic and environmental impacts of various withdrawal programs, it is possible that uncontrolled withdrawals will exceed prudent levels.

A single value for the safe yield of an aquifer cannot be provided in the same sense as a quantity such as mean annual precipitation. Safe-yield values are based on a number of constraints; such values must be determined by a team of professionals, in the same manner that an environmental impact statement is prepared. Economists, engineers, engineering geologists, plant and wildlife ecologists, and lawyers might all participate with the hydrogeologist in preparing a safe-yield determination for an aquifer or a ground-water basin. The safe-yield evaluation should include a statement of the legal and economic constraints that were considered, as well as the limiting values of environmental damage that were considered. Indeed, such a study should provide a series of safe-yield values and the different factors that applied to each determination. This is obviously not a simple matter. Computer models of ground-water flow systems are ideal tools for estimating the series of values. All hydraulic factors can be evaluated. Freeze (1971) has shown how a computer model can compute a "maximum basin yield."

The safe yield of an aquifer system is only one facet of a ground-water management program. Artificial augmentation of precipitation or recharge could increase the amount of water that can be withdrawn on a sustained basis. The use of ground-water reservoirs for cyclic storage means that in drought years it is necessary, and desirable, to pump water on a temporary basis far in excess of the safe yield. Under these conditions, the ground-water supply would replace surface-water supplies that might be critically low or be used to irrigate crops normally watered by rainfall. In wet years, the ground-water reservoir would be replenished by above-average recharge and pumping at rates below the safe yield.

No matter how many papers are published on the concept of safe yield and its inherent complexity, misunderstandings seem to persist. Theis (1940) emphatically stated that the safe yield of a ground-water basin was not the long-term recharge to the ground water. In 1938, in his paper on dynamic equilibrium, Theis clearly demonstrated that under natural conditions, recharge was equal to discharge and that any artificial discharge via wells would result in disequilibrium in the system.

Sophocleous (1997) wrote the following in an editorial in *Ground Water:*

> "Despite being repeatedly discredited in the literature, safe yield continues to be used as the basis of state and local water-management policies, leading to continued ground-water depletion, stream dewatering and loss of wetland and riparian ecosystems. Traditionally 'safe yield' has been defined as the attainment and maintenance of a long-term balance between the amount of water withdrawn annually and the annual amount of recharge. . . . Unfortunately, this concept of safe yield ignores discharge from the system."

Thus, more than a half century after Theis's seminal paper on dynamic equilibrium in aquifer systems, practicing hydrogeologists are still not recognizing that ground-water development potential in aquifers is limited to something less than the long-term annual recharge because of natural system discharge.

One aspect of the Theis concept of dynamic equilibrium is that under undeveloped conditions aquifers may reject natural recharge and that development of the aquifer could increase the amount of recharge. This might occur by leakage from adjacent aquifers, but it is unlikely that lowered water tables will significantly increase the amount of precipitation that recharges an aquifer. Moreover, from a management potential, it is difficult, if not impossible, to quantify how much additional recharge might be induced by ground-water basin development.

Bredehoeft (1997) points out that what we are doing in developing a ground-water resource is capturing part of the natural discharge of the system. Thus, the important factor in determining the safe yield of a ground-water system is determining how much of the

natural discharge can be captured. Thus, a basic principle of ground-water development is that by withdrawing water from an aquifer, some of the natural discharge may be made available for use (Peters 1972). Safe-yield studies need to focus on the discharge from the system, not the recharge to the system. Technical, environmental, legal, and economic constraints may limit how much of the natural discharge can be utilized.

11.6 Water Law

11.6.1 Legal Concepts

The development and management of water resources must take place within a framework of legal obligations, rights, and constraints. Naturally these factors differ from country to country; even in the United States, each individual state has its own body of water law. Because of this, it is not possible to fully discuss all water laws that might be applicable to a particular situation. However, we will look at some general principles.

There are two basic aspects of the legal framework: common law and legislative law (Tank 1983). *Common laws* are the traditional legal precepts laid down by court decisions. They are based primarily on precedent, but can be overturned by later courts if it is believed that societal needs have changed. In the United States, common law derives its legitimacy from the U.S. Constitution and the constitutions of the various states. The final arbitrator of common law is either the highest court in a state or the U.S. Supreme Court, depending upon whether an action is brought in state court or federal court.

Legislative law has two arms: *statutory law* and *administrative law.* Congress or state legislatures may pass laws that regulate water, thus creating statutory law when signed by the president or the governor. In addition, legislative bodies may enable their administrative bodies to write rules and regulations that have the power of law, thus creating administrative law.

Water law has traditionally been concerned with the quantity of water available. In this regard, a complex body of common law has risen. In recent years there has been a trend for legislation to be written to allocate water, especially in areas where it is scarce, rather than to rely upon common law. Society is acting to remedy what the majority sees as inadequacies and inequities in the common law.

The concept of protecting the quality of the water is relatively recent. Most common law has arisen with respect to water quantity. Water-quality issues that have been addressed under common law have generally been ones of some specific episode of pollution in which one or more of several common law theories (e.g., trespass, negligence, private nuisance, public nuisance, or strict liability) have been applied. Legislative law that addresses the issue of water quality has been passed at the federal, state, and local levels.

11.6.2 Laws Regulating Quantity of Surface Water

A **water right,** as defined by law, is not legal title to the water, but the legal right to use it in a manner dictated by state law.

In the eastern United States, the **riparian doctrine** of ownership of surface-water rights is recognized (Goldfarb 1988). This concept holds that the riparian landowner—the property owner adjacent to a surface-water body—has the first right to withdraw and use the water. This right is often controlled by the state in the sense that application to the state for a permit to withdraw is necessary. Ownership of the water right is held with ownership of the land, and all riparian owners have equal rights to the water. Water withdrawals are limited to "reasonable" use in comparison with other riparians. As all riparians have equal rights to use reasonable amounts of water—even new users—it is fortunate that there is a large amount of surface water available in the eastern United States. As eastern

riparian owners generally return most of the water to the stream, albeit sometimes more polluted, there have been few crises due to lack of water except during droughts. Water problems in these areas typically involve quality rather than quantity of water.

Water in rivers was used in large quantities for mining during the 1849 California gold rush. Mining law recognized that the first to stake a claim to a property was the owner of the mineral therein. It was only natural that the same legal concept be applied to the water needed to extract, process, and transport the ore. Thus arose the **prior-appropriation doctrine** (Wilkinson 1986; Tarlock 1985), which is followed in 17 western states of the United States. This was first applied in *Irwin v. Phillips* (1855). The right to use water is separate from other property rights. The water-right holder does not necessarily need to be riparian, and riparian owners may have no water rights. The first person to divert water from a surface course has the primary water right, and it passes to successive owners. Junior users have lower rights and in time of drought may not receive any water, even though senior users always get their full share. However, some states have established a priority of use, with domestic use receiving top priority, irrigation receiving second priority, and industrial and commercial receiving lowest priority. Most states have some limitation on the transfer of appropriate rights, sometimes going so far as to link the water right to a specific use and piece of land (Hirshleifer, deHaven, & Milliman 1960). Some states provide for the forfeiture of a water right if it is not exercised for a given time period.

Courts have recently placed limitations on absolute ownership of surface water rights. In 1983 the California Supreme Court ruled in *National Audubon Society v. Superior Court of Alpine County* (1983) that the Los Angeles Department of Water and Power must limit its diversions from Mono Lake, even though the diversions were legal when initiated. The **public trust doctrine** was invoked. This basically held that the private right to use water was limited by the need to preserve the environmental aspects of a unique scenic, recreational, and scientific area, which benefited all (Goldfarb 1984). In 1984, the California State Water Control Board held that the Imperial Irrigation District of southeastern California could not permit Colorado River water to drain into the Salton Sea as return flow from irrigation (California Water Resources Control Board 1984). As this water was then not available for use by other parties, the water control board ruled that the irrigation district was wasting water, which is illegal under California law. (The Salton Sea is in a closed basin and has been formed by drainage of Colorado River water that had been diverted to California. Hence, there is no public trust to preserve the Salton Sea because it is not a natural feature.)

The **Winters doctrine** also limits the doctrine of prior appropriations. In 1908 the U.S. Supreme Court held that when Congress created reservations for the Indian nations, the water rights to develop those reservations and make the land productive were reserved (*Winters v. United States* 1908). This included water on nonreservation land that had been opened to settlement. Native American water rights are senior to those granted by state law in most basins, since the reservations were established so long ago (Berry 1974; Collins 1986). Most Native American water rights have never been fully utilized, and it is estimated that in total they may amount to a quantity of water three times the annual flow of the Colorado River (Wilkinson 1986). Resolution of water rights under the Winters doctrine will be litigated for years to come (Foster 1978; Deloria 1985). In 1985, the State of Montana reached agreement on Native American water rights with the Assiniboine and Sioux tribes on the Fort Peck Reservation.* The Fort Peck–Montana Compact is one of the very few Native American water rights issues that have been settled.

Although the Winters doctrine was first applied to surface water, in *Cappaert v. United States* (1976) the U.S. Supreme Court later extended it to ground water. The Tohono O'od-

*State of Montana/Assiniboine and Sioux Tribes of Fort Peck Indian Reservation Compact, ratified in S.B. 467, 49th Leg., 1985 Montana Laws.

ham (Papago Nation) of Arizona have negotiated the rights to obtain ground water[†] (Weatherford & Schupe 1986). Both the Tohono O'odham and the Fort Peck Assiniboine and Sioux are authorized to lease their water for off-reservation uses. This may be a way for others to maintain a source of water without infringing upon Native American water rights under Winters.

There are advantages for both the claimants of Native American water rights and others who hold water rights to reach settlements. The sooner the Native Americans receive water rights, the sooner they can begin to employ them for economic development to benefit the tribes. The value of irrigated farmland and the ability of non-Native Americans to borrow money is depressed in areas where there are Native American claims to water rights (Tomsho 1992). In 1992 there were a total of seven settlements of tribal water rights including the Northern Cheyenne Tribe of Montana, Jicarilla Apache Tribe of New Mexico, Pueblo de Cochiti Tribe of New Mexico, Ak-Chin Indian Community of Arizona, San Carlos Apache Tribe of Arizona, Ute Indian Tribe of Utah, and the Southern Utes and Ute Mountain Utes of Colorado (*U.S. Water News* 1992a).

The Winters doctrine also applies to other federally reserved land, such as national parks and monuments (Brookshire, Watts, & Merrill 1985). However, the water use there is much more limited than the potential for irrigation and other uses on Indian reservations.

Inasmuch as most major rivers cross state boundaries, it is not surprising that surface-water law has a strong federal component. The U.S. Congress, for example, apportioned the water from the Colorado River among various western states. The appropriation of surface water in the Colorado River Basin has been made on the basis of a concatenation of events that included the Colorado River Compact (1922), the Boulder Canyon Project Act (1928), a treaty with Mexico (1944), the Upper Colorado River Compact (1948), the Colorado River Storage Project Act (1956), a Supreme Court decision, *Arizona v. California* (1963), and the Colorado River Basin Project Act (1968) (Jacoby, Weatherford, & Wegner 1976).

In addition, Congress has also appropriated most of the money to develop the surface-water resources of the western United States. The Reclamation Act of 1902 is the linchpin of federal funding for western water projects. As a result, about 15% of all water in the West is supplied by the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, all at a subsidized price (Wilkinson 1986). The Central Arizona Project is a massive canal system built mostly with federal funds to transfer the Colorado River water appropriated to Arizona to the users in Phoenix and Tucson (Weatherford & Schupe 1986).

Another example of the federal role in surface water is the case of *Wisconsin et al. v. Illinois et al.* (1967). Illinois began to divert surface water from the Lake Michigan Basin at Chicago in the early part of this century by reversing the flow of the Chicago River to divert sewage flows from the water system intakes in Lake Michigan. The diversion resulted in a lowering of lake levels; this impacted upon Great Lakes' shipping and power production at Niagara Falls. The riparian states on the Great Lakes sued Illinois in federal court in a common law action starting in 1925. The U.S. Supreme Court ruled in 1967 that Illinois could not divert more than 3200 ft^3/s from the lake for all purposes.

The power of the federal government appears to be superior to that of the states in regulation of in-stream flows. In *California v. Federal Energy Regulatory Commission* (1990), the U.S. Supreme Court held that the states could not establish minimum streamflows for a hydroelectric project that were more restrictive than those established by the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (Blain & Evans 1990). In this case, California wanted to set minimum streamflows to protect native fish in a section of a river to be bypassed by a hydroelectric power project. The state's minimum flow was greater than those ordered by the

[†]P. L. 97-293, Title III, 96 Stat. 1274 (1982), San Xavier Papago Reservation of Arizona.

Federal Energy Power Commission, and the power company argued that if it were to b pass the additional water, the project would not be economically feasible.

11.6.3 Laws Regulating Quantity of Ground Water

Several different types of state law govern ground-water use, with variations of the bas concepts. The right of absolute ownership of the water under a property holder's land known as the **English rule.** In 1843, an English court held that a landowner could pum ground water at any rate, even if an adjoining property owner were harmed (*Acton Blundell* 1843). In *Acton* the court held that the landowner held proprietary interest in th ground water beneath his land. This rule was transported across the Atlantic and in 186 was planted in the United States with an Ohio court decision, *Frazier v. Brown* (1861). I *Frazier* the court noted this about ground water: "Because the existence, origin, move ment, and course of such waters, and the causes which govern and direct their move ment, are so secret, occult and concealed, an attempt to administer any set of legal rule in respect to them would be therefore, practically impossible." In 1903, a Wisconsin cour ruled in *Huber v. Merkel* (1903) that a property owner could pump unlimited groun water, even with malicious intent to harm a neighbor, the water being put to no goo use. This was the ultimate application of the English rule. However, this ruling was over turned in 1974 by the Wisconsin Supreme Court. In writing the majority opinion, Justic Landry held that: "the Huber case and its misconceived progeny can no longer be relie upon as conferring to the owner of the land an absolute right to use with impunity al the water that can be pumped from the subsoil underneath" (*Wisconsin v. Michels Pipelin Constructors, Inc.* 1974). Even in Ohio, *Frazier* was finally overturned in *Cline v. American Aggregates* (1984). In this case the dewatering necessary for a deep limestone quarry caused a general decline in the water table, which caused many wells to go dry, others to become intermittent producers, and still others to start to produce poor-quality water. Expert testimony from qualified hydrogeologists was used in court to relate these occurrences to the dewatering of the limestone quarry (Bair & Norris 1990). In issuing the ruling, Justice Holmes wrote: "Scientific knowledge in the field of hydrology has advanced in the past decade to the point that water tables and sources are more readily discoverable. This knowledge can establish the cause and effect relationship of the tapping of underground water to the existing water level. Thus liability can now be fairly adjudicated with these advances which were sorely lacking when this court decided *Frazier* more than a century ago."

In contrast to *Frazier* in Ohio and *Huber* in Wisconsin, as early as 1862 a New Hampshire court ruled that a landowner had the right to use only a reasonable amount of ground water. The rights of adjacent landowners were also recognized (*Basset v. Salisbury Manufacturing Company, Inc.* 1862). This is known as the **American rule.** In general American courts are moving from the English rule to the American rule (Bowman & Clark 1989). Ground-water law in states can be based entirely on common law, or state legislatures can pass specific statutes that control the pumping of ground water, typically through a permit system. Permit systems generally have a threshold value, so smaller users are not restricted. For example, the threshold is 100,000 gal/day in Wisconsin, 25,000 gal/day in Iowa, and 10,000 gal/day in Minnesota.

Some western states have ground-water law dictating that waters within the state boundaries belong to the public. Individuals can establish water rights to ground water by use; the first to draw from an aquifer has established a senior right. New Mexico is a state with this doctrine for both ground and surface water (Tarlock 1985). However, the state engineer of New Mexico can regulate the withdrawal of ground water from "declared" underground water basins.

One area of conflict arises when surface water is fed by discharge of ground water. Development of the ground-water reservoir typically depletes the baseflow of the stream. Holders of surface-water rights may find that the allocated surface water is diminishing in volume as ground-water withdrawals increase. On the South Platte River Basin of Colorado, the stream depletion due to ground-water withdrawals is about equal to the consumptive use of the ground-water pumped from the basin for irrigation (Danielson & Qazi 1972). In some western states, the surface-water right can be usurped from the holder by ground-water pumpage. In the case of Colorado, this conflict is being resolved by integrating the claims of both surface-water and ground-water users with regard to the same basin (Peak 1977). In some ground-water basins of New Mexico, would-be ground-water developers must acquire sufficient surface-water rights to compensate for the reduced flow from the stream (Tarlock 1985).

In California, a ground-water system based on correlative rights is followed. The right to use ground water belongs to the owner of the overlying land, so long as the use is reasonable. Water in excess of that used by the overlying owners can be allocated by appropriation. Thus, there are two systems of ownership of water rights. The determination of available water is based on the average recharge to the aquifer, termed the *safe yield* (although it is not safe yield as defined in Section 11.5). If withdrawals are less than the average annual recharge, the excess can be apportioned. If an *overdraft* (defined as "pumping in excess of the average annual recharge") exists for at least five years, the ground water is apportioned among all users in amounts proportional to their individual pumping rates, with the total pumping set at the average annual recharge. This is the **mutual-prescription doctrine,** which was first adjudicated in the case of the Raymond Basin (*Pasadena v. Alhambra* 1949).

The rights of states to regulate ground water was limited in 1982 by the federal courts in *Sporhase v. Nebraska* (*Sporhase v. Nebraska* 1982; Barnett 1984). Sporhase and Moss owned land in both Nebraska and Colorado. A well located in Nebraska pumped water from the underlying Ogallala aquifer, which was used to irrigate both the Nebraska and the Colorado land. Nebraska had a regulation that one who wished to pump ground water and export it to another state was required to first apply for and obtain a permit. Sporhase and Moss did not apply for the permit and were sued in Nebraska court. The Nebraska court ruled against them but was overruled by the Supreme Court. Justice Stevens wrote:

> "Although water is indeed essential for human survival, studies indicate that over 80% of our water supplies is used for agricultural purposes. The agricultural markets supplied by irrigated farms are worldwide. They provide the archetypal example of commerce among the several states for which the framers of our Constitution intended to authorize federal regulation. The multi-state character of the Ogallala aquifer—underlying tracts of land in Colorado and Nebraska, as well as parts of Texas, New Mexico, Oklahoma and Kansas—confirms the view that there is a significant federal interest in conservation as well as in fair allocation of the diminishing resource."

The high court ruled that the states can regulate water within their boundaries but do not own it and cannot prohibit export except in times of severe water shortages within the state. This ruling was applied in 1983 in *El Paso v. Reynolds.* El Paso, Texas, wished to withdraw water from two large and scarcely used aquifers in New Mexico. The court ruled that New Mexico did not need the aquifer for human use and therefore New Mexico could not prohibit the transfer of water to El Paso (*El Paso v. Reynolds* 1983).

If one wishes to artificially recharge and store water in an aquifer, can someone else pump out that water? Can a public agency use the aquifer under a property holder's land

for storage of imported water? These are questions central to the use of aquifers as storage reservoirs, and they must be answered if cyclic storage is to become an important procedure in water management. Two California cases dealing with aquifer storage have apparently settled these questions. They also form a basis for resolution of these problems in other states (Gleason 1978).

The first California case involved the rights of the landowner to exploit an aquifer. Alameda County has a water district formed to protect the aquifer, especially from salt water intrusion. As a conservation practice, local and imported water is injected into the aquifer to maintain the seaward hydraulic gradient. A sand and gravel pit was operating and, by 1969, the sand-mining operation extended 80 ft into the aquifer. The injected water was flooding the sand pit, requiring the mining company to pump large amounts of water from it. The mining company sued the water district to enjoin it from recharging the aquifer. The mining company lost the case, as the court held that public agencies can store water in an aquifer, up to the historic ground-water level, even if it decreases the usefulness of land to the property holders. (*Niles Sand and Gravel Co., Inc. v. Alameda County Water District* 1974).

In the second case, a public entity injected water for underground storage with the intention of withdrawing it at a later time. This right to recapture injected waters was recognized by a court ruling in 1943 (*City of Los Angeles v. Glendale* 1943) and then reaffirmed in 1975 (*City of Los Angeles v. City of San Fernando* 1975). In both instances, the aquifers in question were in the Los Angeles area, where several cities were competing for use of ground water that comes from natural sources and artificial recharge.

Case Study: Arizona's Ground-Water Code

In 1980, the state of Arizona passed a comprehensive new ground-water law designed to reduce the severe overdraft of ground water as well as to allocate the limited ground-water resources of the state (Ferris 1980; Tarlock 1985). A new state agency, the Department of Water Resources, was established to administer the code. Geographical areas known as Active Management Areas (AMAs) were established for those areas with severe overdraft problems. Within the designated AMAs, existing and future use of ground water is regulated. Ground-water users at the time the AMA was formed could claim a grandfather right. Persons can apply for a ground-water withdrawal permit for a new or expanded use for almost any purpose but irrigation. They must show that there is sufficient ground water available for the permit and that no water is available from other sources, such as the grandfather ground-water rights or the Central Arizona Project. Management plans must also be established for each AMA. For the three urban AMAs, the management plan has a goal of reducing ground-water withdrawals to the safe yield by 2025. In the agricultural AMA the goal is to preserve irrigated agriculture as long as possible while still preserving future water supplies for nonagricultural uses. Water conservation will be necessary to meet the goals of the management plans. The difference in urban-area water usage between Phoenix (267 gal, or 1011 L, per capita per day) and Tucson (160 gal, or 606 L, per capita per day) illustrates the possible scope of savings via conservation. However, the biggest potential savings is in agriculture; it accounts for 89% of the total water usage in the state. The real strength of the code is the provision that prohibits the establishment of new urban areas unless there is a 100-y supply of water available. This prevents new development of water-short areas and protects home buyers. For more information contact the website *http://adwr.state.az.us/*.

11.6.4 Laws Regulating the Quality of Water

Common law can be applied to a situation when damages to an individual have occurred because of contamination of ground or surface water. In such a case, a suit would be filed and one or more theories of common law advanced along with expert testimony about the technical facts surrounding the alleged contamination.

A number of laws have been written with the intent of preventing the contamination of ground and surface water. There are a number of relevant federal laws, which apply in all states, as well as specific state laws. As a general principle, state laws can be more strict, but cannot be less strict, than federal laws if they address the same topics.

11.6.4.1 National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (P.L. 91-190)

Title I of the National Environmental Policy Act establishes a national environmental policy and environmental goals. Environmental-impact statements are required for major federal projects. The Supreme Court has ruled that the policies and goals of Title I are not enforceable standards and the federal agencies are required only to consider them when making decisions. An environmental-impact statement is required to disclose the environmental impact of a proposed action, unavoidable adverse consequences, alternatives to the proposed action, the relationship of short-term uses of the environment to long-term productivity, and irretrievable commitments of resources.

11.6.4.2 Federal Water Pollution Control Act of 1972 (P.L. 92-500) Clean Water Act Amendments of 1977 (P.L. 95-217)

The objective of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act and its amendments is "to restore and maintain the chemical, physical and biological integrity of the nation's water." National goals to achieve a degree of water quality that would make the waters of the United States "fishable and swimmable" by 1983 and to eliminate the discharge of pollutants into the waters of the United States by 1985 were established. The act sets water-quality standards, establishes minimum national effluent standards, requires pollution discharge permits, and has a construction grant program for public sewage-treatment plants. As a result of this program, surface-water quality has increased dramatically in many areas of the United States. The goal of eliminating discharges into surface waters has placed emphasis on land treatment and disposal of wastewater and sludges. In some cases this can pose a threat of ground-water contamination.

11.6.4.3 Safe Drinking Water Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-523) and Amendments

The Safe Drinking Water Act was passed to set standards for safe drinking water, protect "sole source" aquifers, and protect drinking-water aquifers from contamination resulting from underground injection of waste.

This law requires the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) to set drinking-water standards to protect public health and welfare. The 1986 amendments to the act substantially enlarge the list of substances to be regulated. Maximum contaminant levels and maximum contaminant-level goals are to be established for toxic and carcinogenic compounds as well as secondary maximum contaminant levels for substances with no health risk but that do create aesthetic concerns.

The "Gonzales Amendment" authorized EPA to designate aquifers that are especially valuable because they are the only source of drinking water in an area. No federal financial assistance may be given to a project that might contaminate one of these "sole source" aquifers so as to create a significant hazard to public health. In the 1986 amendments, Congress directed the states to develop plans to protect the surface area around public

water-supply wells from potential contamination from such sources as hazardous waste pesticides, and leaking underground storage tanks. These wellhead protection plans wi need a very strong input from hydrogeologists if they are to be successful.

The underground injection of hazardous wastes and other materials is also regulate under the Safe Drinking Water Act. Current drinking-water aquifers as well as all othe aquifers with total dissolved solids less than 10,000 mg/L are protected by regulating ir jection of liquid waste into deep boreholes. Class I wells dispose of hazardous waste int isolated strata below current or potential drinking-water aquifers. Class II wells are for th recirculation of oil-field brines. Class III wells are used in solution-mining of ores. Waste are not to be injected into or above potable water aquifers.

11.6.4.4 Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 (RCRA) (P.L. 94-580)

The Resource Conservation and Recovery Act was the first major federal effort to dea with hazardous solid waste. It is a management system designed to regulate hazardou waste from the time it is created and continuing through its final disposition. The keystone of the system is a permit and manifest system used to keep track of hazardous waste Waste generators and transporters as well as managers of hazardous waste storage, treatment, and disposal facilities are regulated. Facilities may not be placed in the recharge zones of sole-source aquifers. New facilities are required to have ground-water monitoring systems, and old facilities must be retrofitted for ground-water monitoring. Hazardous-waste landfills and lagoons are required to monitor leachate and to have double-liner systems. Land disposal of liquid hazardous waste is prohibited, and land disposal of certain other hazardous wastes is to be phased out.

11.6.4.5 Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980 (CERCLA) (P.L. 96-510)

The Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980 is commonly referred to as Superfund. This act is targeted at the cleanup of releases of hazardous substances in the air, on land, or in the water. Parties who release contaminants from hazardous wastes are required to clean them up. If the responsible parties do not do so, the EPA can do the work and bill the cost to the responsible parties. Potentially responsible parties include the generators, transporters, and disposers of the waste. A provision known as "joint and several liability" permits the government to recover the full costs of the remedial action from any of the responsible parties, even if they were responsible for only part of the waste. The EPA is empowered to respond immediately to the release of a hazardous substance and then recover costs at some time in the future from the responsible parties—if any can be found and if they have any money!

CERCLA requires the EPA to establish a National Priorities List of sites to be targeted for remedial action. From time to time new sites are added to the list. Many of them are abandoned sites where the responsible owners are bankrupt or assetless. Other sites may be owned by Fortune 500 companies.

11.6.4.6 Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 (SARA)

Superfund was reauthorized in 1986 with additional funds added to the program and additional mandates from Congress relating to the restoration of contaminated sites. Section 121 of SARA places emphasis on cleanup remedies that will reduce the volume, toxicity, and mobility of hazardous substances and contaminants to the maximum extent practicable.

Cleanup activities in the United States are governed by CERCLA and SARA. Of particular importance is the assignment of liability for the costs of environmental cleanup and restoration that have been established by these laws. Financial liability under Section 107

of SARA extends to operators as well as present and past site owners, regardless if the site owner had knowledge of the operations at the site. As some banks have found to their dismay, foreclosure on a contaminated property can bring with it financial liability for cleanup of the property.

There are several important concepts related to financial liability under CERCLA and SARA. *Strict liability* means that one did not have to contribute to the problem to be liable. The current owner of a site may be liable for cleanup costs even if the site was contaminated prior to purchase. Liability may be retroactive so that a past owner of a site may have current liability *even if they complied with all regulations in existence at the time of the activity.* The concept of *joint and several liability* holds that any responsible party could be held accountable for the entire cleanup cost, even if their contribution was a minor one. This might occur if all other potentially responsible parties either could not be located or had no money. A generator of hazardous waste can be held responsible for a share of the cleanup costs of a disposal site even if they did not know that a transporter had taken their waste to that site. If all the financial resources of all the potentially responsible parties are exhausted, then the federal government will spend funds from the Superfund account. The liability burdens under Superfund can be onerous, and many property transfers are now preceded by an environmental audit to help prospective buyers and lenders from unknowingly acquiring a contaminated site.

11.6.4.7 Surface Mining Control and Reclamation Act (SMCRA) (P.L. 95-87)

The Surface Mining Control and Reclamation Act was passed with the intent of preventing imminent danger to the health and safety of the public and significant, imminent environmental harm that might be caused by both underground- and surface-mining operations. One aspect of the law is the requirement that a hydrogeological study be performed prior to the covering or burial of acid-forming or toxic waste materials from mining or when any mine is to be filled with waste material. These waste materials are typically overburden spoils or mill tailings. The mine operator must prove that there will be only minimal disturbance of the hydrologic regime around the mine. If a mining activity contaminates, diminishes, or interrupts the ground-water or surface-water supply of an adjacent landowner, SMCRA requires the mine operator to replace the water supply.

11.6.4.8 Uranium Mill Tailings Radiation and Control Act of 1978 (UMTRCA) (P.L. 95-604 as amended by P.L. 95-106 and P.L. 97-415)

The Uranium Mill Tailings Radiation Control Act regulates the storage and disposal of mill tailings at both active and inactive uranium mill operations. The act provides that uranium mill tailings should be stabilized, controlled, and disposed of in an environmentally sound and safe manner. Title I of the act addresses remedial actions that must be taken at unsafe abandoned sites. Title II provides for the regulation of the handling and disposal of waste materials at active sites. Correction of adverse impacts on ground or surface water from uranium mill tailings is a feature of UMTRCA.

11.6.4.9 Toxic Substances Control Act (TOSCA) (P.L. 94-469 as amended by P.L. 97-129)

The purpose of the Toxic Substances Control Act is to protect human health and the environment by requiring testing and use restrictions for chemicals that may present an "unreasonable" risk to health and the environment. This is an umbrella act that regulates toxic compounds during research and development, manufacturing, processing, and distribution. It has been interpreted to permit controls on the use, disposal, or storage of

toxic compounds where ground-water contamination from such compounds has occurred or may be expected to occur. Federal agencies and state governments come under the jurisdiction of this act.

11.6.4.10 Federal Insecticide, Fungicide and Rodenticide Act (FIFRA) (P.L. 92-516 as amended by P.L. 94-140, P.L. 95-396, P.L. 96-539, and P.L. 98-201)

The primary purpose of FIFRA is to regulate the manufacture, use, and disposal of pesticides. It requires pesticides to be labeled and restricts their use where appropriate. Use restrictions can be applied in areas where ground-water contamination by pesticides has occurred or could be expected to occur.

Case Study: Wisconsin's Ground-Water Protection Law

State of Wisconsin Act 410 was enacted to protect the quality of the state's ground water. The act addresses five areas: establishment of numerical standards for ground-water quality, a laboratory certification program, an expanded ground-water monitoring program, establishment of an environmental repair fund for remedial work at contaminated sites, and a compensation fund to pay part of the cost of drilling new wells for property owners whose wells have become contaminated with substances other than bacteria and nitrate. The most far-reaching provision is the numerical standards program. This is set out in administrative rules (NR 140). Ground-water-quality standards are set out for substances that have been detected in or have a reasonable probability of entering ground water in Wisconsin. An enforcement standard is set for each substance on the basis of federal standards indicating a concentration above which there is a threat to public health or the environment. Enforcement standards are applicable to ground water that has been impacted by some regulated activity, such as a landfill or a hazardous-waste storage area. Enforcement standards apply at any point beyond the property boundary of a regulated facility, at any point of ground-water use, and at any point beyond what is known as a "design management zone" for a regulated activity. A design management zone is a three-dimensional portion of the earth beneath a regulated facility within which natural attenuation may be used to reduce the concentration of a contaminant. If the site is small, the property boundary is coincident with the design management zone boundary. If the site is larger, the design management zone is a designated horizontal distance from the edge of the facility. For example, for land treatment of wastewater, the design management zone is 250 ft (76 m), for wastewater treatment lagoons it is 100 ft (30 m), and for hazardous waste disposal facilities it is 0 ft. The law also specifies preventive action limits (PALs), which are set at some percentage of the enforcement standard. For substances of public health concerns, PALs are set at 20% of the enforcement standard, except for carcinogenic and mutagenic compounds, where the PAL is 10% of the enforcement standard. For public welfare–related substances the PAL is set at 50% of the enforcement standard. When a PAL is exceeded anywhere within the site, including the design management zone, a wide range of responses is available. These range from no action to requiring additional monitoring to revising operating procedures at the managed facility to remedial action to restore ground-water quality. If an enforcement standard is violated, some action must be taken. This includes requiring changes in operation of a facility, requiring redesign of a facility, requiring alternative methods of waste treatment and disposal, requiring closure of a facility, and requiring restoration of ground-water quality. Leeway has been given to the Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources in determining the appropriate response and the time frame for it.

This water-quality protection law, in conjunction with other rules under which Wisconsin regulates waste treatment and disposal activities, creates a strong framework to protect the water quality of the state. A survey of water quality in both community and private wells in Wisconsin was conducted prior to the implementation of the ground-water protection law. It found that 65 of 1174 community wells tested and 82 of 617 private wells had detectable levels of volatile organic compounds. However, only 5 community wells and 14 private wells had volatile organic compounds above health advisory levels. In one area of Wisconsin, the central sand plains, about 900 wells were sampled for aldicarb, a pesticide. A substantial number, 201, had detectable aldicarb levels and 70 contained aldicarb in concentrations in excess of Wisconsin's recommended health advisory level of 10 μg/L (Krill & Sonzogni 1986). It would appear that, in general, Wisconsin has high-quality ground water, although some areas, such as the central sand plains, have substantial problems.

11.7 Artificial Recharge

Resource management sometimes is interpreted as limiting the development and use of a resource in order to conserve it. Ground-water management has a somewhat broader scope, in that artificial recharge can be used to expand the amount of available water. *Water spreading* has been used in the western United States for decades to capture additional runoff. Much of the recharge of alluvial basin-fill aquifers comes from streambed infiltration during the wet season. To increase the amount of infiltration, stream water is diverted onto empty land below the mouths of the canyons carrying the streams (Conkling 1946).

Surface spreading is feasible given the following circumstances: The upper soil layers are permeable, the water table is not close to the surface, the land is relatively flat, and the aquifer to be recharged has a transmissivity great enough to carry the water away from the spreading area. It is extensively practiced simply by placing low dams across the ephemeral streams draining from the mountains. The dams act to flood the land along the stream channel.

Surface spreading tends to raise the water table over a rather extensive area. The same is true of other diffused types of artificial recharge. Irrigation is also a form of artificial recharge. Because of problems of salt accumulation in the soil, the amount of applied irrigation water is in excess of the needs of plants for evapotranspiration. The unevaporated water percolates through the unsaturated zone and recharges the water table. When spray irrigation is used as a means of wastewater treatment, the amount of water applied is far in excess of the plant requirement (Kardos 1967). The result may be a substantial increase in the elevation of the water table (Parizek & Meyers 1967). Similar diffused sources of artificially recharged water include septic tank drain fields. Wastewater from these sources percolates through the unsaturated zone and recharges the water table (Dudley & Stephenson 1973; Beatty & Bouma 1973).

Recharge basins are frequently used to recharge unconfined aquifers, especially where land costs are high. Basins are advantageous in that a substantial hydraulic head can be maintained in order to increase the infiltration rate. They are inexpensive to construct and operate. On Long Island, New York, basins are used to recharge storm-water runoff from roadways and parking lots (Seaburn 1970a, 1970b). They are also used in Peoria, Illinois (Smith 1967; Harmeson, Thomas, & Evans 1968), Fresno, California (Nightingale & Bianchi 1973; Salo, Harrison, & Archibald 1986), and Orange County, California (Matthews 1991), to recharge aquifers with river water. The infiltration capacity through coarse river gravels at Peoria is very high, with rates of 20 to 100 ft (6.1 to 30.5 m) per day being typical annual averages.

Recharge basins concentrate a large volume of infiltrating water in a small area. As a r sult, a ground-water mound forms beneath the basin. As the recharge starts, the mound b gins to grow; when the recharge ceases, the mound decays as the water spreads through th aquifer. The growth and decay can be described mathematically (Hantush 1967; Sing 1976). Computer models have been used to evaluate the impact of recharge basins on th water table (Bianchi & Haskell 1968; Hunt, 1971). It is important to maintain the unsatura ed zone beneath the recharge basins in order to help maintain high infiltration rates, whi still providing water-quality improvements (Fetter 1977a; Fetter & Holzmacher 1974).

The infiltration capacity of recharge basins is initially high and then declines as recharg progresses, due to surface clogging by fine sediments (Behnke 1969) and biological growth in the uppermost few inches of the soil (Moravcoua, Masinova, & Bernatova 1968). It ha been found that the operation of recharge basins with alternating flooding and drying-ou periods will maintain the best infiltration rates (Fetter & Holzmacher 1974). Fine surface sed iments may occasionally need to be removed mechanically (Sniegocki & Brown, 1970).

If the intent of a management program is to recharge a confined aquifer, then **recharg wells** must be used. The design of a well for artificial recharge is similar to that of a suppl well. The principal difference is that water flows out of the recharge well and into the su rounding aquifer under either a gravity head or a head maintained by an injection pump

Injection wells for artificial recharge are prone to clogging. A large amount of water being pushed through a small volume of aquifer near the well face. Clogging can be due t a number of factors, for example:

1. Air entrainment caused by aeration of water falling into the well
2. Filtration of suspended sediment and organic matter
3. Development of bacterial growths in the aquifer
4. Formation of precipitates due to geochemical reactions between the recharge water and native ground water
5. Swelling of clay colloids in the aquifer
6. Dispersal of clay particles due to ion exchange between recharging water and aquifer materials
7. Precipitation of iron from native ground water due to recharge of water with a pH and Eh in the range of ferric iron
8. Growth of iron bacteria
9. Mechanical compaction of aquifer materials due to high injection pressures

Frequent maintenance of injection wells may be necessary. This typically consists o pumping water out of the wells to redevelop the flow capacities. Chlorination may also b used to reduce biological growth (Fetter & Holzmacher 1974). Wisconsin is one state tha does not permit the use of injection wells. The reason for this prohibition is to prevent we disposal of wastes that may result in ground-water contamination.

11.8 Protection of Water Quality in Aquifers

One of the most important aspects of ground-water management is the protection of th water quality in an aquifer. There are a number of artificial sources of potential ground water contamination. Pollution from such sources as septic tanks, sanitary landfills, land treatment systems for municipal wastewater, waste injection wells, toxic chemical disposa sites, cemeteries, mine tailings, acid mine drainage, water softener regeneration salt, high way deicing salt, oil-field brines, agricultural chemicals and fertilizers, and accidental oi gasoline, and chemical spills have been well documented in scientific literature. An inci dent such as the burial in Michigan of slaughtered cattle that had been given feed contam

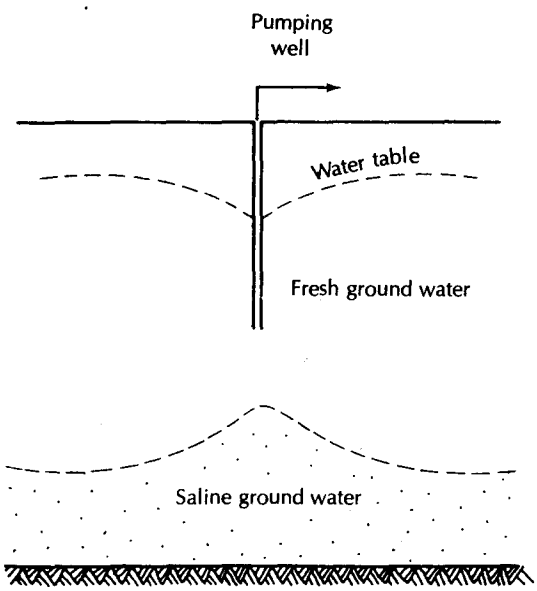
inated by PBB, a chemical fire retardant, points out that the earth was typically thought of as the most convenient repository for material that society does not know how to handle.

Ground-water contamination can occur also when water of poor quality is drawn into a well field that originally has been developed in high-quality water. The best example of this is salt-water intrusion in coastal areas. Heavy pumping of coastal aquifers can cause a landward migration of the interface separating fresh and salty ground water.

One critical aspect of preventing ground-water pollution is the identification of the recharge areas of aquifers. In such areas, protection of the aquifer is vital. Recharge areas should be zoned as water-quality conservation areas, with close control of potential sources of contamination. The hydrogeology of sites for such facilities as sanitary landfills and land-treatment systems should be intensively studied to ensure that the condition of local soils and the rate of direction of local ground-water flow preclude possible aquifer contamination. Hazardous- and toxic-waste storage and disposal should be barred from aquifer-recharge areas. Sanitary sewers for the collection of domestic wastewater are preferable to septic tanks in aquifer-recharge areas. Under most conditions, land areas underlain by extensive confining layers or situated in the discharge areas of unconfined aquifers are preferable for uses that might contaminate the ground water. Agricultural practices in recharge areas should also be regulated. Overapplication of chemicals and fertilizers should be discouraged and controlled collection and disposal of animal waste encouraged.

One of the most difficult aspects of aquifer protection is the control of abandoned wells. Many states require that abandoned wells be backfilled. This regulation can be enforced for a newly drilled water, oil, or gas well that proves to be unproductive. However, in the case of wells that fall into disuse and casual abandonment, the owners might not be aware of the danger they can pose to ground-water quality. Likewise, improper well construction can cause shallow ground water or surface water to migrate downward into the aquifer. Abandoned wells may also be used for the disposal of liquid or solid waste, an obvious threat to water quality. Education is more efficient than regulation in preventing contamination of this type.

Salt-water encroachment can be prevented by regulating the spacing and withdrawal rates of wells. The objective is to avoid establishing a hydraulic gradient that slopes from the zone of contaminated water toward the well field. If the aquifer contains fresh water overlying salty water, pumping rates must be low to avoid drawing up salty water from below, a phenomenon known as *upconing* (Figure 11.1). Saline-water aquifers underlie up



◀ FIGURE 11.1
Upconing of saline water caused by a well pumping from an overlying fresh-water zone.

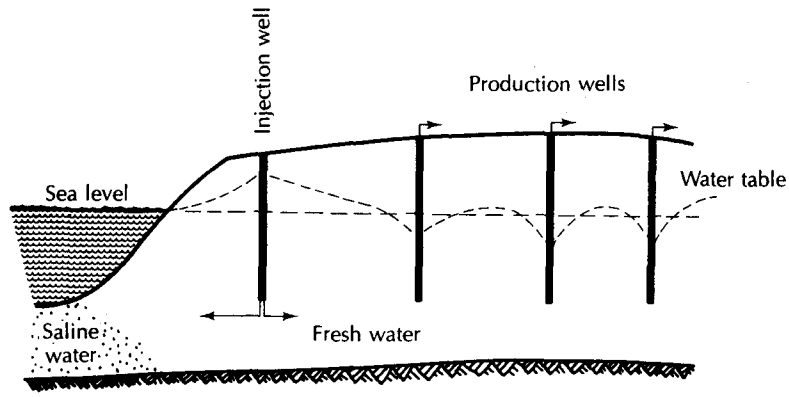


FIGURE 11.2
Use of injection wells to form a pressure ridge to prevent salt-water intrusion in an unconfined coastal aquifer.

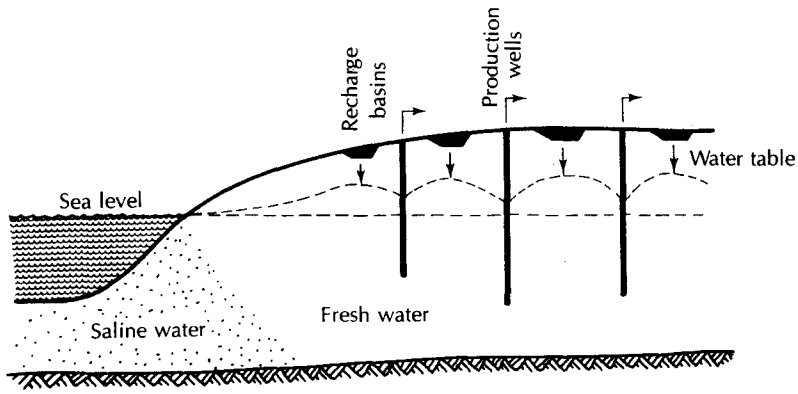


FIGURE 11.3
Use of artificial recharge in the area of production wells in an unconfined coastal aquifer. The artificially recharged water maintains the water table above sea level to prevent salt-water intrusion.

to two-thirds of the land areas of the conterminous United States, so the problems of wat encroachment and upconing are not limited to coastal areas (Bruington 1972).

Control of sea-water intrusion in coastal areas has been practiced in a number of l calities. In coastal areas of southern California, where there is a confined aquifer co taining salt water and fresh water, a pressure-ridge system has been used (Bruington Seares 1965). A line of injection wells parallel to the coast injects water into the aquife The result is a ridge in the potentiometric surface. Figure 11.2 shows this for an unco fined aquifer system. Water levels behind the barrier can be drawn down below s level with no fear of salt-water encroachment. Similar barriers could be used in unco fined aquifers using artificial recharge from wells, pits, or trenches. Artificial recharg in the area of pumping-well fields could also be used to maintain the elevations of t potentiometric surface above sea level (Figure 11.3). A row of pumping wells could b installed parallel to the coast in either a confined or an unconfined aquifer. They cou create a trough in the potentiometric surface lower than either sea level or the well-fie areas behind the trough. The trough wells would pump salty water, which would n be suitable for most uses. However, wells behind the trough would pump fresh wat (Figure 11.4).

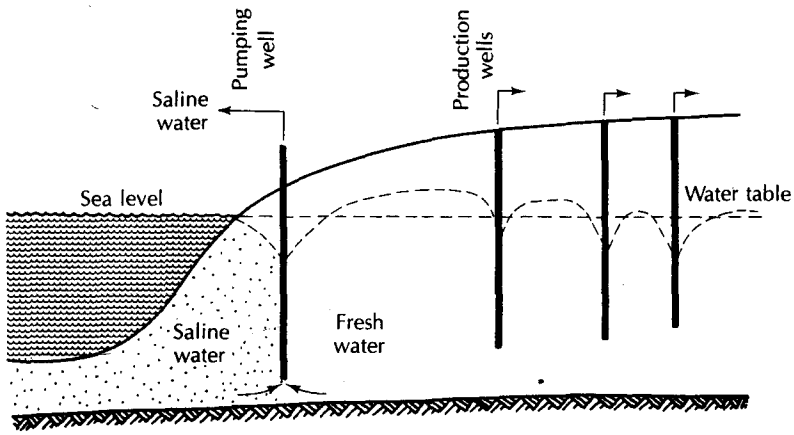


FIGURE 11.4
Use of pumping wells at the coastline to form a trench in the water table; the trench acts as a barrier to further salt-water encroachment.

11.9 Ground-Water Mining and Cyclic Storage

From the previous sections it is apparent that in order to develop the ground-water reservoir a cone of depression must be created. This means that water is removed from storage or is, in a sense, mined. Likewise, to utilize many aquifers for cyclic storage, the water levels must be drawn down to create storage space. Again, some water may have to be mined to prepare the aquifer to perform an essential service (Ralston 1973). Ground-water management programs with an objective to maintain natural equilibrium water levels may not be as efficient as other management plans.

The most dramatic need for limited ground-water mining is to provide supplemental water for use when precipitation and surface supplies are limited by drought. Normal rates of industrial and agricultural productivity can be maintained by the use of supplementary ground water (Lehr 1978). Water managers may find it difficult to convince themselves that the best time to deplete the ground-water reservoir artificially is when the amount of natural recharge is lowest. Ground-water levels will be falling at a seemingly alarming rate. However, the drawdown will create space for storage when nature provides an especially wet year (Ambroggi 1977). Water managers must be ready to capture this excess by artificial recharge to supplement the natural infiltration. It has been suggested that major recharge events that can result in a rapid rise in ground-water levels can be expected every 10 to 15 y (Ambroggi 1977). If water levels have not been depleted by "overpumping" during drought, much of the potential recharge may be lost owing to lack of aquifer storage space. This concept of *cyclic storage* is not applicable to aquifers to which the amount of possible recharge is limited by their capacity to transport and store ground water rather than by the amount of water available to them.

In some arid lands, considerable ground water is known to exist. Furthermore, there may be rather large hydraulic gradients, which could mean that this ground water is moving through the aquifers. This interpretation is at variance with the extremely low rates of recharge known to occur at present. Model studies have suggested that the gradients are "fossil" (Lloyd & Farag 1978), that is, decayed remnants of higher ground-water gradients of 10,000 y ago, when pluvial periods during the late Pleistocene provided large amounts of recharge. Management programs, however, cannot be based on these extremely long cycles between recharge events. For practical purposes, such aquifers must be considered to be unreplenished, and all ground-water pumpage to be simply mining when recharge events are millennia apart.

The mining of ground water is occurring in many localities. The Ogallala aquifer of the southern High Plains of Texas and New Mexico is an example of a mined aquifer in arid regions, and the deep sandstone aquifer of northeastern Illinois is a humid-region example. Mining the deep sandstone aquifer appears to be an integral part of the areawide development of the ground-water and surface-water resources of northeastern Illinois (Schicht, Adams, & Stall 1976; Schicht & Adams 1977). Water levels will be drawn down by overdrafts until a "critical level" is reached. Ground-water pumping will then be curtailed to the extent that no further drawdown will occur.

Many areas of the world are underlain by aquifers containing saline ground water. Although desalinization is technically feasible, it is not economical except in some very limited applications. In water-short areas of the western United States, there is increasing competition between energy development and agricultural interests for the available water (Plotkin, Gold, & White 1979). Some of this water is used for power-plant cooling, with subsequent evaporational losses. It has been suggested that saline ground-water resources could be mined to provide the necessary cooling water (Greydanus 1978). In this approach, it would be necessary to ensure that the available saline ground-water supply is sufficient for the design life of the power plant. Furthermore, the problem of the disposal of brine or salt would have to be dealt with. Saline ground water could also serve as a source of emergency cooling water for nuclear reactors.

11.10 Conjunctive Use of Ground and Surface Water

It is obvious that in stream-aquifer systems it is counterproductive to consider surface-water management and ground-water management as separate actions. When water can flow from the stream to the aquifer, or vice versa, it is tantamount to having two separate policies or plans for the same water. No one would open a joint checking account with a total stranger. However, the legal separation of ground water and surface water, or the administration of ground-water and surface-water management by separate agencies, could have a similar result: a rapid depletion of the total resources due to overuse.

As is the usual case, the need for management of ground water and surface water as elements of an interrelated system is most critical when demand exceeds supply. The greatest application of such management in the United States has come in the arid west. Overpumping of aquifers near a river could deplete the surface resources, while development of a losing river could reduce the normal recharge to an aquifer system. On a regional basis, the incremental drawdown caused by any one pumper is small. It is the cumulative effect of many pumpers that can cause a depletion of the total resource. The individual user has no economic incentive to reduce pumping (Bredehoeft & Young 1970). The situation is exacerbated when ground-water pumping results in a reduction in the flow of surface waters. Ground-water users may feel social pressure if a neighbor's well is adversely affected; however, this pressure is not experienced when reduction in availability of surface water affects an unknown user many miles away. Individual litigation among tens or hundreds of water users along a stream-aquifer system would present a legal nightmare. Some type of institutional control offers the most workable management approach.

One management plan might be a total ban on ground-water withdrawals during such times that the flow of the river falls below a specified value. This, however, would not prevent the streamflow from falling even more, as the response time of an aquifer is quite long (Young & Bredehoeft 1972). To fully protect the rights of senior surface-water users ground-water pumping might be prohibited altogether. While this would serve one purpose, it would also eliminate the use of the ground-water reservoir for storage of excess water. In addition, ground-water development usually provides water supplies in excess of streamflow alone.

The most extreme case occurs when a river fed by mountain runoff flows across an aquifer system that receives no recharge from precipitation. Under such conditions, the river is the only source of water for both ground-water and surface-water users. Even in this extreme case, the river and aquifer system can be managed conjunctively to maximum benefit. If the water is used for irrigation, there is a demand only part of the year. The remainder of the year, the streamflow passes downstream. The maximum benefit would accrue if some of the water flowing in the nongrowing season could be stored for use when it is needed. This can be accomplished by taking advantage of the delayed response of the aquifer system (Young & Bredehoeft 1972). Wells located away from the river and pumped during the irrigation season would draw water from storage at that time, and then, when the cone of depression reaches the river, infiltration would be induced mostly during the nongrowing season. Wells located closer to the river would be pumped only near the end of the irrigation season.

While the benefits of conjunctive ground-water and surface-water use are obvious, the implementation of management is not easy. The legal framework for each state is different. In New Mexico, ground-water users in designated ground-water basins fall under the jurisdiction of the New Mexico state engineer. New appropriations of ground water are made only on the condition that the ground-water user acquire sufficient surface-water flow (Thomas 1972; Brutsaert & Gebhard 1975). In the state of Colorado, the Water Right Determination and Administration Act of 1969 is enforced by the state engineer. In part, this act reads "... it shall be the policy of this state to integrate the appropriation, use and administration of underground water tributary to a stream with the use of surface water in such a way as to maximize the beneficial use of all the waters of this state." However, the Colorado state engineer does not have unlimited license to maximize available water, as the act also states that "no reduction of any lawful diversion because of the operation of the priority system shall be permitted unless such reduction would increase the amount of water available to and required by water rights having senior priorities." A management plan that would increase the total amount of water but would result in junior users receiving more water at the expense of senior users is apparently not what the Colorado legislature intended.

It has been pointed out that, in most cases, a number of different management plans might be possible (Morel-Seytoux 1975). For example, an applicant for ground water might be allocated a large amount of water, but it would be available only during the nongrowing season. A total volume not nearly as great might be allocated if it were to be pumped during the irrigation season. Both plans could protect the senior water rights equally.

Conjunctive use of ground and surface water involves a complex interaction of several physical systems. Computer models are used to determine the optimal management system. A recently developed computer model (Başağaoğlu & Mariño 1999) integrates the following systems into one model: a surface-water reservoir, a hydraulically connected stream and aquifer, irrigated agricultural plots, water-supply and observation wells, and an artificial recharge zone. The system can be implemented to store water during wet periods for release during subsequent dry periods. The model can be used for planning purposes up to six months in the future. Computer models are routinely used to determine the interaction of ground water and surface water for purposes of allocation of water rights (Sophocleous et al. 1995).

11.11 Global Water Issues

Water is essential to life as a fluid to replenish body fluids, as well as to grow the food needed to nourish the body. At any given time there is drought somewhere in the world. The growth of human populations has pushed people into regions that are periodically subjected to severe drought.

In 1997, the first World Water Forum was held by the World Water Council in Marrakesh, Morocco. The following conclusions were reached by the attendees of the conference:

- In the 1990s, 1 billion people are lacking clean water, 1.9 billion are lacking proper sanitation facilities, 5 million per year die from waterborne diseases, 800 million are chronically hungry, 22 countries face chronic water shortages, 300 international rivers are without adequate legal or institutional arrangements, and desertification is increasing to continental proportions.
- Global warming trends are likely to result in more extreme hydrological events—both floods and droughts—and the rate of irrigation development is not keeping abreast of the rate of population growth. Irrigation uses 70% of world freshwater and contributes 40% of world agricultural production from 17% of the world's cultivable lands.
- Freshwater is a unique resource; it has no substitute, and in nature it is neither created nor destroyed. Under natural conditions, it is unevenly distributed in space and time. Its presence is essential for the creation and sustenance of life and its loss terminates life. Water is the universal solvent and a medium for all biological processes.
- Water is taken for granted as the cheapest and most easily available natural resource in the world. This is more a myth than reality. Water-related problems abound and forecasts paint a rather bleak picture. The warning signs are definite, and serious water problems will be upon us if we do not act soon.
- Water shortages are due not only to reduced quality and quantity of available supplies, but also to limitations on the abilities, capacity and know-how to utilise and optimise the added value of available water resources. These impediments interfere with accessibility and exacerbate shortages.
- We must aspire to produce more food and fibre to meet world needs at affordable prices, and we must do so while consuming less water.
- Africa is the continent that suffers the most water-related adversities: it has most of the world's desertification, droughts and floods, it has the lowest share of irrigated lands, the highest population growth rates, and the lowest economic and investment growth rate. Water is a cross-cutting issue, common to each of these adversities, and water will continue to shape the fate of Africa, where in the next 50 years, twelve countries are likely to face water scarcity problems.
- For developing countries to maintain their current levels of service in the next decade in irrigation, drinking water supply, sanitation and hydropower development, requires an investment of US$600–800 billion, of which the majority will be provided by the countries themselves, while some US$60–80 billion will be financed by external sources.
- Water should be integrated into the world trade negotiations on agricultural and food products. This is to create a level playing field for trade between countries with abundant water resources and those with scarce water resources and to optimise the use of this vital resource worldwide.
- Humankind should not fight over food and should never fight over water. A new water diplomacy is to emerge in the 21st century to resolve outstanding transboundary issues.
- Management of lands cannot be separated from management of water. Water is the cross-cutting factor to combat desertification, to produce food and fibre, and to provide employment for billions of the rural populations in developing countries.

- Gender issues are inadequately dealt with in water management. The role of women, especially in developing countries, is crucial in water management at the household and community levels. These issues must be addressed within a sustainable and equitable management framework.
- Effective water resources management must help to alleviate poverty rather than make victims of the poor, women and children through bad decisions, and improper water policies.
- New water thinking is required to deal with the major challenge in the 21st century. "Business as usual" in water management is not sustainable. A paradigm shift akin to a "Blue Revolution" and analogous to the "Green Revolution" is advocated to get over the hurdles and psychological barriers quickly.
- Research and development efforts are the key to acquisition of appropriate technologies for water saving techniques, for crops that consume less water, for drought resistant varieties, and for cheaper and more effective water and waste water treatment plants, and for safer recycling and water re-use methods.
- Water conservation is an obligation on us to our future generations.
- Education is essential to produce a new cadre of technicians and specialists embodying the knowledge of integrated management and a holistic approach to raise the awareness of the public at large of the socio-economic, environmental and resources utilisation aspects.
- Cultural values of water are deeply rooted in the oldest civilisations that have flourished in the great river basins of the world.
- For water to be a true economic good, the social and cultural value must be protected and the poor should not be penalised or denied a just share or access to water.
- There is a need for new water ethics that are based on full awareness of all dimensions of water-related issues on global and local scales. Such ethics must lead the transition from a culture of water to a culture of peace where water is a source of agreement rather than a source of conflict.

The World Water Council can be reached at:

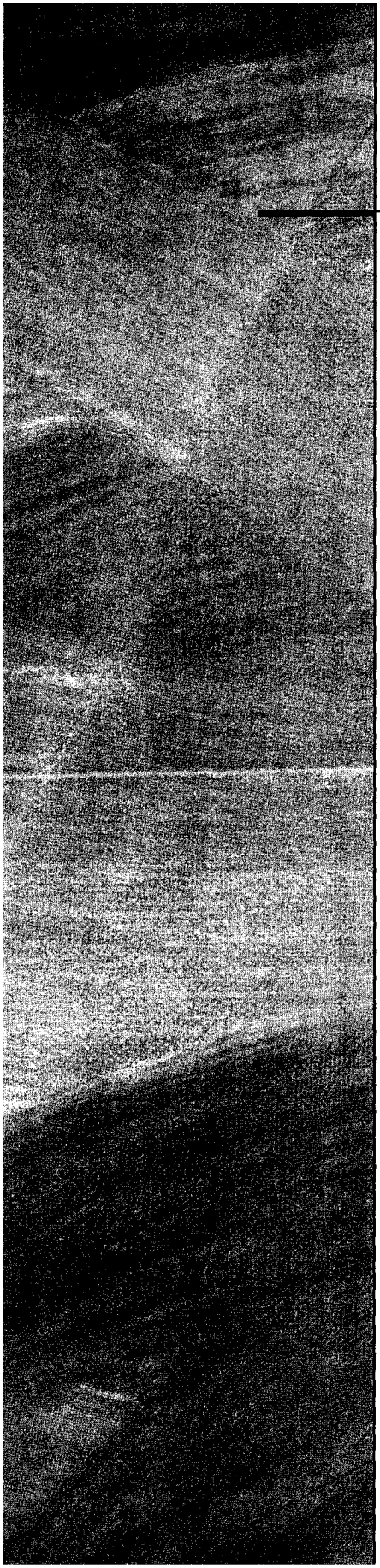
World Water Council
Les Docks Atrium 10.3
10 place de la Joliette
Marseille cedex 2, France
Telephone +33 4 91 99 41 00
Fax +33 4 91 99 41 01

Analysis

Among the environmental features in central Florida are sinkholes. These features of a karst landscape form when the roof of an underground cavern collapses into the cavern. Many of the lakes of central Florida are sinkhole lakes.

Sinkholes can suddenly form within the land surface, with any overlying structures or roads being lost into the void. Sinkhole formation is much more active during periods of drought. Why is this? For a hint, remember Archimedes' principle.

Would overdevelopment of shallow ground-water resources cause a similar problem?



CHAPTER 12

Field Methods

The rocks that form the crust of the earth are in few places, if anywhere, solid throughout. They contain numerous open spaces, called voids or interstices, and these spaces are the receptacles that hold the water that is found below the surface of the land and is recovered in part through springs and wells. There are many kinds of rocks, and they differ greatly in the number, size, shape and arrangement of their interstices and hence in their properties as containers of water. The occurrence of water in the rocks of any region is therefore determined by the character, distribution, and structure of the rocks it contains—that is by the geology of the region.

The Occurrence of Ground Water in the United States,
Oscar Edward Meinzer, 1923

12.1 Introduction

The day is past when the only activity of the hydrogeologist was to locate and design a water well. Today, hydrogeologists are involved in many phases of resource management, including environmental impact analysis, as integral members of a multidisciplinary team. Hydrogeological studies are necessary and generally required by regulatory agencies for site studies prior to construction of such projects as sanitary landfills, land-treatment systems for wastewater, surface mines, power plants, artificial-recharge lagoons, nuclear-waste repositories, dams, and reservoirs. Hydrogeologists are also helping to remediate contaminated sites.

In this chapter, we introduce several techniques that can be applied both to the exploration for ground-water supplies and to various aspects of environmental hydrogeology. This includes the use of aerial photographs and other remote sensing data, as well as both surface and borehole geophysical methods. The methods of site evaluation will be examined.

12.2 Fracture-Trace Analysis

One technique that has been gaining acceptance among hydrogeologists is the use of *fracture-trace analysis.* As we discussed in Chapter 8, ground water is known to be concentrated in fracture zones found in many different rock types. The fracture traces are located by study of linear features on aerial or satellite photographs. On air photos, natural linear features consist of tonal variation in soils, alignment of vegetative patterns, straight stream segments or valleys, aligned surface depressions, gaps in ridges, or other features showing a linear orientation (Lattman 1958). Some linear features may be visible on the ground—for instance, surface sags or straight stream segments. Others, such as variation in soil tone, or alignment or height of vegetation of a certain type, may not be noticeable except on aerial photographs (Lattman 1958). Many of these natural linear features consist of interrupted segments, which may be of different types. For instance, a straight stream segment in a floodplain may align with a row of trees in a nearby woods. Natural linear features from 1000 ft (300 m) to around 4300 ft (1500 m) in length are fracture traces. Those greater than 4300 ft are termed **lineaments** (Lattman) 1958). Some lineaments are up to 90 mi (150 km) long (Parizek 1976).

Fracture traces are surface expressions of joints, zones of joint concentration, or faults (Lattman & Matzke 1961). It is generally believed that the joint sets tend to be nearly perpendicular (Parizek 1976). They are known to extend to a depth of 3300 ft (1000 m) at one Arizona location (Lattman & Matzke 1961), although this is probably far deeper than is typical. Mapped fracture traces have been traced to cliffs where the fracture zone can be seen in cross section (Parizek 1976; Lattman & Matzke 1961). Under these observed conditions, the fracture zones dip at approximately 87° to 89°. Figure 12.1 shows an exposure of a fracture in a cliff in central Wisconsin.

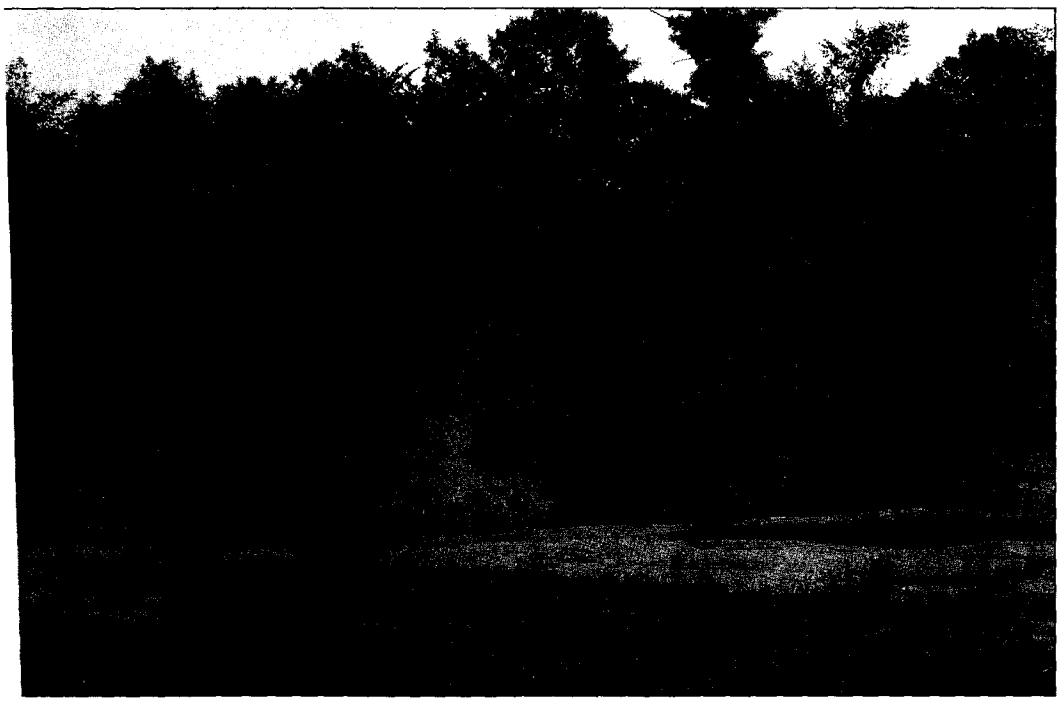
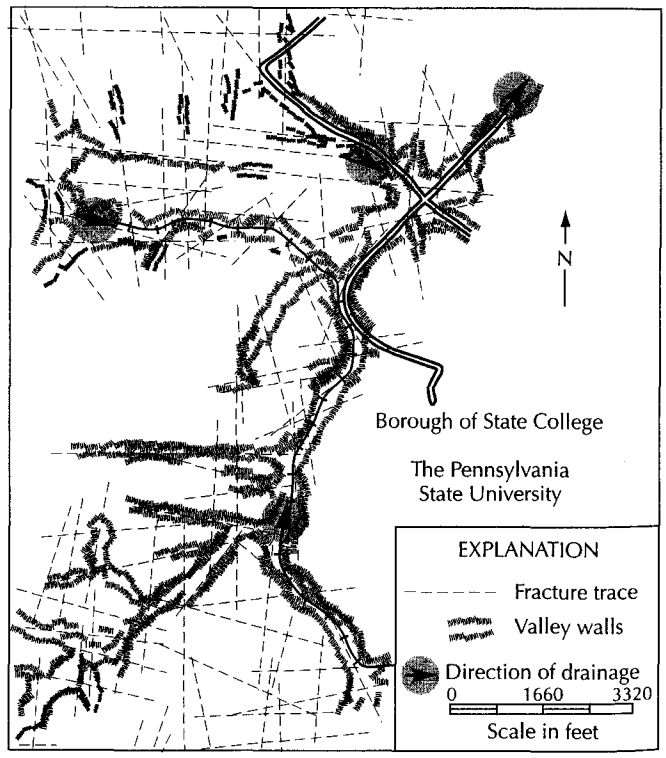


FIGURE 12.1
oss section of a zone of fracture concentration revealed in a sandstone quarry in Sauk unty, Wisconsin. *Photo by C. W. Fetter.*

These fracture zones are less resistant to erosion than rock that is less fractured. Hence, valley and stream segments tend to run along them. They may be zones of ground-water drainage, so that soils over them have a deeper water table or are not as moist as soils in surrounding areas. The soil color or vegetation may appear to be different from that of surrounding soils. If they are zones of concentrated ground-water discharge, there may be a line of springs or seeps. Fracture traces in carbonate rocks are typically areas of solution. Aligned sinkholes or surface sags are typical surface expressions.

Fracture traces may be related to regional tectonic activity. They tend to be oriented at a constant angle to the regional structural trend; however, the orientation appears to be independent of local folds (Lattman & Matzke 1961). Lineaments are known to cut across rocks of many ages and cross folds and faults (Parizek 1976). They have been observed to be parallel to the major joint sets in flat-lying or gently dipping strata, but this is not the case if the strata are steeply dipping. If surface areas are separated by major faults, the individual fault blocks may have fracture traces of different orientation (Parizek 1976). The majority of fracture traces in an area appear to be grouped into two subparallel sets that are approximately perpendicular. Streams developed in rocks where fracture control is evident have been described as having a "stair-step" pattern (Setzer 1966). In the area of central Pennsylvania shown in Figure 12.2, the valley development follows fracture traces. Most fractures are generally N–S or E–W, with lesser numbers running NW–SE and SW–NE.

Statistical studies of wells in carbonate terrane have shown that those located on fracture traces, either intentionally or accidentally, have a greater yield than those not on fracture traces (Siddiqui & Parizek 1971). Figure 12.3 illustrates that the productivity of fracture-trace wells is significantly above that of other wells not on fracture traces. The greatest yields come from wells located at the intersection of two fracture traces. Caliper logs of wells on fracture traces in carbonate-rock terrane showed many more cavernous openings and enlarged bedding planes than logs of those wells drilled in interfracture areas (Figure 12.4).



► FIGURE 12.2
Valley development in an area of folded carbonate rocks in central Pennsylvania. The valleys tend to follow fracture traces. *Source: R. R. Parizek,* Hydrogeologic Framework of Folded and Faulted Carbonates—Influence of Structure, *Mineral Conservation Series Circular 82, College of Earth and Mineral Sciences, Pennsylvania State University, 1971, pp. 28–65.*

Many hydrogeologists are successfully using fracture-trace analysis to locate high-ld wells. The technique has been applied to carbonate-rock terrane (Lattman & Parizek 54) but is also applicable to most other rock types (Parizek 1976). It is reportedly usable en if the bedrock is mantled by up to 170 ft (50 m) of glacial drift (Wobber 1967). acture-trace analysis is also widely used in selecting sites for sanitary landfills. Natural-the landfill locations are most suitable if they fall in interfracture areas. Other uses in-de analysis of foundation and dam sites, evaluation of potential water problems in nes and tunnels, and control of mine drainage (Parizek 1976).

Fracture-trace analysis is also very useful in determining the locations of ground-ter monitoring wells. Because ground-water flow preferentially follows the most per-able pathway, monitoring wells should be located on fracture traces. For example, if a zardous-waste storage lagoon is located in an area of fractured bedrock, at least one of down-gradient monitoring wells required under the Resource Conservation and Re-very Act should be located on a fracture trace.

In the identification of fracture traces on aerial photographs, a low-magnification reoscope is generally used (Lattman 1958). Possible fracture traces are indicated drawing directly on the photograph. One problem in identification is the confusion of

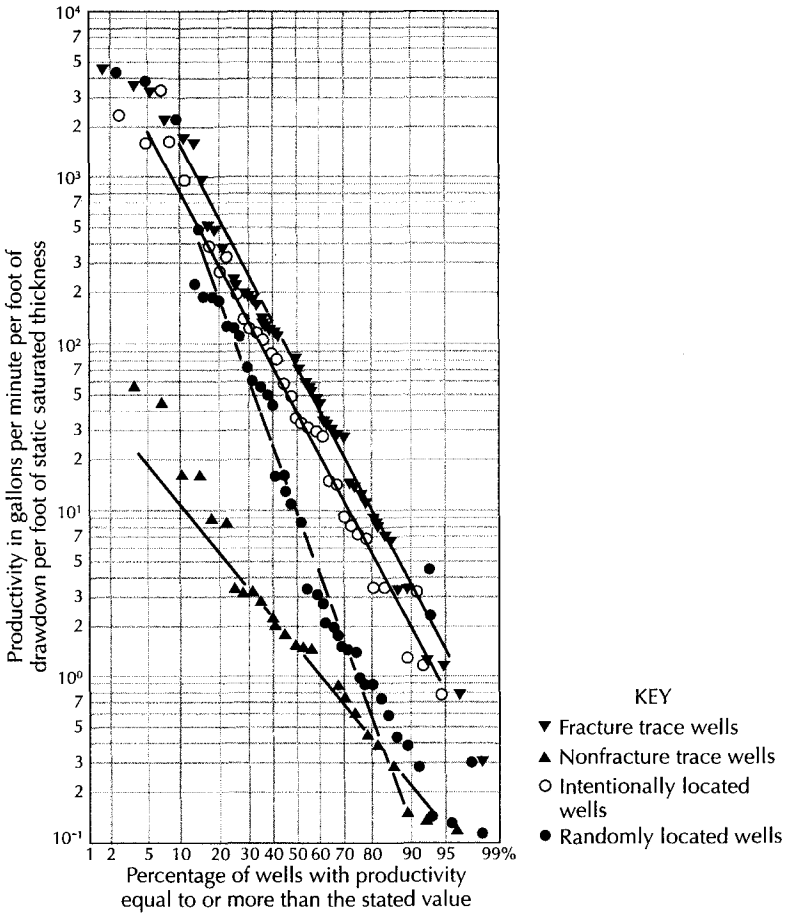
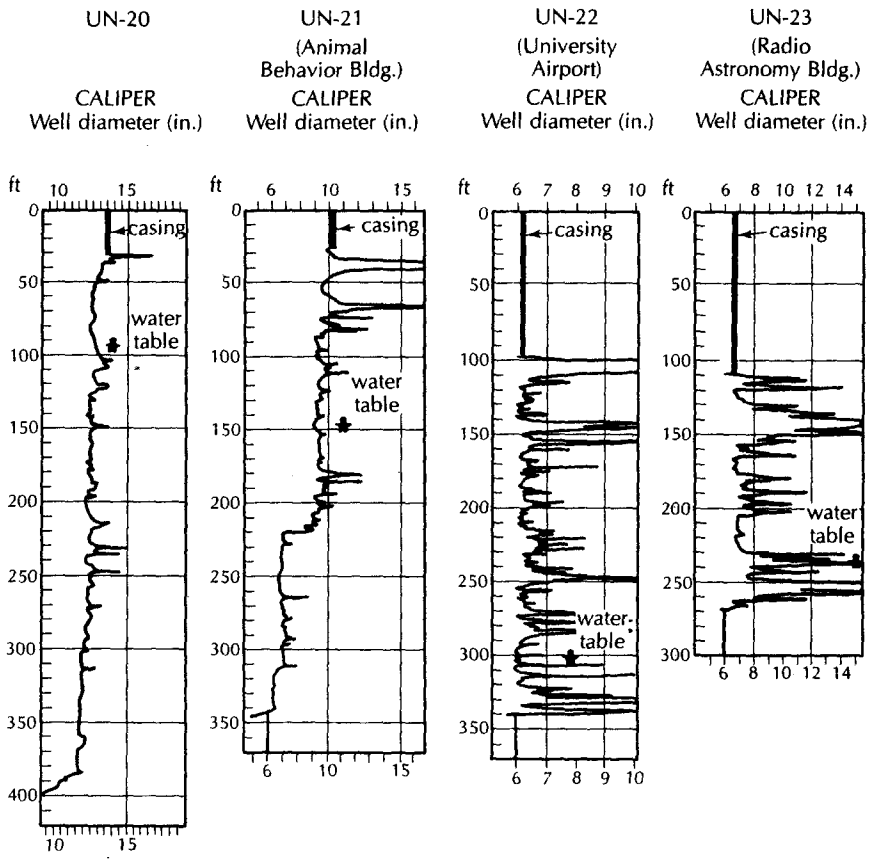


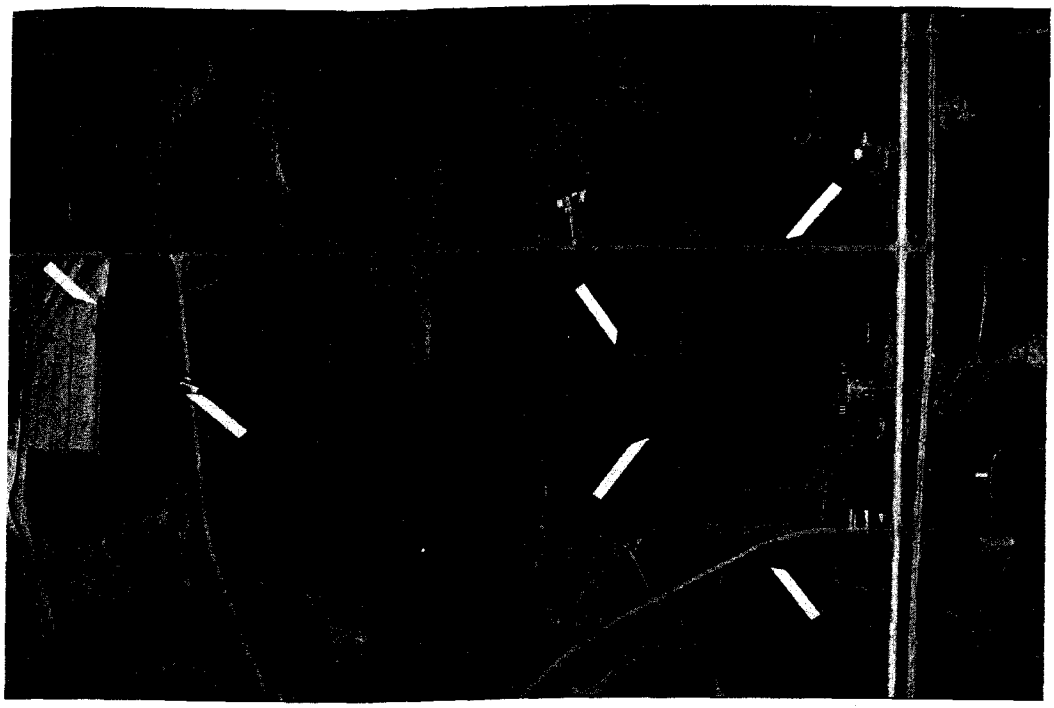
FIGURE 12.3
duction-frequency graph for water wells grouped according to whether or not they fall a fracture trace. *Source: S. H. Siddiqui and R. R. Parizek,* Water Resources Research, *7 '71): 1295–1312. Used with permission.*



▲ FIGURE 12.4
Caliper logs of wells in an area of carbonate rocks in central Pennsylvania. Wells UN-20 and UN-21 were drilled in interfracture areas; Wells UN-22 and UN-23 were located on fracture traces. *Source: L H. Lattman and R. R. Parizek,* Journal of Hydrology *(Elsevier Scientific Publishing Company) 2 (1964): 73–91. Used with permission.*

linear features of human origin (fences, cowpaths, roads, power lines, plow and harvest patterns, etc.) with natural linear features. There is also a tendency to map fracture traces at oblique angles to regular grid systems on the photographs. As section lines almost always appear on air photos, especially in cultivated areas, there is a tendency to preferentially map NW–SE and NE–SW features as fracture traces. Following the stereoscopic mapping, the photos should be checked without use of the stereoscope to see if any other features are noticed. A typical air-photo scale for fracture-trace analysis is 1:20,000. Linear features that show up in more than one expression, and those crossing roads or fields, are more likely to represent fracture traces. In Figure 12.5, subtle fracture traces are indicated in an area of farmland in central Wisconsin.

Following the mapping of linear features on air photos, it is necessary to make a field check. Some mapped features will usually turn out to be due to human activity. The more inexperienced the geologist, the more likely it is that this will occur. If a suspected fracture trace has a surface expression, it will be easier to locate in the field. Those without obvious surface expression must be located by virtue of their spatial relation to individual trees or buildings that are visible on the photographs and can be identified on the ground. In urbanizing areas, it may be possible to use older photographs taken before extensive development to map fracture traces. This makes the field location of the fracture traces even more difficult.



IGURE 12.5
l photograph of an area with up to 100 feet (30 m) of glacial sediment over carbonate in east-central Wisconsin. Three fracture traces are indicated by light lines at each end e fracture trace.

The mapping of lineaments is generally done on high-altitude air-photo or satellite ;ery. Typical high-altitude air photos have an approximate scale of 1:40,000 or more; lite imagery can be at a scale of 1:250,000. When working with these small-scale im-, numerous lineaments may be identified. It is generally not feasible to field-check all em to determine if the interpreted lineament is an actual fracture trace. For example, ıe field study in a 16.8 mi^2 (44 km^2) area in Maine, a database of approximately 6500 ments was initially developed (Mabee, Hardcastle, & Wise 1994). This represents the database of lineaments mapped by three different observers on two separate trials; a single lineament could appear up to six times in the database. To determine which preted lineaments were most likely to be fracture traces that should be ground ked, Mabee, Hardcastle, and Wise (1994) developed the following methodology.

Have multiple observers map the lineaments on the imagery and have each observer repeat the exercise at least one week later. This is a test of the reproducibility of the observations. Imagery of the same area at different scales can be used as can different images at the same scale.

Enter the latitude and longitude of the endpoints of each lineament into a geographic information system (GIS) database. In the study this resulted in a database of 6502 lineament observations (not 6502 separate lineaments).

Superimpose all mapped lineaments by plotting them on a map at the largest scale of the data source.

Identify all coincident lineaments; that is, eliminate duplication of identified lineaments due to multiple observers and multiple interpretations by each observer. This reduced the database to 643 lineament observations.

5. If the lineaments represent fracture traces, then they should follow regional fracture patterns. Several strike and dip measurements were made at bedrock outcrops across the study area and several regional fracture domains were determined by plotting rose diagrams.
6. The coincident lineaments were compared with the regional fracture domains, and those lineaments that were aligned with a regional fracture domain were considered candidates for field identification. This reduced the number of lineaments to 217.

Notably the greatest number of lineaments identified by a single observer in a single trial was 2019; hence, the Mabee, Hardcastle, and Wise (1994) method reduced the number of lineaments to be field tested by about 90%. The use of multiple observers and repeat trials reduces the uncertainly due to the subjective nature of identifying fracture traces and lineaments.

Sander, Minor, and Chesley (1997) used a method similar to that developed by Mabee, Hardcastle, and Wise (1994) to map lineaments in central Ghana. They utilized Landsat imagery and found good reproducibility of results between observers, especially of those lineaments that were thought to be hydrogeologically significant.

12.3 Surficial Methods of Geophysical Investigations

Geophysical surveys have been used by the mining and petroleum industries for many decades. Ground-water geologists soon discovered the usefulness of these surveys in exploring the shallow subsurface (within a few hundred feet), where ground-water supplies are usually found. Several different techniques are used, the most common of which are direct-current resistivity, electrical conductivity, seismic refraction, and gravity and magnetics methods. Seismic reflection is less widely used, although it is the preferred method in petroleum exploration.

Geophysical methods may be used to determine indirectly the extent and nature of the geologic materials beneath the surface. The thickness of unconsolidated surficial materials, the depth to the water table, the location of subsurface faults, and the depth of the basement rocks can all be determined. In some instances, the location, thickness, and extent of subsurface bodies, such as gravel deposits or clay layers, can also be evaluated. The correlation of geophysical data with well logs or test-boring data is generally more reliable than either type of information used by itself. As with all hydrogeological investigations, a careful definition of the problem and determination of the best type of information to solve the problem should be made before geophysical work is done. The geophysical survey should then be planned to yield the greatest amount of useful data for the budgeted cost.

12.3.1 Direct-Current Electrical Resistivity

Direct-current electrical resistivity is a useful method for hydrogeology (Zohdy, Eaton, & Mabey 1974). A commutated direct current or a current of very low frequency (less than 1 cycle per second) is generated in the field or provided by storage batteries. It is introduced into the ground by means of two metal electrodes. If the soil is dry, water may be needed around the electrodes to establish a good connection. The voltage in the ground is measured between two other metal electrodes, also driven into the ground. By knowing the current flowing through the ground and the potential differences of voltage between two electrodes, it is possible to compute the resistivity of the earth materials between the electrodes. The resistivity of earth materials varies widely, from 10^{-6} Ω·m for graphite to 10^{12} Ω·m for quartzite. Dry materials have a higher resistivity than similar wet materials, as moisture increases the ability to conduct electricity. Gravel has a higher resistivity than silt or clay under similar moisture conditions, as the electrically charged surfaces of the fine particles are better conductors.

Electrical resistivity, R, is equal to the expression

$$R = \frac{A}{L}\frac{\Delta V}{I} \tag{12.1}$$

where

A is the cross-sectional area of current flow

L is the length of the flow path

ΔV is the voltage drop

I is the electrical current

Electrical resistivity is measured in units of ohm-meters or ohm-feet. The four electrodes used can be designated as follows:

C is the positive-current electrode

D is the negative-current electrode

M, N are the potential electrodes

If $\overline{XY}$ indicates the distance between electrode X and electrode Y, Equation 12.1 can be expressed as (Zohdy, Eaton, & Mabey 1974):

$$\bar{R} = \left(\frac{2\pi}{\frac{1}{\overline{CM}} - \frac{1}{\overline{DM}} - \frac{1}{\overline{CN}} + \frac{1}{\overline{DN}}}\right)\frac{\Delta V}{I} \tag{12.2}$$

As earth materials are almost never homogeneous and electrically isotropic, the resistivity found by Equation 12.2 is an apparent resistivity, $\bar{R}$.

There are several electrode configurations in common usage. The **Wenner array*** consists of the four electrodes spaced equal distances apart in a straight line: $\overline{AM} = \overline{MN} = \overline{NB} = a$. A current electrode is on each end (Figure 12.6A). In using the Wenner array, the apparent resistivity, $\bar{R}$, may be found from the expression

$$\bar{R} = 2\pi a\frac{\Delta V}{I} \tag{12.3}$$

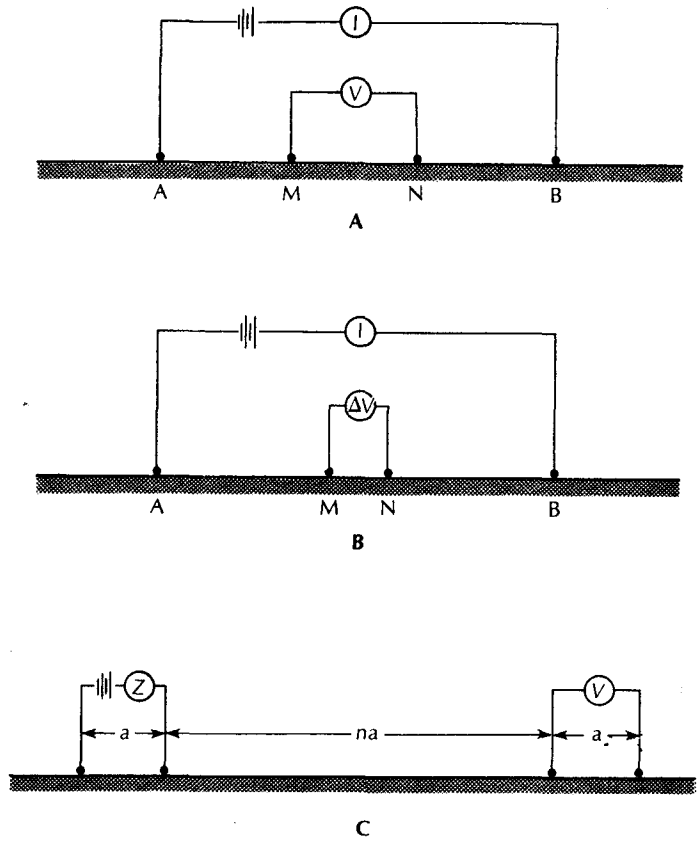
where a is the spacing between electrodes which is derived from Equation 12.2.

A second configuration is the **Schlumberger array.** It is a linear array, with potential electrodes placed close together (Figure 12.6B). Typically, $\overline{AB}$ is set equal to or greater than five times the value of $\overline{MN}$. The apparent resistivity is given by

$$\bar{R} = \pi\frac{(\overline{AB}/2)^2 - (\overline{MN}/2)^2}{\overline{MN}}\frac{\Delta V}{I} \tag{12.4}$$

The **dipole-dipole array** is particularly convenient for making electrical *soundings,* which measure the changes in electrical properties with depth. The dipole-dipole configuration has a pair of current electrodes separated from a pair of potential electrodes. The same spacing, a, is used between the current electrodes as between the potential

*ASTM Reference G57, *Test Method for Field Measurement of Soil Resistivity* using the Wenner four-electrode method.



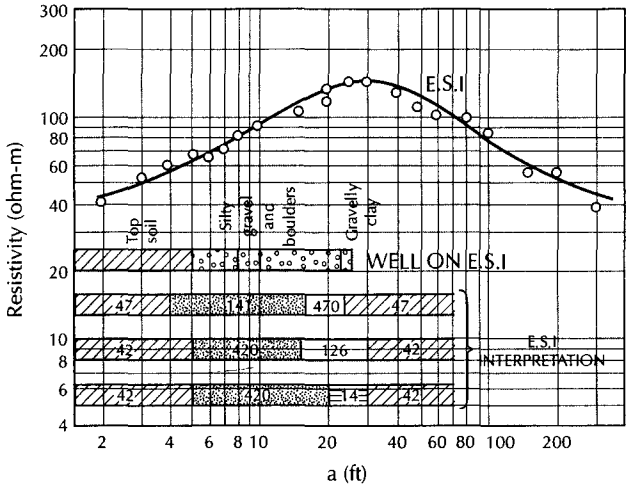
▲ FIGURE 12.6
A. Wenner electrode array. **B.** Schlumberger electrode array. **C.** Dipole-dipole electrode array.

electrodes, and the distance between the electrode pairs, na, which is a multiple, n, of a, is much greater than the electrode spacing (Figure 12.6C). The apparent resistivity for the dipole-dipole array is given by

$$\overline{R} = n(n + 1)(n + 2)a\frac{\Delta V}{I} \tag{12.5}$$

Geophysical instruments are available to measure the value of ΔV for a known I. The appropriate formula for the electrode array is used to compute the apparent resistivity.

Resistivity surveys are made in two fashions. An **electrical sounding** will reveal the variations of apparent resistivity with depth. **Horizontal profiling** is used to determine lateral variations in resistivity. When the electrode spacing is expanded in making an electrical sounding, the distance between the potential electrodes and the current electrodes increases. This means that the current will travel progressively deeper through the ground and will measure apparent resistivity to greater depths. Either the Wenner or the Schlumberger array may be used; however, the latter is more convenient for electrical sounding, because for each incremental measurement, only the outer current electrodes must be moved every time. The inner electrodes are spread only occasionally. In the Wenner array, all four electrodes must be moved for each incremental measurement. The sounding is begun with the electrodes close together. After each reading, the electrodes are reposi-



◀ FIGURE 12.7
Wenner electrical-sounding curve of apparent resistivity as a function of electrode spacing. Three possible interpretations and a test boring are also given. *Source: A. A. R. Zohdy,* Ground Water,*3, no. 3 (1965): 41–48. Used with permission. Copyright © 1965. Ground Water Publishing Co.*

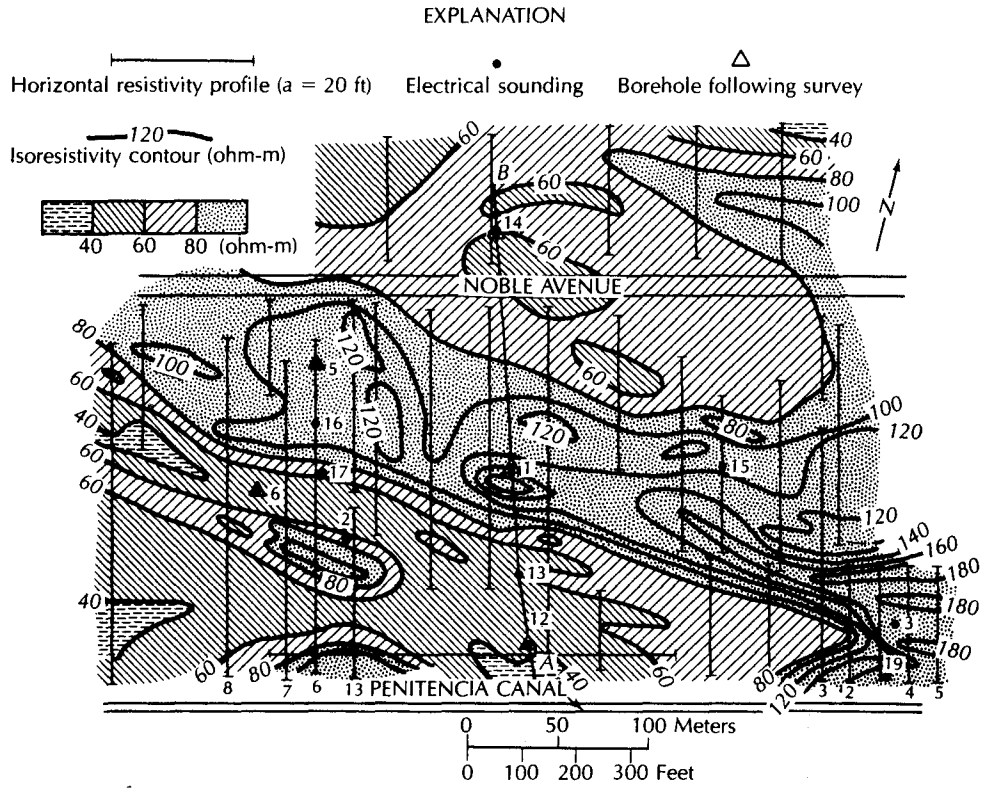
tioned with a, or $\overline{AB}/2$, increased and a new measurement made. The apparent resistivity is plotted on logarithmic paper as a function of electrode spacing. For a number of reasons (Zohdy, Eaton, & Mabey 1974), the Schlumberger array is superior to the Wenner array for electrical soundings. There is, however, a set of theoretical type curves of Wenner apparent resistivity for two-, three-, and four-layer earth models (Mooney & Wetzel 1956). This could be helpful in interpreting the results of a Wenner-array electrical sounding.

Radstake et al. (1991) developed a simple numerical model that can predict the expected response of a Wenner or Schlumberger resistivity sounding for a known earth profile. If one has some general knowledge of the geology of the area to be profiled, then this method can be used to select the optimum electrode spacing.

Goyal, Niwas, and Gupta (1991) evaluated a modified version of the Wenner array. The modified version starts with the inner potential electrodes very close to each other, as in the Schlumberger array. The outer current electrodes are kept in the same location, and the inner electrodes are gradually spread. They will pass through the standard Wenner array when the spacing between all four electrodes is the same and will eventually arrive at a configuration where the potential electrodes are close to the current electrodes. Goyal et al. found that this arrangement gave very good resolution for shallow resistivity soundings, especially in the vadose zone.

For a homogeneous earth, there is a definite relationship between the electrode spacing and the percent of the current that penetrates to a given depth (Zohdy 1965). For a nonhomogeneous and layered earth, the exact relationship cannot be easily determined. It is safe to assume that the greater the electrode spacing, the deeper the stratum influencing the apparent-resistivity curve. There are a number of possible earth models that could produce a given curve. Figure 12.7 shows three possible theoretical interpretations expressed as resistivity and a test-boring log. The rise in apparent resistivity indicates a shallow zone of high resistivity. The test boring shows this to be a layer of silty gravel and boulders from 5 to 23 ft. It should be noted that the apparent-resistivity curve peaks at 30 ft. An interpretation that the layer of maximum resistivity lay at 30 ft would have been wrong.

In horizontal profiling, the electrode spacing is kept at a constant value. The electrodes are moved in a grid pattern over the land surface. The apparent resistivity of each point on the grid is marked on a map and isoresistivity contours are drawn. Figure 12.8 shows an apparent-resistivity map based on a large number of horizontal resistivity measurements. An area of buried stream-channel gravels is delineated where the apparent resistivity exceeds 80 Ω·m (Zohdy 1965). A geologic cross section based on test borings and electrical



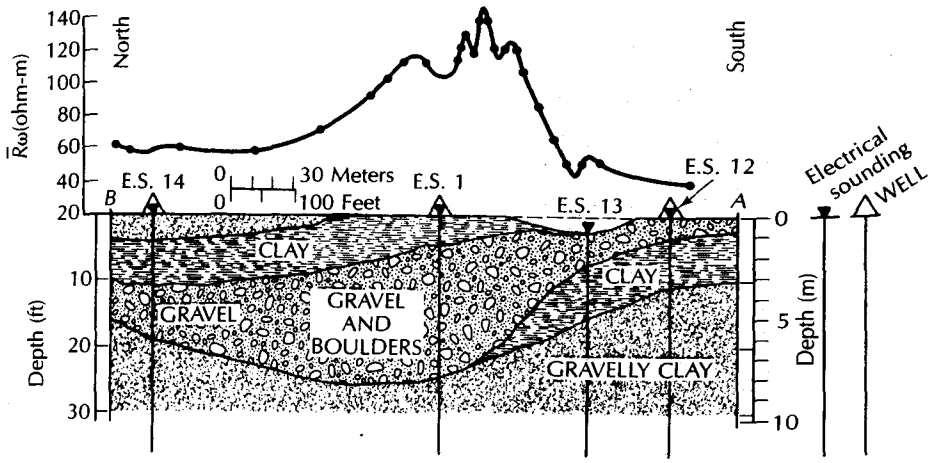
▲ FIGURE 12.8
Apparent-resistivity map of Penitencia, California. Locations of resistivity profiles, soundings, and boreholes are shown. The location of Borehole and Electrical Sounding 1 is in the center of the high-resistivity zone. *Source: A. A. R. Zohdy,* Ground Water, *3, no. 3 (1965): 41–48. Used with permission. Copyright © 1965. Ground Water Publishing Co.*

resistivity soundings is shown in Figure 12.9. The location of the cross section is indicated in Figure 12.8 as line *AB*.

Some applications of electrical-resistivity surveys include identification of a buried fault in the Bunker Hill ground-water basin in San Bernardino, California (Park, Lambert, & Lee 1990), areas of vertical fractures in crystalline rock terrain in Brazil (Medeiros & De Lima 1990), and mapping the layered structure of a closed landfill in Dupage County, Illinois (Carpenter, Kaufmann, & Price 1990).

Geoelectrical methods are useful in ground-water studies for such purposes as defining buried stream channels and areas of saline versus fresh ground water. Saline water has a much lower resistivity, as it is a better electrical conductor. Interpretation for such cases is relatively simple and may be done qualitatively. Layers of very low resistivity, such as clay, can also be discerned on sounding curves. It is often impossible to pick out the water table on an electrical sounding (Zohdy, Eaton, & Mabey 1974), although it is frequently attempted.

Electrical resistivity methods have been applied to many ground-water situations where the resistance of the fluid in the ground varies. For example, this occurs where there is a plume of saline ground water. Such a plume may be the result of salt-water intrusion, saline water seeping from a brine pit, or leachate from a landfill. The dissolved solids in the ground water can conduct electricity more readily and thus will have a lower apparent resistivity. A map of the apparent resistivity created by horizontal profiling can often show areas of contaminated ground water (Gilkeson & Cartwright 1983; Yazicigil & Sendlein



▲ FIGURE 12.9
Geologic cross section based on test borings and electrical soundings. The position of the cross section is shown as line *AB* on Figure 13.8. *Source: A. A. R. Zohdy,* Ground Water *3, no. 3 (1965): 41–48. Used with permission. Copyright © 1965. Ground Water Publishing Co.*

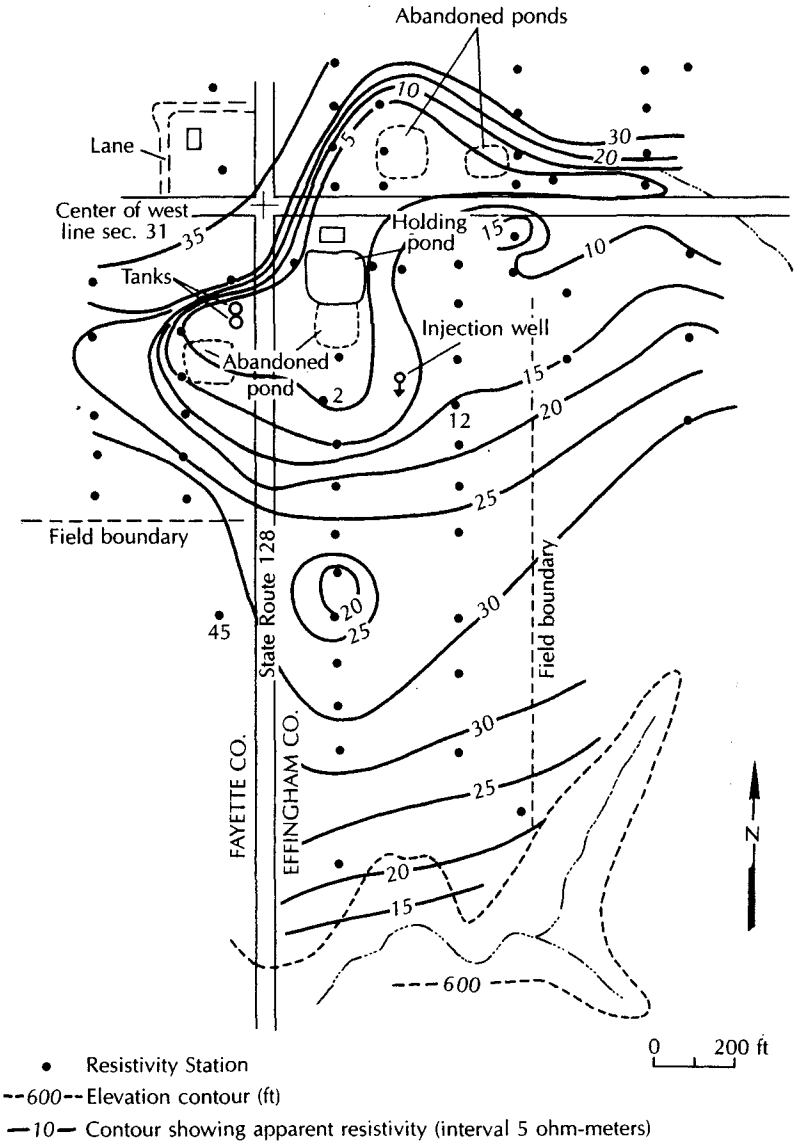
1982; Stewart, Layton, & Lizanec 1983; Urish 1983; Fretwell & Stewart 1981). Figure 12.10 shows the apparent resistivities around oil-field brine ponds in Illinois. The data were obtained by horizontal profiling using a Wenner electrode array of 20 ft (Reed, Cartwright, & Osby 1981). The areas of low apparent resistivity indicate where the ground water contains higher levels of dissolved solids. These areas occur around both an active holding pond and abandoned ponds. There is a ground-water mound beneath the active brine pond, indicating that seepage from it is the cause of part of the ground-water contamination. However, the low apparent resistivity in the vicinity of the abandoned ponds indicates that there is also residual ground-water contamination.

12.3.2 Electromagnetic Conductivity

Electricity traveling through sedimentary units is transmitted more readily by the fluids in the pore spaces and by the fluid-grain interfaces than through the mineral grains themselves. As a result, the pore surface area and the pore fluid conductivity are important factors in determining overall bulk conductivity of earth units (Stewart 1982). Electromagnetic conductivity is the inverse of electrical resistivity. Field studies have shown similar results when both methods have been used at the same site (Sweeney 1984).

Electromagnetic methods use an electromagnetic field generated by a transmitter coil through which an alternating current is passed. This generates a magnetic field around the transmitter coil. When the transmitter coil is held near the earth, the magnetic field induces an electrical field in the earth. The electrical field will travel through the ground at different strengths depending upon the ground conductivity. The field strength is measured in a passive receiver coil. Changes in the phase, amplitude, and orientation of the primary field can be measured either with time or distance by using the receiver. These changes are related to the electrical properties of the earth.

There are several different electromagnetic methods available. They all have the advantage of being rapid, as none of them require the insertion of electrodes into the ground. Electromagnetic methods are not inherently more accurate than direct resistivity methods, but are likely to be more cost-effective, because field work can often be completed more rapidly. They can be used to detect changes in earth conductivity related to contaminant



▲ FIGURE 12.10
Apparent resistivity from horizontal profiling with a 20-ft spacing in the vicinity of oil-field brine holding ponds in Illinois. *Source: Modified from P. C. Reed, K. Cartwright, and D. Osby, Illinois State Geological Survey Environmental Geology Note 95, 1981, p. 17.*

plumes, buried metallic wastes such as drums, or salt-water interfaces (Stewart 1982; Sweeney 1984; Stewart & Gay 1986; Greenhouse & Slaine 1983).

Geonics, Ltd., of Mississisauga, Ontario, Canada, is the manufacturer of a line of electromagnetic equipment. This is not an endorsement of Geonics, Ltd. products; the brand name is given because their products are generally referenced by model number in the hydrogeological literature.

The Geonics EM-31 has the transmitter and receiver coils in the same unit. The coils are mounted on a long pole so that they have a fixed separation distance of 12 ft (3.66 m). The unit can be used by a single operator, who can walk along a line and note the meter

readings at stations every 10 ft (3 m) or so. The output from the instruments is apparent conductivity in millimhos per meter. It can also be read continuously, allowing small-scale heterogeneities to be determined with greater precision than practical with electrical resistivity methods, where the electrodes must be moved for each separate reading. As the distance between the transmitter and the receiver cannot be varied, the depth of penetration of the electrical field is constant and relatively shallow, about 20 ft (6 m).

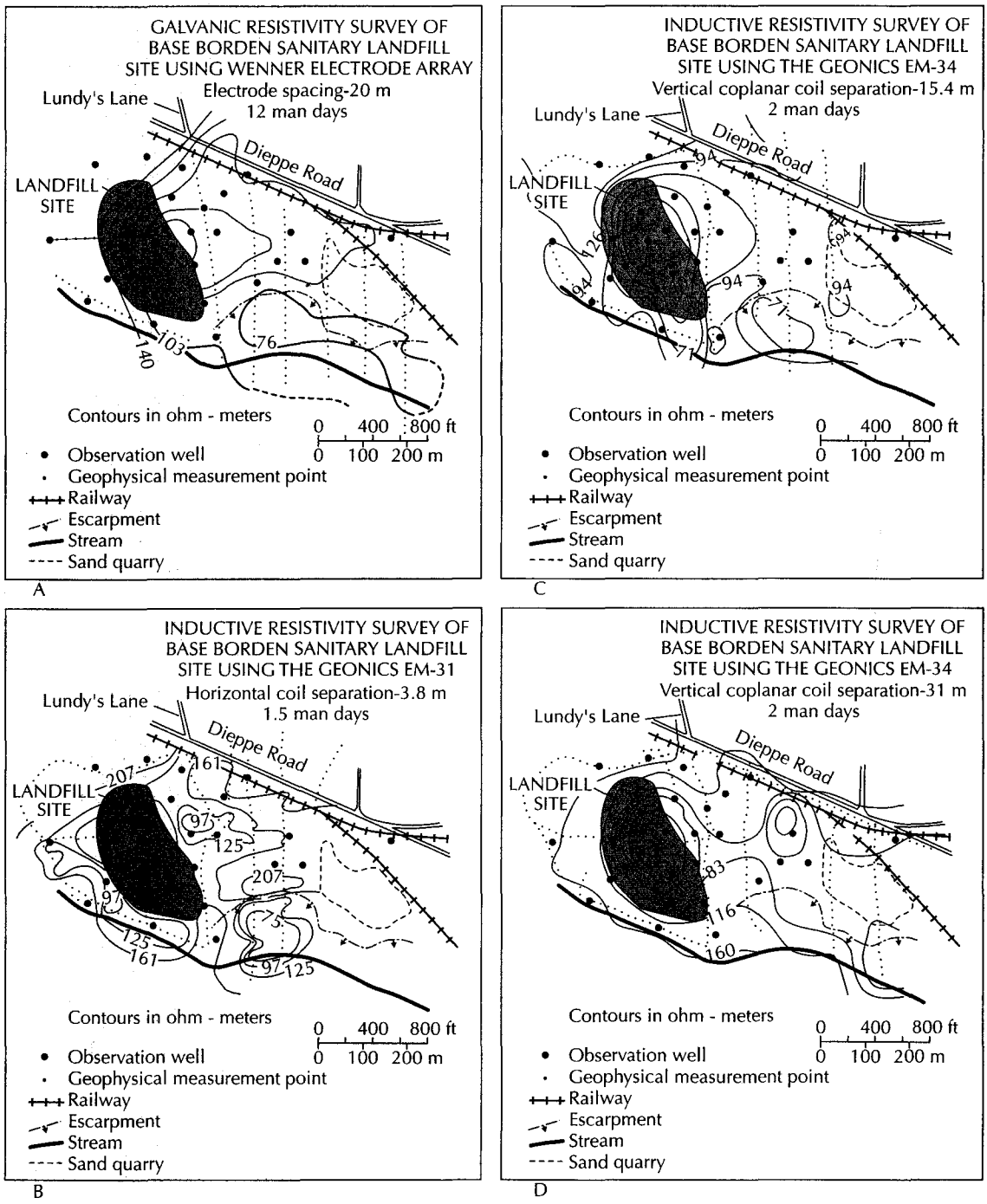
The Geonics EM-34-3 has separate units for the transmitter and the receiver coils. Two operators are needed, one for each coil. The coils can be held either horizontally or vertically. They are separated by a distance, *L*. With the coils oriented horizontally, the effective depth of penetration is about 0.75 *L*. If the coils are oriented vertically, the effective depth of penetration is about 1.5*L* and the readings are less influenced by the near-surface layers. The EM-34-3 can be operated at three different intercoil spacings: 32.8, 65.6, and 131.1 ft (10, 20, and 40 m). The EM-34-3 unit can be used to study earth conductivity to much greater depths than the EM-31 as the spacing between transmitter and receiver can be much greater than the fixed 12 ft of the EM-31. Figure 12.11 illustrates the use of both the EM-31 and EM-34-3 in terrain conductivity mapping at a sanitary landfill site. The area was mapped by both electrical resistivity and electromagnetic conductivity using the Wenner array with a 20-m electrode spacing (Figure 12.11A), the EM-31 (Figure 12.11B), the EM-34-3 with a 15-m vertical coplanar coil spacing (Figure 12.11C), and the EM-34-3 with a 31-m vertical coplanar spacing (Figure 12.11D). The earth conductivity was converted to resistivity, in ohm-meters, by inverting and then dividing by 1000. The term *inductive resistivity* refers to conductivity converted to resistivity in this manner. Note that the terrain conductivity surveys took about one-sixth of the person days that were required for the resistivity survey.

Terrain conductivity surveys can be distorted by conductors such as buried pipelines and steel tanks. They can also be adversely impacted by high-tension power lines and electrical storms. Electrical conductivity is sometimes referred to as frequency domain electromagnetics (FDEM).

The time domain electromagnetic (TDEM) technique is a variation of electrical conductivity. In TDEM, an electrical current is induced in the ground by varying the magnetic field of a transmitter located on the ground surface (Mills & others 1988). A transmitter of insulated wire is laid on the ground in a square loop. A receiver is placed in the center of the transmitter loop. In TDEM the electrical current in the transmitter loop is rapidly turned on and off. The current creates a primary magnetic field. When the current is turned off, the primary magnetic field will decay, and that decay will induce an eddy current in the ground. The longer the time period between pulses of current, the deeper the eddy currents will penetrate into the earth. The receiver measures electromotive forces created by the secondary magnetic field, created by the eddy currents in the ground. Just after the current is shut off, the electromotive forces are a function of the electrical resistivity of the near-surface stratigraphy. As time elapses, the electromotive forces will be reflective of deeper layers. The measured electromotive forces will hence be a function of the distance from the transmitter to the receiver and the time since the current was shut off.

The size of the transmitter loop is a function of the desired depth of investigation. Mills and others (1988) used loops varying in size from 100 m × 100 m to 500 m × 500 m, to investigate salt-water intrusion in an aquifer at depths ranging from 50 to 200 m.

Hoekstra and others (1992) used TDEM for environmental site assessment for two purposes—to determine the migration of brine from oil-and-gas-field evaporation pits, and to map the continuity of clay layers. They found that it could be successfully used at depths as shallow as 5 to 100 m.



▲ FIGURE 12.11
Comparison of electrical resistivity and electrical conductivity measurements at a sanitary landfill at Camp Bordon, Ontario. The low-resistivity area represents a plume of contaminated ground water with high total dissolved solids. The plume shows up more clearly on the surveys with greater depth of penetration (Wenner array and EM-34-3).
Source: Geonics Ltd. Used with permission.

12.3.3 Seismic Methods

Seismic methods using artificially created seismic waves traveling through the ground are quite commonly employed in hydrogeology. These methods are useful in determining depth to bedrock, slope of the bedrock, depth to water table, and, in some cases, the general lithology. Applied seismology has been highly developed in the petroleum industry, where the *seismic reflection method* is used almost exclusively. Structural and formational boundaries can be indicated to great depth.

Hydrogeological studies often involve finding the thickness of unconsolidated material overlying bedrock. For this purpose, the **seismic refraction method*** is superior. The loose material transmits seismic waves more slowly than consolidated bedrock. By studying the arrival times of seismic waves at various distances from the energy source, the depth to bedrock can be determined.

The energy source can be a small explosive charge set in a shallow drill hole. One or two sticks of dynamite is sufficient for depths to bedrock in excess of 100 to 200 ft (30 to 50 m). Of course, explosives should be handled only by persons trained and licensed to do so. A judgment of how large a charge to use must be made in each case. For shallower work, 15 to 50 ft (5 to 15 m), a sledgehammer struck on a steel plate lying on the ground may be a sufficient energy source. The seismic wave is detected by geophones placed in the earth in a line extending away from the energy source. A seismograph records the travel time for the wave to go from the energy source to the geophone. The more sophisticated seismographs are multichannel units with a number of geophones attached.

Figure 12.12 illustrates the travel paths of compressive seismic waves traveling through a two-layer earth. The seismic velocity in the lower layer is greater than that in the upper layer. As the energy travels faster in the lower layer, the wave passing through it gets ahead of the wave in the upper layer. At the boundary between the two layers, part of the energy is refracted back upward from the lower-layer boundary to the surface.

The angle of refraction of each wave front is called the *critical angle*, i_c, and is equal to the arcsin of the ratio of the velocities (V) of the two layers:

$$i_c = \sin^{-1}\frac{V_1}{V_2} \tag{12.6}$$

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Determine the critical angle, i_c, when $V_1 = 1000$ m/s and $V_2 = 4000$ m/s.

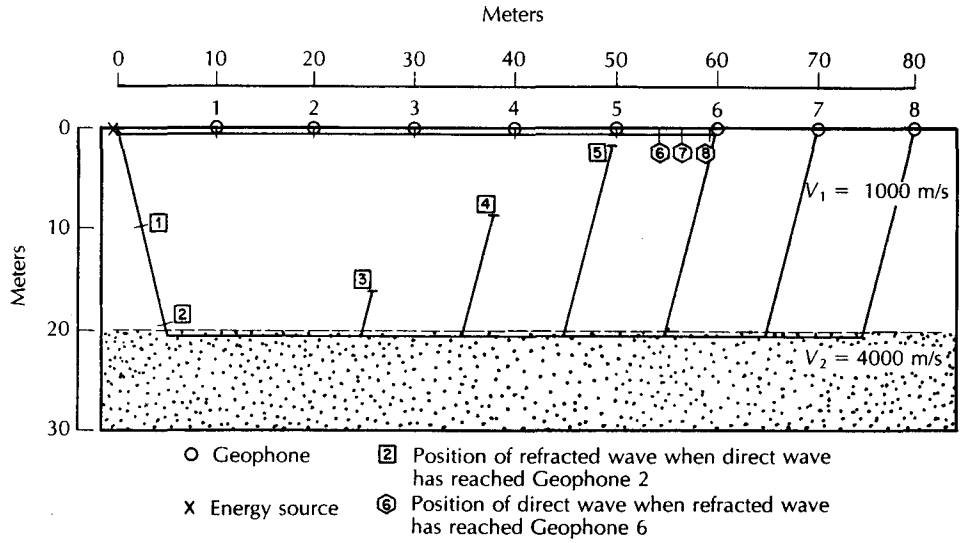
$$i_c = \sin^{-1}V_1/V_2 = \arcsin 0.25 = 14.5°$$

Figure 12.13 illustrates a wave front and the path of the refracted energy that travels along the lower-layer boundary. A direct wave in the upper layer is also shown.

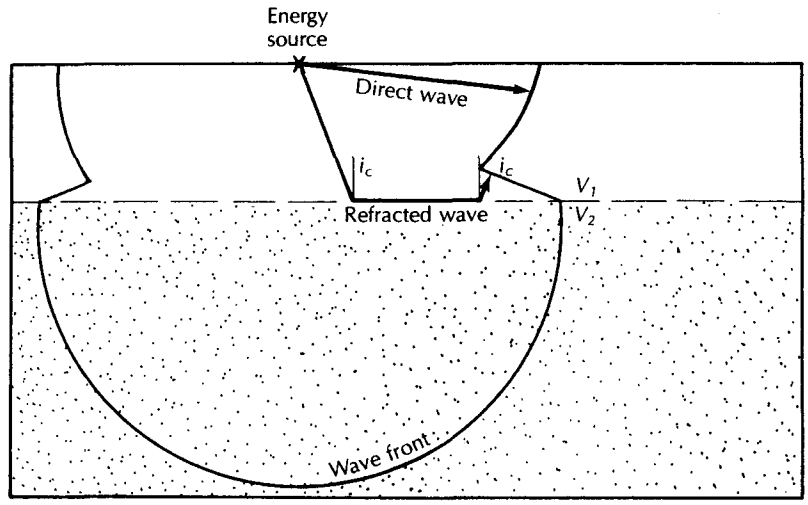
If V_2 is less than V_1, the wave will be refracted downward and no energy will be directed upward. Thus, the refraction method will show higher-velocity layers but not lower-velocity layers that are overlain by a high-velocity layer.

Energy can travel directly through the upper layer from the source to the geophone. This is the shortest distance, but the waves do not travel as fast as those traveling along the top of the lower layer. The latter must go farther, but they do so with a higher velocity. In Figure 12.12, the positions of waves traveling to each geophone are indicated. Geophones

*ASTM Reference D5777—*Guide for Using the Seismic Refraction Method for Subsurface Investigation.*



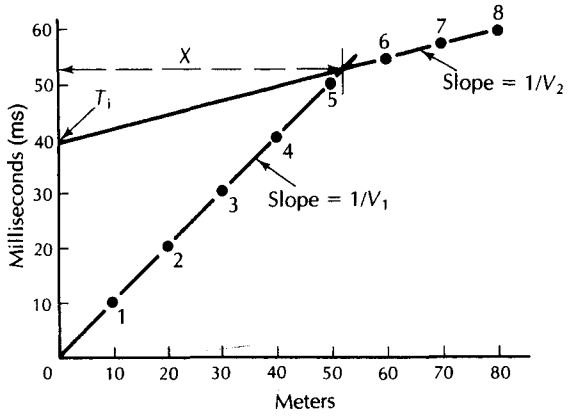
▲ FIGURE 12.12
Travel paths of a refracted seismic wave and a direct wave. The direct wave will reach the first five geophones first, but for the more distant geophones the first arrival is from a refracted wave. Numbers inside symbols refer to distances traveled by wave paths going toward the indicated geophone.



▲ FIGURE 12.13
A seismic wave front at a given time after a charge is detonated.

1 through 5 first receive waves that have traveled through only the upper layer. The sixth and succeeding geophones measure arrival times of refracted waves that have gone through the high-velocity layer as well. The position of the trailing wave front at each time the leading front reaches each geophone is indicated in the figure.

A graph is made of the arrival time of the first wave to reach the geophone versus the distance from the energy source to the geophone. This is known as a *travel-time* or *time-distance curve.* Figure 12.14 shows the time-distance curve for the shot in Figure 12.12. The reciprocal of the slope of each straight-line segment is the apparent velocity in the layer through which the first arriving wave passed. The slope of the first segment is 10 ms per 10 m, so that the reciprocal is 10 m per 10 ms, or 1000 m/s.



◀ FIGURE 12.14
Arrival time—distance diagram for a two-layered seismic problem. Numbers refer to geophones in Figure 12.12.

The projection of the second line segment backward to the time-axis ($X = 0$) yields a value known as the *intercept time*, T_i. This value can be determined graphically, as shown in Figure 12.14. T_i is 39 ms and X is 52 m. The depth to the lower layer, Z, is found from the following equation (Dobrin 1976).

$$Z = \frac{T_i}{2} \frac{V_1 V_2}{\sqrt{V_2^2 - V_1^2}} \tag{12.7}$$

The depth to the lower layer can also be found from the following equation (Dobrin 1976).

$$Z = \frac{X}{2} \sqrt{\frac{V_2 - V_1}{V_1 + V_2}} \tag{12.8}$$

where X is the distance from the shot to the point at which the direct wave and the refracted wave arrive simultaneously. This is shown on Figure 12.14 as the x-axis distance where the two line segments cross.

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

Find the value Z from Figure 12.14

From the slope of each line segment, $V_1 = 1000$ m/s and $V_2 = 4000$ m/s. T_i is 39 ms and X is 52 m.

$$Z = \frac{T_i}{2} \frac{V_1 V_2}{\sqrt{V_2^2 - V_1^2}}$$

$$= \frac{0.039 \text{ s}}{2} \times \frac{1000 \text{ m/s} \times 4000 \text{ m/s}}{\sqrt{(4000 \text{ m/s})^2 - (1000 \text{ m/s})^2}}$$

$$= 20 \text{ m}$$

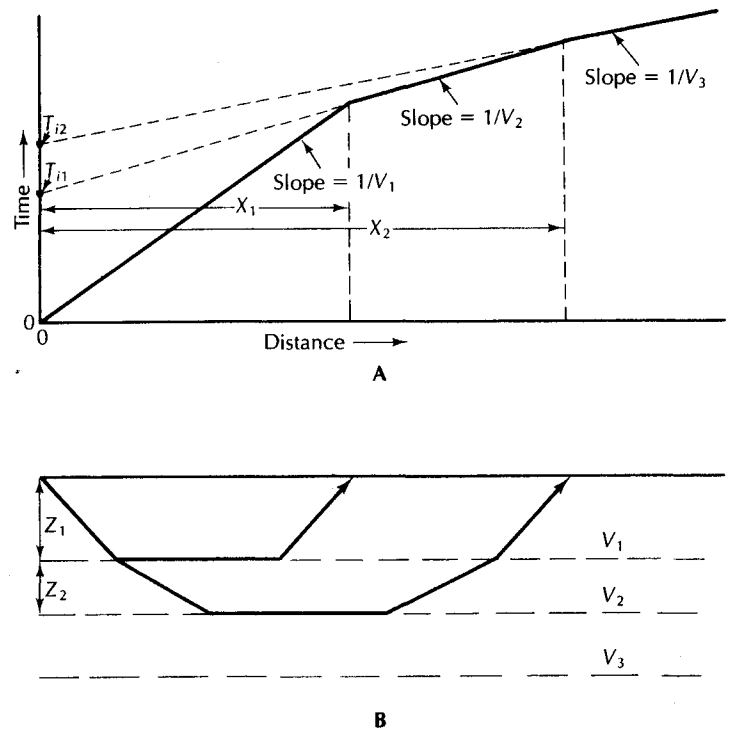
also,

$$Z = \frac{X}{2} \sqrt{\frac{V_2 - V_1}{V_1 + V_2}}$$

$$= \frac{52 \text{ m}}{2} \sqrt{\frac{4000 \text{ m/s} - 1000 \text{ m/s}}{4000 \text{ m/s} + 1000 \text{ m/s}}}$$

$$= 20 \text{ m}$$

A more typical case in hydrogeology is a three-layer earth, the top layer being unsaturated, unconsolidated material. In the next layer, below the water table, the unconsolidated



▲ FIGURE 12.15
A. Diagram of arrival time versus distance for a three-layered seismic problem. **B.** Wave path for a three-layered seismic problem.

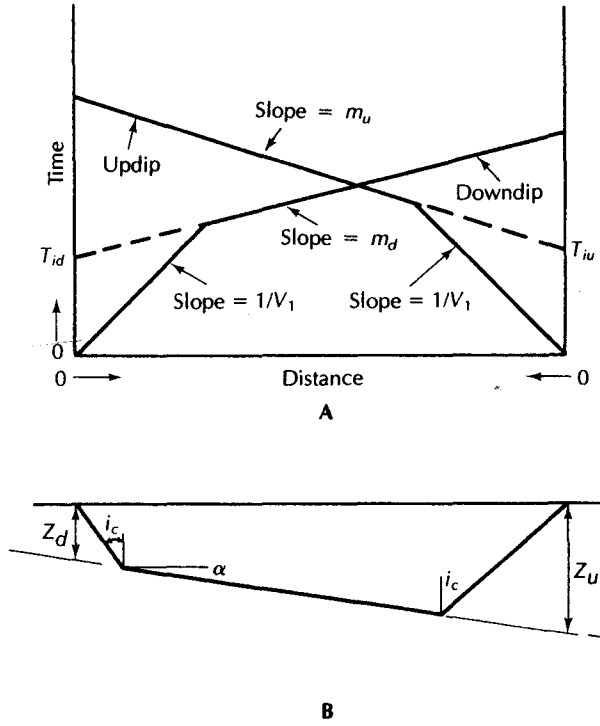
deposits are saturated, which yields a higher seismic velocity. The third layer is then bedrock. Under such conditions, the seismic method can be used to find the water table. However, similar velocities are possible from either saturated sand or unsaturated glacial till. Similar seismic refraction patterns could be obtained from a water table in a uniform sand deposit or a layer of unsaturated sand overlying unsaturated glacial till. This illustrates the point that geophysics is best interpreted in light of other data.

The three-layer seismic refraction case with $V_1 < V_2 < V_3$ is shown in Figure 12.15. The first arriving waves show three line segments. The reciprocal of the slope of each line is the seismic velocity of the respective layers. The intercept time for each of the two deeper layers is the projection of the line segment back to the time-axis. Indicated on the figure is the distance, X_1, from the shot to the point at which waves from layers 1 and 2 arrive simultaneously and the distance, X_2, to the point at which waves from layers 2 and 3 arrive simultaneously. The thickness, Z_1, of layer 1 is found from the values of V_1 and V_2 and either T_{i1} or X_1 using Equation 12.7 or 12.8. The thickness of the second layer, Z_2, is found using (Dobrin 1976)

$$Z_2 = \frac{1}{2}\left(T_{i2} - 2Z_1\frac{\sqrt{V_3^2 - V_1^2}}{V_3V_1}\right)\left(\frac{V_2V_3}{V_3^2 - V_2^2}\right)$$

The value of Z_1 must be computed before computing the value of Z_2.

The velocities computed from the reciprocals of the slope are called *apparent velocities*. If the lower layer is horizontal, they represent the actual velocity. However, if the lower layer is sloping, the arrival time for a shot measured downslope will be different from one measured upslope. Seismic lines are routinely run with a shot at either end, so that dipping beds can be determined. Time-distance curves for a dipping stratum are shown in Figure 12.16, with travel times measured from shots at either end of the line. The upper layer is unaffected by



▲ FIGURE 12.16.
A. Diagram of arrival time versus distance for a two-layered seismic problem with a sloping lower layer. **B.** Wave path for the preceding problem.

the dip of the lower bed, so that the reciprocal of the slope of the first line segment is V_1. To find the values of V_2 and the depth to the bedrock at the updip end of the line, Z_d, as well as at the downdip end, Z_u, a complex series of computations must be made (Dobrin 1976).

The slope of the second line segment of the downdip line is m_d, and the slope of the second line segment of the updip line is m_u. The value of the angle of refraction, i_c, is found from

$$i_c = \frac{1}{2}(\sin^{-1}V_1 m_d + \sin^{-1}V_1 m_u) \tag{12.10}$$

The value of V_2 is given by

$$V_2 = \frac{V_1}{\sin i_c} \tag{12.11}$$

The angle of slope of the dipping layer, α, is found from

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{2}(\sin^{-1}V_1 m_d - \sin^{-1}V_1 m_u) \tag{12.12}$$

Finally, the depths to the lower layer at either end of the shot line are found from the expressions

$$Z_u = \frac{V_1 T_{iu}}{(\cos\alpha)(2\cos i_c)} \tag{12.13}$$

$$Z_d = \frac{V_1 T_{id}}{(\cos\alpha)(2\cos i_c)} \tag{12.14}$$

If there are more than two dipping layers, then expressions of greater complexity must be used (Mota 1954).

EXAMPLE PROBLEM

A seismic survey yielded data for a dipping two-layer case in which the following values were obtained:

$$V_1 = 1570 \text{ m/s}$$
$$m_u = 1.67 \times 10^{-4} \text{ s/m}$$
$$m_d = 1.54 \times 10^{-4} \text{ s/m}$$
$$T_{id} = 0.046 \text{ s}$$
$$T_{iu} = 0.050 \text{ s}$$

Compute V_2, Z_u, and Z_d.

$$\begin{aligned} i_c &= \tfrac{1}{2}(\sin^{-1}V_1 m_d + \sin^{-1}V_1 m_u) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(\sin^{-1}1570 \times 1.54 \times 10^{-4} + \sin^{-1}1570 \times 1.67 \times 10^{-4}) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(13.99 + 15.20) \\ &= 14.6^\circ \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} V_2 &= V_1/\sin i_c \\ &= 1570/\sin 14.6^\circ \\ &= 6230 \text{ m/s} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha &= \tfrac{1}{2}(\sin^{-1}V_1 m_d - \sin^{-1}V_1 m_u) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(\sin^{-1}1570 \times 1.54 \times 10^{-4} - \sin^{-1}1570 \times 1.67 \times 10^{-4}) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(13.99 - 15.20) \\ &= -0.6^\circ \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Z_u &= \frac{V_1 T_{iu}}{(\cos\alpha)(2\cos i_c)} \\ &= \frac{1570 \times 0.050}{\cos -0.6^\circ \times 2 \times \cos 14.6^\circ} \\ &= 40.6 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Z_d &= \frac{V_1 T_{id}}{(\cos\alpha)(2\cos i_c)} \\ &= \frac{1570 \times 0.046}{\cos -0.6^\circ \times 2 \times \cos 14.6^\circ} \\ &= 37.3 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

The cases given in this section are but a few of the many possible ones that might be encountered. Figure 12.17 shows schematic travel-time curves for a number of nonhomogeneous earth models. Should the hydrogeologist suspect that the situation is more than a simple two- or three-layer model with homogeneous beds, an experienced geophysicist should interpret the field data.

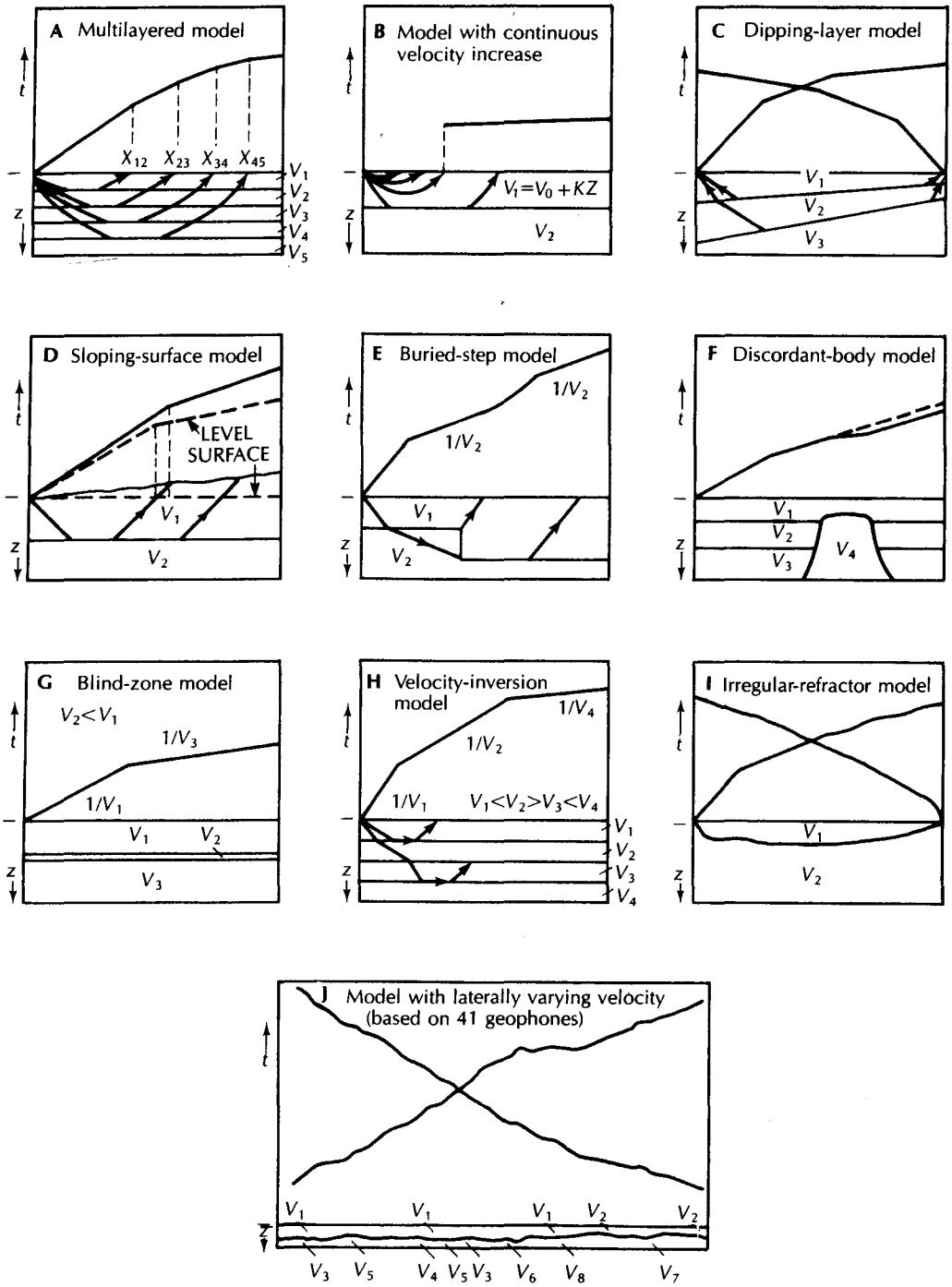


FIGURE 12.17
Schematic travel-time curves for idealized nonhomogeneous geologic models. *Source: G. P. Eaton. "Seismology," in* Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations. *U.S. Geological Survey, 1974, Book 2, Chap. D1, pp. 67–84.*

The principal application of refraction seismology in hydrogeology has been in the identification of buried refractors such as the top of the water table—which, being saturated, has a greater seismic velocity than the unsaturated equivalent soil unit—and the bedrock surface (Sverdrup 1986). It has been very useful in the delineation of bedrock valleys buried in glacial drift (Denne et al. 1984), and bedrock beneath a landfill (Taucher & Fuller 1994).

12.3.4 Ground-Penetrating Radar and Magnetometer Surveys

There are thousands of abandoned waste-disposal sites in the United States alone. For many sites the records of trench locations and drum burial areas are sketchy or nonexistent. If a remedial action plan is to be developed for such a site, it is necessary to know the extent of the buried waste. From a safety standpoint, one needs to know the locations of buried drums of toxic material so that drilling operations for the installation of monitoring wells do not penetrate the drums. Several methods are used to locate areas of waste disposal. Two of the more common are **magnetometer surveys** and **ground-penetrating radar.**

Magnetometer surveys measure the strength of the earth's magnetic field. A proton nuclear magnetic resonance magnetometer is frequently used. With this handheld instrument, one person can rapidly perform a survey over a site of a few acres in size. A grid system is set up and measurements are made of the magnetic field at each intersection of the grid. Areas with large amounts of buried metal, such as steel drums, will have magnetic anomalies associated with them. The strength of the anomaly will vary with the amount and depth of the buried metal.

Ground-penetrating radar (GPR) is based on the transmission into the ground of repetitive pulses of electromagnetic waves in the frequencies of 10 to 1000 MHz. The pulses are reflected back to the surface when the radiated energy encounters an interface between two materials of differing dielectric properties. The interfaces that cause the reflections may be due to such things as a change in strata or buried objects. The ground-penetrating radar system has antennae to both send a signal and receive the reflected pulse. The reflected pulse may be recorded on a magnetic tape recorder and generally is also converted into voltage as a function of time and displayed on a graphic recorder. The graphic output from a GPR system looks like a sonar signal. A typical receiving unit will display the output in a number of shades of gray or colors that vary proportionally to the voltage level of the received wave.

The GPR unit is pulled along the ground and a continuous line profile is generated. Parallel lines are surveyed to cover an area being studied. The depth of penetration of the GPR is a function of the type of geological material and the frequency of the radar being used. The lower frequencies penetrate a given medium to the greatest depths; higher frequencies will not penetrate as deeply but give greater resolution. Greater resolution increases the ability of the unit to discriminate between interfaces and objects that are closely spaced. For waste-site studies, typical depths of study are 5 to 20 ft (1.5 to 6 m). GPR is capable of showing the location of a single 55-gal metal drum buried at depths of 6 to 9 ft (2 to 3 m) (Horton et al. 1981). It has been successfully used to show the limits of a buried crystalline mass below a concrete pavement. The great advantage of GPR is that it is able to give a continuous profile of the subsurface, an accomplishment not otherwise possible.

Beres and Haeni (1991) found that ground-penetrating radar records of the subsurface in glaciated terrain in Connecticut could be qualitatively interpreted with the aid of boreholes with lithologic logs. They distinguished fine-grained from coarse-grained sediments, bedrock, and boulders. The water table in coarse-grained sediments was easily identified. Very shallow water tables and water tables in fine-grained sediments where there was a significant capillary fringe were not easy to distinguish. Penetration depth of

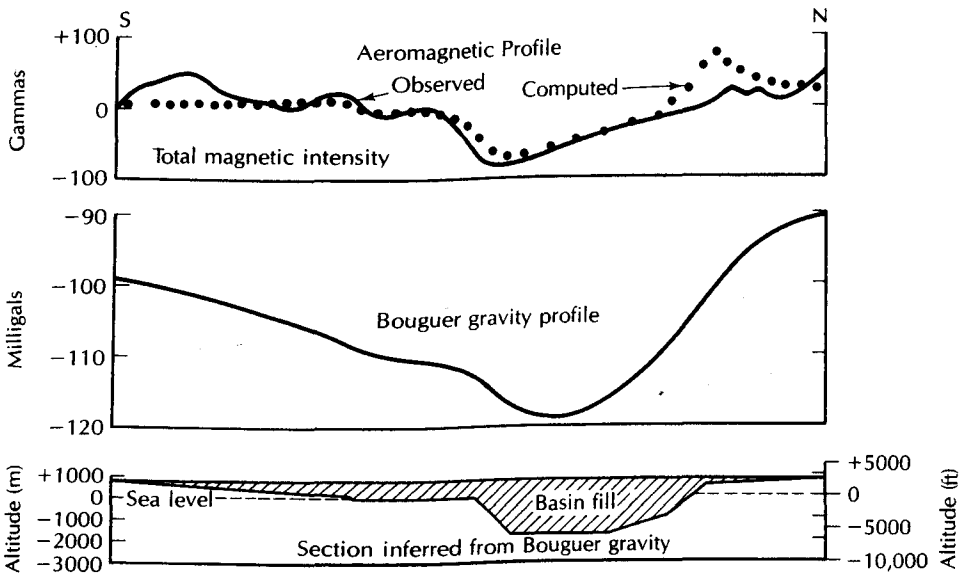


FIGURE 12.18
ıvity and aeromagnetic profiles across a basin-fill aquifer. The aeromagnetic profile was
ʌn at 490 ft (150 m). *Source: D. R. Mabey. "Magnetic Methods," in* Techniques of Water-
ıources Investigations, *U.S. Geological Survey, 1972, Book 2, Chap. D1, pp. 85–115.*

ı GPR signal ranged from 20 ft (7 m) in fine-grained glaciolacustrine sediment to 70 ft
ı m) in very coarse-grained sand and gravel. Ground-penetrating radar has been suc-
ısfully used to discover and delineate a plume of a light, nonaqueous phase liquid from
ydrocarbon fuel source (Bermejo, Sauck, & Atekwana 1997).

ı.3.5 Gravity and Aeromagnetic Methods

ıasurement of the gravimetric and magnetic fields of the earth are standard geophysical
thods used to study the structure and composition of the earth. To the extent that the
ıic geology influences the hydrogeology, these methods are quite useful in ground-
ter studies. The collection of data can be relatively simple if ground stations are used.
wever, the reduction and correction of the data are fairly complex (Zohdy, Eaton, &
bey 1974; Dobrin 1976; Wilson, Peterson, & Ostrye 1983). Airborne geomagnetic sur-
ʼs obviously involve specialized skills and equipment.

Both gravity and magnetics surveys can be used to delineate the area of unconsoli-
ed basin fill or buried stream-channel aquifers. In Figure 12.18, a Cenozoic basin in
telope Valley, California, is depicted in cross section. The presence of the basin and
area of the deepest part are shown on both an aeromagnetic profile and a gravity
ıfile.

Magnetic anomalies are caused by distortions of the earth's magnetic field created by
gnetic materials in the crust. Magnetic anomalies indicate the type of rocks in a very
ıeral way. In hydrogeologic studies, magnetic anomalies can be useful in indicating the
ıth to magnetic basement rocks. Sedimentary rocks are typically nonmagnetic; hence,
y do not affect the magnetic field. Some magnetic rocks, such as basalt flows, can be im-
tant aquifers. Magnetic surveys might be useful in tracing basalt flows in areas of non-
gnetic rocks.

The mass of the rocks beneath a point on the earth will affect the local value of the ac-
ıration of gravity. To be useful, the measured values must be referenced to a common

datum—usually, mean sea level. A free-air correction is made to compensate for elevation differences. To correct for the gravitational attraction of the rock that lies between the gravity station and sea level, a *Bouguer correction* is made. Corrections must also be made for tidal effects, latitude, and terrain. After the measured gravity data are corrected, the result is a *Bouguer anomaly value,* which can be mapped with gravity contours drawn. Such a map could help to define the extent of a buried bedrock valley if there were a density difference between the sediments and the bedrock.

It should be emphasized that many possible earth models would result in the same gravitational or magnetic anomaly. There is no unique solution to any set of geophysical data, and the person interpreting the data must keep this in mind.

Gravity surveys have been used to delineate faults in buried bedrock valleys (Allen & Michel 1996). Pool and Eychaner (1995) used gravity measurements to determine the specific yield of an alluvial aquifer. Large fluctuations in the water table of an alluvial aquifer occurred with periodic recharge events. Gravity measurements were made at two reference bedrock stations and six stations located over the alluvial aquifer. The water table fluctuated as much as 58 ft and the increase and decrease of the water mass in the aquifer could be detected by the gravity stations. The specific yield and change in volume of water in storage could be determined from the gravity data.

12.4 Geophysical Well Logging

Direct access to the subsurface is gained wherever there is a well or test boring. When a well is drilled, a record may be made of the geologic formations encountered. The reliability of a **lithologic well log** depends on the method of drilling and sample recovery as well as the knowledge and skills of the person making the log. There are also many existing wells for which there is no available record of the subsurface geology.

Borehole geophysics offers a great deal in the way of practical application to hydrogeology.* Borehole geophysical methods were developed primarily in the petroleum industry, and virtually all oil and gas wells are routinely logged when drilled. In the water-well industry, the use of geophysical logging is generally restricted to either research projects or high-capacity municipal and industrial wells. The cost of well logging is not justified by the marginal benefits gained for small-yield domestic wells.

Borehole geophysical data have a number of uses (see Table 12.1). The log of a well can indicate the areas of high porosity and permeability that would produce the most water. Zones of an aquifer with high-salinity water can be identified. If a number of wells are logged over an area, the logs can be used for stratigraphic correlation. The lithology of the rocks penetrated by the wells can be identified, especially if some core samples are available for baseline comparison. Regional ground-water flow patterns might be identified from such characteristics as fluid temperature. Nuclear well-logging techniques can be used in cased wells. This is the only way to get subsurface data under such conditions. Geophysical logs give a permanent record, based on repeatable measurements. Thus, data collected for one purpose are available for other, unanticipated uses in the future.

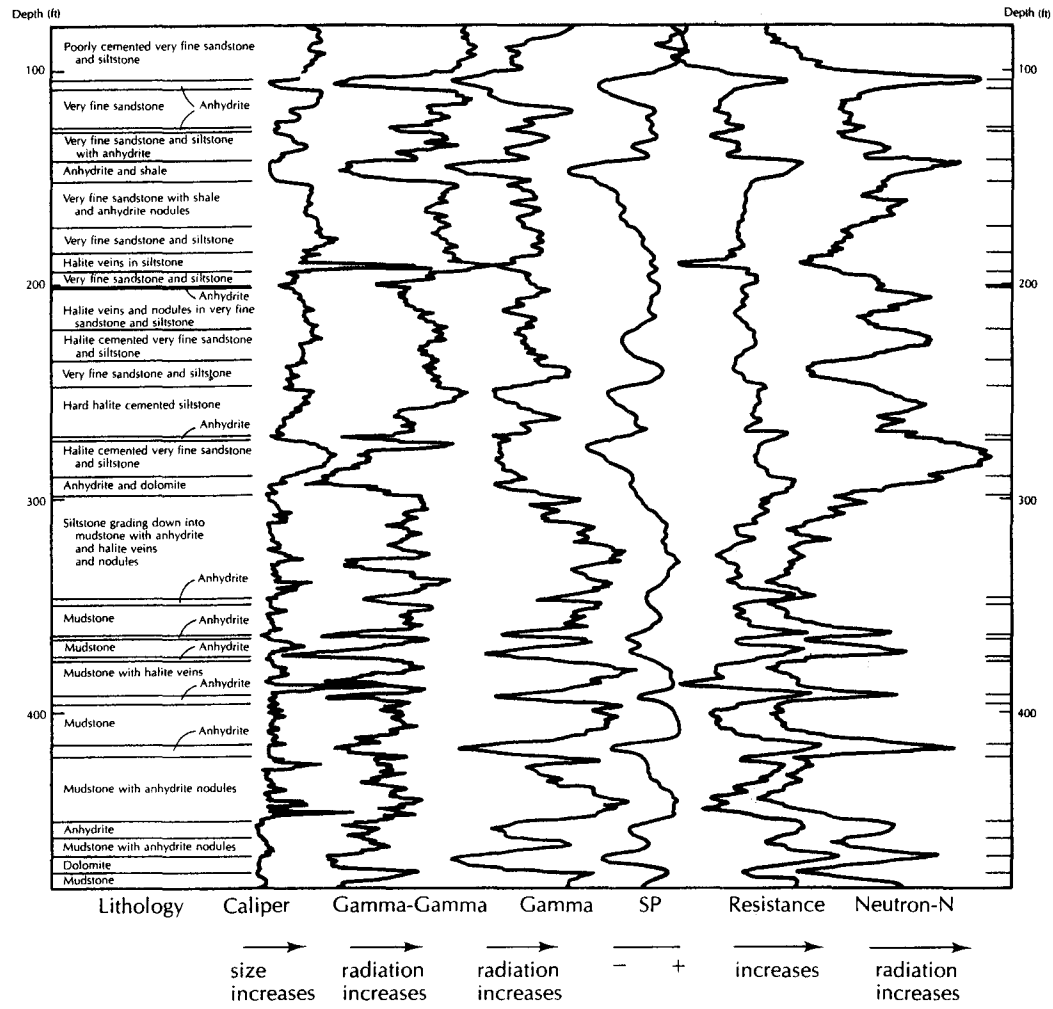
Because of the large number of borehole techniques that are applicable to water wells, a discussion of only the more common methods will be included in this section, with emphasis on qualitative rather than quantitative interpretation of geophysical logs. Generally, a

*ASTM Reference D5753-95—*Standard Guide for Planning and Conducting Borehole Geophysical Logging.*

Table 12.1 Summary of log applications

Required Information on the Properties of Rocks, Fluid, Wells, or the Ground-Water System	Widely Available Logging Techniques that Might Be Utilized
Lithology and stratigraphic correlation of aquifers and associated rocks	Electric, sonic, or caliper logs made in open holes; nuclear logs made in open or cased holes
Total porosity or bulk density	Calibrated sonic logs in open holes, calibrated neutron or gamma-gamma logs in open or cased holes
Effective porosity or true resistivity	Calibrated long-normal resistivity logs
Clay or shale content	Gamma logs
Permeability	No direct measurement by logging. May be related to porosity, injectivity, sonic amplitude
Secondary permeability—fractures, solution openings	Caliper, sonic, or borehole televiewer or television logs
Specific yield of unconfined aquifers	Calibrated neutron logs
Grain size	Possible relation to formation factor derived from electric logs
Location of water level or saturated zones	Electric, temperature, or fluid conductivity in open hole or inside casing, neutron or gamma-gamma logs in open hole or outside casing
Moisture content	Calibrated neutron logs
Infiltration	Time-interval neutron logs under special circumstances or radioactive tracers
Direction, velocity, and path of ground water flow	Single-well tracer techniques—point dilution and single-well pulse; multiwell tracer techniques
Dispersion, dilution, and movement of waste	Fluid conductivity and temperature logs, gamma logs for some radioactive wastes, fluid sampler
Source and movement of water in a well	Injectivity profile; flowmeter or tracer logging during pumping or injection; temperature logs
Chemical and physical characteristics of water, including salinity, temperature, density, and viscosity	Calibrated fluid conductivity and temperature in the well; neutron chloride logging outside casing; multielectrode resistivity
Determining construction of existing wells, diameter and position of casing, perforations, screen	Gamma-gamma, caliper, collar, and perforation locator; borehole television
Guide to screen setting	All logs providing data on the lithology, water-bearing characteristics, and correlation and thickness of aquifers
Cementing	Caliper, temperature, gamma-gamma; acoustic for cement bond
Casing corrosion	Under some conditions, caliper or collar locator
Casing leaks and/or plugged screen	Tracer and flowmeter

Source: W. S. Keys and L. M. MacCary, "Application of Borehole Geophysics to Water-Resources Investigations," in Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, *U.S. Geological Survey, 1971, Book 2, Chap. E1.*



▲ FIGURE 12.19
The relationship of six different geophysical logs to the lithology of a well in the upper Brazos River Basin, Texas. *Source: W. S. Keys and L. M. MacCary, in* Techniques in Water-Resources Investigations, *U.S. Geological Survey, 1971, Book 2, Chap. E1.*

suite of geophysical logs is made, rather than only a single type. The methods tend to be complementary; one may confirm another. Likewise, certain interpretations are made on the basis of two or more logs. Figure 12.19 consists of six different geophysical logs made on the same borehole, along with a lithologic log. It can readily be seen that the logs deflect with the changes in lithology.

Continuously recorded well logs can be made as a pen-and-ink strip chart or as a digital record that can be displayed on a monitor and stored on magnetic media, such as a diskette, or downloaded to a computer. There also are more simple instruments available that give point readings at discrete depth intervals.

A probe is lowered into the borehole on a cable. The cable, which contains power lines from the surface to the probe, supports the weight of the probe and transmits signals from the probe to the recorder at the surface. The probe contains the necessary electronics, ener-

gy or nuclear sources, and detectors. Logging information can be obtained as the probe is either lowered or raised.

12.4.1 Caliper Logs

A **caliper log** is used to measure the diameter of an uncased borehole in bedrock units. It can also be used to find the casing depth. The nominal hole diameter is, of course, the size of the drill bit.* The hole may be enlarged by caving of the formations into the hole or by solution of minerals by the drill water. It also may be enlarged if the drill bit is rotated at a depth while the downward pressure is removed. Another use of caliper logs is to indicate solution-enlarged bedding planes and joints in carbonate aquifers. The hole diameter may be less than the drill bit diameter if a mud cake has built up on the walls or if a plastic strata, such as a soft clay, was squeezed into the hole by the weight of the overlying, more competent rock or sediment.

12.4.2 Temperature Logs

A *temperature log* is a continuous vertical record of the temperature of the fluid in the borehole. This may be indicative of the temperature of the fluid in the rocks opposite the borehole fluid. In a recently drilled well, the borehole fluid may be well mixed. After the well has had an opportunity to reach environmental equilibrium, the temperature log can reveal zones of differing temperature in the well. There will be a component of the geothermal gradient present; however, water in different aquifers may be at discrete temperatures, which may be detected on the log. Thermal logging has been used to trace the movement of water previously injected into an aquifer (Norris 1972). The recharged water had a daily thermal variation of up to 17°C, and the diurnal fluctuation was traced in a series of observation wells (Figure 12.20).

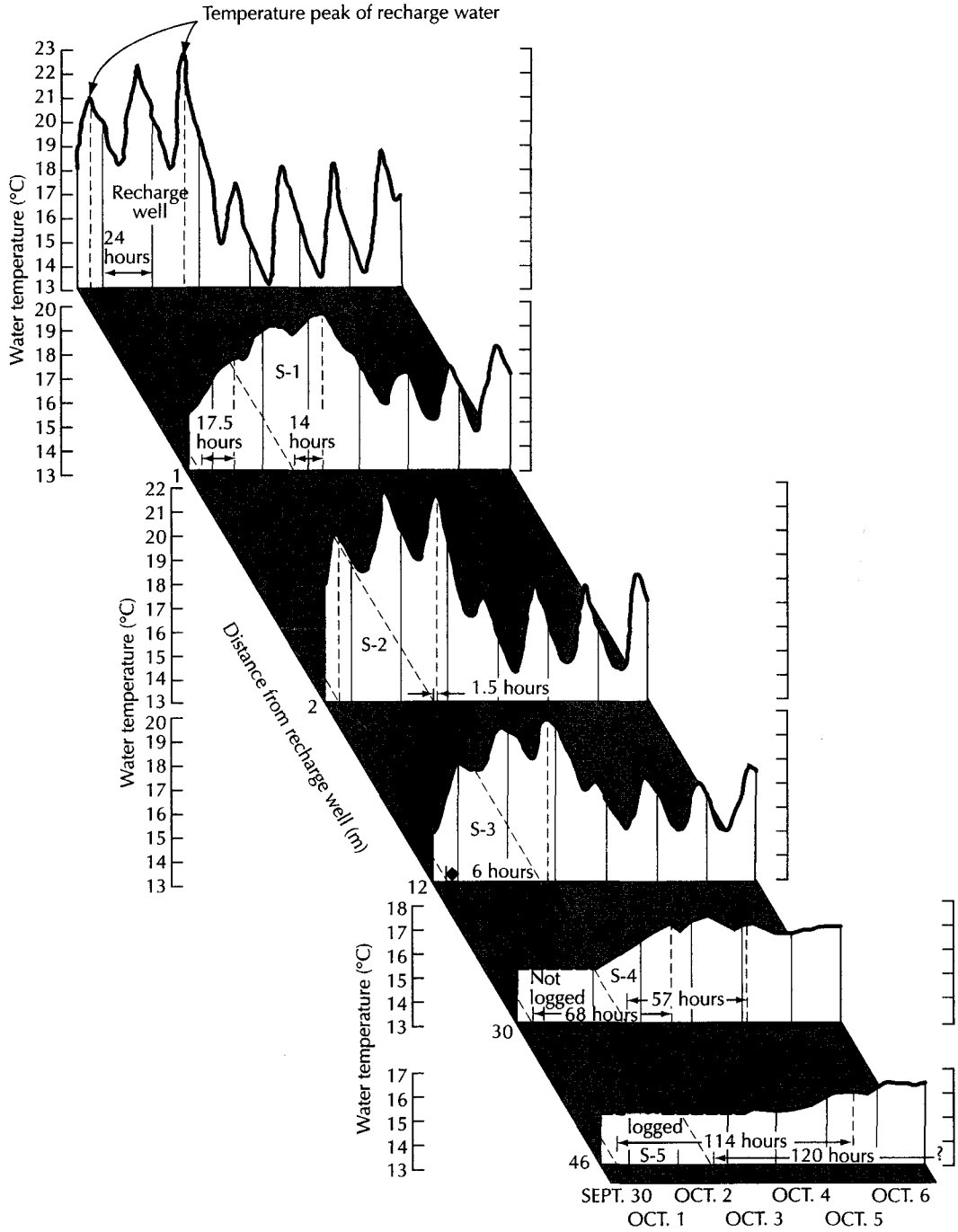
12.4.3 Single-Point Resistance

Electrical resistance can be measured in a borehole by several different methods. The simplest case is the **single-point resistance,** in which a single electrode is lowered into the borehole on an insulated cable. The other electrode is at the ground surface. As the electrode is lowered into the borehole, the resistance of the earth between the two electrodes is measured.

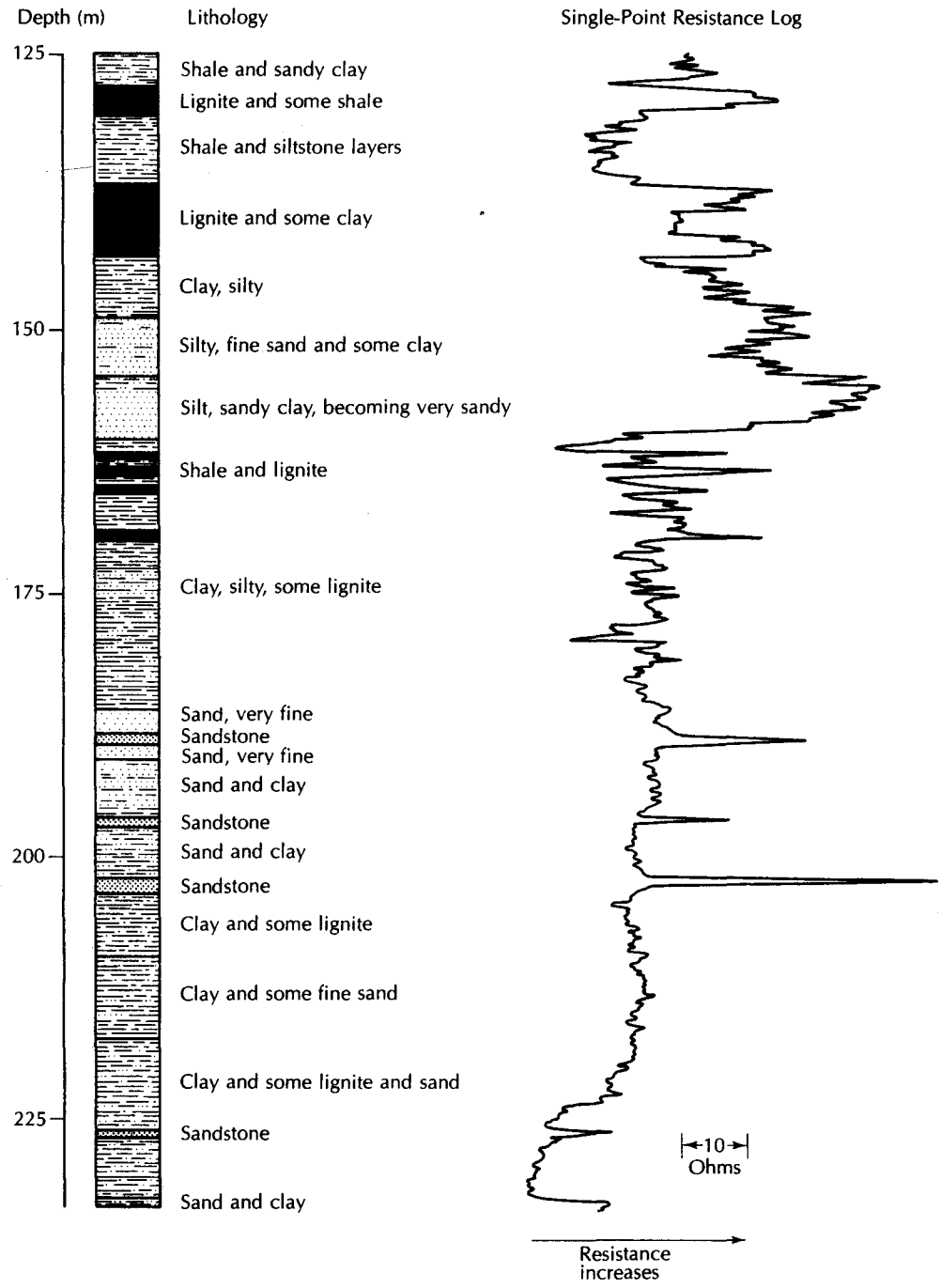
The single-point electrode is measuring the resistance of all rocks between the electrodes. Most of the variation in resistance is due to the changes in the conductivity of the borehole fluid and to a small volume of rock around the borehole near the downhole electrode. If the borehole fluid is homogeneous, the variation in resistance will be due to the lithologic variations near the borehole.

Lithologies with a high resistance include sand, sand and gravel, sandstone, and lignite. Clay and shale have the lowest resistance. Increasing salinity will cause a decrease in resistance. If the borehole is enlarged (for instance, by a fracture), the resistance will also decrease. If the caliper log indicates a cavity, and the resistance log decreases, the decrease is due to the hole enlargement. Should the borehole be straight, a decrease in resistance might be due to either a shale layer or, perhaps, a sandstone containing a brine. However, other logs can distinguish brine from fresh water and sandstone from shale. Figure 12.21 shows a single-point resistance log.

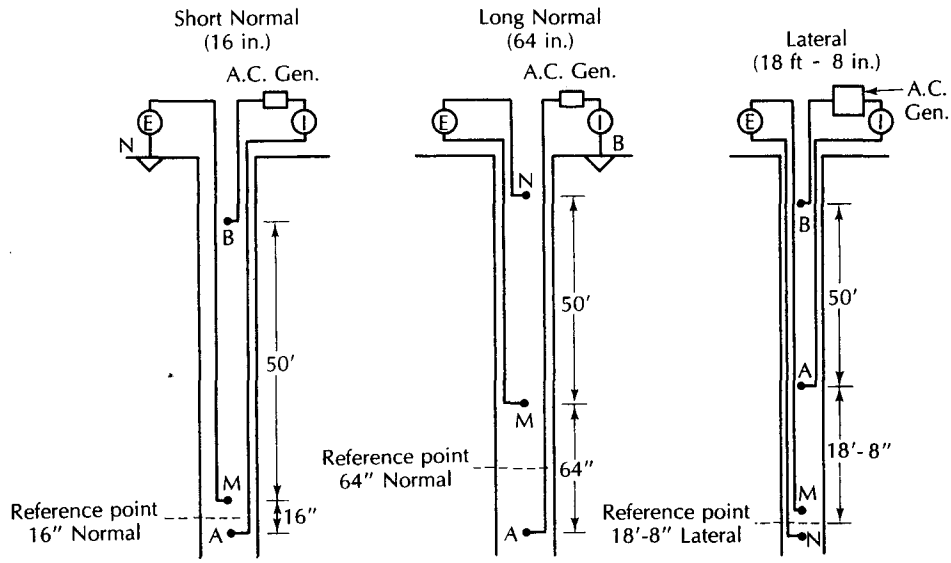
*When a hole is drilled, the drilling rig turns a pipe (drill stem). The rock at the bottom of the hole is broken up by the rotating drill bit, which cuts it into pieces. Drilling fluids circulating through the hole and drill stem bring the broken rock to the surface.



▲ FIGURE 12.20
Fluctuations in the temperature of ground water in a number of wells near an injection well for artificial recharge. All temperatures are measured at a depth of 161 ft (49 m). The diurnal variation in the temperature of the recharge water dies out by 98 ft (30 m). *Source: W. S. Keys and R. F. Brown,* Ground Water *16 (1978): 32–48. Used with permission. Copyright © 1978. Ground Water Publishing Co.*



▲ FIGURE 12.21
Single-point resistance log and lithologic log. *Source: W. S. Keys and L. M. MacCary, in* Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, *U.S. Geological Survey, 1971, Book 2, Chap. E1.*



▲ FIGURE 12.22
Electrode configuration for various resistivity logging devices.

12.4.4 Resistivity

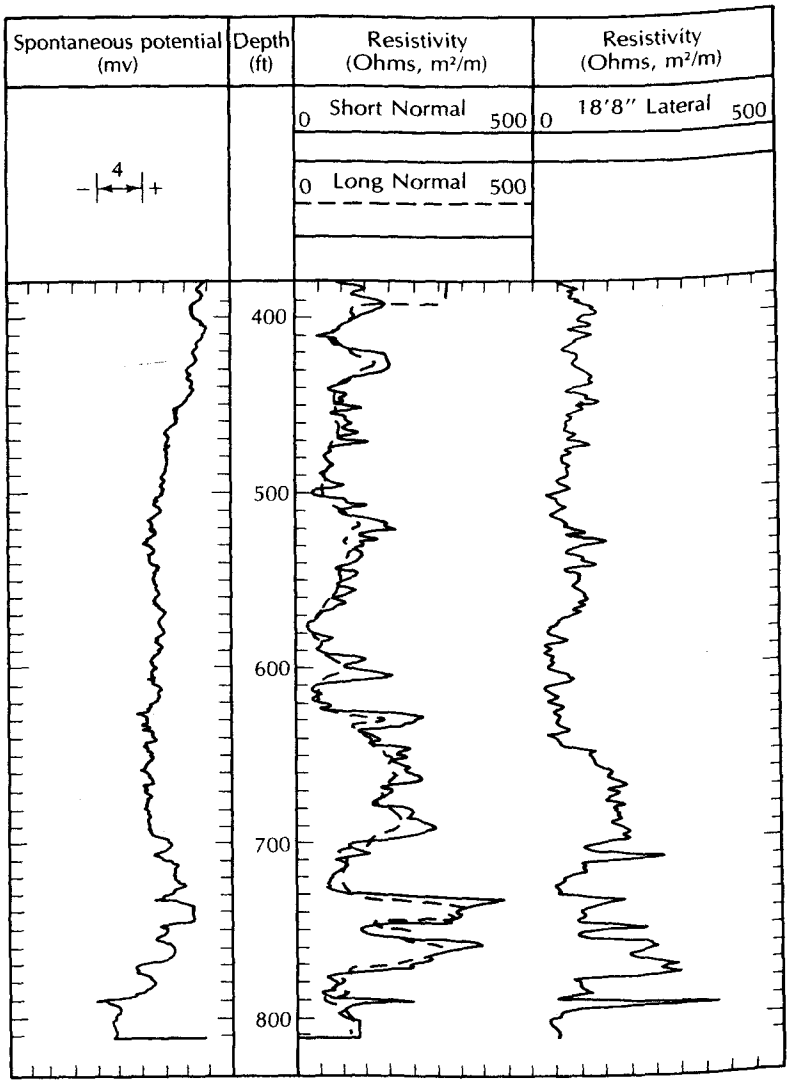
Earth **resistivity** may be measured in a borehole by lowering two current electrodes and measuring the resistivity between two additional electrodes. Resistivity is measured in ohm-meters and is different from resistance, the latter being measured in ohms. Single-point resistance logging measures the total resistance of the earth materials, while resistivity measures a specific property of the rock and the contained pore waters. The trace of a resistivity log is similar to that of a single-point resistance log. However, resistivity logs can be calibrated and used quantitatively.

Several different electrode configurations are used in resistivity logging. These include the *short-normal, long-normal,* and *lateral configurations,* as shown in Figure 12.22. The three logs have similar traces (Figure 12.23). The short-normal curve indicates the resistivity of the zone close to the borehole. It is in this area that the drilling fluid may have invaded the formations. The long-normal spacing has more spacing between electrodes and thus measures the resistivity farther away from the borehole—presumably beyond the influence of the drilling fluid. Both the short-normal and long-normal resistivity measure a greater radius of influence than the single-point resistance.

Lateral devices have very widely spaced electrodes for measuring zones that are far from the borehole. Because of the wide spacing, lateral devices will not pick out thin beds of different resistivity. For example, the 18-ft by 8-in. lateral log will be best for beds at least 40 ft (12 m) thick.

12.4.5 Spontaneous Potential

Along with resistance and resistivity, **spontaneous potential** is another form of electrical logging. It is a measure of the natural electrical potential that develops between the formation and the borehole fluids. It is run only on an open hole filled with fluid, as are resistance and resistivity. It can be used below a casing in a partially cased well. The spontaneous-potential (SP) curve can be used for determination of bed thickness, geologic correlation, and also for delineation of permeable rocks. An SP device consists of a surface electrode and a borehole electrode with a voltmeter to measure potential.

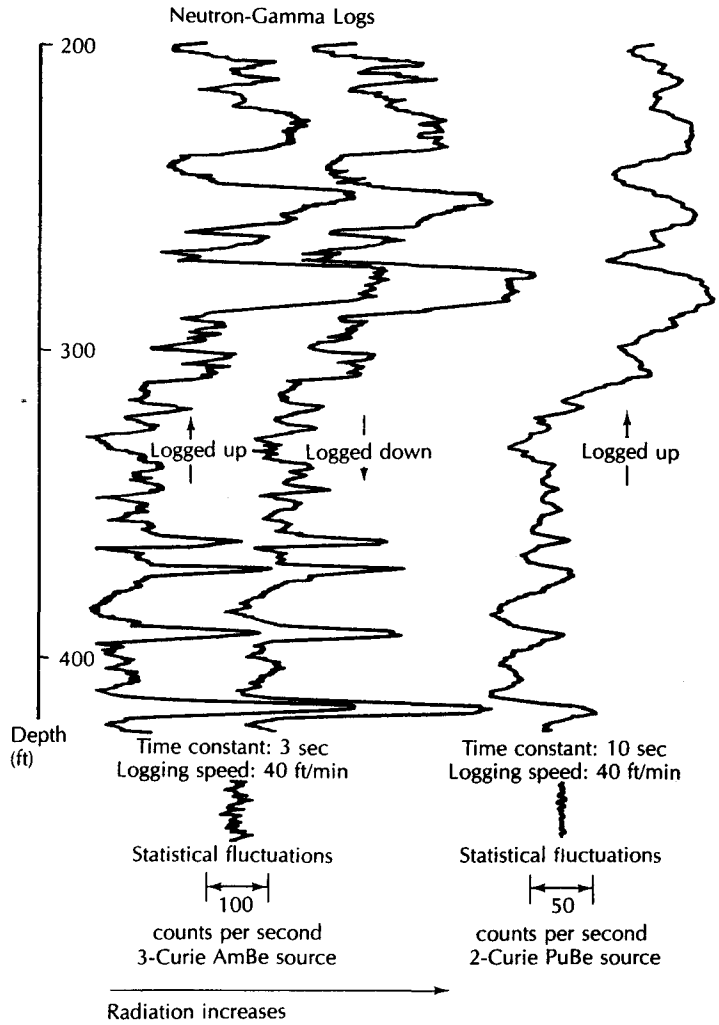


IGURE 12.23
ric logs of a limestone well. The long-normal log is shown as a dashed line. *Source: W. S. and L. M. MacCary, in* Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, *U.S. Geological ey, 1971, Book 2, Chap. E1.*

One use of the SP curve is to distinguish shale from sandstone lithology. Shale has a tive SP response and sandstone a negative one if the salinity of the formation fluid is ter than that of the borehole fluid.

4.6 Nuclear Logging

e of the most useful logging methods involve the measurement of either natural ra- ctivity of the rock and fluids or their attenuation of induced radiation. *Nuclear logging* ɔe done in either a cased or an uncased hole, and the logs are not affected by the type illing mud. The use of radioactive isotopes involves special safety precautions.
Radioactive decay is a process with a random component; hence, the instantaneous of decay fluctuates. Over a long time period, the rate of decay per time period is con- t. However, as the time period decreases, the variation in the number of decay events ime period will increase. Nuclear logging records the number of disintegrations over



▲ FIGURE 12.24
Statistical variation in neutron-gamma logs made of the same hole. The log on the right had a poor ratio of time constant and logging speed. *Source: W. S. Keys and L. M. MacCary, in* Techniques of Water Resources Investigations, *U.S. Geological Survey, 1971, Book 2, Chap. E1.*

a fixed time period, called the *time constant.* The longer the time constant, the less the likelihood that a variation in radiation intensity is due to random decay and, hence, the more likely the variation reflects different lithology.

Consideration must also be given to the speed at which the probe is moved up or down the hole. If the speed is too great, the probe may pass a thin bed before the time constant has elapsed. Consequently, the selection of the proper time constant and logging speed is very important and depends upon the equipment, logging technique, and lithology (Keys & MacCary 1971).

Nuclear logs do not have exact reproducibility, owing to the statistical nature of the decay process. Repeat logging runs are necessary to determine if an observed variation represents a lithologic change or a statistical fluctuation in the decay rate. In Figure 12.24, the first two neutron-gamma logs were made first going up and then going down the hole. The same peaks are present, but there is variability in the exact radiation count. To the right is a third log of the same hole made with a different radiation source having a longer time con-

stant—10 s versus 3 s. The right-hand log has a poor ratio of time constant and logging speed. It does not distinguish thin beds, and positions of the lithologic contacts are incorrect.

The thickness of individual strata can be determined from nuclear logs if there is a change in lithology or porosity from one unit to the next. This is assumed to be equal to the thickness of the anomaly at one-half the maximum amplitude. This method will overestimate the thickness of thin layers. By convention, radiation increases to the right in nuclear logging. In a reversed log, it increases to the left.

There are three nuclear methods that can be used for composite identification (Keys & MacCary 1971). The neutron count rate increases with decreasing porosity, while the gamma-gamma count rate decreases. The natural gamma radiation increases with an increasing clay or shale content as well as with increased phosphate and K-feldspars, but has no direct relationship to porosity. A stratum with low natural gamma radiation and a low neutron count (or high gamma-gamma count) could be interpreted as a porous sandstone. A low natural gamma radiation and high neutron count could be a dense quartz sandstone or quartzite (see Figure 12.20).

12.4.6.1 Natural Gamma Radiation

The nuclear-logging method most commonly employed in hydrogeology is natural gamma radiation. It is a measure of the natural radiation of rocks as determined by the emission of gamma activity by potassium 40, the uranium 238 decay series, and the thorium 232 decay series. These are constituent materials for some shales and clays with high gamma activity. Certain feldspars and micas are high in ^{40}K. A natural gamma log shows increasing radiation opposite sedimentary beds that contain potassium-rich shale, or clay or phosphate rock. Thus, a shaly sandstone could be distinguished from a clean quartz sandstone. The natural gamma log can be used for lithologic determination—especially of detrital sediments—on the basis of differences in radiation intensity. No calibration of the unit is necessary in this nuclear-logging method. Another advantage is that no radiation sources need be used.

The **natural gamma radiation log** has a tremendous advantage in that it can be performed on an existing cased well. Part of the radiation penetrates the well casing, and the amount absorbed by the casing is constant. Therefore, the variations in radiation due to lithology show up on the log. The method works equally well in both plastic and steel casing. It may not work inside hollow-stem augers if the thickness of the steel wall of the augers varies at the joints where the augers are joined. In this case the varying steel wall thickness will create a situation where the amount of radiation absorbed by the augers is not constant over the length of the augers and the resulting log is distorted.

12.4.6.2 Neutron Logging

A neutron probe contains a radioactive element, such as PbBe, which is a source of neutrons, and a detector. The emitted neutrons are slowed and scattered by collisions with nuclei of hydrogen atoms. Detectors are available to measure gamma radiation produced by the neutron-hydrogen atom collision, or the number of neutrons present at different energy levels. Thus, a **neutron log** will be identified as a *neutron-thermal neutron*, a *neutron-epithermal neutron*, or a *neutron-gamma log* on the basis of the method of detection.

Hydrogen is present in the ground primarily in the form of water or hydrocarbons. In almost all rocks of interest to hydrogeologists there are no naturally occurring hydrocarbons. Therefore, apart from hydrated minerals, water is present as moisture in the pore spaces of the rock. An increase in the amount of water will result in an increase in the number of neutrons that are captured or moderated. As a result, saturated rocks with a high porosity will have a lower neutron count than low-porosity rocks. Above the water table, the neutron-logging equipment can be used to measure the moisture content but not the porosity. Neutron logging can be used to determine the specific yield of unconfined

aquifers. It also can distinguish gypsum, with a high proportion of hydrated water, from anhydrite. Both have a very low natural gamma radiation; however, anhydrite has a high neutron count and gypsum has a low count.

12.4.6.3 Gamma-Gamma Radiation

In this type of logging, a source of gamma radiation, such as cobalt 60, is lowered into the borehole. Gamma photons are absorbed or scattered by all material with which the cobalt 60 comes in contact, including fluid, casing, and rock. The absorption is proportional to the bulk density of the earth material. *Bulk density* is defined as the weight of the rock divided by the total volume, including the porosity. Thus, gamma-gamma radiation increases with decreasing bulk density (increasing porosity). Bulk density can be determined from a calibrated gamma-gamma log. The formation porosity can be determined from the equation

$$\text{Porosity} = \frac{\text{grain density} - \text{bulk density}}{\text{grain density} - \text{fluid density}} \tag{12.15}$$

Grain density may be determined from drill cuttings or assumed to be 2.65 g/cm^3 for quartz sandstone. Fluid density is 1.000 g/cm^3 for mud-free fresh water. The drilling fluid may contain additives to increase the fluid density.

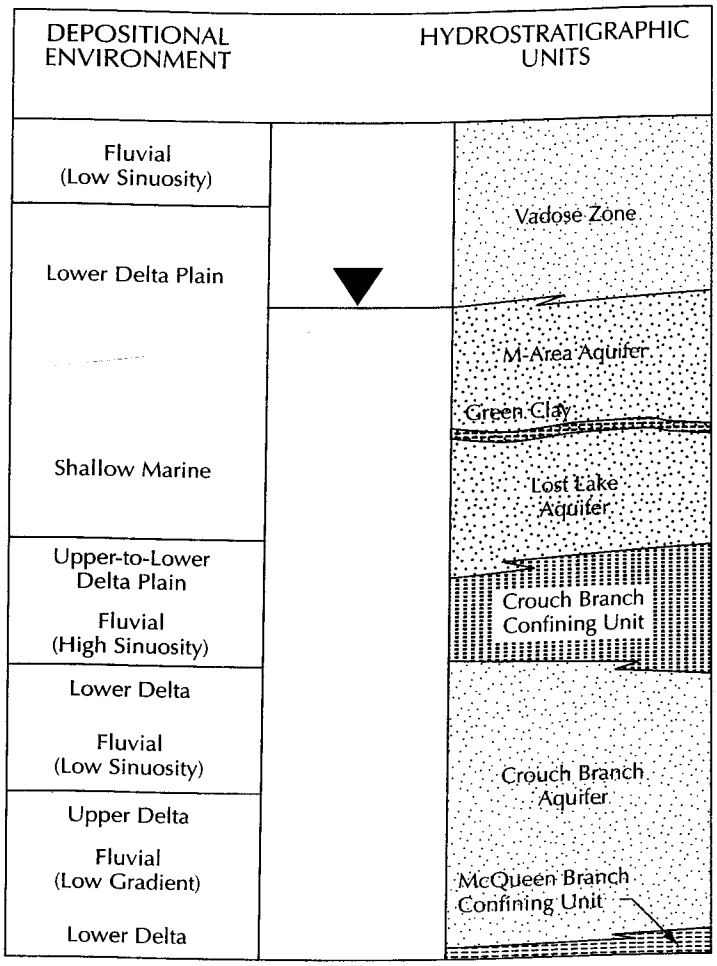
Case Study: Use of Multiple Geophysical Methods to Determine the Extent and Thickness of a Critical Confining Layer

The traditional method used to determine stratigraphy of units that do not crop out is the installation of test borings. However, in geologic environments with complex stratigraphy, such as fluvial and deltaic sediments, it can take an unreasonable number of borings to provide fine detail of the stratigraphy. Geophysical methods can be used to interpret the geology between the borings.

The Savannah River site, operated by the U.S. Department of Energy, is located on the Atlantic Coastal Plain (Eddy-Dilek & others 1997). Significant ground-water contamination is present at this location, and extensive ground-water remediation is necessary. The area of ground-water contamination has several aquifers and confining units (Figure 12.25). Of particular importance is the Crouch Branch confining unit (CBCU). In some areas it is as much as 50 ft (15 m) thick and is a competent confining unit. In other areas it is thin or missing or may have sandy facies that can allow contamination to spread from the overlying Lost Lake aquifer to the underlying Crouch Branch aquifer. The depth to the CBCU is about 200 ft (60 m), making it expensive to install test borings. Moreover, additional test borings might become conduits for the vertical movement of contamination, and thus the method is undesirable.

Two geophysical methods were selected. Time domain electromagnetism (TDEM) was chosen to distinguish the presence of conductive layers with depth. The reflection seismic method was selected to illustrate the overall stratigraphy across the site.

The CBCU is known to have a lower resistivity, and therefore a greater conductivity (which is the inverse of resistivity), than any other unit in the section (Figure 12.26). The pore water at the Savannah River site has very low total dissolved solids (>10 mg/L), hence there is high resistivity of nonclay units. Two TDEM sections were run using a transmitter loop that was 40 m on a side. This gave an effective depth of penetration of 400 ft (120 m). The conductance of the shallow zones (0 to 65 ft) was not measured with this antenna size. The TDEM data were interpreted with two different inversion algorithms. Figure 12.27 shows the results of the TDEM survey along line 1. The top panel shows the

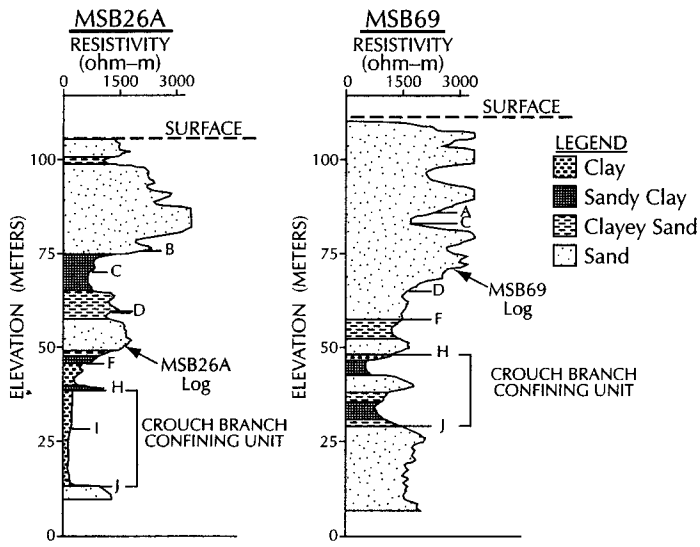


IGURE 12.25
lified hydrostratigraphy of the study area at the Savannah River Site. *Source: Carol A. Dilek and others. 1997.* Ground Water *35, no. 3:451–462. Used with permission.*
right © 1997. Ground Water Publishing Company.

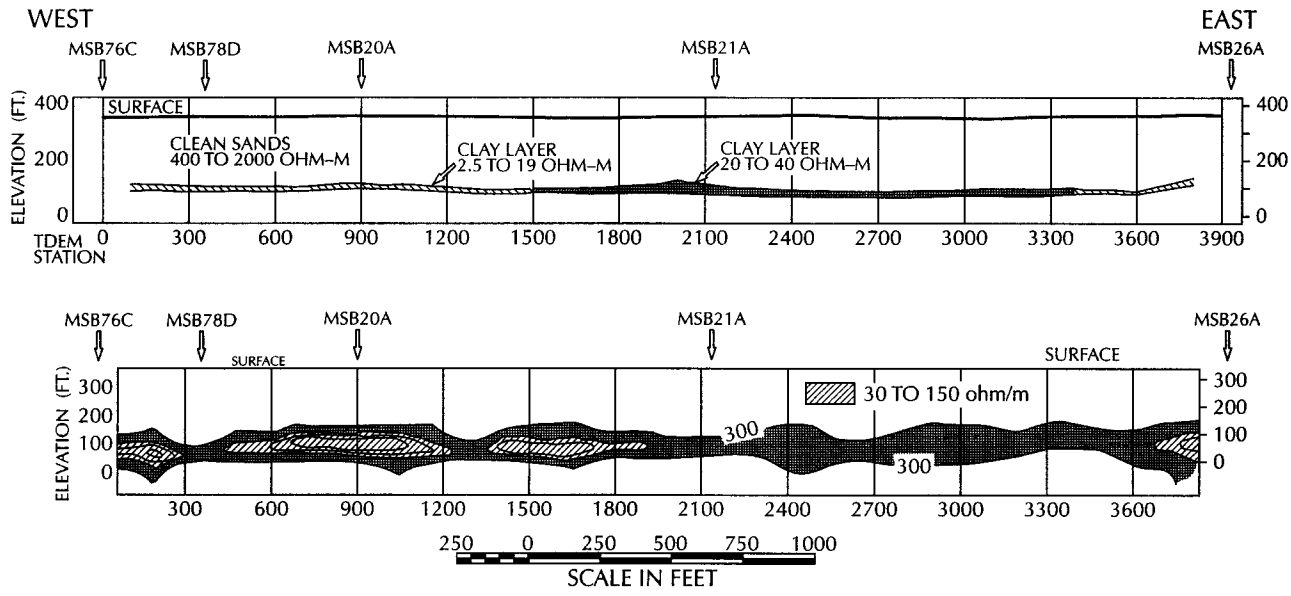
ne-dimensional inversion. Based on well log data, the depth to top of CBCU was successfully determined by this method, but the unit thickness was underestimated. However, he lower panel of Figure 12.27 shows that the Occam's inversion method gave a more accurate estimate of the thickness of the CBCU.

The CBCU appears to be continuous along line 1 of the TDEM survey. However, the eismic reflection survey revealed that there is an erosional channel cut into the unit near he eastern end of the line (Figure 12.28). Reflector H is the top of the CBCU and reflector J the bottom. Reflector G is the bottom of the channel, which cuts off reflectors H and J. ot shown is the fact that elsewhere along line 1, reflectors H and I were continuous.

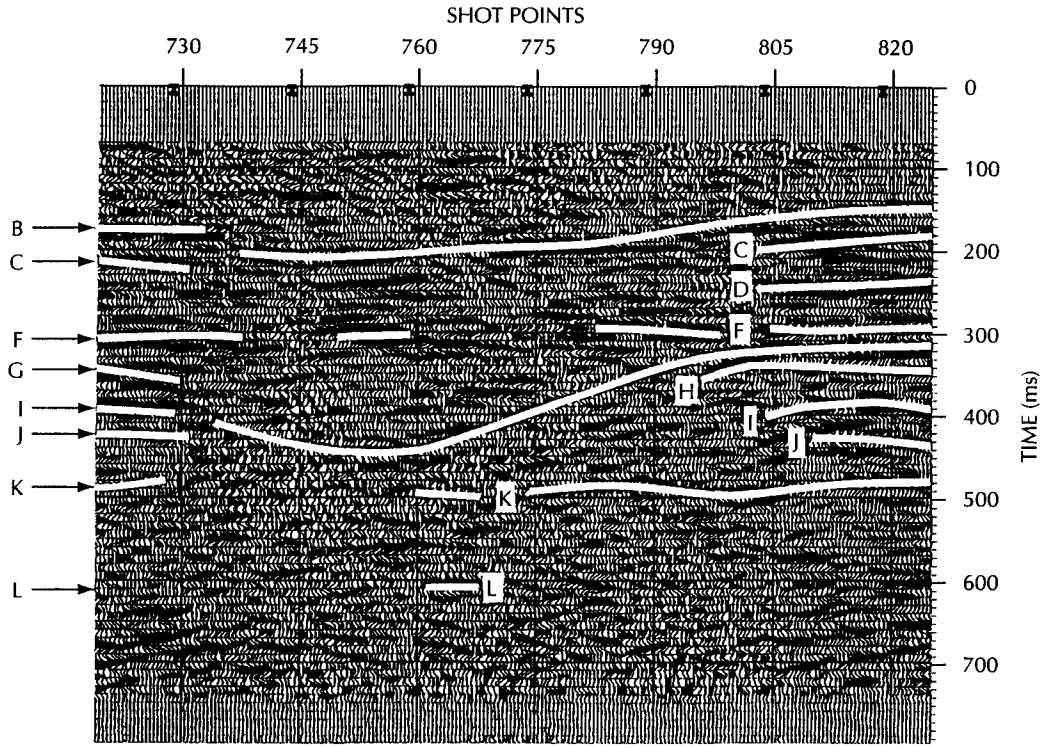
Figure 12.29 shows the integrated geologic section along line 1 based on the TDEM geoectric survey, the seismic reflection survey, borehole geophysical logs, and borehole lithoogic logs. Line 1 was 1200 m long with up to 550 m between boreholes. The erosional chanel was not near any of the boreholes and its presence would not have been known without he surface geophysical surveys. This channel is a possible contaminant pathway across the Crouch Branch confining unit.



▲ FIGURE 12.26
Borehole logs showing lithology and resistivity. The Crouch Branch confining unit has a much lower resistivity than other formations. Letters refer to reflectors on the seismic sections. *Source: Carol A. Eddy-Dilek and others. 1997.* Ground Water *35, no. 3:451–462. Used with permission. Copyright © 1997. Ground Water Publishing Company.*



▲ FIGURE 12.27
Geoelectric section along Line 1 from the TDEM survey: Top panel is the 1-D inversion. Bottom panel is Occam's inversion. *Source: Carol A. Eddy-Dilek and others. 1997.* Ground Water *35, no. 3:451–462. Used with permission. Copyright © 1997. Ground Water Publishing Company.*

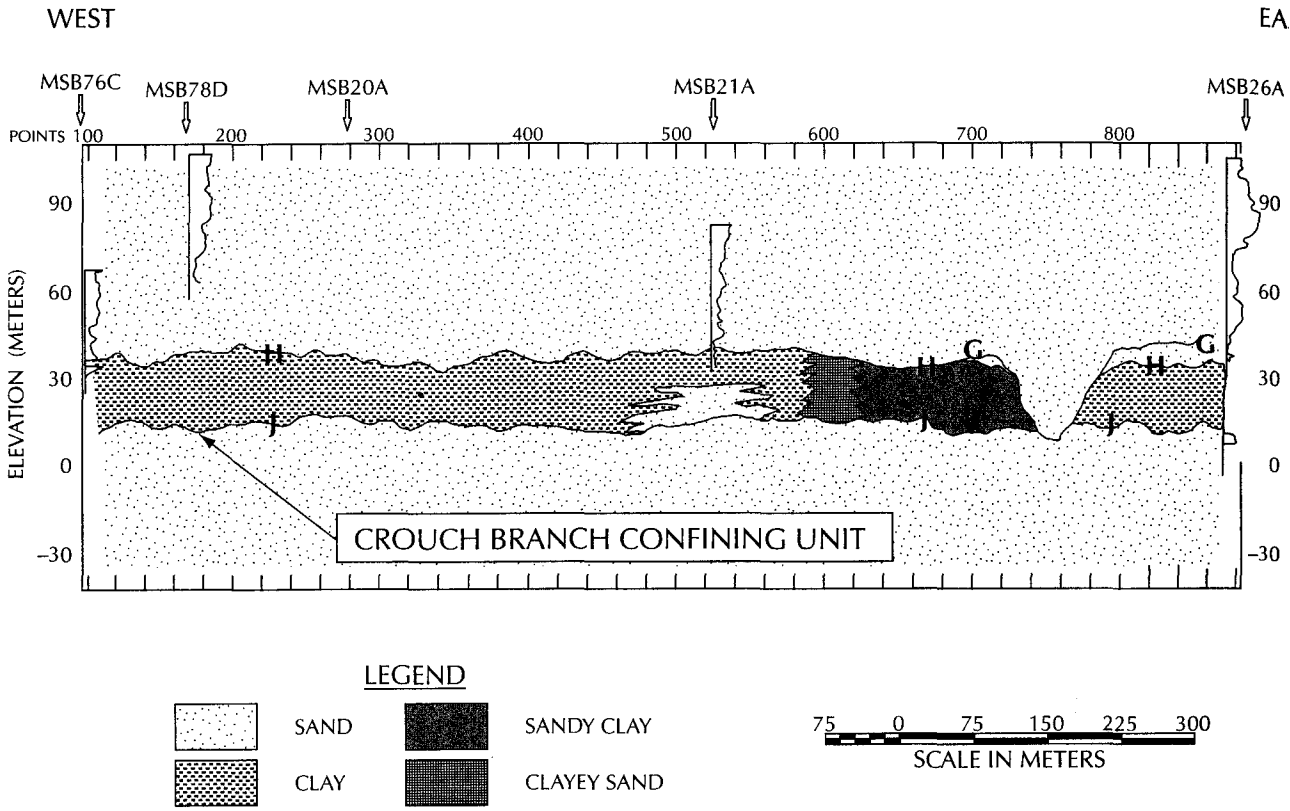


▲ FIGURE 12.28
Reflection seismic section along the east end of line 1. Reflector G is the bottom of an erosional channel that cuts off reflectors H and J which mark the top and bottom of the Crouch Branch confining unit. *Source: Carol A. Eddy-Dilek and others. 1997.* Ground Water *35, no. 3:451–462. Used with permission. Copyright © 1997. Ground Water Publishing Company.*

12.5 Hydrogeologic Site Evaluations

Many types of construction and similar projects require evaluation of the hydrogeology of a site.* This may be part of a comprehensive study of the engineering geology of a proposed dam or tunnel. The siting of sanitary landfills or areas for toxic- or hazardous-waste disposal or storage almost always requires a hydrogeologic site evaluation. Environmental impact studies often include sections on geology and hydrogeology. Hydrogeological analysis can help ensure the integrity and safety of structures located in areas of high water-table, spring discharge, or quicksand potential. Likewise, ground-water pollution generally can be avoided if sanitary landfill sites are selected and engineered on the basis of a thorough

*ASTM References: D 5254-92 (1998) Practice for Minimum Set of Data Elements to Identify a Ground-Water Site
D 5408-93 (1998) Guide for Set of Data Elements to Describe a Ground-Water Site: Part One—Additional Information Descriptors
D 5409-93 (1998) Guide for Set of Data Elements to Describe a Ground-Water Site: Part Two—Physical Descriptors
D 5410-93 (1998) Guide for Set of Data Elements to Describe a Ground-Water Site: Part Three—Usage Descriptors
D 5474-93 Guide for Selection of Data Elements for Ground-Water Investigations



▲ FIGURE 12.29
Geologic section along line 1 based on integration of TDEM survey, seismic reflection survey, borehole geologic logs and borehole lithologic logs. Note the channel cut through the Crouch Branch confining unit between points 580 and 720 and the facies change between points 580 and 720. *Source: Carol A. Eddy-Dilek and others. 1997.* Ground Water *35, no. 3:451–462. Used with permission. Copyright © 1997. Ground Water Publishing Company.*

hydrogeological investigation. Well-planned and -executed field investigations of the hydrogeology of areas of ground-water contamination are also necessary to locate the source of the contamination, define the extent of the plume, and plan for corrective action.

While the detailed design of a hydrogeological site study will be dictated by the specific purpose, there are some elements common to all studies. The first is that they are all relatively expensive. A great expense is in the collection of the basic data. This includes the cost of geophysical surveys, test borings, test wells, pumping tests, permeability lab tests, and so forth. It is frequently the case that data collection is more costly than the evaluation of the data and the formulation of conclusions and recommendations.

The results of a hydrogeological study will generally need to be presented in part on maps. At a minimum, a site-location map will be needed. Standard U.S. Geological Survey topographic maps can be used for site-location maps and perhaps as base maps. A base map should show the important surface features and topography, as well as the locations of all test borings, wells, sampling points, geophysical station locations, and so forth. If a custom base map is needed of an area, it is generally ordered from an aerometric engineering company, which will prepare it from aerial photographs with some surveyed ground elevations. Contour intervals of 1 or 2 ft are desirable for most base maps unless the site has great relief.

A map of the surficial geology can be prepared using standard geologic field techniques. Attention should be given to the nature of bedding planes, fractures, and porosity of rock outcrops. A fracture-trace analysis on air photos can enhance the surficial geology map in areas of fractured bedrock. Detailed mapping of surficial geology can be facilitated if there are soil maps available. Interpretation sheets for the soil-map units indicate the parent material on which the soil formed. They also give a general range of infiltration rate for each soil type.

Surface geophysical surveys may be made as a part of the preliminary site evaluation. Seismic refraction, geoelectric soundings, and geoelectric surveys would be useful for those areas in which the unconsolidated deposits are important. The data from the geophysical surveys can guide the selection of the location of test borings and provide data to correlate between test borings. These borings, or wells, are needed to determine the geologic units present. *Borings** refer to uncased holes drilled in unconsolidated overburden, whereas **test wells** either have a casing or extend into bedrock. A geologist should examine the drill samples or cuttings, prepare a detailed sedimentological and petrographic description, and make a well log showing the depth and thickness of each stratum.†

Slightly disturbed samples of unconsolidated deposits can be collected by driving a thin-walled steel tube (either a Shelby tube‡ or split-spoon sampler§ into the bottom of the drilled hole. In sandy soils, this must be done through hollow-stem drill pipe or auger-flights. The slightly disturbed sample can be used for laboratory testing, including permeameter tests for hydraulic conductivity and grain-size analysis. Test borings and wells can also be used for slug and bail-down tests for hydraulic conductivity.

*Piezometers*** should be installed to determine the configuration of the potentiometric surface. These are small-diameter cased wells with a short well screen. They may be steel or plastic pipe. A minimum of three piezometers is necessary to determine the horizontal direction of ground-water flow if the potentiometric surface is a sloping plane. If it has a more complex shape, then more piezometers are necessary. To determine vertical head differences, closely spaced piezometers set at different depths are needed. A set of piezometers at different depths is called a **piezometer nest.** There should be at least one piezometer nest with separate shallow and deep piezometers for a small site, with more for larger sites.

The elevation of the ground surface and the top of the casing of each piezometer should be accurately surveyed. Measurements of the depth to water of each piezometer+ can then be used to construct a potentiometric map. Successive water-level measurements are necessary, as the elevation and configuration of the potentiometric surface may change with time. Likewise, the amount and direction of vertical flow components may vary.

In addition to the potentiometric maps, the water table may be shown on geologic cross section. These are prepared on the basis of the test borings and wells. Piezometers are generally installed in a test-boring hole so that both geologic and hydraulic data are collected.

---

*ASTM Reference D 1452—Practice for Soil Investigation and Sampling by Auger Borings

†ASTM Reference D 5434-97—Standard Guide for Field Logging of Subsurface Exploration of Soil and Rock

‡ASTM Reference D 1587—Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Geotechnical Sampling of Soils; D 6282-98—Standard Guide for Direct Push Soil Sampling for Environmental Site Characterization

§ASTM Reference D 1586—Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils

**ASTM Reference D 5092-90 (1995) Practice for Design and Installation of Ground-Water Monitoring Wells in Aquifers

+ASTM Reference: D 4750-87 (1993) Test Method for Determining Subsurface Liquid Levels in a Borehole or Monitoring Well (Observation Well)

A great deal of hydrogeological judgment is needed in drawing ground-water maps. The number of data points may be limited and several interpretations possible; under such conditions, draw the map that makes the most sense hydrogeologically.

12.6 Responsibilities of the Field Hydrogeologist

A ground-water study can be of no better quality than the data that are collected in the field by or under the direction of the field hydrogeologist. Excellent field hydrogeology is the foundation upon which a competent hydrogeologic study must be based. This places great responsibility on the shoulders of the field hydrogeologist.

The mark of an excellent field hydrogeologist is the creation of a first-class field notebook. A field notebook should be a contemporaneous record of the day's events and data. Data should be recorded as they are collected, not later in the day or in the evening. A field notebook is not a personal diary, but rather an official business document of the firm that employs the hydrogeologist. It is not a place for personal observations or comments that the author would not like others to read. The author of the field notebook may not be available at some future time when it is necessary for someone to obtain information from it; therefore, it should be well organized and written in a neat hand so that others can read and understand it. Carefully drawn sketches are a good way to record many types of observations.

A field notebook should be a bound book with prenumbered, weatherproof pages. In the front of the book should be recorded the names of the author and his or her company, the company address, and the name and location of the project. Writing should be in waterproof ink. Basic information that should be included on a field notebook includes the following:

1. Date
2. Time the author arrived at the site
3. Names and affiliations of all persons at the site that day
4. Weather conditions that day
5. Basic description of all work being done that day
6. Specific description of work the author is doing that day
7. Specific data being collected
8. Any observations of occurrences out of the ordinary
9. Any times that the author was not present at the site during the day
10. Time the author left the site at day's end.

Detailed information that is to be collected depends upon the task. If, for example, a well is being sampled, the field notebook should record the following:

1. Well number and general location
2. Time of day the well was opened
3. Any observations of unusual conditions of the well, such as a broken lock
4. Depth to water in the well, how it was measured, and how the measuring device was cleaned prior to use
5. Total depth of the well and how it was measured
6. Computation of the volume of water standing in the well
7. How the well was purged, how the purging equipment was cleaned prior to use, and how many well volumes were removed

8. Handling of purged water
9. Calibration of the pH meter, the model and serial number of the pH meter, and the pH of the well both prior to and after purging
10. Method of withdrawing water sample from the well, including the model and serial number of any pump used
11. Description of how the sampling equipment was cleaned prior to being used for sampling
12. Quantity and types of sample containers used and preservatives added
13. Sample numbers of containers used for that specific well
14. Handling of collected samples
15. Time the well was finally capped

A major portion of the field work for site assessments and hazardous-waste site work involves the installation of test borings and the construction of monitoring wells. This work is usually done by a contractor under the direction of the field hydrogeologist. The hydrogeological or engineering consultant will have prepared a detailed set of specifications for the work to be performed. These specifications should conform to all state codes and requirements and spell out the exact work to be done, the materials that are to be used, and the methods that are to be used in performing the work. The bidding procedure will also establish the manner in which the amount of money that the contractor will be paid is determined.

The field hydrogeologist is responsible for confirming that the work done by the drilling contractor is in exact conformity with the specifications. He or she is also responsible for keeping track of the materials that the contractor uses, which helps to determine if the specifications are followed and may also be a factor in determining the amount that the contractor is paid. She or he may also have the responsibilty of adjusting the contract requirements based on field conditions.

To monitor effectively the performance of the drilling contractor, there should be a hydrogeologist on the job on a full-time basis during drilling of borings, collection of core samples, and installation of monitoring wells. Once a well is installed in the ground, it is very difficult to inspect it to see if it fully conforms with the specifications. For example, the specifications will list the type of well casing and screen to be used, the diameter, and the wall thickness. These dimensions should be verified in the field by the hydrogeologist prior to installation. Once the well screen is in the ground, it is next to impossible to determine the wall thickness.

Most well contractors are honest businesspeople. However, to get a job, a contractor is usually the low bidder. This might lead a contractor to try to cut corners if possible. Sometimes the drilling contractor may not see the need for a step in the specifications that the hydrogeologist believes is critical, such as steam cleaning all the new well casing. Although the field hydrogeologist does not need to watch all the casing being steam cleaned, he or she should monitor the activities of the driller to see that it is done. The field hydrogeologist should listen to the driller if the latter has a suggestion, but the hydrogeologist must be ready to stand up to the driller to say that the work will be done according to the best judgment of the field hydrogeologist and in accordance with the specifications.

On rare occasions a drilling contractor might turn out to be less than honest. One site owner was quite surprised to find that the state inspector required that a backhoe be used to excavate the outside of a completed monitoring well. The site owner was even more surprised to find the contractor had filled the annular space outside the casing with empty paper bags and had placed a short plug of concrete at the surface to conceal them. This design was not in accordance with the specifications! Full-time oversight by a qualified field hydrogeologist could have prevented this fraud. The field hydrogeologist

should always inspect any tools that are being placed in the borehole and any material used to construct the well and then observe the placement of all materials in the borehole.

In overseeing the installation of a monitoring well, the field hydrogeologist should personally make the following types of measurements, using his or her own tape and ruler (the driller should also be making these same measurements):

1. Outside diameter of the augers
2. Inside diameter of the augers
3. Final depth of the augered hole
4. Length of the casing and screen to be placed in the hole
5. Depth of the casing and screen after installation
6. Number of bags of sand used in a sand pack
7. Depth to top of sand pack prior to emplacement of the bentonite seal
8. Number of buckets of bentonite used in the bentonite seal
9. Depth to top of bentonite seal prior to emplacement of the grout
10. Number of bags of materials, such as cement and bentonite, used to make the grout
11. Ratio of water to solids used in the grout (Extra water will result in a loose grout that is easy for the contractor to install but might not make a good seal.)
12. Depth to top of grout after placement
13. Diameter and length of the protective surface casing
14. Final height the casing extends above the ground
15. Final height the protective surface casing extends above the ground
16. Volume of water removed during well development

The field hydrogeologist should keep track of the time that the drilling contractor spends on each task at each well. Finally, the field hydrogeologist should be in charge of checking the invoice submitted by the drilling contractor against his or her field record of the time spent and materials used in the construction of the wells.

12.7 Project Reports

The culmination of a hydrogeological study is usually a report. Some reports, such as a thesis or dissertation, will be written for a highly technical audience. Most project reports will have a readership that will include both technical and nontechnical persons. In these cases, the writer must take care to utilize an approach that can serve the needs of both. Frequently, use of some basic maps and illustrations convey general principles of the study. These may be accompanied by an "executive summary," which is written in nontechnical language, and will normally serve the needs of the nontechnical reader (who may well be the client who sponsored the project). In those sections meant for the nontechnical reader, it may be necessary to define terms and explain basic concepts in nontechnical language.

The report will generally contain sections that describe the technical aspects of the study in some detail. If the report is going to a reviewing agency, such as a permit-granting body, then sufficient background information, basic data, and calculations should be included so that the work can be independently checked and verified. Usually the data and calculations are best put into an appendix so that they do not impede the reader who is not making an independent verification of the work.

According to Moore (1991) the first step in report preparation is to determine its purpose and the intended audience. A topical outline is then prepared, with detailed headings and subheadings. The topical outline should be sent to the client for review and comment in order to ensure that it meets the client's needs. An annotated outline is then prepared, in which a sentence or two is used to explain each heading in the topical outline. It is first peer-reviewed by someone else in the organization and then sent to the client for further review and comment. A first draft of the introduction to the report is then written, which includes a background statement of the problem and a description of the purpose and scope of the study. Prior studies that have been done in the area are reviewed and summarized. At this stage of project planning, the methods of study to be used and the approach that will be taken are selected and described in the draft introduction.

The preceding steps should be done during project planning and before data collection begins. The data needs of the planned report will drive the design of the data-collection effort. If no thought is given to the report until the field work is complete, there is a strong possibility that critical data will not be available when it comes time to write the final report.

Once the data are collected, it is time to begin the final writing. The annotated topical outline is the template upon which the report is prepared. The already-written draft introduction is rewritten to reflect any changes in methods and approaches that were necessitated by field conditions and results. A draft of the body of the report, summary, and conclusion is then prepared. The entire draft report is subjected to *peer review,* which is a process where another professional reviews the entire report and prepares a written critique. The purpose of peer review is to help avoid errors in the preparation of the report. Following peer review, any necessary changes in the report are made, and it is submitted to the client for review to determine if the client's needs are met. After client review and any additional revisions, the report is finalized and submitted where needed. It should always be kept in mind that the final report is the most important outcome of the project. It may be the only work product that the client and the reviewing agencies see and may be the basis of a permit or license application.

The following outline covers the material that would go into a final project report.

1. Title page describing the report, who prepared it, for whom it was prepared, and a date
2. Executive summary
3. Introduction stating the purpose of the study, why it was made, and the general conditions under which it was made
4. Conclusions that can be drawn about the site on the basis of the study
5. Recommendations to the client or agency regarding use of the site or need for additional studies
6. Body of the report
   a. review of previous work done on the site
   b. description of procedures and methods used in the study
   c. general results of the field study and laboratory analyses
   d. interpretation of the findings
   e. appropriate maps and cross sections
7. Appendix
   a. acknowledgments of help given by others during the study
   b. bibliography
   c. technical data, computations, and other supporting evidence

Notation

a	Wenner array spacing
A	Cross-sectional area of electrical flow
L	Length of flow path
ΔV	Voltage drop
I	Electrical current
i_c	Critical angle
T_i	Intercept time
X	Distance from shot to place where direct wave and refracted wave arrive simultaneously
$\overline{R}$	Apparent resitivity
m_d	Slope of downdip line
m_u	Slope of updip line
V_1	Seismic velocity in top layer
V_2	Seismic velocity in middle layer
V_3	Seismic velocity in bottom layer
Z	Depth to lower layer
Z_1	Thickness of top layer
Z_2	Thickness of middle layer
$\propto$	Angle of slope of dipping layer

Problems

1. This is a two-layer, seismic-refraction problem. A seismic line was run with the following first-arrival-time results:

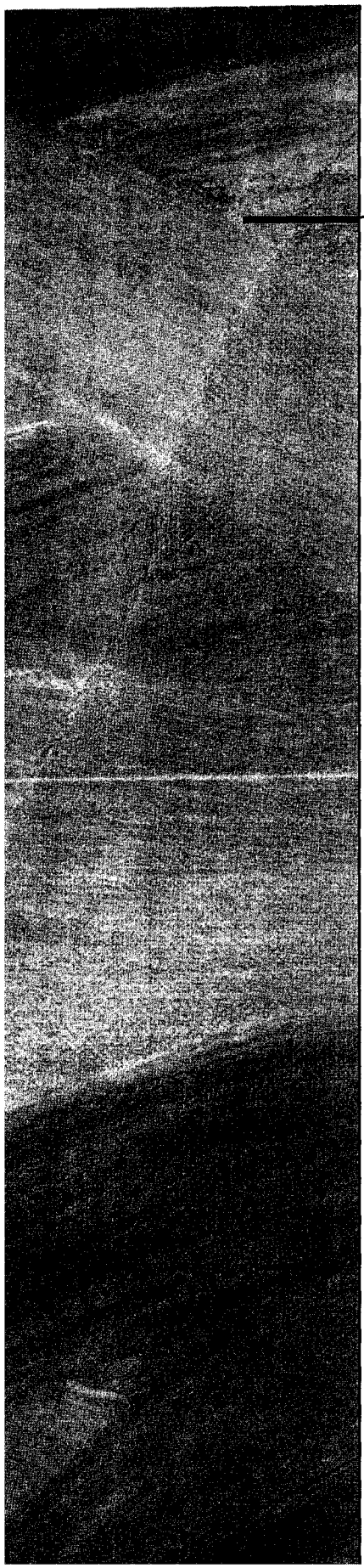
Distance (ft)	Time (ms)
50	10
100	20
150	30
200	32.5
250	36
300	38.5
350	41.5
400	44
450	47
500	49.5
550	53
600	55

   (A) Find V_1.
   (B) Find V_2.
   (C) Find i_c.
   (D) Find Z.

2. This is a three-layer seismic problem. Table 12.2 contains first-arrival times that were measured in both the forward and reverse directions. Find the seismic velocities for each layer in each direction; then average them and use the average values to find Z_1 and Z_2 as well as the critical angle between layer 1 and layer 2.

Table 12.2 First Arrival Times

Distance (ft)	Forward Time (ms)	Reverse Time (ms)	Distance (ft)
0	—	91.0	960
20	11.5	91.5	940
40	15.5	92.5	920
60	20.0	92.0	900
80	22.0	92.0	880
100	26.5	92.0	860
120	30.5	90.5	840
140	32.0	88.0	820
160	36.5	86.0	800
180	39.0	85.5	780
200	43.0	85.0	760
220	46.0	85.0	740
240	49.0	86.0	720
260	52.0	84.0	700
280	56.5	82.0	680
300	59.0	81.0	660
320	61.0	80.0	640
340	62.5	77.5	620
360	63.0	75.5	600
380	65.0	75.0	580
400	65.5	73.0	560
420	66.5	72.0	540
440	67.5	72.0	520
460	68.5	71.0	500
480	68.5	71.5	480
500	71.5	71.0	460
520	72.0	69.5	440
540	72.5	68.5	420
560	74.0	68.0	400
580	76.0	67.5	380
600	77.0	66.5	360
620	78.0	66.0	340
640	80.0	62.0	320
660	80.5	57.5	300
680	81.0	52.0	280
700	81.0	50.0	260
720	81.0	—	240
740	83.5	—	220
760	84.0	—	200
780	85.0	40.5	180
800	86.0	36.5	160
820	86.5	33.0	140
840	87.5	29.0	120
860	87.5	26.0	100
880	88.5	22.0	80
900	89.0	18.0	60
920	90.5	14.0	40
940	91.0	9.5	20
960	91.5	—	0



CHAPTER 13

Ground-Water Models

In nature the hydraulic system in an aquifer is in balance; the discharge is equal to the recharge and the water table or other piezometric surface is more or less fixed in position. Discharge by wells is a new discharge superimposed on the previous system. Before a new equilibrium can be established water levels must fall throughout the aquifer to an extent sufficient to reduce the natural discharge or increase the recharge by an amount equal to the amount discharged by the well. Until this new equilibrium is established water must be withdrawn from storage in the aquifer and conversely the new equilibrium cannot be established until an amount of water is withdrawn from storage by the well sufficient to depress the piezometric surface enough to change the recharge or natural discharge the proper amount. The depression of the piezometric surface is called the cone of depression.

The Significance and Nature of the Cone of Depression in Ground-water Bodies, Charles V. Theis, 1938

13.1 Introduction

There are two areas of hydrogeology where we need to rely upon models of a real hydrogeologic system: to understand why a flow system is behaving in a particular observed manner and to predict how a flow system will behave in the future. In addition, models can be used to analyze hypothetical flow situations in order to gain generic understanding of that type of flow system (Anderson & Woessner 1992). The term *model* refers to any representation of a *real system.* In studying a ground-water flow system we develop a *conceptual model.* For example, we might describe a ground-water system as being contained in deposits of glacial sand and gravel overlying a nearly level bedrock surface consisting of Precambrian-age granite. The sand and gravel unit contains a water table near the land surface, and ground water flows from a nearby moraine into a stream. Such a conceptual model is less complex than a real system. No matter how much field work is performed in describing the above system, our conceptual

model could never fully describe every minute detail of the real system. Nevertheless, conceptual models are necessary for us to be able to understand flow-system behavior.

Conceptual models are static. They describe the present condition of a system. To make predictions of future behavior, it is necessary to have some sort of dynamic model that is capable of manipulation. There are many types of dynamic models of ground-water flow. They include *physical scale models, analog models,* and *mathematical models.*

A *scale model* is made from similar materials as those of the natural system. For instance, a plastic container may be manufactured to scale and filled with sand or glass beads with a hydraulic conductivity scaled to the actual aquifer material. Dye added to the water helps the observer trace the flow. Pressure is measured in piezometers inserted through the walls. Water can be added to the model aquifer to simulate recharge and can also be pumped from scale-model wells. Scale models using sand tanks have been used to study the movement of dense, nonaqueous phase liquids, both above and below the water table (Schwille 1988). Sand tank models are especially useful in demonstrating principles of ground-water flow to nontechnical audiences.

The flow of water through porous media is governed by equations similar to those governing the flow of electricity through a conductor. This also is true for the flow of a viscous fluid between two very closely spaced parallel plates. Models can be constructed using electrical circuits or viscous-fluid flow to simulate real or ideal aquifers. These are called *analog models,* as the model is analogous to the actual aquifer. Analog models are typically constructed to model two-dimensional flow. The models can be either horizontal or vertical. If areal flow patterns are being studied, a horizontal model is indicated. To study vertical flow, a cross-sectional or vertical model is the one of choice.

Electrical models are made with a network of resistors scaled to represent the framework of the aquifer, with capacitors to provide for storage. The flow of electrical current in amperes through the model is representative of fluid flow. The voltage in the model corresponds to hydraulic potential, and the volume of water in storage is analogous to coulombs of electricity. Resistivity is inversely proportional to the hydraulic conductivity of the aquifer, while the capacitance network is scaled to aquifer storativity. Measurements of current and voltage made at various points in the model represent the flow of water and hydraulic head in the aquifer. Electrical analog models can be made to represent three-dimensional flow by linking a series of horizontal models together. While electrical analogs can be used to study the flow of water, they are not amenable to studying the flow in unconfined aquifers, where aquifer transmissivity decreases with pumpage as the water table declines. They are also unable to simulate mass transport, dispersion, and diffusion. Electrical models have been superceded by computer models.

The *viscous-fluid model* is also known as a **Hele-Shaw model** after H. S. Hele-Shaw, who first used it. It has been applied to many problems in hydrogeology. Hele-Shaw models are especially adapted to the study of immiscible fluids with different densities; for example, as encountered in salt-water intrusion. Two liquids with different densities are used to simulate the fresh and salt water. The injection of wastewater into flow fields can be visually studied using Hele-Shaw models. Both horizontal and vertical models have been built. Because of physical constraints, it is not possible to model three-dimensional flow with a viscous-fluid model.

A modification of the Hele-Shaw apparatus, in which a single layer of glass spheres of equal diameter was sandwiched between two parallel glass plates, was used to study the movement of dense, nonaqueous phase liquids (Schwille 1988).

Conrad et al. (1992) have built etched glass micromodels in which pore-scale movement of residual organic liquids trapped in an aquifer can be studied under microscopic magnification.

All analog models—and scale models—have some definite disadvantages. Not the least of these is that the models must be constructed by someone handy at carpentry, plumbing, and wiring. The time and materials cost for large models is substantial. There must be room to construct and house the models, and possibly to store them when not in use. Finally, the models are not very flexible. It is difficult to change the aquifer geometry and hydraulic characteristics built into a model.

Scale models and Hele-Shaw models are advantageous in that the fluid movement is visible through the use of dyes. This is particularly helpful in presentations to those not familiar with subsurface flow.

Mathematical models rely upon the solution of the basic equations of ground-water flow, heat flow, and mass transport. The most simple mathematical model of ground-water flow is Darcy's law. To apply Darcy's law we need to have a conceptual model of the aquifer and to develop data on the physical properties of the aquifer system, the potential field, and the fluid properties. Darcy's law is an example of an *analytical model.* To solve an analytical model we must know the initial and boundary conditions of the flow problem. These conditions need to be simple enough that the flow equation can be solved directly by using calculus. Analytical flow models have been developed to simulate the flow of water to wells and streams (Walton 1984) as well as for heat and mass transport (Javendel, Doughty, & Tsang 1984).

Analytical models can be solved rapidly, accurately, and inexpensively with a programmable calculator or spreadsheet on a personal computer. A minimal amount of data is needed since all sectors of a parameter are assigned the same value. For example, an average value for hydraulic conductivity would be used for an aquifer. If the problem involved a boundary or multiple wells, image well theory can be applied to the solution (Walton 1979).

Numerical models must be used when there are complex boundary conditions or where the value of parameters varies within the model area (Zheng & Bennett 1995). Numerical solutions to the flow, heat, and mass transport equations require that they be recast in an algebraic form. These recast equations are numerical approximations and the answers obtained are also approximations. The equations are most commonly in matrix form and they are solved on a digital computer. Numerical models are one of the most important developments in hydrogeology of the last 15 y.

Stochastic models of ground-water flow are based on statistical theories (Dagan 1986; Gelhar 1986). They have been applied to determination of head and velocity fields (e.g., Rubin & Dagan 1992), as well as solute transport problems (e.g., Dagan, Cvetkovic, & Shapiro 1992; Welty & Gelhar 1992). Since the early 1980s a very large number of papers have been published, in which many different types of stochastic models of ground-water flow have been described. In general these papers are difficult for people not trained in the specific mathematics utilized to read and understand. Despite this massive research effort, most ground-water practitioners who use ground-water models rely upon numerical rather than stochastic models. In part, this is probably due to the evolving state of stochastic models and the difficulty of the mathematics employed in such modeling.

13.2 Applications of Ground-Water Models

Ground-water models have been applied to four general types of problems: ground-water flow, solute transport, heat flow, and aquifer deformation (Mercer & Faust 1981; Wang & Anderson 1982; Trescott, Pinder, & Larson 1976; McDonald & Harbaugh 1984; Pinder & Gray 1977; Konikow & Bredehoeft 1978; Prickett & Lonquist 1971). Numerical models start with the basic equation of ground-water flow (Equation 4–41). This is solved for the head distribution in the aquifer. Solute-transport models add an equation for the changes in

mical concentration in the ground water. Heat-transport equations utilize an equation transfer of heat in the aquifer. Aquifer deformation models combine the flow equation other equations that describe the changes in the physical structure of the aquifer with nges in the aquifer head.

Two broad classes of models have appeared: those that deal with flow through porous dia and those that deal with flow through fractured media. A sand and gravel or sand-ne aquifer is an example of an aquifer best described by use of a porous-media model. A ractured crystalline rock with widely spaced fractures would be an example of an ifer best described by use of a fractured rock model.

Models have been written for the flow of two or more immiscible fluids in an aquifer for both saturated and unsaturated flow.

Ground-water flow models have been applied to the study of regional steady-state in aquifer systems; regional changes in hydraulic head caused by changes in dis-ge or recharge; changes in head near a well field, dewatering well system, injection , or infiltration basin; and surface-water–ground-water interactions.

Solute-transport models have been used in studies of salt-water intrusion, leachate ement from landfills and other waste-disposal sites, contamination plumes from seep-ponds, radionuclide movement from radioactive-waste sites, movement of pesticides agricultural fields, and other types of ground-water pollution.

Heat-transport models have been used in the analysis of thermal impact from high-radioactive-waste storage, storage of thermal energy in aquifers, and ground-water -pump impacts. Land subsidence due to ground-water withdrawals has been studied the use of deformation models.

3 Data Requirements for Models

successfully transform a conceptual model into a mathematical, analog, or scale model, necessary to have a database that provides adequate information to apply the requisite tions. All models start with a ground-water flow model. For this, one needs to know physical configuration of the aquifer. This includes the location, areal extent, and thick-of all the aquifers and confining layers; the locations of the surface water bodies and ms; and the boundary conditions of all aquifers. Important hydraulic properties in-the variation of transmissivity or permeability and storage coefficient of the fers, the variation of permeability and specific storage of the confining layers, and the aulic connection between the aquifers and surface-water bodies. Hydraulic energy, as ated by water-table or potentiometric-surface maps, and the amounts of natural-fer recharge and natural streamflow are also needed.

To model stresses on the natural ground-water flow system, the modeler must know locations, types, and amounts, through time, of any artificial recharge, such as results recharge basins and wells or return flow from irrigation, as well as the amounts and ions through time of ground-water withdrawals from wells. Changes in the amounts ater flowing in the streams and changes in the water levels of surface-water bodies ld also be known.

Solute-transport models need, in addition to the flow-model data, the following infor-n: distribution of effective porosity, aquifer dispersivity factors, fluid-density varia-, and natural concentrations of solutes distributed throughout the ground-water voir. The locations and strengths of the sources of contamination must be known as as retardation factors for the specific solutes with the specific rocks and soils of the .The flow model is used to compute direction and rate of fluid movement, and the e-transport equations are "piggybacked" onto the flow model to derive movement etardation values of contaminants.

A model is initially calibrated by taking the initial estimates of the model parameters and solving the model to see how well it reproduces some known condition of the aquifer. Most models are initially calibrated against the steady-state ground-water heads. A water-table or potentiometric-surface map is required for this type of calibration. As this is almost always known with better accuracy than the distribution of aquifer parameters and/or amount of recharge, the values for the aquifer parameters and recharge are varied until the model closely reproduces the known water-table or potentiometric-surface condition. This process is known as **model calibration.** As the same result can often be obtained by changing two variables simultaneously, it is highly desirable to *verify* a model **(model verification)** once it has been calibrated. This is usually done by history matching. A transient response of the model is obtained and compared with a known transient condition in the aquifer. For example, the water levels in the aquifer may have declined over time owing to withdrawal from wells. If the water levels through time and the locations and pumping rates of the wells are known, the model is verified if it reproduces the known water-level changes by inputting the known ground-water withdrawal history. If the known history is not reproduced with a desired degree of accuracy, the model parameters can be changed to recalibrate the model with a new set of model parameters and the verification run repeated. This process will eventually result in a calibrated and verified model.

During the calibration of the model, a *sensitivity analysis* can be made. When the parameters in the model are varied during calibration, it is possible to determine how sensitive the model is to changes in the hydraulic parameters and boundary conditions. This leads to an understanding of the uncertainty in the model based on the known uncertainty of the field values of the most sensitive parameters.

In verifying against a transient condition, the aquifer storage coefficient is likely to be the parameter that must be adjusted as it will not have been utilized in the calibration against steady-state conditions. Once the model has been verified against a transient event, it should be checked against the steady-state condition to ensure that it still is calibrated. **Model field verification** can then be performed by actually stressing the aquifer to see if the model correctly predicts the response of the aquifer as it is stressed; for example, by performing a pumping test (Anderson 1986). Most computer models are not subjected to field verification as this is a very time-consuming and expensive step. Transient events for history-matching can include pumping tests in addition to long-term water-level declines. In some cases it may be necessary to use a calibrated model that has not been verified. This can occur if there is no history of water-level changes against which to verify the model. Such a model can certainly be useful, but it should be recognized that any predictions are less likely to be valid than those made with a verified model. The more accurate the data that initially go into a model, and the more detailed the data against which it is verified, the more confidence the modeler can have in the model results.

The process of model calibration and verification frequently requires many changes in the data parameters that comprise the model. Scale and analog models might require rebuilding each time a change is made in data values. Numerical models can be easily recomputed with the new data. This is the primary reason why numerical models have nearly replaced other types of models. The rapid growth in computing power and fall in price of personal computers has put the ability to cheaply and easily solve numerical models on the desks of hydrogeologists. The remainder of this chapter will look at computer models of ground-water flow.

The American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) has developed a series of standards for ground-water modeling. These include the following:

D-5447 Standard Guide of Application of a Ground-Water Flow Model to a Site-Specific Problem
D-5490 Standard Guide for Comparing Ground-Water Flow Model Simulations to Site-Specific Information
D-5609 Standard Guide for Defining Boundary Conditions in Ground-Water Flow Modeling
D-5610 Standard Guide for Defining Initial Conditions in Ground-Water Modeling
D-5611 Standard Guide for Conducting a Sensitivity Analysis for a Ground-Water Flow Model Application
D-5618 Standard Guide for Documenting a Ground-Water Flow Model Application
D-5880 Standard Guide for Subsurface Flow and Transport Modeling
D-5981 Standard Guide for Calibrating a Ground-Water Flow Model Application

13.4 Finite-Difference Models

13.4.1 Finite-Difference Grids

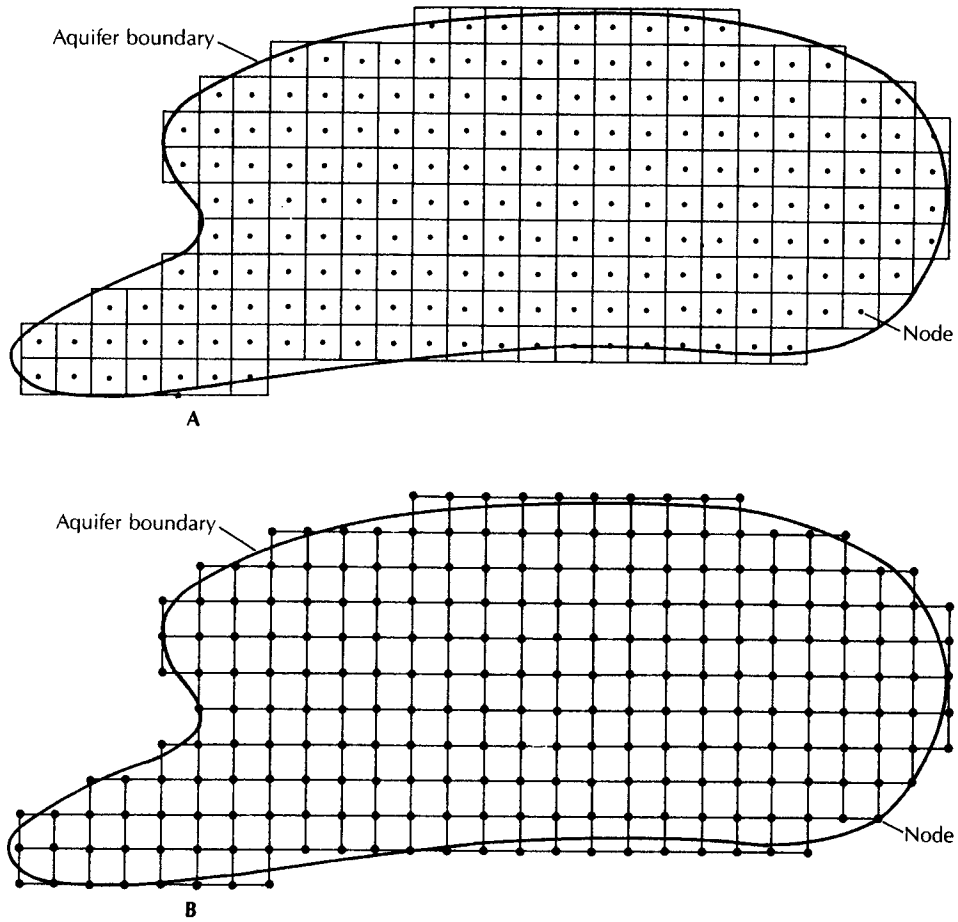
In a conceptual model that is continuous, we presume to know the properties of the aquifer at every point within the boundaries. We can replace the continuous model with a set of discrete points arranged in a grid pattern. Figures 13.1A and 13.1B show two variations of a *finite-difference grid.* Associated with the grid are *node points,* where the equations are solved to obtain unknown values. Also associated with each node or block are the known values of such parameters as transmissivity and storativity. A *block-centered grid* (Figure 13.1A) is one where the node points fall in the center of the grid; a *mesh-centered grid* (Figure 13.1B) has the node points at the intersections of grid lines. The choice of whether to use a block-centered or a mesh-centered grid depends on the boundary conditions. A block-centered grid is most useful when a flux is specified across a boundary, and a mesh-centered grid is most convenient for situations where the head is specified at the boundary.

The basic grid is regular, with the rows and columns being normal to each other and the distance in the x direction, Δx, being equal to the distance in the y direction, Δy. Often it is convenient to vary the size of the rows and columns so that there are more node points in certain parts of the aquifer than others. This might be desirable in the area around a well field, for example, where there are greater changes in head expected than in other parts of the aquifer (Figure 13.2). The size of the difference in Δx or Δy from one column or row to an adjacent one should not change by more than 50% and preferably less than 30% in a variable grid spacing. It is best to gradually change the grid spacing.

13.4.2 Finite-Difference Notation

Special notation is used to describe the positions of the nodes in the finite-difference grids. Figure 13.3A shows a finite-difference grid centered on (x, y). Adjacent points on the grid are located at a distance Δx away to the right or left and Δy away up or down; x is positive to the right and y is positive downward.

In the computer codes, the locations of the nodes are designated with reference to node i, j, where i represents the column and j represents the row. The notation for i is positive to the right and for j it is positive downward. Thus the row above the j row is row $j - 1$ and the row below the j row is $j + 1$. The column to the left of column i is column $i - 1$ and the column to the right of column i is $i + 1$. Computer notation is shown on Figure 13.3B.



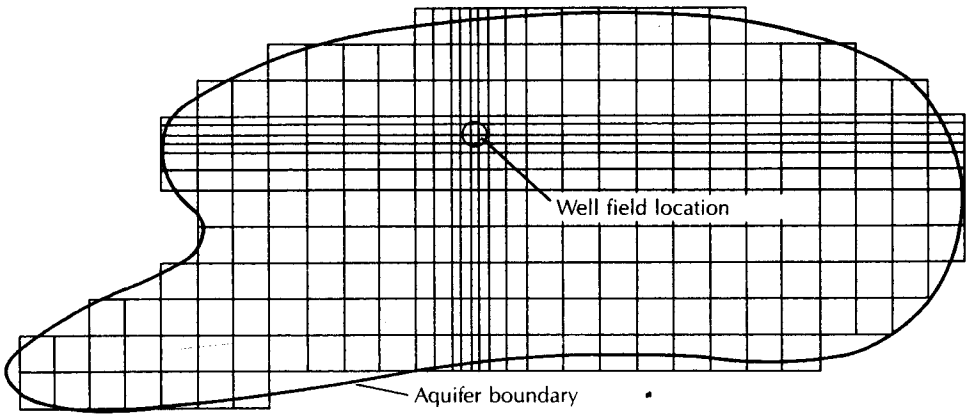
▲ FIGURE 13.1
Finite-difference grids laid over an aquifer. **A.** Block-centered finite-difference grid. **B.** Mesh-centered finite-difference grid.

13.4.3 Boundary Conditions

To solve the ground-water flow equation we must be able to specify the boundary conditions. There are two basic types of boundary conditions (Wang & Anderson 1982). If the head is known at the boundary of the flow region, this is known as a **Dirichlet condition.** If the flux across a boundary to the flow region is known, this is a **Neumann condition.** In some cases the boundary conditions will be mixed, with some portions having known head and some portions having known flux.

As an example of boundary conditions, examine Figure 13.4, which shows a sand and gravel aquifer overlying an impermeable basement rock. There are several flow regions present, each leading away from a ground-water divide toward a stream. We shall look at the regional flow in the region bounded by the letters W, X, Y, and Z.

The plane of W to X is a ground-water divide. There is no flow across the divide and the boundary condition along the divide is $dh/dx = 0$. The plane of Z to Y, which underlies the center of the stream, is also a ground-water divide, across which no flow takes place. The boundary condition along this divide is $dh/dx = 0$. No flow occurs from the sand deposit into the impermeable bedrock, so along the X to Y plane there is no flow and the boundary condition is $dh/dy = 0$. These first three boundaries are Neumann boundaries, where we have specified the flow condition.



▲ FIGURE 13.2
Variable-spacing finite-difference grid.

There are two ways in which we could treat the upper boundary—the W to Z surface—which is the water table. We could specify that the position of the water table is fixed. This would be a Dirichlet boundary. For steady-state conditions—that is, no change of head with time—we could solve this model to give us the amount of recharge needed to maintain the water table in the observed position. The second approach would be to specify the flux across the water table—that is, the amount of recharge. This then becomes a Neumann boundary. This model could be solved to determine the position of the water table under various amounts of recharge. Both of the above models require that the aquifer permeability is known. If we wish to simulate the movement of the water table with time under Neumann conditions, we would also need to know the aquifer storativity.

13.4.4 Methods of Solution for Steady-State Case for Uniform ($\Delta x = \Delta y$) Grid Spacing

In the absence of recharge to the aquifer, the finite-difference equation for the steady-state case (Laplace equation) is (Wang & Anderson 1982):

$$h_{i-1,j} + h_{i+1,j} + h_{i,j-1} + h_{i,j+1} - 4h_{i,j} = 0 \qquad \textbf{(13.1)}$$

When solved for h_{ij}, Equation 13.1 becomes

$$h_{i,j} = (1/4)(h_{i-1,j} + h_{i+1,j} + h_{i,j-1} + h_{i,j+1}) \qquad \textbf{(13.2)}$$

The value of $h_{i,j}$ is the average of the heads at the four closest nodes in the nodal mesh.

If there is recharge to the aquifer, then the finite-difference equation for the steady-state case (Poisson's equation) is (Anderson & Woessner 1992):

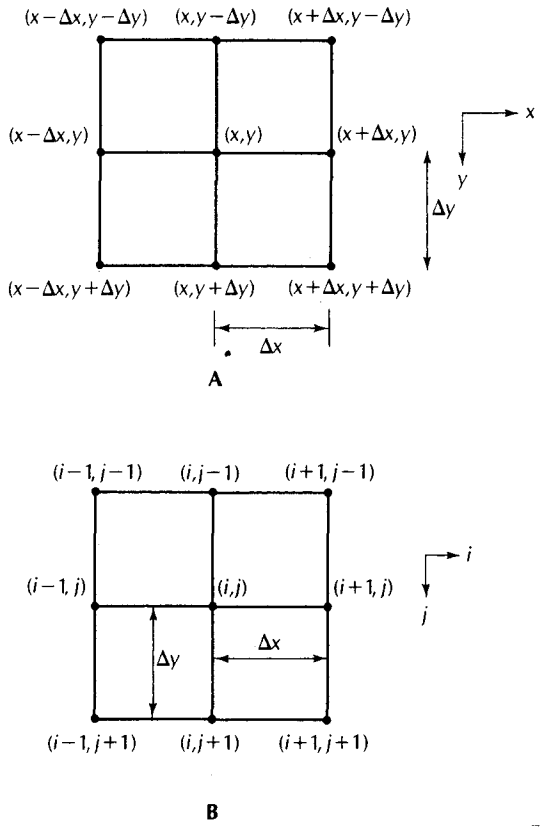
$$(h_{i-1,j} - 2h_{i,j} + h_{i+1,j})/(\Delta x)^2 + (h_{i,j-1} - 2h_{i,j} + h_{i,j+1})/(\Delta y)^2 = -R/T \qquad \textbf{(13.3)}$$

where

Δx and Δy are the distances between nodes in the x- and y- directions

R is the recharge

T is the aquifer transmissivity



▲ FIGURE 13.3
A. Finite-difference grid. **B.** Computer notation for finite-difference grid.

In a finite-difference mesh there are thousands of nodes. Each node requires the solution of a form of Equation 13.2 or 13.3. The method of solution is to make an initial guess of the value of head for each of the nodes in the mesh. For Dirichlet boundary nodes the head will be fixed; for all other boundary nodes and interior nodes the value of the head will not be fixed.

The finite-difference equation is solved by what are known as *iterative methods.* On the basis of the fixed head values, plus the initial guesses, Equation 13.1 is solved for each node on the basis of the values at the surrounding four nodes. A computer code sweeps the solution path through the finite-difference grid so that for each node, other than the first one and the last one, the head values at some of the adjacent nodes will be based on the initial guess, while at the remainder of the adjacent nodes the head value will already have been recomputed by Equation 13.1. Once the head at each node has been recomputed, the difference between the initial guess and the recomputed head is determined. The process is repeated until the maximum difference in head values from one iteration to the next is less than some preset value known as the *convergence criterion.* When the solution has converged, the equation has been solved. The solution is approximate as there is some finite value to the convergence criterion. The smaller that value is, the more iterations, and hence the longer period of time, it takes to reach the solution. There is some practical trade-off between accuracy of the solution and the amount of computer time expended to reach it.

The **Gauss-Seidel** iteration method computes the value of $h_{i,j}$ during an iteration on the basis of heads at two adjacent nodes, which have been computed during the current iteration, and heads at two adjacent nodes, which were computed during the prior iteration.

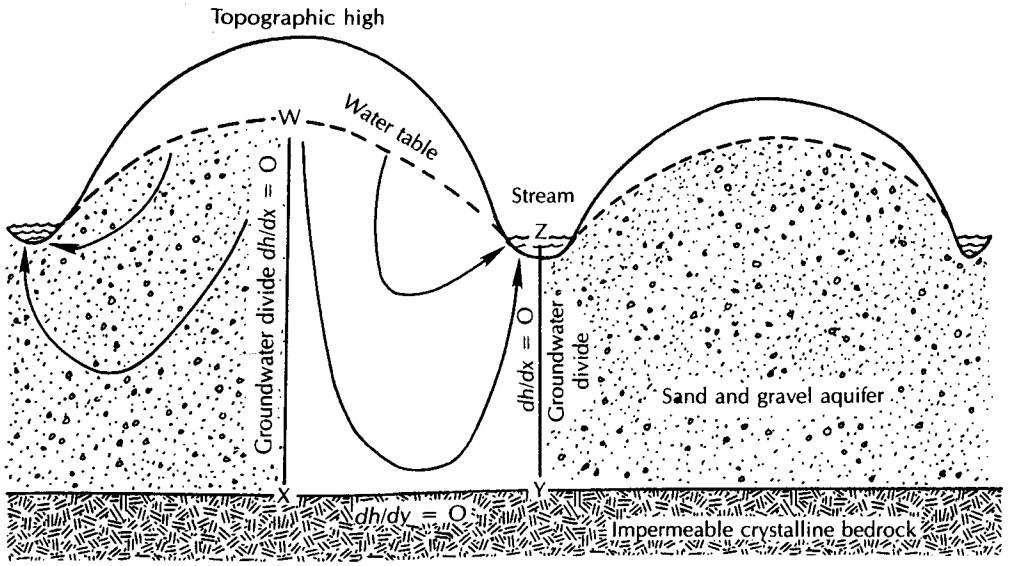


FIGURE 13.4
Boundary conditions for a cross section of a regional aquifer.

The Gauss-Seidel equation for the Laplace equation is

$$h_{i,j}^{m+1} = (1/4)(h_{i-1,j}^{m+1} + h_{i,j-1}^{m+1} + h_{i+1,j}^{m} + h_{i,j+1}^{m}) \tag{13.4}$$

where the superscript m indicates a value computed during a prior iteration and $m + 1$ indicates a value computed during the current iteration.

The Gauss-Seidel equation for Poisson's equation in a grid where $\Delta x = \Delta y$ is (Anderson and Woessner, 1992):

$$h_{i,j}^{m+1} = (1/4)(h_{i-1,j}^{m+1} + h_{i,j-1}^{m+1} + h_{i+1,j}^{m} + h_{i,j+1}^{m} + \Delta x^2 R/T) \tag{13.5}$$

The method of **successive overrelaxation (SOR)** is a variation of the Gauss-Seidel method. The difference in head value computed at a node by two Gauss-Seidel iterations is known as the residual. During each Gauss-Seidel iteration, the residual shrinks until the convergence criterion is reached. In successive overrelaxation, a factor is added to increase the rate of convergence. The overrelaxation factor is a number between 1 and 2, and an acceptable value is normally determined by trial and error. If we designate the value of $h_{i,j}$ as determined by a Gauss-Seidel iteration as $(h_{i,j}^{m+1})$ and the overrelaxation factor as f, the value of $h_{i,j}^{m+1}$ as determined by the SOR method is (Anderson & Woessner, 1992):

$$h_{i,j}^{m+1} = h_{i,j}^{m} + f(h_{i,j}^{m+1} - h_{i,j}^{m}) \tag{13.6}$$

where $(h_{i,j}^{m+1} - h_{i,j}^{m})$ is the residual.

13.5 Methods of Solution for the Transient Case

In a transient problem the head is a function of time. This type of solution would be applied to problems such as determining the change in head around a pumping well or the growth of a ground-water mound beneath a recharge basin. Equation 4–44 is the transient-flow equation in two dimensions with a factor for recharge. This equation can be adapted to unsaturated aquifers if the transmissivity varies with time as the saturated thickness of an aquifer changes with changes in head.

The *alternating direction implicit method* of solution is used in a number of published computer codes (Trescott, Pinder, & Larson 1976; McDonald & Harbaugh 1984). Equation 4–42 is the two-dimensional flow equation without recharge. The fully implicit finite-difference approximation is (Anderson & Woessner 1992):

$$h_{i+1,j}^{n+1} + h_{i-1,j}^{n+1} + h_{i,j+1}^{n+1} + h_{i,j-1}^{n+1} - 4h_{i,j}^{n+1}) = [(1/T)(Sa^2)][(1/\Delta t)(h_{i,j}^{n+1} - h_{i,j}^{n})] \quad (13.7)$$

where

S is storativity

T is transmissivity

Δt is the length of the time step

$a = \Delta x = \Delta y$ = the dimensions of the finite-difference grid

n represents the nth time step

The fully implicit finite-difference approximation can be combined with an iterative solution, such as the Gauss-Seidel. In this method the head is first determined along columns and then along rows. For each time step, a solution is obtained for the head at every point on the finite-difference grid by convergence to a residual value less than the convergence criterion. The convergence criterion is checked after each two iterations as the program must go through all the points along columns and then rows for a complete iteration cycle. The program then steps to the next time increment and the process is repeated. In the following equation, the time step counter, n, is now shown as a subscript while the iteration step counter, m, is shown as a superscript. The heads in column i at time step $n + 1$ may be found from the following equation (Anderson & Woessner 1992):

$$h_{i,j-1,n+1}^{m+1} + [-4 - (Sa^2)/(T\Delta t)]h_{i,j,n+1}^{m+1} + h_{i,j+1,n+1}^{m+1} = [(-Sa^2)/(T\Delta t)]h_{i,j,n} - h_{i+1,j,n+1}^{m} - h_{i-1,j,n+1}^{m+1} \quad (13.8)$$

For the next iteration ($m + 2$) the solution is oriented along rows. The heads in row j at time step $n + 1$ may be found from the equation (Anderson & Woessner 1992):

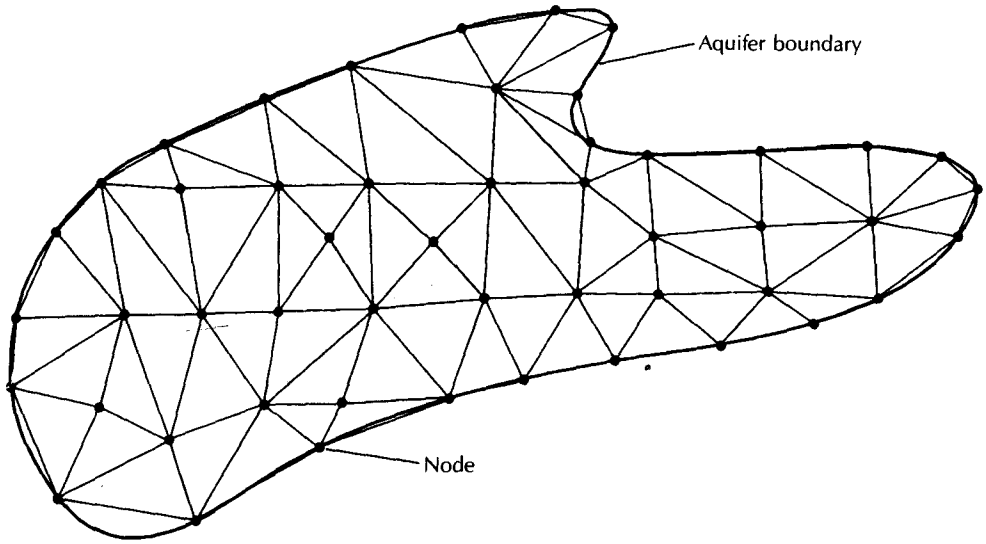
$$h_{i-1,j,n+1}^{m+2} + [-4 - (Sa^2)/(T\Delta t)]h_{i,j,n+1}^{m+2} + h_{i+1,j,n+1}^{m+2} = [(-Sa^2/(T\Delta t)]h_{i,j,n} - h_{i,j+1,n+1}^{m+1} - h_{i,j-1,n+1}^{m+2} \quad (13.9)$$

The solution of a transient problem takes much more time than the solution of a steady-state problem as the method is to solve a series of steady-state problems, each separated by a time step. The amount of central processor time in the computer used by the transient type of problem is thus greatly increased.

There are several other methods of solution for transient finite-difference models. These include line-successive overrelaxation and the strongly implicit procedure. Several of the ground-water model codes, including the Trescott, Pinder, and Larson model (1976) and the McDonald and Harbaugh model (1984), offer the user the choice of more than one method of solution. For a particular problem it may be that the user would find one method faster than another. This should be determined during the calibration procedure for each area modeled.

13.5 Finite-Element Models

Finite-element models offer an alternative approach to the numerical modeling of ground-water flow. Rather than use the rectangular network of nodes that is used in the finite-difference method, the aquifer is divided into polygonal cells, typically triangular, but not



▲ FIGURE 13.5
Finite-element grid for an aquifer.

necessarily so. Figure 13.5 shows the finite-element cells for an aquifer to be modeled. The triangles intersect at nodes that represent the points at which the unknown values, such as heads, will be computed. The value of the head in the interior of each cell is determined by interpolation between the nodal points.

The mathematical basis for the finite-element method is much more complex than that of the finite-difference method. Most finite-element solutions are based on Galerkin's method. This method is described elsewhere (Wang & Anderson 1982; Pinder & Gray 1977). The mathematics are not intuitively obvious, unlike those of the finite-difference method, and will not be pursued further here.

Finite-element models are reported to be somewhat superior to finite-difference models for problems that have a moving boundary, such as a cross-sectional model with a water table that is transient, as well as coupled problems, such as contaminant transport (Wang & Anderson 1982). The finite-element model also has the advantage of being much more flexible in terms of mimicking the geometry of an aquifer system than the finite-difference method and requires fewer nodes.

13.6 Use of Published Models

Most hydrogeologists will never devise a new method of solution for the flow equations or write a new computer code for ground-water modeling. A large number of computer models have already been developed and more will be developed in research institutions. Published models have certain advantages over custom-designed ones. It is much less expensive to apply an already developed model, if an available model will accomplish the desired goal. The model will already have been "debugged" and most often applied to a field situation so the user has a good chance that the model will actually work in the intended application. Finally, if the published model has been widely used and accepted by practicing hydrogeologists, the results of another application will be more readily accepted than if an entirely new model code has been developed. This may be very important if the model results are to be used in a regulatory process or in litigation.

The U.S. Geological Survey has published several computer models. These are well documented and tested. They are in the public domain and versions are readily available at moderate cost for both mainframe and personal computers.

The *McDonald and Harbaugh model* (MODFLOW) (McDonald & Harbaugh 1984) is an extremely versatile finite-difference ground-water flow model. Documentation is available from the U.S. Geological Survey. It is three-dimensional and the layers can be either water table, confined, or a combination of both. The model simulates recharge, evapotranspiration, areal recharge, flow to wells, flow to drains, and flow through riverbeds. It is set up as a series of separate modules, which are independent; the user selects only the modules needed for the particular system under study. The user may choose between different methods of solution. Commercial versions are available from many vendors. MODFLOW is the most widely used flow model.

The *Konikow and Bredehoeft model* (MOC) (Konikow & Bredehoeft 1978) is a widely used solute-transport model. Documentation is available from the U.S. Geological Survey. It is based on a finite-difference grid and uses the method of characteristics for solution. It is two-dimensional and computes changes of concentration with time caused by advection, hydrodynamic dispersion, and mixing. The MOC code has been modified to incorporate radioactive decay, equilibrium sorption, and ion exchange.

The *Prickett Lonquist Aquifer Simulation Model* (PLASM) (Prickett & Lonquist 1971) is an earlier finite-difference, ground-water flow model, but it is still very useful. Documentation is available from the Illinois State Geological Survey. In essence, this model is a series of related programs that can be used for distinct applications. Both two- and three-dimensional as well as water-table and confined-aquifer models are included.

SUTRA (saturated-unsaturated transport) (Voss 1984) is a finite-element simulation model for fluid movement and the transport of either dissolved solutes or energy under either saturated or unsaturated conditions. Under the solute-transport mode, the solute may be subjected to adsorption on the porous medium as well as decay or production. In addition, the flow of variable-density fluids, such as saline water or leachate, may be simulated. The heat-transport mode can simulate such things as subsurface heat conduction, geothermal reservoirs, and thermal storage in aquifers. The model may be employed in either a cross-sectional or horizontal configuration.

Another public-domain solute transport model is RNDWALK (Prickett, Naymik, & Lonquist 1981). This is a particle-tracking model in which the computer code moves particles representing contamination by advection and then disperses them using a normal distribution to account for dispersion.

MODPATH (Pollock 1989) is a particle-tracking model that works with MODFLOW to calculate ground-water velocities, flow path lines, and travel times. MT3D (Zheng 1990) also works with MODFLOW and calculates concentrations of ground-water contaminants. It simulates advection, retardation, dispersion, and decay. A through-ground-water modeling project might use MODFLOW to model the steady-state flow characteristics of the site followed by MODPATH to determine the flow paths at the site. MT3D could then be used to calculate the concentrations of contaminants that were moving along the flow paths.

Anderson and Woessner (1992) list the following steps in the development of a ground-water model:

1. Determine if and why a model is needed (*purpose* of the model).
2. Gather available geologic and hydrologic data and create a *conceptual model* of the system.
3. Select the *computer code* that will be used. The computer code is what is normally termed the ground-water model (e.g., MODFLOW, MOC). The computer code must be capable of fulfilling the purpose of the model and must be compatible with the available data. The public-domain codes listed in this section have undergone a process of *code verification* to determine if they accurately solve the governing flow equations.

4. The next step is *model design.* The model grid, boundary, and initial conditions are selected. These must conform to the conceptual model.
5. The model must undergo *calibration.* Different runs of the model are made, and the model parameters adjusted to determine if the model output can reproduce field data for head and flow. At this point a model has the lowest level of confidence.
6. To increase confidence in the model, a *sensitivity analysis* is performed on the calibrated model to see how changes in each parameter affect the model results.
7. If a second set of field data exists—for example, head changes during a pumping test—a second stage of calibration, called *verification,* can be accomplished. If the calibrated model can be verified, then the level of confidence in the model increases.
8. The calibrated and verified model can be used for *prediction.* If a model that has been calibrated but not verified is used for prediction, it must be recognized that there is a lower level of confidence in the result.
9. Recognizing the uncertainty even with a calibrated and verified model, *prediction sensitivity analysis* is performed. This demonstrates that there is a range of uncertainty in the predicted results.
10. The modeler is finally ready to *present results* of the study in a well-designed and written report.

Tsang (1991) points out that at each step in the process, it is necessary to determine if sufficient data exist for the chosen model to be effective. It may be necessary to stop the modeling process and go back to the field or laboratory to collect additional data before modeling resumes. If time and budget do not permit this, then the modeling process should be abandoned rather than continued to a faulty conclusion. In fact, preliminary modeling after an initial data collection program is often a good idea to help the hydrogeologist plan a more extensive data collection effort.

According to Anderson (1983), "All models require the talents of a skilled model user, a tailor, to design hydrogeologically valid boundary conditions and initial conditions and select meaningful values for model parameters."

The computer codes available today are capable of producing professional-looking graphical output that is based on little actual data or data of questionable validity. It is like a movie set, an impressive façade from afar, but if one looks closely, there is nothing behind it. If the model does not have a strong foundation of quality field and laboratory data, then the user should beware of the results.

Bredehoeft and Hall (1995) opine that modeling should be an iterative process. A simple model should be constructed at the beginning of a project. The hydrogeologist should use a best guess for the initial aquifer parameters and the recharge. As field data are collected, the model should be continuously revised. The modeling should guide the investigation so that the data to which the model is most sensitive can be collected. It is wasteful to collect a large volume of data for which the model is relatively insensitive. It is foolish to fail to collect the data for which the model is most sensitive. By having positive feedback from modeling to the field investigation, the hydrogeologist will have the best chance of collecting the most important data.

According to Bredehoeft and Hall (1995) the most important use of a model is to provide the hydrogeologist with insight into how the hydrogeologic system works. In the end, it is the professional judgment of the hydrogeologist that is important. All a model can do is to guide the hydrogeologist so that she or he can make the best assessment of the hydrogeological circumstances.

13.7 MODFLOW Basics

MODFLOW is a block-centered finite-difference model. It can simulate confined, leaky confined, and unconfined aquifers. MODFLOW only simulates saturated flow in a porous medium with uniform temperature and density. It cannot simulate multiphase flow, flow in the unsaturated zone, flow in fractured media (unless it can be considered to be an equivalent porous media), density-dependent flow, or an aquifer with varying anisotropy conditions.

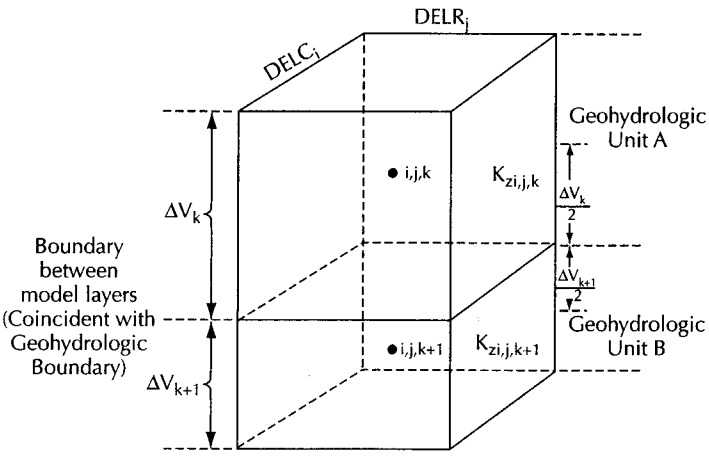
The model is three-dimensional in that layers of porous media can be stacked. Each layer must have the same x-y grid dimensions and spacing. The Δz dimension is not specified, but is determined indirectly. The transmissivity of each layer (hydraulic conductivity $\times$ Δz) can be specified. Alternatively, the user can specify the elevation of the top and bottom layers and conductivity. The model then calculates Δz and finds the transmissivity. Transmissivity may be different at each node in the layer, thus, Δz can vary across the model layer. The result is a distortion in the finite-difference grid, which can introduce a small error in the finite-difference approximation.

Layers can be either confined, unconfined, or convertible from one to the other. For confined layers, one will input the transmissivity and storage coefficient. The top layer is generally unconfined. In this case, one inputs the elevation at the bottom of the layer, the specific yield, and the hydraulic conductivity. The model will then calculate the transmissivity by multiplying the saturated thickness by the hydraulic conductivity. An initial head is specified which determines the initial saturated thickness. With each iteration the head at a cell is updated and the transmissivity is recalculated. An unconfined aquifer layer is infinitely thick and the head can rise to any level. If the top layer is convertible, one specifies both a top and a bottom elevation. For each cell the model determines if it is confined (the head is greater than the elevation of the top) or unconfined (the head is less than the elevation of the top).

If the model has more than one layer, then a vertical transmission or leakage term, VCONT, must be determined. This is the harmonic mean of K_z weighted by Δz between vertically adjacent cells. For the fully three-dimensional simulation, it is equal to

$$\text{VCONT}_{i,j,k+1/2} = \frac{2}{\dfrac{\Delta v_k}{(K_z)_{i,j,k}} + \dfrac{\Delta v_{k+1}}{(K_z)_{i,j,k+1}}} \tag{13.10}$$

where the terms are defined in Figure 13.6. Note that this represents the boundary between two hydrostratigraphic units.



◀ FIGURE 13.6
Parameters used to calculate VCONT.

If there are two layers in the same hydrostratigraphic unit, the $(K_z)_{i,j,k} = (K_z)_{i,j,k+1}$ and Equation 13.10 reduces to

$$\text{VCONT}_{i,j,k+1/2} = \frac{2K_z}{\Delta v_k + \Delta v_{k+1}} \tag{13.11}$$

For an unconfined top layer, the average water-table elevation is used to define the top of the cell for purposes of calculating VCONT between layers 1 and 2.

The model user specifies the T_x and T_y or K_x and K_y for each node. MODFLOW will then convert the block transmissivity to internodal transmissivities.

MODFLOW has several packages that are called upon to solve for specific boundary conditions, such as the following:

Drains—These act as a sink for water. They can be used for a seepage face.
Rivers—These are head-dependent flux boundaries. They are an infinite source of water. If the cell goes dry, then the river infiltration will stop.
Recharge—This is water added to each cell from rainfall or irrigation.
Evapotranspiration—Water is removed dependent upon the depth to the water table. If the uppermost cell goes dry, then evapotranspiration will cease.
Wells—If the pumping rate is negative, then it is an extraction well. If it is positive, then it is an injection well. There can be only one well per cell and the well is at the center of the block.

When designing the grid for a MODFLOW model, consider the following:

1. Grid spacing should increase or decrease gradually. Keep the change in grid spacing to less than 30%. The grid may step from 100 ft to 125 ft to 150 ft, but not directly from 100 ft to 150 ft.
2. Use close grid spacing where there is a steep gradient, such as near a well. The model will yield the head at the center of the cell. If the cell is large, there can be a significant difference in head from one side to the other.
3. The drawdown predicted by the model will be less than the actual drawdown, especially in the vicinity of wells.
4. The shape of a grid cell is the shape of the well, if the well is in that cell. Use square cells to simulate wells.

MODFLOW has the following solver packages available. With them, the user has control over the method of solution used.

1. SSOR (Successive Slice Overrelaxation). This is a slow solution that is not very robust numerically. It is only useful for cross-section models.
2. SIP (Strongly Implicit Method). This is also slow, but is generally robust numerically; however, one should always check the mass balance of the model to determine if the model results are reasonable.
3. PCG2 (Preconditioned-Conjugate Gradient). This is a faster method that is very robust numerically, but might fail in some complex models.
4. WHS Solver (Preconditioned-Conjugate Gradient Stabilized Method, PCGStab). This solver is part of a version of MODFLOW sold by Waterloo Hydrogeologic, Inc. This is a very fast and robust method, but requires about three times more computer memory than any of the other methods.

MODFLOW can also be used with a program called PEST, which is a parameter estimation routine. One specifies which parameters PEST can modify, and then specifies a list of observations, such as measured heads and streamflow values. PEST will then run MODFLOW and change the indicated values until it gets a best fit for the changeable parameters by comparing the observed data set with the calculated values. PEST is not a calibration program. It yields a best fit of the calculated values to the observed values, but the selected parameters could be completely unrealistic. For example, in a steady-state model two variables may appear to be independent (recharge and horizontal hydraulic conductivity), however, they are not. An unrealistically high recharge value combined with an unrealistically high horizontal hydraulic conductivity can yield a good fit of observed versus calculated head values. The check on this is to see if the stream flow out of the model is realistic. If the head values are okay, but the stream flow is too high or too low, then the ratio of recharge to hydraulic conductivity is wrong.

13.8 Visual MODFLOW

The companion CD-ROM to *Applied Hydrogeology* contains a student version of Visual MODFLOW from Waterloo Hydrogeologic, Inc. Included are a preprocessor and postprocessor, as well as MODFLOW, MODPATH, and MT3D. In this fully functional, but limited version of the professional program, the user is limited to a three-layer model that can be no greater than 40 rows by 40 columns. There can be no more than three property zones and two pumping wells. Instructions on how to load the program on your hard drive are given in Appendix 15. Both an electronic manual and tutorial are located on the CD-ROM. You can either view it on screen or print it out. It contains complete information on how to operate Visual MODFLOW. Working with the student version of Visual MODFLOW is excellent training for use of the professional version, which is an industry standard.

13.9 Geographical Information Systems

For many larger sites, a great amount of data may be collected. It is not unusual for a large, complicated site to have 20 to 50 monitoring wells. Each well can have associated with it a boring log and data sets for soil chemistry. Each well may be sampled for ground-water quality multiple times, perhaps quarterly for several years. Each site will also have topographic information and cultural features such as buildings, roads, and possibly storage tanks for petroleum products or chemicals. It becomes a large task to organize, store, and display the data. A type of computer program called the Geographic Information System (GIS) can be used for this purpose.

GIS will store, analyze, and display multiple layers of geographic information. It is based on maps of the earth. One layer might contain the topography, a second layer roads, a third layer buildings, and a fourth layer the locations of borings and wells. Industry-standard GIS programs include ARCInfo and ARCView, both from Environmental Systems Research Institute, Inc. (http://www.esri.com/).

Information can be attached to each well, such as water-table elevation, stratigraphy, and soil and ground-water chemistry. This can be done through a three-dimensional visualization program. One such program is Environmental Visualization System (EVS) at http://www.ctech.com/. This program can generate three-dimensional views of subsurface data, including soil and ground-water chemistry. It can also illustrate the site stratigraphy in three dimensions. It has algorithms that can be used to calculate masses, for example, the volume of soil with contamination above a specified concentration or the mass of a dissolved chemical in the ground water.

GIS and three-dimensional visualization programs typically need a high-end workstation and are more expensive than basic ground-water modeling software. They also require extensive training in their use. Hydrogeologists should, however, be aware of the programs' capabilities.

Analysis

A. Excel Ground-Water Flow Model

MODFLOW is a powerful but flexible code which requires some time to learn. It is possible to program a simple steady-state flow model on Excel. In this analysis exercise we recreate a model written by Dr. Rex Hodges of Clemson University.

In Cell A1 enter "TWO-DIMENSIONAL STEADY-STATE MODEL," and in cell 2 enter your name and the date.

We will make an 8 by 8 cell model. The top, bottom, and left side will be constant head boundaries, and the right edge will be a no-flow boundary.

The first step in setting up the model is to set the values of the boundaries. For the constant head boundaries, this will involve putting a value in the cell.

Left Side		Top Side		Bottom Side	
Cell	**Value**	**Cell**	**Value**	**Cell**	**Value**
B11	100	C10	100	C19	65
B12	95	D10	95	D19	70
B13	90	E10	90	E19	75
B14	85	F10	85	F19	80
B15	80	G10	80	G19	85
B16	75	H10	75	H19	90
B17	70	I10	70	I19	95
B18	65	J10	65	J19	100

For the no-flow boundary on the right side of the model, the head at the boundary is set equal to the head in the adjacent cell of the model. Thus, there is no gradient and, hence, no flow across the boundary. Enter the following formulas into the cells on the boundary.

Cell	Formula
K11	=J11
K12	=J12
K13	=J13
K14	=J14
K15	=J15
K16	=J16
K17	=J17
K18	=J18

We now need to enter a finite-difference equation in each of the interior cells of the model. The situation we will model is steady-state flow with no recharge, which is the Laplace equation. In finite-difference form it is Equation 13.2. Thus, for each cell, one adds the head in the four adjacent cells, and then divides by 4. For cell F13, the finite-difference equation would be =(F12+E13+F14+G13)/4. We also need to insert an initial value in each of the interior cells as a starting point for the iteration. We can do this with a shortcut in the formula for each cell. We can put an initial value in a cell outside of the model, and then enter this into the cell with the logical operator, IF. The complete formula for cell F13 becomes =(IF(A3="ic",A4,(F12+E13+F14+G13)/4), meaning that if "ic" is entered in cell A3, then whatever value is found in cell A4 is placed in cell F13. However, if "ic" is not found in cell A3, then the finite-difference equation is used to calculate a value for cell F13.

First we need to format the interior cells and the no-flow boundary. Move the cell pointer to cell K18 and press the left mouse button and hold it down. While holding down the left mouse button, move the cell pointer to cell C11 and release the left mouse button. You should have highlighted the interior cells of the model and the no-flow boundary. Now click on Format on the menu bar. From the drop-down menu click on Cells. Then highlight Number under Category and set decimal places to 1. Then click OK on the bottom of the menu.

Next type "ic" into cell A3 and "4" into cell A4.

The following equations must be entered into the interior cells of the model.

Cell	Equation
C11	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(C10+B11+C12+D11)/4)
C12	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(C11+B12+C13+D12)/4)
C13	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(C12+B13+C14+D13)/4)
C14	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(C13+B14+C15+D14)/4)
C15	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(C14+B15+C16+D15)/4)
C16	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(C15+B16+C17+D16)/4)
C17	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(C16+B17+C18+D17)/4)
C18	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(C17+B18+C19+D18)/4)
D11	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(D10+C11+D12+E11)/4)
D12	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(D11+C12+D13+E12)/4)
D13	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(D12+C13+D14+E13)/4)
D14	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(D13+C14+D15+E14)/4)
D15	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(D14+C15+D16+E15)/4)

D16	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(D15+C16+D17+E16)/4)
D17	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(D16+C17+D18+E17)/4)
D18	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(D17+C18+D19+E18)/4)
E11	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(E10+D11+E12+F11)/4)
E12	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(E11+D12+E13+F12)/4)
E13	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(E12+D13+E14+F13)/4)
E14	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(E13+D14+E15+F14)/4)
E15	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(E14+D15+E16+F15)/4)
E16	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(E15+D16+E17+F16)/4)
E17	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(E16+D17+E18+F17)/4)
E18	=IF(A3="ic",A4,(E17+D18+E19+F18)/4)

Continue in the above pattern until all interior cells are filled in, which includes column J11 through J18. You can simplify this process by using the copy and paste icons in the toolbar. Type the correct formula for cell C11 and press Enter. Then move the cell pointer to cell C11 and click on Copy. Next move the cell pointer to cell C12, press and hold the left mouse button and drag the cell pointer to cell C18. Release the left mouse button and you will have highlighted the remaining cells in the C column. Now click on Paste and the correct equations should be entered in the C column. You can also copy from the C11 cell to a range from D11 to J18. Once you have copied from C11 to the remaining cells, check a few of the cells to see if the correct equation, as listed, has been copied. Excel should change the formula in C11 to reflect the position of the copied cell.

You should now have a model which has the constant head boundaries at the top left and bottom of the model and the number 4 in each of the interior cells, plus the no-flow right-side boundary.

Now click once on Tools on the menu bar on the top of the Excel window. From the drop-down menu click on Options, then click on the calculation tab, and under calculation activate Automatic and Iteration. Automatic should have a dot in the open circle to the left and Iteration should have a check in the open square to the left. Maximum iteration should be set at 1 and maximum change at 0.001. Then click OK at the bottom right of the menu.

At this point you may want to save your model. We will be making changes to it later and you may need to come back to the original version.

Now move the cell pointer to cell A3. Press the space bar and then the Return key. The word "ic" is no longer in cell A3 and the conditional IF statement activates the finite-difference equation. Notice that a new value for the hydraulic head in each interior cell and the right-side no-flow boundary has been calculated. This was the result of a first iteration. If you press the F9 key on the top of your keyboard, Excel will perform a second iteration, and the interior cell values will again change. Now keep pressing the F9 key until there are no more changes in the interior cells. You are manually going through the iteration process. Notice that the interior cells of the model now reflect the general shape set by the boundary conditions.

We can also automate the iteration process. Click on Tools on the menu bar and then on Options. On the calculation menu, change maximum number of iterations to 100 and then click OK on the bottom of the menu. Reset the initial conditions by putting the cell pointer to cell A3, type "ic" and then press Enter. The interior nodes should reset to 4. Now move the cell pointer back to A3, press the space bar and then Enter. The model should quickly come to a solution using a number of iterations.

The model can be used to see the impact of a well or a recharge basin on the hydraulic head. These can be set as constant head cells. For example, move the cell pointer to interior cell G15. Type in "30" and press Enter. You have now replaced the finite-difference equation with a constant head of 30, which represents the drawdown in a well at that location. Reset the initial conditions in the model. Notice that cell G15 is still set at 30, since it is now a constant head cell. Run the model with maximum iterations of 100. The shape of the water surface in the interior is now reflective of the drawdown around the well. You can determine the effect of a recharge basin on the potentiometric surface by putting a constant head of 92 ft in cell G15 and rerunning the model.

We can also make a three-dimensional surface chart of the potentiometric head. Click on the chart wizard icon on the standard toolbar at the top of the window. Under standard chart types select Surface, and under chart subtype select 3-D Surface. Next specify the data range, which is C11:J18. The third step is to label the chart; for example the title might be "Constant Head Model." The x-axis might be *south* and the y-axis might be *east*. The z-axis is *elevation*. The final step is to determine a location. It can go as an object on sheet 1, or on a separate sheet. If it goes on sheet 1, you must know how to move a chart to avoid covering the rest of the worksheet. If you do not know how to move a chart, then put it on chart 1. You can switch between sheet 1 with the spreadsheet and chart 1 with the three-dimensional surface by using the Tab keys on the bottom left of the window.

B. Excel Model for Flow with Recharge

Now that you have seen how to create an Excel spreadsheet model for steady-state flow with no recharge, you are ready to program your own Excel spreadsheet model. Create an Excel spreadsheet model for steady-state flow with recharge to the aquifer. The finite-difference equation for this problem is Equation 13.3. You should use a square grid so that $\Delta x = \Delta y$. Equation 13.3 therefore reduces to

$$h_{i,j} = (1/4)\left(h_{i-1,j} + h_{i+1,j} + h_{i,j-1} + h_{i,j+1} + \Delta x^2 \frac{R}{T} \right)$$

Create a model with a 12 by 12 grid. You will need to specify a value for Δx, R, and T (note that you are actually modeling

the ratio of R/T). You can determine which boundary types to employ and which values to use. Use the same value of recharge and transmissivity everywhere in the model. Create your model and make the following runs:

1. No wells or recharge basins
2. Two wells in different parts of the model. Select a constant head for the pumping level in the wells.
3. Two wells as above, but with a stream in the interior of the model that is a constant head (recharge) boundary. Set a realistic elevation for the stream in relationship to the water-table elevation found at that location based on model exercise 1.

C. GIS Exercise

Go to the website of the Federal Emergency Management Agency at http://www.fema.com/. Click on the option for maps. This will lead you to a website with federal flood plain maps. Enter the address of your home. Is your home on or near a federally designated flood plain? Should you consider buying flood insurance? What other hazard maps are available at this site?

APPENDICES

1. Values of the function $W(u)$ for various values of u
2. Values of the function $F(\eta,\mu)$ for various values of η and μ
3. Values of the functions $W(u, r/B)$ for various values of u
4. Values of the function $H(\mu, \beta)$
5. Values of the functions $K_0(x)$ and $\exp(x)K_0(x)$
6. Values of the functions $W(u_A,\Gamma)$, and $W(u_B), \Gamma)$ for water-table aquifers
7. Table for length conversion
8. Table for area conversion
9. Table for volume conversion
10. Table for time conversion
11. Solubility products for selected minerals and compounds
12. Atomic weights and numbers of naturally occurring elements
13. Table of values of erf (x) and erfc (x)
14. Absolute density and absolute viscosity of water
15. Loading and running computer programs

Appendix 1 Values of the function $W(u)$ for various values of u

u	$W(u)$	u	$W(u)$	u	$W(u)$	u	$W(u)$
1×10^{-10}	22.45	7×10^{-8}	15.90	4×10^{-5}	9.55	1×10^{-2}	4.04
2	21.76	8	15.76	5	9.33	2	3.35
3	21.35	9	15.65	6	9.14	3	2.96
4	21.06	1×10^{-7}	15.54	7	8.99	4	2.68
5	20.84	2	14.85	8	8.86	5	2.47
6	20.66	3	14.44	9	8.74	6	2.30
7	20.50	4	14.15	1×10^{-4}	8.63	7	2.15
8	20.37	5	13.93	2	7.94	8	2.03
9	20.25	6	13.75	3	7.53	9	1.92
1×10^{-9}	20.15	7	13.60	4	7.25	1×10^{-1}	1.823
2	19.45	8	13.46	5	7.02	2	1.223
3	19.05	9	13.34	6	6.84	3	0.906
4	18.76	1×10^{-6}	13.24	7	6.69	4	0.702
5	18.54	2	12.55	8	6.55	5	0.560
6	18.35	3	12.14	9	6.44	6	0.454
7	18.20	4	11.85	1×10^{-3}	6.33	7	0.374
	18.07	5	11.63	2	5.64	8	0.311
	17.95	6	11.45	3	5.23	9	0.260
$\times 10^{-8}$	17.84	7	11.29	4	4.95	1×10^{0}	0.219
	17.15	8	11.16	5	4.73	2	0.049
	16.74	9	11.04	6	4.54	3	0.013
	16.46	1×10^{-5}	10.94	7	4.39	4	0.004
	16.23	2	10.24	8	4.26	5	0.001
	16.05	3	9.84	9	4.14		

ource: Adapted from L. K. Wenzel, *Methods for Determining Permeability of Water-Bearing Materials with pecial Reference to Discharging Well Methods.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 887, 1942.

Appendix 2 Values of the function $F(\eta,\mu)$ for various values of η and μ

$\eta = Tt/r_c^2$	$\mu = 10^{-6}$	$\mu = 10^{-7}$	$\mu = 10^{-8}$	$\mu = 10^{-9}$	$\mu = 10^{-10}$
0.001	0.9994	0.9996	0.9996	0.9997	0.9997
0.002	0.9989	0.9992	0.9993	0.9994	0.9995
0.004	0.9980	0.9985	0.9987	0.9989	0.9991
0.006	0.9972	0.9978	0.9982	0.9984	0.9986
0.008	0.9964	0.9971	0.9976	0.9980	0.9982
0.01	0.9956	0.9965	0.9971	0.9975	0.9978
0.02	0.9919	0.9934	0.9944	0.9952	0.9958
0.04	0.9848	0.9875	0.9894	0.9908	0.9919
0.06	0.9782	0.9819	0.9846	0.9866	0.9881
0.08	0.9718	0.9765	0.9799	0.9824	0.9844
0.1	0.9655	0.9712	0.9753	0.9784	0.9807
0.2	0.9361	0.9459	0.9532	0.9587	0.9631
0.4	0.8828	0.8995	0.9122	0.9220	0.9298
0.6	0.8345	0.8569	0.8741	0.8875	0.8984
0.8	0.7901	0.8173	0.8383	0.8550	0.8686
1.0	0.7489	0.7801	0.8045	0.8240	0.8401
2.0	0.5800	0.6235	0.6591	0.6889	0.7139
3.0	0.4554	0.5033	0.5442	0.5792	0.6096
4.0	0.3613	0.4093	0.4517	0.4891	0.5222
5.0	0.2893	0.3351	0.3768	0.4146	0.4487
6.0	0.2337	0.2759	0.3157	0.3525	0.3865
7.0	0.1903	0.2285	0.2655	0.3007	0.3337
8.0	0.1562	0.1903	0.2243	0.2573	0.2888
9.0	0.1292	0.1594	0.1902	0.2208	0.2505
10.0	0.1078	0.1343	0.1620	0.1900	0.2178
20.0	0.02720	0.03343	0.04129	0.05071	0.06149
30.0	0.01286	0.01448	0.01667	0.01956	0.02320
40.0	0.008337	0.008898	0.009637	0.01062	0.01190
50.0	0.006209	0.006470	0.006789	0.007192	0.007709
60.0	0.004961	0.005111	0.005283	0.005487	0.005735
80.0	0.003547	0.003617	0.003691	0.003773	0.003863
100.0	0.002763	0.002803	0.002845	0.002890	0.002938
200.0	0.001313	0.001322	0.001330	0.001339	0.001348

Source: After I. S. Papadopulos, J. D. Bredehoeft, and H. H. Cooper, Jr., "On the Analysis of 'Slug Test' Data," *Water Resources Research*, 9 (1973):1087–89.
Note: For slug tests on wells of finite diameter, $H/H_0 = F(\eta, \mu)$.

Appendix 3 Values of the functions $W(u, r/B)$ for various values of u

u \ r/B	0.002	0.004	0.006	0.008	0.01	0.02	0.04	0.06	0.08	0.1	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1	2	4	6	8
0	12.7	11.3	10.5	9.89	9.44	8.06	6.67	5.87	5.29	4.85	3.51	2.23	1.55	1.13	0.842	0.228	0.0223	0.0025	0.0003
0.000002	12.1	11.2	10.5	9.89	9.44														
0.000004	11.6	11.1	10.4	9.88	9.44														
0.000006	11.3	10.9	10.4	9.87	9.44														
0.000008	11.0	10.7	10.3	9.84	9.43														
0.00001	10.8	10.6	10.2	9.80	9.42	8.06													
0.00002	10.2	10.1	9.84	9.58	9.30	8.06													
0.00004	9.52	9.45	9.34	9.19	9.01	8.03	6.67												
0.00006	9.13	9.08	9.00	8.89	8.77	7.98	6.67												
0.00008	8.84	8.81	8.75	8.67	8.57	7.91	6.67												
0.0001	8.62	8.59	8.55	8.48	8.40	7.84	6.67	5.87	5.29										
0.0002	7.94	7.92	7.90	7.86	7.82	7.50	6.62	5.86	5.29										
0.0004	7.24	7.24	7.22	7.21	7.19	7.01	6.45	5.83	5.29	4.85									
0.0006	6.84	6.84	6.83	6.82	6.80	6.68	6.27	5.77	5.27	4.85									
0.0008	6.55	6.55	6.54	6.53	6.52	6.43	6.11	5.69	5.25	4.84									
0.001	6.33	6.33	6.32	6.32	6.31	6.23	5.97	5.61	5.21	4.83	3.51								
0.002	5.64	5.64	5.63	5.63	5.63	5.59	5.45	5.24	4.98	4.71	3.50								
0.004	4.95	4.95	4.95	4.94	4.94	4.92	4.85	4.74	4.59	4.42	3.48	2.23							
0.006	4.54				4.54	4.53	4.48	4.41	4.30	4.18	3.43	2.23							
0.008	4.26				4.26	4.25	4.21	4.15	4.08	3.98	3.36	2.23							
0.01	4.04				4.04	4.03	4.00	3.95	3.89	3.81	3.29	2.23	1.55	1.13					
0.02	3.35				3.35	3.35	3.34	3.31	3.28	3.24	2.95	2.18	1.55	1.13					
0.04	2.68				2.68	2.68	2.67	2.66	2.65	2.63	2.48	2.02	1.52	1.13	0.842				
0.06	2.30				2.30	2.29	2.29	2.28	2.27	2.26	2.17	1.85	1.46	1.11	0.839				
0.08	2.03					2.03	2.02	2.02	2.01	2.00	1.94	1.69	1.39	1.08	0.832				
0.1	1.82						1.82	1.82	1.81	1.80	1.75	1.56	1.31	1.05	0.819	0.228			
0.2	1.22						1.22	1.22	1.22	1.22	1.19	1.11	0.996	0.857	0.715	0.227			
0.4	0.702						0.702	0.702	0.701	0.700	0.693	0.665	0.621	0.565	0.502	0.210			
0.6	0.454						0.454	0.454	0.454	0.453	0.450	0.436	0.415	0.387	0.354	0.177	0.0222		
0.8	0.311						0.311	0.310	0.310	0.310	0.308	0.301	0.289	0.273	0.254	0.144	0.0218		
1	0.219									0.219	0.218	0.213	0.206	0.197	0.185	0.114	0.0207	0.0025	
2	0.049										0.049	0.048	0.047	0.046	0.044	0.034	0.011	0.0021	0.0003
4	0.0038											0.0038	0.0037	0.0037	0.0036	0.0031	0.0016	0.0006	0.0002
6	0.0004														0.0004	0.0003	0.0002	0.0001	0
8	0																		0

Source: After M. S. Hantush, "Analysis of Data from Pumping Test in Leaky Aquifers," *Transactions, American Geophysical Union,* 37 (1956):702–14.

Appendix 4 Values of the Function $H(\mu, \beta)$

μ \ β	0.001	0.005	0.01	0.05	0.10	0.20	0.50	1.0	2.0	5.0	10.0	20.0
0.000001	11.9842	10.5908	9.9259	8.3395	7.6497	6.9590	6.0463	5.3575	4.6721	3.7756	3.1110	2.4671
0.000005	10.8958	9.7174	9.0866	7.5284	6.8427	6.1548	5.2459	4.5617	3.8836	3.0055	2.3661	1.7633
0.00001	10.3739	9.3203	8.7142	7.1771	6.4944	5.8085	4.9024	4.2212	3.5481	2.6822	2.0590	1.4816
0.00005	9.0422	8.3171	7.8031	6.3523	5.6821	5.0045	4.1090	3.4394	2.7848	1.9622	1.3943	0.8994
0.0001	8.4258	7.8386	7.3803	5.9906	5.3297	4.6581	3.7700	3.1082	2.4658	1.6704	1.1359	0.6878
0.0005	6.9273	6.6024	6.2934	5.1223	4.4996	3.8527	2.9933	2.3601	1.7604	1.0564	0.6252	0.3089
0.001	6.2624	6.0193	5.7727	4.7290	4.1337	3.5045	2.6650	2.0506	1.4776	0.8271	0.4513	0.1976
0.005	4.6951	4.5786	4.4474	3.7415	3.2483	2.6891	1.9250	1.3767	0.8915	0.4001	0.1677	0.0493
0.01	4.0163	3.9334	3.8374	3.2752	2.8443	2.3325	1.6193	1.1122	0.6775	0.2670	0.0955	0.0221
0.05	2.4590	2.4243	2.3826	2.1007	1.8401	1.4872	0.9540	0.5812	0.2923	0.0755	0.0160	0.00164
0.1	1.8172	1.7949	1.7677	1.5768	1.3893	1.1207	0.6947	0.3970	0.1789	0.0359	0.00552	0.00034
0.5	0.5584	0.5530	0.5463	0.4969	0.4436	0.3591	0.2083	0.1006	0.0325	0.00288	0.00015	
1.0	0.2189	0.2169	0.2144	0.1961	0.1758	0.1427	0.0812	0.0365	0.00993	0.00055	0.00002	
5.0	0.00115	0.00114	0.00112	0.00104	0.00093	0.00076	0.00042	0.00017	0.00003			

Source: Condensed from M. S. Hantush, "Modification of the Theory of Leaky Aquifers," *Journal of Geophysical Research,* 65 (1960):3713–25.

Appendix 5 Values of the functions $K_0(x)$ and $\exp(x)K_0(x)$

x	$K_0(x)$	$\exp(x)K_0(x)$	x	$K_0(x)$	$\exp(x)K_0(x)$
0.001	7.02	7.03	0.25	1.54	1.98
0.005	5.41	5.44	0.30	1.37	1.85
0.01	4.72	4.77	0.35	1.23	1.75
0.015	4.32	4.38	0.40	1.11	1.66
0.02	4.03	4.11	0.45	1.01	1.59
0.025	3.81	3.91	0.50	0.92	1.52
0.03	3.62	3.73	0.55	0.85	1.47
0.035	3.47	3.59	0.60	0.78	1.42
0.04	3.34	3.47	0.65	0.72	1.37
0.045	3.22	3.37	0.70	0.66	1.33
0.05	3.11	3.27	0.75	0.61	1.29
0.055	3.02	3.19	0.80	0.57	1.26
0.06	2.93	3.11	0.85	0.52	1.23
0.065	2.85	3.05	0.90	0.49	1.20
0.07	2.78	2.98	0.95	0.45	1.17
0.075	2.71	2.92	1.0	0.42	1.14
0.08	2.65	2.87	1.5	0.21	0.96
0.085	2.59	2.82	2.0	0.11	0.84
0.09	2.53	2.77	2.5	0.062	0.760
0.095	2.48	2.72	3.0	0.035	0.698
0.10	2.43	2.68	3.5	0.020	0.649
0.15	2.03	2.36	4.0	0.011	0.609
0.20	1.75	2.14	4.5	0.006	0.576
			5.0	0.004	0.548

Source: Adapted from M. S. Hantush, "Analysis of Data from Pumping Tests in Leaky Aquifers," *Transactions, American Geophysical Union,* 37 (1956):702–14.

Appendix 6A Values of the function $W(u_A, \Gamma)$ for water-table aquifers

$1/u_A$	$\Gamma = 0.001$	$\Gamma = 0.01$	$\Gamma = 0.06$	$\Gamma = 0.2$	$\Gamma = 0.6$	$\Gamma = 1.0$	$\Gamma = 2.0$	$\Gamma = 4.0$	$\Gamma = 6.0$
4.0×10^{-1}	2.48×10^{-2}	2.41×10^{-2}	2.30×10^{-2}	2.14×10^{-2}	1.88×10^{-2}	1.70×10^{-2}	1.38×10^{-2}	9.33×10^{-3}	6.39×10^{-3}
8.0×10^{-1}	1.45×10^{-1}	1.40×10^{-1}	1.31×10^{-1}	1.19×10^{-1}	9.88×10^{-2}	8.49×10^{-2}	6.03×10^{-2}	3.17×10^{-2}	1.74×10^{-2}
1.4×10^{0}	3.58×10^{-1}	3.45×10^{-1}	3.18×10^{-1}	2.79×10^{-1}	2.17×10^{-1}	1.75×10^{-1}	1.07×10^{-1}	4.45×10^{-2}	2.10×10^{-2}
2.4×10^{0}	6.62×10^{-1}	6.33×10^{-1}	5.70×10^{-1}	4.83×10^{-1}	3.43×10^{-1}	2.56×10^{-1}	1.33×10^{-1}	4.76×10^{-2}	2.14×10^{-2}
4.0×10^{0}	1.02×10^{0}	9.63×10^{-1}	8.49×10^{-1}	6.88×10^{-1}	4.38×10^{-1}	3.00×10^{-1}	1.40×10^{-1}	4.78×10^{-2}	2.15×10^{-2}
8.0×10^{0}	1.57×10^{0}	1.46×10^{0}	1.23×10^{0}	9.18×10^{-1}	4.97×10^{-1}	3.17×10^{-1}	1.41×10^{-1}		
1.4×10^{1}	2.05×10^{0}	1.88×10^{0}	1.51×10^{0}	1.03×10^{0}	5.07×10^{-1}				
2.4×10^{1}	2.52×10^{0}	2.27×10^{0}	1.73×10^{0}	1.07×10^{0}					
4.0×10^{1}	2.97×10^{0}	2.61×10^{10}	1.85×10^{0}	1.08×10^{0}					
8.0×10^{1}	3.56×10^{0}	3.00×10^{0}	1.92×10^{0}						
1.4×10^{2}	4.01×10^{0}	3.23×10^{0}	1.93×10^{0}						
2.4×10^{2}	4.42×10^{0}	3.37×10^{0}	1.94×10^{0}						
4.0×10^{2}	4.77×10^{0}	3.43×10^{0}							
8.0×10^{2}	5.16×10^{0}	3.45×10^{0}							
1.4×10^{3}	5.40×10^{0}	3.46×10^{0}							
2.4×10^{3}	5.54×10^{0}								
4.0×10^{3}	5.59×10^{0}								
8.0×10^{3}	5.62×10^{0}								
1.4×10^{4}	5.62×10^{0}	3.46×10^{0}	1.94×10^{0}	1.08×10^{0}	5.07×10^{-1}	3.17×10^{-1}	1.41×10^{-1}	4.78×10^{-2}	2.15×10^{-2}

Appendix 6B Values of the function $W(u_B, \Gamma)$ for water-table aquifers

$1/u_B$	$\Gamma = 0.001$	$\Gamma = 0.01$	$\Gamma = 0.06$	$\Gamma = 0.2$	$\Gamma = 0.6$	$\Gamma = 1.0$	$\Gamma = 2.0$	$\Gamma = 4.0$	$\Gamma = 6.0$
4.0×10^{-4}	5.62×10^{0}	3.46×10^{0}	1.94×10^{0}	1.09×10^{0}	5.08×10^{-1}	3.18×10^{-1}	1.42×10^{-1}	4.79×10^{-2}	2.15×10^{-2}
8.0×10^{-4}	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	4.80×10^{-2}	2.16×10^{-2}
1.4×10^{-3}	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	4.81×10^{-2}	2.17×10^{-2}
2.4×10^{-3}	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	4.84×10^{-2}	2.19×10^{-2}
4.0×10^{-3}	|	|	|	|	5.08×10^{-1}	3.18×10^{-1}	1.42×10^{-1}	4.88×10^{-2}	2.21×10^{-2}
8.0×10^{-3}	|	|	|	|	5.09×10^{-1}	3.19×10^{-1}	1.43×10^{-1}	4.96×10^{-2}	2.28×10^{-2}
1.4×10^{-2}	|	|	|	|	5.10×10^{-1}	3.21×10^{-1}	1.45×10^{-1}	5.09×10^{-2}	2.39×10^{-2}
2.4×10^{-2}	|	|	|	|	5.12×10^{-1}	3.23×10^{-1}	1.47×10^{-1}	5.32×10^{-2}	2.57×10^{-2}
4.0×10^{-2}	|	|	|	|	5.16×10^{-1}	3.27×10^{-1}	1.52×10^{-1}	5.68×10^{-2}	2.86×10^{-2}
8.0×10^{-2}	|	|	|	1.09×10^{0}	5.24×10^{-1}	3.37×10^{-1}	1.62×10^{-1}	6.61×10^{-2}	3.62×10^{-2}
1.4×10^{-1}	|	|	1.94×10^{0}	$1.10 \times {}^{10}0$	5.37×10^{-1}	3.50×10^{-1}	1.78×10^{-1}	8.06×10^{2}	4.86×10^{-2}
2.4×10^{-1}	|	|	1.95×10^{0}	1.11×10^{0}	5.57×10^{-1}	3.74×10^{-1}	2.05×10^{-1}	1.06×10^{-1}	7.14×10^{-2}
4.0×10^{-1}	|	|	1.96×10^{0}	1.13×10^{0}	5.89×10^{-1}	4.12×10^{-1}	2.48×10^{-1}	1.49×10^{-1}	1.13×10^{-1}
8.0×10^{-1}	5.62×10^{0}	3.46×10^{0}	1.98×10^{0}	1.18×10^{0}	6.67×10^{-1}	5.06×10^{-1}	3.57×10^{-1}	2.66×10^{-1}	2.31×10^{-1}
1.4×10^{0}	5.63×10^{0}	3.47×10^{0}	2.01×10^{0}	1.24×10^{0}	7.80×10^{-1}	6.42×10^{-1}	5.17×10^{-1}	4.45×10^{-1}	4.19×10^{-1}
2.4×10^{0}	5.63×10^{0}	3.49×10^{0}	2.06×10^{0}	1.35×10^{0}	9.54×10^{-1}	8.50×10^{-1}	7.63×10^{-1}	7.18×10^{-1}	7.03×10^{-1}
4.0×10^{0}	5.63×10^{0}	3.51×10^{0}	2.13×10^{0}	1.50×10^{0}	1.20×10^{0}	1.13×10^{0}	1.08×10^{0}	1.06×10^{0}	1.05×10^{0}
8.0×10^{0}	5.64×10^{0}	3.56×10^{0}	2.31×10^{0}	1.85×10^{0}	1.68×10^{0}	1.65×10^{0}	1.63×10^{0}	1.63×10^{0}	1.63×10^{0}
1.4×10^{1}	5.65×10^{0}	3.63×10^{0}	2.55×10^{0}	2.23×10^{0}	2.15×10^{0}	2.14×10^{0}	2.14×10^{0}	2.14×10^{0}	2.14×10^{0}
2.4×10^{1}	5.67×10^{0}	3.74×10^{0}	2.86×10^{0}	2.68×10^{0}	2.65×10^{0}	2.65×10^{0}	2.64×10^{0}	2.64×10^{0}	2.64×10^{0}
4.0×10^{1}	5.70×10^{0}	3.90×10^{0}	3.24×10^{0}	3.15×10^{0}	3.14×10^{0}	3.14×10^{0}	3.14×10^{0}	3.14×10^{0}	3.14×10^{0}
8.0×10^{1}	5.76×10^{0}	4.22×10^{0}	3.85×10^{0}	3.82×10^{0}	3.82×10^{0}	3.82×10^{0}	3.82×10^{0}	3.82×10^{0}	3.82×10^{0}
1.4×10^{2}	5.85×10^{0}	4.58×10^{0}	4.38×10^{0}	4.37×10^{0}	4.37×10^{0}	4.37×10^{0}	4.37×10^{0}	4.37×10^{0}	4.37×10^{0}
2.4×10^{2}	5.99×10^{0}	5.00×10^{0}	4.91×10^{0}	4.91×10^{0}	4.91×10^{0}	4.91×10^{0}	4.91×10^{0}	4.91×10^{0}	4.91×10^{0}
4.0×10^{2}	6.16×10^{0}	5.46×10^{0}	5.42×10^{0}	5.42×10^{0}	5.42×10^{0}	5.42×10^{0}	5.42×10^{0}	5.42×10^{0}	5.42×10^{0}
8.0×10^{2}	6.47×10^{0}	6.11×10^{0}	6.11×10^{0}	6.11×10^{0}	6.11×10^{0}	6.11×10^{0}	6.11×10^{0}	6.11×10^{0}	6.11×10^{0}
1.4×10^{3}	6.67×10^{0}	6.67×10^{0}	6.67×10^{0}	6.67×10^{0}	6.67×10^{0}	6.67×10^{0}	6.67×10^{0}	6.67×10^{0}	6.67×10^{0}
2.4×10^{3}	7.21×10^{0}	7.21×10^{0}	7.21×10^{0}	7.21×10^{0}	7.21×10^{0}	7.21×10^{0}	7.21×10^{0}	7.21×10^{0}	7.21×10^{0}
4.0×10^{3}	7.72×10^{0}	7.72×10^{0}	7.72×10^{0}	7.72×10^{0}	7.72×10^{0}	7.72×10^{0}	7.72×10^{0}	7.72×10^{0}	7.72×10^{0}
8.0×10^{3}	8.41×10^{0}	8.41×10^{0}	8.41×10^{0}	8.41×10^{0}	8.41×10^{0}	8.41×10^{0}	8.41×10^{0}	8.41×10^{0}	8.41×10^{0}
1.4×10^{4}	8.97×10^{0}	8.97×10^{0}	8.97×10^{0}	8.97×10^{0}	8.97×10^{0}	8.97×10^{0}	8.97×10^{0}	8.97×10^{0}	8.97×10^{0}
2.4×10^{4}	9.51×10^{0}	9.51×10^{0}	9.51×10^{0}	9.51×10^{0}	9.51×10^{0}	9.51×10^{0}	9.51×10^{0}	9.51×10^{0}	9.51×10^{0}
4.0×10^{4}	1.94×10^{1}	1.94×10^{1}	1.94×10^{1}	1.94×10^{1}	1.94×10^{1}	1.94×10^{1}	1.94×10^{1}	1.94×10^{1}	1.94×10^{1}

Source: Adapted from S. P. Neuman, *Water Resources Research*, 11 (1975):329–42.

Appendix 7 Table for length conversion

Unit	mm	cm	m	km	in	ft	yd	mi
1 millimeter	1	0.1	0.001	10^{-6}	0.0397	0.00328	0.00109	6.21×10^{-7}
1 centimeter	10	1	0.01	0.0001	0.3937	0.0328	0.0109	6.21×10^{-6}
1 meter	1000	100	1	0.001	39.37	3.281	1.094	6.21×10^{-4}
1 kilometer	10^{6}	10^{5}	1000	1	39,370	3281	1093.6	0.621
1 inch	25.4	2.54	0.0254	2.54×10^{-5}	1	0.0833	0.0278	1.58×10^{-5}
1 foot	304.8	30.48	0.3048	3.05×10^{-4}	12	1	0.333	1.89×10^{-4}
1 yard	914.4	91.44	0.9144	9.14×10^{-4}	36	3	1	5.68×10^{-4}
1 mile	1.61×10^{6}	1.01×10^{5}	1.61×10^{3}	1.6093	63,360	5280	1760	1

Appendix 8 Table for area conversion

Unit	cm^2	m^2	km^2	ha	in^2	ft^2	yd^2	mi^2	ac
1 sq. centimeter	1	0.0001	10^{-10}	10^{-8}	0.155	1.08×10^{-3}	1.2×10^{-4}	3.86×10^{-11}	2.47×10^{-8}
1 sq. meter	10^{4}	1	10^{-6}	10^{-4}	1550	10.76	1.196	3.86×10^{-7}	2.47×10^{-4}
1 sq. kilometer	10^{10}	10^{6}	1	100	1.55×10^{9}	1.076×10^{7}	1.196×10^{6}	0.3861	247.1
1 hectare	10^{8}	10^{4}	0.01	1	1.55×10^{7}	1.076×10^{5}	1.196×10^{4}	3.861×10^{-3}	2.471
1 sq. inch	6.452	6.45×10^{-4}	6.45×10^{-10}	6.45×10^{-8}	1	6.94×10^{-3}	7.7×10^{-4}	2.49×10^{-10}	1.574×10^{-7}
1 sq. foot	929	0.0929	9.29×10^{-8}	9.29×10^{-6}	144	1	0.111	3.587×10^{-8}	2.3×10^{-5}
1 sq. yard	8361	0.8361	8.36×10^{-7}	8.36×10^{-5}	1296	9	1	3.23×10^{-7}	2.07×10^{-4}
1 sq. mile	2.59×10^{10}	2.59×10^{6}	2.59	259	4.01×10^{9}	2.79×10^{7}	3.098×10^{6}	1	640
1 acre	4.04×10^{7}	4047	4.047×10^{-3}	0.4047	6.27×10^{6}	43,560	4840	1.562×10^{-3}	1

Appendix 9 Table for volume conversion

Unit	mL	liters	m^3	in^3	ft^3	gal	ac-ft	million gal
1 milliliter	1	0.001	10^{-6}	0.06102	3.53×10^{-5}	2.64×10^{-4}	8.1×10^{-10}	2.64×10^{-10}
1 liter	10^3	1	0.001	61.02	0.0353	0.264	8.1×10^{-7}	2.64×10^{-7}
1 cu. meter	10^6	1000	1	61,023	35.31	264.17	8.1×10^{-4}	2.64×10^{-4}
1 cu. inch	16.39	1.64×10^{-2}	1.64×10^{-5}	1	5.79×10^{-4}	4.33×10^{-3}	1.329×10^{-8}	4.329×10^{-9}
1 cu. foot	28,317	28.317	0.02832	1728	1	7.48	2.296×10^{-5}	7.48×10^{-6}
1 U.S. gallon	3785.4	3.785	3.78×10^{-3}	231	0.134	1	3.069×10^{-6}	10^{-6}
1 acre-foot	1.233×10^9	1.233×10^6	1233.5	75.27×10^6	43,560	3.26×10^5	1	0.3260
1 million gallons	3.785×10^9	3.785×10^6	3785	2.31×10^8	1.338×10^5	10^6	3.0684	1

Appendix 10 Table for time conversion

Unit	sec	min	hours	days	years
1 second	1	1.67×10^{-2}	2.77×10^{-4}	1.157×10^{-5}	3.17×10^{-8}
1 minute	60	1	1.67×10^{-2}	6.94×10^{-4}	1.90×10^{-6}
1 hour	3600	60	1	4.17×10^{-2}	1.14×10^{-4}
1 day	8.64×10^4	1440	24	1	2.74×10^{-3}
1 year	3.15×10^7	5.256×10^5	8760	365	1

Appendix 11 Solubility products for selected minerals and compounds

Compound	Solubility product	Mineral name
Chlorides		
$CuCl$	$10^{-6.7}$	
$PbCl_2$	$10^{-4.8}$	
Hg_2Cl_2	$10^{-17.9}$	
$AgCl$	$10^{-9.7}$	
Fluorides		
BaF_2	$10^{-5.8}$	
CaF_2	$10^{-10.4}$	Fluorite
MgF_2	$10^{-8.2}$	Sellaite
PbF_2	$10^{-7.5}$	
SrF_2	$10^{-8.5}$	
Sulfates		
$BaSO_4$	$10^{-10.0}$	Barite
$CaSO_4$	$10^{-4.5}$	Anhydrite
$CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	$10^{-4.6}$	Gypsum
$PbSO_4$	$10^{-7.8}$	Anglesite
Ag_2SO_4	$10^{-4.8}$	
$SrSO_4$	$10^{-6.5}$	Celestite
Sulfides		
Cu_2S	$10^{-48.5}$	
CuS	$10^{-36.1}$	
FeS	$10^{-18.1}$	
PbS	$10^{-27.5}$	Galena
HgS	$10^{-53.3}$	Cinnebar
ZnS	$10^{-22.5}$	Wurtzite
ZnS	$10^{-24.7}$	Sphalerite
Carbonates		
$BaCO_3$	$10^{-8.3}$	Witherite
$CdCO_3$	$10^{-13.7}$	
$CaCO_3$	$10^{-8.35}$	Calcite
$CaCO_3$	$10^{-8.22}$	Aragonite
$CoCO_3$	$10^{-10.0}$	
$FeCO_3$	$10^{-10.7}$	Siderite
$PbCO_3$	$10^{-13.1}$	
$MgCO_3$	$10^{-7.5}$	Magnesite
$MnCO_3$	$10^{-9.3}$	Rhodochrosite
Phosphates		
$AlPO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	$10^{-22.1}$	Variscite
$CaHPO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	$10^{-6.6}$	
$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$	$10^{-28.7}$	
$Cu_3(PO_4)_2$	$10^{-36.9}$	
$FePO_4$	$10^{-21.6}$	
$FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	$10^{-26.4}$	

Source: K. B. Krauskopf, *Introduction to Geochemistry,* 2nd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1979.

Appendix 12 Atomic weights and numbers of naturally occurring elements

Element	Symbol	Atomic number	Atomic weight
Actinium	Ac	89	227.03
Aluminum	Al	13	26.98
Antimony	Sb	51	121.75
Argon	Ar	18	39.95
Arsenic	As	33	74.92
Barium	Ba	56	137.33
Beryllium	Be	4	9.01
Bismuth	Bi	83	208.98
Boron	B	5	10.81
Bromine	Br	35	79.90
Cadmium	Cd	48	112.41
Calcium	Ca	20	40.08
Carbon	C	6	12.01
Cerium	Ce	58	140.12
Cesium	Cs	55	132.91
Chlorine	Cl	17	35.45
Chromium	Cr	24	52.00
Cobalt	Co	27	58.93
Copper	Cu	29	63.55
Dysprosium	Dy	66	162.50
Erbium	Er	68	167.26
Europium	Eu	63	151.96
Fluorine	F	9	19.00
Gadolinium	Gd	64	157.25
Gallium	Ga	31	69.72
Germanium	Ge	32	72.59
Gold	Au	79	196.97
Hafnium	Hf	72	178.49
Helium	He	2	4.003
Holmium	Ho	67	164.93
Hydrogen	H	1	1.008
Indium	In	49	114.82
Iodine	I	53	126.90
Iridium	Ir	77	192.22
Iron	Fe	26	55.85
Krypton	Kr	36	83.80
Lanthanum	La	57	138.91
Lead	Pb	82	207.19
Lithium	Li	3	6.94
Lutetium	Lu	71	174.97
Magnesium	Mg	12	24.31
Manganese	Mn	25	54.94
Mercury	Hg	80	200.59
Molybdenum	Mo	42	95.94

Appendix 12 Continued

Element	Symbol	Atomic number	Atomic weight
Neodymium	Nd	60	144.24
Neon	Ne	10	20.18
Nickel	Ni	28	58.70
Niobium	Nb	41	92.91
Nitrogen	N	7	14.01
Osmium	Os	76	190.2
Oxygen	O	8	16.00
Palladium	Pd	46	106.4
Phosphorus	P	15	30.97
Platinum	Pt	78	195.09
Polonium	Po	84	209
Potassium	K	19	39.10
Praseodymium	Pr	59	140.91
Protactinium	Pa	91	231.04
Radium	Ra	88	226.03
Radon	Rn	86	222
Rhenium	Re	75	186.21
Rhodium	Rh	45	102.91
Rubidium	Rb	37	85.47
Ruthenium	Ru	44	101.07
Samarium	Sm	62	150.35
Scandium	Sc	21	44.96
Selenium	Se	34	78.96
Silicon	Si	14	28.09
Silver	Ag	47	107.87
Sodium	Na	11	22.99
Strontium	Sr	38	87.62
Sulfur	S	16	32.06
Tantalum	Ta	73	180.95
Tellurium	Te	52	127.60
Terbium	Tb	65	158.93
Thallium	Tl	81	204.37
Thorium	Th	90	232.04
Thulium	Tm	69	168.93
Tin	Sn	50	118.69
Titanium	Ti	22	47.90
Tungsten	W	74	183.85
Uranium	U	92	238.03
Vanadium	V	23	50.94
Xenon	Xe	54	131.30
Ytterbium	Yb	70	173.04
Yttrium	Y	39	88.91
Zinc	Zn	30	65.38
Zirconium	Zr	40	91.22

Source: K. B. Krauskopf, *Introduction to Geochemistry,* 2nd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1979.

Appendix 13 Values of the error function of x [erf (x)] and the complementary error function of x [erfc (x)]. Note that erfc $(x) = 1 - \text{erf}\ (x)$ and erfc $(-x) = 1 + \text{erf}\ (x)$.

X	erf (x)	erfc (x)
0	0	1.0
0.05	0.056372	0.943628
0.1	0.112463	0.887537
0.15	0.167996	0.832004
0.2	0.222703	0.777297
0.25	0.276326	0.723674
0.3	0.328627	0.671373
0.35	0.379382	0.620618
0.4	0.428392	0.571608
0.45	0.475482	0.524518
0.5	0.520500	0.479500
0.55	0.563323	0.436677
0.6	0.603856	0.396144
0.65	0.642029	0.357971
0.7	0.677801	0.322199
0.75	0.711156	0.288844
0.8	0.742101	0.257899
0.85	0.770668	0.229332
0.9	0.796908	0.203092
0.95	0.820891	0.179109
1.0	0.842701	0.157299
1.1	0.880205	0.119795
1.2	0.910314	0.089686
1.3	0.934008	0.065992
1.4	0.952285	0.047715
1.5	0.966105	0.033895
1.6	0.976348	0.023652
1.7	0.983790	0.016210
1.8	0.989091	0.010909
1.9	0.992790	0.007210
2.0	0.995322	0.004678
2.1	0.997021	0.002979
2.2	0.998137	0.001863
2.3	0.998857	0.001143
2.4	0.999311	0.000689
2.5	0.999593	0.000407
2.6	0.999764	0.000236
2.7	0.999866	0.000134
2.8	0.999925	0.000075
2.9	0.999959	0.000041
3.0	0.999978	0.000022
∞	1.00000	0.00000

An approximate solution, correct to within 0.7%, of the error function can be determined analytically from the following equation:

$$\text{erf}\ (x) = \sqrt{1 - \exp\left(\frac{-4x^2}{\pi}\right)}$$

Appendix 14 Absolute density and absolute viscosity of water

Temperature (°C)	Density (kg/m^3)	Density (g/cm^3)	Viscosity (g/s·cm)
0	999.841	0.999841	0.017921
1	999.900	0.999900	0.017313
2	999.941	0.999941	0.016728
3	999.965	0.999965	0.016191
4	999.973	0.999973	0.015674
5	999.965	0.999965	0.015188
6	999.941	0.999941	0.014728
7	999.902	0.999902	0.014284
8	999.849	0.999849	0.013860
9	999.781	0.999781	0.013462
10	999.700	0.999700	0.013077
11	999.605	0.999605	0.012713
12	999.498	0.999498	0.012363
13	999.377	0.999377	0.012028
14	999.244	0.999244	0.011709
15	999.099	0.999099	0.011404
16	998.943	0.998943	0.011111
17	998.774	0.998774	0.010828
18	998.595	0.998595	0.010559
19	998.405	0.998405	0.010299
20	998.203	0.998203	0.010050
21	997.992	0.997992	0.009810
22	997.770	0.997770	0.009579
23	997.538	0.997538	0.009358
24	997.296	0.997296	0.009142
25	997.044	0.997044	0.008937
26	996.783	0.996783	0.008737
27	996.512	0.996512	0.008545
28	996.232	0.996232	0.008360
29	995.944	0.995944	0.008180
30	995.646	0.995646	0.008007
35	994.029	0.994029	0.007225
40	992.214	0.992214	0.006560
45	990.212	0.990212	0.005988
50	988.047	0.988047	0.005494

Source: *Handbook of Chemistry and Physics* (Cleveland, Ohio: CRC Publishing Company, 1986).

Appendix 15

The CD-ROM which accompanies *Applied Hydrogeology*, 4th Edition contains two programs that will run under Windows 95/98/NT and one DOS based program. Minimum system requirements include:

A Pentium class processor
16 Mbytes of RAM (32 Mbytes for Windows 98)
A CD-ROM drive
A hard drive with at least 40 Mbytes of free disk space
A Microsoft compatible mouse
At least a VGA graphics card

Your CD-ROM has four folders:

- AQTESOLV for Windows
- MODFLOW
- FLOWNET
- Adobe

Each folder contains the files for a different application. The Adobe file contains the Adobe Acrobat Reader which you will need to read pdf files on this CD-ROM as well as some material on the Applied Hydrogeology web site, *http://www.appliedhydrogeology.com.* Even if you don't use the programs on this CD-ROM, you should install Adobe Acrobat Reader on your computer if you don't already have it.

AQTESOLV

AQTESOLV for Windows, Student Version 3.01 is a product of HydroSOLV, Inc, 2303 Horseferry Court, Reston, Virginia, 20191-2739 USA. Phone: (703) 264-9024.

Installing AQTESOLV for Windows, Student Version 3.0.

1. Insert the CD-ROM from the back of the book into your computer.
2. Left click once on the START menu.
3. Left click on RUN.
4. Enter the following: d:\AQTESOLV for Windows\setup.exe or e:\AQTESOLV for Windows\setup.exe depending upon the designation of your CD-ROM drive (d or e).
5. Left click once on RUN
6. The Set Up Wizard will take you through the process of installing AQTESOLV for Windows, Student Version 3.0 on your computer. You will most likely wish to install it in the default directory on your C drive.
7. When the "finished" message appears, click OK.

Running AQTESOLV for Windows, Student Version 3.0

1. Left click once on the START menu
2. Left click once on PROGRAMS
3. Left click once on AQTESOLV for Windows Student Folder
4. Left click once on AQTESOLV for Windows Student Program

Visual MODFLOW

Visual MODFLOW 2.8.2 Student Version is a product of Waterloo Hydrogeologic, Inc., 180 Columbia Street West, Unit 1104, Waterloo, Ontario, Canada N2L 3L3. Phone (519) 746-1798.

Installing Visual MODFLOW 2.8.2 Student Version

1. Insert the CD-ROM from the back of the book into your computer
2. Left click once on the START menu
3. Left click on RUN
4. Enter the following: d:\MODFLOW\setup32.exe or e:\MODFLOW\setup32.exe depending upon the designation of your CD-ROM drive
5. Left click once on RUN
6. The Set Up Wizard will take you through the process of installing Visual MODFLOW, Student Verison on your computer. You will most likely wish to install it in the default directory on your C drive
7. When the "finished" message appears, click OK

Running Visual MODFLOW 2.8.2 Student Version

1. Left click once on the START menu
2. Left click once on PROGRAMS
3. Left click once on WHI Software
4. Left click once on Visual MODFLOW 2.8.2 Student Version Folder
5. Left click once on Visual MODFLOW 2.82 Student Version

Alternatively, an icon for Visual MODFLOW is also on your desktop. You can left click twice on this icon to start the program.

The Visual MODFLOW directory will also have a Documents folder containing the following files:

Users Guide (VMODST_Users_Guide.pdf)
Tutorial Guide (VMODST_Tutorial_Guide.pdf)
3D-Explorer Users Guide (VMODST_3D_Explorer.pdf)

Adobe Acrobat Reader

In order to read these pdf files you need to have Adobe Acrobat 4.0 Reader installed on your computer. This file can be installed from your CD-ROM by the command d:\adobe\install_acrobat.exe. The latest version of Adobe Acrobat Reader can also be downloaded from *www.adobe.com.*

FLOWNET

There is one DOS program on your CD-ROM. Although this is an older program without a graphical interface, it is still useful as a learning tool. The program is FLOWNET. It is a product offered by C. J. Hemker, Geohydroloog, Elandsgracht 83, 1016 TR, Amsterdam, The Netherlands.

Not all Windows computers will be able to run FLOWNET. It needs a CGA, VGA or EGA monitor card, which are older standards. If you get the error message Graphics Error: Device Driver File Not Found (EGAVGA.BGI) or (CGA.BGI) then the program will not run. Unfortunately, a Windows version of this program is not available.

To run this program left click on start, then left click on run, enter d or e:\flownet\ flownet.exe and click on OK.

These free programs are provided without any technical support. Neither the author nor Prentice Hall, Inc. makes any claim that they will work, or if they work that the results will be correct. No warranty is given, either expressed or implied.

GLOSSARY

Absolute humidity The actual amount of water vapor that is in the air expressed as mass per volume (gm/m^3).

Adiabatic expansion The process that occurs when an air mass rises and expands without exchanging heat with its surroundings.

Adsorption The attraction and adhesion of a layer of ions from an aqueous solution to the solid mineral surfaces with which it is in contact.

Advection The process by which solutes are transported by the motion of flowing ground water.

Alluvium Sediments deposited by flowing rivers. Depending on the location in the floodplain of the river, different-size sediments are deposited.

American rule A ground-water doctrine that holds that an overlying property owner has the right to use only a reasonable amount of ground water.

Anisotropy The condition under which one or more of the hydraulic properties of an aquifer vary according to the direction of flow.

Aquiclude A low-permeability unit that forms either the upper or lower boundary of a ground-water flow system.

Aquifer Rock or sediment in a formation, group of formations, or part of a formation that is saturated and sufficiently permeable to transmit economic quantities of water to wells and springs.

Aquifer, confined An aquifer that is overlain by a confining bed. The confining bed has a significantly lower hydraulic conductivity than the aquifer.

Aquifer, perched A region in the unsaturated zone where the soil may be locally saturated because it overlies a low-permeability unit.

Aquifer, semiconfined An aquifer confined by a low-permeability layer that permits water to slowly flow through it. During pumping of the aquifer, recharge to the aquifer can occur across the confining layer. Also known as a *leaky artesian* or *leaky confined aquifer.*

Aquifer test *See* pumping test.

Aquifer, unconfined An aquifer in which there are no confining beds between the zone of saturation and the surface. There will be a water table in an unconfined aquifer. *Water-table aquifer* is a synonym.

Aquifuge An absolutely impermeable unit that will neither store nor transmit water.

Aquitard A low-permeability unit that can store ground water and also transmit it slowly from one aquifer to another.

Artificial recharge The process by which water can be injected or added to an aquifer. Dug basins, drilled wells, or simply the spread of water across the land surface are all means of artificial recharge.

Average linear velocity *See* seepage velocity.

Bail-down test A type of slug test performed by using a bailer to remove a volume of water from a small-diameter well.

Bailer A device used to withdraw a water sample from a small-diameter well or piezometer. A bailer typically is a piece of pipe attached to a wire and having a check valve in the bottom.

Barrier boundary An aquifer-system boundary represented by a rock mass that is not a source of water.

Baseflow The water in a stream that comes from effluent ground water. It sustains the stream during periods of no precipitation.

Baseflow recession The declining rate of discharge of a stream fed only by baseflow for an extended period. Typically, a baseflow recession will be exponential.

Baseflow recession hydrograph A hydrograph that shows a baseflow recession curve.

Belt of soil water That part of the vadose zone that lies just below the land surface. It contains the roots of plants.

Bladder pump A positive-displacement pumping device that uses pulses of gas to push a water-quality sample toward the surface.

Borehole geochemical probe A water-quality monitoring device that is lowered into a well on a cable and that can make

a direct reading of such parameters as pH, Eh, temperature, and specific conductivity.

Borehole geophysics The general field of geophysics developed around the lowering of various probes into a well.

Boring A hole advanced into the ground by means of a drilling rig.

Boussinesq equation The general equation for two-dimensional, unconfined transient flow.

Caliper log A borehole log of the diameter of an uncased well.

Capillary forces The forces acting on soil moisture in the unsaturated zone, attributable to molecular attraction between soil particles and water.

Capillary fringe That part of the vadose zone that lies just above the water table, where water can be drawn upward by capillary forces.

Capillary water Water found in the capillary fringe.

Casing *See* well casing.

Catchment *See* drainage basin.

Cation-exchange capacity The ability of a particular rock or soil to absorb cations.

Cementation The process by which some of the voids in a sediment are filled with precipitated materials, such as silica, calcite, and iron oxide, and that is a part of diagenesis.

Chemical activity The molal concentration of an ion multiplied by a factor known as the activity coefficient.

Clastic dike Intrusion of sediment forced into fractures in rock or sediments.

Cleat The vertical planes of fracture that are found in coal.

Collection lysimeter A device installed in the unsaturated zone to collect a water-quality sample by having the water drain downward by gravity into a collection pit.

Combining weight *See* equivalent weight.

Common-ion effect The decrease in the solubility of a salt dissolved in water already containing some ions of the salt.

Condensation The process that occurs when an air mass is saturated and water droplets form around nuclei or on surfaces.

Cone of depression *See* pumping cone.

Confining layer A body of material of low hydraulic conductivity that is stratigraphically adjacent to one or more aquifers. It may lie above or below the aquifer.

Connate water Interstitial water that was buried with a rock and has been out of contact with the atmosphere for an appreciable part of a geologic period.

Contact spring A spring that forms at a lithologic contact where a more permeable unit overlies a less permeable unit.

Contaminant *See* pollutant.

Cooper-Jacob straight line method *See* Jacob straight line method.

Current meter A device that is lowered into a stream to record the rate at which the current is moving.

Darcian velocity. *See* specific discharge.

Darcy's law An equation that can be used to compute the quantity of water flowing through an aquifer.

Debye-Húckel equation A means of computing the activity coefficient for an ionic species.

Density The mass or quantity of a substance per unit volume. Units are kilograms per cubic meter or grams per cubic centimeter.

Depression spring A spring formed when the water table reaches a land surface because of a change in topography.

Depression storage The water that accumulates in shallow depressions on the land surface as a result of a precipitation event.

Dew point The temperature of a given air mass at which condensation will begin.

Diagenesis The chemical and physical changes occurring in sediments before consolidation or while in the environment of deposition.

Diffusion The process by which both ionic and molecular species dissolved in water move from areas of higher concentration to areas of lower concentration.

Dipole array A particular arrangement of electrodes used to measure surface electrical resistivity.

Direct precipitation Water that falls directly into a lake or stream without passing through any land phase of the runoff cycle.

Dirichlet condition A boundary condition for a groundwater computer model where the head is known at the boundary of the flow field.

Discharge The volume of water flowing in a stream or through an aquifer past a specific point in a given period of time.

Discharge area An area in which there are upward components of hydraulic head in the aquifer. Ground water is flowing toward the surface in a discharge area and may escape as a spring, seep, or baseflow or by evaporation and transpiration.

Discharge velocity *See* specific discharge.

Dispersion The phenomenon by which a solute in flowing ground water is mixed with uncontaminated water and becomes reduced in concentration. Dispersion is caused by both differences in the velocity that the water travels at the pore level and differences in the rate at which water travels through different strata in the flow path.

Distribution coefficient The slope of a linear Freundlich isotherm.

DNAPL Acronym for dense nonaqueous phase liquid. A liquid that is not miscible with water, which is denser than water, and can exist in the earth as a separate phase. Coal tar and trichloroethylene are examples.

Drainage basin An area surrounded by a continuous topographic divide within which all runoff joins a single stream and extends downstream to the point that the stream crosses the divide. *Catchment* is a synonym.

Drainage divide *See* topographic divide.

Drawdown A lowering of the water table of an unconfined aquifer or the potentiometric surface of a confined aquifer caused by pumping of ground water from wells.

Dupuit assumptions Assumptions for flow in an unconfined aquifer that (1) the hydraulic gradient is equal to the slope of the water table, (2) the streamlines are horizontal, and (3) the equipotential lines are vertical.

Dupuit equation An equation for the volume of water flowing in an unconfined aquifer; based upon the Dupuit assumptions.

Duration curve A graph showing the percentage of time that the given flows of a stream will be equaled or exceeded. It is based on a statistical study of historic streamflow records.

Dynamic equilibrium A condition in which the amount of recharge to an aquifer equals the amount of natural discharge.

Dynamic viscosity The internal resistance of a fluid to movement by flowing. It is expressed in units of poise or centipoise.

Effective grain size The grain size corresponding to the one that is 10% finer by weight line on the grain-size distribution curve.

Effective porosity *See* porosity, effective.

Effective uniform depth (EUD) of precipitation The result that would occur if the actual precipitation over a drainage basin, which is variable from place to place, were spread out over the entire basin to an average depth.

Electrical resistance model An analog model of ground-water flow based on the flow of electricity through a circuit containing resistors and capacitors.

Electrical sounding An earth-resistivity survey made at the same location by putting the electrodes progressively farther apart. It shows the change of apparent resistivity with depth.

Electromagnetic conductivity A method of measuring the induced electrical field in the earth to determine the ability of the earth to conduct electricity. Electromagnetic conductivity is the inverse of electrical resistivity. Also known as electric conductivity and terrain conductivity.

English rule A ground-water doctrine that holds that property owners have the right of absolute ownership of the ground water beneath their land.

Equilibrium constant The number defining the conditions of equilibrium for a particular reversible chemical reaction.

Equipotential line A line in a two-dimensional ground-water flow field such that the total hydraulic head is the same for all points along the line.

Equipotential surface A surface in a three-dimensional ground-water flow field such that the total hydraulic head is the same everywhere on the surface.

Equivalent weight The formula weight of a dissolved ionic species divided by the electrical charge. Also known as *combining weight.*

Eutrophication The process of accelerated aging of a surface-water body; caused by excess nutrients and sediments being brought into the lake.

Evaporation The process by which water passes from the liquid to the vapor state.

Evapotranspiration The sum of evaporation plus transpiration.

Evapotranspiration, actual The evapotranspiration that actually occurs under given climatic and soil-moisture conditions.

Evapotranspiration, potential The evapotranspiration that would occur under given climatic conditions if there were unlimited soil moisture.

Fault spring A spring created by the movement of two rock units on a fault.

Field blank A water-quality sample where highly purified water is run through the field-sampling procedure and sent to the laboratory to detect if any contamination of the samples is occurring during the sampling process.

Field capacity The maximum amount of water that the unsaturated zone of a soil can hold against the pull of gravity. The field capacity is dependent on the length of time the soil has been undergoing gravity drainage.

Finite-difference model A particular kind of a digital computer model based on a rectangular grid that sets the boundaries of the model and the nodes where the model will be solved.

Finite-element model A digital ground-water flow model where the aquifer is divided into a mesh formed of a number of polygonal cells.

Flow net The set of intersecting equipotential lines and flowlines representing two-dimensional steady flow through porous media.

Flow, steady The flow that occurs when, at any point in the flow field, the magnitude and direction of the specific discharge are constant in time.

Flow, unsteady The flow that occurs when, at any point in the flow field, the magnitude or direction of the specific discharge changes with time. Also called *transient flow* or *nonsteady flow.*

Force potential The sum of the kinetic energy, elevation energy, and pressure at a point in an aquifer. It is equal to the hydraulic head times the acceleration of gravity.

Fossil water Interstitial water that was buried at the same time as the original sediment.

Fracture spring A spring created by fracturing or jointing of the rock.

Fracture trace The surface representation of a fracture zone. It may be a characteristic line of vegetation or linear soil-moisture pattern or a topographic sag.

Free energy A measure of the thermodynamic driving energy of a chemical reaction. Also known as *Gibbs free energy* or *Gibbs function.*

Freundlich isotherm An empirical equation that describes the amount of solute absorbed onto a soil surface.

Gaining stream *See* stream, gaining.

Gamma-gamma radiation log A borehole log in which a source of gamma radiation and a detector are lowered into the borehole. This log measures bulk density of the formation and fluids.

Gamma log *See* natural gamma radiation log.

Gauss-Seidel method A particular type of method for solving for the head in a finite-difference ground-water model.

Geohydrology A synonym for hydrogeology; also the flow of water through the earth without considering the effects of the geology.

Ghyben-Herzberg principle An equation that relates the depth of a salt-water interface in a coastal aquifer to the height of the fresh-water table above sea level.

Glacial-lacustrine sediments Silt and clay deposits formed in the quiet waters of lakes that received meltwater from glaciers.

Glacial outwash Well-sorted sand, or sand and gravel, deposited by the meltwater from a glacier.

Glacial till A glacial deposit composed of mostly unsorted sand, silt, clay, and boulders and laid down directly by the melting ice.

Gouge Soft, ground-up rock formed between the moving surfaces of a geological fault.

Gravity drainage The downward movement of water in the vadose zone due to gravity.

Gravity potential A potential due to the position of ground water or soil moisture above a datum.

Ground-penetrating radar A surface geophysical technique based on the transmission of repetitive pulses of electromagnetic waves into the ground. Some of the radiated energy is reflected back to the surface and the reflected signal is captured and processed.

Ground water The water contained in interconnected pores located below the water table in an unconfined aquifer or located in a confined aquifer.

Ground-water basin. A rather vague designation pertaining to a ground-water reservoir that is more or less separate from neighboring ground-water reservoirs. A ground-water basin could be separated from adjacent basins by geologic boundaries or by hydrologic boundaries.

Ground water, confined The water contained in a confined aquifer. Pore-water pressure is greater than atmospheric at the top of the confined aquifer.

Ground-water divide The boundary between two adjacent ground-water basins. The divide is represented by a high in the water table.

Ground-water flow The movement of water through openings in sediment and rock; occurs in the zone of saturation.

Ground water, perched The water in an isolated, saturated zone located in the zone of aeration. It is the result of the presence of a layer of material of low hydraulic conductivity, called a perching bed. Perched ground water will have a perched water table.

Ground water, unconfined The water in an aquifer where there is a water table.

Grout curtain An underground wall designed to stop ground-water flow; can be created by injecting grout into the ground, which subsequently hardens to become impermeable.

Hantush-Jacob formula An equation to describe the change in hydraulic head with time during pumping of a leaky confined aquifer.

Hazen method An empirical equation that can be used to approximate the hydraulic conductivity of a sediment on the basis of the effective grain size.

Head, total hydraulic The sum of the elevation head, the pressure head, and the velocity head at a given point in an aquifer.

Hele-Shaw model An analog model of ground-water flow based on the movement of a viscous fluid between two closely spaced, parallel plates.

Heterogeneous Pertaining to a substance having different characteristics in different locations. A synonym is *nonuniform.*

Hollow-stem auger A particular kind of a drilling device whereby a hole is rapidly advanced into sediments. Sampling and installation of the equipment can take place through the hollow center of the auger.

Homogeneous Pertaining to a substance having identical characteristics everywhere. A synonym is *uniform.*

Horizontal profiling A method of making an earth-resistivity survey by measuring the apparent resistivity using the same electrode spacings at different grid points around an area.

Horton overland flow The part of precipitation that flows across the land surface toward a stream channel. When it reaches a stream channel it becomes part of the runoff. *Overland flow* is a synonym.

Humidity, absolute The amount of moisture in the air as expressed by the number of grams of water per cubic meter of air.

Humidity, relative Percent ratio of the absolute humidity to the saturation humidity for an air mass.

Humidity, saturation The maximum amount of moisture that can be contained by an air mass at a given temperature.

Hvorslev method A procedure for performing a slug test in a piezometer that partially penetrates a water-table aquifer.

Hydraulic conductivity A coefficient of proportionality describing the rate at which water can move through a permeable medium. The density and kinematic viscosity of the water must be considered in determining hydraulic conductivity.

Hydraulic diffusivity A property of an aquifer or confining bed defined as the ratio of the transmissivity to the storativity.

Hydraulic gradient The change in total head with a change in distance in a given direction. The direction is that which yields a maximum rate of decrease in head.

Hydraulic head *See* head, total.

Hydrochemical facies Bodies of water with separate but distinct chemical compositions contained in an aquifer.

Hydrogeology The study of the interrelationships of geologic materials and processes with water, especially ground water.

Hydrograph A graph that shows some property of ground water or surface water as a function of time.

Hydrologic cycle The circulation of water from the sea to the atmosphere to the land and hence back to the sea.

Hydrologic equation An expression of the law of mass conservation for purposes of water budgets. It may be stated as inflow equals outflow plus or minus changes in storage.

Hydrology The study of the occurrence, distribution, and chemistry of all waters of the earth.

Hydrophyte A type of plant that grows with the root system submerged in standing water.

Image well An imaginary well that can be used to simulate the effect of a hydrologic barrier, such as a recharge boundary or a barrier boundary, on the hydraulics of a pumping or recharge well.

Infiltrate The process of water moving from the land surface into the soil.

Infiltration capacity The maximum rate at which infiltration can occur under specific conditions of soil moisture. For a given soil, the infiltration capacity is a function of the water content.

Influent stream *See* stream, losing.

Interception The process by which precipitation is captured on the surfaces of vegetation before it reaches the land surface.

Interception loss Rainfall that evaporates from standing vegetation.

Interflow Lateral movement of water in the vadose zone during and immediately after a precipitation event.

Intermediate belt That part of the vadose zone that lies below the belt of soil moisture and above the capillary fringe. It contains intermediate water.

Intrinsic permeability Pertaining to the relative ease with which a porous medium can transmit a liquid under a hydraulic or potential gradient. It is a property of the porous medium and is independent of the nature of the liquid or the potential field.

Ion exchange A process by which an ion in a mineral lattice is replaced by another ion that was present in an aqueous solution.

Isohyetal line A line drawn on a map, all points along which receive equal amounts of precipitation.

Isotropy The condition in which hydraulic properties of the aquifer are equal in all directions.

Jacob straight-line method A graphical method using semilogarithmic paper and the Theis equation for evaluating the results of a pumping test.

Joint spring *See* fracture spring.

Juvenile water Water entering the hydrologic cycle for the first time.

Karst The type of geologic terrane underlain by carbonate rocks where significant solution of the rock has occurred due to flowing ground water.

Kemmerer sampler A sampling device that can be lowered either into a deep well or into a lake to retrieve a water sample from a particular depth in the well or the lake.

Kinematic viscosity The dynamic viscosity of a fluid divided by the fluid density.

Laminar flow That type of flow in which the fluid particles follow paths that are smooth, straight, and parallel to the channel walls. In laminar flow, the viscosity of the fluid damps out turbulent motion. *Compare with* turbulent flow.

Land pan A device used to measure free-water evaporation.

Langmuir adsorption isotherm An empirical equation that describes the amount of solute adsorbed onto a soil surface.

Laplace equation The partial differential equation governing steady-state flow of ground water.

Law of mass action The law stating that for a reversible chemical reaction the rate of reaction is proportional to the concentrations of the reactants.

Leachate Water that contains a high amount of dissolved solids and is created by liquid seeping from a landfill.

Leachate-collection system A system installed in conjunction with a liner to capture the leachate that may be generated from a landfill so that it may be taken away and treated.

Leaky confining layer A low-permeability layer that can transmit water at sufficient rates to furnish some recharge to a well pumping from an underlying aquifer. Also called *aquitard.*

Lineament A natural linear surface longer than a mile (1500 m).

Lithologic log A record of the lithology of the rock and soil encountered in a borehole from the surface to the bottom. Also known as a *well log.*

LNAPL Acronym for light nonaqueous phase liquid. A liquid that is not miscible with water, which is less dense than water, and can exist in the earth as a separate phase. Gasoline and benzene are examples.

Losing stream *See* stream, losing.

Lysimeter A field device containing a soil column and vegetation; used for measuring actual evapotranspiration.

Magmatic water Water associated with a magma.

Magnetometer A geophysical device that can be used to locate items that disrupt the earth's localized magnetic field; can be used for finding buried steel.

Manning equation An equation that can be used to compute the average velocity of flow in an open channel.

Maximum contaminant level (MCL) The highest concentration of a solute permissible in a public water supply as specified in the National Interim Primary Drinking Water Standards for the United States.

Maximum contaminant level goal (MCLG) A nonenforceable health goal for solutes in drinking water; set at a level to prevent known or anticipated adverse effects with an adequate margin of safety.

Micrograms per liter A measure of the amount of dissolved solids in a solution in terms of micrograms of solute per liter of solution.

Milliequivalents per liter A measure of the concentration of a solute in solution; obtained by dividing the concentration in milligrams per liter by equivalent weight of the ion.

Milligrams per liter A measure of the amount of dissolved solids in a solute in terms of milligrams of solute per liter of solution.

Model calibration The process by which the independent variables of a digital computer model are varied, to calibrate a dependent variable such as a head against a known value such as a water-table map.

Model field verification The process by which a digital computer model that has been calibrated and verified is tested to see if it can predict the field response of an aquifer to some transient condition.

Model verification The process by which a digital computer model that has been calibrated against a steady-state condition is tested to see if it can generate a transient response, such as the decline in the water table with pumping, that matches the known history of the aquifer.

Moisture potential The tension on the pore water in the unsaturated zone due to the attraction of the soil-water interface.

Molality A measure of chemical concentration. A 1-molal solution has 1 mol of solute dissolved in 1000 g of solvent. One mole of a compound is its formula weight in grams.

Molarity A measure of chemical concentration. A 1-molar solution has 1 mol of solute dissolved in 1 liter of solution.

Mutual-prescription doctrine A ground-water doctrine stating that in the event of an overdraft of a ground-water basin, the available ground water will be apportioned among all users in amounts proportional to their individual pumping rates.

NAPL Acronym for nonaqueous phase liquid. A liquid that is not miscible with water and can exist in the earth as a separate phase. Coal tar and gasoline are examples.

Natural gamma radiation log A borehole log that measures the natural gamma radiation emitted by the formation rocks. It can be used to delineate subsurface rock types.

Neumann condition The boundary condition for a ground-water flow model where a flux across the boundary of the flow region is known.

Neutron log A borehole log obtained by lowering a radioactive element, which is a source of neutrons, and a neutron detector into the well. The neutron log measures the amount of water present, hence, the porosity of the formation.

Nonequilibrium equation *See* Theis equation.

Nonequilibrium type curve A plot on logarithmic paper of the well function $W(u)$ as a function of u.

Numerical model A model of ground-water flow in which the aquifer is described by numerical equations, with specified values for boundary conditions, that are solved on a digital computer.

Observation well A nonpumping well used to observe the elevation of the water table or the potentiometric surface. An observation well is generally of larger diameter than a piezometer and typically is screened or slotted throughout the thickness of the aquifer.

Overland flow The flow of water over a land surface due to direct precipitation. Overland flow generally occurs when the precipitation rate exceeds the infiltration capacity of the soil and depression storage is full. Also called *Horton overland flow.*

Packer test An aquifer test performed in an open borehole; the segment of the borehole to be tested is sealed off from the rest of the borehole by inflating seals, called packers, both above and below the segment.

pe A measure of the chemical activity of a solute in terms of the number of electrons. It is related to Eh by the expression $pe = (F/2.303RT)\text{Eh}$.

Pendular water Water that clings to the surfaces of mineral particles in the zone of aeration.

Permafrost Perenially frozen ground, occurring wherever the temperature remains at or below 0°C for two or more years in a row.

Permeameter A laboratory device used to measure the intrinsic permeability and hydraulic conductivity of a soil or rock sample.

Phreatic cave A cave that forms below the water table.

Phreatophyte A type of plant that typically has a high rate of transpiration by virtue of a taproot extending to the water table.

Piezometer A nonpumping well, generally of small diameter, that is used to measure the elevation of the water table or potentiometric surface. A piezometer generally has a short well screen through which water can enter.

Piezometer nest A set of two or more piezometers set close to each other but screened to different depths.

Polar coordinates The means by which the position of a point in a two-dimensional plane is described; based on the radial distance from the origin to the given point and the angle between a horizontal line passing through the origin and a line extending from the origin to the given point.

Pollutant Any solute or cause of change in physical properties that renders water unfit for a given use.

Pore space The volume between mineral grains in a porous medium.

Porosity The ratio of the volume of void spaces in a rock or sediment to the total volume of the rock or sediment.

Porosity, effective The volume of the void spaces through which water or other fluids can travel in a rock or sediment divided by the total volume of the rock or sediment.

Porosity, primary The porosity that represents the original pore openings when a rock or sediment formed.

Porosity, secondary The porosity that has been caused by fractures or weathering in a rock or sediment after it has been formed.

Potentiometric surface A surface that represents the level to which water will rise in tightly cased wells. If the head varies significantly with depth in the aquifer, then there may be more than one potentiometric surface. The water table is a particular potentiometric surface for an unconfined aquifer.

Potentiometric surface map A contour map of the potentiometric surface of a particular hydrogeologic unit.

Prior-appropriation doctrine A doctrine stating that the right to use water is separate from other property rights and that the first person to withdraw and use the water holds the senior right. The doctrine has been applied to both ground and surface water.

Public trust doctrine A legal theory holding that certain lands and waters in the public domain are held in trust for use by the entire populace. It is especially applicable to navigable waters.

Pumping cone The area around a discharging well where the hydraulic head in the aquifer has been lowered by pumping. Also called *cone of depression.*

Pumping test A test made by pumping a well for a period of time and observing the change in hydraulic head in the aquifer. A pumping test may be used to determine the capacity of the well and the hydraulic characteristics of the aquifer. Also called *aquifer test.*

Quantification limit The lower limit to the range in which the concentration of a solute can be determined by a particular analytical instrument.

Radial flow The flow of water in an aquifer toward a vertically oriented well.

Radial symmetry A condition in an aquifer whereby the same hydraulic conductivity and storativity values affect water moving toward a well from all directions.

Rain gauge A piece of equipment used to measure precipitation.

Rating curve A graph of the discharge of a river at a particular point as a function of the elevation of the water surface.

Rational equation The equation used to predict the peak discharge from a precipitation event.

Recharge area An area in which there are downward components of hydraulic head in the aquifer. Infiltration moves downward into the deeper parts of an aquifer in a recharge area.

Recharge basin A basin or pit excavated to provide a means of allowing water to soak into the ground at rates exceeding those that would occur naturally.

Recharge boundary An aquifer system boundary that adds water to the aquifer. Streams and lakes are typically recharge boundaries.

Recharge well A well specifically designed so that water can be pumped into an aquifer to recharge the ground-water reservoir.

Recovery The rate at which the water level in a well rises after the pump has been shut off. It is the inverse of drawdown.

Regolith The upper part of the earth's surface that has been altered by weathering processes. It includes both soil and weathered bedrock.

Resistivity log A borehole log made by lowering two current electrodes into the borehole and measuring the resistivity between two additional electrodes. It measures the electrical resistivity of the formation and contained fluids near the probe.

Retardation A general term for the many processes that act to remove the solutes in ground water; for many solutes the solute front will travel more slowly than the rate of the advecting ground water.

Return flow A type of overland flow that occurs when throughflow reaches the land surface and drains across the land surface before reaching a stream.

Reverse type curve A plot on logarithmic paper of the well function $W(u)$ as a function of $1/(u)$.

Reynolds number A number, defined by an equation, that can be used to determine whether flow will be laminar or turbulent.

Riparian doctrine A doctrine that holds that the property owner adjacent to a surface-water body has first right to withdraw and use the water.

Rock, igneous A rock formed by the cooling and crystallization of a molten rock mass called magma.

Rock, metamorphic A rock formed by the application of heat and pressure to preexisting rocks.

Rock, plutonic An igneous rock formed when magma cools and crystallizes within the earth.

Rock, sedimentary A rock formed from sediments through a process known as diagenesis or formed by chemical precipitation in water.

Rock, volcanic An igneous rock formed when molten rock called lava cools on the earth's surface.

Runoff The total amount of water flowing in a stream. It includes overland flow, return flow, interflow, and baseflow.

Safe yield The amount of naturally occurring ground water that can be economically and legally withdrawn from an aquifer on a sustained basis without impairing the native ground-water quality or creating an undesirable effect such as environmental damage. It cannot exceed the increase in recharge or leakage from adjacent strata plus the reduction in discharge, which is due to the decline in head caused by pumping.

Saline-water encroachment The movement, as a result of human activity, of saline ground water into an aquifer formerly occupied by fresh water. Passive saline-water encroachment occurs at a slow rate owing to a general lowering of the fresh-water potentiometric surface. Active saline-water encroachment proceeds at a more rapid rate owing to the lowering of the fresh-water potentiometric surface below sea level.

Salt-water encroachment *See* saline-water encroachment.

Saprolite A soft, earthy, decomposed rock, typically clay-rich, formed in place by chemical weathering of igneous and metamorphic rocks.

Saturated zone The zone in which the voids in the rock or soil are filled with water at a pressure greater than atmospheric. The water table is the top of the saturated zone in an unconfined aquifer.

Saturation humidity The maximum amount of water vapor that air can hold at a given temperature, expressed as mass per unit volume.

Saturation ratio The ratio of the volume of contained water in a soil to the volume of the voids of the soil.

Schlumberger array A particular arrangement of electrodes used to measure surface electrical resistivity.

Screen *See* well screen.

Sediment An assemblage of individual mineral grains that were deposited by some geologic agent such as water, wind, ice, or gravity.

Seepage velocity The rate of movement of fluid particles through porous media along a line from one point to another.

Seismic refraction A method of determining subsurface geophysical properties by measuring the length of time it takes for artificially generated seismic waves to pass through the ground.

Shelby tube A sampling device that is pushed into an unconsolidated aquifer ahead of the drill bit. Typically, the Shelby tube is pushed by hydraulic means.

Single-point resistance log A borehole log made by lowering a single electrode into the well with the other electrode at the ground surface. It measures the overall electrical resistivity of the formation and drilling fluid between the surface and the probe.

Sinkhole spring A spring created by ground water flowing from a sinkhole in karst terrane.

Slug test An aquifer test made either by pouring a small instantaneous charge of water into a well or by withdrawing a slug of water from the well. A synonym for this test, when a slug of water is removed from the well, is *bail-down test.*

Slurry wall An underground wall designed to stop ground-water flow; constructed by digging a trench and backfilling it with a slurry rich in bentonite clay.

Soil liquefaction A process that occurs when saturated sediments are shaken by an earthquake. The soil can lose its strength and cause the collapse of structures with foundations in the sediment.

Soil moisture *See* soil water.

Soil water Water in the belt of soil water. *Soil moisture* is a synonym.

Solubility product The equilibrium constant that describes a solution of a slightly soluble salt in water.

Specific capacity An expression of the productivity of a well, obtained by dividing the rate of discharge of water from the well by the drawdown of the water level in the well. Specific capacity should be described on the basis of the number of hours of pumping prior to the time the drawdown measurement is made. It will generally decrease with time as the drawdown increases.

Specific discharge An apparent velocity calculated from Darcy's law; represents the flow rate at which water would flow in an aquifer if the aquifer were an open conduit.

Specific retention The ratio of the volume of water the rock or sediment will retain against the pull of gravity to the total volume of the rock or sediment.

Specific storage The volume of ground water that an aquifer absorbs or expels from a unit volume when the pressure head decreases or increases by a unit amount.

Specific weight The weight of a substance per unit volume. The units are newtons per cubic meter.

Specific yield The ratio of the volume of water a rock or soil will yield by gravity drainage to the volume of the rock or soil. Gravity drainage may take many months to occur.

Spiked sample A water sample to which a known quantity of a solute has been added so that the accuracy of the laboratory in analyzing the sample can be determined.

Split-spoon sample. A sample of unconsolidated material taken by driving a sampling device ahead of the drill bit in a boring. The split-spoon sampler is typically advanced by the repetitive dropping of a weight.

Spontaneous potential log A borehole log made by measuring the natural electrical potential that develops between the formation and the borehole fluids.

Stagnation point A place in a ground-water flow field at which the ground water is not moving. The magnitude of vectors of hydraulic head at the point are equal but opposite in direction.

Stem flow The process by which rainwater drips and flows down the stems and branches of plants.

Stiff pattern A graphical means of presenting the chemical analysis of the major cations and anions of a water sample.

Storage, specific The amount of water released from or taken into storage per unit volume of a porous medium per unit change in head.

Storativity The volume of water an aquifer releases from or takes into storage per unit surface area of the aquifer per unit change in head. It is equal to the product of specific storage and aquifer thickness. In an unconfined aquifer, the storativity is equivalent to the specific yield. Also called *storage coefficient.*

Storm hydrograph A graph of the discharge of a stream over the time period when, in addition to direct precipitation, overland flow, interflow, and return flow are adding to the flow of the stream. The storm hydrograph will peak owing to the addition of these flow elements.

Stream, gaining A stream or reach of a stream, the flow of which is being increased by inflow of ground water. Also known as an *effluent stream.*

Stream, losing A stream or reach of a stream that is losing water by seepage into the ground. Also known as an *influent stream.*

Successive overrelaxation method. A particular type of method for solving for the head in a finite-difference ground-water model.

Suction lysimeter A device for withdrawing pore-water samples from the unsaturated zone by applying tension to a porous ceramic cup.

Surface water Water found in ponds, lakes, inland seas, streams, and rivers.

Swallow hole A vertical shaft in a karst terrane leading from a surface stream into an underground cavern.

Temperature inversion A situation when a layer of warm air overlies a layer of cold air.

Tensiometer A device used to measure the soil-moisture tension in the unsaturated zone.

Tension The condition under which pore water exists at a pressure less than atmospheric.

Theis equation An equation for the flow of ground water in a fully confined aquifer.

Theis type curve *See* reverse type curve.

Thiessen method A process used to determine the effective uniform depth of precipitation over a drainage basin with a nonuniform distribution of rain gauges.

Throughflow The lateral movement of water in an unsaturated zone during and immediately after a precipitation event. The water from throughflow seeps out at the base of slopes and then flows across the ground surface as return flow, ultimately reaching a stream or lake.

Time of concentration The time it takes for water to flow from the most distant part of the drainage basin to the measuring point.

Topographic divide The boundary between adjacent surface water boundaries. It is represented by a topographically high area.

Tortuosity The actual length of a ground-water flow path, which is sinuous in form, divided by the straight-line distance between the ends of the flow path.

Transmissivity The rate at which water of a prevailing density and viscosity is transmitted through a unit width of an aquifer or confining bed under a unit hydraulic gradient. It is a function of properties of the liquid, the porous media, and the thickness of the porous media.

Transpiration The process by which plants give off water vapor through their leaves.

Turbulent flow That type of flow in which the fluid particles move along very irregular paths. Momentum can be exchanged between one portion of the fluid and another. *Compare with* laminar flow.

Uniformity coefficient The ratio of the grain size that is 60% finer by weight to the grain size that is 10% finer by weight on the grain-size distribution curve. It is a measure of how well or poorly sorted sediment is.

Unsaturated zone *See* vadose zone.

Vadose cave A cave that occurs above the water table.

Vadose water Water in the vadose zone.

Vadose zone The zone between the land surface and the water table. It includes the belt of soil water, the intermediate belt, and the capillary fringe. The pore spaces contain water at less than atmospheric pressure, as well as air and other gases. Saturated bodies, such as perched ground water, may also exist in the vadose zone. Also called the *zone of aeration* or the *unsaturated zone.*

Viscosity The property of a fluid describing its resistance to flow. Units of viscosity are newton-seconds per meter squared or pascal-seconds. Viscosity is also known as *dynamic viscosity.*

Water budget An evaluation of all the sources of supply and the corresponding discharges with respect to an aquifer or a drainage basin.

Water content The weight of contained water in a soil divided by the total weight of the soil mass.

Water equivalent The depth of water obtained by melting a given thickness of snow.

Water quality criteria Values for dissolved substances in water based on their toxicological and ecological impacts.

Water table The surface in an unconfined aquifer or confining bed at which the pore water pressure is atmospheric. It can be measured by installing shallow wells extending a few feet into the zone of saturation and then measuring the water level in those wells.

Water-table cave A cave that forms at the approximate position of the water table.

Water-table map A specific type of potentiometric-surface map for an unconfined aquifer; shows lines of equal elevation of the water table.

Weir A device placed across a stream and used to measure the discharge by having the water flow over a specifically designed spillway.

Well casing A solid piece of pipe, typically steel or PVC plastic, used to keep a well open in either unconsolidated materials or unstable rock.

Well development The process whereby a well is pumped or surged to remove any fine material that may be blocking the well screen or the aquifer outside the well screen.

Well, fully penetrating A well drilled to the bottom of an aquifer, constructed in such a way that it withdraws water from the entire thickness of the aquifer.

Well function An infinite-series term that appears in the Theis equation of ground-water flow.

Well log *See* lithologic log.

Well, partially penetrating A well constructed in such a way that it draws water directly from a fractional part of the total thickness of the aquifer. The fractional part may be located at the top or the bottom or anywhere in between in the aquifer.

Well screen A tubular device with either slots, holes, gauze, or continuous-wire wrap; used at the end of a well casing to complete a well. The water enters the well through the well screen.

Wenner array A particular arrangement of electrodes used to measure surface electrical resistivity.

Wilting point The soil-moisture content below which plants are unable to withdraw soil moisture.

Winters doctrine A United States doctrine holding that when Indian reservations were established, the federal government also reserved the water rights necessary to make the land productive.

Xerophyte A desert plant capable of existing by virtue of a shallow and extensive root system in an area of minimal water.

Zone of aeration *See* Vadose zone.

Zone of saturation *See* saturated zone.

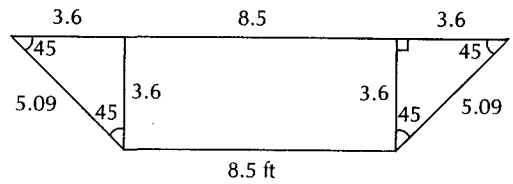
ANSWERS

Chapter 1 Answers

1. V = 11,000 ft^3 or 1.1×10^4 ft^3
3. V = 10,600 ft^3
5. 160 hrs.
7. Water added = 1800 L
9. 3.72×10^5 ft^3 into ditch
11. 12000 g water
13. (a) input is greater than output.
    (b) lake level will rise over the long term.
    (c) 61,000 ac.
    (d) 16.3 yrs

Chapter 2 Answers

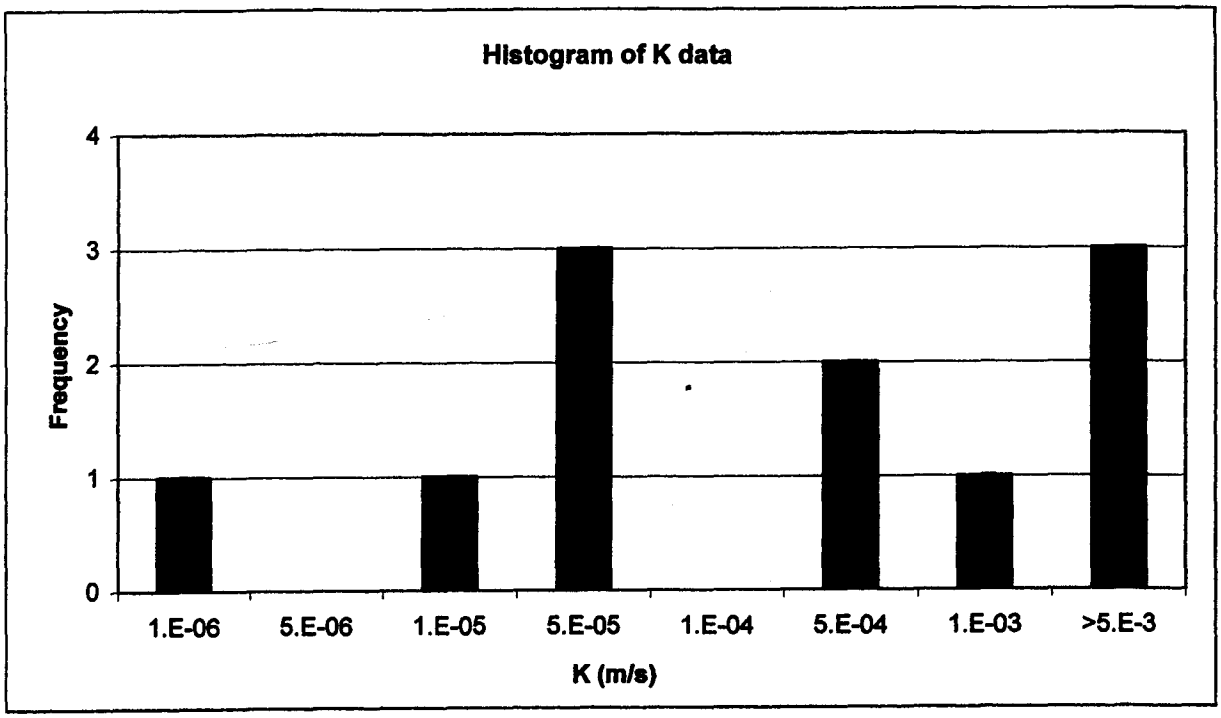
1. (a) 1.14 m^2
   (b) 0.29 m^3
   (c) 38.1 mm
   (d) 4.3 mm d
   (e) 33.8 mm
   (f) 44.5 mm
   (g) 10.3 d
3. EUD = 1.26
5. 0.44 ac-ft/d
7. (a) Dew pt = 11° C
   (b) R.H. = 51%
9. (a) 5.14×10^{-3} when Q is in m^3/s and t is in d
   (b) Q=389 m^3/s
11. Q = 30.5 ft^3/s
13. Q = 717 ft^3/sec
15. 2.0×10^9 ft^3
17. (a) V = 2.4 ft/s
    (b) Q = 100 ft^3/s



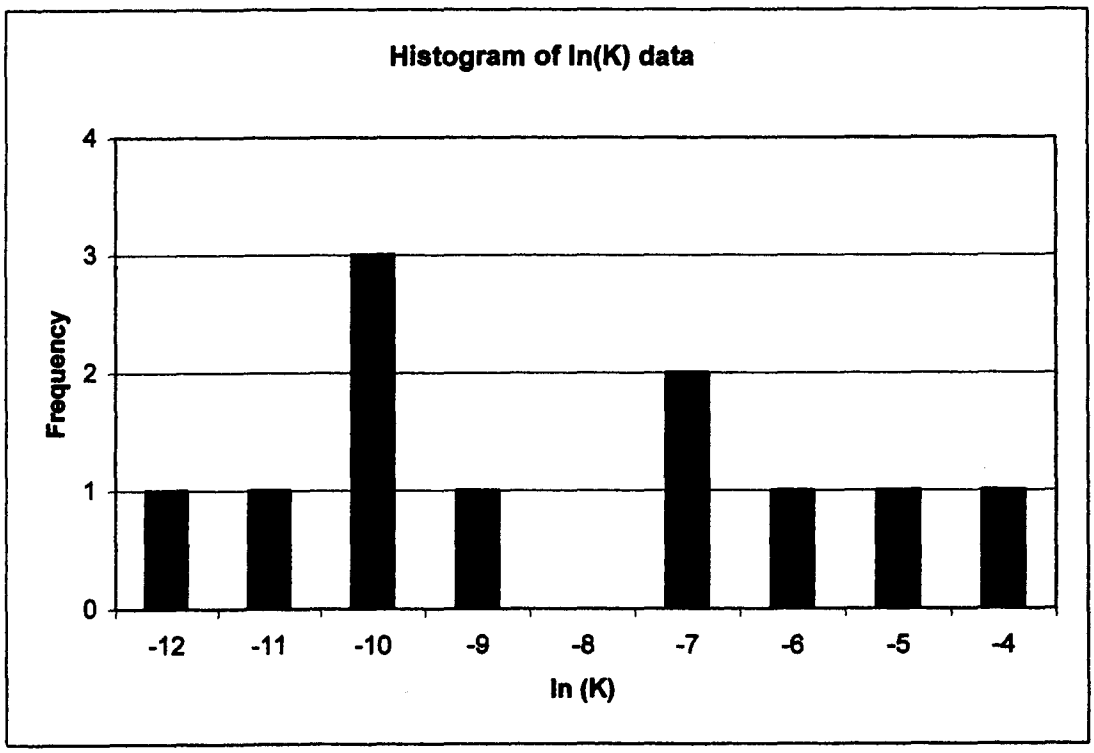
PROBLEM 2.17

Chapter 3 Answers

1. 142 N
3. (a) $\rho = 174$ kg/m^3
   (b) 1710 N/m^3
   (c) ρ water = 1000 kg/m^3; the object is less dense than water.
5. $K_i = 3.43 \times 10^{-10}$ cm^2
7. (a) K = 0.11 cm/s
   (b) $K_i = 1.3 \times 10^{-6}$ cm^2
   (c) K = 0.11 cm/s soil is well sorted sand or gravel.
9. $V_w = 3.07 \times 10^7$ m^3
11. $V_w = 23$ ft^3
13. $\alpha = 4.1 \times 10^{-7}$ m^2/N
15. $K_{v\ average} = 21$ ft/d; $K_{h\ average} = 25$ft/d
17. $K = 2.6 \times 10^{-2}$ cm/s
19. (a) arithmetic mean = 1.54×10^{-3} m/s
    (b) geometric mean = 1.57×10^{-4} m/s
    (c) Problem 3.19c
    (d) Problem 3.19d



PROBLEM 3.19c



PROBLEM 3.19d

Chapter 4 Answers

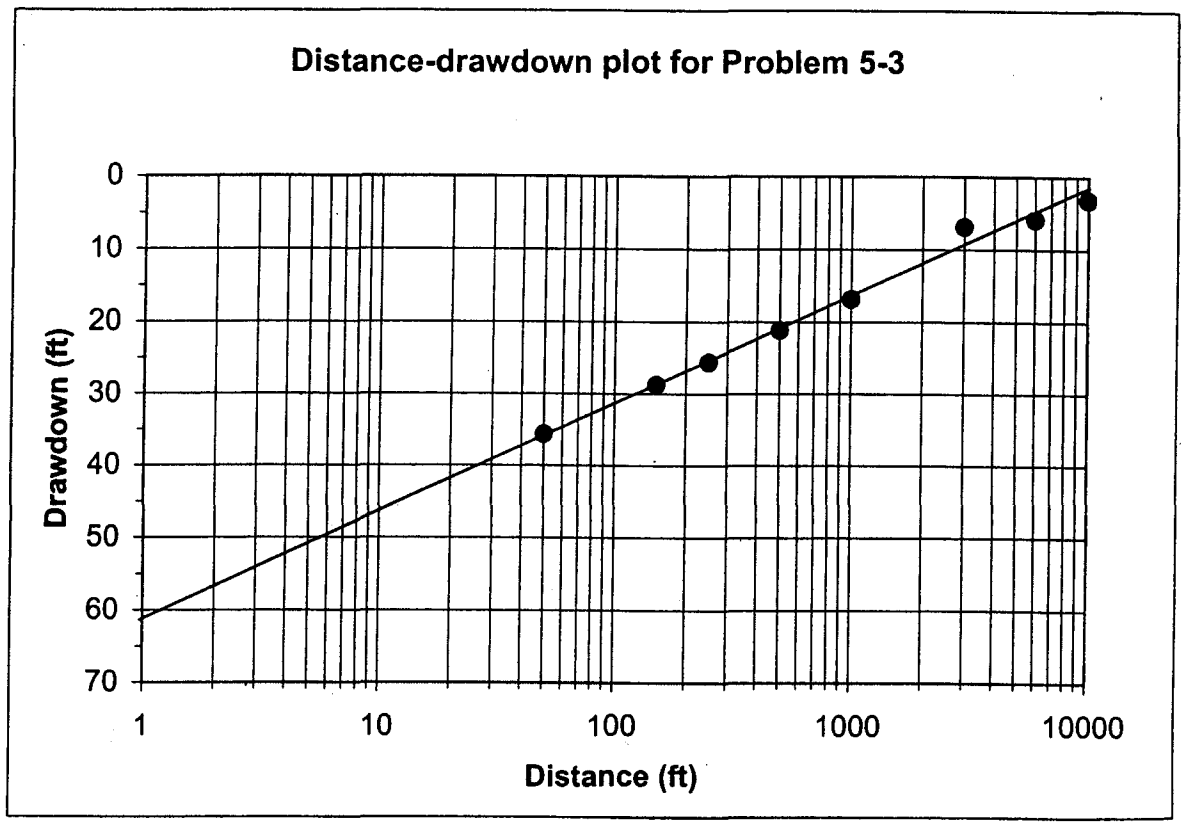
1. (a) $E_{tm} = 65\ m^2/s^2$
   (b) $E_t$weight = 6.7 m
3. (a) h = 741.3 m
   (b) $\rho = 1.75 \times 10^5\ N/m^2$
5. $h_p = 19.17$ m
7. R = 1.36
   Reynolds number is less than 10; Darcy's law is valid.
9. (a) $Q = 40\ ft^3/d$ moving through a 10-ft wide strip.
   (b) $V_x = 2$ ft/d
11. (a) $Q = 3100\ ft^3/d$
    (b) h = 27.6 ft
13. (a) $q'_{x=0} = -0.79\ m^2/d$
    (b) $q'_{x=525} = 2.88\ m^2/d$
    (c) d = 113 m
    (d) $h_{max} = 17.8$ m
15. $q' = 58\ ft^3/d$
17. $q' = 0.55\ ft^2$/day per unit width

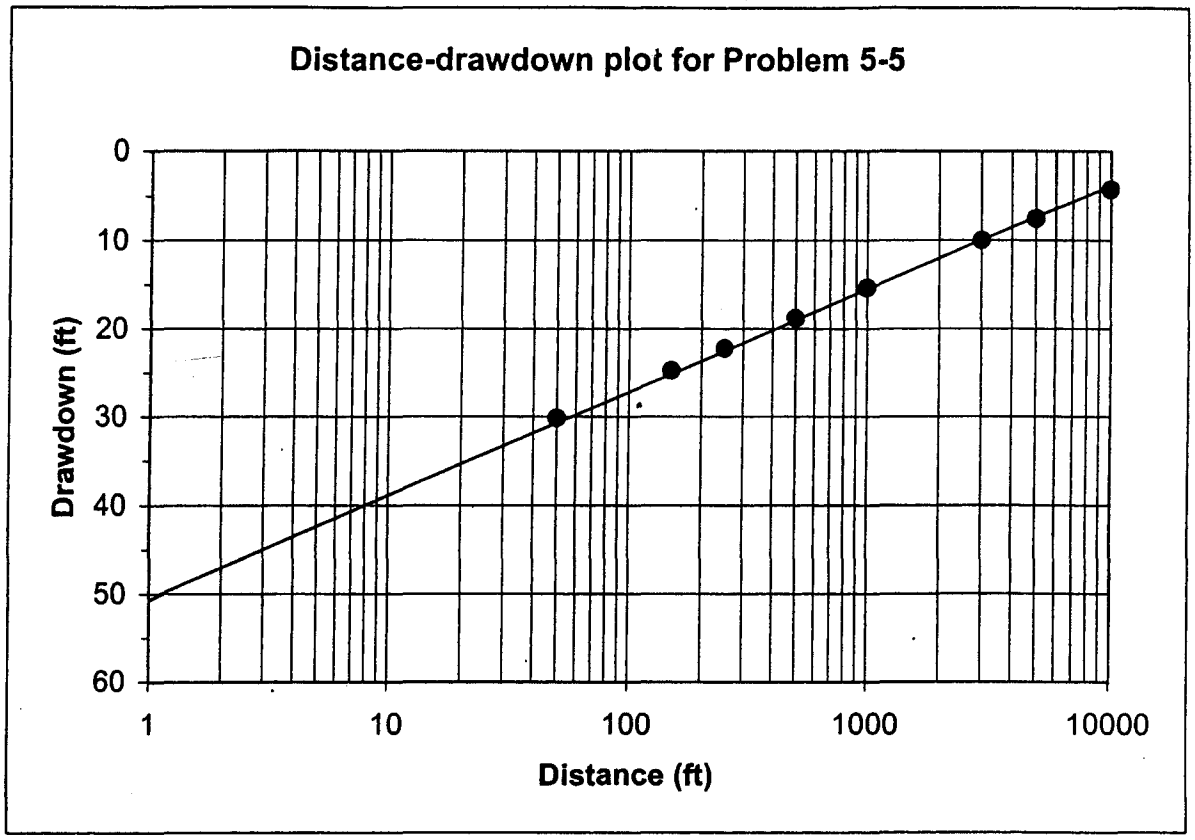
Chapter 5 Answers

1.

r (ft)	$h_0 - h$ (ft)
entered manually	
50	35.56
150	28.70
250	25.58
500	21.14
1000	16.85
3000	10.06
6000	5.87
10000	3.18

3. Figure 5.3
5. Figure 5.5



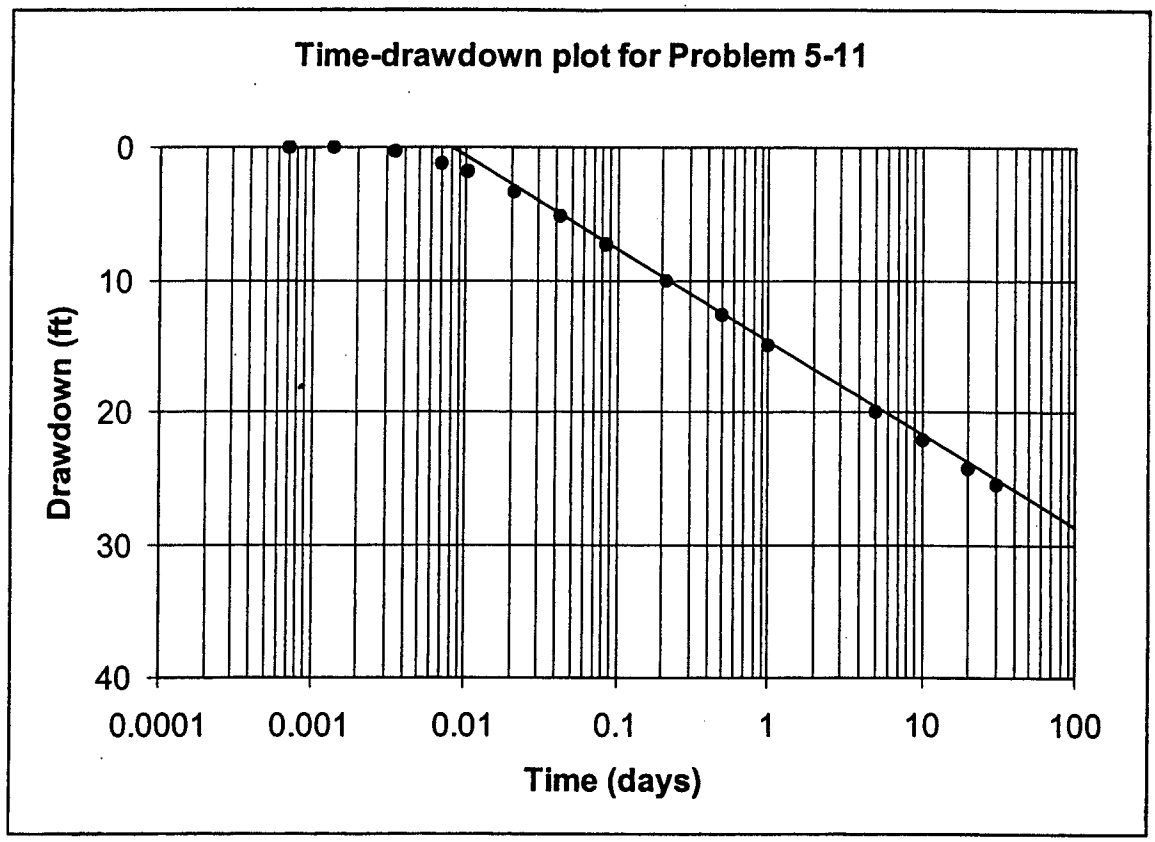


7.

r (ft)	$h_0 - h$ (ft)
50	14.29
150	7.64
250	4.79
500	2.22
1000	0.56
3000	0.003
6000	nil
10000	nil

9.

time	$h_0 - h$ (ft)
1 min	0.00
2 min	0.03
5 min	0.46
10 min	1.16
15 min	1.87
30 min	3.40
60 min	5.20
2 hr	7.24
5 hr	10.01
12 hr	12.71
1 day	14.87
5 days	19.90
10 days	22.07
20 days	24.23
30 days	25.48



11. Figure 5.11
13. $T = 998\ ft^2/d$
15. $T = 0.15\ ft^2/s$
17. (a) $K' = 7.2 \times 10^{-4}$ ft/min
    (b) $S = 0.0008$, $T = 1.82\ ft^2/min$
19. $S_y = 0.005$, $S = 0.0005$, $T = 1400\ m^2/d$

Chapter 6 Answers

1. (a) 21%
   (b) 0.11
   (c) 0.75
   (d) 29%
   (e) Sy = 23%
   (f) Sr = 5.9%
   (g) $1.91\ g/cm^3$
   (h) n = 28%

Chapter 8 Answers

1. Z(x,y) = 550 ft
3. (a) Z = 3.71 m
   (b) h = 0.089 m
   (c) z = 0.055 m
   (d) $X_0 = 0.0275$ m
5. z = 101 ft

Chapter 9 Answers

1. 19.4 g
3. $[Cu+] = 1.12 \times 10^{-3}$ mole/liter
5. (a) $[Ca^{2+}] = 1.99 \times 10^{-4}$ mole
   (b) 3.90×10^{-7} mole of CaF_2 will dissolve
7. (a) See table
   (b) $I = 2.62 \times 10^{-2}$
   (c) See table
   (d) See table
   (e) See table
   (f) Error = −0.06%; acceptable
   (g) $K_{iap}CaSO_4 = 10^{-5.35}$
   (h) 0.14
   The water is 14% saturated with respect to anhydrite.
   (i) K_{iap}calcite $= 5.08 \times 10^{-8}$
   (j) $\frac{K_{iap_{calcite}}}{K_{sp_{calcite}}}$ 11.4; the water is 1140% saturated with respect to calcite.

Ion	Formula Wt.	Charge	Ionic Radius	Concentration (mg/l)	Concentration (mol/l)	Activity Coeff.	Activity	Concentration (meq/l)
CATIONS								
Ca^{2+}	40.08	2	6	134	3.34E − 03	5.63E − 01	1.88E − 03	6.69
Mg^{2+}	24.31	2	8	44	1.81E − 03	5.87E − 01	1.06E − 03	3.62
Na^{+}	22.99	1	4	145	6.31E − 03	8.55E − 01	5.39E − 03	6.31
				Cation total =	1.15E − 02			
ANIONS								
SO_4^{2-}	96.06	2	4	429	4.47E − 03	5.35E − 01	2.39E − 03	8.93
HCO_3^{-}	61.01	1	4	412	6.75E − 03	8.55E − 01	5.78E − 03	6.75
Cl^{-}	35.45	1	3	34	9.59E − 04	8.49E − 01	8.14E − 04	0.96
				Anion total =	1.22E − 02			
Ionic strength =	2.62E − 02							
Charge balance								
cations	1.66E − 02							
anions	1.66E − 02							
c.b. error	−0.06%; acceptable							

PROBLEM 9.7

9. $[H^+] = 10^{-9.32}$
   $[OH^-] = 10^{-4.68}$
11. pH = 4.39
13. pH = 2.39
15. $\log K_{T2} = -9.70$

Chapter 10 Answers

1. C = 62.3 mg/L
   Note: If this problem is solved in EXCEL, the final answer is different because EXCEL can calcualte erfc (3.87) and use the second term of Eqn 10-8. EXCEL answer is C = 86.7 mg/L.
3. C = 1248 mg/L
5. $V_c = 0.0015V_x$
7. (a) $Y_{max} = \pm 190$ ft
   (b) $X_0 = -59$ ft

Chapter 12 Answers

1. (a) 5000 ft/s
   (b) = 18,000 ft/s
   (c) $i_c = 16°$
   (d) z = 56 ft

REFERENCES

ACTON V. BLUNDELL. 1843. 12 M&W. 324, 354.

AHMAD, M. U. 1974. Coal mining and its effect on water quality. *American Water Resources Proceedings,* no. 18:138–48.

AL-KHARABSHER, A. 2000. Groundwater modeling and long-term management of the Azraq basin as an example of arid area conditions (Jordan). *Journal of Arid Environments* 44, no. 2:143–53.

AL-KHARABSHER, A., R. AL-WESHAH, & M. SHATANAWI. 1997. Artificial groundwater recharge in the Azraq basin (Jordan). *Dirasat,* Agricultural Sciences Series, 24, no. 3:357–70.

ALLEN, D. M., & F. A. MICHEL. 1996. The successful use of microgravity profiling to delineate faults in buried bedrock valleys. *Ground Water* 34, no. 6:1132–40.

———. 1998. Evaluation of multi-well test data in a faulted aquifer using linear and radial flow models. *Ground Water* 36, no. 6:938–48.

———. 1999. Characterizing a faulted aquifer by field testing and numerical simulation. *Ground Water* 37, no. 5:718–28.

AMBROGGI, R. P. 1977. Underground reservoirs to control the water cycle. *Scientific American* 236, no. 5:21–27.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS. 1961. *Groundwater basin management.* Manual of Engineering Practices 40.

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION. 1986. Millions to plaintiffs in groundwater contamination suits. *Mainstream* 30, no. 11 (November):12.

ANDERSON, M. P. 1976. Unsteady groundwater flow beneath strip oceanic islands. *Water Resources Research* 12:640–44.

———. 1979. Using models to simulate the movement of contaminants through groundwater flow systems. *Critical Reviews in Environmental Control* 9, no. 2:97–156.

———. 1983. Ground-water modeling—the emperor has no clothes. *Ground Water* 21, no. 6:666–69.

———. 1984. Movement of contaminants in groundwater: Groundwater transport—Advection and dispersion. In *Groundwater contamination,* 37–45. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

———. 1986. Field verification of ground water models. In *Evaluation of pesticides in ground water,* ed. W. Y. Garner et al., 396–412. American Chemical Society Symposium Series 315.

ANDERSON, M. P., & C. A. BERKEBILE. 1977. Hydrogeology of the South Fork of Long Island, New York: Discussion. *Bulletin, Geological Society of America* 88:895.

ANDERSON, M. P., & W. W. WOESSNER. 1992. *Applied groundwater modeling—Simulation of flow and advective transport.* San Diego: Academic Press, Inc.

ANDREWS, C. B. 1978. The impact of the use of heat pumps on ground-water temperatures. *Ground Water* 16:437–43.

ANDREWS, C. 1998. MTBE—A long-term threat to groundwater quality. *Ground Water* 36, no. 5:705.

ANNA, L. O. 1986. *Geologic framework of the ground-water system in Jurassic and Cretaceous rocks in the northern Great Plains, in parts of Montana, North Dakota, South Dakota and Wyoming.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1402-B.

ARCHIE, G. E. 1950. Classification of carbonate reservoir rocks and petro-physical considerations. *American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin* 36:943–61.

ATWOOD, SAM. 1990. Region hunts for water to quench its thirst. *San Bernardino* (California) *Sun,* April 29.

BACK, W. 1960. Origin of hydrochemical facies in groundwater in the Atlantic coastal plain. *Proceedings, International Geological Congress* (Copenhagen) I:87–95.

———. 1966. *Hydrochemical facies and groundwater flow patterns in northern part of Atlantic coastal plain.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 498-A.

BACK, W., & I. BARNES. 1965. *Relation of electrochemical potentials and iron content to groundwater flow patterns.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 498-C.

BACK, W., R. N. CHERRY, & B. B. HANSHAW. 1966. Chemical equilibrium between water and minerals of a carbonate aquifer. *National Speleological Society Bulletin* 28:119–26.

BACK, W., & B. B. HANSHAW. 1965. Chemical geohydrology. In *Advances in hydroscience*, vol. 2, ed. V. T. Chow, 49–109. New York: Academic Press.

———. 1970. Comparison of the chemical hydrogeology of the carbonate peninsulas of Florida and Yucatan. *Journal of Hydrology* 10:330–68.

BAIR, E. S., & S. E. NORRIS. 1990. Field reports—Expert testimony for the plaintiffs in the case that brought Ohio ground-water law into the 20th century. *Ground Water* 28, no. 5:767–74.

BALLARD, R., & J. G. A. FISKELL. 1974. Phosphorus retention in coastal plain soils: I. Relation to soil properties. *Soil Science Society of America, Proceedings* 38:250–55.

BANKS, H. O. 1953. Utilization of underground storage reservoirs. *Transactions, American Society of Civil Engineers* 118:220–34.

BARCELONA, M. J., ET AL. 1984. A laboratory evaluation of ground-water sampling mechanisms. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 4, no. 2:32–41.

———. 1985. *Practical guide for ground-water monitoring.* Illinois State Water Survey Contract Report 374.

ARCELONA, M. J., J. P. GIBB, & R. A. MILLER. 1983. *A guide to the selection of materials for monitoring well construction and ground water sampling.* Illinois State Water Survey Contract Report 327, EPA-600/52-84-024.

ARNES, J. C., & C. J. BOWLEY. 1968. Snow cover distribution as mapped from satellite photography. *Water Resources Research* 4:257–72.

ARNETT, P. M. 1984. Mixing water and the commerce clause: The problems of practice, precedent and policy in *Sporhase v. Nebraska. Natural Resources Journal* 24:161–94.

ARNS, H. H. 1967. *Roughness characteristics of natural channels.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1849.

ARROW, N. J., & T. C. SHAW. 1975a. The slow reactions between soil and anions: 2. Effect of time and temperature on the decrease in phosphate concentration in the soil solution. *Soil Science* 119:167–77.

——. 1975b. The slow reactions between soil and anions: 3. The effects of time and temperature on the decrease in isotopically exchangeable phosphate. *Soil Science* 119:190–97.

ŞAĞAOĞLU, H., & M. A. MARIÑO. 1999. Joint management of surface and ground water supplies. *Ground Water* 37, no. 2:214–22.

ASS BECKING, L. G. M., I. R. KAPLAN, & D. MOORE. 1960. Limits of the natural environment in terms of pH and oxidation-reduction potential. *Journal of Geology* 68:243–84.

ASSET V. SALISBURY MANUFACTURING CO., INC. 1862. 43 N.H. 569, 82 Am. Dec. 179.

VAN DON-GHYBEN, W. 1888–1889. *Nota in verband met de voorgenomen putboring nabij Amsterdam.* Koninklyk Instituut Ingenieurs Tijdschrift (The Hague), 8–22.

BEATTY, M. T., & J. BOUMA. 1973. Application of soil surveys to selection of sites for on-site disposal of liquid household wastes. *Geoderma* 10:113–22.

BEETON, A. M. 1965. Eutrophication of the St. Lawrence Great Lakes. *Limnology and Oceanography* 10:240–54.

———. 1966. *Indices of Great Lakes eutrophication.* Great Lakes Research Division Publication No. 15, University of Michigan.

BEHNKE, J. J. 1969. Clogging in surface spreading operations for artificial ground-water recharge. *Water Resources Research* 5:870–76.

BENTLEY, H. W., & S. N. DAVIS. 1980. Feasibility of ^{36}Cl dating of very old ground water, EOS. *American Geophysical Union Transactions* 61:230.

BERES, MILAN, JR., & F. P. HAENI. 1991. Applications of ground-penetrating-radar methods in hydrogeologic studies. *Ground Water* 29, no. 3:375–86.

BERMEJO, J. L., W. A. SAUCK, & E. A. ATEKWAWA. 1997. Geophysical discovery of a new LNAPL plume at the former Wurtsmith AFB, Oscoda, Michigan. *Ground Water Monitoring and Remediation* 17, no. 4:131–37.

BERNER, R. A. 1971. *Principles of chemical sedimentology.* New York: McGraw-Hill.

BERRY, M. P. 1974. The importance of perceptions in the determination of Indian water rights. *Water Resources Bulletin* 10:137–43.

BERUCH, J. C., & R. A. STREET, 1967. Two-dimensional dispersion. *Journal, Sanitary Engineering Division, American Society of Civil Engineers* 93, SA6:17–39.

BIANCHI, W. C., & HASKELL, E. E., JR. 1968. Field observations compared with Dupuit-Forcheimer theory for mound heights under a recharge basin. *Water Resources Research* 4:1049–57.

BLAIN, L. M., & H. S. EVANS. 1990. In-stream flows for fish protection: Supremacy of federal authority pursuant to the Federal Power Act. *Water Resources Bulletin* 26, no. 6:1023–24.

BOATWRIGHT, B. A., & D. W. AILMAN. 1975. The occurrence and development of Guest sink, Hernando County, Florida. *Ground Water* 13, no. 4:372–75.

BORN, S. M., S. A. SMITH, & D. A. STEPHENSON. 1979. The hydrogeologic regime of glacial-terrain lakes, with management and planning applications. *Journal of Hydrology* 43 no. 1/4:7–44 (special issue: *Contemporary Hydrogeology—The George Maxey Memorial Volume*, ed. William Back & D. A. Stephenson).

BOULTON, N. S. 1954. The drawdown of the water table under non-steady conditions near a pumped well in an unconfined formation. *Proceedings of the Institute of Civil Engineers* (London) 3, no. 3:564–79.

———. 1955. Unsteady radial flow to a pumped well allowing for delayed yield from storage. *International Association of Scientific Hydrology Publication* 37:472–77.

———. 1963. Analysis of data from non-equilibrium pumping test allowing for delayed yield from storage. *Proceedings of the Institute of Civil Engineers* (London) 26:269–82.

———. 1973. The influence of the delayed drainage on data from pumping tests in unconfined aquifers. *Journal of Hydrology* 19:157–69.

BOULTON, N. S., & J. M. A. PONTIN. 1971. An extended theory of delayed yield from storage applied to pumping tests in unconfined anisotropic aquifers. *Journal of Hydrology* 14:53–65.

BOULTON, N. S., & T. D. STRELTSOVA. 1975. New equations for determining the formation constants of an aquifer from pumping test data. *Water Resources Research* 11:148–53.

BOUSSINESQ, J. 1904. Recherches théoriques sur l'écoulement des nappes d'eau infiltrées dan le sol et sur le débit des sources. *Journal de Mathématiques Pures et Appliquées* 10: 5–78.

BOUWER, H. 1977. Land subsidence and cracking due to ground-water depletion. *Ground Water* 15:358–64.

———. 1989. The Bouwer and Rice slug test—an update. *Ground Water* 27, no. 3:304–09.

BOUWER, H., & R. C. RICE. 1976. A slug test for determining hydraulic conductivity of unconfined aquifers with completely or partially penetrating wells. *Water Resources Research* 12:423–28.

BOWMAN, J. A., & G. R. CLARK. 1989. Transitions in midwestern ground water. *Water Resources Bulletin* 25, no. 2:413–20.

BRACE, W. 1980. Permeability of crystalline and argillaceous rocks. *International Journal of Rock Mechanics and Geomechanical Abstracts* 17:241–51.

BRACE, W. F., B. W. PAULDING, JR., & C. SCHOLZ. 1966. Dilatancy in the fracture of crystalline rock. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 71:3939–53.

BRADBURY, K. R., & E. R. ROTHSCHILD. 1985. A computerized technique for estimating hydraulic conductivity of aquifers from specific capacity data. *Ground Water* 23, no. 2:240–45.

BRADBURY, K. R., & R. W. TAYLOR. 1984. Determination of the hydrogeologic properties of lakebeds using offshore geophysical surveys. *Ground Water* 22:690–95.

BRANDON, L. V. 1965. Evidences of ground-water flow in permafrost regions. *Proceedings of the 1963 International Conference on Permafrost* (Lafayette, Indiana): 176–77.

BREDEHOEFT, J. D. 1997. Safe yield and the water budget myth. *Ground Water* 35, no. 6:929.

BREDEHOEFT, J. D., & G. F. PINDER. 1973. Mass transport in flowing groundwater. *Water Resources Research* 9:194–210.

BREDEHOEFT, J. D., & P. HALL. 1995. Ground-water models. *Ground Water* 33, no. 4:530–31.

BREDEHOEFT, J. D., & R. A. YOUNG. 1970. The temporal allocation of ground water—A simulation approach. *Water Resources Research* 6:3–21.

BREDEHOEFT, J. D., C. E. NEUZIL, & P. C. D. MILLY. 1983. *Regional flow in the Dakota aquifer: A study of the role of confining layers.* U.S. Geological Survey Water Supply Paper 2237.

BROOK, G. A. 1977. Surface and groundwater hydrogeology of a highly karsted sub-Arctic carbonate terrain in northern Canada. In *Karst hydrogeology,* ed. J. S. Tolson & F. L. Doyle, 99–108. Huntsville, Ala.: UAH Press.

BROOKSHIRE, D. S., G. L. WATTS, & J. L. MERRILL. 1985. Current issues in the quantification of federal reserved water rights. *Water Resources Research* 21, no. 11:1777–84.

BROWN, J. C. 1979. Definition of the basalt groundwater flow system, Horse Heaven Plateau, Washington. Geological Society of America, *Abstracts with Programs* 11, no. 7:395.

BROWN, R. F. 1966. *Hydrology of the cavernous limestones of the Mammouth Cave area, Kentucky.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1837, 64.

BRUCKER, R. W., J. W. HESS, & W. B. WHITE. 1972. Role of vertical shafts in the movement of ground-water in carbonate aquifers. *Ground Water* 10, no. 6:5–13.

BRUINGTON, A. E. 1972. Saltwater intrusion into aquifers. *Water Resources Bulletin* 8:150–60.

BRUINGTON, A. E., & F. D. SEARES. 1965. Operating a sea water barrier project. *Journal, Irrigation and Drainage Division, American Society of Civil Engineers* 91:117–40.

BRUTSAERT, W. F., & T. G. GEBHARD, JR. 1975. Conjunctive availability of surface and groundwater in the Albuquerque area, New Mexico: A modeling approach. *Ground Water* 13:345–53.

BRUTSAERT, W., G. W. GROSS, & R. M. MCGEHEE. 1975. C. E. Jacob's study on the prospective and hypothetical future of the mining of the ground water deposited under the southern high plains of Texas and New Mexico. *Ground Water* 13:492–505.

BRYAN, K. 1919. Classification of springs. *Journal of Geology* 27:522–61.

BUSH, P. W., & R. H. JOHNSON. 1986. Floridan regional aquifer—study system. In *Regional Aquifer-System Analysis Program of the United States Geological Survey, Summary of Projects, 1978–84,* 17–29. U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1002.

BUSH, P. W., J. A. MILLER, & M. L. MASLIA. 1986. Floridan regional aquifer system, phase II study. In *Regional Aquifer-System Analysis Program of the U.S. Geological Survey, Summary of Projects, 1978–84,* 248–54. U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1002.

BUTLER, J. J., JR. 1990. The role of pumping test in site characterization: some theoretical considerations. *Ground Water* 28 no. 3:394–402.

———. 1997. *The design, performance and analysis of slug tests.* Boca Raton, Flor.: Lewis Publishers, 252 pages.

BUTLER, J. J. JR., & J. M. HEALEY. 1998. Relationship between pumping-test and slug-test parameters: Scale effect or artifact. *Ground Water* 36, no. 2:305–13.

BUTLER, J. J. JR., C. D. MCELWSEE, & W. LIU. 1996. Improving the quality of parameter estimates obtained from slug tests. *Ground Water* 34, no. 3:480–90.

CALIFORNIA V. FEDERAL ENERGY REGULATORY COMMISSION. 1990. 110 S.Ct. 2024.

CALIFORNIA WATER RESOURCES CONTROL BOARD. 1984. Alleged Waste and Unreasonable Use of Water by Imperial Irrigation District, Decision 1600.

CALVACHE, M. L., & A. PULIDO-BOSCH. 1994. Modeling the effects of salt-water intrusion dynamics for a coastal karstified block connected to a detrital aquifer. *Ground Water* 32, no. 5:767–77.

CAPPAERT V. UNITED STATES. 1976. 426 US 128.

CARNEY, MICHAEL. 1991. European drinking water standards. *Journal, American Water Works Association* 83, no. 6:48–55.

CARPENTER, P. J., R. S. KAUFMANN, & BETH PRICE. 1990. Use of resistivity soundings to determine landfill structure. *Ground Water* 28, no. 4:569–575.

CARR, J. R. 1976. Tacoma's well field might be world's most productive. *Johnson Drillers Journal* (September and October): 1–4.

CASAGRANDE, A. 1940. Seepage through dams. *Journal of Boston Society of Civil Engineers,* 295–337.

CASE, H. L. III. 1984. Hydrogeology of Inyan Kara and Dakota-Newcastle aquifer system, South Dakota. In *Proceedings of the Geohydrology Dakota Aquifer Symposium.* Ground Water Publishing Company, 24–42.

CEDERGREN, H. R. 1989. *Seepage, drainage and flow nets.* New York: Wiley-Interscience.

CEDERSTROM, D. J. 1963. *Ground-water resources of the Fairbanks area, Alaska.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1590.

———. 1971. Ground water in the Aden sector of Southern Arabia. *Ground Water* 9, no. 2:29–34.

CEDERSTROM, D. J., P. M. JOHNSON, & S. SUBITZKY. 1953. *Occurrence and development of ground water in permafrost regions.* U.S. Geological Survey Circular 275.

CH2M-HILL, INC. 1985. *Remedial investigation, Seymour Recycling Corporation.* Report to U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

———. 1986. *Feasibility study report, Seymour Recycling Corporation hazardous waste site.* Report to U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

CHANGNON, D., T. B. MCKEE, & N. J. DOESKEN. 1991. Hydroclimate variability in the Rocky Mountains. *Water Resources Bulletin* 27:733–43.

CHAPPELLE, F. H. 1997. Identifying redox conditions that favor the natural attenuation of chlorinated ethenes in contaminated ground water systems. In *Proceedings of the Symposium on Natural Attenuation of Chlorinated Organics in Ground Water,* USEPA, EPA/540/R-97/50: 19–22.

CHAPPELLE, F. H., P. M. BRADLEY, D. R. LOVLEY, & D. A. VROBLESKY. 1996. Measuring rates of biodegradation in a contaminated aquifer using field and laboratory methods. *Ground Water* 34, no. 4:691–98.

CHERRY, J. A., R. W. GILLHAM, & J. F. BARKER. 1984. Contaminants in groundwater: Chemical processes. In *Groundwater contamination,* 46–63. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.

CHERRY, J. A., & P. E. JOHNSON. 1982. A multilevel device for monitoring in fractured rock. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 2, no. 3:41–44.

CHILDS, E. C. 1967. Soil moisture theory. In *Advances in hydroscience,* vol. 4, ed. V. T. Chow, 73–117. New York: Academic Press.

CHORLEY, R. J. 1978. The hillslope hydrologic cycle. In *Hillslope hydrology,* ed. M. J. Kirkby, 1–42. Chichester, Sussex, England: John Wiley.

CITY OF LOS ANGELES V. CITY OF SAN FERNANDO. 1975. 14 Calif. 3d 199.

CITY OF LOS ANGELES V. GLENDALE. 1943. 23 C2d 68.

CLINE V. AMERICAN AGGREGATES. 1984. 15 Ohio St. 3rd, 474, N.E.2d.

CLINE, P. V., & D. R. VISTE. 1984. Migration and degradation patterns of volatile organic compounds. *Proceedings, Seventh Annual Madison Waste Conference,* University of Wisconsin, Madison, 14–29.

———. 1985. Migration and degradation patterns of volatile organic compounds. *Waste Management & Research* 3:351–60.

COATES, M. S., C. B. HAIMSON, W. J. HINZE, & W. R. VAN SCHMUSS. 1983. Introduction to the Illinois deep hole project. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 88, B9.

COHEN, P. 1965. *Water resources of the Humboldt River Valley near Winnemucca, Nevada.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1975.

COLLINS, M. A. 1972. Ground-surface water interactions in the Long Island aquifer system. *Water Resources Bulletin* 6:1253–58.

———. 1978. Discussion. *Water Resources Bulletin* 14:484–85.

COLLINS, M. A., & L. W. GELHAR. 1971. Seawater intrusion in layered aquifers. *Water Resources Research* 7:971–79.

COLLINS, R. B. 1986. Indian reservation water rights. *Journal, American Water Works Association* 78, no. 10:48–54.

CONKLING, H. 1946. Utilization of ground-water storage in stream system development. *Transactions, American Society of Civil Engineers* 3:275–305.

CONRAD, S. H., J. L. WILSON, W. R. MASON,. & W. J. PEPLINSKI. 1992. Visualization of residual organic liquid trapped in aquifers. *Water Resources Research* 28, no. 2:467–78.

COOPER, H. H., JR. 1959. A hypothesis concerning the dynamic balance of fresh water and salt water in a coastal aquifer. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 64:461–67.

———. 1966. The equation of groundwater flow in fixed and deforming coordinates. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 71:4785–90.

COOPER, H. H., JR., J. D. BREDEHOEFT, & I. S. PAPADOPULOS. 1967. Response to a finite diameter well to an instantaneous charge of water. *Water Resources Research* 3:263–69.

COOPER, H. H., JR., & C. E. JACOB. 1946. A generalized graphical method for evaluating formation constants and summarizing well-field history. *Transactions, American Geophysical Union* 27:526–34.

COUNTS, H. B., & E. DONSKY. 1963. *Salt-water encroachment, geology and ground water resources of the Savannah area, Georgia and South Carolina.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1611.

COURT, A. 1960. Reliability of hourly precipitation data. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 65:4017–24.

COUTRE, R. A., M. G. STEITZ, & M. J. STEINDLER. 1983. Sampling of brine in cores of Precambrian granite from northern Illinois. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 88, B9:7331–34.

COX, D. C. 1954. Water development for Hawaiian sugar cane irrigation. *Hawaiian Planters Record* 54:175–97.

CRAIG, H. 1961. Isotopic variations in meteoric water. *Science* 133:1702–03.

CRAUN, G. F. 1979. Waterborne-disease status report emphasizing outbreaks in ground-water systems. *Ground Water* 17:183–91.

———. 1981. Outbreaks of waterborne disease in the United States: 1971–78. *Journal, American Water Works Association* 73:360–69.

———. 1984. Health aspects of ground water pollution. In *Groundwater Pollution Microbiology,* ed. G. Britton and C. P. Gerba. New York: John Wiley.

CSALLANY, S., & W. C. WALTON. 1963. *Yields of shallow dolomite wells in northern Illinois.* Illinois State Water Survey Report of Investigation 46.

CUSHMAN, R. V. 1967. *Recent developments in hydrogeologic investigation in the karst area of central Kentucky.* International Association of Hydrogeologists Memoirs, Congress of Istanbul, 236–48.

DAGAN, G. 1967. A method of determining the permeability and effective porosity of unconfined anisotropic aquifers. *Water Resources Research* 3:1059–71.

———. 1986. Statistical theory of groundwater flow and transport: Pore to laboratory, laboratory to formation and formation to regional scale. *Water Resources Research* 22, no. 9 (Supplement):120S–34S.

DAGAN, G., V. CVETKOVIC, & A. M. SHAPIRO. 1992. A solute flux approach to transport in heterogeneous formations, 1, the general framework. *Water Resources Research* 28, no. 5:1369–76.

DANIELS, J. J., G. R. OLHOEFT, & J. H. SCOTT. 1983. Interpretation of core and well log physical property data from drill hole UPH-3, Stephenson County, Illinois. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 88, B9:7346–54.

DANIELSON, J. A., & A. R. QAZI. 1972. Stream depletion by wells in the South Platte Basin—Colorado. *Water Resources Bulletin* 8:359–66.

DARCY, H. 1856. *Les fontaines publiques de la ville de Dijon.* Paris: Victor Dalmont.

DARTON, H. H. 1896. *Preliminary report on artesian waters of a portion of the Dakotas.* U.S. Geological Survey, 17th Annual Report.

———. 1905. *Preliminary report on artesian waters of a portion of the Dakotas.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 32, 432 pages.

———. 1909. *Geology and underground waters of South Dakota.* U.S. Geological Survey Water Supply Paper 227, 156 pages.

DAVIS, S. N. 1969. Porosity and permeability in natural materials. In *Flow through Porous Media,* ed. R. J. M. DeWiest, 53–89. New York: Academic Press.

DAVIS, S. N., & H. W. BENTLEY. 1982. Dating groundwater, a short review. In *Nuclear and Chemical Dating Techniques: Interpreting the Environmental Record,* ed. Lloyd A. Curie, 187–222. American Chemical Society Symposium Series No. 176.

DAVIS, S. N., & L. J. TURK. 1964. Optimum depth of wells in crystalline rocks. *Ground Water* 2, no. 2:6–11.

DAVIS, S. N., G. M. THOMPSON, H. W. BENTLEY, & G. STILES. 1980. Ground-water tracers—A short review. *Ground Water* 18:14–23.

DAWSON, K. J., & J. D. ISTOK. 1991. *Aquifer testing—Design and Analysis of pumping and slug tests.* Chelsea, Mich.: Lewis Publishers.

DELORIA, SAM. 1985. A Native American view of Western water development. *Water Resources Research* 21, no. 11:1785–86.

DENNE, J. E., H. L. YARGER, P. A. MACFARLANE, P. W. KNAPP, M. A. SOPHOCLEOUS, J. R. LUCAS, & D. W. STEEPLES. 1984. Remote sensing and geophysical investigations of glacial buried valleys in northeastern Kansas. *Ground Water* 22:56–65.

DEVRIES, H. 1959. Measurement and use of natural radiocarbon. In *Researches in Geochemistry,* vol. 1, ed. P. H. Abelson, 169–89. New York: John Wiley.

DOBRIN, M. B. 1976. *Introduction to geophysical prospecting,* 3d ed. New York: McGraw-Hill.

DOMENICO, P. A. 1972. *Concepts and models in groundwater hydrology.* New York: McGraw-Hill.

DOONAN, C. J., G. E. HENDRICKSON, & J. R. BYERLAY. 1970. *Ground water and geology of Keweenaw Peninsula, Michigan.* Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Geological Survey Division, Water Investigation 10.

DOTY, C. B., & C. C. DAVIS. 1991. *The effectiveness of groundwater pumping as a restoration technology.* Oak Ridge National Laboratory Report ORNL/TM-11866.

REVER, J. I. 1997. *The geochemistry of natural waters.* 3d ed. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice Hall.

JCOMMUN, J. 1828. On the cause of fresh water springs, fountains, and c. *American Journal of Science,* 1st ser., vol. 14:174–76. As cited in S. N. Davis, Flotation of fresh water on sea water, a historical note. *Ground Water* 16, no. 6 (1978):444–45.

JDLEY, J. G., & D. A. STEPHENSON. 1973. *Nutrient enrichment of ground-water from septic tank disposal systems.* Inland Lake Renewal and Shoreland Management Demonstration Project Report, University of Wisconsin—Madison.

JNLAP, W. J., ET AL. 1977. *Sampling of organic chemicals and microorganisms in the subsurface.* U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, SW-611.

JNNE, T. 1978. Field studies of hillslope flow processes. In *Hillslope hydrology,* ed. M. J. Kirkby, 227–94. Chichester, Sussex, England: John Wiley.

JNNE, T., & L. B. LEOPOLD. 1978. *Water in environmental planning.* San Francisco: W. H. Freeman, 88.

JNNE, T., & R. D. BLACK. 1970. An experimental investigation of runoff production in permeable soils. *Water Resources Research* 6:478–90.

JPUIT, J. 1863. *Études théoriques et pratiques sur le mouvement des eaux dans les canaux découverts et à travers les terrains perméables,* 2d ed. Paris: Dunod.

JTCHER, L. C., & A. A. GARRETT. 1963. *Geological and hydrologic features of the San Bernardino area, California.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1419.

KIN, T. E. 1966. A regional interbasin groundwater system in the White River area, southeastern Nevada. *Water Resources Research* 2, no. 2:251–71.

KIN, T. E., & D. O. MOORE. 1964. *Uniformity of discharge of muddy river springs.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 501-D, 171–76.

KIN, T. E., D. PRICE, & J. R. HARRILL. 1976. *Summary appraisals of the nation's ground water resources—Great Basin region.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 813-G.

)Y-DIEK, C. A., B. B. LOONEY, P. HOEKSTRA, N. HARTHILL, M. BLOHM, & D. R. PHILLIPS. 1997. Definition of a critical confining zone using surface geophysical methods. *Ground Water* 35, no. 3:451–62.

4SO *V. REYNOLDS.* 1983. Civ. No. 80-730 HB.

CINE, A. D. 1991. The effect of tidal fluctuation on a coastal aquifer in the UK. *Ground Water* 29, no. 4:556–62.

RETT, L. G. 1981. Monitoring in the vadose zone. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 1, no. 2:44–51.

RETT, L. G., E. W. HOYLMAN, GRAHAM WILSON, & .. G. MCMILLION. 1984. Constraints and categories of vadose zone monitoring devices. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 4, no. 1:26–32.

RS, R. O., ET AL. 1978. The origin of distributary and ributary flow within karst aquifers. Geological Society of merica, *Abstracts with Programs* 10, no. 7:398–99.

FEDERAL COUNCIL FOR SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY. 1962. *Scientific hydrology.* Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.

FENN, D., ET AL. 1977. *Procedures manual for ground water monitoring at solid waste disposal facilities.* U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, SW-611.

FERGUSON, B. K., & P. W. SUCKLING. 1990. Changing rainfall-runoff relationships in the urbanizing Peachtree Creek watershed, Atlanta, Georgia. *Water Resources Bulletin* 26:313–22.

FERRIS, J. G., ET AL. 1962. *Theory of aquifer tests.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1536-E.

FERRIS, K. 1980. Arizona's groundwater code: Strength in compromise. *Journal, American Water Works Association* 78, no. 10:79–84.

FETH, J. F. 1973. *Water facts and figures for planners and managers.* U.S. Geological Survey Circular 601-1.

FETTER, C. W., JR. 1972a. The concept of safe groundwater yield in coastal aquifers. *Water Resources Bulletin* 8:1173–76.

———. 1972b. Position of the saline water interface beneath oceanic islands. *Water Resources Research* 8:1307–14.

———. 1973. Water resources management in coastal plain aquifers. *Proceedings of the International Water Resources Association, First World Congress on Water Resources,* 322–31.

———. 1975. Use of test wells as water-quality predictors. *Journal, American Water Works Association* 67:516–18.

———. 1976. Hydrogeology of the South Fork of Long Island, New York. *Bulletin, Geological Society of America* 87:401–06.

———. 1977a. Attenuation of wastewater elutriated through glacial outwash. *Ground Water* 15:365–71.

———. 1977b. Hydrogeology of the South Fork of Long Island, New York: Reply. *Bulletin, Geological Society of America* 88:896.

———. 1981a. Interstate conflict over ground water: Wisconsin-Illinois. *Ground Water* 19:201–13.

———. 1981b. Determination of the direction of ground water flow. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 1, 3:28–31.

———. 1983. Potential sources of contamination in ground water monitoring. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 2:60–64.

———. 1985. Final hydrogeologic report, Seymour Recycling Corporation hazardous waste site, Seymour, Indiana. Report to United States Environmental Protection Agency.

———. 1989. Transport and fate of organic compounds in ground water. In *Recent advances in ground-water hydrology,* eds. J. E. Moore, A. A. Zaporozec, & S. C. Csallany, 174–84. Minneapolis, Minn.: American Institute of Hydrology.

———. 1992. Remedial investigation for ground water contamination at the Seymour superfund site. *Hazardous Materials Control* 5, no. 1:51–55.

———. 1999. *Contaminant hydrogeology.* 2d ed. Upper Saddle River, N.J.: Prentice-Hall.

FETTER, C. W., JR., & H. YOUNG. 1978. Unpublished results of a computer model study of the Deep Sandstone Regional Aquifer.

FETTER, C. W., JR., & R. G. HOLZMACHER. 1974. Ground water recharge with treated waste water. *Journal of Water Pollution Control Federation* 46:260–70.

FITTER, A. H., & C. D. SUTTON. 1975. The use of the Freudlich isotherm for soil phosphate sorption data. *Journal of Soil Science* 26:241–46.

FLIPSE, W. J., JR., ET AL. 1984. Sources of nitrate in ground water in a sewered housing development, central Long Island, New York. *Ground Water* 22:418–26.

FOGG, G. E., D. E. ROLSTON, D. L. DECKER, D. T. LOUIE, & M. E. GRISMER. 1998. Spatial variation in nitrogen isotope values beneath nitrate contamination sources. *Ground Water* 36, no. 3:418–26.

FONTES, J. CH. 1980. Environmental isotopes in groundwater hydrology. In *Handbook of environmental isotope hydrology,* vol. 1, *The terrestrial environment,* ed. P. Fritz & J. Ch. Fontes, 25–140. Amsterdam: Elsevier Scientific Publishers.

FORCHHEIMER, P. 1914. *Hydraulik.* Leipzig: B. G. Teubner.

FORD, D. C., & R. O. EWERS. 1978. The development of limestone cave systems in the dimensions of length and depth. *Canadian Journal of Earth Science* 15:1783–98.

FORD, P. A., P. J. TURINA, & D. E. SEELY. 1983. Lessons learned in a hydrogeological case at Sheffield, Illinois. *Proceedings, Symposium on Low-Level Waste Disposal, Site Characterization and Monitoring.* Oak Ridge National Laboratory, NUREG/CP-0028, CONF-820674, vol. 2:237–44.

FOSTER, K. E. 1978. The Winters doctrine: Historical perspective and future applications of reserved water rights in Arizona. *Ground Water* 16:186–91.

FOX, I. A., & K. R. RUSHTON. 1976. Rapid recharge in a limestone aquifer. *Ground Water* 14, no. 1:21–27.

FOXWORTHY, B. L. 1983. Pacific Northwest region. In *Ground water resources of the United States,* ed. David K. Todd, 590–629. Berkeley, Calif.: Premier Press.

FRAZIER V. BROWN. 1861. 12 Ohio St. 294.

FREEZE, R. A. 1971. Three-dimensional, transient, saturated-unsaturated flow in a groundwater basin. *Water Resources Research* 7:347–66.

FREEZE, R. A., & J. A. CHERRY. 1979. *Groundwater.* Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall.

———. 1989. What has gone wrong. *Ground Water* 27, no. 4:458–64.

FREEZE, R. A., & P. A. WITHERSPOON. 1966. Theoretical analysis of regional groundwater flow: 1. Analytical and numerical solutions to the mathematical model. *Water Resources Research* 2, no. 4:641–56.

———. 1967. Theoretical analysis of regional groundwater flow: 2. Effect on water-table configuration and subsurface permeability variation. *Water Resources Research* 3, no. 2:623–34.

FRETWELL, J. D., & M. T. STEWART. 1981. Resistivity study of a coastal karst terrain, Florida. *Ground Water* 19:156–62.

FRITZ, S. J. 1994. A survey of charge-balance errors on published analyses of potable ground and surface waters. *Ground Water* 32, no. 4:539–46.

FUSILLO, T. V., J. J. HOCHREITER, JR., & D. G. LORD. 1985. Distribution of volatile organic compounds in a New Jersey coastal plain aquifer system. *Ground Water* 23:354–60.

GAMBOLATI, G. 1976. Transient-free surface flow to a well: An analysis of theoretical solutions. *Water Resources Research* 12:27–39.

———. 1977. Deviations from the Theis solution in aquifers undergoing three-dimensional consolidation. *Water Resources Research* 13:62–68.

GARRELS, R. M., & C. L. CHRIST. 1965. *Solutions, minerals and equilibria.* New York: Harper & Row.

GASS, T. E., & J. LEHR. 1977. Ground-water energy and the ground-water heat pump. *Water Well Journal* 31: no. 4:42–47.

GELHAR, L. W. 1986. Stochastic subsurface hydrology from theory to applications. *Water Resources Research* 22, no. 9 (Supplement): 135S.

GIBB, J. P., R. M. SCHULLER, & R. A. GRIFFIN. 1981. *Procedures for the collection of representative water quality data from monitoring wells.* Illinois State Geological Survey and Illinois State Water Survey Cooperative Ground Water Report 7.

GILKESON, R. H., & K. CARTWRIGHT. 1983. The application of surface electrical and shallow geothermic methods in monitoring network design. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 3, no. 3:30–42.

GLEASON, V. E. 1978. The legalization of ground water storage. *Water Resources Bulletin* 14:532–41.

GLOVER, R. E. 1964. The pattern of fresh-water flow in a coastal aquifer. In *Sea water in coastal aquifers.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1613, 32–35.

GOLDFARB, WILLIAM. 1984. Mono Lake and the public trust doctrine. *Bulletin, American Water Resources Association* 20:292–93.

———. 1988. *Water law,* 2d ed. Chelsea, Mich.: Lewis Publishers.

GORDON, M. E., & P. M. HUEBNER. 1983. An evaluation of the performance of zone of saturation landfills in Wisconsin. In *Proceedings, Sixth Annual Madison Waste Conference—Municipal and Industrial Waste.* University of Wisconsin, 23–53.

GOYAL, V. C., SRI NIWAS, & P. K. GUPTA. 1991. Theoretical evaluation of modified Wenner array for shallow resistivity exploration. *Ground Water* 29, no. 4:582–86.

GREEN, E. A. 1997. Tracing recharge from sinking streams over spatial dimensions of kilometers in karst aquifer. *Ground Water* 35, no. 5:898–904.

GREENHOUSE, J. P., & D. J. SLAINE. 1983. The use of reconnaissance electromagnetic methods to map contaminant migration. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 3, no. 2:47–59.

GREGORY, H. E. 1916. *The Navajo country.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 380.

GREYDANUS, H. W. 1978. Management aspects of cyclic storage of water in aquifer systems. *Water Resources Bulletin* 14:477–83.

GRIFFIN, R. A. 1985. Illinois State Geological Survey, personal communication.

GRUBB, H. F. 1986. Gulf coastal plain regional aquifer-system study. In *Regional aquifer-system analysis program of the United States Geological Survey.* U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1002, 152–61.

GRUBB, STUART. 1993. Analytical model for estimation of steady-state capture zones of pumping wells in confined and unconfined aquifers. *Ground Water* 31, no. 1:27–32.

GUNDERSON, L. H. 1989. Accounting for discrepancies in pan evaporation calculations. *Water Resources Bulletin* 25:573–79.

GUTENTAG, E. D., F. J. HEIMES, N. C. KROTHE, R. R. LUCKEY, & J. B. WEEKS. 1984. *Geohydrology of the high plains aquifer in parts of Colorado, Kansas, Nebraska, New Mexico, Oklahoma, South Dakota, Texas, and Wyoming.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1400-B.

HACKETT, GLEN. 1987. Drilling and constructing monitoring wells with hollow stem augers—Part I: Drilling considerations. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 7, no. 4:51–62.

———. 1988. Drilling and constructing monitoring wells with hollow stem augers—Part II: Monitoring well installation. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 8, no. 1:60–68.

HAIMSON, B. C., & T. W. DOE. 1983. State of stress, permeability, and fractures in the Precambrian granite of Northern Illinois. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 88, B9:7355–71.

HANTUSH, M. S. 1956. Analysis of data from pumping tests in leaky aquifers. *Transactions, American Geophysical Union* 37:702–14.

———. 1960a. Analysis of data from pumping tests in anisotropic aquifers. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 71:421–26.

———. 1960b. Modification of the theory of leaky aquifers. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 65:3713–25.

———. 1961. Aquifer test on partially penetrating wells. *Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers* 87:171–95.

———. 1964. Hydraulics of wells. In *Advances in hydroscience,* vol. 1, ed. V. T. Chow, 281–432. New York: Academic Press.

———. 1966. Wells in homogeneous anisotropic aquifers. *Water Resources Research* 2:273–79.

———. 1967. Growth and decay of ground-water mounds in response to uniform percolation. *Water Resources Research* 3:227–34.

HANTUSH, M. S., & C. E. JACOB. 1954. Plane potential flow of ground-water with linear leakage. *Transactions, American Geophysical Union* 35:917–36.

HARBECK, G. E., & F. W. KENNON. 1954. The water budget control. In *Water-loss investigations: Lake Hefner studies technical report.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 269.

HARDT, W. F., & C. B. HUTCHINSON. 1978. Model aids planners in predicting rising ground-water levels in San Bernardino, California. *Ground Water* 16:424–31.

HARMESON, R. H., R. L. THOMAS, & R. L. EVANS. 1968. Coarse media filtration for artificial recharge. *Journal, American Water Works Association* 60:1396–1403.

HARR, M. E. 1962. *Groundwater and seepage.* New York: McGraw-Hill.

HARSHBARGER, J. W. 1968. Ground-water development in desert areas. *Ground Water* 6, no. 5:2–4.

HAUPTMAN, M. G., J. RUMBAUGH, & N. VALENBURGH. 1990. Use of groundwater modeling during Superfund cleanup. *Proceedings, 11th National Superfund Conference.* Hazardous Materials Control Research Institute, Silver Spring, MD, 110–16.

HAZEN, A. 1911. Discussion: Dams on sand foundations. *Transactions, American Society of Civil Engineers* 73:199.

HEATH, R. C. 1983. *Basic ground-water hydrology.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2220.

———. 1984. *Ground water regions of the United States.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2242.

———. 1988. Hydrogeologic setting of regions. In *Hydrogeology,* ed. W. Back, J. S. Rosenshein, & P. R. Seber, *The geology of North America* O-2:15–23. Boulder, Colo.: Geological Society of America.

HEIGOLD, P. C., ET AL. 1979. Aquifer transmissivity from surficial electrical methods. *Ground Water* 17, no. 4:338–45.

HELGESEN, J. O., D. G. JORGESEN, R. B. LEONARD, & D. C. SIGNOR. 1982. Regional study of the Dakota aquifer (Darton's Dakota Revisited). *Ground Water* 20, no. 4:410–14.

HELWEG, O. J. 1978. Regional ground-water management. *Ground Water* 16:318–21.

HEM, J. D. 1960. *Restraints in dissolved ferrous iron imposed by bicarbonate redox potentials, and pH.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1459-B.

———. 1985. *Study and interpretation of the chemical characteristics of natural water,* 3d ed. U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2254.

HEM, J. D., & W. H. CROPPER. 1959. *Survey of the ferrous-ferric chemical equilibria and redox potential.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1459-A.

HENDRY, M. J. 1982. Hydraulic conductivity of a glacial till in Alberta. *Ground Water* 20:162–69.

HERWALDT, B. L., ET AL. 1992. Outbreaks of waterborne disease in the United States: 1989–90. *Journal, American Water Works Association* 84, no. 4:129–35.

HERZBERG, A. 1901. Die Wasserversorgung einiger Nordseebader. *Journal Gasbeleuchtung und Wasserversorgung* (Munich) 44:815–19, 842–44.

HERZOG, B. L., ET AL. 1982. *A study of trench covers to minimize infiltration at waste disposal sites.* Illinois State Geological Survey Contract Report No. 1981-5, Nuclear Regulatory Commission, NUREG/CR-2478.

HIBBERT, A. R. 1967. Forest treatment effects on water yield. In *Forest hydrology,* ed. W. E. Sopper & H. W. Lull, 527–43. Oxford, England: Pergamon Press.

———. 1971. Increases in streamflow after converting chaparral to grass. *Water Resources Research* 7:71–80.

HICKEY, J. J. 1989. An approach to the field study of hydraulic gradients in variable-salinity ground water. *Ground Water* 27, 4:531–39.

HILLEL, D. 1971. *Soil and water.* New York: Academic Press.

HIRSHLEIFER, J., J. C. DEHAVEN, & J. W. MILLIMAN. 1960. *Water supply.* Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

HIX, GARY. 1992. Squeaky clean drill rigs. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 13, no. 3:94–96.

HOEKSTRA, P. R. LAHTI, J. HILD, C. R. BATES, & D. PHILLIPS. 1992. Case histories of shallow time domain electromagnetics in environmental site assessment. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 12, no. 4:110–17.

HOFFMAN, J. 1983. Flooded San Bernardino fears even a minor quake. *Los Angeles* (California) *Herald Examiner,* April 17.

HOLLARD, R. E., & A. M. BEETON. 1972. Significance to eutrophication of spatial differences on nutrients and diatoms in Lake Michigan. *Limnology and Oceanography* 17:88–96.

HOLZSCHUH, J. C., III. 1976. A simple computer program for the determination of aquifer characteristics from pump test data. *Ground Water* 14:283–85.

HOOPES, J. A., & D. R. F. HARLEMAN. 1967. Wastewater recharge and dispersion in porous media. *Journal, Hydraulics Division, American Society of Civil Engineers* 93, HY5:51–71.

HORDON, R. M. 1977. Water supply as a limiting factor in developing communities; Endogenous vs. exogenous sources. *Water Resources Bulletin* 13:933–39.

HORNBERGER, G. M., J. P. RAFFENSPERGER, P. L. WIBERG, & K. N. ESHLEMAN. 1998. *Elements of physical hydrology.* Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 302 pages.

HORTON, K. A., ET AL. 1981. The complementary nature of geophysical techniques for mapping chemical waste disposal sites: Impulse radar and resistivity. *National Conference on Management of Uncontrolled Hazardous Waste Sites.* Silver Spring, Md.: Hazardous Materials Control Research Institute, 158–64.

HORTON, R. E. 1933. The role of infiltration in the hydrologic cycle. *Transactions, American Geophysical Union* 14:446–60.

———. 1940. An approach toward a physical interpretation of infiltration capacity. *Soil Science Society of America, Proceedings* 4:399–417.

HUBBERT, M. K. 1940. The theory of ground-water motion. *Journal of Geology* 48, no. 8:785–944.

HUBBERT, M. K. 1956. Darcy's law and the field equations of flow of underground fluids. *Transactions, American Institute of Mining and Metallurgical Engineers* 207:222–39.

HUBER V. MERKEL. 1903. 117 Wis. 355, 94 N.W. 354.

HUFF, F. A. 1955. Comparison between standard and small orifice rain gauges. *Transactions, American Geophysical Union* 30:689–94.

HUNT, B. W. 1971. Vertical recharge of unconfined aquifer. *Journal of Hydraulics Division, American Society of Civil Engineers* 97:1017–30.

HUNTOON, P. W. 1977. Cambrian stratigraphic nomenclature and ground-water prospecting failures in the Hualapai Plateau, Arizona. *Ground Water* 15:426–33.

———. 1981. Fault controlled ground-water circulation under the Colorado River, Marble Canyon, Arizona. *Ground Water* 19:20–27.

———. 1985. Fault severed aquifers along the perimeters of Wyoming artesian basin. *Ground Water* 23:176–81.

———. 1986. Incredible tale of Texasgulf Well 7 and fracture permeability, Paradox Basin, Utah. *Ground Water* 24:643–53.

HVORSLEV, M. J. 1951. *Time lag and soil permeability in ground water observations.* U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Waterway Experimentation Station, Bulletin 36.

INTERNATIONAL GREAT LAKES LEVELS BOARD. 1973. Regulation of Great Lakes water levels. Appendix A: *Hydrology and hydraulics.* Report to the International Joint Commission, December 7.

IRWIN V. PHILLIPS. 1855. 5 Cal. 140.

JACOB, C. E. 1940. On the flow of water in an elastic artesian aquifer. *Transactions, American Geophysical Union* 21:574–86.

———. 1950. Flow of ground water. In *Engineering hydraulics,* ed. H. Rouse, 321–86. New York: John Wiley.

JACOBY, G. C., JR., G. D. WEATHERFORD, & J. W. WEGNER. 1976. Law, hydrology and surface water supply in the upper Colorado River basin. *Water Resources Bulletin* 12:973–84.

JAVANDEL, I., C. DOUGHTY, & C.-F. TSANG. 1984. *Ground water transport: Handbook of mathematical models.* American Geophysical Union, Water Resources Monograph 10.

JOHANNESSON, K. H., K. J. STETZENBACK, V. F. HODGE, D. K. KREAMER, & XIAOPING ZHOU. 1997. Delin-

eation of ground-water flow systems in the southern Great Basin using aqueous rare earth element distributions. *Ground Water* 35, no. 5:807–19.

JOHNSON, A. I. 1967. *Specific yield—Compilation of specific yields for various materials.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1662-D.

JOHNSON, A. I., R. C. PRILL, & D. A. MORRIS. 1963. *Specific yield—Column drainage and centrifuge moisture content.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1662-A.

JOHNSON, T. J., ET AL. 1983. Hydrologic investigations of failure mechanisms and migration of organic chemicals at Wilsonville, Illinois. *Proceedings, Third National Symposium on Aquifer Restoration and Ground Water Monitoring.* National Water Well Association, 413–20.

JOHNSON, T. M., K. CARTWRIGHT, & R. M. SCHULLER. 1981. Monitoring of leachate migration in the unsaturated zone in the vicinity of sanitary landfills. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 1, no. 3:55–63.

JONES, L., T. LEMAR, & CHIN-TA TSAI. 1992. Results of two pumping tests in Wisconsin-age weathered till in Iowa. *Ground Water* 30, no. 4:529–538.

JURY, W. A., W. R. GARDNER, & W. H. GARDNER. 1991. *Soil physics.* New York: John Wiley.

KARDOS, L. T. 1967. Waste-water renovation by the land—A living filter. In *Agriculture and the quality of our environment,* ed. N. C. Brady, 241–50. American Association for the Advancement of Science Publication 85.

KAUFMAN, R. F., G. G. EADIE, & C. R. RUSSELL. 1976. Effects of uranium mining and milling on ground water in the Grants uranium belt, New Mexico. *Ground Water* 14:296–308.

KAZMANN, R. G. 1956. Safe Yield in ground-water development, reality or illusion? *Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers* 82, IR3:1103:1-1103–12.

———. 1970. *The present and future ground water supply of the Baton Rouge area.* Louisiana Water Resources Research Institute Bulletin 5.

KEEFER, W. R., & R. F. HADLEY. 1976. *Land and natural resource information and some potential environmental effects of surface mining of coal in the Gillette Area, Wyoming.* U.S. Geological Survey Circular 743.

KEELY, J. F., & KWASI BOATENG. 1987. Monitoring well installation, purging, and sampling techniques—Part I: Conceptualizations. *Ground Water* 5, no. 3:300–13.

KEITH, L. H., ET AL. 1983a. Principles of environmental analysis. *Analytical Chemistry* 55:2210–18.

———. 1983b. Dealing with the problem of obtaining accurate ground-water quality analytical results. In *Proceedings of the Third National Symposium on Aquifer Restoration and Ground-Water Monitoring.* Worthington, Ohio: National Water Well Association, 272–82.

KELLER, G. V. 1960. *Physical properties of tuffs in the Oak Spring formation, Nevada.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 400-B.

KENNEDY, V. C. 1965. *Mineralogy and cation exchange capacity of sediments from selected streams.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 433-D.

KEYS, W. S., & R. F. BROWN. 1978. The use of temperature logs to trace the movement of injected water. *Ground Water* 16:32–48.

KEYS, W. S., & L. M. MACCARY. 1971. Application of borehole geophysics to water-resources investigations. In *Techniques of water-resources investigations.* U.S. Geological Survey, Book 2, Chap. E1.

KIPP, K. L., JR. 1985. Type curve analysis of inertial effects in the response of a well to a slug test. *Water Resources Research* 21, no. 9:1379–1408.

KIRCHMER, C. J. 1983. Quality control in water analyses. *Environmental Science and Technology* 17, no. 4:178A–181A.

KIRKBY, M. J., & R. J. CHORLEY. 1967. Throughflow, overland flow, and erosion. *Bulletin, International Association Scientific Hydrology,* 12:5–21.

KLUSMAN, R. W., & K. W. EDWARDS. 1977. Toxic metals in ground water of the front range, Colorado. *Ground Water* 15:160–69.

KMET, P., K. J. QUINN, & C. SLAVIK. 1981. Analysis of design parameters affecting the collection efficiency of clay lined landfills. *Proceedings, Fourth Annual Madison Waste Conference.* University of Wisconsin, Madison.

KOHLER, M. A., T. J. NORDENSON, & W. E. FOX. 1955. *Evaporation from ponds and lakes.* U.S. Weather Bureau Research Paper 38.

KOHOUT, F. A., ET AL. 1977. Fresh groundwater stored in aquifers under the continental shelf: Implications from a deep test well, Nantucket Island, Massachusetts. *Water Resources Bulletin* 13:373–86.

KONIKOW, L. F., & J. D. BREDEHOEFT. 1978. *Computer model of two-dimensional solute transport and dispersion in ground water.* U.S. Geological Survey, Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, Book 7, Chap. C2.

KRAMER, V. H., N. VALKENBURG, & M. HAUPTMAN. 1990. Aquifer testing is essential during remedial investigations. *Proceedings, 11th National Superfund Conference.* Hazardous Materials Control Research Institute, Silver Spring, MD, 580–84.

KRAMER, W. H. 1982. Ground water pollution from gasoline. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 2, no. 2:18–22.

KRAUSKOPF, K. B. 1967. *Introduction to geochemistry.* New York: McGraw-Hill.

KREITLER, C. W., & D. C. JONES. 1975. Natural soil nitrate: the cause of the nitrate contamination of ground water in Runnels County, Texas. *Ground Water* 13, no. 1:53–61.

KREITLER, C. W., S. E. RAGONE, & B. G. KATZ. 1978. Nitrogen isotope ratios of groundwater nitrate, Long Island, New York. *Ground Water* 16:404–09.

KRILL, R. M., & W. C. SONZOGNI. 1986. Chemical monitoring of Wisconsin's ground water. *Journal, American Water Works Association* 78, no. 9:70–75.

KRUSEMAN, G. P., & N. A. deRIDDER. 1991. *Analysis and evaluation of pumping test data,* 2d ed. International Association for Land Reclamation and Improvement, Publication 47, Wageningen, The Netherlands.

KRYNINE, D. P., & W. R. JUDD. 1957. *Principles of engineering geology and geotechnics.* New York: McGraw-Hill.

LACHENBRUCH, A. H., M. C. BREWER, G. W. GREENE, & B. V. MARSHALL. 1962. Temperature in permafrost. In *Temperature and its measurement and control in science and industry,* vol. 3. American Institute of Physics. New York: Reinhold Publishing.

LAMOUREAUX, P. E., & W. J. POWELL. 1960. *Stratigraphic and structural guides to the development of water wells and well fields in limestone terrane.* International Association of Scientific Hydrology, Pub. 52:363–75.

LATTMAN, L. H. 1958. Technique of mapping geologic fracture traces and lineaments on aerial photographs. *Photogrammetric Engineering* 24:568–76.

LATTMAN, L. H., & R. H. MATZKE. 1961. Geological significance of fracture traces. *Photogrammetric Engineering* 27:435–38.

LATTMAN, L. H., & R. R. PARIZEK. 1964. Relationship between fracture traces and the occurrence of groundwater in carbonate rocks. *Journal of Hydrology* 2:73–91.

LEE, C. H. 1915. The determination of safe yield of underground reservoirs of the closed basin type. *Transactions, American Society of Civil Engineers* 78:148–51.

LEE, D. R. 1976. A device for measuring seepage flux in lakes and estuaries. *Limnology and Oceanography* 22:140–47.

LEGRAND, H. E. 1954. *Geology and groundwater in the Statesville area, North Carolina.* North Carolina Department of Conservation and Development, Division of Mineral Resources Bulletin 68.

LEGRAND, H. E., & V. T. STRINGFIELD. 1971. Water levels in carbonate rock terranes. *Ground Water* 9, no. 3:4–10.

LEGRAND, H. E., & W. A. PETTYJOHN. 1981. Regional hydrogeological concepts of homoclinal flanks. *Ground Water* 19:303–10.

LEHR, J. H. 1978. Ground water: Nature's investment banking system. *Ground Water* 16:143–53.

LEONARD, R. B., D. C. SIGNOR, D. G. JORGESON, & J. O. HELGESEN. 1984. Geohydrology and hydrochemistry of the Dakota aquifer, central United States. In *Proceedings of the Geohydrology Dakota Aquifer Symposium.* Ground Water Publishing Company, 120–27.

LIAKOPOULOS, A. C. 1965. Variation of the permeability tensor ellipsoid in homogeneous, anisotropic soils. *Water Resources Research* 1, no. 1:135–42.

LINDQUIST, E. 1933. *On the flow of water through porous soil.* Premier Congres des grands barrages (Stockholm), 81–101.

LINSLEY, R. K., JR., M. A. KOHLER, & J. L. H. PAULHUS. 1975. *Hydrology for engineers.* New York: McGraw-Hill.

LIPPY, E. C., & S. C. WALTRIP. 1984. Waterborne disease outbreaks—1946–1980: A thirty-five-year perspective. *Journal, American Water Works Association* 76:60–67.

LLOYD, J. W., & M. H. FARAG. 1978. Fossil ground-water gradients in arid regional sedimentary basins. *Ground Water* 16:388–93.

LOISELLE, M., & D. EVANS. 1995. Fracture density distributions and well yields in coastal Maine. *Ground Water* 33, no. 2:190–96.

LUSCZYNSKI, N. J. 1961. Head and flow in ground water of variable density. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 66, no. 12:4247–56.

LUZIER, J. E., & J. A. SKRVIAN. 1975. *Digital simulation and projection of water level declines in basalt aquifers of the Odessa-Lind area, East Central Washington.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2036.

MABEE, S. B. 1999. Factors influencing well productivity in glaciated metamorphic rocks. *Ground Water* 37, no. 1:88–98.

MABEE, S. B., K. C. HARDCASTLE, & D. U. WISE. 1994. A method of collecting and analyzing lineaments for regional-scale fractured-bedrock aquifer studies. *Ground Water* 32, no. 6:884–94.

MACCARY, L. M., & T. W. LAMBERT. 1962. *Reconnaissance of ground-water resources of the Jackson purchase region, Kentucky.* U.S. Geological Survey Hydrologic Atlas HA-13.

MACE, R. E. 1997. Determination of transmissivity from specific-capacity tests in a karst aquifer. *Ground Water* 35, no. 5:738–42.

MACKAY, D. M., & J. A. CHERRY. 1989. Groundwater contamination: Pump and treat remediation. *Environmental Science and Technology* 23, no. 6:630–36.

MANGER, G. E. 1963. *Porosity and bulk density of sedimentary rocks.* U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1144-E.

MARCHER, M. V., R. H. BINGHAM, & R. E. LOUNSBURY. 1964. *Ground water geology of the Dickson, Lawrenceburg and Waverly areas of the Western Highland Rim, Tennessee.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1764.

MASCH, F. E., & K. J. DENNY. 1966. Grain-size distribution and its effect on the permeability of unconsolidated sands. *Water Resources Research* 2:665–77.

MATTHEWS, C. A. 1991. Using ground water basins as storage facilities in southern California. *Water Resources Bulletin* 27, no. 5:841–47.

MATTINGLY, G. E. G. 1975. Labile phosphate in soils. *Soil Science* 119:369–75.

MAXEY, G. B. 1968. Hydrogeology of desert basins. *Ground Water* 6, no. 5:10–22.

MAU, D. P., & T. C. WINTER. 1997. Estimating ground-water recharge from streamflow hydrographs for a small mountain watershed in a temperate humid climate, New Hampshire: USA. *Ground Water* 35, no. 2:291–304.

MAYO, A. L., A. B. MULLER, & D. R. RALSTON. 1985. Hydrogeology of the Meade Thrust Allochthon, Southeastern Idaho, U.S.A., and its relevance to stratigraphic and structural groundwater flow control. *Journal of Hydrology* 76:27–61.

MAYO, A. L., & R. H. KLAUK. 1991. Contributions to the solute and isotopic groundwater geochemistry, Antelope Island, Great Salt Lake, Utah. *Journal of Hydrology* 127:307–35.

MAYO, A. L., P. S. NIELSEN, M. LOUCKS, & W. H. BRIMHALL. 1992. The use of solutes and isotope chemistry to identify flow patterns and factors which limit acid mine drainage in the Wasatch Range, Utah. *Ground Water* 30, no. 2:243–49.

MCCARTY, P. L. 1997. Biotic and abiotic transformations of chlorinated solvents in ground water. In *Proceedings of the Symposium on Natural Attenuation of Chlorinated Organics in Ground Water,* USEPA, EPA/540/R-97/50: 7–10.

MCDONALD, H. R., & D. WANTLAND. 1961. Geophysical procedures in ground water study. *Transactions, American Society of Civil Engineers* 126:122–35.

MCDONALD, M. G., & A. W. HARBAUGH. 1984. *A modular three-dimensional finite-difference ground-water flow model.* U.S. Geological Survey.

MCELWEE, C. D., G. C. BOHLING, & J. J. BUTLER, JR. 1995. Sensitivity analysis of slug tests: Part I, The slugged well. *Journal of Hydrology* 164:53–67.

MCGREEVY, PATRICIA. 1987. *San Bernardino* (California) *Sun,* July 17.

MCGUINNESS, C. L. 1963. *The role of ground water in the national water situation.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1800.

MCLEOD, R. S. 1984. Evaluation of "Superfund" sites for control of leachate and contaminant migration. *Proceedings, The Fifth National Conference on Management of Uncontrolled Hazardous Waste Sites,* Hazardous Materials Control Research Institute, 114–21.

MCWHORTER, D. B., R. K. SKOGERBOE, & G. V. SKOGERBOE. 1974. Potential of mine and mill spoils for water quality degradation. *American Water Resources Association Proceedings,* no. 18: 123–37.

MEDEIROS, W. E., & O. A. L. DE LIMA. 1990. A geoelectrical investigation for ground water in crystalline terrains of Central Bahia, Brazil. *Ground Water* 28, no. 4:518–523.

MEINZER, O. E. 1923a. *The occurrence of groundwater in the United States, with a discussion of principles.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 489.

———. 1923b. *Outline of groundwater hydrology, with definitions.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 494.

———. 1927. *Large springs of the United States.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 557.

MEISLER, H., ET AL. 1986. Northern Atlantic coastal plain regional aquifer-system study. In *Regional aquifer-system analysis program of the United States Geological Survey.* U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1002: 168–94.

MENDOZA, C. A., & E. O. FRIND. 1990a. Advective-dispersive transport of dense organic vapors in the unsaturated zone 1: Model development. *Water Resources Research* 26, no. 3:379–87.

———. 1990b. Advective-dispersive transport of dense organic vapors in the unsaturated zone 2: Sensitivity analysis. *Water Resources Research* 26, no. 3:388–98.

MENDOZA, C. A., & T. A. MCALARY. 1990. Modeling of ground water contamination caused by organic solvent vapors. *Ground Water* 28, no. 2:199–206.

MERCER, J. W., & C. R. FAUST. 1981. *Ground-water modeling.* Dublin, Ohio: National Water Well Association.

MEYBOOM, P. 1961. Estimating groundwater recharge from stream hydrographs. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 66:1203–14.

———. 1967. Mass-transfer studies to determine the groundwater regime of permanent lakes in Hummocky Moraine of western Canada. *Journal of Hydrology* 5:117–42.

MICHALSKI, A., & R. BRITTON. 1997. The role of bedding fractures in the hydrogeology of sedimentary basins—Evidence from the Newark Basin, New Jersey. *Ground Water* 35, no. 2:318–27.

MIFFLIN, M. D. 1968. *Delineation of ground-water flow systems in Nevada* (Technical Report Ser. H-W, Pub. No. 4). Reno: University of Nevada, Desert Research Institute.

MILLER, D. W., & N. VALKENBURG. 1992. Seymour: A Superfund success story. *Hazardous Materials Control* 5, no. 1:42–45.

MILLER, J. A. 1986. *Hydrogeological framework of the Floridan aquifer system in Florida and in parts of Georgia, Alabama and South Carolina.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1043-B.

MILLS, T., P. HOEKSTRA, M. BLOHM, & L. EVANS. 1988. Time domain electromagnetic soundings for mapping seawater intrusion in Monterey County, California. *Ground Water* 26, no. 6:771–82.

MITCHELL, J. 1932. The origin, nature and importance of soil organic constituents having base exchange properties. *Journal of American Society of Agronomy* 24:256–75.

MITCHELL, W. D. 1954. *Stage-fall-discharge relations for steady flow in prismatic channels.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1164.

MOENCH, ALLEN A. 1994. Specific yield as determined by type-curve analysis of aquifer test data. *Ground Water* 32, no. 6:949–57.

———. 1995. Combining the Neuman and Boulton models for flow to a well in an unconfined aquifer. *Ground Water* 33, no. 3:378–84.

MOONEY, H. M., & W. W. WETZEL. 1956. *The potentials about a point electrode and apparent resistivity for a two-, three-, and*

four-layer earth. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.

MOORE, G. K. 1997. Quantification of ground-water flow in fractured rock, Oak Ridge, Tennessee. *Ground Water* 35, no. 3:478–82.

MOORE, J. E. 1991. *A guide for preparing hydrologic and geologic projects and reports.* Dubuque: Kendall/Hunt Publishing Company.

MORAVCOUA, V., L. MASINOVA, & V. BERNATOVA. 1968. Biological and bacteriological evaluation of pilot plant artificial recharge experiments. *Water Research* 2:265–76.

MOREL-SEYTOUX, H. J. 1975. A simple case of conjunctive surface–ground-water management. *Ground Water* 13:506–15.

MORIN, R. H., G. B. CARLETON, & S. POIRIER. 1997. Fractured-aquifer hydrogeology from geophysical logs; the Passaic formation, New Jersey. *Ground Water* 35, no. 2:328–38.

MORIN, R. H., L. A. SENIOR, & E. R. DECKER. 2000. Fractured-aquifer hydrogeology from geophysical logs: Brunswick Group and Lockatong formation, Pennsylvania. *Ground Water* 38, no. 2:182–92.

MOTA, L. 1954. Determination of dips and depths of geological layers by the seismic refraction method. *Geophysics* 19:242–54.

MULLER, A. B., & A. L. MAYO. 1983. Ground-water circulation in the Meade Thrust Allochthon evaluated by radiocarbon techniques. *Radiocarbon* 25:357–72.

———. 1986. ^{13}C variation in limestone on an aquifer-wide scale and its effects on groundwater ^{14}C dating models. *Radiocarbon* 28, no. 3:1041–54.

MURRAY, C. R. 1960. Origin of porosity in carbonate rocks. *Journal of Sedimentary Petrology* 30:59–84.

MYLNE, M. F. 1989. Combination of radar and gauge data in a rainfall archive system. *Water Resources Bulletin* 25:535–39.

NATIONAL AUDUBON SOCIETY V. SUPERIOR COURT OF ALPINE COUNTY. 1983. 33 Cal.3d 419, 658 P.2d 709, 189 Cal. Rptr. 346: Cert. denied, 104 S.Ct. 413.

NATIONAL GROUND WATER ASSOCIATION. 1992. Personal communication.

NATIONAL WATER WELL ASSOCIATION. 1986. *Newsletter of the Association of Ground Water Scientists and Engineers* 2 (February):1.

NEUMAN, S. P. 1972. Theory of flow in unconfined aquifers considering delayed response to the water table. *Water Resources Research* 8:1031–45.

———. 1974. Effect of partial penetration on flow in unconfined aquifers considering delayed gravity response. *Water Resources Research* 10:303–12.

———. 1975. Analysis of pumping test data from anisotropic unconfined aquifers considering delayed gravity response. *Water Resources Research* 11:329–42.

———. 1987. On methods of determining specific yield. *Ground Water* 25, no. 6:679–84.

———. 1990. Universal scaling of hydraulic conductivities and dispersivities in geologic media. *Water Resources Research* 26, no. 8:1749–58.

NEUMAN, S. P., & P. A. WITHERSPOON. 1969. Applicability of current theories of flow in leaky aquifers. *Water Resources Research* 5:817–29.

NEUZIL, C. E., J. D. BREDEHOEFT, & R. G. WOLFF. 1984. Leakage and fracture permeability of the Cretaceous shales confining the Dakota aquifer in South Dakota. In *Proceedings of the Geohydrology Dakota Aquifer Symposium.* Ground Water Publishing Company, 133–39.

NEWCOMB, R. C. 1972. *Quality of the ground water in basalt of the Columbia River group, Washington, Oregon and Idaho.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1999-N.

NIELSEN, D. M., & G. L. YEATES. 1985. A comparison of sampling mechanisms available for small-diameter ground water monitoring wells. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 5, no. 2:83–99.

NIGHTINGALE, H. I., & W. C. BIANCHI. 1973. Groundwater recharge for urban use: Leaky Acres project. *Ground Water* 11, no. 6:36–43.

NILES SAND AND GRAVEL CO., INC. V. ALAMEDA COUNTY WATER DISTRICT. 1974. 37 Calif. App. 3d 924: Cert. denied 419 US 869.

NORBECK, P. N., L. L. MINK, & R. E. WILLIAMS. 1974. Ground water leaching of jig tailing deposits in the Coeur d'Alene district of northern Idaho. *American Water Resources Association Proceedings,* no. 18:149–57.

NORRIS, S. E. 1963. *Permeability of glacial till.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 450-E: 150–51.

———. 1972. The use of gamma logs in determining the character of unconsolidated sediments and well construction features. *Ground Water* 10, no. 6:14–21.

NORRIS, S. E., & A. M. SPIEKER. 1966. *Ground-water resources of the Dayton area, Ohio.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1808.

NORRIS, S. E., & R. E. FIDLER. 1965. *Relation of permeability to grain size in a glacial-outwash aquifer at Piketown, Ohio.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 525-D: 203–06.

NOSS, R. R., & E. T. JOHNSON. 1984. Field monitoring of the Adams, Massachusetts, landfill leachate plume. *Proceedings, Fourth National Symposium and Exposition on Aquifer Restoration and Ground Water Monitoring.* National Water Well Association, 356–62.

NYER, E. K., V. KRAMER, & N. VALKENBURG. 1991. Biochemical effects on contaminate fate and transport. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 11, no. 2:80–82.

OBERLANDER, P. A. 1989. Fluid density and gravitational variations in deep boreholes and their effect on fluid potential. *Ground Water* 27, no. 3:341–50.

OGATA, A. 1970. *Theory of dispersion in a granular medium.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 411-I.

OLIVEIRA, D. P., & N. SITAR. 1985. Ground water contamination from underground solvent storage tanks, Santa Clara, California. *Proceedings, Fifth National Symposium and Exposition on Aquifer Restoration and Ground Water Monitoring*. National Water Well Association, 691–708.

OLSEN, S. R., & F. S. WATANABE. 1957. A method to determine a phosphorus adsorption maximum of soils as measured by the Langmuir isotherm. *Soil Science Society of America, Proceedings* 21:144–49.

PALMER, A. N. 1984. Recent trends on karst geomorphology. *Journal of Geological Education* 32:247–53.

PANNO, S. V., K. C. HACKLEY, K. CARTWRIGHT, & C. L. LIU. 1994. Hydrogeochemistry of the Mahomet bedrock valley aquifer, east-central Illinois: Indicators of recharge and ground-water flow. *Ground Water* 32, no. 4:591–604.

PAPADOPULOS, I. S., J. D. BREDEHOEFT, & H. H. COOPER, JR. 1973. On the analysis of "slug test" data. *Water Resources Research* 9:1087–89.

PARIZEK, R. R. 1976. On the nature and significance of fracture traces and lineaments in carbonate and other terranes. In *Karst hydrology and water resources*, ed. V. Yevjevich, 47–108. Fort Collins, Colo.: Water Resources Publications.

PARIZEK, R. R., & E. A. MEYERS. 1967. Recharge of groundwater from renovated sewage effluent by spray irrigation. *American Water Resources Association, Proceedings of the Fourth Conference*, 426–43.

PARK, S. K., D. W. LAMBERT, & TIEN-CHANG LEE. 1990. Investigation by DC resistivity methods of a groundwater barrier beneath the San Bernardino Valley, southern California. *Ground Water* 28, no. 3:344–49.

PARKER, G. G. 1975. Water and water problems in the southwest Florida water management district and some possible solutions. *Water Resources Bulletin* 11:1–20.

PARKER, G. G., R. H. BROWN, D. G. BOGART, & S. K. LOVE. 1955. Salt water encroachment. In *Water resources of southeastern Florida*, 571–711. U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1255.

PARMELEE, M. A. 1993. Milwaukee takes steps to ensure water quality. *AWWA Mainstream, American Water Works Association* 37:1, 8.

PARSONS, F., P. R. WOOD, & J. DEMARCO. 1984. Transformations of tetrachloroethane and trichloroethane in microorganisms and ground water. *Journal, American Water Works Association* 76, no. 2:56–59.

PASADENA V. ALHAMBRA. 1949. 33 Calif. (2d) 908, 207 Pac. (2d) 17.

PEAK, W. 1977. Institutionalized inefficiency: The unfortunate structure of Colorado's water resources management system. *Water Resources Bulletin* 13:551–62.

PEREZ, E. S. 1997. Estimation of basin-wide recharge rates using spring flow, precipitation and temperature data. *Ground Water* 35, no. 6:1058–65.

PETERS, H. J. 1972. Ground-water management. *Water Resources Bulletin* 8:188–97.

PETERSON, F. L. 1972. Water development on tropic volcanic islands—Type example: Hawaii. *Ground Water* 10, no. 5:18–23.

PEYTON, G. R., ET AL. 1986. Effective porosity of geologic materials. *Proceedings of the Twelfth Annual Research Symposium*. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA/600/9-86:21–8.

PHILIP, J. R. 1969. Theory of infiltration. In *Advances in hydroscience*, vol. 5, ed. V. T. Chow, 215–96. New York: Academic Press.

PICKENS, J. F., ET AL. 1981. A multilevel device for ground water sampling. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 1, no. 1:48–51.

PINDER, G. F., & H. H. COOPER, JR. 1970. A numerical technique for calculating the transient position of the saltwater front. *Water Resources Research* 6:875–82.

PINDER, G. F., & W. G. GRAY. 1977. *Finite element simulation in surface and subsurface hydrology*. New York: Academic Press.

PIONKE, H. B., & J. B. URBAN. 1985. Effect of agricultural land use on ground water quality in a small Pennsylvania watershed. *Ground Water* 23:68–80.

PIPER, A. M. 1944. A graphic procedure in the geochemical interpretation of water analyses. *Transactions, American Geophysical Union* 25:914–23.

P. L. 97-293, TITLE III, 96 STATE. 1274 (1982), San Xavier Papago Reservation of Arizona.

PLINES, P., D. LANGMUIR, & R. S. HARMON. 1974. Stable carbon isotope ratios and the existence of a gas phase in the evolution of carbonate ground waters. *Geochemica et Cosmochimica Acta* 38:1147–64.

PLOTKIN, S. E., H. GOLD, & I. L. WHITE. 1979. Water and energy in the western coal lands. *Water Resources Bulletin* 15:94–107.

PLUHOWSKI, E. J., & I. H. KANTROWITZ. 1964. *Hydrology of the Babylon-Islip area, Suffolk County, Long Island, New York*. U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1768.

PLUMMER, L. N. 1977. Defining reactions and mass transfer in part of Floridan aquifer. *Water Resources Research* 13:801–12.

PLUMMER, L. N., & E. BUSENBERG. 1982. The solubilities of calcite, aragonite and vaterite in CO_2-H_2O solutions between 0 and 90°C, and an evaluation of the aqueous model of the system $CaCO_3$-CO_2-H_2O. *Geochemica et Cosmochemica Acta* 46:1011–40.

PLUMMER, L. N., T. M. L. WIGLEY, & D. L. PARKHURST. 1978. The kinetics of calcite dissolution in CO_2-water systems at 5° to 60°C and 0.00 to 1.0 atm CO_2. *American Journal of Science* 278:176–216.

PODGORNEY, R. K., & R. W. RITZI, JR. 1997. Capture zone geometry in a fractured carbonate aquifer. *Ground Water* 35, no. 6:1040–49.

POLLOCK, D. W. 1989. *Documentation of computer programs to compute and display pathlines using results from the U.S. Geological Survey modular three-dimensional finite-difference ground-water model.* U.S. Geological Survey Open File Report 89–381.

POLUBARINOVA-KOCHINA, P. Y. 1962. *Theory of ground water movement,* trans. R. J. M. DeWiest. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press.

POOL, D. R., & J. H. EYCHANER. 1995. Measurements of aquifer-storage change and specific yield using gravity surveys. *Ground Water* 33, no. 3:425–32.

PRICE, A. G., & T. DUNN. 1976. Energy balance computations of snowmelt in a subarctic area. *Water Resources Research* 12:686–94.

PRICKETT, T. A. 1965. Type curve solution to aquifer tests under water table conditions. *Ground Water* 3, no. 3:5–14.

PRICKETT, T. A., T. G. NAYMIK, & C. G. LONNQUIST. 1981. *A random-walk solute transport model for selected ground water quality evaluations.* Illinois State Geological Survey, Bulletin 65.

PRILL, R. C., A. I. JOHNSON, & D. A. MORRIS. 1965. *Specific yield—Laboratory experiments showing the effect of time on column drainage.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1662-B.

PRUDIC, D. E. 1982. Hydraulic conductivity of a fine-grained till, Cattaraugus County, New York. *Ground Water* 20:194–204.

RADSTAKE, FRANK, ET AL. 1991. Applications of forward modeling resistivity profiles. *Ground Water* 29, no. 1:13–17.

RAHN, P. H., & H. A. PAUL. 1975. Hydrogeology of a portion of the sand hills and Ogallala aquifer, South Dakota and Nebraska. *Ground Water* 13:428–37.

RALSTON, D. R. 1973. Administration of ground-water as both a renewable and non-renewable resource. *Water Resources Bulletin* 9:908–17.

RALSTON, D. R., & A. G. MORILLA. 1974. Ground water movement through an abandoned tailings pile. *American Water Resources Association Proceedings,* no. 18:174–83.

RAZACK, M., & D. HUNTLEY. 1991. Assessing transmissivity from specific capacity data in a large and hetrogeneous alluvial aquifer. *Ground Water* 29, no. 6:856–61.

REED, P. C., K. CARTWRIGHT, & D. OSBY. 1981. *Electrical earth resistivity surveys near brine holding ponds in Illinois.* Illinois State Geological Survey Environmental Geology Notes 95.

REHM, B. W., G. H. GROENEWOLD, & S. R. MORAN. 1978. The hydraulic conductivity of lignite and associated geological materials and strip mine spoils, western North Dakota. Geological Society of America, *Abstracts with Programs* 10, no. 7:477.

RICE, D. W., ET AL. 1995. *California leaking underground fuel tank (LUFT) historical case analysis.* Environmental Protection Department, Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory, UCRL-AR-122207.

RICHARDS, L. A., ED. 1954. *Diagnosis and improvement of saline and alkali soil.* U.S. Department of Agriculture Agricultural Handbook 60.

ROBBINS, G. A., & M. M. GEMMELL. 1985. Factors requiring resolution in installing vadose zone monitoring systems. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 5, no. 3:75–80.

ROBBINS, G. A., B. G. DEYO, M. R. TEMPLE, J. D. STUART, & M. J. LACY. 1990a. Soil-gas surveying for subsurface gasoline contamination using total organic vapor detection instruments—Part 1: Theory and laboratory experimentation. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 10, no. 3:122–31.

———. 1990b. Soil-gas surveying for subsurface gasoline contamination using total organic vapor detection instruments—Part 2: Field experimentation. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 10, no. 4:110–17.

ROBERTS, P. V., J. SCHREINER, & G. D. HOPKINS. 1982. Field study of organic water quality changes during groundwater recharge in the Palo Alto baylands. *Water Research* 16:1025–35.

ROBERTS, W. J., & J. B. STALL. 1967. *Lake evaporation in Illinois.* Illinois State Water Survey Report of Investigation 57.

ROLLO, J. R. 1960. *Ground water in Louisiana.* Louisiana Geological Survey and Louisiana Department of Public Works Water Resources Bulletin 1.

RORABAUGH, M. I. 1964. Estimating changes in bank storage and ground-water contribution to stream flow. *International Association of Scientific Hydrology* 63:432–41.

RORABAUGH, M. I., & W. D. SIMONS. 1966. *Exploration of methods relating ground water to surface water, Columbia River Basin—second phase.* U.S. Geological Survey Open File Report, 62 pages.

ROSE, H. E. 1945a. An investigation into the laws of flow of fluids through beds of granular materials. *Proceedings of the Institute of Mechanical Engineers* 153:141–48.

———. 1945b. On the resistance coefficient—Reynolds number relationship for fluid flow through a bed of granular materials. *Proceedings of the Institute of Mechanical Engineers* 153:154–68.

ROTHSCHILD, E. R., R. J. MANSER, & M. P. ANDERSON. 1982. Investigation of aldicarb in ground water in selected areas of the central sand plain of Wisconsin. *Ground Water* 20:437–45.

ROUX, P. H., & W. F. ALTHOFF. 1980. Investigation of organic contamination of ground water in South Brunswick Township, New Jersey. *Ground Water* 18:464–71.

ROVEY, C. W., II, & D. S. CHERKAUER. 1994. Relation between hydraulic conductivity and texture in a carbonate aquifer: Observations. *Ground Water* 32, no. 1:53–62.

RUBIN, Y., & G. DAGAN. 1992. A note on head and velocity covariances in three-dimensional flow through heterogeneous anisotropic porous media. *Water Resources Research* 28, no. 5:1463–70.

RUHE, R. V. 1977. Summary of geohydrologic relationships in the Lost River watershed, Indiana, applied to water use and environment. In *Hydrologic problems in karst regions,* ed. R. R. Dilamarter & S. Csallany, 64–78. Bowling Green, Ky: Western Kentucky University.

RULAND, W. W., J. A. CHERRY, & STAN FEENSTRA. 1991. The depth of fractures and active ground water flow in a clayey till plain in southwestern Ontario. *Ground Water* 29, no. 3:405–17.

RUTLEDGE, A. I., & C. C. DANIEL, III. 1994. Testing an automated method to estimate ground water recharge from streamflow records. *Ground Water* 32, no. 2:180–89.

RYAN, M., & J. MEIMAN. 1996. An examination of short-term variations in water quality in a karst spring in Kentucky. *Ground Water* 34, no. 1:23–30.

SALO, J. E., D. HARRISON, & E. M. ARCHIBALD. 1986. Removing contaminants by ground water recharge basins. *Journal, American Water Works Association* 78, no. 9:76–81.

SANDER, P., T. B. MINOR, & M. M. CHESLEY. 1997. Groundwater exploration based on lineament analysis and reproducibility tests. *Ground Water* 35, no. 5:888–94.

SARTZ, R. S., W. R. CURTIS, & D. N. TOLSTAD. 1977. Hydrology of small watersheds in Wisconsin's driftless area. *Water Resources Research* 13, no. 3:524–30.

SASMAN, R. T., ET AL. 1977. *Water level decline and pumpage in deep wells in the Chicago region, 1971–75.* Illinois State Water Survey Circular 125.

SCALF, M. R., ET AL. 1981. *Manual of ground water quality sampling procedures.* Worthington, Ohio: National Water Well Association.

SCHAFER, D. C. 1978. Casing storage can affect pumping test data. *Johnson Drillers Journal* (January-February):1–5, 10–11.

———. 1998. Determining vertical anisotropy ratios using a graphical, iterative procedure based on the Hantush equation. *Ground Water* 36, no. 2:293–304.

SCHICHT, R. J., & J. R. ADAMS. 1977. *Effects of proposed 1980 and 1985 lake water allocations in the deep sandstone aquifer in northeastern Illinois.* Illinois State Water Contract Report for Illinois Division of Water Resources.

SCHICHT, R. J., J. R. ADAMS, & J. B. STALL. 1976. *Water resources availability, quality and cost in northeastern Illinois.* Illinois State Water Survey Report of Investigation 83.

SCHNEEBELI, G. 1955. Experiences sur la limite de validité de la loi de Darcy et l'apparition de la turbulence dans un écoulement de filtration. *La Houille Blanche* 10, no. 2:141–49.

SCHOELLER, H. 1955. Geochemie des eaux souterraines. *Revue de L'Institute Francais du Petrole* 10:230–44.

———. 1962. *Les eaux souterraines.* Paris: Mason et Cie.

SCHNEOBELEN, D. J., & N. C. KROTHE. 1999. Reef and nonreef aquifers—A comparison of hydrogeology and geochemistry, northwestern Indiana. *Ground Water* 37, no. 2:194–203.

SCHWILLE, FREDRICH. 1988. *Dense chlorinated solvents in porous and fractured media, model experiments.* Translated from German by J. F. Pankow. Chelsea, Michigan: Lewis Publishers, 146 pages.

SEABURN, G. E. 1970a. *Preliminary results of hydrologic studies at two recharge basins on Long Island, New York.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 627-C: 1–17.

———. 1970b. *Preliminary analysis of rate of movement of storm runoff through the zone of aeration beneath a recharge basin on Long Island, New York.* U.S. Geological Survey Paper 700-B: 196–98.

SEARS, JAN-CHRISTRIAN. 1987. *San Bernardino* (California) *Sun,* August 1987.

SEGOL, G., G. F. PINDER, & W. G. GRAY. 1975. A Galerkin–finite element technique for calculating the transient position of the saltwater front. *Water Resources Research* 11:343–47.

SELLERS, J. H. 1973. Tax implications of ground-water depletion. *Ground Water* 11, no. 4:27–35.

SETZER, J. 1966. Hydrologic significance of tectonic fractures detectable on air photos. *Ground Water* 4, no. 4:23–29.

SETZER, L. H., & R. H. MATZKE. 1961. Hydrologic significance of tectonic fractures detectable on air photos. *Ground Water* 4, no. 4:23–29.

SGHIA-HUGHES, K., A. TADDEO, & S. FOGEL. 1991. Installation of a vadose zone bioremediation system at the Seymour superfund site. *Proceedings, 12th National Superfund Conference,* Hazardous Materials Control Research Institute, Silver Springs, Md., 224–29.

SHARP, J. M., JR. 1984. Hydrogeologic characteristics of shallow glacial drift aquifers in dissected till plains (north-central Missouri). *Ground Water* 22:683–89.

SHAVER, R. B., & S. W. PUSC. 1992. Hydraulic barriers in Pleistocene buried valley aquifers. *Ground Water* 30, no. 1:21–28.

SHEPHERD, R. G. 1989. Correlations of permeability and grain size. *Ground Water* 27, no. 5:633–38.

SHERRILL, M. G. 1978. *Geology and ground water in Door County, Wisconsin, with emphasis on contamination potential in the silurian dolomite.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2047.

SHOWN, L. M., G. C. LUSBY, & F. A. BRANSON. 1972. Soil moisture effects of conversion of sagebrush cover to bunchgrass cover. *Water Resources Bulletin* 8:1265–72.

SHUSTER, E. T., & W. B. WHITE. 1971. Seasonal fluctuations in the chemistry of limestone springs: A possible means for characterizing carbonate aquifers. *Journal of Hydrology* 14:93–128.

SIDDIQUI, S. H., & R. R. PARIZEK. 1971. Hydrogeologic factors influencing well yields in folded and faulted carbonate rocks in central Pennsylvania. *Water Resources Research* 7:1295–1312.

SIEGEL, D. I. 1988a. The recharge-discharge functions of wetlands near Juneau, Alaska: Part I, hydrogeological investigations. *Ground Water* 26, no. 4:427–34.

———. 1988b. The recharge-discharge functions of wetlands near Juneau, Alaska: Part II, geochemical investigations. *Ground Water* 26, no. 5:580–86.

SINGH, R. 1976. Prediction of mound geometry under recharge basins. *Water Resources Research* 12:775–80.

SLAWSON, G. C., JR., K. E. KELLY, & L. G. EVERETT. 1982. Evaluation of ground-water pumping and bailing methods—Application in the oil shale industry. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 2, no. 3:27–31.

SMITH, H. F. 1967. *Artificial recharge and its potential in Illinois.* International Association of Scientific Hydrology Publication No. 72 (Haifa): 136–42.

SMITH, J. A., D. J. SEO, M. L. BAECK, & M. D. HUDLOW. 1996. An intercomparison study of NEXRAD precipitation estimates. *Water Resources Research* 32:2035–45.

SMITH, W. O. 1967. Infiltration in sands and its relation to groundwater recharge. *Water Resources Research* 3:539–55.

SNIEGOCKI, R. T., & R. F. BROWN. 1970. Clogging in recharge wells, causes and cures. *Proceedings of the Artificial Ground-water Recharge Conference, The Water Resources Association* (England), 337–57.

SNIPES, D. S., ET AL. 1986. Ground-water problems in the Mesozoic Pax Mountain fault zone. *Ground Water* 24:375–81.

SOCHA, B. J. 1983. *Fracture trace analysis for water-well site locations in Precambrian igneous and metamorphic rock in central Wisconsin.* Wisconsin Geological and Natural History Survey Misc. Paper 83-5.

SOLLEY, W. B., R. R. PIERCE, & H. A. PERLMAN. 1998. *Estimated use of water in the United States in 1995.* U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1200.

SOLOMON, D. K., R. J. POREDA, P. G. COOK, & A. HUNT. 1995. Site characterization using $^3H/^3He$ ground water ages, Cape Cod, Massachusetts. *Ground Water* 33, no. 6:988–96.

SOPHOCLEOUS, M. 1997. Managing water resources systems: Why 'safe yield' is not sustainable. *Ground Water* 35, no. 4:561.

SOPHOCLEOUS, M., A. KOUSSIS, J. L. MARTIN, & S. P. PERKINS. 1995. Evaluation of simplified stream-aquifer depletion models for water rights administration. *Ground Water* 33, no. 4:579–88.

SPORHASE V. NEBRASKA. 1982. 102 S.Ct. 3456.

SRIVASTAVA, R., & A. GUZMAN-GUZMAN. 1994. Analysis of slope matching methods for aquifer parameter determination. *Ground Water* 32, no. 4:570–75.

STATE OF MONTANA/ASSINIBOINE AND SIOUX TRIBES OF FORT PECK INDIAN RESERVATION COMPACT, 1985. Ratified in S.B. 467, 49th Leg., 1985 Montana Laws.

STEPHENSON, D. A., A. H. FLEMING, & D. M. MICKELSON. 1988. Glacial deposits. In *Hydrogeology,* ed. W. Back, J. S. Rosenshein, & P. R. Seber. *The Geology of North America* O-2:301–314. Boulder Colo.: Geological Society of America.

STEWART, J. W. 1962. *Relation of permeability and jointing in crystalline metamorphic rocks near Jonesboro, Georgia.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 450-D: 168–70.

———. 1964. *Infiltration and permeability of weathered crystalline rocks, Georgia Nuclear Laboratory, Dawson County, Georgia.* U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1133-D.

STEWART, J. W., L. R. MILLS, D. D. KNOCHENMUS, & G. L. FAULKNER. 1971. *Potentiometric surface of Floridan aquifer, southwest Florida water management district.* U.S. Geological Survey Hydrologic Investigations Atlas HA-440.

STEWART, M. T. 1982. Evaluation of electromagnetic methods for rapid mapping of salt-water interfaces in coastal aquifers. *Ground Water* 20:538–45.

STEWART, M. T., & M. C. GAY. 1986. Evaluation of transient electromagnetic soundings for deep detection of conductive fluids. *Ground Water* 24:351–56.

STEWART, M. T., M. LAYTON, & T. LIZANEC. 1983. Application of surface resistivity surveys to regional hydrogeologic reconnaissance. *Ground Water* 21:42–48.

STIFF, H. A., JR. 1951. The interpretation of chemical water analysis by means of patterns. *Journal of petroleum technology* 3:15–17.

STONE, R., & D. F. SNOEBERGER. 1977. Cleat orientation and areal hydraulic anisotropy of a Wyoming coal aquifer. *Ground Water* 15:434–38.

STONER, J. B. 1981. Horizontal anisotropy determined by pumping in two river basin coal aquifers, Montana. *Ground Water* 19:34–40.

STRELTSOVA, T. D. 1972. Unsteady radial flow in an unconfined aquifer. *Water Resources Research* 8:1059–66.

———. 1973. Unsteady radial flow in an unconfined aquifer. *Water Resources Research* 9:236–42.

———. 1976a. Comments on 'Analysis of pumping test data from anisotropic unconfined aquifers considering delayed gravity response,' by Shlomo P. Neuman. *Water Resources Research* 12:113–14.

———. 1976b. Analysis of aquifer-aquitard flow. *Water Resources Research* 12:415–22.

STRINGFIELD, V. T. 1966. *Artesian water in tertiary limestone in the southeastern states.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 517.

STRINGFIELD, V. T., & H. E. LEGRAND. 1960. *Hydrology of limestone terranes in the coastal plain of the southeastern United States.* Geological Society of America Special Paper 93.

SUTER, M., ET AL. 1959. *Preliminary report of ground-water resources of the Chicago region, Illinois.* Cooperative Groundwater Report 1, Illinois State Water Survey and Illinois State Geological Survey.

SVERDRUP, K. A. 1986. Shallow seismic refraction survey of near-surface ground water flow. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 6, no. 1:80–83.

SWEENEY, J. J. 1984. Comparison of electrical resistivity methods for investigation of ground water conditions at a landfill site. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 4, no. 1:52–59.

SWENSON, F. A. 1968. New theory of recharge to the artesian basin of the Dakotas. *Bulletin, Geological Society of America* 79:163–82.

SYERS, J. K., ET AL. 1973. Phosphate sorption by soils evaluated by the Langmuir adsorption equation. *Soil Science Society of America, Proceedings* 37:358–63.

SZILAYGI, J., & M. B. PARLANGE. 1998. Baseflow separation based on analytical solutions to the Boussinesq equation. *Journal of Hydrology* 204:251–60.

TABIDIAN, M. A., D. PEDERSON, & P. A. TABIDIAN. 1992. A paleovalley aquifer system and its interaction with the Big Blue River of Nebraska during a major flood. In *Proceedings of the National Symposium on The Future Availability of Ground Water Resources,* ed. R. C. Borden & W. L. Lyke, 165–72. Bethesda, Md: American Water Resources Association.

TAKASAKI, K. J. 1978. *Summary appraisals of the nation's ground water resources—Hawaii region.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 813-M.

TANK, R. W. 1983. *Legal aspects of geology.* New York: Plenum Press.

TARLOCK, A. D. 1985. An overview of the law of groundwater management. *Water Resources Research* 21, no. 11:1751–66.

TAUCHER, P., & B. N. FULLER. 1994. A refraction statics method for mapping bedrock. *Ground Water* 32, no. 6:895–904.

TERZAGKI, K. 1950. Permafrost. *Boston Society of Civil Engineers Journal* 39:1–50.

THEIS, C. V. 1935. The lowering of the piezometer surface and the rate and discharge of a well using ground-water storage. *Transactions, American Geophysical Union* 16:519–24.

———. 1938. The significance and nature of the cone of depression in ground-water bodies. *Economic Geology* 38:889–902.

———. 1940. The source of water to wells: Essential factors controlling the response of an aquifer to development. *Civil Engineering,* 277–80.

———. 1963. *Estimating the transmissivity of a water table aquifer from the specific capacity of a well.* U.S. Geological Survey Water Supply Paper 1536-I:332–36.

THIEM, G. 1906. *Hydrologische methoden.* Leipzig: Gebhardt, 56 pages.

THOMAS, H. E. 1951. *Conservation of ground water.* New York: McGraw-Hill.

———. 1952. Ground water regions of the United States—Their storage facilities. U.S. 83rd Congress, House Interior and Insular Affairs Committee, *The Physical and Economic Foundation of Natural Resources,* vol. 3.

———. 1972. Water-management problems related to ground-water rights in the Southwest. *Water Resources Bulletin* 8:110–17.

———. 1978. Cyclic storage, where are you now? *Ground Water* 16:12–17.

THORNTHWAITE, C. W. 1944. Report of the committee on transpiration and evaporation. 1943–44. *Transactions, American Geophysical Union* 25:687.

THORNTHWAITE, C. W., & J. R. MATHER. 1955. *The water balance,* Publication 8, 1–86. Centeron, N.J.: Laboratory of Climatology.

———. 1957. *Instructions and tables for computing potential evapotranspiration and the water balance,* Publication 10, 185–311. Centerton, N.J.: Laboratory of Climatology.

THORUD, D. B. 1967. The effect of applied interception on transpiration rates of potted ponderosa pine. *Water Resources Research* 3:443–50.

TIEDEMAN, C. R., D. J. GOODE, & P. A. HSIEH. 1998. Characterizing a ground water basin in a New England mountain and valley terrain. *Ground Water* 36, no. 4:611–20.

TODD, D. K. 1953. Sea water intrusion in coastal aquifers. *Transactions, American Geophysical Union* 34:749–54.

———. 1980. *Groundwater hydrology,* 2d ed. New York: John Wiley.

TOMSHO, ROBERT. 1992. States, Indians seek settlement of water issues. *Wall Street Journal,* November 25.

TÓTH, J. A. 1962. A theory of ground-water motion in small drainage basins in central Alberta, Canada. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 67, no. 11:4375–87.

———. 1963. A theoretical analysis of ground-water flow in small drainage basins. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 68, no. 16:4795–4811.

TRESCOTT, P. C., G. F. PINDER, & S. P. LARSON. 1976. *Finite-difference model for aquifer simulation in two dimensions with results of numerical experiments.* U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, Book 7, Chap. C1.

TRIMBLE, G. R., JR., & S. WEITZMAN. 1954. Effect of a hardwood forest canopy on rainfall intensities. *Transactions, American Geophysical Union* 35:226–34.

TSANG, CHIN-FU. 1991. The modeling process and model verification. *Ground Water* 29, no. 6:825–31.

TWENTER, F. R. 1962. *Geology and promising areas for ground-water development in the Hualapai Indian Reservation, Arizona.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1576-A.

URIE, D. H. 1967. Influences of forest cover on ground-water recharge timing and use. In *International symposium on forest hydrology*, ed. W. E. Sopper & H. W. Hull, 313–24. Oxford, England: Pergamon Press.

URISH, D. W. 1983. The practical application of surface electrical resistivity to detection of ground-water pollution. *Ground Water* 21:144–52.

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY. 1976. *Quality criteria for water.* Washington, D.C.

———. 1977. *The report to Congress—Waste disposal practices and their effects on ground water.* Washington, D.C.

———. 1984. *A ground water protection strategy for the Environmental Protection Agency.* Washington, D.C.

U.S. WATER NEWS. 1992. Congress makes progress on tribal settlements, but many remain (December).

VACHER, H. L. 1987. Personal communication.

———. 1988. Dupuit-Ghyben-Herzberg analysis of strip-island lenses. *Geological Society of America Bulletin* 100:580–91.

———. 1989. The three-point problem in the context of elementary vector analysis. *Journal of Geological Education* 37:280–87.

VACHER, H. L., & T. N. WALLIS. 1992. Comparative hydrogeology of fresh-water lenses of Bermuda and Great Exuma Island, Bahamas. *Ground Water* 30, no. 1:15–20.

VAN DER KAMP, G. 1976. Determining aquifer transmissivity by means of well response tests: The underdamped case. *Water Resources Research* 12, no. 1:71–77.

VIJAYACHANDRAN, P. K., & R. D. HARTER. 1975. Evaluation of phosphorus adsorption by a cross section of soil types. *Soil Science* 119:119–26.

VISHER, F. N., & J. F. MINK. 1964. *Ground water resources, southern Oahu, Hawaii.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1778.

VISOCKY, A. P., M. G. SHERRILL, & K. CARTWRIGHT. 1985. *Geology, hydrology and water quality of the Cambrian and Ordovician systems in northern Illinois.* Cooperative Ground Water Report 10, Illinois State Geological Survey and Illinois State Water Survey.

VOGEL, T. M., C. S. CRIDDLE, & P. L. MCCARTY. 1987. Transformations of halogenated aliphatic compounds. *Environmental Science and Technology* 21, no. 8:722–736.

VORSTER, P. 1985. *A water balance forecast model for Mono Lake, California.* Master's thesis in geography, California State University, Hayward.

VOSS, C. I. 1984. *A finite-element simulation model for saturated-unsaturated, fluid-density-dependent ground water flow with energy transport or chemically reactive single-species solute transport.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Resources Investigations Report 84-4369.

WAIT, R. L., ET AL. 1986. Southeastern coastal plain regional aquifer-system study. In *Regional aquifer-system analysis program of the United States Geological Survey,* 205–22. U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1002.

WALLIS, T. N., H. L. VACHER, & M. T. STEWART. 1991. Hydrogeology of freshwater lens beneath a Halocene strandplain, Great Exuma, Bahamas. *Journal of Hydrology* 125:93–109.

WALTER, G. R., ET AL. 1990. Gas in a hat. *Proceedings, 11th National Superfund Conference.* Silver Spring, Md.: Hazardous Materials Control Research Institute, 557–64.

WALTON, W. C. 1960. *Leaky artesian aquifer conditions in Illinois.* Illinois State Water Survey Report of Investigation 39.

———. 1962. *Selected analytical methods for well and aquifer evaluation.* Illinois State Water Survey Bulletin 49, 81.

———. 1965. *Groundwater recharge and runoff in Illinois.* Illinois State Water Survey Report of Investigation 48.

———. 1978. Comprehensive analysis of water-table aquifer test data. *Ground Water* 16:311–17.

———. 1979. Progress in analytical groundwater modeling. *Journal of Hydrology* 43:149–59.

———. 1984. Analytical ground water modeling with programmable calculators and hand-held computers. In *Ground water hydraulics,* ed. J. Rosenshein & G. D. Bennett, 298–312. American Geophysical Union Monograph 9.

WALTON, W. C., & S. CSALLANY. 1962. *Yields of deep sandstone wells in northern Illinois.* Illinois State Water-Survey Report of Investigation 43.

WANG, H. F., & M. P. ANDERSON. 1982. *Introduction to groundwater modeling—Finite difference and finite element methods.* San Francisco: W. H. Freeman.

WAYMAN, C. H. 1967. Adsorption on clay mineral surfaces. In *Principles and applications of water chemistry,* ed. S. D. Faust & J. V. Hunter, 127–67. New York: John Wiley.

WEATHERFORD, G. D., & S. J. SCHUPE. 1986. Reallocating water in the west. *Journal, American Water Works Association* 78, no. 10:63–71.

WEEKS, E. P. 1969. Determining the ratio of horizontal to vertical permeability by aquifer-test analyses. *Water Resources Research* 5, no. 1:196–214.

WEEKS, J. B. 1986. High plains regional aquifer study. In *Regional aquifer-system analysis program of the U.S. Geological Survey, summary of projects, 1978–84,* 30–49. U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1002.

WEIDMAN, S., & A. R. SCHULTZ. 1915. *The underground and surface water supplies of Wisconsin.* Wisconsin Geological and Natural History Survey Bulletin 35.

WEIGHT, W. D., & G. P. WITTMAN. 1999. Oscillatory slug-test data sets: A comparison of two methods. *Ground Water* 37, no. 6:827–35.

WELBY, C. W. 1984. Ground-water yields and inventory for land-use planning in crystalline rock areas of Wake County, North Carolina. *Water Resources Bulletin* 20:875–82.

VELTY, C., & L. W. GELHAR. 1992. Simulation of large-scale transport of variable density and viscosity fluids using a stochastic mean model. *Water Resources Research* 28, no. 2:815–28.

VENZEL, L. K. 1942. *Methods for determining permeability of water-bearing materials with special reference to discharging well methods.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 887.

VHITE, A. F., & N. J. CHUMA. 1987. Carbon and isotope mass balance studies of Oasis Valley 40-Mile Canyon ground-water basin, southern Nevada. *Water Resources Research* 23, no. 4:571–82.

VHITE, D. E. 1957a. Magmatic, connate and metamorphic water. *Bulletin, Geological Society of America* 68, no. 12:1659–82.

———. 1957b. Thermal waters of volcanic origin. *Bulletin, Geological Society of America* 68, no. 12:1637–58.

VHITE, R. B., & R. B. GAINER. 1985. Control of ground water contamination at an active uranium mine. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 5, no. 2:75–81.

VHITE, W. B. 1969. Conceptual models for carbonate aquifers. *Ground Water* 7, no. 3:15–22.

———. 1970. The central Kentucky karst. *Geographical Review* 60:88–115.

VIGLEY, T. M. L. 1975. Carbon 14 dating of groundwater from closed and open systems. *Water Resources Research* 11:324–28.

VILKINSON, C. F. 1986. Western water law in transition. *Journal, American Water Works Association* no. 78, 10:34–47.

'ILLIAMS, J. R. 1970. *Ground water in the permafrost regions of Alaska.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 696.

'ILSON, J. W. 1970. Integration of radar and rain gauge data for improved rainfall measurements. *Journal of Applied Meteorology* 9:489–97.

ILSON, L. G. 1983. Monitoring in the vadose zone: Part II. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 3, no. 1:155–66.

ILSON, M. P., D. N. PETERSON, & T. F. OSTRYE. 1983. Gravity exploration of a buried valley in the Appalachian plateau. *Ground Water* 21:589–96.

NOGRAD, I. J., & W. THORDARSON. 1975. *Hydrogeologic and hydrochemical framework, south central great basin, with special reference to the Nevada test site.* U.S. Geological Professional Paper 712-C.

NTER, T. C. 1973. *Hydrogeology of glacial drift, Mesabi iron range, northeastern Minnesota.* U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2029-A.

—. 1976. *Numerical simulation analysis of the interaction of lakes and groundwaters.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1001.

—. 1977. Classification of the hydrogeologic settings of lakes in the north central United States. *Water Resources Research* 13:753–67.

———. 1978. Numerical simulation of steady-state three-dimensional groundwater flow near lakes. *Water Resources Research* 14:245–54.

———. 1981. Effects of water-table configuration on seepage through lakebeds. *Limnology and Oceanography* 26:925–34.

———. 1983. The interaction of lakes with variably saturated porous media. *Water Resources Research* 19:1203–18.

WINTERS V. UNITED STATES. 1908. 207 US 564.

WISCONSIN V. MICHELS PIPELINE CONSTRUCTORS, INC. 1974. 63 Wis.2d 278.

WISCONSIN ET AL. V. ILLINOIS ET AL. 1967. 388 US 426.

WOBBER, F. J. 1967. Fracture traces in Illinois. *Photogrammetric Engineering* 33:499–506.

WOESSNER, W. W. 1998. Changing views of ground-water stream interaction. In *Proceedings of the Joint Meeting of the XXVIII Congress of the International Association of Hydrogeologists and the Annual Meeting of the American Institute of Hydrology,* ed. E. J. Van Brahana, Y. Eckstein, L. W. Ongley, R. Schneider, & J. E. Moore, 1–6. St. Paul, Minn.: American Institute of Hydrology.

———. 2000. Stream and fluvial plain ground-water interactions: Rescaling hydrogeologic thought. *Ground Water* 38, no. 3:423–29.

WOOD, W. W. 1999. Water use and consumption: What are the realities? *Ground Water* 37, no. 3:321–22.

WOOD, W. W., & W. E. SANFORD. 1995. Chemical and isotopic methods for quantifying ground-water recharge in a regional, semiarid environment. *Ground Water* 33, no. 3:458–68.

WYLIE, A., & S. MAGNUSON. 1995. Spreadsheet modeling of slug tests using the van der Kamp method. *Ground Water* 33, no. 2:326–29.

XU, M., & Y. ECKSTEIN. 1995. Use of weighted least-squares method in evaluation of the relationship between dispersivity and field scale. *Ground Water* 33, no. 6:905–08.

YANG, Y. J., & T. M. GATES. 1997. Wellbore skin effect in slug-test data analysis for low permeability geologic materials. *Ground Water* 35, no. 6:931–37.

YATES, M. V. 1985. Septic tank density and groundwater contamination. *Ground Water* 23:586–91.

YAZICIGIL, H., & L. V. A. SENDLEIN. 1982. Surface geophysical techniques in ground-water monitoring. *Ground Water Monitoring Review* 2, no. 1:56–62.

YOUNG, H. L. 1976. *Digital computer model of the sandstone aquifer in southeastern Wisconsin.* Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission, Technical Report 16.

YOUNG, H. L., ET AL. 1986. Northern midwest regional aquifer system study. In *Regional aquifer-system analysis program of the U.S. Geological Survey.* U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1002, 72–87.

YOUNG, R. A., & J. D. BREDEHOEFT. 1972. Digital computer simulation for solving management problems of con-

junctive ground-water and surface-water systems. *Water Resources Research* 8:533–56.

ZHENG, CHUNMIAO. 1990. *MT3D: A modular three-dimensional transport model for simulation of advection, dispersion and chemical reactions of contaminants in groundwater systems.* Report to the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Ada, Ok, 170 pages.

ZHENG, CHUNMIAO, & G. D. BENNETT. 1995. *Applied contaminant transport modeling.* New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 440 pages.

ZIMMERMAN, U., ET AL. 1960. Tracers determine movement of soil moisture and evapotranspiration. *Science* 152:346–47.

ZOHDY, A. A. R. 1965. Geoelectric and seismic refraction investigations near San José, California. *Ground Water* 3, no. 3:41–48.

ZOHDY, A. A. R., G. P. EATON, & D. R. MABEY. 1974. Application of surface geophysics to ground-water investigations. In *Techniques of water-resources investigations.* U.S. Geological Survey, Book 2, Chap. D1.

ZURAWSKI, A. 1978. *Summary appraisals of the nation's groundwater resources—Tennessee region.* U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 813-L.

INDEX

Ablation till, 286
Absolute humidity, 24
Active layer, 323
Activity coefficient, 350
Acton v. Blundell, 452
Actual evapotranspiration, 28, 29, 30
Adiabatic expansion, 32
Administrative law, 449
Adsorption, 407
Adsorption isotherm, 407
Advection, 400, 401
Aeromagnetic methods, 491–492
Age dating, radioactive isotopes used for, 371–373
Aggregates (peds), 219
Alaska (Alaska region), 325, 344
  alluvial aquifers (case study), 326
Alluvial aquifers, Fairbanks, Alaska (case study), 326
Alluvial Basins region, 340
Alluvial fans, 291, 293, 294, 325, 326, 340
Alluvial Valleys region, 344
Alluvium (alluvial valleys), 289–291
  tectonic valleys, 291–297
    San Bernardino area (case study), 294–297
American rule, 452
American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM), standards and guides, 18
  sediments, 71–74
Analog models, 515, 516
Analytical models, 516
Anisotropic aquifers, regional ground-water flow in, 244–246
Anisotropic medium, 104
Appalachian Mountains, 342, 343, 423
Apparent velocities, 486
Aquifers, 95–108. *See also specific types of aquifers*
  anisotropic, regional ground-water flow in, 244–246
  Biscayne, 255
  carbonate, 312–314
  characteristics of, 100–102
  compressibility of, 103
  confined (artesian). *See* Confined aquifers
  Dakota (case study), 268
  defined, 95
  dynamic equilibrium in, 442–443
  Floridan, 255, 256, 257, 259, 260–262
  ground-water flow in. *See* Ground-water flow
  High Plains, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 341–342
  homogeneous, ground-water flow patterns in, 237–243
  management potential of, 445–447
  nonhomogeneous, regional ground-water flow in, 244–246
  perched, 96–97
  sand and gravel, 255
  semiconfined, 177
  surficial, 255
  transmissivity of, 100
  unconfined (water-table). *See* Unconfined aquifers (water-table aquifers)
  unconsolidated, 284–297
    alluvial valleys, 289–291
Aquifer tests, 166
  design of, 210–213
  with observation wells, 212–213
  single-well, 210–212
Aquifuges, 95
Aquitards, 95, 156
Arizona, ground-water law (case study), 454
Arizona v. California, 451
Artesian aquifers, 96
Artificial recharge, 459–460
Ash Meadows area (Amargosa Desert Basin), 253
Atlantic and Gulf Coastal Plain region, 343
Atmospheric Environment Service, Canadian, 33
Atmospheric pressure, 113
Average linear velocity, 125
Azraq Basin, Jordan (case study), 327

Bail-down tests. *See* Slug tests
Bailers, 396
Barrier boundary, 208
Basalt flows, 321, 322
Basal till, 286
Baseflow, 5, 39, 41
  ground-water recharge from, 51–55
Baseflow recession hydrographs, 42
Baseflow recessions, 42–44
Basset v. Salisbury Manufacturing Company, Inc., 452
Belt of soil water, 225
Bernoulli equation, 115
Big Blue River (Nebraska), 46
Biodegradation, natural, 428
Bioremediation, natural and enhanced, 428
Biscayne aquifers, 255
Black Hills, 268, 270, 271, 315, 316, 341, 342
Bladder pumps, 396–397
Blind duplicates, 390
Block-centered grids, 519
Borehole geochemical probes, 397

Borehole geophysical methods, 492–505
caliper logs, 495
nuclear logging, 499–505
resistivity logging, 498
single-point resistance, 495
spontaneous potential, 498–499
temperature logs, 495
Borehole skin, slug-test analysis and, 204
Borings, 392, 507
Bouguer anomaly value, 492
Bouguer correction, 492
Boulder zone of southern Florida, 257
Boundaries, hydrogeologic, 208
Boundary conditions for finite-difference grids, 520–521
Boussinesq equation, 129
Bouwer and Rice slug-test method, 197–200
Bright Angel Shale, 300, 302
Budgets, ground-water, 443–445
Bulk density, 502
Bulk modulus, 68
Bunker Hill Basin, 294, 295, 297, 478
Buried lenses, regional ground-water flow and, 243–244
Buried valley aquifer at Dayton, Ohio (case study), 289
Business aspects of hydrogeology, 14–15

California v. Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, 451
Caliper logs, 495
Calorie, 5
Capillarity, 223
Capillary forces, 223
Capillary fringe, 5, 224
Cappaert v. United States, 450–451
Caprock, 322
Capture zone analysis, 436–438
Carbonate aquifers, 312–314
Carbonate equilibrium in water, 355–361
with external pH control, 359–361
with fixed partial pressure of CO2, 358–359
Carbonate reactions, 356–357
Carbonate rocks, 310–319
Cation-exchange capacity (CEC), 368
Cave systems (cavernous zones), 311–312, 314
Cementation, 307
CERCLA (Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980) (P.L. 96-510), 456–459
Cesspools, 416–418
Chemical activities, 350
Chemical analyses, presentation of results of, 374–381
Chemical spills, 420–423
Chemistry of water, 346–381
carbonate equilibrium, 355–361
chemical activities, 350–353
common-ion effect, 350
ion exchange, 366–368
ionization constant of water and weak acids, 353–355
isotope hydrology, 368–373
law of mass action and, 348–350
major ion chemistry, 373–374
measurement units used in, 347
oxidation potential, 362–366
presentation of results of chemical analyses, 374–381
thermodynamic relationships, 361–362
types of chemical reactions, 348
City of Los Angeles v. City of San Fernando, 454
City of Los Angeles v. Glendale, 454
Clastic dikes, 302
Clastic sedimentary rocks, 307–310
Clean Water Act Amendments of 1977 (P.L. 95-217), 455
Climatic data, sources of, 16–17
Climatic Record of the United States, 16
Climatological Data, 33
Cline v. American Aggregates, 452
Coal, 319
Coastal aquifers, fresh-water-saline-water relations in, 331
Coastal-plain aquifers, 327–331
Coastal zone of the southeastern United States, regional flow systems in (case study), 255–262
Coefficient of permeability. *See* Hydraulic conductivity
Collection lysimeters, 399
Colorado Plateau-Wyoming Basin region, 341
Colorado River, 64, 302, 341, 450, 451
Columbia Lava Plateau region, 341
Columbia River Basalts (case study), 321
Common-ion effect, 350
Common laws, 449
Compaction, 75
Complex stratigraphy, 300
Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980 (CERCLA) (P.L. 96-510), 456–459
Compressibility, of aquifers, 103
Conceptual model, 514
Condensation, 24, 32
latent heat of, 6
Cone of depression, 150, 166
Confined aquifers (artesian aquifers), 96
drawdown caused by a pumping well in completely confined aquifers, 153–156
leaky, confined aquifers, 156–163
equations of ground-water flow in, 125–128
leaky, confined. *See* Leaky, confined aquifers
Confined-flow carbonate aquifers, 313
Confined ground water, 97
Confining layers, 95
Conjunctive use of ground and surface water, 464–465
Connate water, 248
Conservation of energy, law of (first law of thermodynamics), 125
Constant-head boundary, 133
Constant-head permeameters, 90–91
Contact springs, 248
Contamination of ground water, 13–14, 385, 400, 415–426
by chemical spills and leaking underground tanks, 420–423
by landfills, 418–420
mining and, 423–425
restoration of contaminated sites, 426–428
by septic tanks and cesspools, 416–418
at a Superfund site (case study), 428–436
from uranium tailings ponds (case study), 424–425
Continuity principle (law of mass conservation), 125
Control volume, 126
Cooper-Bredehoeft-Papadopulos method, 190–193

Cooper-Jacob straight-line method, 173–176
Critical angle, 483
Cryptosporidium, 387
Crystalline rocks, permeability of, 89
Cubic packing, 71
Current meters, 55–56
Cyclic storage, ground-water mining and, 463–464

Dakota aquifer, 268–272
Darcian velocity, 82. *See also* specific discharge
Darcy, 84
Darcy's experiment, 81
Darcy's law, 81–82, 90, 122–125, 516
  applicability of, 123–124
Databases, 16–17
Davies equation, 352
Dayton, Ohio, hydrogeology of a buried valley aquifer at (case study), 289
Dead carbon, 372
Debye-Hückel equation, 351
Defined, hydrogeology, defined, 3
Degradation of organic compounds, 415
Dehydrohalogenation, 415
Dense nonaqueous phase liquids (DNAPLs), 426
Density, 67, 68
Depression springs, 248
Depression storage, 5, 38, 40
Desert areas, ground water in, 326–327
Dew point, 24
Diagenesis, 75
Diffuse-flow carbonate aquifers, 312, 313
Diffusion, 400–401
Dipole-dipole array, 475
Direct-current electrical resistivity, 474–479
Direct precipitation, 39
Dirichlet condition, 520, 521
Discharge areas, 237
Discharge velocity. *See* specific discharge
Dispersion, 400
  hydrodynamic, 402–406
  mechanical, 401–402
Dissolved oxygen levels, 386
Distribution coefficient, 408
DNAPLs (dense nonaqueous phase liquids), 426
Dolomite, 310, 311, 313, 317, 318
Drainage basin (catchment), 8
Drawdown, caused by a pumping well, 153–165
Drinking-water standards, 389
Dry bulk density of soil, 221
Duplicate samples, 390
Dupuit assumptions, 140
Dupuit equation, 141
Duration curves, 50–51
Dynamic equilibrium, 247
  in natural aquifers, 442–443
Dynamic viscosity, 68, 83

E. coli, 387
Eau Claire Formation, 300
Effective grain size, 74
Effective porosity, 70
Effective stress, 102–103
Effective uniform depth (EUD) of precipitation, 34
Eh, 362
Eh-pH diagrams, 363–366
Elasticity, 100
Elastic storage coefficient, 101
Electrical models, 515
Electrical sounding, 476
Electromagnetic conductivity, 479–482
Elevation head, 118, 120, 121, 122
El Paso v. Reynolds, 453
Energy, 66
  gravitational potential, 114–115
  kinetic, 114
Energy-source function of aquifers, 446
Energy transformations, 5–7
English rule, 452
English system, 67, 68
  conversion factors between SI system and, 69
English units, 66
Environmental Data Service, U.S., 33
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), 2, 13, 386–389
  Web sites, 16
Environmental Visualization System (EVS), 530
Equilibrium, dynamic, 247
Equilibrium concentration, 348
Equilibrium constant, 349, 353, 354
Equilibrium constant (K), 348–349
Equivalent weight, 347
Ethical aspects of hydrogeology, 15–16
European Community, water-quality standards of, 389
Eutrophication, 386
Evaporation, 5, 24–27
Evapotranspiration, 5, 28–32
  actual, 28, 29, 30
  potential, 28, 29, 30, 31
EVS (Environmental Visualization System), 530
External pressure, 113

Fairbanks, Alaska, alluvial aquifers (case study), 326
Falling-head permeameters, 91–92
Faults, as aquifer boundaries (case study), 303–304
Faults (faulting), 302–306
Fault springs, 248
Federal Insecticide, Fungicide and Rodenticide Act (FIFRA), 458
Federal Water Pollution Control Act of 1972 (P.L. 92-500), 455
Fick's laws, 400
Field blanks, 390
Field capacity, 226–227
Field hydrogeologists, responsibilities of, 508–510
"Filter-plant" function of aquifers, 446
Finite-difference grids, 519
Finite-difference models, 519–524
  boundary conditions for, 520–521
  finite-difference grids for, 519
  methods of solution for steady-state case for square grid spacing, 521–523
  methods of solution for the transient case, 523–524
  notation for, 519
Finite-element models, 524–525
First law of thermodynamics (law of conservation of energy), 125
Floridan aquifer, 255, 256, 257, 259, 260–262
  chemical geohydrology of (case study), 377
Flow, ground-water. *See* Ground-water flow
Flow equation, for leaky, confined aquifers, 156
Flow equation and, 156
Flow lines, 132–133
FLOWNET (computer program), 279
Flow nets, 133–134, 236–237
Folding, 304–308
Folds (folding), 302–306
Force, 66

Force potential, 121
Fossil water, 248
Fractionation, 368
Fractures (fracturing), 307–308, 309–311, 313, 314, 317, 318
  secondary permeability through, 89
Fracture springs, 249
Fracture-trace analysis, 469–474
Fracture traces, 317
Frazier v. Brown, 452
Free energy, 361–362
Free-flow carbonate aquifers, 312
Frequency domain electromagnetics (FDEM), 481
Fresh-water-saline-water relations, 331–337

Gaining streams, 46–48
Gamma-gamma radiation, 502
Gas-monitoring wells, 398
Geographic Information System (GIS), 530–531
Geohydrology, 3
Geologic log, 392
Geophysical surveys, surficial methods of, 474
  direct-current electrical resistivity, 474–479
  electromagnetic conductivity, 479–482
  gravity and aeromagnetic methods, 491–492
  ground-penetrating radar and magnetometer surveys, 490–491
  seismic methods, 483–490
Geophysical well logging, 492–505. *See also* Borehole geophysical methods
Giardia lamblia, 387
Gibbs free energy, 361–362
Glacial till, 285–286
Glaciated Central Region, 342–343
Glaciated terrane, 285–289
Global water issues, 465–467
Gouge, 302
Gradient
  of hydraulic head, 129–131
  of potentiometric surface, 107–108
Grain size, effective, 74
Grain-size distribution of sediments, 71–72
Gravimetric water content of soil, 220, 221
Gravitational potential energy, 114–115
Gravity, 113
Gravity drainage, 5
Gravity potential, 228
Gravity surveys, 491–492
Great Basin area, 292, 293, 294
  regional flow systems in (case study), 250–254
Ground-penetrating radar surveys, 490–491
Ground water, 5
  confined, 97
  conjunctive use of surface water and, 464–465
  unconfined, 97
Ground-water. *See* Contamination of ground water
Ground-water basin, 9
Ground-water budgets, 443–445
Ground-water contamination. *See* Contamination of ground water
Ground-water divides, 9
Ground-water flow, 5, 113–145
  Darcy's law, 122–125
  direction of, with respect to grad *h*, 131–132
  equations of, 125–129
    in confined aquifers, 125–128
    in unconfined aquifers, 129
  flow lines and flow nets, 132–134
  head in water of variable density, 118–121
  hydraulic head, 115–118
  mechanical energy, 114–115
  outside forces acting on ground water, 113
  refraction of flow lines and, 136–138
  solution of flow equations, 129
  steady
    in an unconfined aquifer, 140–144
    in a confined aquifer, 138–140
  to wells, 150–213. *See also* Slug tests, determination of aquifer parameters with; Time-drawdown data, determining aquifer parameters from
    aquifer-test design, 210–213
    basic assumptions, 151
    in a completely confined aquifer, 153–156
    computing drawdown, 153–165
    estimating aquifer transmissivity from specific capacity data, 205–207
    hydrogeologic boundaries and, 208–209
    intersecting pumping cones and well interference, 207–208
    in a leaky, confined aquifer, 156–163
    partial penetration of wells, 188–190
    radial flow, 151–153
    in unconfined aquifers, 164
Ground-water mining and cyclic storage, 463–464
Ground-water monitoring, 391–397
Ground Water On-Line (GWOL), 17
Ground-water recharge from baseflow, 51–55
Ground-water regions of the United States, 338–344
Ground-water restoration, 426–428
Ground-water studies, 283
Grout curtain, 427

Hantush inflection-point method, 180–183
Hantush-Jacob formula, 158
Hantush partial-penetration method, 189
Hawaiian Islands, volcanic domes in (case study), 322–323
Hawaiian Islands region, 344
Hawthorn formation, 255, 256, 257, 260, 344
Hazen method, 86
Head. *See* Hydraulic head
Hele-Shaw models (viscous-fluid models), 515
Heterogeneous formations, 104
High Plains aquifer, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 341–342
High Plains region, 341
Hollow-stem augers, 392
Homogeneous aquifers, ground-water flow patterns in, 237–243
Homogeneous formations, 104
Horizontal profiling, 476
Horton overland flow, 38, 41, 42, 45, 46. *See also* Overland flow
Hourly Precipitation Data, 33
Hualapai Plateau area, 231, 300, 301
Huber v. Merkel, 452
Humidity
  absolute, 24
  relative, 24
  saturation, 24

Hvorslev slug-test method, 193–200
Hydraulic conductivity, 81–90
  case study (estimates in glacial outwash), 88–89
  Darcy's experiment and, 81–82
  defined, 82
  equation for, 82–84
  horizontal, 105
  measurement of, 90. *See also* Permeameters
  unsaturated, 228
  vertical, 106
Hydraulic gradient, 82, 122
Hydraulic head, 115–118
  Darcy's law and, 122
  elevation, 118, 120, 121, 122
  force potential and, 121
  gradient of, 129–131
  point-water, 118–121
  in water of variable density, 118–121
Hydrochemical facies, 374
Hydrodynamic dispersion, 402–406
Hydrogenolysis, 415
Hydrogeologic studies, 284
Hydrogeologists, 11
Hydrogeology
  application to human concerns, 12–14
  applied, 11
  business aspects of, 14–15
  ethical aspects of, 15–16
  information sources on, 16
Hydrographs
  storm, 44–46
  stream, 42–48
Hydrologic cycle, 4–5, 24–60
Hydrologic equation, 8–9, 25
Hydrology, 3
Hydrophytes, 28

Igneous rocks, intrusive, 319–320
Illinois, Northeastern, sandstone aquifer of Southeastern Wisconsin and, 297–299, 308, 343, 443, 464
Image well, 208
Indiana, 88, 286, 314, 318
Inductive resistivity, 481
Infiltration, 5
Infiltration capacity, 37–38, 39
Information sources on hydrogeology, 16–18
Interception of precipitation, 37
Intercept time, 485
Interflow, 5, 39, 40
Intermediate flow systems, 240
Intermediate zone, 225
Intrinsic permeability, 83–84
Ion activity product (Kiap), 353
Ion exchange, 366–368
Ion-exchange distribution coefficient, 368
Ionic strength, 350–351
Ionization constant of water and weak acids, 353–355
Ions, 373–374
Irreversible reactions, 348
Irwin v. Phillips, 450
Islands, oceanic, fresh-water-saline-water relations in, 335–337
Isohyetal lines, 34, 35
Isotope hydrology, 368–373
Isotopes
  radioactive, 368
  radiogenic, 368
  stable, 368–371
Isotropic medium, 104

Jacob straight-line distance-drawdown method, 176–177
Joint and several liability, concept of, 457
Joint springs, 249
Juvenile water, 248

Kansas Geological Survey guidelines, 204–205
Karst regions, 54, 207, 311, 312, 314–318
Karst springs, 249–250
Kemmerer sampler, 397
Kinetic energy, 114
Kipp method, 204
Knockout plug, 393
Konikow and Bredehoeft model (MOC), 526

Lake Michigan, 39, 286, 298, 386, 387, 443, 451
Lakes
  interaction with ground water, 272–278
  permafrost and, 324
Laminar flow, 123
Landfills, 418–420
Land pans, 25
Latent heat of condensation, 6
Latent heat of fusion, 6
Latent heat of vaporization, 6
Lava, 78
Lava flows, 321–322
Law of mass conservation, 8
Laws
  regulating quantity of ground water, 452–454
  regulating quantity of surface water, 449–452
  regulating the quality of water, 455–456
Leachate, 418
Leachate-collection system, 420
Leakage rate, 128, 156
Leaking underground tanks, 420–423
Leaky, confined aquifers
  drawdown caused by a pumping well in, 156–163
  nonequilibrium radial flow in
    with no storage in the aquitard, 177–183
    with storage in the aquitard, 183–184
Leaky confining layers, 95
Legal issues, 449–459. *See also* Laws
Legislative law, 449
Length, 67
Lignite, 319
Limestone, 310–319
Lineaments, 469
Lined landfills, 420
Lithified sedimentary rocks, 297–319
  carbonate rocks, 310–319
  coal and lignite, 319
  complex stratigraphy, 300–302
  faults as aquifer boundaries (case study), 303
  in folds and faults, 302–306
  sandstone aquifer of Northeastern Illinois-Southeastern Wisconsin (case study), 297–299
Lithologic well log, 492
Local ground-water flow systems, 239–242
Losing streams, 46–48
Lost River (Indiana), 314
Lower confining unit, 257
Lower Floridan aquifer, 256
Lysimeters, 30–31
  collection, 399
  suction, 399

Magmatic water, 5, 248
Magnetics surveys, 491–492
Magnetometer surveys, 490–491
Major constituents of water, 386

Mammoth Cave area (Kentucky), 250, 314, 315
Management potential of aquifers, 445–447
Manning equation, 58–59
Manning roughness coefficient, 58, 59
Maquoketa Shale, 297, 298, 299, 443
Mass, 67, 114
Mass action, law of, 348–350
Mass conservation
  law of, 8
  law of (continuity principle), 125
Mass transport of solutes, 400–415
Mathematical models, 516
Maui tunnels, 322
Maximum contaminant level goals (MCLGs), 389
Maximum contaminant levels (MCLs), 389
McDonald and Harbaugh model. *See* MODFLOW
Measurement units, 347
Mechanical energy, 113, 114–115
Mesh-centered grids, 519
Metamorphic rocks
  intrusive, 319–320
  porosity of, 77–78
Meteoric water line, 369
Methyl tertiary butyl ether (MTBE), 2
Meyboom method (seasonal recession method), 51–52
Michigan, Lake, 39
Micrograms per liter (g/L), 347
Middle confining layer, 256
Milliequivalents per liter (meq/L), 347
Milligrams per liter (mg/L), 347
Mining, 423–425
Mining function of aquifers, 446
Minor constituents of water, 386
MOC (Konikow and Bredehoeft model), 526
Model calibration, 518
Model field verification, 518
Models, ground-water, 514–531
  analog, 515, 516
  analytical, 516
  applications of, 516–517
  data requirements for, 517–519
  defined, 514
  electrical, 515
  finite-difference, 519–524
  finite-element, 524–525
  numerical, 516
  physical scale, 515
  stochastic, 516
  use of published models, 525–527
Model verification, 518
MODFLOW (McDonald and Harbaugh model), 526, 528–530
  Visual, 530
Moisture, soil. *See* soil moisture
Moisture potential, 228, 229, 231
Molality, 347
Mole (mol), 347
Molecular attraction, 113
Monitoring
  ground-water, 391–397
  vadose-zone, 397
Mono Lake, 9–11
Monthly Record of Observations, 33
Muav Limestone Formation, 300
Muddy River Springs, 251
Multilevel sampling devices, 394–395
Mutual-prescription doctrine, 453

NAPLs (nonaqueous phase liquids), 426
National Audubon Society v. Superior Court of Alpine County, 450
National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (P.L. 91-190), 455
National Ground Water Association (NGWA), 17
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), 16
National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration, 33
Natural-attenuation landfills, 418
Natural biodegradation, 428
Natural gamma radiation log, 501
Nebraska, 46, 232, 263, 264, 265, 267, 268, 341, 342, 453
Negative skin, 204
Nernst equation, 363
Neumann condition, 520, 521
Neutron logging, 501
Nevada Test Site, 253
Newark Basin (case study), 309–310
Newton (N), 67
NEXRAD radar system, 33
Niles Sand and Gravel Co., Inc. v. Alameda County Water District, 454
Node points, 519
No-flow boundary, 133
Nonaqueous phase liquids (NAPLs), 426
Noncyclical ground water, 248
Nonequilibrium equation, 154
Nonequilibrium flow conditions (nonequilibrium radial flow), 169–183
  in confined aquifers
    Cooper-Jacob straight-line method, 173–176
    Jacob straight-line distance-drawdown method, 176–177
    leaky, confined aquifers with no storage in the aquitard, 177–180, 180–183
    Theis method, 169–172
  in leaky aquifers with storage in the aquitard, 183
  in unconfined aquifers, 184–188
Nonequilibrium type curve, 170
Nonglaciated Central Region, 342
Nonhomogeneous aquifers, regional ground-water flow in, 244–246
Normal stresses, 113
Northeast and Superior Uplands region, 343
Northeastern Illinois-Southeastern Wisconsin, sandstone aquifer of, 297–299, 308, 343, 443, 464
Nuclear logging, 499–505
Numerical models, 516

Observation wells, aquifer tests with, 212
Oceanic islands, fresh-water-saline-water relations in, 335–337
Office of Ground Water and Drinking Water, 16
Ogalalla Formation, 263
Ogallala Formation, 268, 341, 446, 453, 464
Overdamped response slug tests, 190–197
  Cooper-Bredehoeft-Papadopulos method for a confined aquifer, 190–193
  Hvorslev method, 193–200
Overdraft, 453
Overland flow, 5, 38–42, 44–46, 51, 53
  Horton, 38, 41, 42, 45, 46
Oxidation potential, 362–366
Oxidation-reduction reactions, 362–363
Oxidations, 415

Partial penetration of wells, 188–190
Particle density of soil, 221
Parts per billion (ppb), 347

Parts per million (ppm), 347
Pasadena v. Alhambra, 453
Passaic formation (New Jersey) (case study), 309–310
Peds (aggregates), 219
Peer review, 511
Pendular water, 78
Pennsylvania, central, 318, 470, 472
Perched aquifers, 96–97
Perched ground water, 97
Permafrost regions, 323–326
Permafrost table, 323, 324
Permeability
  coefficient of. *See* Hydraulic conductivity
  intrinsic, 83–84
  of rocks, 89–90
  of sediments, 84–89
Permeameters, 90–93
  constant-head, 90–91
  falling-head, 91
Phreatic caves, 312
Phreatophytes, 28, 274
Physical scale models, 515
Phytometer, 28
Piedmont-Blue Ridge region, 343
Piezometer, 115, 116
Piezometer nest, 507
Piezometers, 507
Piezometric surface. *See* Potentiometric surface
Pingos, 324
Pipeline function of aquifers, 446
Piper diagram, 374–376
PLASM (Prickett Lonquist Aquifer Simulation Model), 526
Plume treatment, 427–428
Plutonic rocks, porosity of, 77–78
Point-water head, 118–121
Polar coordinates, 151
Pollution, 385. *See also* Contamination of ground water; Quality of water
Pore spaces, 69
Pore-water tension, in the vadose zone, 225
Porosity, 69–78
  defined, 69
  effective, 70
  of plutonic and metamorphic rocks, 77–78
  primary, 76
  secondary, 76
  of sedimentary rocks, 75–76
  of sediments, 70–75
  of soil, 220–222
  of volcanic rocks, 78
Potential (potential energy)
  Darcy's law and, 122
  force, hydraulic head and, 121
  gravitational, 114–115
  spontaneous, 498–499
Potential evapotranspiration, 28, 29, 30, 31
Potentiometric surface, 96
  gradient of, 107–108
Potentiometric-surface maps, 98, 99
Pound (lb), 67
Precambrian/Cambrian unconformity, 77
Precipitation, 2
  direct, 39
  effective depth of, 33–37
  events during, 37–42
  formation of, 32
  hydrologic cycle and, 4–5
  measurement of, 25–26, 32–33
Precipitation gauges, 32–33
Pressure, 68, 114
Pressure head, 116
Price-type meter, 56
Prickett Lonquist Aquifer Simulation Model (PLASM), 526
Primary porosity, 76
Prior-appropriation doctrine, 450
Problems, end-of-chapter, 18–20
  solving with spreadsheets, 20–21
Professional organizations, 17–18
Project reports, 510
Public Law 93-523 (Safe Drinking Water Act), 389, 446, 455–456
Public trust doctrine, 450
Puerto Rico region, 344
Pumping cones, intersecting, well interference and, 207–208
Pyroclastic deposits, 78

Quality assurance/quality control (QA/QC) program, 390
Quality of water, 385–438
  collection of water samples and, 389–391
  laws regulating, 455–456
  mass transport of solutes and, 400–415
  monitoring of ground water, 391–397
  protection of, in aquifers, 460–463
  standards for, 388–389
  vadose-zone monitoring and, 397
Quantification limits, 390

Radar, ground-penetrating (GPR), 490
Radial flow, 151–153
  nonequilibrium. *See* Nonequilibrium flow conditions
  steady
    in confined aquifers, 166–168
    in unconfined aquifers, 168–169
Radial symmetry, 151
Radioactive isotopes, 368
  for age dating, 371–373
Radiogenic isotopes, 368
Rain. *See* Precipitation
Rainfall-runoff relationships, 48–49
Rain gauges, 25–26, 32, 33
Rational equation, 48–49
RBCA (risk-based corrective action), 426
Recent alluvium, 294
Recession curve displacement method (Rorabaugh method), 53–55
Recharge
  artificial, 459–460
  water-table, 231–234
Recharge areas, 237
Recharge basins, 459
Recharge boundary, 208
Recharge wells, 460
Reductions, 415
Refraction of flow lines, 136–138
Regional ground-water flow (regional flow systems), 236–279, 240, 263
  coastal zone of the southeastern United States (case study), 255–262
  Dakota aquifer (case study), 268–272
  geology of, 250–272
  Great Basin area (case study), 250–254
  interactions with lakes or wetlands and streams, 272–278
  noncyclical ground water and, 248
  springs and, 248
  steady, in unconfined aquifers, 237–247
    buried lenses and, 243–244
    ground-water flow patterns in homogeneous aquifers, 237–243
    nonhomogeneous and anisotropic aquifers, 244–246
    recharge and discharge areas, 237
  transient, 247–248

Regolith, 319
Regulations, 14
Relative humidity, 24
Reports, project, 510–511
Resistivity
  direct-current electrical, 474–479
  inductive, 481
  logging of, 498
Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA), 13–14
Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 (RCRA) (P.L. 94-580), 456
Restoration of contaminated sites, 426–428
Retardation, 400, 407–414
Return flow, 41
Reverse type curve, 170
Reversible reactions, 348
Reynolds number, 123
Rhombohedral packing, 71
Riparian doctrine, 449
Risk-based corrective action (RBCA), 426
Rocks
  metamorphic
    intrusive, 319–320
    porosity of, 77–78
  permeability of, 89–90
  plutonic, porosity of, 77
  sedimentary. *See* Sedimentary rocks
  specific yield *(Sy)* of, 78–81
  volcanic, porosity of, 78
Rorabaugh method (recession curve displacement method), 53–55
Runoff, 5

Safe Drinking Water Act (Public Law 93-523), 389, 446, 455–456
Safe yield, 447–449, 453
Saline-water encroachment, 329
San Bernardino area, 294, 295, 296, 297, 478
Sand and gravel aquifers, 255
Sand Hills region, 232, 341
Sandstone aquifer, 517
  of Northeastern Illinois-Southeastern Wisconsin, 297–299, 308, 343, 443, 464
San Jacinto Fault, 294, 296, 297
Saturated-unsaturated transport (SUTRA), 526
Saturation humidity, 24
Saturation ratio of soil, 220
Scale effect, 404
Scale models, 515
Schlumberger array, 475
Schoeller semilogarithmic diagram, 377
Seasonal recession method (Meyboom method), 51–52
Secondary porosity, 76
Second law of thermodynamics, 126
Sedimentary rocks. *See also* Lithified sedimentary rocks
  clastic, 307–310
  defined, 75
  permeability of, 89
  porosity of, 75–76
Sediments
  defined, 69
  permeability of, 84–89
  porosity and classification of, 70–75
Seepage velocity, 125
Seismic methods, 483–490
Seismic reflection method, 483
Seismic refraction method, 483
Semiconfined aquifers, 177
Sensitivity analysis, 518
Septic tanks, 416–418
Seymour Recycling Corporation (case study), 428–436
Shape factor, 83
Shear stresses, 113
Sheet piling, 427
Shelby tube, 392
Silurian dolomite, 298, 313, 318
Silurian limestone, 443
Single-point resistance, 495
Single-well aquifer tests, 210–212
Sinkhole springs, 249
SI system, 66, 67, 68
  conversion factors between English system and, 69
Site evaluations, hydrogeologic, 505–508
Skin
  negative, 204
  slug-test analysis and, 204
Slug tests, determination of aquifer parameters with, 190–205
  Bouwer and Rice slug-test method, 197–200
  Kansas Geological Survey guidelines, 204–205
  overdamped response slug tests, 190–197
  skin effect, 204
  underdamped response slug tests, 200–204
Slurry walls, 427
SMCRA (Surface Mining Control and Reclamation Act) (P.L. 95-87), 457
Snow, measurement of, 32–33
Sodium-adsorption ratio (SAR), 367
Soil, 219
  porosity and water content of, 220–222
Soil moisture, 219–233
  capillarity, capillary fringe, and, 223–225
  field capacity and, 226
  measurement of, 221–222
  pore-water tension in the vadose zone and, 225
  soil water and, 225–228
  unsaturated flow and, 228–231
  wilting point and, 227–228
Soil texture, 219
Soil water, 225–228
  transpiration and, 28
Solar radiation, 5, 6, 7, 25, 26
Solubility product, 349
Soundings, 475
Source bed, 157
Source-control measures, 426–427
South Carolina, 256, 257, 258, 262, 302, 344, 370
Southeast Coastal Plain region, 344
Southeastern United States, regional flow systems in the coastal zone of the (case study), 255–262
Specific capacity, estimating aquifer transmissivity from data on, 205–207
Specific discharge, 82, 125
Specific retention *(Sr)*, 79
Specific storage *(Ss)*, 101
Specific weight, 67, 83
Specific yield *(Sy)*, 78–81
Specific yield *(Sy)*, 102
Spiked samples, 390
Spills, chemical, 420–423
Split-spoon sampler, 392
Spontaneous potential, 498–499
Sporhase v. Nebraska, 453
Springs, 248–250
  contact, 248
  depression, 248
  fault, 248

joint (fracture), 249
[redacted], 249–250
[redacted]hole, 249
table isotopes, 368–371
tagnation points, 240
tatutory law, 449
teady radial flow
in confined aquifers, 166–168
in unconfined aquifers, 168–169
teady-state conditions, determining aquifer parameters in, 166–169
tem flow, 37
tiff pattern, 376–377
tochastic models, 516
torage coefficient (storativity), 100–101
torage function of aquifers, 446
torativity, 153
torm hydrographs, 44–46
treamflow
data on, 16
measurement of, 55–58
tream gauging, 55–57
tream hydrographs, 42–48
treamlines, 123
treams
gaining and losing, 46–48
interaction with ground water, 272–278
[redacted]frost and, 324
tres[redacted])
effective, 102–103
normal, 113
shear, 113
total, 102
rict liability, 457
ıblimation, 6
ıbstitution, 415
ıction lysimeters, 399
ıperfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 (SARA), 456–457
ıpply function of aquifers, 445–446
rface Mining Control and Reclamation Act (SMCRA) (P.L. 95-87), 457
rface water, 5
ɔnjunctive use of ground water and, 464–465
aws regulating quantity of, 449–452
rficial aquifer, 255
TRA (saturated-unsaturated transport), 526
Suwannee Limestone, 314
Swallow holes, 311

Tectonic valleys, 291–297
San Bernardino area (case study), 294–297
Temperature logs, 495
Tensiometer, 225
Tension, 223
Test wells, 507
Theis equations, 154
nonequilibrium radial flow in confined aquifers, 169–172
Theis type curve, 170
Thermodynamic relationships, 361–362
Thiessen method, 34, 35
Throughflow, 41
Tidal effects, 337–338
Time, 67
Time-distance curve, 484
Time domain electromagnetic (TDEM) technique, 481
Time-drawdown data, determining aquifer parameters from, 166–190. *See also* Nonequilibrium flow conditions
steady-state conditions, 166–169
Time of concentration, 48
Topographic divides, 8
Total dissolved solids (TDS), 386
Total stress, 102
Toxic Substances Control Act (TOSCA) (P.L. 94-469 as amended by P.L. 97-129), 457–458
Trace elements, 386
Transient flow, in regional ground-water systems, 247–248
Transmissivity, of aquifers, 100
estimating, from specific capacity data, 205
Transpiration, 5, 27–28
measurement of, 28
Travel-time curve, 484
Turbulence (turbulent flow), 123

Unconfined aquifers (water-table aquifers), 96
equations of ground-water flow in, 129
ground-water flow in, 164–165
steady radial flow, 168–169
nonequilibrium radial flow in, 184–188
steady flow in, 140–144
steady regional ground-water flow in, 237–247
Unconfined ground water, 97
Unconsolidated aquifers, 284–297
alluvial valleys, 289–291
Dayton, Ohio, buried valley aquifer (case study), 289
glaciated terrane, 285–289
Underdamped response slug test, 200–204
Underdamped response slug tests
Kipp method, 204
Van der Kamp method, 200–204
Uniformity coefficient, 74
United States Geological Survey (USGS), 16, 525
Unsaturated flow, 228–231
Unsaturated hydraulic conductivity, 228
Upconing, 461–462
Upper confining layer, 255
Upper Floridan aquifer, 256
Uranium Mill Tailings Radiation and Control Act of 1978 (UMTRCA) (P.L. 95-604 as amended by P.L. 95-106 and P.L. 97-415), 457
Uranium tailings ponds, contamination from (case study), 424–425
Urbanization, evapotranspiration and, 31–32

Vadose caves, 312
Vadose water, 5
Vadose zone (zone of aeration), 5, 219, 224
monitoring of, 397–400
pore-water tension in, 225
Van der Kamp method, 200–204
Van't Hoff equation, 362
Vapor, water, 219, 223
capillary fringe and, 224–225
Vaporization, latent heat of, 6
Velocity (of flow), 124
average linear, 125
Darcian, 82
specific discharge, 125
Verification, model, 518
Viscosity, 113
dynamic, 68, 83

Viscous-fluid models (Hele-Shaw models), 515
Visual MODFLOW, 530
Void ratio, 220
Volcanic domes (case study), 322–323
Volcanic plateaus (case study), 321
Volcanic rocks, 321–323
  porosity of, 78
Volumetric water content of soil, 220

Walton graphical method, 177–180
Wasatch Formation, 319
Water budgets, 444–445
Water-budget studies, 25, 33, 444
Water chemistry. *See* Chemistry of water
Water content, of soil, 220–222
Water quality. *See* Quality of water
Water-quality criteria, 388
Water-quality standards, 388–389
Water rights, 449
Water samples, collection of, 389–391
Water spreading, 459
Water table, 5, 93–95
Water-table aquifers (unconfined aquifers). *See* Unconfined aquifers
Water-table boundary, 133
Water-table caves, 312
Water-table maps, 98, 99, 100, 108, 130
Water-table recharge, 231–234
Water vapor, 219, 223
  capillary fringe and, 224–225
Weathering, 90
Weight, 67
Weirs, 57–58
Well development, 204, 396
Well-head protection zones, 436
Wells
  gas-monitoring, 398
  ground-water flow to, 150–213. *See also* Slug tests, determination of aquifer parameters with; Time-drawdown data, determining aquifer parameters from
  aquifer-test design, 210–213
  basic assumptions, 151
  in a completely confined aquifer, 153–156
  computing drawdown, 153–165
  estimating aquifer transmissivity from specific capacity data, 205–207
  hydrogeologic boundaries and, 208–209
  intersecting pumping cones and well interference, 207–208
  in a leaky, confined aquifer, 156–163
  partial penetration of wells, 188–190
  radial flow, 151–153
  in unconfined aquifers, 164
  ground-water monitoring, 391–396
  withdrawing water samples from, 396–397
  plume-stabilization, 427–428
  recharge, 460
  test, 507
Western Mountain Ranges region, 338–340
Wetlands, interaction with g[redacted]d water, 272–278
White River area (Nevada), 251, 43(431
Willow trees, 274
Wilting point, 28, 227–228
Winters doctrine, 450
Winters v. United States, 450
Wisconsin, 50, 51, 109, 286, 313
  ground-water protection law (cas study), 458–459
  Southeastern, sandstone aquifer (Northeastern Illinois and, 297–300
Wisconsin et al. v. Illinois et al., 451
Wisconsin v. Michels Pipeline Constructors, Inc., 452
Work, 66
Wyoming, 263–265, 267, 268, 303, 31 341
Wyoming Basin area, 341

Xerophytes, 28

Zone of aeration (vadose zone), 5, 2 224
  monitoring of, 397–400
  pore-water tension in, 225
Zone of saturation, 5

Applied Hydrogeology, 4/e

(0-13-088239-9)
Prentice-Hall, Inc.

YOU SHOULD CAREFULLY READ THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS BEFORE USING THE CD-ROM PACKAGE. USING THIS CD-ROM PACKAGE INDICATES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS.

Prentice-Hall, Inc. provides this program and licenses its use. You assume responsibility for the selection of the program to achieve your intended results, and for the installation, use, and results obtained from the program. This license extends only to use of the program in the United States or countries in which the program is marketed by authorized distributors.

LICENSE GRANT:
You hereby accept a nonexclusive, nontransferable, permanent license to install and use the program ON A SINGLE COMPUTER at any given time. You may copy the program solely for backup or archival purposes in support of your use of the program on the single computer. You may not modify, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer the program, in whole or in part.

TERM:
The License is effective until terminated. Prentice-Hall, Inc. reserves the right to terminate this License automatically if any provision of the License is violated. You may terminate the License at any time. To terminate this License, you must return the program, including documentation, along with a written warranty stating that all copies in your possession have been returned or destroyed.

LIMITED WARRANTY:
THE PROGRAM IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU (AND NOT PRENTICE-HALL, INC. OR ANY AUTHORIZED DEALER) ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR, OR CORRECTION. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY PRENTICE-HALL, INC., ITS DEALERS, DISTRIBUTORS, OR AGENTS SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY OR INCREASE THE SCOPE OF THIS WARRANTY.

SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THIS WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS AND YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER LEGAL RIGHTS THAT VARY FROM STATE TO STATE.

Prentice-Hall, Inc. does not warrant that the functions contained in the program will meet your requirements or that the operation of the program will be uninterrupted or error-free.

However, Prentice-Hall, Inc. warrants the CD-ROM on which the program is furnished to be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of delivery to you as evidenced by a copy of your receipt.

The program should not be relied on as the sole basis to solve a problem whose incorrect solution could result in injury to person or property. If the program is employed in such a manner, it is at the user's own risk and Prentice-Hall, Inc. explicitly disclaims all liability for such misuse.

LIMITATION OF REMEDIES:
Prentice-Hall, Inc.'s entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be:
1. the replacement of any CD-ROM not meeting Prentice-Hall, Inc.'s "LIMITED WARRANTY" and that is returned to Prentice-Hall, or 2. if Prentice-Hall is unable to deliver a replacement CD-ROM that is free of defects in materials or workmanship, you may terminate this agreement by returning the program.

IN NO EVENT WILL PRENTICE-HALL, INC. BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY LOST PROFITS, LOST SAVINGS, OR OTHER INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE SUCH PROGRAM EVEN IF PRENTICE-HALL, INC. OR AN AUTHORIZED DISTRIBUTOR HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, OR FOR ANY CLAIM BY ANY OTHER PARTY.

SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW FOR THE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION OF LIABILITY FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

GENERAL:
You may not sublicense, assign, or transfer the license of the program. Any attempt to sublicense, assign or transfer any of the rights, duties, or obligations hereunder is void.

This Agreement will be governed by the laws of the State of New York.

Should you have any questions concerning this Agreement, you may contact Prentice-Hall, Inc. by writing to:
Media Production
Engineering/Science/Math Division
Prentice-Hall, Inc.
1 Lake Street
Upper Saddle River, NJ 07458

Should you have any questions concerning technical support, you may write to:
Media Production
Engineering/Science/Math Division
Prentice-Hall, Inc.
1 Lake Street
Upper Saddle River, NJ 07458

YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT YOU HAVE READ THIS AGREEMENT, UNDERSTAND IT, AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ITS TERMS AND CONDITIONS. YOU FURTHER AGREE THAT IT IS THE COMPLETE AND EXCLUSIVE STATEMENT OF THE AGREEMENT BETWEEN US THAT SUPERSEDES ANY PROPOSAL OR PRIOR AGREEMENT, ORAL OR WRITTEN, AND ANY OTHER COMMUNICATIONS BETWEEN US RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER OF THIS AGREEMENT.

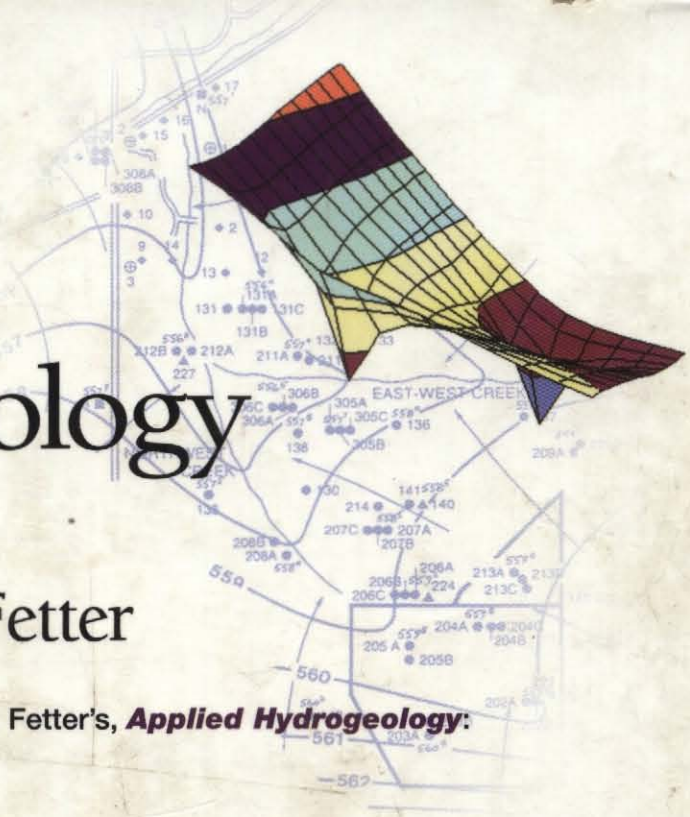
INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS:

Please refer to the Read Me file on the CD-ROM for information regarding program launch instructions.

MINIMUM SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS:

WINDOWS/PC

- Pentium processor
- Windows 95/98/NT 4.0x
- 16 MB RAM, 32 MB recommended for Windows 98
- CD-ROM drive
- 40 MB free hard drive space
- A VGA-compatible graphics card or better



Applied Hydrogeology

Fourth Edition

C. W. Fetter

New to the fourth edition of C.W. Fetter's, ***Applied Hydrogeology***:

- Five new case histories:
  - The Dakota Aquifer
  - Fractures in Sedimentary Rocks—Newark Basin
  - Faults as Aquifer Boundaries
  - Desert Hydrology—Azraq Basin, Jordan
  - Use of Multiple Geophysical Techniques to Determine the Extent and Thickness of a Critical Confining Layer
- Excel-based projects in the Water Chemistry and Ground Water Modeling chapters
- "Analysis" sections in select chapters, directing the students to a problem or issue that employs critical thinking and problem solving techniques
- Chapter 2, "Elements of the Hydrologic Cycle", combines chapters 2 and 3 of the previous edition
- New chapter problems throughout

Included on the enclosed CD-ROM are student versions of:

- Visual Modflow
- Flownet
- Aqtesolv

Pearson Education

Prentice Hall
Upper Saddle River, NJ 07458
www.prenhall.com

ISBN 0-13-088239-9

9 780130 882394 90000